

DB2 10 for z/OS

Utility Guide and Reference



DB2 10 for z/OS

Utility Guide and Reference



Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information under “Notices” at the end of this information.

Second edition (December 2010)

This edition applies to DB2 10 for z/OS, product number 5605-DB2, and to any subsequent releases until otherwise indicated in new editions. Make sure you are using the correct edition for the level of the product.

Specific changes are indicated by a vertical bar to the left of a change. A vertical bar to the left of a figure caption indicates that the figure has changed. Editorial changes that have no technical significance are not noted.

© **Copyright IBM Corporation 1983, 2010.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

About this information	xv
Who should read this information.	xv
DB2 Utilities Suite	xv
Terminology and citations	xv
Accessibility features for DB2 10 for z/OS	xvi
How to send your comments	xvii
Naming conventions used in this information	xvii
How to read syntax diagrams	xx

Part 1. Introduction to the DB2 utilities. 1

Chapter 1. Basic information about the DB2 utilities. 3

Types of DB2 utilities	3
Privileges and authorization IDs.	3
Utilities that can be run on declared temporary objects	4
Effect of utilities on objects that have the DEFINE NO attribute	4
Effect of utilities on data that is encrypted through built-in functions	5

Chapter 2. DB2 utilities packaging 7

SMP/E jobs for DB2 utility products	7
Operation of DB2 utilities in a mixed-release data sharing environment.	8

Part 2. DB2 online utilities. 9

Chapter 3. Invoking DB2 online utilities. 11

Data sets that online utilities use	11
Utility control statements.	13
Required authorizations for invoking online utilities on tables that have multilevel security with row-level granularity	16
Invoking DB2 online utilities in a trusted connection	17
Using the DB2 Utilities panel in DB2I	17
Invoking a DB2 utility by using the DSNU CLIST command in TSO	20
DSNU CLIST command	21
Invoking a DB2 utility by using the supplied JCL procedure (DSNUPROC)	27
Invoking a DB2 utility by creating the JCL data set yourself	30

Chapter 4. Monitoring and controlling online utilities. 31

Monitoring utilities with the DISPLAY UTILITY command	31
Running utilities concurrently	32
Online utilities in a data sharing environment.	33
Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command	34
Subsystem parameters for refining DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities	35
Restart of an online utility	36
Using the RESTART parameter	39
Adding or deleting utility statements.	39
Modifying utility control statements	39
Restarting after the output data set is full	40
Restarting with templates.	40
How DB2 restarts with lists	41

Chapter 5. BACKUP SYSTEM 43

Syntax and options of the BACKUP SYSTEM control statement	44
Before running BACKUP SYSTEM.	46

Data sets that BACKUP SYSTEM uses	47
Concurrency and compatibility for BACKUP SYSTEM	47
Dumping a fast replication copy to tape	48
Backups of log copy pools	48
Termination or restart of BACKUP SYSTEM	49
Sample BACKUP SYSTEM control statements	49

Chapter 6. CATENFM. 51

Syntax and options of the CATENFM control statement	51
Before converting the catalog	52
Data sets that CATENFM uses when converting the catalog	52
Concurrency and compatibility for CATENFM.	53
Converting to new-function mode	53
Termination or halt of CATENFM	53

Chapter 7. CATMAINT 55

Syntax and options of the CATMAINT control statement	55
Before running CATMAINT	57
Data sets that CATMAINT uses	57
Concurrency and compatibility for CATMAINT	57
Updating the catalog for a new release	57
Renaming the owner, creator, and schema of database objects	57
Changing the ownership of objects from an authorization ID to a role	58
Changing the catalog name used by storage groups or index spaces and table spaces	58
Identifying invalidated packages after the owner, creator, or schema name of an object is renamed	58
Termination or restart of CATMAINT.	59

Chapter 8. CHECK DATA 61

Syntax and options of the CHECK DATA control statement	62
Before running CHECK DATA	72
Data sets that CHECK DATA uses	73
Concurrency and compatibility for CHECK DATA	77
Exception tables for the CHECK DATA utility	79
Exception processing for tables with auxiliary columns	80
Specifying the scope of CHECK DATA	80
How violations are identified	81
Detection and correction of constraint violations	81
How CHECK DATA detects XML errors	82
Correcting XML data after running CHECK DATA	83
Resetting CHECK-pending status	83
LOB column errors	83
Resetting auxiliary CHECK-pending status	85
Termination and restart of CHECK DATA	85
Sample CHECK DATA control statements	85

Chapter 9. CHECK INDEX. 89

Syntax and options of the CHECK INDEX control statement	90
Data sets that CHECK INDEX uses	94
Shadow data sets	94
Concurrency and compatibility for CHECK INDEX	96
Single logical partitions	98
Indexes in parallel	99
Reviewing CHECK INDEX output	102
Termination or restart of CHECK INDEX	103
Correcting XML data after running CHECK INDEX	103
Sample CHECK INDEX control statements	103

Chapter 10. CHECK LOB 107

Syntax and options of the CHECK LOB control statement	108
Before running CHECK LOB	111

Data sets that CHECK LOB uses	111
Concurrency and compatibility for CHECK LOB	114
How CHECK LOB identifies violations	115
Removing CHECK-pending status for a LOB table space	115
Resolving media failure	115
Termination or restart of CHECK LOB	116
Sample CHECK LOB control statements	116

Chapter 11. COPY 119

Syntax and options of the COPY control statement	121
Before running COPY	132
Data sets that COPY uses	132
Concurrency and compatibility for COPY	135
Full image copies	137
Incremental image copies	139
Multiple image copies	140
FlashCopy image copies	142
Copying a list of objects	146
Using more than one COPY statement	148
Copying segmented table spaces	148
Copying partitions or data sets in separate jobs	148
Copying partition-by-growth table spaces	148
Copying an XML table space	149
Copying catalog and directory objects	149
Make copies of XML schema repository objects	150
Copying indexes	150
Using DFSMSdss concurrent copy	151
Specifying conditional image copies	152
Preparing for recovery	153
Improving performance	155
Copying table spaces with mixed volume IDs	155
Defining generation data groups for the COPY utility	155
Using DB2 with DFSMS products	156
Image copies on tape	156
Termination of COPY	156
Restart of COPY	157
Sample COPY control statements	157

Chapter 12. COPYTOCOPY 169

Syntax and options of the COPYTOCOPY control statement	170
Data sets that COPYTOCOPY uses	175
Concurrency and compatibility for COPYTOCOPY	176
Full or incremental image copies with COPYTOCOPY	177
Incremental image copies with COPYTOCOPY	177
Using more than one COPYTOCOPY statement	178
Copying an inline copy made by REORG with a range of partitions	178
Copying from a specific image copy	178
Copying a FlashCopy image copy by using COPYTOCOPY	178
Using TEMPLATE with COPYTOCOPY	179
Updating SYSCOPY records	179
How to determine which input copy to use	179
Defining generation data groups for the COPYTOCOPY utility	180
Using DB2 with DFSMS products	180
Image copies on tape	180
Copying a LOB or XML table space	180
Copying a list of objects from tape	180
Termination or restart of COPYTOCOPY	181
Sample COPYTOCOPY control statements	182

Chapter 13. DIAGNOSE 187

Syntax and options of the DIAGNOSE control statement	187
Data sets that DIAGNOSE uses	191
Concurrency and compatibility for DIAGNOSE	191
Forcing a utilityabend	191
Termination or restart of DIAGNOSE	192
Sample DIAGNOSE control statements	192
Chapter 14. EXEC SQL	195
Syntax and options of the EXEC SQL control statement	195
Concurrency and compatibility for EXEC SQL	197
Termination or restart of EXEC SQL	197
Sample EXEC SQL control statements	197
Chapter 15. LISTDEF	199
Syntax and options of the LISTDEF control statement	199
Concurrency and compatibility for LISTDEF	208
Creating the LISTDEF control statement	209
Including objects in a list	209
Previewing the contents of a list	213
Creating LISTDEF libraries	213
Using lists in other utility jobs.	213
Using the TEMPLATE utility with LISTDEF	215
Using the OPTIONS utility with LISTDEF	215
Termination or restart of LISTDEF	215
Sample LISTDEF control statements	216
Chapter 16. LOAD	221
Syntax and options of the LOAD control statement.	223
Before running LOAD	268
Data sets that LOAD uses	270
Concurrency and compatibility for LOAD	274
When to use SORTKEYS NO	276
Loading variable-length data	277
How LOAD orders loaded records	277
Replacing data with LOAD.	277
Using LOAD for tables with identity columns, ROWID columns, row change timestamp columns, or generated columns	280
Adding more data to a table or partition	280
Deleting all the data in a table space	281
Loading partitions.	281
Partition-by-growth table spaces	282
Loading data containing XML columns.	283
Loading delimited files	283
Loading data with referential constraints	286
Correcting referential constraint violations.	288
Compressing data	288
Loading data from DL/I	289
Loading data by using the cross-loader function.	290
Using inline COPY with LOAD	292
Creating a FlashCopy image copy with LOAD	292
Improving LOAD performance	293
Improving performance for parallel processing	295
Improved performance with SORTKEYS	295
Improving performance with LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT	296
Improving performance with LOAD by avoiding LOB and XML materialization	297
Converting input data	297
Specifying input fields	299
Specifying the TRUNCATE and STRIP options	299
How LOAD builds indexes while loading data	300
Building indexes in parallel for LOAD	300

How LOAD leaves free space	303
Loading with RECOVER-pending, REBUILD-pending, or REORG-pending status	303
Exit procedures.	304
Loading ROWID columns	304
Loading a LOB column	305
LOAD LOG on a LOB table space	306
Loading an XML column	306
LOAD LOG on an XML table space	307
Running LOAD RESUME YES SHRLEVEL CHANGE without logging	307
Collecting inline statistics while loading a table	308
Inline COPY for a base table space	308
Termination of LOAD	308
Restart of LOAD	309
After running LOAD	311
Copying the loaded table space or partition	311
Resetting COPY-pending status	311
Resetting REBUILD-pending status	312
Resetting the CHECK-pending status	312
Running CHECK INDEX after loading a table that has indexes.	315
Recovering a failed LOAD job.	315
Reorganization of an auxiliary index after LOAD	315
Effects of running LOAD	315
Sample LOAD control statements.	316
Chapter 17. MERGECOPY	331
Syntax and options of the MERGECOPY control statement	332
Data sets that MERGECOPY uses	334
Concurrency and compatibility for MERGECOPY	335
Full or incremental image copy	336
How to determine which input copy MERGECOPY uses	337
Merging online copies	337
Using MERGECOPY with individual data sets	337
Using MERGECOPY or COPY.	337
Avoiding MERGECOPY LOG RBA inconsistencies	338
Creating image copies in a JES3 environment.	338
Termination or restart of MERGECOPY.	338
Sample MERGECOPY control statements	339
Chapter 18. MODIFY RECOVERY	341
Syntax and options of the MODIFY RECOVERY control statement	342
Before running MODIFY RECOVERY	345
Data sets that MODIFY RECOVERY uses	346
Concurrency and compatibility for MODIFY RECOVERY.	346
How MODIFY RECOVERY deletes rows	347
How MODIFY RECOVERY deletes SYSOBDS entries	348
Reclaiming space in the DBD	348
Improving REORG performance after adding a column	348
Termination or restart of MODIFY RECOVERY	349
The effect of MODIFY RECOVERY on version numbers	349
Sample MODIFY RECOVERY control statements	350
Chapter 19. MODIFY STATISTICS	353
Syntax and options of the MODIFY STATISTICS control statement	354
Data sets that MODIFY STATISTICS uses	356
Concurrency and compatibility for MODIFY STATISTICS.	356
Deciding which statistics history rows to delete	357
Deleting specific statistics history rows	357
Termination or restart of MODIFY STATISTICS	357
Sample MODIFY STATISTICS control statements	358

Chapter 20. OPTIONS	361
Syntax and options of the OPTIONS control statement	361
Concurrency and compatibility for OPTIONS.	364
Executing statements in preview mode	365
Specifying LISTDEF and TEMPLATE libraries	365
Overriding standard utility processing behavior	365
Termination or restart of OPTIONS	365
Sample OPTIONS control statements	366
Chapter 21. QUIESCE	369
Syntax and options of the QUIESCE control statement.	370
Before running QUIESCE	371
Data sets that QUIESCE uses	372
Concurrency and compatibility for QUIESCE.	372
Using QUIESCE on catalog and directory objects	374
Common quiesce points	374
Specifying a list of table spaces and table space sets	374
Running QUIESCE on a table space in pending status.	375
Determining why the write to disk fails	375
Termination and restart of QUIESCE	376
Sample QUIESCE control statements	376
Chapter 22. REBUILD INDEX	379
Syntax and options of the REBUILD INDEX control statement	380
Before running REBUILD INDEX.	389
Data sets that REBUILD INDEX uses	390
Concurrency and compatibility for REBUILD INDEX	392
Access with REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL	394
Rebuilding index partitions.	395
Rebuilding indexes on partition-by-growth table spaces	395
Improving performance when rebuilding index partitions	395
Rebuilding multiple indexes	397
Resetting the REBUILD-pending status	401
Rebuilding critical catalog indexes	402
Recoverability of a rebuilt index	403
Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REBUILD INDEX	403
Termination or restart of REBUILD INDEX	404
The effect of REBUILD INDEX on index version numbers	404
Sample REBUILD INDEX control statements	405
Chapter 23. RECOVER	409
Syntax and options of the RECOVER control statement	411
Before running RECOVER	421
Data sets that RECOVER uses	422
Concurrency and compatibility for RECOVER	422
Recovering with a system-level backup.	424
How to determine which system-level backups DB2 recovers	425
Determining the recovery base	426
Determining whether the system-level backups reside on disk or tape	426
Recovering a table space	426
Recovering a list of objects	427
Recovering a data set or partition	428
Recovering with incremental copies	428
Recovering with FlashCopy image copies	429
Recovering a page.	430
Recovering an error range	431
Effect on RECOVER of the NOT LOGGED or LOGGED table space attributes.	431
Recovering with a data set copy that is not made by DB2	432
Recovering catalog and directory objects	433
Reinitializing DSNDB01.SYSUTILX	440

Recovering a table space that contains LOB or XML data	441
Recovering a table space that contains clone objects	442
Point-in-time recovery	442
Avoiding specific image copy data sets	448
Improving RECOVER performance	449
Optimizing the LOGAPPLY phase	450
Recovering image copies in a JES3 environment	452
Resetting RECOVER-pending or REBUILD-pending status	452
How the RECOVER utility allocates incremental image copies	452
How the RECOVER utility performs fallback recovery.	452
How the RECOVER utility retains tape mounts	453
Avoiding damaged media	454
Termination or restart of RECOVER	454
Effects of running RECOVER	455
Sample RECOVER control statements	455

Chapter 24. REORG INDEX 459

Syntax and options of the REORG INDEX control statement	460
Before running REORG INDEX	474
Data sets that REORG INDEX uses	476
Concurrency and compatibility for REORG INDEX.	480
Determining when an index requires reorganization	481
Using the LEAFDISTLIMIT and REPORTONLY options to determine when reorganization is needed	482
Access with REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL	482
Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REORG INDEX	484
Temporarily interrupting REORG.	485
Improving performance with REORG INDEX	485
Termination of REORG INDEX	486
Restart of REORG INDEX	487
Review of REORG INDEX output	488
Effect of REORG INDEX on index version numbers	489
Sample REORG INDEX control statements	489

Chapter 25. REORG TABLESPACE 493

Syntax and options of the REORG TABLESPACE control statement	496
Before running REORG TABLESPACE	530
Data sets that REORG TABLESPACE uses	535
Concurrency and compatibility for REORG TABLESPACE	543
Determining when an object requires reorganization	547
Access with REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL	549
Omitting the output data set	552
Unloading without reloading	552
Reclaiming space from dropped tables	552
Reorganizing the catalog and directory	553
Changing data set definitions	555
Temporarily interrupting REORG.	555
Building a compression dictionary	555
How to override dynamic sort work data set allocation	555
Rebalancing partitions by using REORG	556
How partitions can be unloaded and reloaded in parallel.	558
Using inline copy with REORG TABLESPACE	558
Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REORG TABLESPACE	559
Improving REORG TABLESPACE performance	560
Parallel index building for REORG TABLESPACE	561
How DB2 unloads data	565
Encountering an error in the RELOAD phase.	565
Reorganization of partitioned table spaces.	565
Reorganization of partition-by-growth table spaces	565
Reorganization of segmented table spaces	566
Comparison of the numbers of loaded and unloaded records	566

Reorganization of a LOB table space	567
Reorganization of an XML table space	567
Termination of REORG TABLESPACE	568
Restart of REORG TABLESPACE	569
Review of REORG TABLESPACE output	571
After running REORG TABLESPACE	572
Effects of running REORG TABLESPACE	573
Sample REORG TABLESPACE control statements	574
Chapter 26. REPAIR	589
Syntax and options of the REPAIR control statement	590
Before running REPAIR	605
Data sets that REPAIR uses	605
Concurrency and compatibility for REPAIR	606
Resetting table space status	609
Resetting index space status	610
Repairing a damaged page	610
Using the DBD statement	610
Locating rows by key	611
Using VERIFY with REPLACE and DELETE operations	611
Repairing critical catalog table spaces and indexes	612
Updating version information when moving objects to another subsystem	612
Termination or restart of REPAIR	613
Review of REPAIR output	613
After running REPAIR	614
Sample REPAIR control statements	614
Chapter 27. REPORT	617
Syntax and options of the REPORT control statement	618
Data sets that REPORT uses	622
Concurrency and compatibility for REPORT	622
How REPORT recovers information	623
Running REPORT on the catalog and directory	625
Termination or restart of REPORT	625
Review of REPORT output	626
Sample REPORT control statements	633
Chapter 28. RESTORE SYSTEM	643
Syntax and options of the RESTORE SYSTEM control statement	644
Before running RESTORE SYSTEM	646
Data sets that RESTORE SYSTEM uses	647
Concurrency and compatibility for RESTORE SYSTEM	648
Restoring data in a data sharing environment	648
Using DISPLAY UTILITY with RESTORE SYSTEM	648
Termination and restart of RESTORE SYSTEM	648
Effects of running RESTORE SYSTEM	649
After running RESTORE SYSTEM	649
Sample RESTORE SYSTEM control statements	649
Chapter 29. RUNSTATS	651
Syntax and options of the RUNSTATS control statement	652
The RUNSTATS profile syntax	669
Before running RUNSTATS	672
Data sets that RUNSTATS uses	672
Concurrency and compatibility for RUNSTATS	674
When to use RUNSTATS	676
Assessing table space status	677
Collecting distribution statistics for column groups	677
Updating statistics for a partitioned table space	678
Running RUNSTATS on the DB2 catalog	678

Improving RUNSTATS performance	678
Collecting frequency statistics for data-partitioned secondary indexes	679
Invalidating statements in the dynamic statement cache	679
Collecting statistics history	680
Collection of statistics on LOB table spaces	680
Collection of statistics on XML objects	680
RUNSTATS profiles	680
Creating RUNSTATS profiles	681
Using RUNSTATS profiles	682
Updating RUNSTATS profiles	682
Deleting RUNSTATS profiles	682
Combining autonomic and manual statistics maintenance	683
Termination or restart of RUNSTATS	683
Review of RUNSTATS output	684
After running RUNSTATS	688
Sample RUNSTATS control statements	688
Chapter 30. STOSPACE	693
Syntax and options of the STOSPACE control statement	694
Data sets that STOSPACE uses	694
Concurrency and compatibility for STOSPACE	695
How STOSPACE ensures availability of objects it STOSPACE requires	695
Obtaining statistical information with STOSPACE	695
Analysis of the values in a SPACE or SPACEF column	696
Termination or restart of STOSPACE	696
Sample STOSPACE control statement	697
Chapter 31. TEMPLATE	699
Syntax and options of the TEMPLATE control statement	699
Before running TEMPLATE	714
Concurrency and compatibility for TEMPLATE	715
Key TEMPLATE operations	715
Creating data set names	716
Controlling data set size	716
Default space calculations	717
Working with TAPE	718
Working with GDGs	718
Template switching	718
Termination or restart of TEMPLATE	718
Sample TEMPLATE control statements	719
Chapter 32. UNLOAD	725
Syntax and options of the UNLOAD control statement	726
Before running UNLOAD	763
Data sets that UNLOAD uses	764
Concurrency and compatibility for UNLOAD	764
Unloading partitions	766
Unloading XML data	767
Unloading LOB data	768
Unloading data in spanned record format	768
Selecting tables and rows to unload	769
Selecting and ordering columns to unload	770
Unloading data from image copy data sets	770
Converting data with the UNLOAD utility	771
Output field types	772
Output field positioning and size	774
Layout of output fields	775
Unloading delimited files	777
Specifying TRUNCATE and STRIP options for output data	780
Generating LOAD statements	781

Unloading compressed data	781
Field specification errors.	782
Termination or restart of UNLOAD	782
Sample UNLOAD control statements	782

Part 3. DB2 stand-alone utilities 789

Chapter 33. Invoking stand-alone utilities 791

Creating utility control statements	791
Specifying options by using the JCL EXEC PARM parameter	791
Effects of invoking stand-alone utilities on tables that have multilevel security with row-level granularity	792

Chapter 34. DSNJCNVB 793

Chapter 35. DSNJLOGF (preformat active log) 795

Chapter 36. DSNJU003 (change log inventory) 797

Syntax and options of the DSNJU003 control statement	798
Making changes for active logs	811
Making changes for archive logs	813
Creating a conditional restart control record	813
Deleting log data sets with errors.	814
Altering references to NEWLOG and DELETE data sets	815
Defining the high-level qualifier for catalog and directory objects	815
Renaming DB2 system data sets	816
Renaming DB2 active log data sets	816
Renaming DB2 archive log data sets.	816
Sample DSNJU003 control statements	817

Chapter 37. DSNJU004 (print log map) 821

Syntax and options of the DSNJU004 control statement	822
Sample DSNJU004 control statement	823
DSNJU004 (print log map) output	823

Chapter 38. DSN1CHKR 835

Syntax and options of the DSN1CHKR control statement.	836
Sample DSN1CHKR control statements.	838

Chapter 39. DSN1COMP 843

Syntax and options of the DSN1COMP control statement.	845
Before running DSN1COMP	848
Estimating compression savings achieved with option REORG	848
Free space in compression calculations on table space	849
The effect of running DSN1COMP on a table space with identical rows	850
Sample DSN1COMP control statements	850
DSN1COMP output	851

Chapter 40. DSN1COPY 855

Syntax and options of the DSN1COPY control statement	857
Before running DSN1COPY	862
Data sets that DSN1COPY uses	864
The effect of altering a table before running DSN1COPY	868
Checking for inconsistent data.	868
The effects of not specifying the OBIDLAT option.	869
Requirements for using an image copy as input to DSN1COPY.	869
Resetting page log RBAs	869
Copying from an image copy	870
Restoring indexes with DSN1COPY	870

Restoring table spaces with DSN1COPY	871
Printing with DSN1COPY	871
Copying tables from one subsystem to another	872
Sample DSN1COPY control statements	873
Chapter 41. DSN1LOGP	877
Syntax and options of the DSN1LOGP control statement	879
Determining the PSID for base and clone objects	886
Archive log data sets on tape	886
Sample DSN1LOGP control statements	887
DSN1LOGP output	890
Chapter 42. DSN1PRNT	897
Syntax and options of the DSN1PRNT control statement	898
Printing with DSN1PRNT instead of DSN1COPY	904
Determining page size and DSSIZE	904
Sample DSN1PRNT control statements	905
Chapter 43. DSN1SDMP	909
Syntax and options of the DSN1SDMP control statement	910
Assigning buffers	915
Conditions for generating a dump	916
Stopping or modifying DSN1SDMP traces	916
Sample DSN1SDMP control statements	917
<hr/>	
Part 4. Appendixes	921
Appendix A. Limits in DB2 for z/OS	923
Appendix B. DB2-supplied stored procedures	929
Deprecated: DSNUTILS stored procedure	933
DSNUTILU stored procedure	945
DSNACCOR stored procedure.	949
DSNACCOX stored procedure.	970
Appendix C. Advisory or restrictive states	1001
Auxiliary CHECK-pending status	1001
Auxiliary warning status	1002
CHECK-pending status.	1003
COPY-pending status	1004
OBJECT error status.	1004
Group buffer pool RECOVER-pending status	1005
Informational COPY-pending status	1005
REBUILD-pending status	1006
RECOVER-pending status.	1007
REFRESH-pending status	1008
REORG-pending status.	1008
Restart-pending status	1009
Appendix D. Productivity-aid sample programs	1011
DSNTIAUL.	1012
DSNTIAD	1018
DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4	1020
Appendix E. DSNADMSB	1027
Parameters of the DSNADMSB program	1027
Before running DSNADMSB	1033
Data sets that DSNADMSB uses.	1033

Copying the data that DSNADMSB and ADMIN_INFO_SQL collect to another subsystem	1034
Examples of DSNADMSB invocation	1035
Appendix F. How real-time statistics are used by DB2 utilities	1043
Appendix G. Delimited file format	1045
Delimited data types	1046
Examples of delimited files	1047
Information resources for DB2 for z/OS and related products	1049
How to obtain DB2 information	1055
How to use the DB2 library	1057
Notices	1061
Programming Interface Information	1062
General-use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information	1063
Product-sensitive Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information.	1063
Trademarks	1063
Glossary	1065
Index	1111

About this information

This information contains usage information for the tasks of system administration, database administration, and operation. It presents detailed information about using utilities, specifying syntax (including keyword and parameter descriptions), and starting, stopping, and restarting utilities. This book also includes job control language (JCL) and control statements for each utility.

This information assumes that your DB2® subsystem is running in Version 10 new-function mode. Generally, new functions that are described, including changes to existing functions, statements, and limits, are available only in new-function mode, unless explicitly stated otherwise. Exceptions to this general statement include optimization and virtual storage enhancements, which are also available in conversion mode unless stated otherwise. In Versions 8 and 9, most utility functions were available in conversion mode. However, for Version 10, most utility functions work only in new-function mode.

Who should read this information

This information is intended for system administrators, database administrators, system operators, and application programmers of DB2 online and stand-alone utilities.

Recommendation: Familiarize yourself with DB2 for z/OS® prior to using this book.

DB2 Utilities Suite

Important: In this version of DB2 for z/OS, the DB2 Utilities Suite is available as an optional product. You must separately order and purchase a license to such utilities, and discussion of those utility functions in this publication is not intended to otherwise imply that you have a license to them.

The DB2 Utilities Suite can work with DB2 Sort and the DFSORT program, which you are licensed to use in support of the DB2 utilities even if you do not otherwise license DFSORT for general use. If your primary sort product is not DFSORT, consider the following informational APARs mandatory reading:

- II14047/II14213: USE OF DFSORT BY DB2 UTILITIES
- II13495: HOW DFSORT TAKES ADVANTAGE OF 64-BIT REAL ARCHITECTURE

These informational APARs are periodically updated.

Related information

DB2 utilities packaging (Utility Guide)

Terminology and citations

When referring to a DB2 product other than DB2 for z/OS, this information uses the product's full name to avoid ambiguity.

The following terms are used as indicated:

DB2 Represents either the DB2 licensed program or a particular DB2 subsystem.

OMEGAMON®

Refers to any of the following products:

- IBM® Tivoli® OMEGAMON XE for DB2 Performance Expert on z/OS
- IBM Tivoli OMEGAMON XE for DB2 Performance Monitor on z/OS
- IBM DB2 Performance Expert for Multiplatforms and Workgroups
- IBM DB2 Buffer Pool Analyzer for z/OS

C, C++, and C language

Represent the C or C++ programming language.

CICS® Represents CICS Transaction Server for z/OS.

IMS™ Represents the IMS Database Manager or IMS Transaction Manager.

MVS™ Represents the MVS element of the z/OS operating system, which is equivalent to the Base Control Program (BCP) component of the z/OS operating system.

RACF®

Represents the functions that are provided by the RACF component of the z/OS Security Server.

Accessibility features for DB2 10 for z/OS

Accessibility features help a user who has a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use information technology products successfully.

Accessibility features

The following list includes the major accessibility features in z/OS products, including DB2 10 for z/OS. These features support:

- Keyboard-only operation.
- Interfaces that are commonly used by screen readers and screen magnifiers.
- Customization of display attributes such as color, contrast, and font size

Tip: The Information Management Software for z/OS Solutions Information Center (which includes information for DB2 10 for z/OS) and its related publications are accessibility-enabled for the IBM Home Page Reader. You can operate all features using the keyboard instead of the mouse.

Keyboard navigation

You can access DB2 10 for z/OS ISPF panel functions by using a keyboard or keyboard shortcut keys.

For information about navigating the DB2 10 for z/OS ISPF panels using TSO/E or ISPF, refer to the *z/OS TSO/E Primer*, the *z/OS TSO/E User's Guide*, and the *z/OS ISPF User's Guide*. These guides describe how to navigate each interface, including the use of keyboard shortcuts or function keys (PF keys). Each guide includes the default settings for the PF keys and explains how to modify their functions.

Related accessibility information

Online documentation for DB2 10 for z/OS is available in the Information Management Software for z/OS Solutions Information Center, which is available at the following website: <http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic>

IBM and accessibility

See the *IBM Accessibility Center* at <http://www.ibm.com/able> for more information about the commitment that IBM has to accessibility.

How to send your comments

Your feedback helps IBM to provide quality information. Please send any comments that you have about this book or other DB2 for z/OS documentation. You can use the following methods to provide comments:

- Send your comments by email to db2zinfo@us.ibm.com and include the name of the product, the version number of the product, and the number of the book. If you are commenting on specific text, please list the location of the text (for example, a chapter and section title or a help topic title).
- You can send comments from the web. Visit the DB2 for z/OS - Technical Resources website at:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=64&uid=swg27011656>

This website has an online reader comment form that you can use to send comments.

- You can also send comments by using the **Feedback** link at the footer of each page in the Information Management Software for z/OS Solutions Information Center at <http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic>.

Naming conventions used in this information

When you use DB2 commands and utilities, be aware of the applicable naming conventions

When you use a parameter for an object that is created by SQL statements (for example, tables, table spaces, and indexes), identify the object by following the SQL syntactical naming conventions.

In this book, characters are classified as *letters*, *digits*, or *special characters*.

- A *letter* is any one of the uppercase characters A through Z (including the three characters that are reserved in the United States as alphabetic extenders for national languages, #, @, and \$.).
- A *digit* is any one of the characters 0 through 9.
- A *special character* is any character other than a letter or a digit.

authorization-id

A short identifier of one to eight letters, digits, or the underscore that identifies a set of privileges. An authorization ID must begin with a letter.

connection-name

An identifier of one to eight characters that identifies an address space connection to DB2. A connection identifier is one of the following values:

- TSO (for DSN processes that run in TSO foreground).
- BATCH (for DSN processes that run in TSO batch).
- DB2CALL (for the call attachment facility (CAF)).
- The system identification name (for IMS and CICS processes).

See *DB2 Administration Guide* for more information about managing DB2 connections.

correlation-id

An identifier of 1 to 12 characters that identifies a process within an address space connection. A correlation ID must begin with a letter.

A correlation ID can be one of the following values:

- The TSO logon identifier (for DSN processes that run in TSO foreground and for CAF processes).
- The job name (for DSN processes that run in TSO batch).
- The PST#.PSBNAME (for IMS processes).
- The entry identifier.thread_number.transaction_identifier (for CICS processes).

See *DB2 Administration Guide* for more information about correlation IDs.

cursor-name

An identifier that designates a result set. Cursor names that are specified with the EXEC SQL and LOAD utilities cannot be longer than eight characters.

database-name

A short identifier that identifies a database. The identifier must start with a letter and must not include special characters.

data-set-name

An identifier of 1 to 44 characters that identifies a data set.

dbrm-member-name

An identifier of one to eight letters or digits that identifies a member of a partitioned data set.

A DBRM member name should not begin with DSN because of a potential conflict with DB2-provided DBRM member names. If you specify a DBRM member name that begins with DSN, DB2 issues a warning message.

dbrm-pds-name

An identifier of 1 to 44 characters that identifies a partitioned data set.

ddname

An identifier of one to eight characters that identifies the name of a DD statement.

hexadecimal-constant

A sequence of digits or any of the letters from A to F (uppercase or lowercase).

hexadecimal-string

An X followed by a sequence of characters that begins and ends with the string delimiter, an apostrophe. The characters between the string delimiters must be a hexadecimal number.

index-name

A qualified or unqualified name that identifies an index.

A qualified index name is a schema name followed by a period and an identifier.

An unqualified index name is an identifier with an implicit schema name qualifier. The implicit schema is determined by the rules in *DB2 SQL Reference*.

If the index name contains a blank character, the name must be enclosed in quotation marks when specified in a utility control statement.

location-name

A location identifier of 1 to 16 letters (but excluding the alphabetic extenders),

digits, or the underscore that identifies an instance of a database management system. A location name must begin with a letter.

luname

An SQL short identifier of one to eight characters that identifies a logical unit name. A LU name must begin with a letter.

member-name

An identifier of one to eight letters (including the three alphabetic extenders) or digits that identifies a member of a partitioned data set.

A member name should not begin with DSN because of a potential conflict with DB2-provided member names. If you specify a member name that begins with DSN, DB2 issues a warning message.

qualifier-name

An SQL short identifier of one to eight letters, digits, or the underscore that identifies the implicit qualifier for unqualified table names, views, indexes, and aliases.

string

A sequence of characters that begins and ends with an apostrophe.

subsystem-name

An identifier that specifies the DB2 subsystem as it is known to the operating system.

table-name

A qualified or unqualified name that designates a table.

A fully qualified table name is a three-part name. The first part is a location name that designates the DBMS at which the table is stored. The second part is a schema name. The third part is an SQL identifier. A period must separate each of the parts.

A two-part table name is implicitly qualified by the location name of the current server. The first part is a schema name. The second part is an SQL identifier. A period must separate the two parts.

A one-part or unqualified table name is an SQL identifier with two implicit qualifiers. The first implicit qualifier is the location name of the current server. The second is a schema name, which is determined by the rules in *DB2 SQL Reference*.

If the table name contains a blank, the name must be enclosed in quotation marks when specified in a utility control statement.

table-space-name

A short identifier that identifies a table space of an identified database. The identifier must start with a letter and must not include special characters. If a database is not identified, a table space name specifies a table space of database DSNDB04.

utility-id

An identifier of 1 to 16 characters that uniquely identifies a utility process within DB2. A utility ID must begin with a letter. The remaining characters can be uppercase and lowercase letters, numbers 0 through 9, and the following characters: #, \$, ., €, !, ~, and @.

Related concepts

-  Naming conventions (DB2 SQL)
-  SQL identifiers (DB2 SQL)

How to read syntax diagrams

Certain conventions apply to the syntax diagrams that are used in IBM documentation.

Apply the following rules when reading the syntax diagrams that are used in DB2 for z/OS documentation:

- Read the syntax diagrams from left to right, from top to bottom, following the path of the line.
 - The  symbol indicates the beginning of a statement.
 - The  symbol indicates that the statement syntax is continued on the next line.
 - The  symbol indicates that a statement is continued from the previous line.
 - The  symbol indicates the end of a statement.
- Required items appear on the horizontal line (the main path).



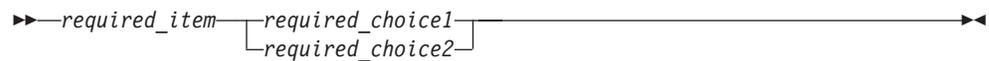
- Optional items appear below the main path.



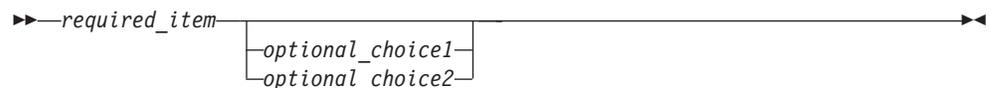
If an optional item appears above the main path, that item has no effect on the execution of the statement and is used only for readability.



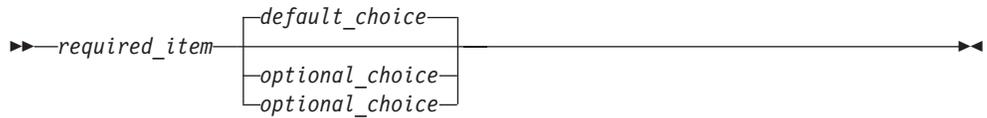
- If you can choose from two or more items, they appear vertically, in a stack. If you *must* choose one of the items, one item of the stack appears on the main path.



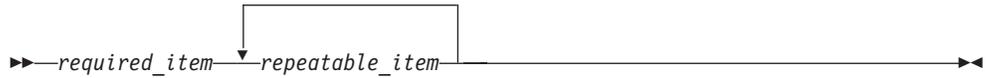
If choosing one of the items is optional, the entire stack appears below the main path.



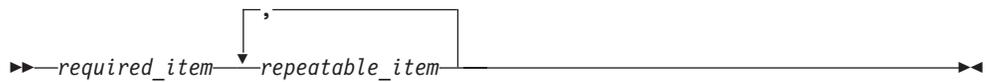
If one of the items is the default, it appears above the main path and the remaining choices are shown below.



- An arrow returning to the left, above the main line, indicates an item that can be repeated.



If the repeat arrow contains a comma, you must separate repeated items with a comma.

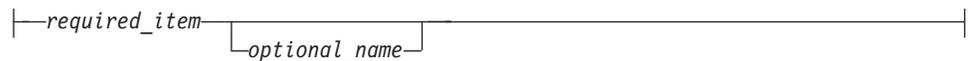


A repeat arrow above a stack indicates that you can repeat the items in the stack.

- Sometimes a diagram must be split into fragments. The syntax fragment is shown separately from the main syntax diagram, but the contents of the fragment should be read as if they are on the main path of the diagram.



fragment-name:



- With the exception of XPath keywords, keywords appear in uppercase (for example, FROM). Keywords must be spelled exactly as shown. XPath keywords are defined as lowercase names, and must be spelled exactly as shown. Variables appear in all lowercase letters (for example, *column-name*). They represent user-supplied names or values.
- If punctuation marks, parentheses, arithmetic operators, or other such symbols are shown, you must enter them as part of the syntax.

Part 1. Introduction to the DB2 utilities

Individual DB2 utilities have utility-specific characteristics. However, certain characteristics apply to most or all DB2 utilities.

Chapter 1. Basic information about the DB2 utilities

DB2 online and stand-alone utilities have specific authorization rules for coding utility control statements and the data sets that the utilities use.

Types of DB2 utilities

DB2 offers two types of utilities: online utilities and stand-alone utilities.

DB2 online utilities run as standard batch jobs or stored procedures, and they require DB2 to be running. They do not run under control of the terminal monitor program (TMP); they have their own attachment mechanism and they invoke DB2 control facility services directly.

The stand-alone utilities run as batch jobs that are independent of DB2. The only way to run these utilities is to use JCL. See the topics on the individual utilities for information about the ways to run these utilities.

Related concepts

Chapter 33, “Invoking stand-alone utilities,” on page 791

Related tasks

Chapter 3, “Invoking DB2 online utilities,” on page 11

Privileges and authorization IDs

A command or a utility job can be issued by an individual user, by a program that runs in batch mode, or by an IMS or CICS transaction.

The term *process* describes any of these initiators.

A process is represented to DB2 by a set of identifiers (IDs). What the process can do with DB2 is determined by privileges and privileges that can be held by its identifiers. The phrase “*privilege set of a process*” means the entire set of privileges and authorities that can be used by the process in a specific situation.

Three types of identifiers exist: primary authorization IDs, secondary authorization IDs, and SQL authorization IDs.

- Generally, the *primary authorization ID* identifies a specific process. For example, in the process that is initiated through the TSO attachment facility, the primary authorization ID is identical to the TSO logon ID. A trace record identifies the process by that ID.
- *Secondary authorization IDs*, which are optional, can hold additional privileges that are available to the process. A secondary authorization ID is often a SecureWay™ Security Server Resource Access Control Facility (RACF) group ID. For example, a process can belong to a RACF group that holds the LOAD privilege on a particular database. Any member of the group can run the LOAD utility to load table spaces in the database.

DB2 commands that are entered from a z/OS console are not associated with any secondary authorization IDs.

- An *SQL authorization ID (SQL ID)* holds the privileges that are exercised when issuing certain dynamic SQL statements. Generally, this topic does not discuss the SQL ID.

Within DB2, a process can be represented by a primary authorization ID and possibly one or more secondary IDs. For DB2 online utilities, the process can be represented by a primary authorization ID, possibly one or more secondary IDs, and role, if running in a trusted connection with an associated role.

An administrator can grant or revoke a privilege or authority for an identifier by executing an SQL GRANT or a REVOKE statement.

If you use the access control authorization exit routine, that exit routine might control the authorization rules, rather than the exit routines that are documented for each utility.

Related reference

 [Processing of sign-on requests \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Utilities that can be run on declared temporary objects

The REPAIR DBD utility and the STOSPACE utility can be run on declared temporary objects.

- You can use the REPAIR DBD utility on declared temporary tables, which must be created in a database that is defined with the AS TEMP clause.
- You can use the STOSPACE utility on storage groups that have objects within temporary databases.

No other DB2 utilities can be used on a declared temporary table, its indexes, or its table spaces.

Related reference

“Concurrency and compatibility for REPAIR” on page 606

“Concurrency and compatibility for STOSPACE” on page 695

Effect of utilities on objects that have the DEFINE NO attribute

With DB2 Version 7 or above, you can run certain online utilities on table spaces or index spaces that were defined with the DEFINE NO attribute. When you specify this attribute, the table space or index space is defined, but DB2 does not allocate the associated data sets until a row is inserted or loaded into a table in that table space.

You can populate table spaces whose data sets are not yet defined by using the LOAD utility with either the RESUME keyword, the REPLACE keyword, or both. Using LOAD to populate these table spaces results in the following actions:

1. DB2 allocates the data sets.
2. DB2 updates the SPACE column in the catalog table to show that data sets exist.
3. DB2 loads the specified table space.

For a partitioned table space, all partitions are allocated even if the LOAD utility is loading only one partition. Avoid attempting to populate a partitioned table space with concurrent LOAD PART jobs until after one of the jobs has caused all the data sets to be created.

Online utilities that encounter an undefined target object might issue informational message DSNU185I, but processing continues.

The following online utilities issue informational message DSNU185I when a table space or index space with the DEFINE NO attribute is encountered. The object is not processed.

- CHECK DATA
- CHECK INDEX
- COPY
- MERGECOPY
- MODIFY RECOVERY
- QUIESCE
- REBUILD INDEX
- RECOVER
- REORG INDEX
- REORG TABLESPACE
- REPAIR, but not REPAIR DBD
- RUNSTATS TABLESPACE INDEX(ALL) ¹
- RUNSTATS INDEX ¹
- UNLOAD

Note:

1. RUNSTATS recognizes DEFINE NO objects and updates the catalog's access path statistics to reflect the empty objects.

You cannot use stand-alone utilities on objects whose data sets have not been defined.

Effect of utilities on data that is encrypted through built-in functions

You can copy and recover encrypted data. You can also move encrypted data between systems. Data remains encrypted throughout these processes.

However, running any of the following utilities on encrypted data might produce unexpected results:

- CHECK DATA
- LOAD
- REBUILD INDEX
- REORG TABLESPACE
- REPAIR
- RUNSTATS
- UNLOAD
- DSN1PRNT

Chapter 2. DB2 utilities packaging

Several utilities are included with DB2 at no extra charge. Other utilities are available as a separate product.

The following utilities are core utilities, which are included (at no extra charge) with Version 10 of DB2 for z/OS:

- CATENFM
- CATMAINT
- DIAGNOSE
- LISTDEF
- OPTIONS
- QUIESCE
- REPAIR
- REPORT
- TEMPLATE
- All DSN stand-alone utilities

All other utilities are available as a separate product called the **DB2 Utilities Suite** (5655-N97, FMID JDBAA1K), which includes the following utilities:

- BACKUP SYSTEM
- CHECK DATA
- CHECK INDEX
- CHECK LOB
- COPY
- COPYTOCOPY
- EXEC SQL
- LOAD
- MERGECOPY
- MODIFY RECOVERY
- MODIFY STATISTICS
- REBUILD INDEX
- RECOVER
- REORG INDEX
- REORG TABLESPACE
- RESTORE SYSTEM
- RUNSTATS
- STOSPACE
- UNLOAD

All DB2 utilities operate on catalog, directory, and sample objects, without requiring any additional products.

SMP/E jobs for DB2 utility products

To load the DB2 utility products, use System Modification Program Extended (SMP/E). SMP/E processes the installation cartridges and creates DB2 distribution target libraries.

DB2 provides several jobs that invoke SMP/E. These jobs are on the cartridge that you received with the utility product. The job prologues in these jobs contain directions on how to tailor the job for your site. Follow these directions carefully to ensure that your DB2 Utilities Suite SMP/E process works correctly.

The SMP/E RECEIVE job, DSNRECVK, loads the DB2 Utilities Suite Version 10 program modules, macros, and procedures into temporary data sets (SMPTLIBs). If these jobs fail or abnormally terminate, correct the problem and rerun the jobs.

The SMP/E APPLY job, DSNAPPLK, copies and link-edits the program modules, macros, and procedures for the DB2 Utilities Suite Version 10 into the DB2 target libraries.

The SMP/E ACCEPT job, DSNACCPK, copies the program modules, macros, and procedures for the DB2 Utilities Suite Version 10 into the DB2 distributed libraries.

Related information

DB2 for z/OS Program Directories

Operation of DB2 utilities in a mixed-release data sharing environment

The utilities batch module, DSNUTILB, is split into multiple parts: a release-independent module called DSNUTILB, a release-dependent module DSNUT101, and utility-dependent load modules.

To operate in a mixed-release data sharing environment, you must have the release-dependent modules from both releases and all applicable utility-dependent modules available to the utility jobs that operate across the data sharing group. For information about sharing utility modules in a mixed-release data sharing environment, see [Load module names for running purchased utilities in coexistence mode \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#).

Related reference

 [Load module names for running purchased utilities in coexistence mode \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)

Part 2. DB2 online utilities

DB2 online utilities run as standard batch jobs or stored procedures, and they require DB2 to be running. They do not run under control of the terminal monitor program (TMP); they have their own attachment mechanism and they invoke DB2 control facility services directly.

Chapter 3. Invoking DB2 online utilities

You can invoke DB2 online utilities using one of a variety of methods.

Requirement: In the JCL for all utility jobs, specify a load library that is at a maintenance level that is compatible with the DB2 subsystem. Otherwise, errors can occur.

To run DB2 online utilities:

1. Prepare the necessary data sets.
2. Create a utility control statement using the syntax, option descriptions, and samples.
3. Check for any concurrency and compatibility restrictions.
4. Plan for a restart in case the utility job does not complete.
5. Invoke the online utilities using one of the following methods:
 - Use the DB2 Utilities panel in DB2I.
This method involves little involvement with JCL. You can edit the generated JCL to alter or add necessary fields on the JOB or ROUTE cards before you submit the job.
Requirement: To use this method you must have TSO and access to the DB2 Utilities Panel in DB2 Interactive (DB2I).
 - Use the DSNU CLIST command in TSO.
This method involves little involvement with JCL. You can edit the generated JCL to alter or add necessary fields on the JOB or ROUTE cards before you submit the job.
Requirement: To use this method you must have TSO.
 - Use the supplied JCL procedure (DSNUPROC).
This method involves working with or creating your own JCL.
 - Use the EXEC statement to create the JCL data set yourself.
This method involves working with or creating your own JCL.
 - Use the DSNUTILS or DSNUTILT stored procedure.
This method involves invoking online utilities from a DB2 application program.

Related reference

“Deprecated: DSNUTILS stored procedure” on page 933

“DSNUTILU stored procedure” on page 945

Data sets that online utilities use

Every online utility job requires a SYSIN DD statement to describe an input data set; some utilities also require other data sets.

For input data sets

The online utilities use the logical record length (LRECL), the record format (RECFM) and the block size (BLKSIZE) with which the data set was created. Variable-spanned (VS) or variable-blocked-spanned (VBS) record

formats are not allowed for utility input data sets. The only exception is for the LOAD utility, which accepts unloaded data in VBS format.

For output data sets

The online utilities determine both the logical record length and the record format. Any specified values for LRECL or RECFM are ignored. If you supply block size, that size is used; otherwise, the utility lets the system determine the optimal block size for the storage device.

DB2 supports the large block interface (LBI) that allows block sizes that are greater than 32 KB on certain tape drives. LBI is supported in new function mode (NFM) only.

Partitioned data sets (PDS) are not allowed for output data sets. The TAPEBLKSZLIM parameter of the DEVSUPxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB controls the block size limit for tapes. See the z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Guide for more details.

For output data sets for FlashCopy® image copies

The online utilities determine the data set names based on the template provided. The output VSAM data sets are allocated during the processing of the DFSMSdss COPY command. The output data sets for FlashCopy image copies are always cataloged.

For both input and output data sets

The online utilities use the value that you supply for the number of buffers (BUFNO), with a maximum of 99 buffers. The default number of buffers is 20. The utilities set the number of channel programs equal to the number of buffers. The parameters that specify the buffer size (BUFSIZE) and the number of channel programs (NCP) are ignored. If you omit any DCB parameters, the utilities choose default values.

Increasing the number of buffers (BUFNO) can result in an increase in real storage utilization and page fixing below the 16-MB line.

Restriction: DB2 does not support the undefined record format (RECFM=U) for any data set.

Extended addressing support by DB2 utilities

DB2 utilities support the use of extended address volumes (EAV) for VSAM data sets and extended format (EF) sequential data sets.

Data set concatenation

DB2 utilities let you concatenate unlike input data sets. Therefore, the data sets in a concatenation list can have different block sizes, logical record lengths, and record formats. If you want to concatenate variable and fixed-blocked data sets, the logical record length must be 8 bytes smaller than the block size.

You cannot concatenate output data sets.

Controlling data set disposition

Most data sets need to exist only during utility execution (for example, during reorganization). However, you must retain several data sets in certain circumstances:

- Retain the image copy data sets until you no longer need them for recovery.

- Retain the unload data sets if you specify UNLOAD PAUSE, UNLOAD ONLY, UNLOAD EXTERNAL, or DISCARD for the REORG utility.
- Retain the SYSPUNCH data set if you specify UNLOAD EXTERNAL or DISCARD for the REORG utility until you no longer need the contents for subsequent loads.
- Retain the discard data set until you no longer need the contents for subsequent loads.

Because you might need to restart a utility, take the following precautions when defining the disposition of data sets:

- Use DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG) or DISP=(MOD,CATLG) for data sets that you want to retain.
- Use DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG) for data sets that you want to discard after utility execution.
- Use DISP=(NEW,DELETE) for the SORTWK nn data sets for your sort program, or refer to the documentation for your sort program for alternatives.
- Do not use temporary data set names.

Preventing unauthorized access to data sets

To prevent unauthorized access to data sets (for example, image copies), you can protect the data sets with the Resource Access Control Facility (RACF) licensed program. To use a utility with a data set that is protected by RACF, you must be authorized to access the data set.

Related concepts

 [Extended Address Volumes \(z/OS DFSMS Using Data Sets\)](#)

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Utility control statements

Utility control statements define the function that the utility job performs.

Create the utility control statements with the ISPF/PDF edit function and use the rules that are listed below.

After the utility control statements are created, save them in a sequential or partitioned data set.

Control statement coding rules

DB2 typically reads utility control statements from the SYSIN data set. DB2 can read LISTDEF control statements from the SYSLISTD data set and TEMPLATE control statements from the SYSTEMPL data set. The statements in these data sets must obey the following rules:

- If the records are 80-character fixed-length records, DB2 ignores columns 73 through 80.

- The records are concatenated before they are parsed; therefore, a statement or any of its syntactical constructs can span more than one record. No continuation character is necessary.
- All control statements in a given data set must be written entirely in a single character set. Two character sets are supported, EBCDIC (code page 500) or Unicode UTF-8 (code page 1208). DB2 automatically detects and processes Unicode UTF-8 control statements if the first character of the data set is:
 - A Unicode UTF-8 blank (x'20')
 - A Unicode UTF-8 dash (x'2D')
 - A Unicode UTF-8 upper case A through Z (x'41' through x'5A')

In all other cases, the control statement data set is processed as EBCDIC. An informational message is issued to identify the character set that is being processed.

- The utility statement must start with the syntax for a utility.
- Other syntactical constructs in the utility control statement describe options; you can separate these constructs with an arbitrary number of blanks.
- The SYSIN stream can contain multiple utility control statements.

The options that you can specify after the online utility name depend on which online utility you use. To specify a utility option, specify the option keyword, followed by its associated parameter or parameters, if any. The parameter value can be a keyword. You need to enclose the values of some parameters in parentheses. The syntax diagrams for utility control statements that are included in this information show parentheses where they are required.

You can specify more than one utility control statement in the SYSIN stream. However, if any of the control statements returns a return code of 8 or greater, the subsequent statements in the job step are not executed.

| When specifying in a utility control statement multiple numeric values that are
 | meant to be delimited, you must delimit these values with a comma (","),
 | regardless of the definition of DECIMAL in the application defaults load module
 | (either DSNHDECP or a user-specified application defaults load module).
 | Likewise, when specifying a decimal number in a utility control statement, you
 | must use a period ("."), regardless of the definition of DECIMAL in the application
 | defaults load module.

You can enter comments within the SYSIN stream. Comments must begin with two hyphens (--) and are subject to the following rules:

- You must use two hyphens on the same line with no space between them.
- You can start comments wherever a space is valid, except within a delimiter token.
- The end of a line terminates a comment.

Two comments are shown in the following statement:

```
// SYSIN DD *
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE  -- COMMENT HERE
-- COMMENT HERE
/*
```

Tips for using multi-byte character sets

Multi-byte character sets can be difficult to work with in fixed 80-byte SYSIN data sets. Long object names and long character literals might not fit on a single line.

Where possible, avoid having to break object names or character literals:

- Use a SYSIN with variable length records or sufficiently large record length.
- Use shorter object names. The longer the name, the more likely there will be continuation issues.
- If possible, process the object by space name (tablespace or indexspace) and avoid using long multi-byte table and index names in utility syntax.

If necessary, use a continuation technique:

- Shift the starting point of the string left or right within the input record such that a complete multi-byte character ends in column 72. Continue with the next character in column 1 of the next input record.
- Separate qualified object names into two parts following the dot "." which separates the qualifiers. Separating long names into multiple parts makes it easier to follow the continuation rules. This technique can not be used in the EXEC SQL utility, which must follow both utility and SQL syntax rules.
- Use the || concatenation operator to divide long identifiers into two or more parts that fit properly into each SYSIN record. Place the || concatenation operator between two delimited character strings or between two non-delimited character strings. Delimited character strings are enclosed in double quotation marks. The || concatenation operator must be preceded and followed by at least one blank space. An example of the || concatenation operator is shown in the following statement:

```
LOAD INTO TABLE  
CREA ||  
TOR.  
"TABL" ||  
"ENAME"
```

In this example, the strings CREA and TOR are non-delimited, and the strings TABL and ENAME are delimited by double quotation marks. The processed output of this example is equivalent to the following statement:

```
LOAD INTO TABLE CREATOR."TABLENAME"
```

The utility || operator is ignored in an EXEC SQL control statement by utility processing since the operator has an existing SQL meaning. The operators remain part of the SQL statement for subsequent processing by SQL.

Using the concatenation operator

Utility control statements support the || concatenation operator. The operator is allowed between two non-delimited character strings or two quoted character strings. The result is a character string consisting of the string following the operator concatenated after the string preceding the operator. The operation is shown in the following statement:

```
string1 || string2
```

Both *string1* and *string2* must be syntactically correct within each SYSIN input record. Quotes must be balanced within each string. If DBCS characters are used, shift-out and shift-in characters must be balanced within each string. Any one multi-byte character must be contained entirely within a single SYSIN record.

The || operator must be entered as a stand-alone token, with one or more blanks preceding and following it. It may be entered on the same input record as "string1", alone or on an input record, or on the same input record with "string2". This operator functions at the token level before any context is detected or semantic meaning is applied. An example utility statement is shown in the following statement:

```
COPY INDEX
      "A" ||
      "B"
results in:
      COPY INDEX  "AB"
```

The utility || operator is ignored in an EXEC SQL control statement by utility processing since the operator has an existing SQL meaning. The operators remain part of the SQL statement for subsequent processing by SQL.

Descriptions of utility options

Where the syntax of each utility control statement is described, parameters are indented under the option keyword that they must follow. The following option is a typical example:

WORKDDN *ddname*

Specifies a temporary work file.

ddname is the data set name of the temporary file.

The default value is SYSUT1.

In the example, WORKDDN is an option keyword, and *ddname* is a variable parameter. As noted previously, you can enclose parameter values in parentheses, but parentheses are not always required. You can specify the temporary work file as either WORKDDN SYSUT1 or WORKDDN (SYSUT1).

Required authorizations for invoking online utilities on tables that have multilevel security with row-level granularity

If you use RACF access control with multilevel security, you need additional authorizations to run certain utility jobs. Each utility has its own authorization requirements.

All other utilities ignore the row-level granularity. They check only for authorization to operate on the table space; they do not check row-level authorization. On tables that have multilevel security with row-level granularity, additional authorizations are needed to run the following utility jobs:

- LOAD
- UNLOAD
- REORG TABLESPACE

Related concepts

 [Multilevel security \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Invoking DB2 online utilities in a trusted connection

The DB2 online utilities can run in a trusted connection if a matching trusted context is defined where the primary authorization ID matches the trusted context SYSTEM AUTHID and the job name matches the JOBNAME attribute defined for the identified trusted context. The primary authorization ID can acquire special set of privileges in a trusted context, by roles.

Using the DB2 Utilities panel in DB2I

If you do not have much JCL knowledge, using the DB2 Utilities panel is probably the best way to execute the DB2 online utilities.

Restriction: You cannot use the DB2 Utilities panel in DB2I to submit a BACKUP SYSTEM job, a COPYTOCOPY job, a RESTORE SYSTEM job, or a COPY job for a list of objects.

If your site does not have default JOB and ROUTE statements, you must edit the JCL to define them. If you edit the utility job before submitting it, you must use the ISPF editor and submit your job directly from the editor.

To use the DB2 Utilities panel in DB2I:

1. Create the utility control statement for the online utility that you intend to execute, and save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. For example, the following utility control statement specifies that the COPY utility is to make an incremental image copy of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D with a SHRLEVEL value of CHANGE:

```
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
FULL NO
SHRLEVEL CHANGE
```

For the rest of this example, suppose that you save the statement in the default data set, UTIL.

2. From the ISPF Primary Option menu, select the **DB2I** menu.
3. On the DB2I Utilities panel, select the **UTILITIES** option. Items that you must specify are highlighted on the DB2 Utilities panel, as shown in the following figure.

```

DSNEUP01                                DB2 UTILITIES
====>

Select from the following:

1 FUNCTION ==> EDITJCL (SUBMIT job, EDITJCL, DISPLAY, TERMINATE)
2 JOB ID   ==> TEMP   (A unique job identifier string)
3 UTILITY  ==> COPY  (CHECK DATA, CHECK INDEX, CHECK LOB,
                     COPY, DIAGNOSE, LOAD, MERGE, MODIFY,
                     QUIESCE, REBUILD, RECOVER, REORG INDEX,
                     REORG LOB, REORG TABLESPACE, REPORT,
                     REPAIR, RUNSTATS, STOSPACE, UNLOAD.)

4 STATEMENT DATA SET ==> UTIL

Specify restart or preview option, otherwise specify NO.

5 RESTART ==> NO      (NO, CURRENT, PHASE or PREVIEW)
6 LISTDEF? (YES|NO) ==>      TEMPLATE? (YES|NO) ==>
7 LIB ==>              (BLANK or DB2 LIB NAME)

* The data set names panel will be displayed when required by a utility.

PRESS: ENTER to process   END to exit   HELP for more information

```

Figure 1. DB2 Utilities panel

4. Fill in field 1 with the function that you want to execute. In this example, you want to submit the utility job, but you want to edit the JCL first, so specify EDITJCL. After you edit the JCL, you do not need to return to this panel to submit the job. Instead, type SUBMIT on the editor command line.
5. Ensure that Field 2 is a unique identifier for your utility job. The default value is TEMP. In this example, that value is satisfactory; leave it as is.
6. Fill in field 3 with the utility that you want to run. In this example, specify COPY.
7. Fill in field 4 if you want to use an input data set other than the default data set. Unless you enclose the data set name between apostrophes, TSO adds your user identifier as a prefix. In this example, specify UTIL, which is the default data set.
8. Change field 5 if this job restarts a stopped utility or if you want to execute a utility in PREVIEW mode. In this example, leave the default value, NO.
9. Specify in field 6 whether you are using LISTDEF statements or TEMPLATE statements in this utility. If you specify YES for LISTDEF or TEMPLATE, DB2 displays the Control Statement Data Set Names panel, but the field entries are optional.
10. Fill in field 7 with the data set name of the DB2 subsystem library when you want the generated JCL to use the default DB2 subsystem library.
11. Press **Enter**.
 - If you specified COPY, LOAD, MERGECOPY, REORG TABLESPACE, or UNLOAD as the utility in field 3, you must complete the fields on the Data Set Names panel, as shown in the following figure.

```

DSNEUP02                                DATA SET NAMES
====>

Enter data set name for LOAD or REORG TABLESPACE:
1 RECDSN ==>

Enter data set name for
LOAD, REORG TABLESPACE or UNLOAD:
2 DISCDSN ==>

Enter output data sets for local/current site for COPY, MERGECOPY,
LOAD, or REORG:
3 COPYDSN ==> ABC
4 COPYDSN2 ==>

Enter output data sets for recovery site for COPY, LOAD, or REORG:
5 RCPYDSN1 ==> ABC1
6 RCPYDSN2 ==>

Enter output data sets for REORG or UNLOAD:
7 PUNCHDSN ==>

PRESS: ENTER to process      END to exit      HELP for more information

```

Figure 2. Data Set Names panel

- a. Fill in field 1 if you are running LOAD, REORG, or UNLOAD. For LOAD, you must specify the data set name that contains the records that are to be loaded. For REORG or UNLOAD, you must specify the unload data set. In this example, you do not need to fill in field 1, because you are running COPY.
- b. Fill in field 2 if you are running LOAD or REORG with discard processing, in which case you must specify a discard data set. In this example, you do not need to fill in field 2, because you are running COPY.
- c. Fill in field 3 with the primary output data set name for the local site if you are running COPY, LOAD, or REORG, or with the current site if you are running MERGECOPY. The DD name that the panel generates for this field is SYSCOPY. This is an optional field for LOAD and for REORG with SHRLEVEL NONE; this field is required for COPY, for MERGECOPY, and for REORG with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE. In this example, the primary output data set name for the local site is ABC.
- d. Fill in field 4 with the backup output data set name for the local site if you are running COPY, LOAD, or REORG, or the current site if you are running MERGECOPY. The DD name that the panel generates for this field is SYSCOPY2. This is an optional field. In this example, you do not need to fill in field 4.
- e. Fill in field 5 with the primary output data set for the recovery site if you are running COPY, LOAD, or REORG. The DD name that the panel generates for this field is SYSRCOPY1. This is an optional field. In this example, the primary output data set name for the recovery site is ABC1.
- f. Fill in field 6 with the backup output data set for the recovery site if you are running COPY, LOAD, or REORG. The DD name that the panel generates for this field is SYSRCOPY2. This field is optional. In this example, you do not need to fill in field 6.
- g. Fill in field 7 with the output data set for the generated LOAD utility control statements if you are running REORG UNLOAD EXTERNAL,

REORG DISCARD, or UNLOAD. The DD name that the panel generates for this field is SYSPUNCH. In this example, you do not need to fill in field 7.

h. Press **Enter**.

- If you specified LISTDEF YES or TEMPLATE YES in field 6, you must complete the fields on the Control Set Data Set Names panel, as shown in the following figure.

```
DSNEUP03          CONTROL STATEMENT DATA SET NAMES          SSID:
====>

Enter the data set name for the LISTDEF data set (SYSLISTD DD):
 1 LISTDEF DSN ==>
   OPTIONAL or IGNORED

Enter the data set name for the TEMPLATE data set (SYSTEMPL DD):
 2 TEMPLATE DSN ==>
   OPTIONAL or IGNORED

PRESS:  ENTER to process    END to exit    HELP for more information
```

Figure 3. Control Statement Data Set Names panel

- a. Fill in field 1 to specify the data set that contains a LISTDEF control statement. The default is the SYSIN data set. This field is ignored if you specified NO in the LISTDEF? field in the DB2 Utilities panel.
- b. Fill in field 2 to specify the data set that contains a TEMPLATE. The default is the SYSIN data set. This field is ignored if you specified NO in the TEMPLATE? field in the DB2 Utilities panel.

Related reference

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Invoking a DB2 utility by using the DSNU CLIST command in TSO

You can initiate a DB2® online utility by invoking the DSNU CLIST command under TSO, without being concerned about details of the JCL data set. The CLIST command generates the JCL data set that is required to execute the DSNUPROC procedure and to execute online utilities as batch jobs.

Restriction: You cannot use the DSNU CLIST command to submit a COPY job for a list of objects.

The CLIST command creates a job that performs only one utility operation. However, you can invoke the CLIST command for each utility operation that you need, and then edit and merge the outputs into one job or step.

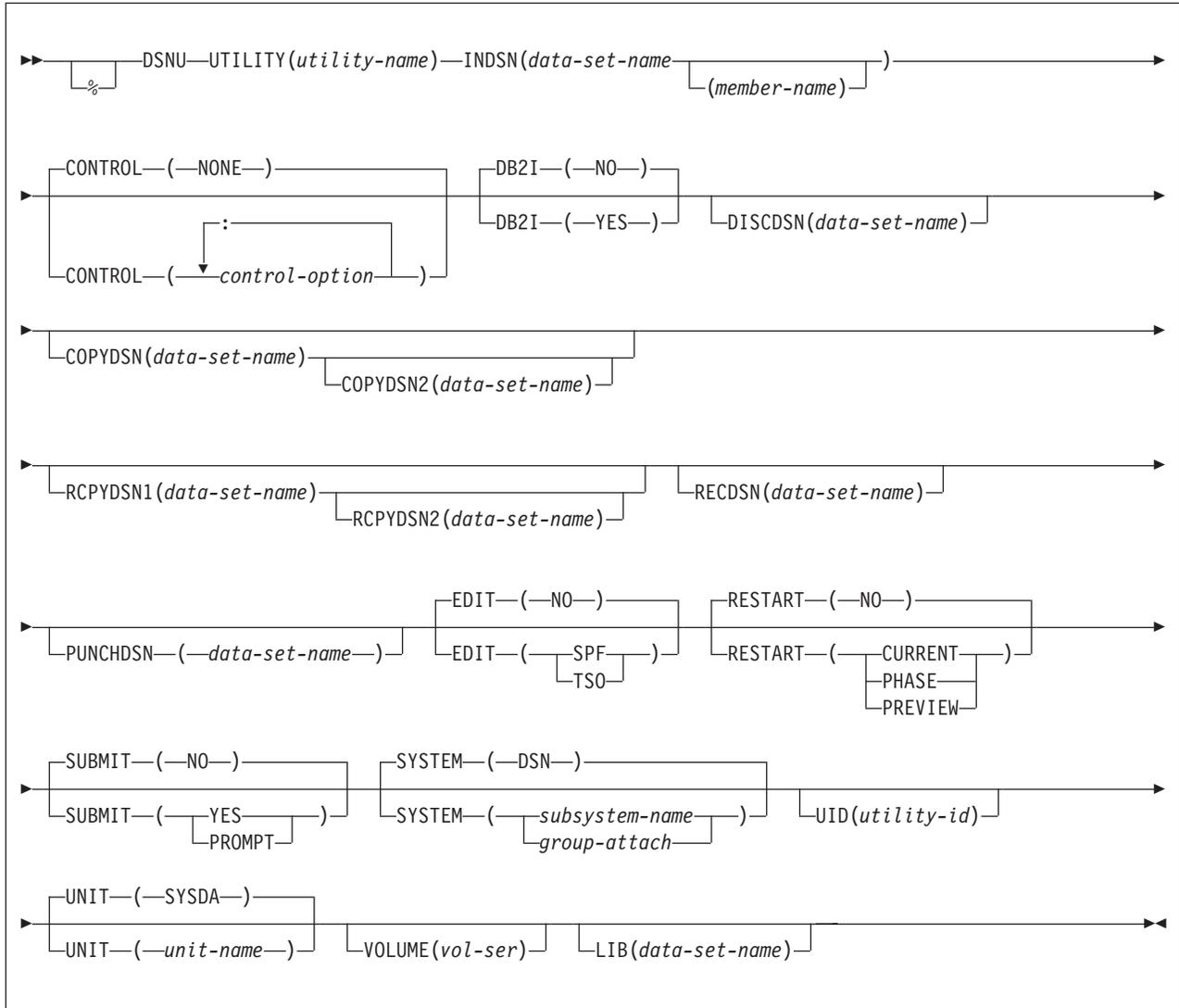
To use the DSNU CLIST command:

1. Create a file containing the required utility control statements. DB2 uses the file to create the SYSIN data set in the generated job stream. Do not include double-byte character set (DBCS) data in this file.
2. Ensure that the DB2 CLIST library is allocated to the DD name SYSPROC.
3. Execute the command procedure by using the DSNU CLIST command syntax.
4. Optional: Edit the generated JCL data set to alter or add DD statements as needed.

DSNU CLIST command

You can execute the DSNU CLIST command from the TSO command processor or from the DB2I Utilities panel.

Syntax



DSNU CLIST option descriptions

The parentheses that are shown in the following descriptions are required. If you make syntax errors or omit parameter values, TSO prompts you for the correct parameter spelling and omitted values.

% Identifies DSNU as a member of a command procedure library. Specifying this parameter is optional; however, it does improve performance.

UTILITY (utility-name)

Specifies the utility that you want to execute.

DB2 places the JCL in a data set that is named DSNUxxx.CNTL, where DSNUxxx is a control file name. The control file contains the statements that are necessary to invoke the DSNUPROC procedure which, in turn, executes the

utility. If you execute another job with the same utility name, the first job is deleted. See the table below for a list of the online utilities and the control file name that is associated with each utility.

INDSN(*data-set-name(member-name)*)

Specifies the data set that contains the utility statements and control statements. Do not specify a data set that contains double-byte character set data.

(*data-set-name*)

Specifies the name of the data set. If you do not specify a data set name, the default command procedure prompts you for the data set name.

(*member-name*)

Specifies the member name. You must specify the member name if the data set is partitioned.

CONTROL(*control-option: ...*)

Specifies whether to trace the CLIST command execution.

NONE

Omits tracing.

control-option

Lists one or more of the following options. Separate items in the list by colons (:). To abbreviate, specify only the first letter of the option.

LIST Displays TSO commands after symbolic substitution and before command execution.

CONLIST

Displays CLIST commands after symbolic substitution and before command execution.

SYMLIST

Displays all executable statements (TSO commands and CLIST statements) before the scan for symbolic substitution.

NONE

Generates a CONTROL statement with the options NOLIST, NOCONLIST, and NOSYMLIST.

DB2I

Indicates the environment from which the DSNU CLIST command is called.

(NO)

Indicates that DSNU CLIST command is not being called from the DB2I environment.

(YES)

Indicates that DSNU CLIST command is called from the DB2I environment. Only the utility panels should execute the CLIST command with DB2I(YES).

DISCDSN (*data-set-name*)

The name of the cataloged data set that LOAD and REORG use for a discard data set. For LOAD, this data set holds records that are not loaded; for REORG, it holds records that are not reloaded.

COPYDSN(*data-set-name*)

The name of the cataloged data set that DB2 utilities use as a target (output) data set. If you do not supply this information, the CLIST command prompts you for it. This keyword is optional for LOAD and for REORG with

SHRLEVEL NONE; it is required for COPY, for MERGECOPY, and for REORG with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE.

COPYDSN2 (*data-set-name*)

The name of the cataloged data set that DB2 utilities use as a target (output) data set for the backup copy. This keyword is optional for COPY, MERGECOPY, LOAD, and REORG.

RCPYDSN1 (*data-set-name*)

The name of the cataloged data set that DB2 utilities use as a target (output) data set for the remote-site primary copy. This keyword is optional for COPY, LOAD, and REORG.

RCPYDSN2 (*data-set-name*)

The name of the cataloged data set that DB2 utilities use as a target (output) data set for the remote-site backup copy. This keyword is optional for COPY, LOAD, and REORG.

RECDSN (*data-set-name*)

The name of the cataloged data set that LOAD uses for input or that REORG TABLESPACE or UNLOAD use as the unload data set. If you do not supply this information, the CLIST command prompts you for it. This keyword is required for LOAD and REORG TABLESPACE only.

PUNCHDSN (*data-set-name*)

The name of the cataloged data set that REORG or UNLOAD use to hold the generated LOAD utility control statements for UNLOAD EXTERNAL or DISCARD.

EDIT

Specifies whether to invoke an editor to edit the temporary file that the CLIST command generates.

(NO)

Does not invoke an editor.

(SPF)

Invokes the ISPF editor.

(TSO)

Invokes the TSO editor.

RESTART

Specifies whether this job restarts a current utility job, and, if so, at what point it is to be restarted.

(NO)

Indicates that the utility is a new job, not a restarted job. The utility identifier (UID) must be unique for each utility job step.

(CURRENT)

Restarts the utility at the most recent commit point.

(PHASE)

Restarts the utility at the beginning of the current stopped phase. You can determine the current stopped phase by issuing the DISPLAY UTILITY command.

(PREVIEW)

Restarts the utility in PREVIEW mode. While in PREVIEW mode, the utility checks for syntax errors in all utility control statements, but normal utility execution does not take place.

SUBMIT

Specifies whether to submit the generated JCL for processing.

(NO)

Does not submit the JCL data set for processing.

(YES)

Submits the JCL data set for background processing, using the TSO SUBMIT command.

(PROMPT)

Prompts you, after the data set is processed, to specify whether to submit the JCL data set for batch processing. You cannot use PROMPT when the CLIST command is executed in the TSO batch environment.

SYSTEM (*subsystem-name*)

Specifies the DB2 subsystem or group attachment name or subgroup attachment name. The default value is **DSN**.

UID (*utility-id*)

Provides a unique identifier for this utility job within DB2. Do not reuse the utility ID of a stopped utility that has not yet been terminated, unless you want to restart that utility. If you do use the same utility ID to invoke a different utility, DB2 tries to restart the original stopped utility with the information that is stored in the SYSUTIL directory table.

The default value is *tso-userid.control-file-name*, where *control-file-name* for each of the utilities is listed in the following table.

Table 1. Control-file name for each utility

Utility	<i>control-file-name</i>
CHECK INDEX	DSNUCHI
CHECK DATA	DSNUCHD
CHECK LOB	DSNUCHL
COPY	DSNUCOP
DIAGNOSE	DSNUDIA
LOAD	DSNULOA
MERGECOPY	DSNUMER
MODIFY	DSNUMOD
QUIESCE	DSNUQUI
REBUILD INDEX	DSNUREB
RECOVER	DSNUREC
REORG INDEX	DSNURGI
REORG LOB	DSNURGL
REORG TABLESPACE	DSNURGT
REPAIR	DSNUREP
REPORT	DSNURPT
RUNSTATS	DSNURUN
STOSPACE	DSNUSTO
UNLOAD	DSNUUNL

UNIT (*unit-name*)

Assigns a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which a new temporary or permanent data set resides. When the CLIST command generates the JCL, it places *unit-name* after the UNIT clause of the generated DD statement.

The default value is SYSDA.

VOLUME (*vol-ser*)

Assigns the serial number of the volume on which a new temporary or permanent data set resides. When the CLIST command generates the JCL, it places *vol-ser* after the VOL=SER clause of the generated DD statement. If you omit VOLUME, the VOL=SER clause is omitted from the generated DD statement.

LIB (*data-set-name*)

Specifies the data set name of the DB2 subsystem library. The value that you specify is used as the LIB parameter value when the DSNUPROC JCL procedure is invoked.

DSNU CLIST command output

DSNU builds a one-step job stream. The JCL data set consists of a JOB statement, an EXEC statement that executes the DB2 utility processor, and the required DD statements. This JOB statement also includes the SYSIN DD * job stream, as shown in the following figure. You can edit any of these statements.

```
//DSNUCOP JOB your-job-statement-parameters
//          USER=userid,PASSWORD=password
//*ROUTE PRINT routing-information
//UTIL     EXEC  DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=DSN,UID=TEMP,UTPROC='
//SYSCOPY  DD   DSN=MYCOPIES.DSN8D10A.JAN1,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1))
//SYSIN    DD   *
           COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
           FULL NO
           SHRLEVEL CHANGE

/*
```

Figure 4. Control file *DSNUCOP.CNTL*. This is an example of the JCL data set before editing.

The following list describes the required JCL data set statements:

Statement**Description**

- JOB** The CLIST command uses any JOB statements that you saved when using DB2I. If no JOB statements exist, DB2 produces a skeleton JOB statement that you can modify. The job name is DSNU, followed by the first three letters of the name of the utility that you are using.
- EXEC** The CLIST command builds the EXEC statement. The values that you specified for SYSTEM (DSN, by default), UID(TEMP), and RESTART (none) become the values of SYSTEM, UID, and UTPROC for the DSNUPROC.

The CLIST command builds the necessary JCL DD statements. Those statements vary depending on the utility that you execute. The following DD statements are generated by the CLIST command:

SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A

Defines OUTPUT, SYSPRINT as SYSOUT=A. Utility messages are sent to the

SYSPRINT data set. You can use the TSO ALLOCATE command to control the disposition of the SYSPRINT data set. For example, you can send the data set to your terminal.

UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=A

Defines UTPRINT as SYSOUT=A. If any utility requires a sort, it executes the sort program. Messages from that program are sent to UTPRINT.

SYSIN DD *

Defines SYSIN. To build the SYSIN DD * job stream, DSNU copies the data set that is named by the INDSN parameter. The INDSN data set does not change, and you can reuse it when the DSNU procedure has finished running.

Editing the generated JCL data set

You can edit the data set before you process it by using the EDIT parameter on the command procedure. Use the editor to add a JCL statement to the job stream, to change JCL parameters (such as *ddnames*), or to change utility control statements.

If you use a *ddname* that is not the default on a utility statement that you use, you must change the *ddname* in the JCL that is generated by the DSNU procedure. For example, in the REORG TABLESPACE utility, the default option for UNLDDN is SYSREC, and DSNU builds a SYSREC DD statement for REORG TABLESPACE. If you use a different value for UNLDDN, you must edit the JCL data set and change SYSREC to the *ddname* that you used.

When you finish editing the data set, you can either save changes to the data set (by issuing SAVE), or instruct the editor to ignore all changes.

The SUBMIT parameter specifies whether to submit the data set statement as a background job. The temporary data set that holds the JCL statement is reused. If you want to submit more than one job that executes the same utility, you must rename the JCL data sets and submit them separately.

Example 1: Generating a data set

The following CLIST command statement generates a data set that is called *authorization-id.DSNURGT.CNTL* and that contains JCL statements that invoke the DSNUPROC procedure.

```
%DSNU UTILITY(REORG TABLESPACE) INDSN(MYREOR.DATA)
  RECDN(MYREOR.WORK) RESTART(NO)
  EDIT(TSO) SUBMIT(YES)
```

The DSNUPROC procedure invokes the REORG TABLESPACE utility. The MYREOR.DATA data set is merged into the JCL data set as SYSIN input. MYREOR.WORK is a temporary data set that is required by REORG TABLESPACE. The TSO editor is invoked to allow editing of the JCL data set, *authorization-id.DSNURGT.CNTL*. The TSO editor then submits the JCL data set as a batch job. This JCL data set is not modified by this CLIST command statement until a new request is made to execute the REORG TABLESPACE utility.

Example 2: Invoking the CLIST command for the COPY utility

The following example shows how to invoke the CLIST command for the COPY utility.

```

%DSNU
UTILITY (COPY)
INDSN ('MYCOPY(STATEMNT)')
COPYDSN ('MYCOPIES.DSN8D10A.JAN1')
EDIT (TSO)
SUBMIT (YES)
UID (TEMP)
RESTART (NO)

```

Related reference

- [DB2 Sort](#)
- [ALLOCATE command \(TSO/E Command Reference\)](#)

Related information

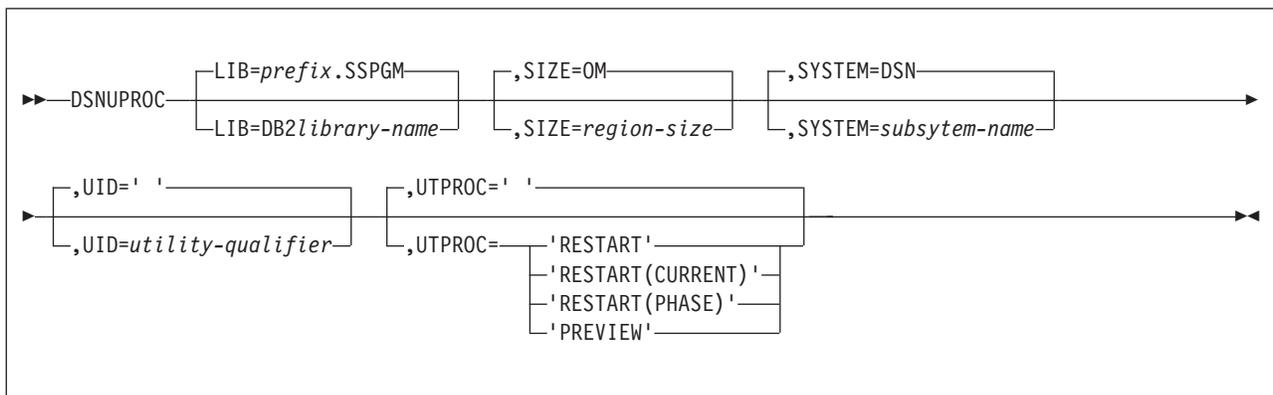
- [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Invoking a DB2 utility by using the supplied JCL procedure (DSNUPROC)

Another method of invoking a DB2 online utility uses the supplied JCL procedure, DSNUPROC, which is shown in the figure below. This procedure uses the parameters that you supply to build an appropriate EXEC statement that executes an online utility.

To execute the DSNUPROC procedure, write and submit a JCL data set like the one that the DSNU CLIST command builds (An example is shown in Figure 4 on page 25.) In your JCL, the EXEC statement executes the DSNUPROC procedure.

DSNUPROC syntax



DSNUPROC option descriptions

The following list describes all the parameters. For example, in Figure 4 on page 25, you need to use only one parameter, UID=TEMP; for all others, you can use the default values.

LIB=

Specifies the data set name of the DB2 subsystem library.

The default value is *prefix.SSPGM*.

SIZE=

Specifies the region size of the utility execution area; that is, the value represents the number of bytes of virtual storage that are allocated to this utility job.

The default value is 0M.

SYSTEM=

Specifies the DB2 subsystem or group attachment name or subgroup attachment name.

The default value is DSN.

UID=

Specifies the unique identifier for your utility job. The maximum name length is 16 characters. If the name contains special characters, enclose the entire name between apostrophes (for example, 'PETERS.JOB'). Do not reuse the utility ID of a stopped utility that has not yet been terminated. If you do use the same utility ID to invoke a different utility, DB2 tries to restart the original stopped utility with the information that is stored in the SYSUTIL directory table.

The default is an empty string.

UTPROC=

Controls restart processing. The default is an empty string. Use the default if you want to allow DB2 to perform default restart processing as documented in "Restart of an online utility" on page 36.

To override the default restart behavior, specify:

'RESTART'

To restart at the most recent commit point. This option has the same meaning as 'RESTART(CURRENT).'

'RESTART(CURRENT)'

To restart at the most recent commit point. This option has the same meaning as 'RESTART.'

'RESTART(PHASE)'

To restart at the beginning of the phase that executed most recently.

'PREVIEW'

To restart in preview mode. While in PREVIEW mode, the utility checks for syntax errors in all utility control statements, but normal utility execution does not take place.

The DSNUPROC procedure provides the SYSPRINT and UTPRINT DD statements for printed output. You must provide DD statements for SYSIN and other data sets that your job needs. See "Data sets that online utilities use" on page 11 for a description of data sets that you might need.

Sample DSNUPROC listing

The following figure is the DSNUPROC procedure that was executed by the JCL example in Figure 4 on page 25.

```
//DSNUPROC PROC LIB='DSN!!0.SDSNLOAD',
//          SYSTEM=DSN,
//          SIZE=0K,UID='',UTPROC=''
//*****
//* PROCEDURE-NAME:      DSNUPROC          *
//*                                                                *
```

```

/** DESCRIPTIVE-NAME:    UTILITY PROCEDURE          *
/**                                                              *
/** FUNCTION:    THIS PROCEDURE INVOKES THE ADMF UTILITIES IN THE *
/**              BATCH ENVIRONMENT                    *
/**                                                              *
/** PROCEDURE-OWNER:    UTILITY COMPONENT           *
/**                                                              *
/** COMPONENT-INVOKED:    ADMF UTILITIES (ENTRY POINT DSNUTILB). *
/**                                                              *
/** ENVIRONMENT:        BATCH                       *
/**                                                              *
/** INPUT:
/**   PARAMETERS:
/**       LIB    = THE DATA SET NAME OF THE DB2  PROGRAM LIBRARY. *
/**              THE DEFAULT LIBRARY NAME IS PREFIX.SDSNLOAD,    *
/**              WITH PREFIX SET DURING INSTALLATION.            *
/**       SIZE   = THE REGION SIZE OF THE UTILITIES EXECUTION AREA.*
/**              THE DEFAULT REGION SIZE IS 2048K.                *
/**       SYSTEM = THE SUBSYSTEM NAME USED TO IDENTIFY THIS JOB  *
/**              TO DB2.  THE DEFAULT IS "DSN".                  *
/**       UID    = THE IDENTIFIER WHICH WILL DEFINE THIS UTILITY *
/**              JOB TO DB2.  IF THE PARAMETER IS DEFAULTED OR   *
/**              SET TO A NULL STRING, THE UTILITY FUNCTION WILL *
/**              USE ITS DEFAULT, USERID.JOBNAME.  EACH UTILITY *
/**              WHICH HAS STARTED AND IS NOT YET TERMINATED    *
/**              (MAY NOT BE RUNNING) MUST HAVE A UNIQUE UID.   *
/**       UTPROC = AN OPTIONAL INDICATOR USED TO DETERMINE WHETHER *
/**              THE USER WISHES TO INITIALLY START THE REQUESTED*
/**              UTILITY OR TO RESTART A PREVIOUS EXECUTION OF  *
/**              THE UTILITY.  IF OMITTED, THE UTILITY WILL     *
/**              BE INITIALLY STARTED.  OTHERWISE, THE UTILITY  *
/**              WILL BE RESTARTED BY ENTERING THE FOLLOWING    *
/**              VALUES:
/**                   RESTART(PHASE) = RESTART THE UTILITY AT THE *
/**                   BEGINNING OF THE PHASE EXECUTED            *
/**                   LAST.                                       *
/**                   RESTART = RESTART THE UTILITY AT THE LAST  *
/**                   OR CURRENT COMMIT POINT.                   *
/**                                                              *
/** OUTPUT: NONE.
/**
/** EXTERNAL-REFERENCES: NONE.
/**
/** CHANGE-ACTIVITY:
/**
/*******
/**DSNUPROC EXEC PGM=DSNUTILB,REGION=&SIZE,
/**          PARM='&SYSTEM,&UID,&UTPROC'
/**STEPLIB DD  DSN=&LIB,DISP=SHR
/*******
/**
/** THE FOLLOWING DEFINE THE UTILITIES' PRINT DATA SETS
/**
/*******
/**
/**SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
/**UTPRINT  DD  SYSOUT=*
/**SYSUDUMP DD  SYSOUT=*
/**DSNUPROC PEND          REMOVE * FOR USE AS INSTREAM PROCEDURE

```

Figure 5. Sample listing of supplied JCL procedure DSNUPROC

Invoking a DB2 utility by creating the JCL data set yourself

DB2 online utilities execute as standard z/OS jobs.

To execute the utility, you must supply the JOB statement that is required by your installation and the JOBLIB or STEPLIB DD statements that are required to access DB2. You must also include an EXEC statement and a set of DD statements. The EXEC statement and the DD statements that you might need are described in “Data sets that online utilities use” on page 11.

Recommendation: Use DSNUPROC to invoke a DB2 online utility, rather than creating the JCL yourself.

The EXEC statement can be a procedure that contains the required JCL, or it can be of the following form:

```
//stepname EXEC PGM=DSNUTILB,PARM='system,[uid],[utproc]'
```

The brackets, [], indicate optional parameters. The parameters have the following meanings:

DSNUTILB

Specifies the utility control program. The program must reside in an APF-authorized library.

system

Specifies the DB2 subsystem.

uid

The unique identifier for your utility job. Do not reuse the utility ID of a stopped utility that has not yet been terminated. If you do use the same utility ID to invoke a different utility, DB2 tries to restart the original stopped utility with the information that is stored in the SYSUTIL directory table.

utproc

The value of the UTPROC parameter in the DSNUPROC procedure. Specify this option only when you want to restart the utility job. Specify:

'RESTART'

To restart at the most recent commit point. This option has the same meaning as 'RESTART(CURRENT).'

'RESTART(CURRENT)'

To restart the utility at the most recent commit point. This option has the same meaning as 'RESTART.'

'RESTART(PHASE)'

To restart at the beginning of the phase that executed most recently.

'RESTART(PREVIEW)'

To restart the utility in preview mode. While in PREVIEW mode, the utility checks for syntax errors in all utility control statements, but normal utility execution does not take place.

For the example in Figure 5 on page 29 you can use the following EXEC statement:

```
//stepname  
EXEC PGM=DSNUTILB,PARM='DSN,TEMP'
```

Chapter 4. Monitoring and controlling online utilities

You can monitor utilities, run utilities concurrently, terminate utilities, and restart utilities.

Monitoring utilities with the DISPLAY UTILITY command

Use the DB2 DISPLAY UTILITY command to check the current status of online utilities.

GUPI The following figure shows an example of the output that the DISPLAY UTILITY command generates. In the example output, DB2 returns a message that indicates the member name (**A**), utility identifier (**B**), utility name (**C**), utility phase (**D**), the number of pages or records that are processed by the utility (In a data sharing environment, the number of records is current when the command is issued from the same member on which the utility is executing. When the command is issued from a different member, the count might lag substantially. For some utilities in some build phases, the count number is not updated when the command is issued from a different member.) (**E**), the number of objects in the list (**F**), the last object that started (**G**), and the utility status (**H**). The output might also report additional information about an executing utility, such as log phase estimates or utility subtask activity.

```
DSNU100I - DSNUGDIS - USERID = SAMPID
      A MEMBER = DB1G
      B UTILID = RUNTS
        PROCESSING UTILITY STATEMENT 1
      C UTILITY = RUNSTATS
      D PHASE = RUNSTATS   E COUNT = 0
      F     NUMBER OF OBJECTS IN LIST = n
      G     LAST OBJECT STARTED = m
      H STATUS = STOPPED
DSN9022I - DSNUGCC '-DISPLAY UTILITY' NORMAL COMPLETION
```

Figure 6. DISPLAY UTILITY command sample output

Determining the status of a utility

To determine the status of an online utility, look at the status part (**H**) of the DISPLAY UTILITY output. An online utility can have one of these statuses:

Status Description

Active The utility has started execution.

Stopped

The utility has abnormally stopped executing before completion, but the table spaces and indexes that were accessed by the utility remain under utility control. To make the data available again, you must take one of the following actions:

- Correct the condition that stopped the utility, and restart the utility so that it runs to termination.
- Terminate the utility with the DB2 TERM UTILITY command.

Terminated

The utility has been requested to terminate by the DB2 TERM UTILITY command. If the utility has terminated, no message is issued.

Determining which utility phase is currently executing

DB2 online utility execution is divided into phases. Each utility starts with the UTILINIT phase, which performs initialization and set up. Each utility finishes with a UTILTERM phase, which cleans up after processing has completed. The other phases of online utility execution differ, depending on the utility. See the “Execution Phases” information in the descriptions of each utility. To determine which utility phase is currently executing, look at the output from the DISPLAY UTILITY command. The example output in the figure above shows the current phase (**D**).

Determining why a utility failed to complete

If an online utility job completes normally, it issues return code 0. If it completes with warning messages, it issues return code 4. Return code 8 means that the job failed to complete. Return code 12 means that an authorization error occurred.

To determine why a utility failed to complete, consider the following problems that can cause a failure during execution of the utility:

- **Problem:** DB2 terminates the utility job step and any subsequent utility steps.
Solution: Submit a new utility job to execute the terminated steps. Use the same utility identifier for the new job to ensure that no duplicate utility job is running.
- **Problem:** DB2 does not execute the particular utility function, but prior utility functions are executed.
Solution: Submit a new utility step to execute the function.
- **Problem:** DB2 places the utility function in the stopped state.
Solution: Restart the utility job step at either the last commit point or the beginning of the phase by using the same utility identifier. Alternatively, use a TERM UTILITY (uid) command to terminate the job step and resubmit it.
- **Problem:** DB2 terminates the utility and issues return code 8.
Solution: One or more objects might be in a restrictive or advisory status. Alternatively, a DEADLINE condition in online REORG might have terminated the reorganization.



Related concepts

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

Related tasks

“Using the DBD statement” on page 610

Related reference

Chapter 24, “REORG INDEX,” on page 459

Running utilities concurrently

Some online utilities allow other utilities and SQL statements to run concurrently on the same target object.

To determine if utilities can be run concurrently, look in the compatibility and concurrency topic for each online utility. Each concurrency and compatibility topic includes the following information:

- For each target object on which the utility acts, the topic outlines the claim classes that the utility must claim or drain. The topic also outlines the restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.
- For other online utilities, the topic summarizes the compatibility of the utility with the same target object. If two actions are compatible on a target object, they can run simultaneously on that object in separate applications. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that dependency is also shown.

If the utility supports parallelism, it can use additional threads to support the parallel subtasking. Consider increasing the values of subsystem parameters that control threads, such as MAX BATCH CONNECT and MAX USERS.

Related concepts

 [Claims and drains for concurrency control \(Managing Performance\)](#)

Related reference

 [Thread management panel: DSNTIPE \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)

Online utilities in a data sharing environment

You can run online utilities in a data sharing environment.

Submission of online utility jobs in a data sharing environment

When you submit a utility job, you must specify the name of the DB2 subsystem to which the utility is to attach or the group attachment name or subgroup attachment name. If you do not use the group attachment name or subgroup attachment name, the utility job must run on the z/OS system where the specified DB2 subsystem is running. Ensure that the utility job runs on the appropriate z/OS system. You must use one of several z/OS installation-specific statements to make sure this happens. These include:

- For JES2 multi-access spool (MAS) systems, insert the following statement into the utility JCL:

```
/*JOBPARM SYSAFF=cccc
```
- For JES3 systems, insert the following statement into the utility JCL:

```
//*MAIN SYSTEM=(main-name)
```

Your installation might have other mechanisms for controlling where batch jobs run, such as by using job classes.

Stop and restart of utilities in a data sharing environment

In a data sharing environment, you can terminate an active utility by using the TERM UTILITY command only on the DB2 subsystem on which it was started. If a DB2 subsystem fails while a utility is in progress, you must restart that DB2 subsystem, and then you can terminate the utility from any system.

You can restart a utility only on a member that is running the same DB2 release level as the member on which the utility job was originally submitted. The same utility ID (UID) must be used to restart the utility. That UID is unique within a data sharing group. However, if DB2 fails, you must restart DB2 on either the same or another z/OS system before you restart the utility.

Related reference

 [DD statement \(MVS JCL Reference\)](#)

Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command

You can terminate online utilities with the TERM UTILITY command.

 Use the TERM UTILITY command to terminate the execution of an active utility or to release the resources that are associated with a stopped utility.

Restriction: If the utility was started in a previous release of DB2, issue the TERM UTILITY command from that release.

After you issue the TERM UTILITY command, you cannot restart the terminated utility job. The objects on which the utility was operating might be left in an indeterminate state. In many cases, you cannot rerun the same utility without first recovering the objects on which the utility was operating. The situation varies, depending on the utility and the phase that was in process when you issued the command. These considerations about the state of the object are particularly important when terminating the COPY, LOAD, and REORG utilities.

In a data sharing environment, TERM UTILITY is effective for active utilities when the command is submitted from the DB2 subsystem that originally issued the command. You can terminate a stopped utility from any active member of the data sharing group.

Restriction: In a data sharing coexistence environment, you can terminate a utility only on the same release in which the utility was started.

If the utility is active, TERM UTILITY terminates it at the next commit point. It then performs any necessary cleanup operations.

You might choose to put TERM UTILITY in a conditionally executed job step; for example, if you never want to restart certain utility jobs. The following figure shows a sample job stream.

```
//TERM EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,COND=((8,GT,S1),EVEN)
//*
//*****
//* IF THE PREVIOUS UTILITY STEP, S1, ABENDS, ISSUE A
//* TERMINATE COMMAND. IT CANNOT BE RESTARTED.
//*****
//*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
-TERM UTILITY(TEMP)
END
/*
```

Figure 7. Example of conditionally executed TERM UTILITY

Alternatively, consider specifying the TIMEOUT TERM parameter for some online REORG situations. 

Subsystem parameters for refining DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities

You can use subsystem parameters to control whether utilities that invoke DFSMSdss COPY use FlashCopy technology.

The utilities that invoke DFSMSdss COPY are:

- CHECK DATA with SHRLEVEL CHANGE
- CHECK INDEX with SHRLEVEL CHANGE
- CHECK LOB with SHRLEVEL CHANGE
- COPY with FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT
- LOAD with FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT
- REBUILD INDEX with FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT
- RECOVER with FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT
- REORG INDEX with FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT
- REORG TABLESPACE with FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT

The subsystem parameters are:

FLASHCOPY_PPRC

Specifies the behavior for DFSMSdss FlashCopy requests when the target disk storage volume is the primary device in a peer-to-peer remote copy (Metro Mirror) relationship:

- Whether DFSMSdss preserves mirroring while processing a DB2 utilities request
- Whether the target device pair is allowed to go to duplex pending state

FLASHCOPY_PPRC applies to the CHECK DATA, CHECK INDEX, CHECK LOB, COPY, REORG TABLESPACE, REORG INDEX, REBUILD INDEX, LOAD, and RECOVER utilities.

CHECK_FASTREPLICATION

Specifies whether the CHECK utilities direct DFSMSdss COPY to use FlashCopy as the preferred for copying objects to shadow data sets, or as the only method for copying objects to shadow data sets.

REC_FASTREPLICATION

Specifies how the RECOVER utility directs DFSMSdss COPY to restore an image copy that was created with FlashCopy. REC_FASTREPLICATION directs DFSMSdss COPY to use FlashCopy as the preferred method, as the only method, or not to use FlashCopy.

The parameters that DFSMSdss COPY specifies for the CHECK utilities depend on the combination of values for FLASHCOPY_PPRC and CHECK_FASTREPLICATION that you specify, as shown in the following table.

Table 2. FLASHCOPY_PPRC and CHECK_FASTREPLICATION values and resulting DFSMSdss COPY parameter values for CHECK utilities

FLASHCOPY_PPRC value	CHECK_FASTREPLICATION value	
	PREFERRED	REQUIRED
blank	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
NONE	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirNone)	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirNone)

Table 2. FLASHCOPY_PPRC and CHECK_FASTREPLICATION values and resulting DFSMSdss COPY parameter values for CHECK utilities (continued)

FLASHCOPY_PPRC value	CHECK_FASTREPLICATION value	
	PREFERRED	REQUIRED
PREFERRED	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirPref)	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirPref)
REQUIRED	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirReq)	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirReq)

The parameters that DFSMSdss COPY specifies for the RECOVER utility depend on the combination of values for FLASHCOPY_PPRC and CHECK_FASTREPLICATION that you specify, as shown in the following table.

Table 3. FLASHCOPY_PPRC and CHECK_FASTREPLICATION values and resulting DFSMSdss COPY parameter values for the RECOVER utility

FLASHCOPY_PPRC value	REC_FASTREPLICATION value		
	NONE	PREFERRED	REQUIRED
blank	FASTREP(NONE)	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
NONE	FASTREP(NONE)	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
		FCTOPPRCP(PresMirNone)	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirNone)
PREFERRED	FASTREP(NONE)	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
		FCTOPPRCP(PresMirPref)	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirPref)
REQUIRED	FASTREP(NONE)	FASTREP(PREF)	FASTREP(REQ)
		FCTOPPRCP(PresMirReq)	FCTOPPRCP(PresMirReq)

Related reference

- [FAST REPLICATION field \(CHECK_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter\) \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)
- [FLASHCOPY PPRC field \(FLASHCOPY_PPRC subsystem parameter\) \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)
- [FAST RESTORE field \(REC_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter\) \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)

Restart of an online utility

If a utility finishes abnormally, you might be able to restart it.

With the autonomic restart procedure, you avoid repeating much of the work that the utility has already done.

Before you restart a job, correct the problem that caused the utility job to stop. Then resubmit the job. DB2 recognizes the utility ID and restarts the utility job if possible. DB2 retrieves information about the stopped utility from the SYSUTIL directory table.

Do not reuse the utility ID of a stopped utility that has not yet been terminated, unless you want to restart that utility. If you do use the same utility ID to invoke a

different utility, DB2 tries to restart the original stopped utility with the information that is stored in the SYSUTIL directory table.

Two different methods of restart are available:

- You can do a *phase restart* from the beginning of the phase that was being processed. This method is indicated by the value RESTART(PHASE).
- You can do a *current restart* from the last checkpoint that was taken during the execution of the utility phase. If the utility phase does not take any checkpoints or has not reached the first checkpoint, current restart is equivalent to phase restart. This method is indicated by the value RESTART or RESTART(CURRENT).

For each utility, DB2 uses the default RESTART value that is specified in the following table. For a complete description of the restart behavior for an individual utility, including any phase restrictions, refer to the restart topic for that utility.

You can override the default RESTART value by specifying the RESTART parameter in the original JCL data set. DB2 ignores the RESTART parameter if you are submitting the utility job for the first time. For instructions on how to specify this parameter, see the following table.

Table 4. Default RESTART values for each utility

Utility	Default RESTART value
BACKUP SYSTEM	RESTART(CURRENT)
CATMAINT	No restart
CHECK DATA	RESTART(CURRENT)
CHECK INDEX	RESTART(CURRENT)
CHECK LOB	RESTART(CURRENT)
COPY	RESTART(CURRENT)
COPYTOCOPY	RESTART(CURRENT)
DIAGNOSE	Restarts from the beginning
EXEC SQL	Restarts from the beginning
LISTDEF	Restarts from the beginning
LOAD	RESTART(CURRENT) or RESTART(PHASE) ¹
MEREGCOPY	RESTART(PHASE)
MODIFY RECOVERY	RESTART(CURRENT)
MODIFY STATISTICS	RESTART(CURRENT)
OPTIONS	Restarts from the beginning
QUIESCE	RESTART(CURRENT)
REBUILD INDEX	RESTART(PHASE)
RECOVER	RESTART(CURRENT)
REORG INDEX	RESTART(CURRENT) or RESTART(PHASE) ¹
REORG TABLESPACE	RESTART(CURRENT) or RESTART(PHASE) ¹
REPAIR	No restart
REPORT	RESTART(CURRENT)
RESTORE SYSTEM	RESTART(CURRENT)
RUNSTATS	RESTART(CURRENT)

Table 4. Default RESTART values for each utility (continued)

Utility	Default RESTART value
STOSPACE	RESTART(CURRENT)
TEMPLATE	Restarts from the beginning
UNLOAD	RESTART(CURRENT)

Note:

1. The RESTART value that DB2 uses for these utilities depends on the situation. Refer to the restart topic for each utility for a complete explanation.

If you cannot restart a utility job, you might have to terminate it to make the data available to other applications. To terminate a utility job, issue the DB2 TERM UTILITY command. Use the command only if you must start the utility from the beginning.

Restarting hints

The following guidelines provide additional information about restarting utilities:

- If the data set is not dynamically allocated, ensure that the DD name that is specified in the restart JCL matches the DD name for the original job; don't change DD names on a restart job. If the data set is dynamically allocated, the file sequence numbers must match for the restart and the original run. In either case, if the data set is not cataloged, any explicit specification of VOLSERS must match for the restart and the original job. If you copy a work data set, such as SYSUT1, after an ABENDB37, and the number of volumes changes, do not specify RESTART CURRENT. If you do, ABEND 413-1C occurs. To prevent this abend, start the utility in RESTART(PHASE).
- When restarting a utility with cataloged data sets, do not specify VOLSER. Let DB2 determine the VOLSER of the data sets from the system catalog.
- Do not change the utility function that is currently stopped and the DB2 objects on which it is operating. However, you can change other parameters that are related to the stopped step and to subsequent utility steps.
- Do not specify z/OS automatic step restart.
- If a utility is restarted in the UTILINIT phase, it is re-executed from the beginning of the phase.
- Run the RUNSTATS utility after the completion of a restarted LOAD, REBUILD INDEX, or REORG job with the STATISTICS option. When you restart these jobs, DB2 does not collect inline statistics. The exception is REORG UNLOAD PAUSE; when restarted after the pause, REORG UNLOAD PAUSE collects statistics.
- Ensure that the required data sets are properly defined.

Recommendation: Allocate the data sets by using TEMPLATE statements that do not specify the DISP and SPACE parameter values. When these parameters are not specified, DB2 determines the correct disposition and size of these data sets.

- When using the DSNUTILS stored procedure, specify NONE or ANY for the *utility-name* parameter. These values suppress the dynamic allocation that is normally performed by DSNUTILS. You can then specify TEMPLATE statements (in the *utstmt* parameter) to allocate the necessary data sets.

Restart is not always possible. The restrictions applying to the phases of each utility are discussed under the description of each utility.

Using the RESTART parameter

You can use the RESTART parameter to override the default RESTART value.

You do not need to use the RESTART parameter to restart a utility job. When you resubmit a job that finished abnormally and has not been terminated, DB2 automatically recognizes the utility ID from the SYSUTIL directory table and restarts the utility job if possible. However, if you want to override the default RESTART value, you can update the original JCL data set by adding the RESTART parameter. Any RESTART values that you specify always override the default values. DB2 ignores the RESTART parameter if you are submitting the utility job for the first time.

To add the RESTART parameter, you can use one of the following three methods:

- Use DB2I.
 1. Access the DB2 Utilities panel.
 2. Fill in the panel fields, as documented in Figure 2 on page 19, except for field 5.
 3. Change field 5 to CURRENT or PHASE, depending on the desired method of restart.
 4. Press **Enter**.
- Use the DSNU CLIST command. When you invoke the DSNU CLIST command, as described in “Invoking a DB2 utility by using the DSNU CLIST command in TSO” on page 20, change the value of the RESTART parameter by specifying either RESTART, RESTART (CURRENT), or RESTART(PHASE).
- Create your own JCL. If you create your own JCL, you can specify RESTART (CURRENT) or RESTART(PHASE) to override the default RESTART value. You must also check the DISP parameters on the DD statements. For example, for DD statements that have DISP=NEW and need to be reused, change DISP to OLD or MOD. If generation data groups (GDGs) are used and any (+1) generations were cataloged, ensure that the JCL is changed to GDG (+0) for such data sets.

Automatically generated JCL normally has DISP=MOD. DISP=MOD allows a data set to be allocated during the first execution and then reused during a restart.

When restarting a job that involves templates, DB2 automatically changes the disposition from NEW to MOD. Therefore, you do not need to change template specifications for restart.

Adding or deleting utility statements

During restart processing, DB2 remembers the relative position of the stopped utility statement in the input stream. Therefore, you must include all the original utility statements when restarting any online utility. However, you can add or delete DIAGNOSE statements.

Modifying utility control statements

When restarting a utility job, do not change any EXEC SQL or OPTIONS utility control statements that have been executed prior to the stopped utility, if possible. If you must change these utility control statements, use caution; any changes can

cause the restart processing to fail. For example, if you specify a valid `OPTIONS` statement in the initial invocation, and then on restart, specify `OPTIONS PREVIEW`, the restart fails.

Use caution when changing `LISTDEF` lists prior to a restart. When DB2 restarts list processing, it uses a saved copy of the list. Modifying the `LISTDEF` list that is referred to by the stopped utility has no effect. Only control statements that follow the stopped utility are affected.

Do not change the position of any other utilities that have been executed.

Restarting after the output data set is full

You can restart a job at the last commit point after the output data set is full.

If a utility job terminates with an out-of-space condition on the output data set and you want to restart the job at the last commit point, follow these steps:

1. Copy the output data set to a temporary data set. Use the same DCB parameters. Use z/OS utilities that do not reblock the data set during the copy operation (for example, `DFSMSdss ADRDSSU` or `DFSORT ICEGENER`). Avoid using the `IEBGENER` or `ISPF 3.3` utilities.
2. Delete or rename the output data set. Ensure that you know the current DCB parameters, and then redefine the data set with additional space. Use the same `VOLSER` (if the data set is not cataloged), the same `DSNAME`, and the same DCB parameters.
3. Copy the data from the temporary data set into the new, larger output data set. Use z/OS utilities that do not reblock the data set during the copy operation (for example, `DFSMSdss ADRDSSU` or `DFSORT ICEGENER`).

Restarting with templates

Unlike most other utility control statements, `TEMPLATE` control statements can be modified before restarting a utility, and, in some cases, they must be modified in order to correct a prior failure.

Use caution when modifying templates. In some cases, modifications can cause restart processing to fail. For example, if you change the template name of a temporary work data set that was opened in an earlier phase and closed but is to be used later, restart processing fails.

`TEMPLATE` allocation during a restart automatically adjusts data set dispositions to reallocate the data sets from the prior execution. No modification to the `TEMPLATE DISP` is required. If the prior failure was due to space problems on a data set, the same restart considerations apply as if `DD` statements were being used. If the prior failure was due to insufficient space on a volume, you can alter the `TEMPLATE` statement. How the `TEMPLATE` statement needs to be altered depends on whether the `SPACE` keyword was specified. If `SPACE` was specified, specify a different volume or alter the primary and secondary space quantities. If `SPACE` was not specified, specify a different volume or add the `PCTPRIME` and `NBRSECND` keywords. Lower `PCTPRIME` to decrease the size of the primary allocation, and increase `NBRSECND` to decrease the size of the secondary allocation. DB2 takes checkpoints for the values that are used for `TEMPLATE DSN` variables, and the old values are reused on restart.

How DB2 restarts with lists

Unlike other utility control statements, LISTDEF control statements can be modified before restarting a utility. However, the modification does not affect the currently running utility. It affects only those utilities that follow it.

If the utility that you are restarting was processing a LIST, you will see a list size that is greater than 1 on the DSNU100 or DSNU105 message. DB2 checkpoints the expanded, enumerated list contents prior to executing the utility. DB2 uses this checkpointed list to restart the utility at the point of failure. After a successful restart, the LISTDEF is re-expanded before subsequent utilities in the same job step use it.

Chapter 5. BACKUP SYSTEM

The online BACKUP SYSTEM utility invokes z/OS DFSMSHsm (Version 1 Release 7 or above) to copy the volumes on which the DB2 data and log information resides for either a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group.

You can use BACKUP SYSTEM to copy all data for a single application (for example, when DB2 is the database server for a resource planning solution). All data sets that you want to copy must be SMS-managed data sets. You can subsequently run the RESTORE SYSTEM utility to recover the entire system.

In a data sharing environment, if any failed or abnormally quiesced members exist, the BACKUP SYSTEM request fails.

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility uses copy pools. A *copy pool* is a defined set of storage groups that contain data that DFSMSHsm can backup and recover collectively. For more information about copy pools, see z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference.

Each DB2 subsystem can have up to two copy pools, one for databases and one for logs. BACKUP SYSTEM copies the volumes that are associated with these copy pools at the time of the copy.

With the BACKUP SYSTEM utility you can manage the dumping of system-level backups (copy of the database, the log copy pools, or both) to tape. To use this functionality, you need to have z/OS DFSMSHsm V1R8 or above.

To use the DISPLAY UTILITY command for BACKUP SYSTEM on a data sharing group, you must issue the command from the member on which the BACKUP SYSTEM utility is invoked. Otherwise, the current utility information is not displayed.

Output

The output for BACKUP SYSTEM is the copy of the volumes on which the DB2 data and log information resides. The BACKUP SYSTEM history is recorded in the bootstrap data sets (BSDSs).

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority.

Execution phases of BACKUP SYSTEM

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility operates in these phases:

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	
----------	--

	Performs initialization and setup
--	-----------------------------------

COPY	Copies data
------	-------------

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup

Related concepts

[➡](#) Point-in-time recovery with system-level backups (DB2 Administration Guide)

Syntax and options of the BACKUP SYSTEM control statement

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

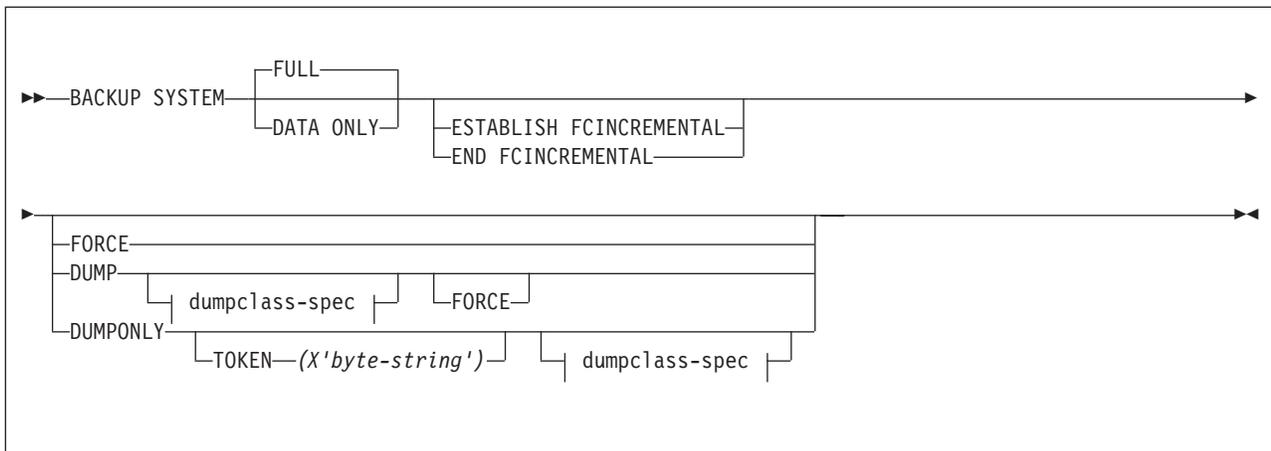
Use the ISPF/PDF edit function to create a control statement and to save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

When you specify BACKUP SYSTEM, you can specify only the following statements in the same step:

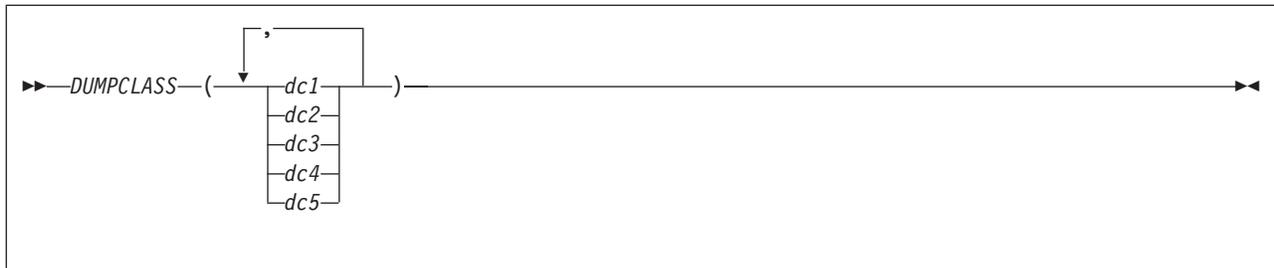
- DIAGNOSE
- OPTIONS PREVIEW
- OPTIONS OFF
- OPTIONS KEY
- OPTIONS EVENT WARNING

In addition, BACKUP SYSTEM must be the last statement in SYSIN.

Syntax diagram



dumpclass-spec:



Option descriptions

FULL

Indicates that you want to copy both the database copy pool and the log copy pool.

You must ensure that the database copy pool is set up to contain the volumes for the databases and the associated integrated catalog facility (ICF) catalogs. You must also ensure that the log copy pool is set up to contain the volumes for the BSDSs, the active logs, and the associated catalogs.

Use BACKUP SYSTEM FULL to allow for recovery of both data and logs. You can use the RESTORE SYSTEM utility to recover the data. However, RESTORE SYSTEM does not restore the logs; the utility only applies the logs. If you want to restore the logs, you must use another method to restore them.

DATA ONLY

Indicates that you want to copy only the database copy pool. You must ensure that the database copy pool is set up to contain the volumes for the databases and the associated ICF catalogs.

ESTABLISH FCINCREMENTAL

Specifies that a persistent incremental FlashCopy relationship is to be established, if none exists, for source copy volumes in the database copy pool. Use this keyword once to establish the persistent incremental FlashCopy relationships. Subsequent invocations of BACKUP SYSTEM (without this keyword) will automatically process the persistent incremental FlashCopy relationship.

END FCINCREMENTAL

Specifies that a last incremental FlashCopy be taken and for the persistent incremental FlashCopy relationship to be withdrawn for all of the volumes in the database copy pool. Use this keyword only if no further incremental FlashCopy backups of the database copy pool are desired.

FORCE

Indicates that you want to overwrite the oldest DFSMSHsm version of the fast replication copy of the database copy pool. You can overwrite these copy pools even if the dump to tape or the copy pool's DFSMSHsm dump classes have been initiated, but are only partially completed.

You should only use the FORCE option if it is more important to take a new system-level backup than to save a previous system-level backup to tape.

DUMP

Indicates that you want to create a fast replication copy of the database copy pool and the log copy pool on disk and then initiate a dump to tape of the fast replication copy. The dump to tape begins after DB2 successfully establishes relationships for the fast replication copy.

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility does not wait for the dump processing to complete.

This option requires z/OS Version 1.8.

DUMPCLASS

Indicates the DFSMSHsm dump class that you want to use for the dump processing. You can specify up to five dump classes. If you do not specify a dump class, DB2 uses the default dump classes that are defined for the copy pools.

DUMPONLY

Indicates that you want to create a dump on tape of an existing fast replication copy (that is currently residing on the disk) of the database copy pool and the log copy pool. You can also use this option to resume a dump process that has failed.

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility does not wait for the dump processing to complete.

This option requires z/OS Version 1.8.

TOKEN (*X'byte-string'*)

Specifies which fast replication copy of the database copy pool and the log copy pool to dump to tape. The token is a 36-digit hexadecimal byte string that uniquely identifies each system-level backup and is reported in the DSNJU0004 job output. For a data sharing system, you should run DSNJU0004 with the MEMBER option so that the system-level backup information is displayed for all members.

If you do not specify TOKEN, the most recent fast replication copy of the copy pools is dumped to tape.

Before running BACKUP SYSTEM

Certain activities might be required before you run the BACKUP SYSTEM utility, depending on your situation.

To run BACKUP SYSTEM, ensure that the following conditions are true:

- The data sets that you want to copy are SMS-managed data sets.
- You are running z/OS V1R7 or above.
- You are running z/OS V1R8 or above if you want to use the DUMP, DUMPONLY, or FORCE options and if you want the RECOVER utility to be able to use system-level backups for object-level recoveries.
- You have disk control units that support ESS FlashCopy™.
- You have defined a copy pool for your database data. If you plan to also copy the logs, define another copy pool for your logs. Use the DB2 naming convention for both of these copy pools.
- The ICF catalog for the data must be on a separate volume than the ICF catalog for the logs.
- You have defined an SMS backup storage group for each storage group in the copy pools.

For information about defining copy pools and associated backup storage groups, see z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference. Use the following DB2 naming convention when you define these copy pools:

DSN\$locn-name\$cp-type

The variables that are used in this naming convention have the following meanings:

DSN The unique DB2 product identifier.

\$ A delimiter. You must use the dollar sign character (\$).

locn-name
The DB2 location name.

cp-type The copy pool type. Use DB for database and LG for log.

Data sets that BACKUP SYSTEM uses

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that the BACKUP SYSTEM utility uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set

Table 5. Data sets that BACKUP SYSTEM uses

Data sets	Description	Required?
SYSIN	An input data set that contains the utility control statement	Yes
SYSPRINT	An output data set for messages	Yes

Concurrency and compatibility for BACKUP SYSTEM

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

The BACKUP SYSTEM utility can run concurrently with any other utility; however, it must wait for the following DB2 events to complete before the copy can begin:

- Extending of data sets
- Writing of 32-KB pages
- Writing close page set control log records (PSCRs)
- Creating data sets (for table spaces, indexes, and so forth)
- Deleting data sets (for dropping tables spaces, indexes, and so forth)
- Renaming data sets (for online reorganizing of table spaces, indexes, and so forth during the SWITCH phase)

Only one BACKUP SYSTEM job can be running at one time.

BACKUP SYSTEM cannot run concurrently with utilities that use FlashCopy to create data sets in the database copy pool. For example, suppose that CHECK INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE does a FlashCopy from a source object to a shadow dataset. The disk volume where the shadow data set resides becomes the target in a FlashCopy relationship. If this disk volume is in the database copy pool, BACKUP SYSTEM cannot copy it.

For the CHECK INDEX, CHECK DATA, and CHECK LOB utilities, you can use subsystem parameter UTIL_TEMP_STORCLAS to specify an alternative storage class that contains volumes that are not in the database copy pool. When UTIL_TEMP_STORCLAS is specified, the CHECK utilities use the alternative

storage class to create the shadow data sets. Therefore, volumes that are targets in a FlashCopy relationship after the CHECK utilities run are not in the database copy pool.

Dumping a fast replication copy to tape

With the BACKUP SYSTEM online utility, you can dump a fast replication copy of a system-level backup to tape. You can then manage the available disk space, retain the system-level backups, and provide a means of recovery after a media failure.

To dump a fast replication copy of a system-level backup to tape that was taken without the DUMP option, or to re-initiate dump processing that has failed:

1. Identify the token (a 36 digit hexadecimal byte string) in the DSNJU004 output.
2. Create and run your utility control statement with the DUMPONLY option. Specify the token if the system-level backup is not the most recent system-level backup taken.

Restriction: Do not dump system-backups to the same tape that contains image copies or concurrent copies because the RECOVER utility requires access to both

3. Run the DFSMSHsm command LIST COPYPOOL with the ALLVOLS option to verify that the dump to tape was successful. The BACKUP SYSTEM utility issues the DFSMSHsm command to initiate a dump, but it does not wait for the dump to be completed.

Backups of log copy pools

If you take backups of both the log and database copy pool, you can use the backups to restore the log copy pool.

When you use backups to restore the log copy pool, if the active log data sets are striped, or if the log copy pool is for a data sharing environment, you must specify the data complete LRSN during the conditional restart in the following scenarios:

- You are cloning a DB2 system by using a system-level backup as the source. In this case, conditionally restart DB2 with an ENDRBA or ENDLRSN that is equal to the data complete LRSN of the system-level backup.
- You are performing a system-level point-in-time recovery. In this case, conditionally restart DB2 with the log truncation point equal to or less than the data complete LRSN of the system-level backup. Use the data complete LRSN as the CRESTART ENDRBA, ENDLRSN, or SYSPITR log truncation point.

You can determine the data complete LRSN from the following places:

- Message DSNU1614I, which is generated when BACKUP SYSTEM completes successfully
- The report generated by the print log map utility (DSNJU004)

Related concepts

 Conditional restart with system-level backups (DB2 Administration Guide)
“Before running RESTORE SYSTEM” on page 646

Related reference

Chapter 37, “DSNJU004 (print log map),” on page 821

Related information

 DSNU1614I (DB2 Messages)

Termination or restart of BACKUP SYSTEM

You can terminate BACKUP SYSTEM by using the TERM UTILITY command. BACKUP SYSTEM checks for the TERM UTILITY command before the call to copy data. TERM UTILITY deletes the copy that is being created through the BACKUP SYSTEM utility.

To use TERM UTILITY to terminate BACKUP SYSTEM on a data sharing group, you must issue the command from the member on which the BACKUP SYSTEM utility is invoked.

You can restart a BACKUP SYSTEM utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Sample BACKUP SYSTEM control statements

Use sample control statements as models for developing your own BACKUP SYSTEM control statements.

Example 1: Creating a full backup of a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group.

The following control statement specifies that the BACKUP SYSTEM utility is to create a full backup copy of a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group. The full backup includes copies of both the database copy pool and the log copy pool. In this control statement, the FULL option is not explicitly specified, because it is the default.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,TIME=1440,  
//      UTPROC=' ',  
//      SYSTEM='DSN'  
//SYSIN DD *  
        BACKUP SYSTEM  
/*
```

Example 2: Creating a data-only backup of a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group.

The following control statement specifies that BACKUP SYSTEM is to create a backup copy of only the database copy pool for a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,TIME=1440,  
//      UTPROC=' ',  
//      SYSTEM='DSN'  
//SYSIN DD *  
        BACKUP SYSTEM DATA ONLY  
/*
```

Example 3: Creating a fast replication copy of the database copy pool and dumping the copy to tape.

The following control statement specifies that BACKUP SYSTEM is to create a fast replication copy of the database copy pool and initiate a dump to tape of the fast replication copy.

```
//SYSOPRB JOB (ACCOUNT), 'NAME', CLASS=K
//UTIL EXEC DSNUPROC, SYSTEM=V91A, UID='TEMB', UTPROC=' '
//*
//*
//DSNUPROC.SYSUT1 DD DSN=SYSOPR.SYSUT1,
// DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
// SPACE=(16384,(20,20),,,ROUND),
// UNIT=SYSDA
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
BACKUP SYSTEM DATA ONLY DUMP
/*
```

Example 4: Creating a fast replication copy of the database copy pool, dumping the copy to tape, and allowing oldest copy to be overwritten.

The following control statement specifies that BACKUP SYSTEM is to create a fast replication copy of the database copy pool, initiate a dump to tape of the fast replication copy, and allow the oldest fast replication copy to be overwritten.

```
//SYSOPRB JOB (ACCOUNT), 'NAME', CLASS=K
//UTIL EXEC DSNUPROC, SYSTEM=V91A, UID='TEMB', UTPROC=' '
//*
//*
//DSNUPROC.SYSUT1 DD DSN=SYSOPR.SYSUT1,
// DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
// SPACE=(16384,(20,20),,,ROUND),
// UNIT=SYSDA
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
BACKUP SYSTEM DATA ONLY DUMP FORCE
/*
```

Example 5: Dumping an existing fast replication copy to tape.

The following control statement specifies that BACKUP SYSTEM is to dump the existing fast replication copy X'E5F9F1C1BD1909683AA8A1A600000E6962DE' to tape, using the DB2STGD2 dump class.

```
//SYSOPRB JOB (ACCOUNT), 'NAME', CLASS=K
//UTIL EXEC DSNUPROC, SYSTEM=V91A, UID='TEMB', UTPROC=' '
//*
//*
//DSNUPROC.SYSUT1 DD DSN=SYSOPR.SYSUT1,
// DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
// SPACE=(16384,(20,20),,,ROUND),
// UNIT=SYSDA
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
BACKUP SYSTEM DATA ONLY DUMPONLY
TOKEN (X'E5F9F1C1BD1909683AA8A1A600000E6962DE')
DUMPCLASS(DB2STGD2)
/*
```

Chapter 6. CATENFM

The CATENFM online utility enables a DB2 subsystem to enter DB2 Version 10 enabling-new-function mode and Version 10 new-function mode. It also enables a DB2 subsystem to return to enabling-new-function mode from new-function mode.

All new Version 10 functions are unavailable when the subsystem is in conversion mode or enabling-new-function mode.

Output

Output from the CATENFM utility consists of:

- If you specify the CONVERT option, the CATENFM utility converts table spaces during the enabling-new-function mode process.
- If you specify the ALTER option, some objects in the DB2 catalog are altered or created.
- For other options, there is no output.

Authorization required

The required authorization for CATENFM is installation SYSADM.

Execution phases of CATENFM

The CATENFM utility operates in these phases:

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	
----------	--

	Performs initialization and setup
--	-----------------------------------

UTILTERM	
----------	--

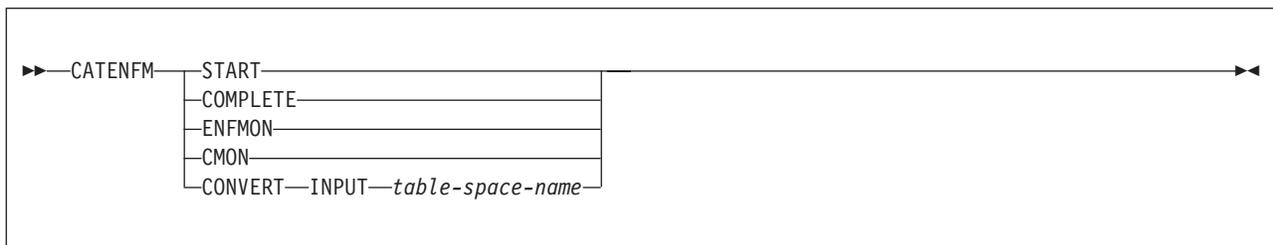
	Performs cleanup
--	------------------

Syntax and options of the CATENFM control statement

The CATENFM utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

The CATENFM utility is invoked by jobs DSNTIJEN, DSNTIJNF, DSNTIJES, and DSNTIJCS.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

START

Invokes the CATENFM utility and indicates the start of enabling-new-function mode processing. No start processing is done if CATENFM START was run previously; however, you can run the CATENFM utility as many times as needed.

COMPLETE

Checks if the DB2 subsystem has completed enabling-new-function mode processing. If the subsystem has completed this processing, the CATENFM utility returns 0, and the subsystem enters new-function mode.

ENFMON

Returns DB2 to enabling-new-function mode. If the subsystem is currently in enabling-new-function mode, no change occurs. If the subsystem has been to new-function mode, ENFMON returns it to enabling-new-function* mode. New Version 10 functions are not available in Version 10 enabling-new-function mode.

CMON

Returns DB2 to conversion mode. If the system is currently in conversion mode, no change occurs. If the system has been to enabling-new-function mode or new-function mode, CMON returns it to conversion* mode. Conversion* mode is similar to conversion mode, but the * indicates that at one time the system was in enabling-new-function mode or new-function mode. You can still access objects that were created in enabling-new-function mode or new-function mode. Data sharing groups cannot have any Version 9.1 members. You cannot fall back to Version 9.1 from conversion* mode or coexist with a Version 9.1 system.

CONVERT

Starts enabling-new-function mode processing for the table space that is listed after the INPUT keyword.

INPUT *table-space-name*

Specifies the table space for which enabling-new-function mode processing should begin.

table-space-name

The name of the table space for which enabling-new-function mode processing should begin.

Before converting the catalog

Certain activities might be required before you run the CATMAINT utility, depending on your situation.

Before you run the CATENFM utility to convert the catalog, take image copies of all catalog and directory objects and save your entire subsystem.

To convert the catalog, you must run the DSNTIJEN job.

Data sets that CATENFM uses when converting the catalog

The CATENFM utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

A CATENFM job allocates all of the data sets that it needs. CATENFM uses data sets only when the CONVERT option is specified.

The following table lists the data sets that CATENFM uses during conversion. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required.

Table 6. Data sets that CATENFM uses during conversion

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes

Concurrency and compatibility for CATENFM

The CATENFM utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

Certain catalog and directory objects are not available during some of the CATENFM phases. The objects that are unavailable vary based on the CATENFM option that you specify. The unavailability of these objects can cause other jobs to time out with message DSNT3761 or DSNT5011. You cannot run CATMAINT when the DB2 catalog or directory are in UT status.

Converting to new-function mode

When you migrate to DB2 Version 10, the DB2 subsystem enters conversion mode. In conversion mode, the DB2 subsystem can coexist with other data sharing members that are at either Version 9.1 or Version 10 conversion mode.

The following task is required when you convert to DB2 Version 10 new-function mode.

The DB2 subsystem leaves conversion mode and enters enabling-new-function mode when you invoke CATENFM START by running the DSNTIJEN job. The subsystem cannot begin enabling-new-function mode processing if any Version 9.1 members are active in the data sharing group. All members, including members that are not converting to Version 10 new-function mode, must be running Version 10 when the subsystem enters enabling-new-function mode. Note that when a member starts enabling-new-function mode, the group enters enabling-new-function mode.

After enabling-new-function mode completes, the DB2 subsystem can enter Version 10 new-function mode. All new Version 10 functions are unavailable until the DB2 subsystem enters new-function mode.

The DSNTIJEN job runs CATENFM START, which causes the DB2 subsystem to enter enabling-new-function mode. Run CATENFM START only when you are ready to begin the enabling-new-function mode conversion process.

Termination or halt of CATENFM

You can terminate CATENFM by using the TERM UTILITY command.

You can stop the enabling-new-function mode processing by specifying CATENFM HALTENFM or by running job DSNTIJNH. Either action stops the enabling-new-function mode processing at the completion of the step that is currently executing.

CATENFM CONVERT cannot be restarted. If you attempt to restart CATENFM CONVERT, you receive message DSNU191I, which states that the utility cannot be restarted. You must terminate the job, and rerun job DSNTIJEN from the beginning to convert the catalog.

Chapter 7. CATMAINT

The CATMAINT online utility updates the catalog; run this utility during migration to a new release of DB2 or when IBM Software Support instructs you to do so.

Output

Output for CATMAINT UPDATE is the updated catalog.

Authorization required

The required authorization for CATMAINT is installation SYSADM.

Execution phases of CATMAINT

The CATMAINT utility operates in these phases:

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	
-----------------	--

	Performs initialization
--	-------------------------

UTILTERM	
-----------------	--

	Performs cleanup
--	------------------

If the catalog contains plans or packages that were bound with DBPROTOCOL(PRIVATE), the CATMAINT utility executes successfully; however, plans and packages that were bound with DBPROTOCOL(PRIVATE) and access remote locations cannot execute in DB2 for z/OS Version 10 and later. To enable the plans or packages to execute, convert them to use the DRDA[®] protocol by rebinding them. Use the DSNTP2DP to determine which packages need to be rebound.

Related reference

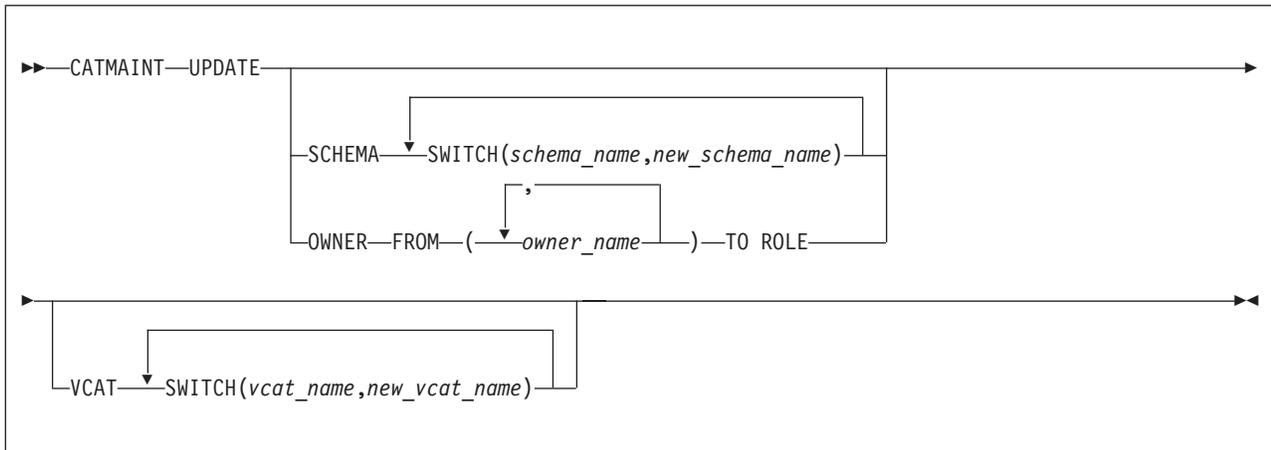
 The private to DRDA protocol REXX tool (DSNTP2DP) (DB2 Installation Guide)

Syntax and options of the CATMAINT control statement

The CATMAINT utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

Use the ISPF/PDF edit function to create a control statement and to save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

UPDATE

Indicates that you want to update the catalog. Run this option only when you migrate to a new release of DB2 or when IBM Software Support instructs you to do so.

SCHEMA SWITCH(*schema_name*,*new_schema_name*)

Changes the owner, creator, and schema of database objects. The schema is not changed for views, materialized query tables, SQL scalar function, and triggers. The authorization IDs of the creator or owner for plans and packages that use the objects are not changed.

schema_name is a string that identifies the existing owner, creator, or schema to be changed. It will be ignored if it does not identify any owner, creator, or schema names. *schema_name* cannot identify a schema(qualifier) of any object that triggers, views, SQL functions, and materialized query tables depend on. It cannot be referenced in check condition in any check constraints. Ownership of objects will not be changed if the owner is a role.

new_schema_name specifies the new name for the owner, creator, or schema. The name cannot be a schema that qualifies existing objects.

OWNER FROM(*owner_name*) TO ROLE

Changes the ownership of objects from a user to a role. A trusted context must have been created for INSTALL SYSADM before CATMAINT UPDATE OWNER can run. The authorization IDs of the creator or owner for plans and packages that use the objects are not changed.

owner_name specifies the current owner of the object. You can specify multiple owners.

VCAT SWITCH(*vcat_name*,*new_vcat_name*)

Changes the catalog name that is used by storage groups, user indexes, and table spaces.

vcat_name identifies the integrated catalog facility catalog that is currently used by user-managed data sets for indexes, table spaces, and storage groups.

new_vcat_name specifies the new integrated catalog facility catalog that is to be used by user-managed data sets for indexes, table spaces, and storage groups.

To specify any non-alphanumeric characters, enclose each name in single quotes.

Before running CATMAINT

Certain activities might be required before you run the CATMAINT utility, depending on your situation.

During migration, the work file database is used for CATMAINT sorting. If you are migrating from a previous version, calculate the size of the work file database.

Data sets that CATMAINT uses

The CATMAINT utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

Include DD statements for all data sets that your job uses. The following table lists the data sets that CATMAINT uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required.

Table 7. Data sets that CATMAINT uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	An input data set that contains the utility control statement	Yes
SYSPRINT	An output data set for messages	Yes

Concurrency and compatibility for CATMAINT

The CATMAINT utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

Many catalog and directory indexes are not available while CATMAINT is running. The unavailability of these indexes can cause other jobs to time out with message DSNT318I, DSNT376I or DSNT501I.

Updating the catalog for a new release

When you install or migrate to a new release of DB2, you must update the catalog for the prior release to the new version.

The DSNTIJTC job runs CATMAINT UPDATE to update the catalog. DB2 displays migration status message DSNU777I at several points during CATMAINT execution.

If an abend occurs during migration processing, message DSNU776I or DSNU778I can give you information about the problem.

Renaming the owner, creator, and schema of database objects

You can rename the owner, creator, and schema of database objects.

To rename the owner, creator, and schema of database objects:

Run the CATMAINT utility with the SCHEMA SWITCH options. This process updates every owner, creator or schema name in the catalog and directory that

matches the *schema_name* value. All grants that were made by or received by the original owner are changed to the new owner. You can change multiple names by repeating the SWITCH keyword, but you can not specify the same name more than once. The names cannot be longer than 8 bytes in EBCDIC representation. 'SYSIBM' is not allowed as a *schema_name* or *new_schema_name*. OWNER FROM and SCHEMA SWITCH are mutually exclusive. You cannot specify both clauses in the same CATMAINT UPDATE statement.

Changing the ownership of objects from an authorization ID to a role

With the CATMAINT online utility, you can change the ownership of objects from an authorization ID to a role.

To change the ownership of objects from an authorization ID to a role:

Run CATMAINT OWNER FROM *owner_name* TO ROLE.

You must be running under a trusted context with a role to run this utility. The current role will become the owner. Privileges held on the object will be transferred from the original owner to the role. The original user can be the grantor or grantee, and the original owner does not have any privileges to the object after the utility completes. You can change multiple object owners by specifying multiple *owner_name*, but you can not specify the same name more than once. If the *owner_name* does not own any objects, it is ignored. 'SYSIBM' is not allowed as an *owner_name*.

Ownership of roles is changed like other objects. However, if the associated trusted context role is owned by the *owner_name*, the ownership of the role will not be changed because a role cannot be owned by itself.

OWNER FROM and SCHEMA SWITCH are mutually exclusive. You cannot specify both clauses in the same CATMAINT UPDATE statement.

Changing the catalog name used by storage groups or index spaces and table spaces

You can use the CATMAINT online utility to change the catalog name that is used by storage groups or by index spaces and table spaces.

To change the catalog name that is used by storage groups or index spaces and table spaces:

Run the CATMAINT VCAT SWITCH utility. The VCAT SWITCH option is similar to the ALTER TABLESPACE USING VCAT statement for changing the catalog name. You need to move the data for the affected indexes or table spaces to the data set on the new catalog in a separate step. You can change multiple names by repeating the SWITCH keyword, but you cannot specify the same name more than once. The names cannot be longer than 8 bytes in EBCDIC representation. The VCAT SWITCH option has no effect on the system indexes and table spaces in DSND06/DSND01 because the catalog name is maintained in the parameter.

Identifying invalidated packages after the owner, creator, or schema name of an object is renamed

When the schema name of an object is changed, any packages that are dependent on the object are invalidated. Automatic rebind occurs when the invalidated package is executed.

Rebind might not be successful if the object is referenced in the application explicitly with the original schema name. In this case, you need to modify the application. The following queries identify the packages that will be invalidated:

GUPI

```
SELECT DISTINCT COLLID, NAME
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSPACKDEP, SYSIBM.SYSPACKAGE
 WHERE BQUALIFIER IN (schema_name1, schema_name2...)
 ORDER BY COLLID, NAME;
```

GUPI

Termination or restart of CATMAINT

You can terminate CATMAINT by using the TERM UTILITY command, but the termination might leave some indexes in REBUILD-pending status.

CATMAINT cannot be restarted. If you attempt to restart CATMAINT, you receive message DSNU191I, which states that the utility cannot be restarted. You must terminate the job with the TERM UTILITY command, and rerun CATMAINT from the beginning.

Chapter 8. CHECK DATA

The CHECK DATA online utility checks table spaces for violations of referential and table check constraints, and it reports information about violations that it detects. CHECK DATA checks for consistency between a base table space and the corresponding LOB or XML table spaces.

CHECK DATA does not check LOB table spaces. The utility does not check informational referential constraints.

Run CHECK DATA after a conditional restart or a point-in-time recovery on all table spaces where parent and dependent tables might not be synchronized or where base tables and auxiliary tables might not be synchronized.

Run CHECK DATA to check the integrity of XML documents and system-generated indexes that are associated with XML data.

Run CHECK DATA to verify data consistency in hash access tables.

Restriction: Do not run CHECK DATA on encrypted data. Because CHECK DATA does not decrypt the data, the utility might produce unpredictable results.

Output

CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL REFERENCE optionally copies rows and optionally deletes those rows that violate referential or table check constraints. CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL REFERENCE copies each row that violates one or more constraints to an exception table. If a row violates two or more constraints, CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL REFERENCE copies the row only once. For SHRLEVEL CHANGE, CHECK DATA generates REPAIR statements that you can run to delete the rows.

If the utility finds any violation of constraints, the table space that is checked is not put into the CHECK-pending status. You can force the prior behavior, that a table space is put into CHECK-pending status when violations or constraints are detected, by specifying CHECK_SETCHKP=Y on the CHECK_SETCHKP system parameter.

CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL REFERENCE resets CHECK-pending status if it finds no errors or if all rows that contain violations were copied to exception tables and deleted.

CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL CHANGE operates on shadow copies of the table space and generates the corresponding REPAIR statements.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- STATS privilege for the database
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- DATAACCESS authority

- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute CHECK DATA. However, you cannot use SYSOPR authority to execute CHECK DATA on table space SYSDBASE in database DSNDB06 or on any object except SYSUTILX in database DSNDB01.

If you are using SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the batch user ID that invokes COPY with the CONCURRENT option must provide the necessary authority to execute the DFSMSdss COPY command. DFSMSdss will create a shadow data set with the authority of the utility batch address space. The submitter should have an RACF ALTER authority, or its equivalent, for the shadow data set.

If you specify the DELETE option, the privilege set must include the DELETE privilege on the tables that are being checked. If you specify the FOR EXCEPTION option, the privilege set must include the INSERT privilege on any exception table that is used. If you specify the AUXERROR INVALIDATE or the XMLERROR INVALIDATE option, the privilege set must include the UPDATE privilege on the base tables that contain LOB columns.

Execution phases of CHECK DATA

Phase Description

UTILINIT

Performs initialization

CHECKXML

Performs XML structure checking for all XML table spaces specified by INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES.

SCANTAB

Extracts foreign keys; uses an index if the index contains the same columns or a superset of the columns in the foreign key; otherwise scans the table

SORT Sorts foreign keys if they are not extracted from the foreign key index

CHECKDAT

Looks in primary indexes for foreign key parents, checks XML schema validations, checks XML structure, and issues messages to report detected errors

REPORTCK

Copies error rows into exception tables, and delete them from source table if DELETE YES is specified

UTILTERM

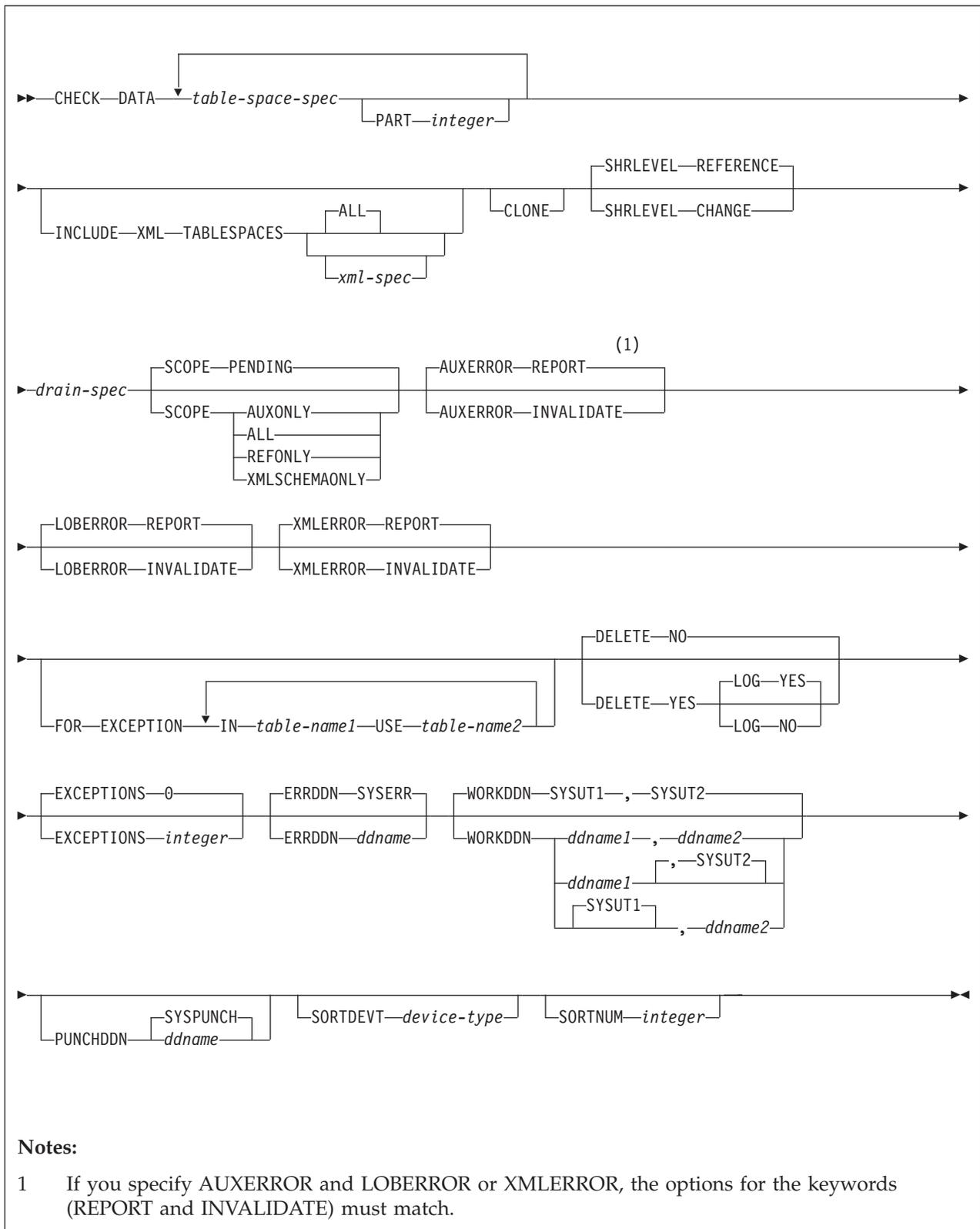
Performs cleanup

Syntax and options of the CHECK DATA control statement

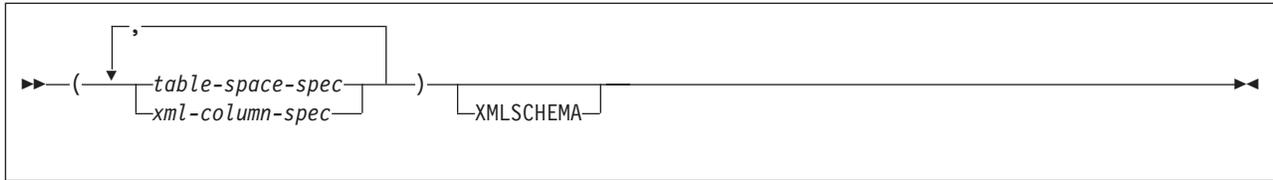
The CHECK DATA utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



xml-spec:



xml-column-spec:

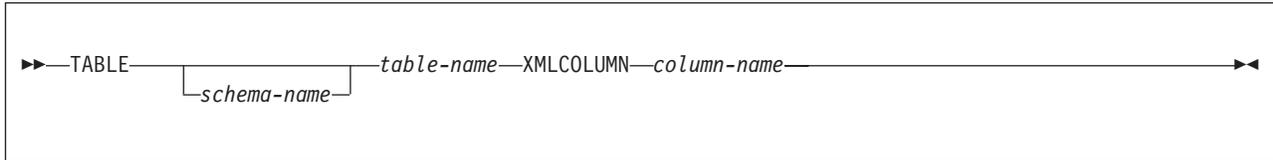
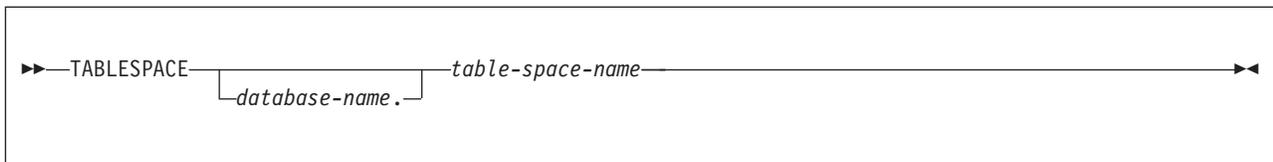
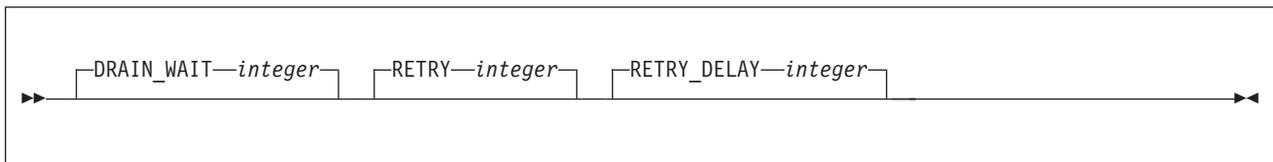


table-space-spec:



drain-spec:



Option descriptions

DATA

Indicates that you want the utility to check referential and table check constraints. CHECK DATA does not check informational referential constraints.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space to which the data belongs. You can specify base table spaces or, if TABLESPACE is specified as a part of the INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES option, XML table spaces. TABLESPACE cannot be used to specify LOB table spaces.

database-name is the name of the database and is optional. The default value is **DSNDB04**.

table-space-name is the name of the table space.

PART *integer*

Identifies which partition to check for constraint violations.

integer is the number of the partition and must be in the range from 1 to the number of partitions that are defined for the table space. The maximum is 4096.

INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES

Performs consistency checks on the specified XML table spaces and related node ID indexes.

By default, the utility checks only the XML table spaces and their related node ID indexes. If an XML type modifier exists for an XML column and *xml-spec* is specified, XML documents can also be checked against the stored XML schemas. Specify XMLSCHEMA on the *xml-spec* option to enable the check against stored XML schemas.

The consistency checks enabled by INCLUDE XML TABLESPACE are performed in addition to the existing checks specified by the SCOPE keyword.

XML indexes associated with the XML table spaces being checked are not verified. The CHECK INDEX utility must be run separately on those indexes.

The following checks are performed:

- The XML table space is checked to ensure that all rows of each XML document are present in the XML table space and that the XML document is structurally intact.
- All entries in the node ID index are checked against the rows in the XML table space. Each index entry must have a corresponding row in the XML table space, and vice versa. This functionality is equivalent to running the CHECK INDEX utility on the node ID index.
- All values in the document ID column are checked against the node ID index. Each document ID value must have matching entries in the node ID index. Each node ID index value must also have a document ID value.
- If XMLSCHEMA is specified, CHECK DATA validates documents that are stored in that column. If a document is validated, the base table row is updated with the validated document that was returned from the validation function when SHRLEVEL REFERENCE and XMLERROR INVALIDATE or AUXERROR INVALIDATE are specified.

ALL

Checks all XML table spaces that are related to the base table spaces that are identified by the *table-space-spec*. Specifying ALL is equivalent to explicitly specifying all the XML column identifiers.

xml-spec

Checks only those XML table spaces and related node ID indexes identified by either the XML column of a table or by the explicit table space name.

Because each XML column has a single XML table space associated with it, an XML table space can be identified either by the XML column of the base table or by the explicit table space name.

If an XML column identifier is used, the utility finds the name of the XML table space in the DB2 catalog or the database directory.

table-space-spec

Identifies an XML table space to check. The XML table space specification must identify an XML table space that has a corresponding column in a base table residing in the table space identified by the *table-space-spec* option of the main CHECK DATA control statement.

xml-column-spec

Identifies an XML table space to check by the XML column of the XML table space in a base table. An XML column identifier is comprised of

the fully qualified table name and the name of the XML column. An XML column identifier must refer to a table in any one of the base table spaces that are to be checked.

XMLSCHEMA

Specifies that if the XML columns have an XML type modifier, the CHECK DATA utility checks the XML documents against the stored XML schema.

CLONE

Indicates that CHECK DATA is to check the clone table in the specified table space. Because clone tables cannot have referential constraints, the utility checks only constraints for inconsistencies between the clone table data and the corresponding LOB data. If you do not specify CLONE, CHECK DATA operates against only the base table.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates the type of access that is to be allowed for the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked during CHECK DATA processing.

REFERENCE

Specifies that applications can read from but cannot write to the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked. The CHECK DATA utility can write changes to the table space, index space, or partition during processing.

CHANGE

Specifies that applications can read from and write to the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked. The CHECK DATA utility operates on shadow copies only and does not change the table space, index space, or partition during processing. REPAIR statements are generated and written to the punch data set indicated in option PUNCHDDN for any changes to be made.

If you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, DB2 performs the following actions:

- Drains all writers and forces the buffers to disk for the specified object and all of its indexes
- Invokes DFSMSdss to copy the specified object and all of its indexes to shadow data sets
- Enables read-write access for the specified object and all of its indexes
- Runs CHECK INDEX on the shadow data sets

By default, DFSMSdss uses FlashCopy to copy DB2 objects to shadow data sets, if FlashCopy is available. If DFSMSdss cannot use FlashCopy, DFSMSdss uses a slower method. As a result, creating copies of objects might take a long time, and the time during which the data and indexes have read-only access might increase. You can set the CHECK_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter to REQUIRED to force the CHECK utility to use only FlashCopy. If FlashCopy is not available, the CHECK utility fails.

DRAIN_WAIT

Specifies the number of seconds that CHECK DATA is to wait when draining the table space or index. The specified time is the aggregate time for objects that are to be checked. This value overrides the values that are specified by the IRLMRWT and UTIMOUT subsystem parameters.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 1800. If you do not specify DRAIN_WAIT or specify a value of 0, CHECK DATA uses the value of the lock timeout subsystem parameter IRLMRWT.

RETRY *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of retries that CHECK DATA is to attempt.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 255. If you do not specify RETRY, CHECK DATA uses the value of the utility multiplier system parameter UTIMOUT.

Specifying RETRY can increase processing costs and result in multiple or extended periods during which the specified index, table space, or partition is in read-only access.

RETRY_DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum duration, in seconds, between retries. *integer* can be any integer from 1 to 1800.

If you do not specify RETRY_DELAY, CHECK DATA uses the smaller of the following two values:

- DRAIN_WAIT value × RETRY value
- DRAIN_WAIT value × 10

SCOPE

Limits the scope of the rows in the table space that are to be checked.

PENDING

Indicates that the only rows that are to be checked are those that are in table spaces, partitions, or tables that are in CHECK-pending status. The referential integrity check, constraint check, and the LOB and XML checks are all performed.

If you specify this option for a table space that is **not** in CHECK-pending status, the CHECK DATA utility does not check the table space and does not issue an error message.

Checking XML columns verifies the relationship between the node ID index and the values in the XML indicator column in the base table space. If INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES is specified, schema validation will be done for all XML table spaces specified that are in CHKP and that refer to a table on any of the base table spaces to be checked.

AUXONLY

Indicates that only the LOB column and the XML column check are to be performed for table spaces that have tables with LOB columns or XML columns. The referential integrity and constraint checks are not performed.

Checking XML columns only verifies the relationship between the node ID index and the values in the XML indicator column in the base table space.

ALL

Indicates that all dependent tables in the specified table spaces are to be checked. The referential integrity check, constraints check, LOB check, and XML checks are performed.

If INCLUDE XML is specified in the TABLESPACES keyword, the associated XML table space and node ID index are checked for structural defects and inconsistencies.

REFONLY

Same as the ALL option, except that the LOB column check and the XML column check are not performed.

XMLSCHEMAONLY

Indicates that only the XML schema validation is to be performed on the XML objects specified by the INCLUDE XML TABLESPACE keyword. XML and LOB integrity checks and the referential integrity and constraints checks are not performed.

AUXERROR

Specifies the action that CHECK DATA is to perform when it finds a LOB or XML column check error.

REPORT

A LOB or XML column check error is reported with a warning message. The base table space is set to the auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status.

Note: CHECK DATA sets the base table space to ACHKP if SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is specified. If SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified, CHECK DATA doesn't change the status of the base table space

INVALIDATE

A LOB or XML column check error is reported with a warning message. The base table LOB or XML column is set to an invalid status. A LOB or XML column with invalid status that is now correct is set valid. This action is also reported with a message. The base table space is set to the auxiliary warning (AUXW) status if any LOB column remains in invalid status.

CHECK DATA sets the base table of a LOB or XML column to an invalid status and the base table space to AUXW only if SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is specified. If SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified CHECK DATA doesn't change the status of the base table space, or a LOB or XML column.

If SHRLEVEL REFERENCE and INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES are specified, CHECK DATA deletes corrupted XML documents and the associated node ID index entries. If the node ID index isn't consistent with the content in the XML table, CHECK DATA corrects the node ID index.

AUXERROR INVALIDATE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is not allowed on a table or a history table defined with data versioning.

Before using CHECK DATA to check a LOB or XML column:

1. Run CHECK LOB to ensure the validity of the LOB table space.
2. Run REBUILD INDEX or CHECK INDEX on the index on the auxiliary table to ensure its validity.
3. Run REBUILD INDEX or CHECK INDEX on the NODE ID index on the XML table space to ensure its validity.

LOBERROR

Specifies the action that CHECK DATA is to perform when it finds a LOB column check error. LOBERROR should not be specified if AUXERROR is specified. If both are specified, the keywords must match. LOBERROR is ignored for SCOPE XMLONLY since LOB checking is not being performed.

REPORT

A LOB column check error is reported with a warning message. The base table space is set to the auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status.

If AUXERROR is not specified, the default value is **REPORT**.

INVALIDATE

A LOB column check error is reported with a warning message. The base table LOB column is set to an invalid status. A LOB column with invalid status that is now correct is set valid. The base table space is set to the auxiliary warning (AUXW) status if any LOB column remains in invalid status.

LOBERROR INVALIDATE is not allowed on a table or a history table defined with data versioning.

XMLERROR

Specifies the action that CHECK DATA is to perform when it finds an XML column check error. XMLERROR should not be specified if AUXERROR is specified. If both are specified, the keywords must match. XMLERROR is ignored for SCOPE XMLONLY since LOB checking is not being performed.

REPORT

An XML column check error is reported with a warning message. The base table space is set to the auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status.

If AUXERROR is not specified, the default value is **REPORT**.

Note: CHECK DATA sets the base table space to ACHKP if SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is specified. If SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified, CHECK DATA doesn't change the status of the base table space.

INVALIDATE

An XML column check error is reported with a warning message. The base table XML column is set to an invalid status. An XML column with invalid status that is now correct is set valid. The base table space is set to the auxiliary warning (AUXW) status if any LOB column remains in invalid status.

CHECK DATA sets the base table of a LOB or XML column to an invalid status and the base table space to AUXW only if SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is specified. If SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified CHECK DATA doesn't change the status of the base table space, or a LOB or XML column.

If SHRLEVEL REFERENCE and INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES are specified, CHECK DATA deletes corrupted XML documents and the associated node ID index entries. If the node ID index isn't consistent with the content in the XML table, CHECK DATA corrects the node ID index.

XMLERROR INVALIDATE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is not allowed on a table or a history table defined with data versioning.

FOR EXCEPTION

Indicates that any row that is in violation of referential or table check constraints is to be copied to an exception table. Although this keyword does not apply to the checking of LOB or XML columns, rows with LOB or XML columns are moved to the exception tables. If you specify AUXONLY for LOB and XML checking only, the FOR EXCEPTION option is ignored.

If any row violates more than one constraint, that row appears no more than once in the exception table. CHECK DATA includes checking for XML schema violations and XML structure checking.

This option is ignored when SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified.

If you run CHECK DATA on a base table with XML columns, the EXCEPTIONS keyword has an effect only if the INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES option is also specified.

IN *table-name1*

Specifies the table (in the table space that is specified on the TABLESPACE keyword) from which rows are to be copied.

table-name1 is the name of the table. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

USE *table-name2*

Specifies the exception table into which error rows are to be copied.

table-name2 is the name of the exception table and must be a base table; it cannot be a view, synonym, or alias. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

DELETE

Indicates whether rows that are in violation of referential or table check constraints are to be deleted from the table space.

NO

Indicates that error rows are to remain in the table space. Primary errors in dependent tables are copied to exception tables.

If DELETE NO and SHRLEVEL REFERENCE are specified, and constraint violations are detected, CHECK DATA places the table space in the CHECK-pending status.

YES

You can use this option only if you specify the FOR EXCEPTION keyword. If you specify the FOR EXCEPTION keyword, deleted rows from both dependent and descendent tables are placed into exception tables. If you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, error rows are to be deleted from the table space.

If you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, REPAIR LOCATE DELETE statements are written to PUNCHDDN for rows that are to be deleted from the table space. If you delete rows from a table space that is not logged, the table space is marked informational COPY-pending.

DELETE YES is not allowed on a table or a history table defined with data versioning.

Important: REPAIR DELETE statements should be checked when running SHRLEVEL CHANGE on tables that have data versioning activated or for history tables. Historic information could be deleted.

LOG

Specifies the logging action that is to be taken when records are deleted.

YES

Logs all records that are deleted during the REPORTCK PHASE.

If the table space has the NOT LOGGED attribute, LOG YES is ignored.

NO

Does not log any records that are deleted during the REPORTCK phase. If any rows are deleted, CHECK DATA places the table space in the COPY-pending status, and it places any indexes that were defined with the

COPY YES attribute in the informational COPY-pending status. If rows are deleted from a table space that is not logged, the table space is marked informational COPY-pending.

Attention: Use the LOG NO option with caution because its use limits your ability to recover data by using the log. For example, if you issue the CHECK DATA DELETE YES LOG NO utility control statement at particular log RBA, you can recover data that exists on the log before that point in time or after the point on the log at which the utility execution completes.

EXCEPTIONS *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of exceptions, which are reported by messages only. CHECK DATA terminates in the CHECKDATA phase when it reaches the specified number of exceptions; if termination occurs, the error rows are not written to the EXCEPTION table.

Only records that contain primary referential integrity errors or table check constraint violations are applied toward the exception limit. The number of records that contain secondary errors is not limited.

integer is the maximum number of exceptions. The default value is 0, which indicates no limit on the number of exceptions.

This keyword does not apply to LOB table spaces or base table spaces that contain XML columns.

ERRDDN *ddname*

Specifies a DD statement for an error processing data set.

ddname is either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name. The default value is SYSERR.

WORKDDN (*ddname1,ddname2*)

Specifies the DD statements for the temporary work file for sort input and the temporary work file for sort output. A temporary work file for sort input and output is required.

You can use the WORKDDN keyword to specify either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, WORKDDN uses the DD name.

ddname1 is the DD name of the temporary work file for sort input. The default is SYSUT1.

ddname2 is the DD name of the temporary work file for sort output. The default is SORTOUT.

PUNCHDDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a data set that is to receive the REPAIR utility control statements that CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL CHANGE generates.

ddname is the DD name.

The default value is SYSPUNCH.

The PUNCHDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

SORTDEVT *device-type*

Specifies the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by a sort program. You can specify any disk device type that is acceptable to the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTION control statement for the sort program.

Do not use a TEMPLATE specification to dynamically allocate sort work data sets. The presence of the SORTDEVT keyword controls dynamic allocation of these data sets.

device-type is the device type. If you omit SORTDEVT and a sort is required, you must provide the DD statements that the sort program requires for the temporary data sets.

SORTNUM *integer*

Specifies the number of temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

If you omit SORTDEVT, SORTNUM is ignored. If you use SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program; the sort program uses its own default.

You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort. The SORTNUM value applies to each sort invocation in the utility.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

Related concepts

“Subsystem parameters for refining DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities” on page 35

Related reference

Chapter 31, “TEMPLATE,” on page 699

Before running CHECK DATA

Certain activities might be required before you run the CHECK DATA utility, depending on your situation.

For a table with no LOB columns

Before running CHECK DATA, you should run CHECK INDEX on primary key indexes and foreign key indexes to ensure that the indexes that CHECK DATA uses are valid. This action is especially important before using CHECK DATA with the DELETE YES or PART options.

For a table with LOB columns

If you plan to run CHECK DATA on a base table space that contains at least one LOB column, complete the following steps prior to running CHECK DATA:

1. Run CHECK LOB on the LOB table space.
2. Run CHECK INDEX on the index on the auxiliary table to ensure the validity of the LOB table space and the index on the auxiliary table.
3. Run CHECK INDEX on the indexes on the base table space.

The relationship between a base table with a LOB column and the LOB table space is shown in the following figure. The LOB column in the base table points to the auxiliary index on the LOB table space, as illustrated in the figure.

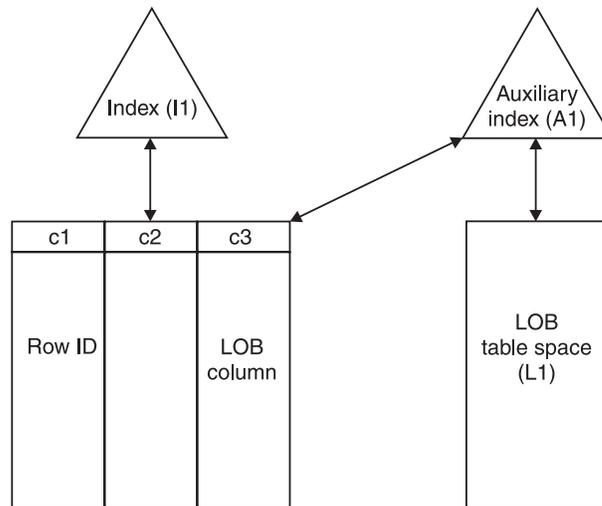


Figure 8. Relationship between a base table with a LOB column and the LOB table space

If the LOB table space is in either the CHECK-pending or RECOVER-pending status, or if the index on the auxiliary table is in REBUILD-pending status, CHECK DATA issues an error message and fails.

Complete all LOB column definitions. You must complete all LOB column definitions for a base table before running CHECK DATA. A LOB column definition is not complete until the LOB table space, auxiliary table, and index on the auxiliary table have been created. If any LOB column definition is not complete, CHECK DATA fails and issues error message DSNU075E.

For an XML table space

Before running CHECK DATA, run CHECK INDEX on the node ID index of each XML column. If you need to determine the XML objects, query the SYSXMLRELS catalog table.

Data sets that CHECK DATA uses

The CHECK DATA utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that CHECK DATA uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 8. Data sets that CHECK DATA uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	An input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	An output data set for messages.	Yes

Table 8. Data sets that CHECK DATA uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
Work data sets	Two temporary data sets for sort input and sort output. Specify the DD names by using the WORKDDN option of the utility control statement. The default <i>ddname</i> for sort input is SYSUT1. The default <i>ddname</i> for sort output is SORTOUT.	Yes
Error data set	An output data set that collects information about violations that are encountered during the CHECKDAT phase for referential constraints or the SCANTAB phase for check constraints. Specify the DD name by using the ERRDDN parameter of the utility control statement. The default <i>ddname</i> is SYSERR.	Yes
UTPRINT	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY).	Yes

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Table space

Object that is to be checked. (If you want to check only one partition of a table space, use the PART option in the control statement.)

Exception table

Table that stores rows that violate any referential constraints. For each table in a table space that is checked, specify the name of an exception table in the utility control statement. Any row that violates a referential constraint is copied to the exception table.

Sort work data sets cannot span volumes. Smaller volumes require more sort work data sets to sort the same amount of data; therefore, large volume sizes can reduce the number of needed sort work data sets. It is recommended that at least 1.2 times the amount of data to be sorted be provided in sort work data sets on disk.

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

Defining work data sets

Three sequential data sets are required during execution of CHECK DATA. Two work data sets and one error data set are described by DD statements in the WORKDDN and ERRDDN options.

To define work data sets:

1. Find the approximate size, in bytes, of the WORKDDN data set:

Option	Description
If a table space has a LOB column	Count a total of 70 bytes for the LOB column and multiply the sum by the number of keys and LOB columns that are checked.

Option	Description
If a table space does not have a LOB column	Add 18 to the length of the longest foreign key. For nonpadded indexes, the length of the longest foreign key is the maximum possible length of the key with all varying-length columns in the key padded to their maximum length, plus 2 bytes for each varying-length column.

2. Create the ERRDDN data set so that it is large enough to accommodate one error entry (length=60 bytes) per violation that CHECK DATA detects.

Shadow data sets

When you execute the CHECK DATA utility with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option, the utility uses shadow data sets.

If a table space, partition, or index resides in DB2-managed data sets and shadow data sets do not already exist when you execute CHECK DATA, DB2 creates the shadow data sets. At the end of CHECK DATA processing, the DB2-managed shadow data sets are deleted.

For user-managed data sets, DFSMSdss can create, or scratch and recreate, the required shadow data sets as needed. When the CHECK DATA utility completes the processing of user-managed data sets, the shadow data sets are not automatically scratched.

If you do not want the shadow data sets to be allocated in the same storage class as the production data sets, set the UTIL_TEMP_STORCLAS system parameter to specify the storage class for the shadow data sets.

Shadow data set names

Each shadow data set must have the following name:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.psname.y000z.Lnnn

In the preceding name, the variables have the following meanings:

variable

meaning

catname

The VSAM catalog name or alias

x

C or D

dbname

Database name

psname

Table space name or index name

y

I or J

z

1 or 2

Lnnn

Partition identifier. Use one of the following values:

- A001 through A999 for partitions 1 through 999

- B000 through B999 for partitions 1000 through 1999
- C000 through C999 for partitions 2000 through 2999
- D000 through D999 for partitions 3000 through 3999
- E000 through E996 for partitions 4000 through 4096

GUIP To determine the names of existing data sets, execute one of the following queries against the SYSTABLEPART or SYSINDEXPART catalog tables:

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
 WHERE DBNAME = 'dbname'
    AND TSNAME = 'psname';

SELECT DBNAME, IXNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES X, SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART Y
 WHERE X.NAME = Y.IXNAME
    AND X.CREATOR = Y.IXCREATOR
    AND X.DBNAME = 'dbname'
    AND X.INDEXSPACE = 'psname';
```

GUIP

For a partitioned table space, DB2 returns rows from which you select the row for the partitions that you want to check.

Defining shadow data sets

For a partitioned table space, DB2 returns rows from which you select the row for the partitions that you want to check.

Consider the following actions when you preallocate the data sets:

- Allocate the shadow data sets according to the rules for user-managed data sets.
- Define the shadow data sets as LINEAR.
- Use SHAREOPTIONS(3,3).
- Define the shadow data sets as EA-enabled if the original table space or index space is EA-enabled.
- Allocate the shadow data sets on the volumes that are defined in the storage group for the original table space or index space.

If you specify a secondary space quantity, DB2 does not use it. Instead, DB2 uses the SECQTY value for the table space or index space.

Recommendation: Use the MODEL option, which causes the new shadow data set to be created like the original data set. This method is shown in the following example:

```
DEFINE CLUSTER +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.psname.x0001.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.psname.y0001.L001')) +
  DATA +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.psname.x0001.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.psname.y0001.L001'))
```

Creating shadow data sets for indexes

When you preallocate shadow data sets for indexes, create the data sets as follows:

- Create shadow data sets for the partition of the table space and the corresponding partition in each partitioning index and data-partitioned secondary index.
- Create a shadow data set for logical partitions of nonpartitioned secondary indexes.

Use the same naming scheme for these index data sets as you use for other data sets that are associated with the base index, except use J0001 instead of I0001.

Estimating the size of shadow data sets

If you have not changed the value of FREEPAGE or PCTFREE, the amount of required space for a shadow data set is comparable to the amount of required space for the original data set.

Concurrency and compatibility for CHECK DATA

The CHECK DATA utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Claims and drains

The following table shows which claim classes CHECK DATA claims and drains and any restrictive status that the utility sets on the target object. The legend for these claim classes is located at the bottom of the table.

Table 9. Claim classes of CHECK DATA operations

Target objects	CHECK DATA DELETE NO	CHECK DATA DELETE YES	CHECK DATA PART DELETE NO	CHECK DATA PART DELETE YES
Table space or partition	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Partitioning index or index partition	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Secondary index	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	none	DR
Logical partition of index	none	none	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Primary index	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO
RI dependent and descendent table spaces and indexes	none	DA/UTUT	none	DA/UTUT
RI exception table spaces and indexes (FOR EXCEPTION only)	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT

Table 9. Claim classes of CHECK DATA operations (continued)

Target objects	CHECK DATA DELETE NO	CHECK DATA DELETE YES	CHECK DATA PART DELETE NO	CHECK DATA PART DELETE YES
Legend:				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access • DR: Drain the repeatable read class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers • DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers • UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control • UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed • none: Object not affected by this utility • RI: Referential Integrity 				

The following table shows claim classes on a LOB table space and an index on the auxiliary table.

Table 10. Claim classes of CHECK DATA operations on a LOB table space and index on the auxiliary table

Target objects	CHECK DATA DELETE NO	CHECK DATA DELETE YES
LOB table space	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Index on the auxiliary table	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT

Legend:

- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers
- DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed
- UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control

The following table shows claim classes of XML objects.

Table 11. Claim classes of XML objects

Target objects	CHECK DATA DELETE NO	CHECK DATA DELETE YES
XML table space	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
document ID and node ID indexes	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
XML index	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT

Legend:

- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers
- DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed
- UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control

When you specify CHECK DATA AUXERROR INVALIDATE, a drain-all is performed on the base table space, and the base table space is set UTUT.

Compatibility

The following utilities are compatible with CHECK DATA and can run concurrently on the same target object:

- DIAGNOSE
- MERGECOPY
- MODIFY

- REPORT
- STOSPACE
- UNLOAD (when CHECK DATA DELETE NO)

SQL operations and other online utilities are incompatible.

To run on DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, CHECK DATA must be the only utility in the job step and the only utility that is running in the DB2 subsystem.

The index on the auxiliary table for each LOB column inherits the same compatibility and concurrency attributes of a primary index.

Exception tables for the CHECK DATA utility

An *exception table* is a user-created table that duplicates the definition of a dependent table. The CHECK DATA utility checks the number of columns in the dependent table. The CHECK DATA utility also copies the deleted rows from the dependent table to the exception table.

The following table describes the contents of an exception table. This table lists the columns, a description of the column content, whether or not the column is required, the data type and length of the column value, and whether or not the column has the NULL attribute.

Table 12. Contents of exception tables

Column	Description	Required?	Data type and length	NULL attribute
1 to n	Corresponds to columns in the table that is being checked. These columns hold data from table rows that violate referential or table check constraints.	Yes	The same as the corresponding columns in the table that is being checked.	The same as the corresponding columns in the table that is being checked.
$n+1$	Identifies the RIDs of the invalid rows of the table that is being checked.	No	CHAR(4); CHAR(5) ¹ for table spaces that are defined with LARGE or DSSIZE options	Anything
$n+2$	Indicates the starting time of the CHECK DATA utility.	No	TIMESTAMP	Anything
$\geq n+2$	Additional columns that the CHECK DATA utility does not use.	No	Anything	Anything

Note:

1. You can use CHAR(5) for any type of table space, but you must use it for table spaces that are defined with the LARGE or DSSIZE options.

If you delete rows by using the CHECK DATA utility with SCOPE ALL, you must create exception tables for all tables that are named in the table spaces and for all their descendents. All descendents of any row are deleted.

When creating or using exception tables, be aware of the following guidelines:

- The exception tables should not have any unique indexes or referential or table check constraints that might cause errors when CHECK DATA inserts rows into them.

- You can create a new exception table before you run CHECK DATA, or you can use an existing exception table. The exception table can contain rows from multiple invocations of CHECK DATA.
- If column $n+2$ is of type TIMESTAMP, CHECK DATA records the starting time. Otherwise, it does not use column $n+2$.
- You must have DELETE authorization on the dependent table that is being checked.
- You must have INSERT authorization on the exception table.
- Column names in the exception table can have any name.
- Any change to the structure of the dependent table (such as a dropped column) is not automatically recorded in the exception table. You must make that change in the exception table.

Related reference

 CREATE TABLE (DB2 SQL)

Exception processing for tables with auxiliary columns

CHECK DATA writes constraint violations to exception tables. The exception table for the base table must have a similar auxiliary column and an auxiliary table space for each auxiliary column.

If an exception is found, DB2 moves the base table row with its auxiliary column to the exception table. If you specify DELETE YES, DB2 deletes the base table row and the auxiliary column.

An auxiliary table cannot be an exception table. A LOB column check error is not included in the exception count. A row with only a LOB column check error does not participate in exception processing.

Specifying the scope of CHECK DATA

Running CHECK DATA with SCOPE PENDING is normally sufficient. DB2 records which data rows must be checked to ensure the referential integrity of the table space.

You can find inconsistencies in the XML table space, the node ID index, or in the relationship between the document ID column and the node ID index by running the CHECK DATA utility.

Running CHECK DATA with SCOPE ALL or SCOPE AUXONLY and specifying INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES enables the XML structure checking of the specified XML tablespaces and consistency checking of the XML columns in the base table and their associated node ID indexes. Specifying XMLSCHEMAONLY with INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES limits the CHECK DATA scope to only XML schema validation for the XML columns.

To specify the scope of CHECK DATA:

Use one of the following approaches:

- If the scope information is in doubt, run the utility with the SCOPE ALL option. The scope information is recorded in the DB2 catalog. The scope information can become indoubt whenever you start the target table space with ACCESS(FORCE), or when the catalog is recovered to a point in time.

- If you want to check only the tables with LOB columns, specify the AUXONLY option. If you want to check all dependent tables in the specified table spaces **except** tables with LOB columns, specify the REFONLY option.

How violations are identified

CHECK DATA issues a message for every row that contains a referential constraint violation or table check constraint violation.

The violation is identified by:

- The RID of the row
- The name of the table that contains the row
- The name of the constraint that is being violated

The following figure shows an example of messages that CHECK DATA issues.

```

DSNU0501  DSNUGUTC - CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DBJM1203.TLJM1203
          TABLESPACE DBJM1203.TPJM1204
          FOR EXCEPTION IN TLJM1203.TBJM1203 USE ADMF001.EXCPT3
          IN TPJM1204.TBJM1204 USE ADMF001.EXCPT4 DELETE YES
DSNU7271 = DSNUKINP - TABLESPACE 'DBJM1203.TLJM1203' IS NOT CHECK PENDING

DSNU7301  DSNUKDST - CHECKING TABLE TPJM1204.TBJM1204
DSNU0421  DSNUGSOR - SORT PHASE STATISTICS -
          NUMBER OF RECORDS=4
          ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU07331 DSNUKERK - ROW (RID=X'000000020B') HAS NO PARENT FOR
TPJM1204.TBJM1204.TABFK
DSNU07331 DSNUKERK - ROW (RID=X'0010000201') HAS NO PARENT FOR
TPJM1204.TBJM1204.TABFK
DSNU07331 DSNUKERK - ROW (RID=X'002000020B') HAS NO PARENT FOR
TPJM1204.TBJM1204.TABFK
DSNU07331 DSNUKERK - ROW (RID=X'0030000201') HAS NO PARENT FOR
TPJM1204.TBJM1204.TABFK
DSNU7391  DSNUKDAT - CHECK TABLE TPJM1204.TBJM1204 COMPLETE, ELAPSED
TIME=00:00:00
DSNU7411 = DSNUKRDY - 4 ROWS DELETED FROM TABLE TPJM1204.TBJM1204
DSNU5681 = DSNUGSRX - INDEX TPJM1204.IPJM1204 IS IN INFORMATIONAL COPY PENDING
DSNU5681 = DSNUGSRX - INDEX TPJM1204.IXJM1204 IS IN INFORMATIONAL COPY PENDING
DSNU7491  DSNUK001 - CHECK DATA COMPLETE,ELAPSED TIME=00:00:02
DSNU0101  DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=4

```

Figure 9. Example of messages that CHECK DATA issues

Detection and correction of constraint violations

You can avoid problems by running CHECK DATA with DELETE NO to detect violations before you attempt to correct the errors.

If required, use DELETE YES after you analyze the output and understand the errors.

You can automatically delete rows that violate referential or table check constraints by specifying CHECK DATA with DELETE YES. However, you should be aware of the following possible problems:

- The violation might be created by a non-referential integrity error. For example, the indexes on a table might be inconsistent with the data in a table.
- Deleting a row might cause a cascade of secondary deletes in dependent tables. The cascade of deletes might be especially inconvenient within referential integrity cycles.

- The error might be in the parent table.

CHECK DATA uses the primary key index and all indexes that exactly match a foreign key. Therefore, before running CHECK DATA, ensure that the indexes are consistent with the data by using the CHECK INDEX utility.

How CHECK DATA detects XML errors

Run CHECK DATA with the INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES option to verify the consistency of the XML table space and the node ID index.

The following checks will be performed:

- Verify that all rows that comprise an XML document exist in the XML table space and that all nodes in that XML document are structurally intact.
- Verify that the node ID index is consistent with the content in the XML table space. No index entries must exist without an associated XML document and each XML document in the XML table space must have corresponding entries in the node ID index.
- Verify that the references from the base table space ID column contains only entries that can be found in the node ID index in the XML table space. Also verify that the node ID index does not contain any entries for which no matching value in the document ID column in the base table space can be found.

Any inconsistencies found are reported as errors. All remaining parts of corrupted XML documents will be deleted from the XML table space. All the associated node ID index entries for the affected XML document will be deleted and the XML column in the base table will be set to an invalid status.

When running with SHRLEVEL CHANGE, CHECK DATA operates on shadow copies of the table spaces to be checked, corresponding REPAIR statements are generated. These generated statements must be executed by the REPAIR utility to perform the mandatory actions which CHECK DATA has identified.

Two REPAIR statements are generated.

- One statement deletes the corrupted XML document and its associated node ID index entries.
- The other REPAIR statement sets the XML column in the base table to an invalid status.

You can specify INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES to do structure checking and XML schema validation. If you also specify SCOPE XMLSCHEMAONLY, you can do only XML schema validation, on the columns that you specify in the INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES parameter. When CHECK DATA identifies an XML document that is not valid according to an XML type modifier, and the AUXERROR INVALIDATE or XMLERROR INVALIDATE options are specified, CHECK DATA removes the XML document from its XML table space and adds the XML document to an implicitly created XML exception table. There is at most one XML exception table for each XML column. When CHECK DATA identifies an XML document that is not valid according to an XML type modifier, and the AUXERROR REPORT or XMLERROR REPORT options are specified, CHECK DATA reports the invalid XML document. See the text in the DCR under Creation of implicit XML exception tables, for details on what to write.

Correcting XML data after running CHECK DATA

After you run the CHECK DATA utility, you might need to correct XML data.

To correct XML data after running CHECK DATA:

Based on the CHECK DATA output, perform one of the following actions:

Problem	Action
Problem with corrupted XML data	REPAIR statements are generated to delete each corrupted XML document from the XML table space and its associated node ID index entry.
Problem with document ID index	Run generated REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE control statements.
Problem with node ID index	Run generated REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE control statements.
Problem with integrity of XML column in the base table and the node ID index	

Resetting CHECK-pending status

If a table space has a status of CHECK-pending, you can remove the CHECK-pending status by correcting the error and running a utility job. You can either rerun the CHECK DATA utility with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE specified or you can run the REPAIR utility.

To remove CHECK-pending status by running the CHECK DATA utility:

- Use the DELETE NO option if no tables contain rows that violate referential or table check constraints. If referential or table check constraint violations are found, the table space or partition is placed in CHECK-pending status.
- Use the DELETE YES option to remove all rows that violate referential or table check constraints.

LOB column errors

If you run CHECK DATA on a base table space that contains at least one LOB column, you might receive an error on the LOB column.

If you specify CHECK DATA AUXERROR REPORT, AUXERROR INVALIDATE, LOBERROR REPORT, or LOBERROR INVALIDATE and a LOB column check error is detected, DB2 issues a message that identifies the table, row, column, and type of error. Any additional actions depend on the option that you specify for the AUXERROR or LOBERROR parameter:

When you specify the AUXERROR REPORT or LOBERROR REPORT option

DB2 sets the base table space to the auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status. If CHECK DATA encounters only invalid LOB columns and no other LOB column errors, the base table space is set to the auxiliary warning (AUXW) status.

When you specify the AUXERROR INVALIDATE or LOBERROR INVALIDATE option

DB2 sets the base table LOB columns that are in error to an invalid status. DB2 resets the invalid status of LOB columns that have been corrected. If any invalid LOB columns remain in the base table, DB2 sets the base table

space to auxiliary warning (AUXW) status. You can use SQL to update a LOB column that is in the AUXW status; however, any other attempt to access the column results in a -904 SQL return code.

If you run CHECK DATA AUXERROR REPORT or INVALIDATE on a base table space that contains at least one LOB column, the following errors might be reported:

Orphan LOBs

An orphan LOB column is a LOB that is found in the LOB table space but that is not referenced by the base table space. If an orphan error is the only type of error reported by CHECK DATA, the base table is considered correct.

An orphan can result from the following situations:

- You recover the base table space to a point in time prior to the insertion of the base table row.
- You recover the base table space to a point in time prior to the definition of the LOB column.
- You recover the LOB table space to a point in time prior to the deletion of a base table row.
- A base record ROWID is incorrect, which results in an orphan LOB column error message and a missing LOB column error message. The missing LOB column error message identifies the ROWID, VERSION and row in error. The missing LOB column is handled depending on the value that you specify for the AUXERROR or LOBERROR parameter.

Missing LOBs

A missing LOB column is a LOB that is referenced by the base table space but that is not in the LOB table space. A missing LOB can result from the following situations:

- You recover the LOB table space to a point in time prior to the first insertion of the LOB into the base table.
- You recover the LOB table space to a point in time when the LOB column is null or has a zero length

Out-of-synch LOBs

An out-of-synch LOB error is a LOB that is found in both the base table and the LOB table space, but the LOB in the LOB table space is at a different level. A LOB column is also out-of-synch if the base table is null or has a zero length, but the LOB is found in the LOB table space. An out-of-synch LOB can occur anytime you recover the LOB table space or the base table space to a prior point in time.

Invalid LOBs

An invalid LOB is an uncorrected LOB column error that is found by a previous execution of CHECK DATA AUXERROR INVALIDATE.

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Resetting auxiliary CHECK-pending status

A table space with LOB or XML columns can be recovered to a point in time. In this case, RECOVER TABLESPACE sets the auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status on the table space. You can remove the auxiliary CHECK-pending status if DB2 does not find any inconsistencies.

Use one of the following actions to reset auxiliary CHECK-pending status:

To reset auxiliary CHECK-pending status:

Take one of the following actions:

- Use the SCOPE(ALL) option to check all dependent tables in the specified table space. The checks include referential integrity constraints, table check constraints, and the existence of LOB and XML columns.
- Use the SCOPE(PENDING) option to check table spaces or partitions with CHKP status. The checks include referential integrity constraints, table check constraints, and the existence of LOB and XML columns.
- Use the SCOPE(AUXONLY) option to check for LOB and XML columns.

If you specified the AUXERROR(INVALIDATE), LOBERROR(INVALIDATE) or XMLERROR(INVALIDATE) option and DB2 finds inconsistencies, it places the table space in AUXW status.

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Termination and restart of CHECK DATA

You can terminate and restart the CHECK DATA utility.

When you terminate CHECK DATA, table spaces remain in the same CHECK-pending status as they were at the time the utility was terminated. The CHECKDAT phase places the table space in the CHECK-pending status when CHECK DATA detects an error; at the end of the phase, CHECK DATA resets the CHECK-pending status if it detects no errors. The REPORTCK phase resets the CHECK-pending status if you specify the DELETE YES option.

You can restart a CHECK DATA utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

Sample CHECK DATA control statements

Use sample control statements as models for developing your own CHECK DATA control statements.

Example 1: Copying violations into exception tables

The control statement specifies that the CHECK DATA utility is to check for and delete any rows that violate referential and table check constraints in table spaces DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D and DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E. CHECK DATA copies any rows that violate these constraints into the exception tables that are specified in the FOR EXCEPTION clause. For example, CHECK DATA is to copy the violations in table DSN8810.DEPT into table DSN8810.EDEPT.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU1UQ.CHK1',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK3.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//        UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(8000,(200,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSERR DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK3.SYSERR,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//        UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(6000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK3.STEP1.SORTOUT,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//        UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(6000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
           TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
           FOR EXCEPTION IN DSN81010.DEPT      USE DSN81010.EDEPT
                           IN DSN81010.EMP      USE DSN81010.EEMP
                           IN DSN81010.PROJ      USE DSN81010.EPROJ
                           IN DSN81010.PROJACT   USE DSN81010.EPROJACT
                           IN DSN81010.EMPPROJACT USE DSN81010.EEPA
           DELETE YES
//*
```

Example 2: Creating an exception table for the project activity table

You can create an exception table for the project activity table by using the following SQL statements: 

```
EXEC SQL
CREATE TABLE EPROJACT
  LIKE DSN81010.PROJACT
  IN DATABASE DSN8D10A
ENDEXEC

EXEC SQL
ALTER TABLE EPROJACT
  ADD RID CHAR(4)
ENDEXEC

EXEC SQL
ALTER TABLE EPROJACT
  ADD TIME TIMESTAMP NOT NULL WITH DEFAULT
ENDEXEC
```

 The first statement requires the SELECT privilege on table DSN81010.PROJACT and the privileges that are usually required to create a table.

Table EPROJACT has the same structure as table DSN81010.PROJACT, but it can have two extra columns. The columns in EPROJACT are:

- Its first five columns mimic the columns of the project activity table; they have exactly the same names and descriptions. Although the column names are the same, they do not need to be. However, the rest of the column attributes for the initial columns must be same as those of the table that is being checked.

- The next column, which is added by ALTER TABLE, is optional; CHECK DATA uses it as an identifier. The name "RID" is an arbitrary choice; if the table already has a column with that name, use a different name. The column description, CHAR(4), is required.
- The final timestamp column is also optional. If you define the timestamp column, a row identifier (RID) column must precede this column. You might define a permanent exception table for each table that is subject to referential or table check constraints. You can define it once and use it to hold invalid rows that CHECK DATA detects. The TIME column allows you to identify rows that were added by the most recent run of the utility.

Eventually, you correct the data in the exception tables, perhaps with an SQL UPDATE statement, and transfer the corrections to the original tables by using

statements that are similar to those in the following example: 

```
INSERT INTO DSN81010.PROJACT
  SELECT PROJNO, ACTNO, ACSTAFF, ACSTDATE, ACENDATE
  FROM EPROJACT
  WHERE TIME > CURRENT_TIMESTAMP - 1 DAY;
```

 **GUPI**

Example 3: Running CHECK DATA on a table space with LOBs

Assume that table space DBIQUQ01.TPIQU01 contains LOB columns. In the following control statement, the SCOPE ALL option indicates that CHECK DATA is to check all rows in all dependent tables in table space DBIQUQ01.TPIQU01 for the following violations:

- Violations of referential constraints
- Violations of table check constraints
- Inconsistencies between the base table space and the corresponding LOB table space.

The AUXERROR INVALIDATE option indicates that if the CHECK DATA utility finds a LOB column error in this table space, it is to perform the following actions:

- Issues a warning message
- Sets the base table LOB column to an invalid status
- Sets the base table to auxiliary warning (AUXW) status

```
//STEP11 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU1UQ.CHK2',
//          UTPROC='',
//          SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK2.STEP5.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK2.STEP5.SORTOUT,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSERR DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK2.SYSERR,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DBIQUQ01.TPIQU01 SCOPE ALL
AUXERROR INVALIDATE
/*
```

Example 4: Specifying the maximum number of exceptions

The control statement specifies that the CHECK DATA utility is to check all rows in partition number 254 in table space DBNC0216.TPNC0216. The EXCEPTIONS 1 option indicates that the utility is to terminate when it finds one exception. Any exceptions are to be reported by messages only.

```

//CKDATA EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='L450TST3.CHECK',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSREC DD DSN=L450TST3.CHECK.STEP1.SYSREC,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSERR DD DSN=L450TST3.CHECK.STEP1.SYSERR,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(2000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=L450TST3.CHECK.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=L450TST3.CHECK.STEP1.SORTOUT,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DBNC0216.TPNC0216 PART 254
SCOPE ALL EXCEPTIONS 1
/*

```

Example 5: Running CHECK DATA on a clone table

The control statement specifies that the CHECK DATA utility is to check the clone table in the specified table space.

```

CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DBNI0101.TSNI010P CLONE SCOPE ALL
ERRDDN SYSERR

```

Example 6: Running CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL CHANGE

The control statement specifies that the CHECK DATA utility is to specifies that applications can read from and write to the table space that is to be checked.

```

CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DBNI0101.TSNI010P SHRLEVEL CHANGE

```

Example 7: Checking several table spaces

To check several table spaces, you can specify more than one table space in a CHECK DATA control statement. This technique is useful for checking a complete set of referentially related table spaces. The following example shows a CHECK DATA control statement that lists more than one table space.

```

CHECK DATA
TABLESPACE DBJM1203.TLJM1203
TABLESPACE DBJM1203.TPJM1204
FOR EXCEPTION IN TLJM1203.TBJM1203 USE ADMF001.EXCPT3
IN TPJM1204.TMBJM1204 USE ADMF001.EXCPT4
DELETE YES

```

Example 8:

The control statement specifies how to include consistency checking of XML columns in a base table with the associated node ID indexes. Specify XMLSCHEMAONLY with INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES to limit the CHECK DATA scope to only XML schema validation for the XML columns.

```

CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DBNI0101.TSNI010P INCLUDE XML TABLESPACES
SCOPE XMLSCHEMAONLY AUXONLY

```

Chapter 9. CHECK INDEX

The CHECK INDEX online utility tests whether indexes are consistent with the data that they index, and it issues warning messages when it finds an inconsistency.

Run the CHECK INDEX utility after a conditional restart or a point-in-time recovery on all table spaces whose indexes might not be consistent with the data.

Also run CHECK INDEX before running CHECK DATA, especially if you specify DELETE YES. Running CHECK INDEX before CHECK DATA ensures that the indexes that CHECK DATA uses are valid. When checking an auxiliary table index, CHECK INDEX verifies that each LOB is represented by an index entry, and that an index entry exists for every LOB.

Important: Inaccurate statistics for tables, table spaces, or indexes can result in a sort failure during CHECK INDEX.

Running CHECK INDEX when the index has a VARBINARY column

If you run CHECK INDEX against the index with the following characteristics, CHECK INDEX fails:

- The index was created on a VARBINARY column or a column with a distinct type that is based on a VARBINARY data type.
- The index column has the DESC attribute.

To fix the problem, alter the column data type to BINARY, and then rebuild the index.

Output

CHECK INDEX generates several messages that show whether the indexes are consistent with the data.

For unique indexes, any two null values are treated as equal values, unless the index was created with the UNIQUE WHERE NOT NULL clause. In that case, if the key is a single column, it can contain any number of null values, and CHECK INDEX does not issue an error message.

CHECK INDEX issues an error message if it finds two or more null values and the unique index was not created with the UNIQUE WHERE NOT NULL clause.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- STATS privilege for the database
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority

- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute CHECK INDEX, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 databases.

If you are using SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the batch user ID that invokes COPY with the CONCURRENT option must provide the necessary authority to execute the DFSMSdss ADRDSSU command. DFSMSdss will create a shadow data set with the authority of the utility batch address space. The submitter should have an RACF ALTER authority, or its equivalent, for the shadow data set.

Execution phases of CHECK INDEX

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	
-----------------	--

	Performs initialization
--	-------------------------

UNLOAD	
---------------	--

	Unloads index entries
--	-----------------------

SORT	Sorts unloaded index entries
-------------	------------------------------

CHECKIDX	
-----------------	--

	Scans data to validate index entries
--	--------------------------------------

UTILTERM	
-----------------	--

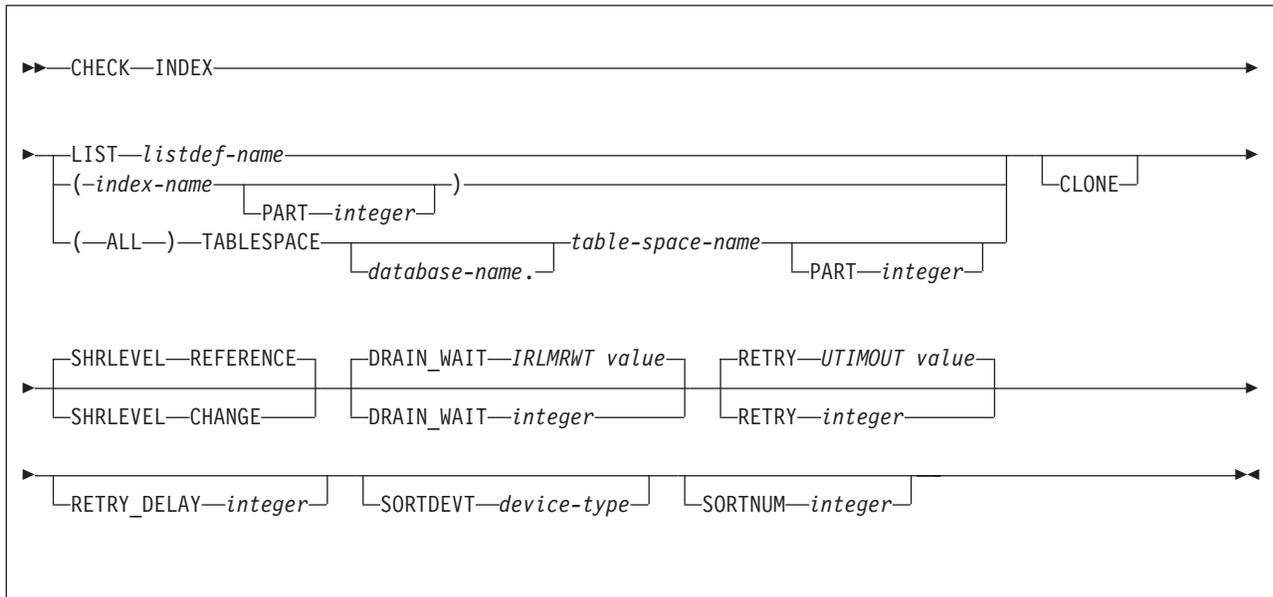
	Performs cleanup
--	------------------

Syntax and options of the CHECK INDEX control statement

The CHECK INDEX utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

INDEX

Indicates that you are checking for index consistency.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The list should contain only index spaces. Do not specify the name of an index or of a table space. DB2 groups indexes by their related table space and executes CHECK INDEX once per table space. CHECK INDEX allows one LIST keyword for each control statement in CHECK INDEX. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

(*index-name, ...*)

Specifies the indexes that are to be checked. All indexes must belong to tables in the same table space. If you omit this option, you must use the (ALL) TABLESPACE option. Then CHECK INDEX checks all indexes on all tables in the table space that you specify.

index-name is the name of an index, in the form *creator-id.name*. If you omit the qualifier *creator-id.*, the user identifier for the utility job is used. If you use a list of names, separate items in the list by commas. Parentheses are required around a name or list of names. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

PART *integer*

Identifies a physical partition of a partitioned index or a logical partition of a nonpartitioned index that is to be checked for consistency. If you specify an index on a nonpartitioned table space, an error occurs.

integer is the number of the partition and must be in the range from 1 to the number of partitions that are defined for the table space. The maximum is 4096.

If the PART keyword is not specified, CHECK INDEX tests the entire target index for consistency.

(ALL)

Specifies that all indexes in the specified table space that are referenced by the table space are to be checked.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space from which all indexes are to be checked. If an explicit list of index names is not specified, all indexes on all tables in the specified table space are checked.

Do not specify TABLESPACE with an explicit list of index names.

database-name is the name of the database that the table space belongs to. The **default** value is **DSNDB04**.

table-space-name is the name of the table space from which all indexes are checked.

CLONE

Indicates that CHECK INDEX is to check only the specified indexes that are on clone tables. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates the type of access that is to be allowed for the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked during CHECK INDEX processing.

REFERENCE

Specifies that applications can read from but cannot write to the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked.

If you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or use this value as the default, DB2 unloads the index entries, sorts the index entries, and scans the data to validate the index entries.

CHANGE

Specifies that applications can read from and write to the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked.

If you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, DB2 performs the following actions:

- Drains all writers and forces the buffers to disk for the specified object and all of its indexes
- Invokes DFSMSdss to copy the specified object and all of its indexes to shadow data sets
- Enables read-write access for the specified object and all of its indexes
- Runs CHECK INDEX on the shadow data sets

By default, DFSMSdss uses FlashCopy to copy DB2 objects to shadow data sets, if FlashCopy is available. If DFSMSdss cannot use FlashCopy, DFSMSdss uses a slower method. As a result, creating copies of objects might take a long time, and the time during which the data and indexes have read-only access might increase. You can set the CHECK_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter to REQUIRED to force the CHECK utility to use only FlashCopy. If FlashCopy is not available, the CHECK utility fails.

DRAIN_WAIT *integer*

Specifies the number of seconds that CHECK INDEX is to wait when draining the table space or index. The specified time is the aggregate time for objects

that are to be checked. This value overrides the values that are specified by the IRLMRWT and UTIMOUT subsystem parameters.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 1800. If you do not specify DRAIN_WAIT or specify a value of 0, CHECK INDEX uses the value of the lock timeout subsystem parameter IRLMRWT.

RETRY *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of retries that CHECK INDEX is to attempt.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 255. Specifying a value other than 0 can increase processing costs and result in multiple or extended periods during which the specified index, table space, or partition is in read-only access.

If you do not specify RETRY, CHECK INDEX uses the value of the utility multiplier subsystem parameter UTIMOUT.

RETRY_DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum duration, in seconds, between retries. *integer* can be any integer from 1 to 1800.

If you do not specify RETRY_DELAY, CHECK INDEX uses the smaller of the following two values:

- DRAIN_WAIT value × RETRY value
- DRAIN_WAIT value × 10

SORTDEVT *device-type*

Specifies the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the external sort program. You can specify any disk device type that is acceptable to the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTION control statement for the sort program.

A TEMPLATE specification does not dynamically allocate sort work data sets. The SORTDEVT keyword controls dynamic allocation of these data sets.

device-type is the device type. If you omit SORTDEVT and a sort is required, you must provide the DD statements that the sort program requires for the temporary data sets.

SORTNUM *integer*

Specifies the number of temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

If you omit SORTDEVT, SORTNUM is ignored. If you use SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program; the sort program uses its own default.

You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort. The SORTNUM value applies to each sort invocation in the utility. For example, if three indexes, SORTKEYS is specified, there are no constraints that limit parallelism, and SORTNUM is specified as 8, a total of 24 sort work data sets are allocated for a job.

Each sort work data set consumes both above-the-line and below-the-line virtual storage, so if you specify a value for SORTNUM that is too high, the utility might decrease the degree of parallelism due to virtual storage constraints, and possibly decreasing the degree down to one, meaning no parallelism.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

Related concepts

“Subsystem parameters for refining DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities” on page 35

Related reference

[DB2 Sort](#)

Chapter 15, “LISTDEF,” on page 199

Related information

[DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Data sets that CHECK INDEX uses

The CHECK INDEX utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that CHECK INDEX uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 13. Data sets that CHECK INDEX uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	An input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	An output data set for messages.	Yes
UTPRINT	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY).	Yes

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Index space

Object that is to be checked. (If you want to check only one partition of an index, use the PART option in the control statement.)

Related reference

[DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

[DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Shadow data sets

When you execute the CHECK INDEX utility with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option, the utility uses shadow data sets.

If a table space, partition, or index resides in DB2-managed data sets and shadow data sets do not already exist when you execute CHECK INDEX, DB2 creates the shadow data sets. At the end of CHECK INDEX processing, the DB2-managed shadow data sets are deleted.

For user-managed data sets, DFSMSdss can create or scratch and recreate the required shadow data sets as needed. When the CHECK INDEX utility completes the processing of user-managed data sets, the shadow data sets are not automatically scratched.

If you do not want the shadow data sets to be allocated in the same storage class as the production data sets, set the UTIL_TEMP_STORCLAS system parameter to specify the storage class for the shadow data sets.

Shadow data set names

Each shadow data set must have the following name:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.psname.y000z.Lnnn

In the preceding name, the variables have the following meanings:

variable

meaning

catname

The VSAM catalog name or alias

x

C or D

dbname

Database name

psname

Table space name or index name

y

I or J

z

1 or 2

Lnnn

Partition identifier. Use one of the following values:

- A001 through A999 for partitions 1 through 999
- B000 through B999 for partitions 1000 through 1999
- C000 through C999 for partitions 2000 through 2999
- D000 through D999 for partitions 3000 through 3999
- E000 through E996 for partitions 4000 through 4096

GUPI

To determine the names of existing data sets, execute one of the following queries against the SYSTABLEPART or SYSINDEXPART catalog tables:

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
 WHERE DBNAME = 'dbname'
 AND TSNAME = 'psname';

SELECT DBNAME, IXNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES X, SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART Y
 WHERE X.NAME = Y.IXNAME
 AND X.CREATOR = Y.IXCREATOR
 AND X.DBNAME = 'dbname'
 AND X.INDEXSPACE = 'psname';
```

GUPI

Defining shadow data sets

For a partitioned table space, DB2 returns rows from which you select the row for the partitions that you want to check.

Consider the following actions when you preallocate the data sets:

- Allocate the shadow data sets according to the rules for user-managed data sets.
- Define the shadow data sets as LINEAR.
- Use SHAREOPTIONS(3,3).
- Allocate base or clone objects
- Define the shadow data sets as EA-enabled if the original table space or index space is EA-enabled.
- Allocate the shadow data sets on the volumes that are defined in the storage group for the original table space or index space.

If you specify a secondary space quantity, DB2 does not use it. Instead, DB2 uses the SECQTY value for the table space or index space.

Recommendation: Use the MODEL option, which causes the new shadow data set to be created like the original data set. This method is shown in the following example:

```
DEFINE CLUSTER +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.psname.x000z.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.psname.y000z.L001')) +
  DATA +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.psname.x000z.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.psname.y000z.L001'))
```

Creating shadow data sets for indexes

When you preallocate shadow data sets for indexes, create the data sets as follows:

- Create shadow data sets for the partition of the table space and the corresponding partition in each partitioning index and data-partitioned secondary index.
- Create a shadow data set for logical partitions of nonpartitioned secondary indexes.

Use the same naming scheme for these index data sets as you use for other data sets that are associated with the base index, except use J0001 instead of I0001.

Estimating the size of shadow data sets

If you have not changed the value of FREEPAGE or PCTFREE, the amount of required space for a shadow data set is comparable to the amount of required space for the original data set.

Concurrency and compatibility for CHECK INDEX

The CHECK INDEX utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Claims and drains

The following table shows which claim classes CHECK INDEX claims and drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 14. Claim classes of CHECK INDEX operations

Target	CHECK INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	CHECK INDEX PART SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	CHECK INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE	CHECK INDEX PART SHRLEVEL CHANGE
Table space or partition	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRW	DW/UTRW
Partitioning index or index partition	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRW	DW/UTRW
Secondary index ¹	DW/UTRO	none	DW/UTRW	DW/UTRW
Data-partitioned secondary index or index partition ²	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRW	DW/UTRW
Logical partition of an index	none	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRW	DW/UTRW

Legend:

- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read only-access allowed
- UTRW: Utility restrictive state, read and write access allowed
- none: Object not affected by this utility

Note:

1. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over non-partitioned XML table spaces and XML indexes.
2. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over partitioned XML table spaces.

CHECK INDEX does not set a utility restrictive state if the target object is DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

CHECK INDEX of an XML index cannot run if REBUILD INDEX, REORG INDEX, or RECOVER is being run on that index because CHECK INDEX needs access to the node ID index. CHECK INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE cannot run two jobs concurrently for two different indexes that are in the same table space or partition because the snapshot shadow will have a conflicting name for the table space.

Compatibility

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with CHECK INDEX on the same target object. The first column lists the other utility and the second column lists whether or not that utility is compatible with CHECK INDEX. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or an index partition. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also documented in the table.

Table 15. Compatibility of CHECK INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE with other utilities

Action	Compatible with CHECK INDEX?
CHECK DATA	No
CHECK INDEX.	Yes
CHECK LOB	Yes
COPY INDEXSPACE	Yes

Table 15. Compatibility of CHECK INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE with other utilities (continued)

Action	Compatible with CHECK INDEX?
COPY TABLESPACE	Yes
DIAGNOSE	Yes
LOAD	No
MERGECOPY	Yes
MODIFY	Yes
QUIESCE	Yes
REBUILD INDEX	No
RECOVER INDEX	No
RECOVER TABLESPACE	No
REORG INDEX	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	Yes
REPAIR DELETE or REPLACE	No
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY	Yes
REPORT	Yes
RUNSTATS	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes

To run on SYSIBM.DSNLUX01 or SYSIBM.DSNLUX02, CHECK INDEX must be the only utility within the job step.

Single logical partitions

You can run CHECK INDEX on a single logical partition of a secondary index. However, what CHECK INDEX can detect is limited.

- CHECK INDEX does not detect duplicate unique keys in different logical partitions. For example, logical partition 1 might have the following keys:

A B E F T Z

Logical partition 2 might have the following keys:

M N Q T V X

In this example, the keys are unique within each logical partition, but both logical partitions contain the key, T; so for the index as a whole, the keys are not unique. CHECK INDEX does not detect the duplicates.

- CHECK INDEX does not detect keys that are out of sequence between different logical partitions. For example, the following keys are out of sequence:

1 7 5 8 9 10 12

If keys 1, 5, 9, and 12 belong to logical partition 1 and keys 7, 8, and 10 belong to logical partition 2, the keys within each partition are in sequence, but the keys for the index, as a whole, are out of sequence, as shown in the following example:

LP 1 1 5 9 12 LP 2 7 8 10

When checking a single logical partition, CHECK INDEX does not detect this out-of-sequence condition.

Indexes in parallel

If you specify more than one index to check, CHECK INDEX checks the indexes in parallel unless constrained by available memory or sort work files. Checking indexes in parallel reduces the elapsed time for a CHECK INDEX job by sorting the index keys and checking multiple indexes in parallel, rather than sequentially.

The following figure shows the flow of a CHECK INDEX job with a parallel index check for a nonpartitioned table space or a single partition of a partitioned table space.

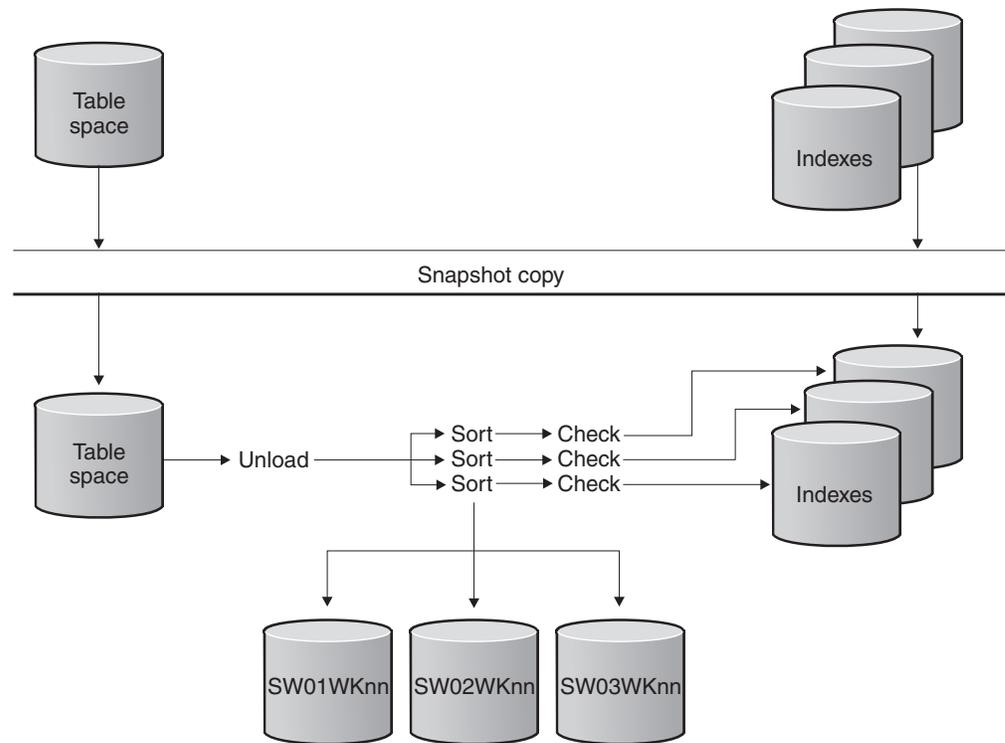


Figure 10. Parallel index check for a nonpartitioned table space or a single partition of a partitioned table space

The following figure shows the flow of a CHECK INDEX job with a parallel index check for all partitioning indexes on a partitioned table space.

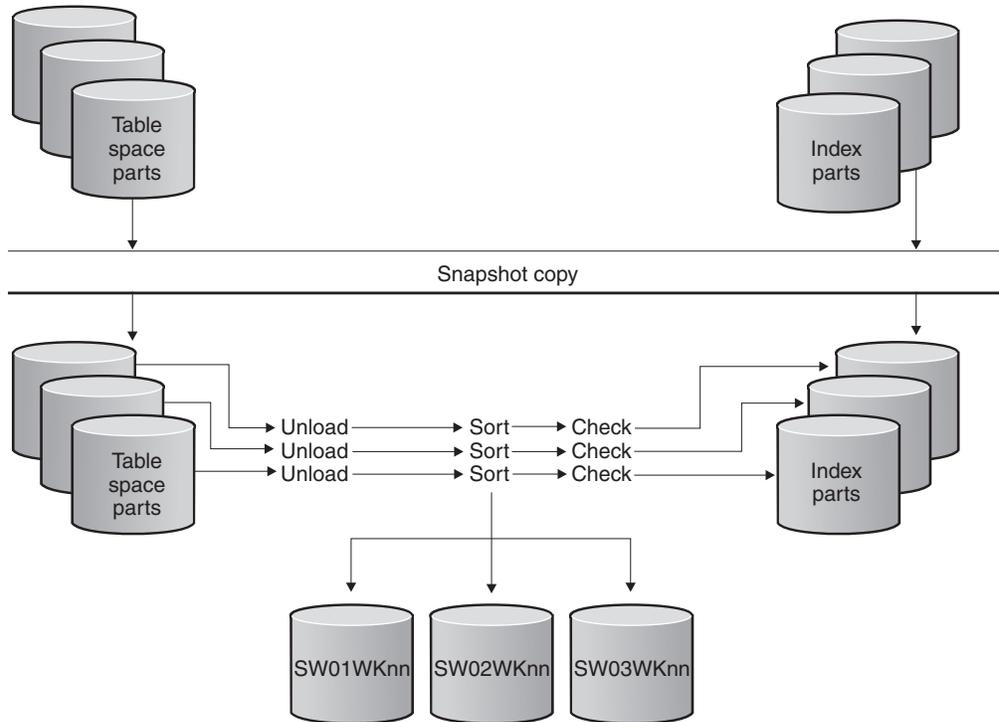


Figure 11. Parallel index check for all partitioning indexes on a partitioned table space

The following figure shows the flow of a CHECK INDEX job with a parallel index check for a partitioned table space with a single nonpartitioned secondary index.

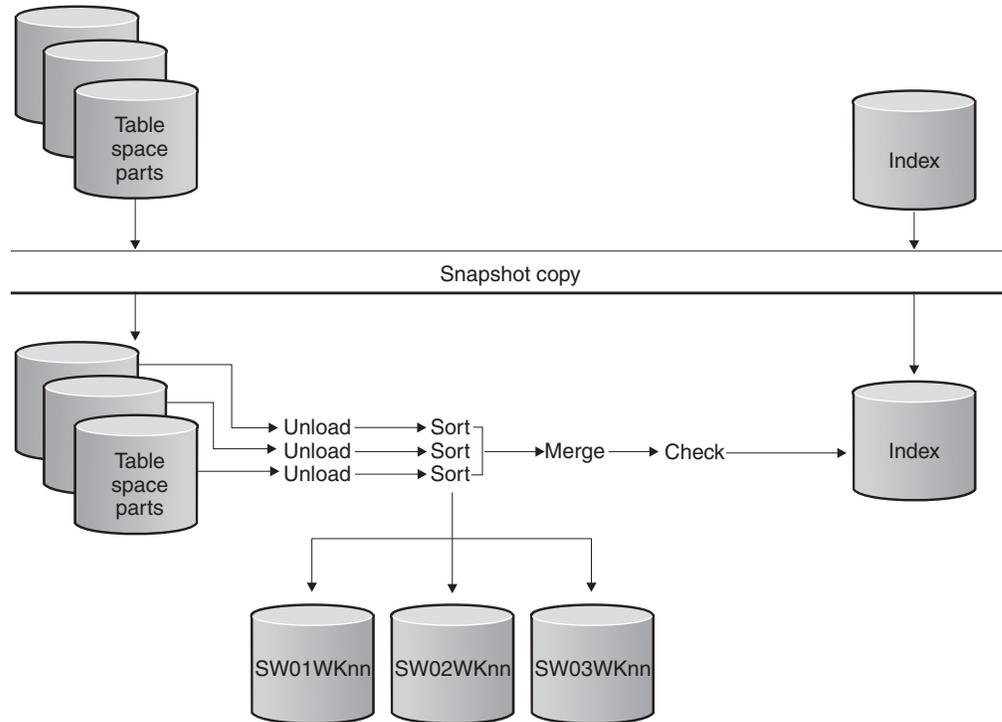


Figure 12. Parallel index check for a partitioned table space with a single nonpartitioned secondary index

The following figure shows the flow of a CHECK INDEX job with a parallel index check for all indexes on a partitioned table space. Each unload task pipes keys to each sort task, sorting the keys and piping them back to the check tasks.

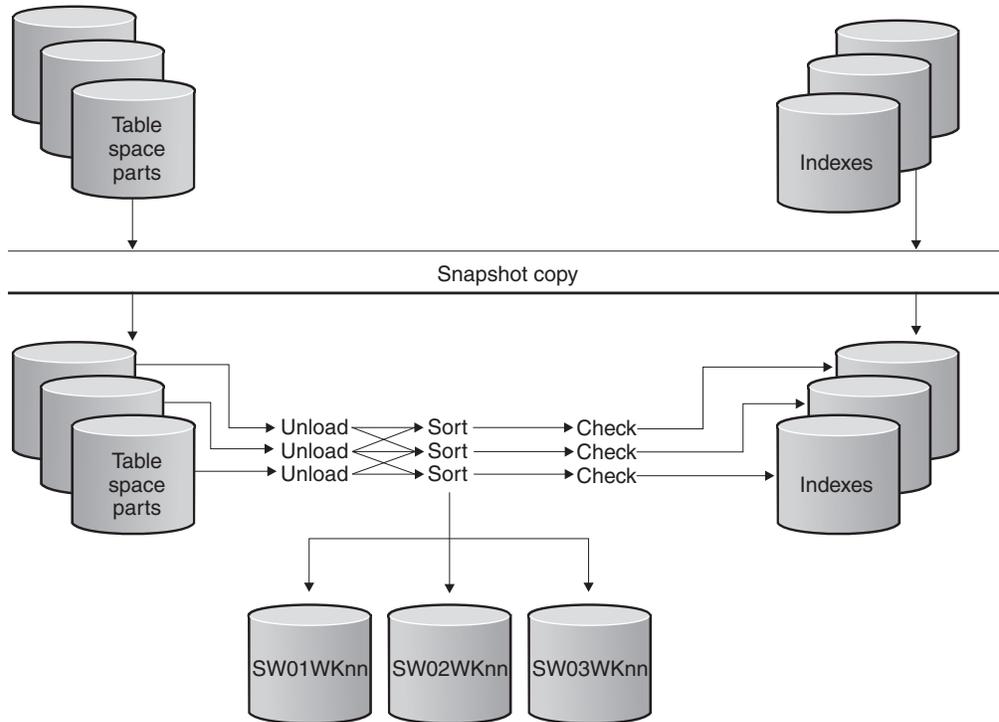


Figure 13. Parallel index check for all indexes on a partitioned table space

Reviewing CHECK INDEX output

CHECK INDEX indicates whether a table space and its indexes are inconsistent, but it does not correct any such inconsistencies. If CHECK INDEX detects inconsistencies, you should analyze the output to determine the problem and then correct the inconsistency.

To identify the inconsistency:

1. Examine the error messages that CHECK INDEX issues.
2. Verify the point in time for each object that is recovered. Use output from REPORT RECOVERY to ensure that the table space and indexes are recovered to the same point in time. If you specify TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY, ensure that the point in time is a SHRLEVEL REFERENCE copy.
3. If the table space is correct, run the REBUILD INDEX utility to rebuild the indexes.
4. If the index is correct, determine a consistent point in time for the table space, and run the RECOVER utility on the table space. Run CHECK INDEX again to verify consistency.
5. If neither the table space nor its indexes are correct, determine a point in time to which to recover both the table space and indexes, and then rerun the RECOVER utility job, including the table space and its indexes all in the same list.

Termination or restart of CHECK INDEX

You can terminate and restart the CHECK INDEX utility.

You can terminate CHECK INDEX in any phase without any integrity exposure.

You can restart a CHECK INDEX utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Correcting XML data after running CHECK INDEX

After you run the CHECK INDEX utility, you might need to correct XML data.

To correct XML data:

Based on the CHECK INDEX output, perform one of the following actions:

Problem	Action
Problem with a document ID index	1. Confirm that the base table space is at the correct level. 2. Rebuild the index.
Problem with an XML table space for a node ID index or an XML index and the index is correct	Run REPAIR LOCATE RID DELETE to remove the orphan row.
Problem with an XML table space for a node ID index or an XML index and the index is incorrect	Run REBUILD INDEX or RECOVER INDEX to rebuild the index.
Problem with an XML index over an XML table space	Run REBUILD INDEX to rebuild the index. Restriction: Do not run REPAIR LOCATE RID DELETE to remove orphan rows unless the node ID index does not represent the same row and the base table space does not use the document ID index.

Sample CHECK INDEX control statements

Sample control statements are helpful as models for developing your own CHECK INDEX control statements.

Example 1: Checking all indexes

The control statement specifies that the CHECK INDEX utility is to check all indexes in sample table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU1UQ.CHK1',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK3.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(8000,(200,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSERR DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK3.SYSERR,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(6000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=IUIQU1UQ.CHK3.STEP1.SORTOUT,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
```

```
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(6000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN    DD *
CHECK INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
//*
```

Example 2: Checking one index

The following control statement specifies that the CHECK INDEX utility is to check the project-number index (DSN81010.XPROJ1) on the sample project table. SORTDEVT SYSDA specifies that SYSDA is the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

```
CHECK INDEX (DSN81010.XPROJ1)
      SORTDEVT SYSDA
```

Example 3: Checking more than one index

The following control statement specifies that the CHECK INDEX utility is to check the indexes DSN81010.XEMPRAC1 and DSN81010.XEMPRAC2 on the employee-to-project-activity sample table.

```
CHECK INDEX NAME (DSN81010.XEMPRAC1, DSN81010.XEMPRAC2)
```

Example 4: Checking partitions of all indexes

In the following control statement, table space DB0S0301.TPOS0301 has one partitioned index (ADMF001.IPOS0301), one data-partitioned secondary index (ADMF001.IDOS0302), and one nonpartitioned secondary index (ADMF001.IXOS0303). The (ALL) option indicates that all three indexes on the table space are to be checked. PART 3 indicates that CHECK INDEX is to check the third physical partition of any partitioned indexes and the third logical partition of any nonpartitioned indexes.

```
CHECK INDEX(ALL) TABLESPACE DB0S0301.TPOS0301 PART 3 SORTDEVT SYSDA
```

In this case, CHECK INDEX checks the third physical partition of ADMF001.IPOS0301, the third physical partition of ADMF001.IDOS0302, and the third logical partition of ADMF001.IXOS0303, as indicated by the following output.

```
DSNU050I  DSNUGUTC- CHECK INDEX(ALL) TABLESPACE DB0S0301.TPOS0301 PART 3 SORTDEVT SYSDA
DSNU700I= DSNUKGET- 10 INDEX ENTRIES UNLOADED FROM INDEX='ADMF001.IPOS0301' PARTITION=3
DSNU700I= DSNUKGET- 10 INDEX ENTRIES UNLOADED FROM INDEX='ADMF001.IDOS0302' PARTITION=3
DSNU701I= DSNUKGET- 10 INDEX ENTRIES UNLOADED FROM 'ADMF001.IXOS0303'
DSNU705I  DSNUK001- UNLOAD PHASE COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU717I= DSNUKTER- 10 ENTRIES CHECKED FOR INDEX 'ADMF001.IPOS0301' PARTITION=3
DSNU717I= DSNUKTER- 10 ENTRIES CHECKED FOR INDEX 'ADMF001.IDOS0302' PARTITION=3
DSNU717I= DSNUKTER- 10 ENTRIES CHECKED FOR INDEX 'ADMF001.IXOS0303' PARTITION=3
DSNU720I  DSNUK001- CHECKIDX PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU010I  DSNUGBAC- UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 14. CHECK INDEX output from a job that checks the third partition of all indexes.

Example 5: Checking indexes in a list

The LISTDEF control statement defines a list of indexes called CHKIDXB_LIST. The CHECK INDEX control statement specifies that CHECK INDEX is to check all indexes that are included in the CHKIDXB_LIST list. SORTDEVT SYSDA specifies that SYSDA is the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program. SORTNUM 4 specifies that four of these data sets are to be dynamically allocated.

```

//CHKIDXB EXEC PGM=DSNUTILB,REGION=4096K,PARM='SSTR,CHKINDX1'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//DSNTRACE DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,2)),VOL=SER=SCR03
//SYSOUT DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,2)),VOL=SER=SCR03
//SORTLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SYS1.SORTLIB
//SORTOUT DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,2)),VOL=SER=SCR03
//SYSERR DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(5,2)),VOL=SER=SCR03
//SYSIN DD *
LISTDEF CHKIDXB LIST INCLUDE INDEXSPACE DBOT55*.* ALL
CHECK INDEX LIST CHKIDXB LIST
                SORTDEVT SYSDA
                SORTNUM 4

/*

```

Figure 15. Example of checking indexes in a list

Example 6: Checking all specified indexes on clone tables

The following control statement specifies that the CHECK INDEX utility is to check all specified indexes that are on clone tables.

```
CHECK INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DBLOB01.TSLOB04 CLONE
```

Related reference

[DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

[DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Chapter 10. CHECK LOB

You can run the CHECK LOB online utility on a LOB table space to identify any structural defects in the LOB table space and any invalid LOB values.

The CHECK LOB utility is useful in a variety of circumstances:

- Run the utility on a LOB table space that is in CHECK-pending (CHKP) status to identify structural defects. If none are found, the CHECK LOB utility turns the CHKP status off.
- Run the utility on a LOB table space that is in auxiliary-warning (AUXW) status to identify invalid LOBs. If none exist, the CHECK LOB utility turns AUXW status off.
- Run the utility after a conditional restart or a point-in-time recovery on all table spaces where LOB table spaces might not be synchronized.
- Run the utility before you run the CHECK DATA utility on a table space that contains at least one LOB column.

Output

After successful execution, CHECK LOB SHRLEVEL CHANGE does not set or reset the CHECK-pending (CHKP) and auxiliary-warning (AUXW) statuses.

If the utility finds any inconsistencies, the LOB table space that is checked is not put into the CHECK-pending status. You can force the prior behavior, that a LOB table space is put into CHECK-pending status when inconsistencies are detected, by specifying CHECK_SETCHKP=Y on the CHECK_SETCHKP system parameter.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- STATS privilege for the database
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute CHECK LOB.

If you are using SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the batch user ID that invokes COPY with the CONCURRENT option must provide the necessary authority to execute the DFSMSdss ADRDSSU command. DFSMSdss will create a shadow data set with the authority of the utility batch address space. The submitter should have a RACF ALTER authority, or its equivalent, for the shadow data set.

Execution phases of CHECK LOB

The CHECK LOB utility operates in the following phases:

UTILINIT

Performs initialization

CHECKLOB

Scans all active pages of the LOB table space; generates up to four records per LOB page; passes records to the SORTIN phase

SORTIN

Passes CHECKLOB phase records to SORT

SORT Sorts the records from the CHECKLOB phase

SORTOUT

Passes sorted records to the REPRTLOB phase

REPRTLOB

Examines records that are produced by the CHECKLOB phase; issues error messages

UTILTERM

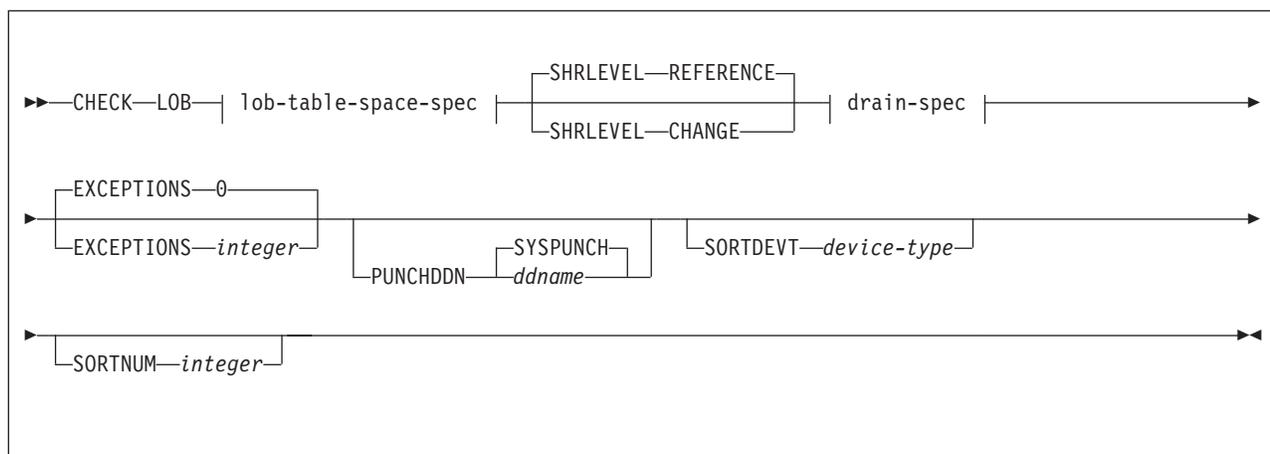
Performs cleanup

Syntax and options of the CHECK LOB control statement

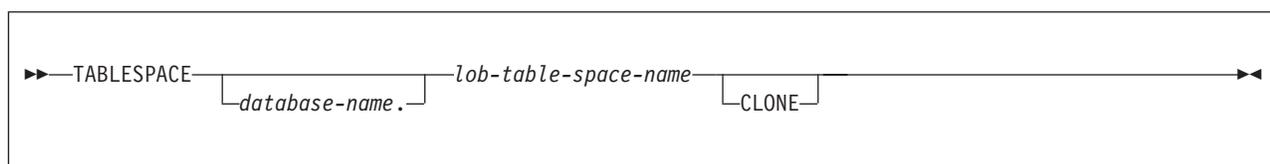
The CHECK LOB utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

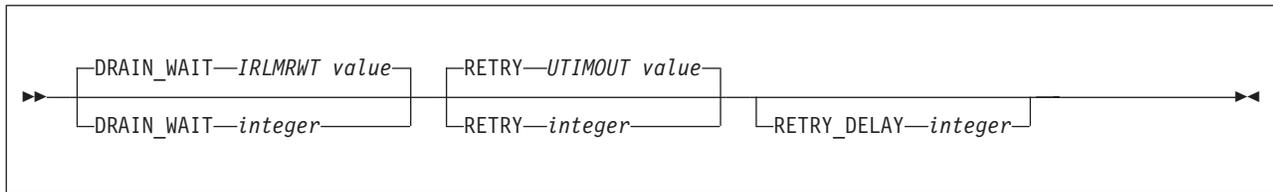
Syntax diagram



lob-table-space-spec:



drain-spec:



Option descriptions

LOB

Indicates that you are checking a LOB table space for defects.

TABLESPACE *database-name.lob-table-space-name*

Specifies the table space to which the data belongs.

database-name is the name of the database and is optional.

The default value is **DSNDB04**.

lob-table-space-name is the name of the LOB table space.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates the type of access that is to be allowed for the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked during CHECK LOB processing.

REFERENCE

Specifies that applications can read from but cannot write to the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked.

CHANGE

Specifies that applications can read from and write to the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked.

If you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, DB2 performs the following actions:

- Drains all writers and forces the buffers to disk for the specified object and all of its indexes
- Invokes DFSMSdss to copy the specified object and all of its indexes to shadow data sets
- Enables read-write access for the specified object and all of its indexes
- Runs CHECK INDEX on the shadow data sets

By default, DFSMSdss uses FlashCopy to copy DB2 objects to shadow data sets, if FlashCopy is available. If DFSMSdss cannot use FlashCopy, DFSMSdss uses a slower method. As a result, creating copies of objects might take a long time, and the time during which the data and indexes have read-only access might increase. You can set the CHECK_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter to REQUIRED to force the CHECK utility to use only FlashCopy. If FlashCopy is not available, the CHECK utility fails.

DRAIN_WAIT

Specifies the number of seconds that CHECK LOB is to wait when draining the table space or index. The specified time is the aggregate time for objects that are to be checked. This value overrides the values that are specified by the IRLMRWT and UTIMOUT subsystem parameters.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 1800. If you do not specify DRAIN_WAIT or specify a value of 0, CHECK LOB uses the value of the lock timeout subsystem parameter IRLMRWT.

RETRY *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of retries that CHECK LOB is to attempt.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 255. If you do not specify RETRY, CHECK LOB uses the value of the utility multiplier system parameter UTIMOUT.

Specifying RETRY can increase processing costs and result in multiple or extended periods during which the specified index, table space, or partition is in read-only access.

RETRY_DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum duration, in seconds, between retries. *integer* can be any integer from 1 to 1800.

If you do not specify RETRY_DELAY, CHECK LOB uses the smaller of the following two values:

- DRAIN_WAIT value × RETRY value
- DRAIN_WAIT value × 10

EXCEPTIONS *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of exceptions, which are reported by messages only. CHECK LOB terminates in the CHECKLOB phase when it reaches the specified number of exceptions.

All defects that are reported by messages are applied to the exception count.

integer is the maximum number of exceptions.

The default value is 0, which indicates no limit on the number of exceptions.

PUNCHDDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a data set that is to receive the REPAIR utility control statements that CHECK LOB SHRLEVEL REFERENCE generates. The REPAIR statements generated deletes the LOBs reported in error messages from the LOB table space. CHECK DATA should then be run against the base table space to set the deleted LOB columns in the base records to invalid.

ddname is the DD name.

The default value is SYSPUNCH.

The PUNCHDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

SORTDEVT *device-type*

Specifies the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

A TEMPLATE specification does not dynamically allocate sort work data sets. The SORTDEVT keyword controls dynamic allocation of these data sets.

device-type is the device type and can be any disk device type that is acceptable to the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTION control statement for the sort program.

If you omit SORTDEVT and a sort is required, you must provide the DD statements that the sort program requires for the temporary data sets.

SORTNUM *integer*

Indicates the number of temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

If you omit SORTDEVT, SORTNUM is ignored. If you use SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program, which then uses its own default. You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

CLONE

Indicates that CHECK LOB is to check the LOB space data for only the clone table, not the LOB data for the base table.

Related concepts

“Subsystem parameters for refining DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities” on page 35

Related reference

[DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

[DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Before running CHECK LOB

Certain activities might be required before you run the CHECK LOB utility, depending on your situation.

You must first recover a LOB table space that is in RECOVER-pending status before running CHECK LOB.

Beginning in Version 8, the CHECK LOB utility does not require SYSUT1 and SORTOUT data sets. Work records are written to and processed from an asynchronous SORT phase. The WORKDDN keyword, which provided the DD names of the SYSUT1 and SORTOUT data sets in earlier versions of DB2, is not needed and is ignored. You do not need to modify existing control statements to remove the WORKDDN keyword.

Data sets that CHECK LOB uses

The CHECK LOB utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that CHECK LOB uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 16. Data sets that CHECK LOB uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	An input data that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	An output data set for messages.	Yes

Table 16. Data sets that CHECK LOB uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
UTPRINT	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY).	Yes

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require DD statements in the JCL:

Table space

Object that is to be checked.

Sort work data sets cannot span volumes. Smaller volumes require more sort work data sets to sort the same amount of data; therefore, large volume sizes can reduce the number of needed sort work data sets. When you allocate sort work data sets on disk, the recommended amount of space to allow provides at least 1.2 times the amount of data that is to be sorted.

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

Shadow data sets

When you execute the CHECK LOB utility with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option, the utility uses shadow data sets.

If a table space, partition, or index resides in DB2-managed data sets and shadow data sets do not already exist when you execute CHECK LOB, DB2 creates the shadow data sets. At the end of CHECK LOB processing, the DB2-managed shadow data sets are deleted.

For user-managed data sets, DFSMSdss can create or scratch and recreate the required shadow data sets as needed. When the CHECK LOB utility completes the processing of user-managed data sets, the shadow data sets are not automatically scratched.

If you have not changed the value of FREEPAGE or PCTFREE on the CREATE TABLESPACE statement, the amount of required space for a shadow data set is comparable to the amount of required space for the original data set.

If you do not want the shadow data sets to be allocated in the same storage class as the production data sets, set the UTIL_TEMP_STORCLAS system parameter to specify the storage class for the shadow data sets.

Shadow data set names

Each shadow data set must have the following name:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.psname.y000z.Lnnn

In the preceding name, the variables have the following meanings:

variable	meaning
----------	---------

<i>catname</i>	The VSAM catalog name or alias
<i>x</i>	C or D
<i>dbname</i>	Database name
<i>psname</i>	Table space name or index name
<i>y</i>	I or J
<i>z</i>	1 or 2
<i>Lnnn</i>	Partition identifier. Use one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A001 through A999 for partitions 1 through 999 • B000 through B999 for partitions 1000 through 1999 • C000 through C999 for partitions 2000 through 2999 • D000 through D999 for partitions 3000 through 3999 • E000 through E996 for partitions 4000 through 4096

To determine the names of existing data sets, execute one of the following queries against the SYSTABLEPART or SYSINDEXPART catalog tables: 

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
 WHERE DBNAME = 'dbname'
    AND TSNAME = 'psname';

SELECT DBNAME, IXNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES X, SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART Y
 WHERE X.NAME = Y.IXNAME
    AND X.CREATOR = Y.IXCREATOR
    AND X.DBNAME = 'dbname'
    AND X.INDEXSPACE = 'psname';
```

 **GUIP**

Defining shadow data sets

For a partitioned table space, DB2 returns rows from which you select the row for the partitions that you want to check.

Consider the following actions when you preallocate the data sets:

- Allocate the shadow data sets according to the rules for user-managed data sets.
- Define the shadow data sets as LINEAR.
- Use SHAREOPTIONS(3,3).
- Define the shadow data sets as EA-enabled if the original table space or index space is EA-enabled.
- Allocate the shadow data sets on the volumes that are defined in the storage group for the original table space or index space.

If you specify a secondary space quantity, DB2 does not use it. Instead, DB2 uses the SECQTY value for the table space or index space.

Recommendation: Use the MODEL option, which causes the new shadow data set to be created like the original data set. This method is shown in the following example:

```
DEFINE CLUSTER +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.pname.x000z.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.pname.y000z.L001')) +
  DATA +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.pname.x000z.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.pname.y000z.L001'))
```

Creating shadow data sets for indexes

When you preallocate shadow data sets for indexes, create the data sets as follows:

- Create shadow data sets for the partition of the table space and the corresponding partition in each partitioning index and data-partitioned secondary index.
- Create a shadow data set for logical partitions of nonpartitioned secondary indexes.

Use the same naming scheme for these index data sets as you use for other data sets that are associated with the base index, except use J0001 instead of I0001.

Concurrency and compatibility for CHECK LOB

The CHECK LOB utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Claims and drains

The following table shows which claim classes CHECK LOB claims and drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 17. Claim classes for CHECK LOB operations on a LOB table space and index on the auxiliary table

Target objects	CHECK LOB SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	CHECK LOB SHRLEVEL CHANGE
LOB table space	DW/UTRO	CR/UTRW
Index on the auxiliary table	DW/UTRO	CR/UTRW

Legend:

- CR: Claim the read claim class
- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed
- UTRW: Utility restrictive state, read and write access allowed

Compatibility

Any SQL operation or other online utility that attempts to update the same LOB table space is incompatible.

How CHECK LOB identifies violations

You can find and resolve violations by reviewing messages that the CHECK LOB utility issues.

CHECK LOB issues message DSNU743I whenever it finds a LOB value that is invalid. The violation is identified by the row ID and version number of the LOB. You can resolve LOB violations by using the UPDATE or DELETE SQL statements to update the LOB column or delete the row that is associated with the LOB. (Use the row ID from message DSNU743I.)

Contact IBM Software Support for assistance with diagnosing and resolving the problem.

Related reference

[➔ DELETE \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

[➔ UPDATE \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

Removing CHECK-pending status for a LOB table space

If a LOB table space has a status of CHECK-pending, you can remove the CHECK-pending status by correcting the error and either rerunning the CHECK LOB utility with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE specified or by running the REPAIR utility.

Note: The CHECK LOB utility sets or resets the CHECK-pending status when errors are found only if YES is specified on the CHECK_SETCHKP subsystem parameter in the DSN6SPRM macro. The default value for CHECK_SETCHKP is NO.

To remove CHECK-pending status:

1. Correct any defects that are found in the LOB table space by using the REPAIR utility.
Attention: Use the REPAIR utility with care because improper use can further damage the data. If necessary, contact IBM Software Support for guidance on using the REPAIR utility.
2. Run CHECK LOB again, or run the REPAIR utility to reset CHECK-pending or auxiliary-warning status.

Related reference

[➔ SET CHECK PENDING field \(CHECK_SETCHKP subsystem parameter\) \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)

Resolving media failure

Some media failures leave LOB pages in the logical page list (LPL), which requires action.

To resolve media failure:

Run CHECK LOB on a LOB table space. The pages that were in the LPL are removed from the list so that they are available.

Termination or restart of CHECK LOB

You can terminate and restart the CHECK LOB utility.

If you terminate CHECK LOB during the CHECKLOB phase, LOB table spaces remain in CHECK-pending status. During normal execution, the CHECKLOB phase places the LOB table space in CHECK-pending status; at the end of the phase, the CHECK-pending status is reset if no errors are detected.

You can restart a CHECK LOB utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample CHECK LOB control statements

Sample control statements are helpful as models for developing your own CHECK LOB control statements.

Example 1: Checking a LOB table space

The following control statement specifies that the CHECK LOB utility is to check LOB table space DBIQUG01.TLIQUG02 for structural defects or invalid LOB values. The EXCEPTIONS 3 option indicates that the CHECK LOB utility is to terminate when it finds three exceptions. The SORTDEVT and SORTNUM options provide information about temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program. SORTDEVT SYSDA specifies that the device type is SYSDA, and SORTNUM 4 indicates that four temporary data sets are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UG.CHECKL',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
CHECK LOB TABLESPACE DBIQUG01.TLIQUG02
      EXCEPTIONS 3 SORTDEVT SYSDA
      SORTNUM 4
```

Example 2: Checking the LOB space data for a clone table

The following control statement specifies that the CHECK LOB utility is to check the LOB space data for only the clone table, not the LOB data for the base table. The EXCEPTIONS 0 option indicates that there is no limit on the number of exceptions. The SORTDEVT and SORTNUM options provide information about temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program. SORTDEVT SYSDA specifies that the device type is SYSDA, and SORTNUM 10 indicates that ten temporary data sets are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

```
CHECK LOB TABLESPACE DBLOB01.TSLOBB1 CLONE
      EXCEPTIONS 0
      SORTDEVT SYSDA
      SORTNUM 10
```

Example 3: Checking the LOB table space data

The following control statement specifies that the CHECK LOB utility is to check the LOB table space data with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option, which specifies that the application can read from and write to the table space that is to be checked.

```
//STEP2 EXEC DSNUPROC,  
// UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR',  
// UID='CHKLOB12.STEP2'  
//*SYSPUNCH DD DN=PUNCHS,DISP=(NEW,DELETE,DELETE),UNITE=SYSDA,  
//* SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),VOL=SER=SCR03  
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//UTPRINT DD DUMMY  
//SYSIN DD *  
CHECK LOB TABLESPACE  
DABA12.TSL12  
SHRLEVEL CHANGE  
EXCEPTIONS 5  
/*
```

Related reference

[DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

[DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Chapter 11. COPY

The COPY online utility creates copies of certain objects.

The COPY online utility creates up to five image copies, four sequential image copies, and one FlashCopy image of any of the following objects:

- Table space
- Table space partition
- Data set of a linear table space
- Index space
- Index space partition

The two types of image copies are:

1. A *full image copy*, which is a copy of all pages in a table space, partition, data set, or index space.
2. An *incremental image copy*, which is a copy only of those data pages that have been modified since the last use of the COPY utility and system pages.

The RECOVER utility uses these copies when recovering a table space or index space to the most recent time or to a previous time. Copies can also be used by the MERGECOPY, COPYTOCOPY, and UNLOAD utilities.

You can copy a list of objects in parallel to improve performance. Specifying a list of objects along with the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option creates a single recovery point for that list of objects. Specifying the PARALLEL keyword allows you to copy a list of objects in parallel, rather than serially.

To calculate the number of threads you need when you specify the PARALLEL keyword, use the formula $(n * 2 + 1)$, where n is the number of objects that are to be processed in parallel, regardless of the total number of objects in the list. If you do not use the PARALLEL keyword, n is one and COPY uses three threads for a single-object COPY job.

Output

Output from the COPY utility consists of:

- Up to four sequential data sets containing the image copy and one FlashCopy image copy.
- Rows in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table that describe the image copy data sets that are available to the RECOVER utility. Your installation is responsible for ensuring that these data sets are available if the RECOVER utility requests them.
- If you specify the CHANGELIMIT option, a report on the change status of the table space.

The COPY-pending status is set off for table spaces if the copy was a full image copy. However, DB2 does not reset the COPY-pending status if you copy a single piece of a multi-piece linear data set. If you copy a single table space partition, DB2 resets the COPY-pending status only for the copied partition and not for the whole table space. DB2 resets the informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) status after you copy an index space or index. The COPY utility will reset

ICOPY-pending status for not logged table spaces.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- IMAGCOPY privilege for the database
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute COPY, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

If the CONCURRENT option is specified, the batch user ID that invokes the COPY utility must have the authority to execute the DFSMSdss DUMP command.

If either the FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT option is specified, the batch user ID that invokes the COPY utility must have the authority to execute the DFSMSdss COPY command.

Execution phases of COPY

The COPY utility operates in these phases:

UTILINIT

Performs initialization and setup.

REPORT

Reports for CHANGELIMIT option.

COPY

Creates copies.
If FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, then the FlashCopy image copies are created in this phase. If FLASHCOPY is not specified, then sequential format image copies are created.

SEQCOPY

Creates additional sequential format image copies from a FlashCopy image copy when either FLASHCOPY YES or CONSISTENT is specified. The utility execution includes this phase only when both FlashCopy image copies and sequential format image copies are requested.

LOGAPPLY

Log apply identifies the most recent checkpoint for each member. All objects that are being copied will be updated to the same logpoint in order to prepare for backout processing.

If COPY SHRLEVEL CHANGE FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, log apply applies the updates to the FlashCopy image copy to ensure that all activity is reflected up to the point of consistency.

LOGCSR

Log apply is called to do the current status rebuild.

If COPY SHRLEVEL CHANGE FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, the LOGCSR phase identifies any uncommitted work to back out from the FlashCopy image copy.

LOGUNDO

Uncommitted work is backed out from the image copy in order to make it consistent.

If COPY SHRLEVEL CHANGE FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, the LOGUNDO phase backs out uncommitted work from the FlashCopy image copy.

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup.

Related concepts

“Using inline copy with REORG TABLESPACE” on page 558

Related tasks

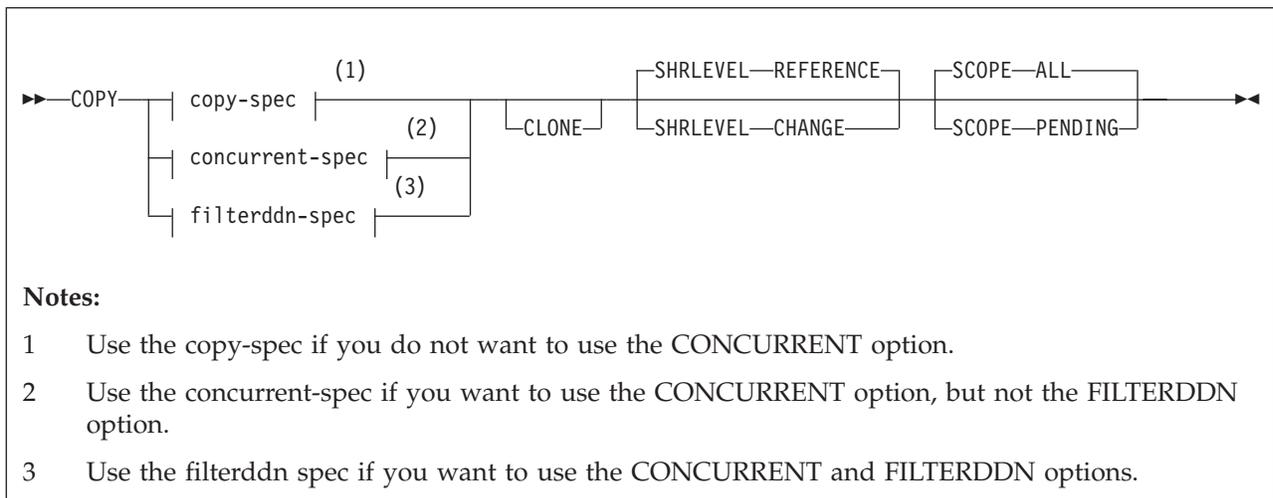
“Using inline COPY with LOAD” on page 292

Syntax and options of the COPY control statement

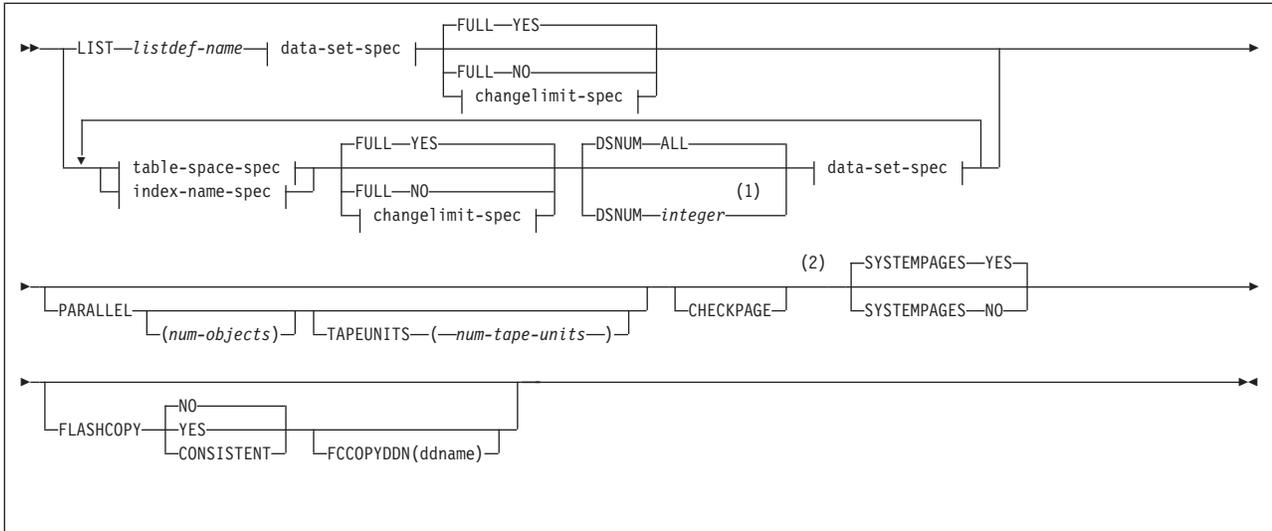
The COPY utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



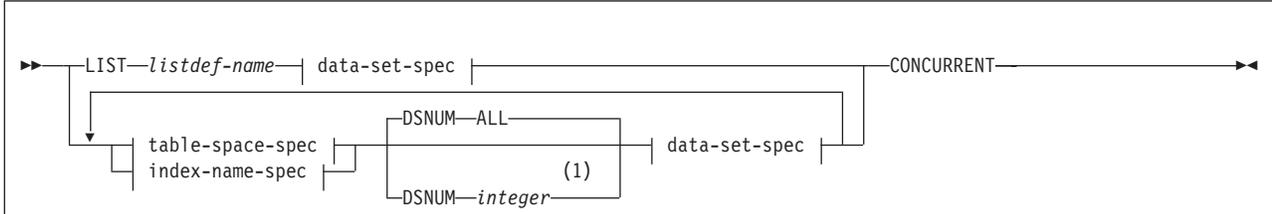
copy-spec:



Notes:

- 1 Not valid for nonpartitioning indexes.
- 2 CHECKPAGE is the default for table spaces.

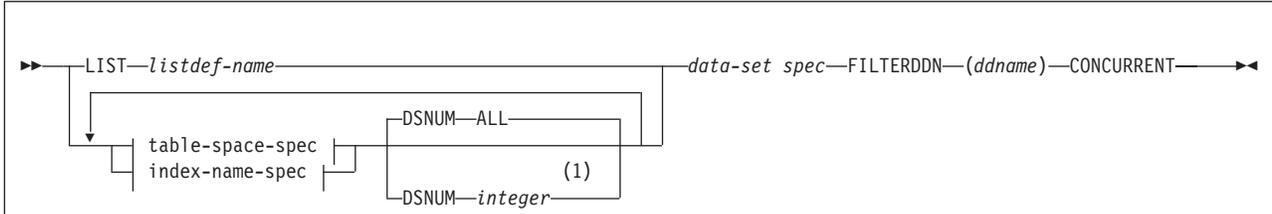
concurrent-spec:



Notes:

- 1 Not valid for nonpartitioning indexes.

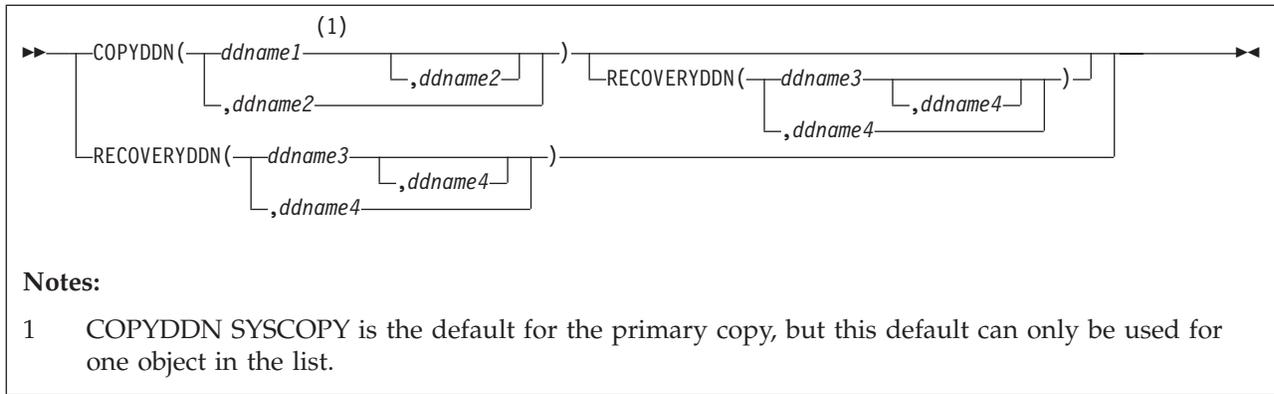
filterddn-spec:



Notes:

- 1 Not valid for nonpartitioning indexes.

data-set-spec:



changelimit-spec:

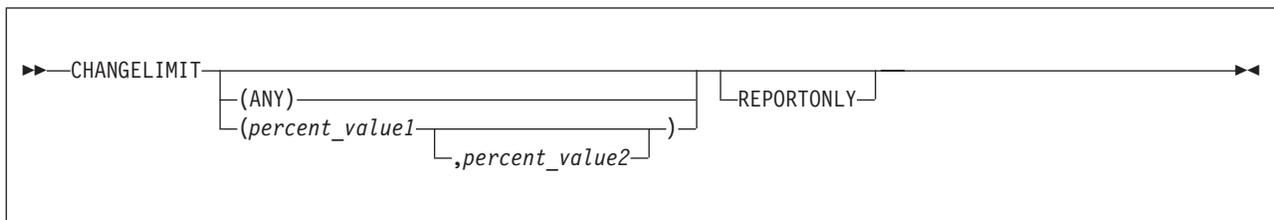
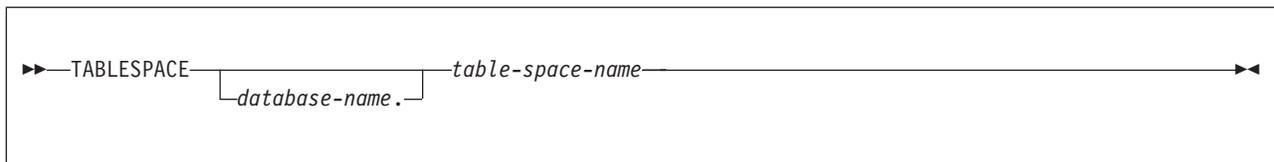
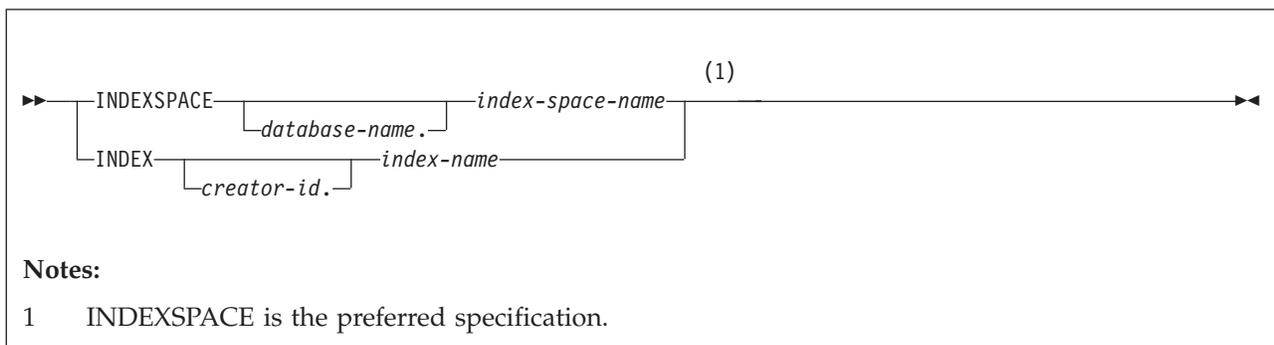


table-space-spec:



index-name-spec:



Option descriptions

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. LIST specifies one LIST keyword for each COPY control statement. Do not specify LIST with either the INDEX or the TABLESPACE keyword. DB2 invokes COPY once for

the entire list. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database it belongs to) that is to be copied.

database-name is the name of the database that the table space belongs to. The **default** value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name is the name of the table space to be copied.

Specify the DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, DSNDB06.SYSCOPY, or DSNDB01.SYSLGRNX table space by itself in a single COPY statement. Alternatively, specify the DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, DSNDB06.SYSCOPY, or DSNDB01.SYSLGRNX table space with indexes over the table space that were defined with the COPY YES attribute.

CLONE

Indicates that COPY is to copy only clone table or index data. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

If the utility is processing a table space and CLONE is specified, the utility will only process clone table data. If the utility is processing an index and CLONE is specified, the utility will only process indexes over clone tables. If you use the LIST keyword to specify a list of objects, COPY processes only those objects in the list that contain clone tables or indexes on clone tables. COPY ignores other objects in the list.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the qualified name of the index space that is to be copied; the name is obtained from the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES table. The specified index space must be defined with the COPY YES attribute.

database-name Optionally specifies the name of the database that the index space belongs to. The **default** value is DSNDB04.

index-space-name specifies the name of the index space that is to be copied.

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Specifies the index that is to be copied. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

creator-id optionally specifies the creator of the index. The **default** value is the user identifier for the utility.

index-name specifies the name of the index that is to be copied.

COPYDDN (*ddname1,ddname2*)

Specifies a DD name or a TEMPLATE name for the primary (*ddname1*) and backup (*ddname2*) copy data sets for the image copy at the local site.

You can use the COPYDDN keyword to specify either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name. For more information about TEMPLATE specifications, see Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699.

ddname is the DD name. The **default** value is **SYSCOPY** for the primary copy. You can use the default for only one object in the list. The first object in the list that does not have COPYDDN specified uses the default. Any other objects in the list that do not have COPYDDN specified cause an error.

If you use the CHANGELIMIT REPORTONLY option, you can use a DD DUMMY statement when you specify the SYSCOPY output data set. This card prevents a data set from being allocated and opened.

Recommendation: Catalog all of your image copy data sets.

You cannot have duplicate image copy data sets. If the DD statement identifies a noncataloged data set with the same name, volume serial, and file sequence number as one that is already recorded in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table, the COPY utility issues a message and does not make an image copy. If COPY identifies a cataloged data set with only the same name, it does not make an image copy. For cataloged image copy data sets, CATLG must be specified for the normal termination disposition in the DD statement, as shown in the following example:

```
DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
```

The DSVOLSER field of the SYSCOPY entry is blank.

If you use the CONCURRENT and FILTERDDN options, ensure that the size of the copy data set is large enough to include all of the objects in the list.

RECOVERYDDN (*ddname3,ddname4*)

Specifies a DD name or a template name for the primary (*ddname3*) and backup (*ddname4*) copy data sets for the image copy at the recovery site.

You can use the **RECOVERYDDN** keyword to specify either a DD name or a template name. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a template name, the utility THE uses the DD name.

ddname3 and *ddname4* are DD names.

You cannot have duplicate image copy data sets.

If you use the CONCURRENT and FILTERDDN options, ensure that the size of the copy data set is large enough to include all of the objects in the list.

FULL

Specifies that COPY is to make either a full or an incremental image copy.

YES

Specifies a full image copy. Making a full image copy resets the COPY-pending status for the table space or index, or for the partition if you specify DSNUM.

NO

Specifies only an incremental image copy. Only changes since the last image copy are to be copied. **NO** is not valid for indexes.

Incremental image copies are not allowed in the following situations:

- The last full image copy of the table space was taken with the CONCURRENT option.
- No full image copies exist for the table space or data set that is being copied.
- After a successful LOAD or REORG operation, unless an inline copy was made during the LOAD or REORG job.

- You specify one of the following table spaces: DSNDB01.DBD01, DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, or DSNDB06.SYSCOPY.
- A previous COPY was terminated with the -TERM UTIL command, so the most recent SYSIBM.SYSCOPY record for the object contains ICTYPE = T.
- If you specify both FLASHCOPY YES or CONSISTENT and FULL NO, the COPY utility issues an informational message and creates a FlashCopy image copy. (FlashCopy image copies are created as data set level copies of the object and cannot be incremental.) If you also request that sequential image copies be taken, those copies are created from the FlashCopy image copy.

For incremental image copies of partitioned table spaces, COPY includes the header page for each partition that has changed pages.

COPY automatically takes a full image copy of a table space if you specify FULL NO when an incremental image copy is not allowed.

CHANGELIMIT

Specifies the limit of changed pages in the table space, partition, or data set at which an incremental or full image copy is to be taken.

ANY

Specifies that COPY is to take a full image copy if any pages have changed since the last image copy.

percent_value1

Specifies the first value in the CHANGELIMIT range. *percent_value1* must be an integer or decimal value from 0.0 to 100.0. You do not need to specify leading zeroes, and the decimal point is not required when specifying a whole integer. Specify a maximum of one decimal place for a decimal value. For example, you can specify .5. If you specify this value, COPY takes an incremental image copy if more than one half of one percent of the pages have changed.

percent_value2

Specifies the second value in the CHANGELIMIT range. *percent_value2* must be an integer or decimal value from 0.0 to 100.0. You do not need to specify leading zeroes, and the decimal point is not required when specifying a whole integer. Specify a maximum of one decimal place for a decimal value (for example, .5).

COPY CHANGELIMIT accepts percentage values in any order. For example, you can specify (10,1) or (1,10).

If only one percentage value is specified, COPY CHANGELIMIT:

- Creates an incremental image copy if the percentage of changed pages is greater than 0 and less than *percent_value1*.
- Creates a full image copy if the percentage of changed pages is greater than or equal to *percent_value1*, or if CHANGELIMIT(0) is specified.
- Does not create an image copy if no pages have changed, unless CHANGELIMIT(0) is specified.
- Always creates a full image copy, even when no pages have been updated since the last image copy, if CHANGELIMIT(0) is specified.
- Creates a full image copy if CHANGELIMIT(100) is specified and all pages have been changed since the last image copy.

- Creates an incremental image copy if CHANGELIMIT(100) is specified and some but not all pages have been changed since the last image copy.

If two percentage values are specified, COPY CHANGELIMIT:

- Creates an incremental image copy if the percentage of changed pages is greater than the lowest specified value and less than the highest specified value.
- Creates a full image copy if the percentage of changed pages is equal to or greater than the highest specified value.
- Does not create an image copy if the percentage of changed pages is less than or equal to the lowest specified value.
- If both values are equal, creates a full image copy if the percentage of changed pages is equal to or greater than the specified value.

The default values are **(1,10)**.

The default value is **(10)**.

You cannot use the CHANGELIMIT option for a table space or partition that is defined with TRACKMOD NO. If you change the TRACKMOD option from NO to YES, you must take an image copy before you can use the CHANGELIMIT option. For nonpartitioned table spaces, you must copy the entire table space to allow future CHANGELIMIT requests.

REPORTONLY

Specifies that image copy information is to be displayed. If you specify the REPORTONLY option, only image copy information is displayed. Image copies are not taken in this case; they are only recommended.

DSNUM

For a table space, identifies a partition or data set within the table space to be copied; or it copies the entire table space. For an index space, DSNUM identifies a partition to be copied, or it copies the entire index space. This option can specify a partition of a data-partitioned secondary index if the index is copy-enabled.

If a data set of a nonpartitioned table space is in the COPY-pending status, you must copy the entire table space.

ALL

Indicates that the entire table space or index space is to be copied. You must use ALL for a nonpartitioned secondary index.

integer

Is the number of a partition or data set that is to be copied.

An integer value is not valid for nonpartitioned secondary indexes.

For a partitioned table space or index space, the integer is its partition number. The maximum is 4096.

For a nonpartitioned table space, find the integer at the end of the data set name as it is cataloged in the ICF catalog. The data set name has the following format:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.spacename.y000Z.Annn

In this format:

catname

Is the ICF catalog name or alias.

x Is C (for VSAM clusters) or D (for VSAM data components).

<i>dbname</i>	Is the database name.
<i>spacename</i>	Is the table space or index space name.
<i>y</i>	Is I or J, which indicates the data set name used by REORG with FASTSWITCH.
<i>z</i>	Is 1 or 2.
<i>nnn</i>	Is the data set integer.

If COPY takes an image copy of data sets (rather than on table spaces), RECOVER, MERGECOPY, or COPYTOCOPY must use the copies on a data set level. For a nonpartitioned table space, if COPY takes image copies on data sets and you run MODIFY RECOVERY with DSNUM ALL, the table space is placed in COPY-pending status if a full image copy of the entire table space does not exist.

PARALLEL

For sequential format image copies, specifies the maximum number of objects in the list that are to be processed in parallel. The utility processes the list of objects in parallel for image copies being written to or from different disk or tape devices. If you specify TAPEUNITS with PARALLEL, you control the number of tape drives that are dynamically allocated for the copy. If you omit PARALLEL, the list is not processed in parallel.

Restriction: Do not specify the PARALLEL keyword if one or more of the output data sets are defined with DD statements that specify UNIT=AFF to refer to the same device as a previous DD statement. This usage is not supported with the PARALLEL keyword and could result in an abend. Instead, consider using templates to define your data sets.

(num-objects)

Specifies the number of objects in the list that are to be processed in parallel. You can adjust this value to a smaller value if COPY encounters storage constraints.

If you specify 0 or do not specify a value for *num-objects*, COPY determines the optimal number of objects to process in parallel.

TAPEUNITS

Specifies the maximum number of tape drives that the utility dynamically allocates for the list of objects to be processed in parallel. TAPEUNITS applies only to tape drives that are dynamically allocated through the TEMPLATE keyword. It does not apply to JCL allocated tape drives. The total number of tape drives allocated for the COPY request is the sum of the JCL allocated tape drives plus the number of tape drives determined as follows:

- the value that is specified for TAPEUNITS
- The value determined by the COPY utility if you omit the TAPEUNITS keyword

If you omit this keyword, the utility determines the number of tape drives to dynamically allocate for the copy function. This keyword is ignored if you specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT).

(num-tape-units)

Specifies the number of tape drives to allocate. If you specify 0 or do not specify the TAPEUNITS keyword, COPY determines the maximum number

of tape drives to be dynamically allocated for the function. COPY TAPEUNITS has a max value of 32767.

CHECKPAGE

Indicates that each page in the table space or index space is to be checked for validity. The validity checking operates on one page at a time and does not include any cross-page checking. If it finds an error, COPY issues a message that describes the type of error. If more than one error exists in a given page, only the first error is identified. COPY continues checking the remaining pages in the table space or index space after it finds an error. CHECKPAGE is the default for table spaces. CHECKPAGE is not the default for indexes. This keyword is ignored by FlashCopy.

Note: Use of the CHECKPAGE option for indexes can result in greatly increased processor usage.

SYSTEMPAGES

Specifies whether the COPY utility puts system pages at the beginning of the image copy data set.

Although the system pages are located at the beginning of many image copies, this placement is not guaranteed. In many cases, the system pages are not included. For example, incremental copies do not include system pages. This keyword is ignored by FlashCopy.

YES

Ensures that any header, dictionary, and version system pages are copied at the beginning of the image copy data set. The version system pages can be copied twice.

Selecting YES ensures that the image copy contains the necessary system pages for subsequent UNLOAD utility jobs to correctly format and unload all data rows.

NO

Does not ensure that the dictionary and version system pages are copied at the beginning of the image copy data set. The COPY utility copies the pages in the current order, including the header pages.

FLASHCOPY

Specifies whether FlashCopy technology is used to create a copy of the object. Valid values are YES, NO, or CONSISTENT. When FlashCopy is used, a separate data set is created for each partition or piece of the object.

Specify YES or CONSISTENT only if the DB2 data sets are on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes.

The FlashCopy specifications on the utility control statement override any specifications for FlashCopy that are defined by using the DB2 subsystem parameters. If the FlashCopy subsystem parameters specify the use of FlashCopy as the default behavior of this utility, the FLASHCOPY option can be omitted from the utility control statement.

Important: If the input data set is less than one cylinder, FlashCopy technology might not be used for copying the objects regardless of the FLASHCOPY settings. The copy is performed by IDCAMS if FlashCopy is not used.

For more information, see “FlashCopy image copies” on page 142.

|
| **NO**
|

Specifies that no FlashCopy is made. NO is the default value for FLASHCOPY.

|
| **YES**
|

Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object.

|
| **Important:** Under the following circumstances, the COPY utility might not
| use FlashCopy even though YES is specified:

- FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available
- The source tracks are already the target of a FlashCopy operation
- The target tracks are the source of a FlashCopy operation
- The maximum number of relationships for the copy is exceeded

|
| In the event that FlashCopy is not used, the COPY utility uses traditional
| I/O methods to copy the object, which can result in longer than expected
| execution time.

|
| **CONSISTENT**
|

Specifies that when SHRLEVEL CHANGE is also specified, FlashCopy
technology is used to copy the object and that any uncommitted work
included in the copy is backed out of the copy to make the copy
consistent. If SHRLEVEL CHANGE is not specified, specifying
FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is the same as specifying FLASHCOPY YES.

|
| Specifying FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT requires additional time and
| system resources during utility processing, because the COPY utility must
| read the logs and apply the changes to the image copy. Similarly,
| recovering from a consistent FlashCopy image copy also requires
| additional time and system resources to read the logs and reapply work
| that was previously backed out.

|
| **Restriction:** CONSISTENT cannot be specified when copying objects that
| have been defined with the NOT LOGGED attribute. If CONSISTENT is
| specified for an object that is defined with the NOT LOGGED attribute, the
| COPY utility does not make a copy of the object and issues message
| DSNU076I with return code 8.

|
| **FCCOPYDDN**
|

Specifies the template to be used to create the FlashCopy image copy data set
names. If a value is not specified for FCCOPYDDN on the COPY control
statement when FlashCopy is used, the value specified on the FCCOPYDDN
subsystem parameter determines the template to be used.

|
| (*template-name*)

|
| The data set names for the FlashCopy image copy are allocated according
| to the template specification. For table space or index space level
| FlashCopy image copies, because a data set is allocated for each partition
| or piece, ensure that the data set naming convention in the template
| specification is unique enough. Use the &DSNUM variable, which resolves
| to a partition number or piece number at execution time.

|
| **CONCURRENT**
|

Specifies that DFSMSdss concurrent copy is to make the full image copy. The
image copy is recorded in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table with ICTYPE=F
and STYPE=C or STYPE=J.

|
| If the SYSPRINT DD statement points to a data set, you must use a DSSPRINT
| DD statement.

When you specify SHRLEVEL(REFERENCE), an ICTYPE=Q record is placed into the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table after the object has been quiesced. If COPY fails, this record remains in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY. When COPY is successful, this ICTYPE=Q record is replaced with the ICTYPE=F record.

If the page size in the table space matches the control interval for the associated data set, you can use either the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option or the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option with the CONCURRENT option. If the page size does not match the control interval, you must use the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option for table spaces with a 8-KB, 16-KB, or 32-KB page size.

When you do not specify FILTERDDN, the DFSMSdss dump statement cannot include more than 255 data sets. When you request a concurrent copy on an object that exceeds this limitation, DB2 dynamically allocates a temporary filter data set for you.

FILTERDDN*ddname*

Specifies the optional DD statement for the filter data set that COPY is to use with the CONCURRENT option. COPY uses this data set to automatically build a list of table spaces that are to be copied by DFSMSdss with one DFSMSdss DUMP statement.

You can use the **FILTERDDN** keyword to specify either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

If you specify FILTERDDN, the SYSCOPY records for all objects in the list have the same data set name.

ddname is the DD name.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates whether other programs can access or update the table space or index while COPY is running.

REFERENCE

Allows read-only access by other programs.

CHANGE

Allows other programs to change the table space or index space.

When you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, uncommitted data might be copied.

When SHRLEVEL CHANGE with FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, the COPY utility uses DB2 shadow processing to backout uncommitted work to make the FlashCopy image copy consistent without any availability outage to applications. Application updates are allowed throughout the creation of the FlashCopy image copy and the creation of the sequential image copies.

Recommendation: Except when creating FlashCopy image copies or traditional image copies with SHRLEVEL CHANGE and FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT specified, do not use image copies that are made with SHRLEVEL CHANGE when you run RECOVER TOCOPY.

SHRLEVEL CHANGE is not allowed for a table space that is defined as NOT LOGGED.

SHRLEVEL CHANGE is not allowed when you use DFSMSdss concurrent copy for table spaces that have a page size that is greater than 4 KB and

does not match the control interval size. If the page size in the table space matches the control interval size for the associated data set, you can use either the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option or the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option.

If you are copying a list and you specify the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option, you can specify OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP) so that each object in the list is placed in UTRW status and the read claim class is held only while the object is being copied.

The read claim class is briefly obtained for each object during the UTILINIT phase to determine the object size if LIMIT is specified on the COPYDDN or RECOVERYDDN template. This applies only if OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP) is specified.

If you do not specify OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP), all of the objects in the list are placed in UTRW status and the read claim class is held on all objects for the entire duration of the COPY.

SCOPE

Indicates the scope of the copy for the specified objects.

ALL

Indicates that you want to copy all of the specified objects.

PENDING

Indicates that you want to copy only those objects in COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status. When the DSNUM ALL option is specified for partitioned objects, and one or more of the partitions are in COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status, a copy will be taken of the entire table space or index space.

For partitioned objects, if you only want the partitions in COPY-pending status or informational COPY-pending status to be copied, then a list of partitions should be specified. This is done by invoking COPY on a LISTDEF list built with the PARTLEVEL option. An output image copy data set will be created for each partition that is in COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status.

Related reference

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Before running COPY

Certain activities might be required before you run the COPY utility, depending on your situation.

Before running COPY, check that the table spaces and index spaces that you want to copy are not in any restricted states.

Data sets that COPY uses

The COPY utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that COPY uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 18. Data sets that COPY uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
DSSPRINT	Output data set for messages when making concurrent copies.	No ¹
Filter	A single data set that DB2 uses when you specify the FILTERDDN option in the utility control statement. This data set contains a list of VSAM data set names that DB2 builds, and is used during COPY when you specify the CONCURRENT and FILTERDDN options.	No ²
Sequential image copies	From one to four sequential output data sets that contain the resulting sequential format image copy data sets. Specify their DD names with the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options of the utility control statement. The default is one copy to be written to the data set described by the SYSCOPY DD statement.	Yes
FlashCopy image copies	For table space or index space level copies, a VSAM data set for the output FlashCopy image copy of each partition or piece. For a partition level or piece level copy, a VSAM data set for the output FlashCopy image copy of the partition or piece.	No ³

Note:

1. Required if you specify CONCURRENT and the SYSPRINT DD statement points to a data set.
2. Required if you specify the FILTERDDN option.
3. Required if you specify either FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT.

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Table space or index space

Object that is to be copied. (If you want to copy only certain data sets in a table space, you must use the DSNUM option in the control statement.)

DB2 catalog objects

Objects in the catalog that COPY accesses. The utility records each copy in the DB2 catalog table SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

Output data set size

Sequential image copies are written to sequential non-VSAM data sets.

FlashCopy image copies are written to VSAM data sets.

Recommendation: Use a template for the image copy data set by specifying a TEMPLATE statement without the SPACE keyword. When you omit this keyword, the utility calculates the appropriate size of the data set for you.

Alternatively, you can find the approximate size of the image copy data set for a table space, in bytes, by either executing COPY with the CHANGELIMIT REPORTONLY option, or using the following procedure:

1. Find the high-allocated page number, either from the NACTIVEF column of SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE after running the RUNSTATS utility, or from information in the VSAM catalog data set.
2. Multiply the high-allocated page number by the page size.

Filter data set size

Recommendation: Use a template for the filter data set by specifying a TEMPLATE statement without the SPACE keyword. When you omit this keyword, the utility calculates the appropriate size of the data set for you.

Alternatively, you can determine the approximate size of the filter data set size that is required, in bytes, by using the following formula, where n = the number of specified objects in the COPY control statement:

$$(240 + (80 * n))$$

JCL parameters

For the output data sets of sequential format image copies, you can specify a block size by using the BLKSIZE parameter on the DD statement for the output data set. Valid block sizes are multiples of 4096 bytes. You can increase the buffer using the BUFNO parameter; for example, you might specify BUFNO=30, which creates 30 buffers.

For the output data sets of image copies created by invoking either the concurrent copy function or FlashCopy function of DFSMSdss, the required specifications for the output data sets might be different than those for sequential format image copies. For example, the BUFNO parameter does not apply to the output data sets for concurrent image copies.

Cataloging image copies

To catalog your image copy data sets, use the DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG) parameter in the DD statement or TEMPLATE that is named by the COPYDDN option. After the image copy is taken, the DSVOLSER column of the row that is inserted into SYSIBM.SYSCOPY contains blanks.

FlashCopy image copy data sets are always cataloged. The DISP= parameter is not specified in the FlashCopy template. After the image copy is taken, unless uncommitted work is backed out of the image copy when FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, the DSVOLSER column of the row that is inserted into SYSIBM.SYSCOPY contains blanks. If uncommitted work is backed out of a FlashCopy image copy, the DSVOLSER column contains the DB2 checkpoint information for each member.

Duplicate image copy data sets are not allowed. If a cataloged data set is already recorded in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY with the same name as the new image copy data set, the COPY utility issues a message and does not make the copy.

When RECOVER locates the SYSCOPY entry, it uses the operating system catalog to allocate the required data set. If you have uncataloged the data set, the allocation fails. In that case, the recovery can still go forward; RECOVER searches

for a previous image copy. But even if it finds one, RECOVER must use correspondingly more of the log during recovery.

Recommendation: Keep the ICF catalog consistent with the information about existing image copy data sets in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table.

Related concepts

“Data sets that online utilities use” on page 11

Concurrency and compatibility for COPY

The COPY utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Restricted states

Do not copy a table space that is in any of the following states:

- CHECK-pending
- RECOVER-pending
- REFRESH-pending
- Logical error range
- Group buffer pool RECOVER-pending
- Stopped
- STOP-pending

Do not copy an index space that is in any of the following states:

- CHECK-pending
- REBUILD-pending
- RECOVER-pending
- REFRESH pending
- Logical error range
- Group buffer pool RECOVER-pending
- Stopped
- STOP-pending

If a table space is in COPY-pending status, or a table space or index is in informational COPY-pending status, you can reset the status only by taking a full image copy of the entire table space, all partitions of the partitioned table space, or the index space. When you make an image copy of a partition, the COPY-pending status of the partition is reset. If a nonpartitioned table space is in COPY-pending status, you can reset the status only by taking a full image copy of the entire table space, and not of each data set.

Claims and drains

The following table shows which claim classes COPY claims and drains and any restrictive status that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 19. Claim classes of COPY operations

Target	SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	SHRLEVEL CHANGE
Table space, index space, or partition	DW UTRO	CR UTRW ¹

Table 19. Claim classes of COPY operations (continued)

Target	SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	SHRLEVEL CHANGE
Legend:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DW - Drain the write claim class - concurrent access for SQL readers • CR - Claim the read claim class • UTRO - Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed • UTRW - Utility restrictive state, read-write access allowed 		
Note:		
1. If the target object is a segmented table space, SHRLEVEL CHANGE does not allow you to concurrently execute an SQL DELETE without the WHERE clause.		

COPY does not set a utility restrictive state if the target object is DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

Compatibility

The following table documents which utilities can run concurrently with COPY on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also documented in the table.

Table 20. Compatibility of COPY with other utilities

Action	COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE ¹	COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE
BACKUP SYSTEM	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
CHECK DATA	Yes	Yes	No	No
CHECK INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
CHECK LOB	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPY INDEXSPACE	No	No	Yes	Yes
COPY TABLESPACE	Yes	Yes	No	No
COPYTOCOPY	No	No	No	No
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
LOAD	No	No	No	No
MERGECOPY	No	No	No	No
MODIFY	No	No	No	No
QUIESCE	Yes	No	Yes	No
REBUILD INDEX	No	No	Yes	Yes
RECOVER INDEX	No	No	Yes	Yes
RECOVER TABLESPACE	Yes	Yes	No	No
REORG INDEX	No	No	Yes	Yes
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No	No	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Table 20. Compatibility of COPY with other utilities (continued)

Action	COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE ¹	COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE
REPAIR LOCATE by KEY, RID, or PAGE DUMP or VERIFY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE by KEY or RID DELETE or REPLACE	No	No	No	No
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE REPLACE	No	No	Yes	No
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE REPLACE	Yes	Yes	No	No
REPORT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RESTORE SYSTEM	No	No	No	No
RUNSTATS INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
UNLOAD ¹	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Note:

1. If CONCURRENT option is used, contention might be encountered when other utilities are run on the same object at the same time.

To run on DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, COPY must be the only utility in the job step. Also, if SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is specified, the COPY job of DSNDB01.SYSUTILX must be the only utility running in the Sysplex.

COPY on SYSUTILX is an “exclusive” job; such a job can interrupt another job between job steps, possibly causing the interrupted job to time out.

Related concepts

“Monitoring utilities with the DISPLAY UTILITY command” on page 31

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Full image copies

You can make full image copies of a variety of data objects. Data objects include table spaces, table space partitions, data sets of linear table spaces, index spaces, and index space partitions.

The following statement specifies that the COPY utility is to make a full image copy of the DSN8S10E table space in database DSN8D10A:

```
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
```

The COPY utility writes pages from the table space or index space to the output data sets. The JCL for the utility job must include DD statements or have a

template specification for the data sets. If the object consists of multiple data sets and all are copied in one run, the copies reside in one physical sequential output data set.

For sequential image copies, if the object consists of multiple data sets and all are copied in one run, the copies reside in one physical sequential output data set. For FlashCopy image copies, if the object consists of multiple data sets and all are copied in one run, there is a FlashCopy image copy data set for each dataset.

Image copies should be made either by entire page set or by partition, but not by both.

Recommendations:

- Take a full image copy after any of the following operations:
 - CREATE or LOAD operations for a new object that is populated.
 - REORG operation for an existing object.
 - LOAD RESUME of an existing object.
 - LOGGED operation of a table space.
- Copy the indexes over a table space whenever a full copy of the table space is taken. More frequent index copies decrease the number of log records that need to be applied during recovery. At a minimum, you should copy an index when it is placed in informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) status.

If you create an inline copy during LOAD or REORG, you do not need to execute a separate COPY job for the table space. If you do not create an inline copy, and if the LOG option is NO, the COPY-pending status is set for the table space. You must then make a full image copy for any subsequent recovery of the data. An incremental image copy is not allowed in this case. If the LOG option is YES, the COPY-pending status is not set. However, your next image copy must be a full image copy. Again, an incremental image copy is not allowed.

The COPY utility automatically takes a full image copy of a table space if you attempt to take an incremental image copy when it is not allowed.

If a table space changes after an image copy is taken and before the table space is altered from NOT LOGGED to LOGGED, the table space is marked COPY-pending, and a full image copy must be taken.

The catalog table SYSIBM.SYSCOPY and the directory tables SYSIBM.SYSUTILX and SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX record information from the COPY utility. Copying the table spaces for those tables can lock out separate COPY jobs that are running simultaneously; therefore, defer copying the table spaces for SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, SYSIBM.SYSUTILX, and SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX until the other copy jobs have completed. However, if you must copy other objects while another COPY job processes the catalog or directory, specify SHRLEVEL(CHANGE) for copying the catalog and directory table spaces. Beginning in DB2 Version 10, the COPY control statements in the DSNTIJIC job specify SHRLEVEL(CHANGE).

Related concepts

“Copying catalog and directory objects” on page 149

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Incremental image copies

An incremental image copy is a copy of the pages that have been changed since the last full or incremental image copy.

You cannot take an incremental image copy of an index space.

You can make an incremental image copy of a table space if the following conditions are true:

- A full image copy of the table space exists.
- The COPY-pending status is not on for that table space.
- The last copy was taken without the CONCURRENT option.
- The previous copy was not made by using FlashCopy. This applies even if sequential copies were made from the FlashCopy image copy.

Copy by partition or data set

You can make an incremental image copy by partition or data set (specified by DSNUM) in the following situations:

- A full image copy of the table space exists.
- A full image copy of the same partition or data set exists and the COPY-pending status is not on for the table space or partition.

In addition, the full image copy must have been made after the most recent use of CREATE, REORG or LOAD, or it must be an inline copy that was made during the most recent use of LOAD or REORG.

Sample control statement

To specify an incremental image copy, use FULL NO on the COPY statement, as in the following example:

```
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E FULL NO SHRLEVEL CHANGE
```

Performance advantage

An incremental image copy generally does not require a complete scan of the table space, with two exceptions:

- The table space is defined with the TRACKMOD NO option.
- You are taking the first copy after you altered a table space to TRACKMOD YES.

Space maps in each table space indicate, for each page, regardless of whether it has changed since the last image copy. Therefore, making an incremental copy can be significantly faster than making a full copy if the table space is defined with the TRACKMOD YES option. Incremental image copies of a table space that is defined with TRACKMOD NO still saves space, although the performance advantage is smaller.

| **Restriction:** You cannot make incremental copies of DSNDB01.DBD01,
| DSNDB01.SYSDBDXA, DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, or DSNDB06.SYSCOPY in the
| catalog. For those objects, COPY always makes a full image copy and places the
| SYSCOPY record in the log.

Multiple image copies

| In a single COPY job, you can create up to five exact copies of various data objects.
| Data objects include table spaces, table space partitions, data sets of a linear table
| space, index spaces, and index space partitions.

| You can make two sequential copies for use on the local DB2 system (installed
| with the option LOCALSITE), and two more for offsite recovery (on any system
| that is installed with the option RECOVERYSITE). You can also make a fifth
| FlashCopy image copy for use on the local DB2 system. All copies are identical,
| and all are produced at the same time from one invocation of COPY.

| Alternatively you can use COPYTOCOPY to create the needed image copies.
| COPYTOCOPY can be used to create sequential image copies from a FlashCopy
| image copy.

| The ICBACKUP column in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY specifies whether the image copy
| data set is for the local or recovery system, and whether the image copy data set is
| for the primary copied data set or for the backup copied data set. The ICUNIT
| column in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY specifies whether the image copy data set is on tape
| or disk.

Remote-site recovery

| For remote site recovery, DB2 assumes that the system and application libraries
| and the DB2 catalog and directory are identical at the local site and recovery site.
| You can regularly transport copies of archive logs and database data sets to a safe
| location to keep current data for remote-site recovery current. This information can
| be kept on tape until needed.

Naming the data sets for the copies

| The COPYDDN option of COPY names the output data sets that receive copies for
| local use. The RECOVERYDDN option names the output data sets that receive
| copies that are intended for remote-site recovery. The options have the following
| formats:

COPYDDN (*ddname1*,*ddname2*) RECOVERYDDN (*ddname3*,*ddname4*)

| The DD names for the primary output data sets are *ddname1* and *ddname3*. The
| ddnames for the backup output data sets are *ddname2* and *ddname4*.

Sample control statement

| The following statement makes four full image copies of the table space DSN8S10E
| in database DSN8D10A. The statement uses LOCALDD1 and LOCALDD2 as DD
| names for the primary and backup copies that are used on the local system and
| RECOVDD1 and RECOVDD2 as DD names for the primary and backup copies for
| remote-site recovery:

```
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E  
  COPYDDN (LOCALDD1,LOCALDD2)  
  RECOVERYDDN (RECOVDD1,RECOVDD2)
```

You do not need to make copies for local use and for remote-site recovery at the same time. COPY allows you to use either the COPYDDN or the RECOVERYDDN option without the other. If you make copies for local use more often than copies for remote-site recovery, a remote-site recovery could be performed with an older copy, and more of the log, than a local recovery; hence, the recovery would take longer. However, in your plans for remote-site recovery, that difference might be acceptable. You can also use MERGECOPY RECOVERYDDN to create recovery-site full image copies, and merge local incremental copies into new recovery-site full copies.

Conditions for making multiple incremental image copies

DB2 cannot make incremental image copies if any of the following conditions is true:

- The incremental image copy is requested only for a site other than the current site (the local site from which the request is made).
- Incremental image copies are requested for both sites, but the most recent full image copy was made for only one site.
- Incremental image copies are requested for both sites and the most recent full image copies were made for both sites, but between the most recent full image copy and current request, incremental image copies were made for the current site only.

If you attempt to make incremental image copies under any of these conditions, COPY terminates with return code 8, does not take the image copy or update the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY table, and issues the following message:

```
DSNU404I  csect-name
          LOCAL SITE AND RECOVERY SITE INCREMENTAL
          IMAGE COPIES ARE NOT SYNCHRONIZED
```

To proceed, and still keep the two sets of data synchronized, take another full image copy of the table space for both sites, or change your request to make an incremental image copy only for the site at which you are working.

DB2 cannot make an incremental image copy if the object that is being copied is an index or index space.

Maintaining copy consistency

Make full image copies for both the local and recovery sites:

- If a table space is in COPY-pending status
- After a LOAD or REORG procedure that did not create an inline copy
- If an index is in the informational COPY-pending status
- If a table space is in informational COPY-pending status

This action helps to ensure correct recovery for both local and recovery sites. If the requested full image copy is for one site only, but the history shows that copies were made previously for both sites, COPY continues to process the image copy and issues the following warning message:

```
DSNU406I  FULL IMAGE COPY SHOULD BE TAKEN FOR BOTH LOCAL SITE AND
          RECOVERY SITE.
```

The COPY-pending status of a table space is not changed for the other site when you make multiple image copies at the current site for that other site. For example, if a table space is in COPY-pending status at the current site, and you make copies

from there for the other site only, the COPY-pending status is still on when you bring up the system at that other site.

Related reference

Chapter 12, "COPYTOCOPY," on page 169

FlashCopy image copies

You can configure certain utilities to create image copies by using the FlashCopy function that is provided by z/OS DFSMS and the IBM TotalStorage ESS storage subsystems. FlashCopy can reduce both the unavailability of data during the copy operation and the amount of time that is required for backup and recovery operations.

The FlashCopy image copy is allocated by DFSMSdss and is always cataloged.

FlashCopy image copies are output to VSAM data sets. The traditional copy methods that are used by the utilities output to a non-VSAM sequential format data set. FlashCopy creates a separate VSAM data set for each partition or piece of the object that is being copied.

When creating a FlashCopy image copy, the following utilities also can create one to four additional sequential format image copies in a single execution:

- COPY
- LOAD with the REPLACE option specified
- REORG TABLESPACE

The COPYTOCOPY utility can create sequential format image copies by using an existing FlashCopy image copy as input.

Recommendation: To provide a recovery base for media failures, create one or more additional sequential format image copies when you create a FlashCopy image copy.

Operational restrictions for FlashCopy

Data set level FlashCopy is subject to certain operational restrictions that can cause a utility to resort to traditional I/O methods to complete a copy operation, even when you explicitly requested FlashCopy support in either the subsystem parameter or the utility control statement. In some cases, the utility aborts the copy operation.

The circumstances in which the utilities might not be able to complete a copy operation by using FlashCopy include the following situations. In these situations, the term *data set* refers to a DB2 table space or index space or a FlashCopy image copy:

- FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available.
- The source data set is already the target of a FlashCopy relationship.
- The target data set is already the source of a FlashCopy relationship.
- The source data set is already participating in the maximum number of FlashCopy relationships.

- The CISIZE, CASIZE, physical record size, or physical block size of the target data set is different from that of the source data set. The CASIZE of the target data set can be different from the source data set if the source data set is less than one cylinder.
- The source data set and the target data set are not both fully contained on the same physical control unit (controller).

Recommendation: Use the storage class attribute ACCESSIBILITY=REQUIRED or ACCESSIBILITY=PREFERRED for the source data set and for the target data set. If the storage class that is associated with a data set has this attribute, DFSMS attempts to select volumes such that the data set is contained on volumes within a single physical control unit.

For more information about FlashCopy restrictions, see *Moving Data Sets with FlashCopy (z/OS DFSMSdss Storage Administration)*.

If FlashCopy cannot be used, the utility completes the copy operation by using traditional I/O methods to copy the object, which can result in longer than expected execution time.

Only one utility can create a FlashCopy image copy of an object at one time. For example, the COPY utility specified with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE and FLASHCOPY options is running on an object. Then the LOAD utility, also specified with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE and FLASHCOPY options, starts running on the same object. The LOAD utility will receive message DSNU180I with a return code of 8 to indicate that the LOAD utility is not compatible with the COPY utility.

Specification of the FlashCopy option

For utilities that support the creation of FlashCopy image copies, you can specify the FlashCopy option by using DB2 subsystem parameters, utility control statement parameters, or both.

You can use the FlashCopy subsystem parameters to define the FlashCopy option as the default behavior for each of the utilities that support the FlashCopy option. When the FlashCopy subsystem parameters are enabled as the default behavior, you do not need to specify the FlashCopy options in the utility control statement.

If you specify the FlashCopy options in both the subsystem parameters and the utility control statement parameters, the specifications in the utility control statement override the specifications of the subsystem parameters.

Image copy consistency with FlashCopy

The support for FlashCopy provided by the COPY and LOAD utilities includes an option that can make an image copy consistent for recovery purposes.

When you specify the SHRLEVEL CHANGE and FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT options, after the FlashCopy image copy has been created, the utility checks the logs for changes to the copied data that were uncommitted at the time that the image copy was created. Any uncommitted data that is identified in the logs is backed out of the image copy before the utility terminates.

DB2 shadow processing is used to make the FlashCopy image copy consistent. The FlashCopy image copy data set is used as the shadow. Other utilities that use DB2 shadow processing utilize a different naming convention.

Creating an image copy by specifying FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT uses more system resources and takes longer than creating an image copy by specifying FLASHCOPY YES, because backing out uncommitted work requires reading the logs and updating the image copy.

Restriction: You cannot specify CONSISTENT when copying objects that have been defined with the NOT LOGGED attribute.

SYSCOPY records for FlashCopy image copies

For each FlashCopy image copy, DB2 creates one or more records in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY table. Depending on whether the object that is being copied is partitioned, and on the number of partitions or object pieces that are being copied, SYSCOPY records for FlashCopy image copies can differ slightly from the SYSCOPY records for sequential format image copies.

For a FlashCopy image copy of a single partition or piece of an object, one SYSCOPY record is created for the partition or piece.

For a FlashCopy image copy of a table space or index space:

- If there is more than one partition or piece in a table space, DB2 creates a separate SYSCOPY record for the table space or index space and for each partition or piece in the table space or index space. In the DSNUM column of the SYSCOPY record, DB2 assigns a data set number to the table space or index space and to each partition or piece. The data set numbers start at 0 for the table space or index space and are incremented by 1 for each partition or piece. For example, if a table space has two partitions, a FlashCopy image copy of the table space creates three SYSCOPY records:
 1. A SYSCOPY record for the table space with DSNUM=0
 2. A SYSCOPY record for the first partition with DSNUM=1
 3. A SYSCOPY record for the second partition with DSNUM=2
- If there is only one partition or piece in the table space, only one SYSCOPY record is created with DSNUM=0.

For FlashCopy image copies that were created with the FLASHCOPY YES option, the START_RBA value corresponds to the RBA or LRSN when the object's pages were last externalized to disk.

For FlashCopy image copies that were created with the FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT option and have undergone consistency processing, the START_RBA value corresponds to one of the following values, depending on whether active units of work existed:

- If active units of work existed, the START_RBA value corresponds to the beginning RBA or LRSN of the oldest uncommitted unit of work that was backed out.
- If no active units of work existed, the START_RBA value corresponds to the RBA or LRSN when the object's pages were last externalized to disk.

In the SYSCOPY section of the output from REPORT RECOVERY, the SYSCOPY records are presented in ascending START_RBA order and not in timestamp order.

| Thus, the SYSCOPY records for FlashCopy image copies might be shown in the
| REPORT RECOVERY out of chronological order as compared to other SYSCOPY
| records.

| The implication of the START_RBA value for FlashCopy image copies is that a
| recovery from a FlashCopy image copy likely requires more log processing.

| **Recovery and FlashCopy image copies**

| Using FlashCopy to create image copies has the several implications for recovery.
| Those implications are described in “Recovering with FlashCopy image copies” on
| page 429

| **Utility support for FlashCopy**

| The following DB2 for z/OS utilities can use FlashCopy to create image copies:

- | • COPY
- | • LOAD
- | • REBUILD INDEX
- | • REORG INDEX
- | • REORG TABLESPACE

| When creating a FlashCopy image copy, the COPY and LOAD utilities with
| SHRLEVEL CHANGE can include additional phases of execution, depending on
| the options that are specified in the utility control statement. The additional
| execution phases include:

| **LOGAPPLY**

| If CONSISTENT has been specified for either the COPY utility or the
| LOAD utility, the utility identifies the most recent checkpoint for each
| member. All objects that are being copied will be updated to the same
| logpoint to prepare for backout processing.

| **LOGCSR**

| If CONSISTENT has been specified for either the COPY utility or the
| LOAD utility, the utility reads the logs during this phase to identify the
| uncommitted work that needs to be backed out of the image copy.

| **LOGUNDO**

| If CONSISTENT has been specified for either the COPY utility or the
| LOAD utility, the utility backs out uncommitted work to make the image
| copy consistent.

| **SEQCOPY**

| If additional sequential format image copies are requested, the COPY
| utility creates them from the FlashCopy image copy during this phase.

| The following utilities accept the VSAM data sets that are produced by FlashCopy
| as input:

- | • COPYTOCOPY
- | • DSN1COMP
- | • DSN1COPY
- | • DSN1PRNT
- | • RECOVER

The UNLOAD utility does not accept FlashCopy image copies as input. To use a FlashCopy image copy as the source for the UNLOAD utility, use the COPYTOCOPY utility to create sequential format image copies from the FlashCopy image copy.

Related concepts

“Subsystem parameters for refining DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities” on page 35

Related reference

 DB2 utilities parameters panel 1: DSNTIP6 (DB2 Installation Guide)

“Syntax and options of the COPY control statement” on page 121

“Syntax and options of the LOAD control statement” on page 223

“Syntax and options of the REBUILD INDEX control statement” on page 380

“Syntax and options of the REORG INDEX control statement” on page 460

“Syntax and options of the REORG TABLESPACE control statement” on page 496

Copying a list of objects

Within a single COPY control statement, the COPY utility allows you to process a list that contains any of the following objects: table space, table space partition, data set of a linear table space, index space, and index space partition.

Specifying objects in a list is useful for copying a complete set of referentially related table spaces before running QUIESCE. Consider the following information when taking an image copy for a list of objects:

- DB2 copies table spaces and index spaces in the list one at a time, in the specified order, unless you invoke parallelism by specifying the PARALLEL keyword.
- Each table space in the list with a CHANGELIMIT specification has a REPORT phase, so the phase switches between REPORT and COPY while processing the list.
- If processing completes successfully, any COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status on the table spaces and informational COPY-pending status on the indexes are reset.
- If you use COPY with the SHRLEVEL(REFERENCE) option:
 - DB2 drains the write claim class on each table space and index in the UTILINIT phase, which is held for the duration of utility processing.
 - Utility processing inserts SYSCOPY rows for all of the objects in the list at the same time, after all of the objects have been copied.
 - All objects in the list have identical RBA or LRSN values for the START_RBA column for the SYSCOPY rows: the START_RBA is set to the current LRSN at the end of the COPY phase.
- If you use COPY with the SHRLEVEL(CHANGE) option:
 - If you specify OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP), each object in the list is placed in UTRW status and the read claim class is held only while the object is being copied. If you do not specify OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP), all of the objects in the list are placed in UTRW status and the read claim class is held on all objects for the entire duration of the COPY.
 - Utility processing inserts a SYSCOPY row for each object in the list when the copy of each object is complete.

- Objects in the list have different LRSN values for the START_RBA column for the SYSCOPY rows; the START_RBA value is set to the current RBA or LRSN at the start of copy processing for that object.

When you specify the PARALLEL keyword, DB2 supports parallelism for image copies on disk or tape devices. You can control the number of tape devices to allocate for the copy function by using TAPEUNITS with the PARALLEL keyword. If you use JCL statements to define tape devices, the JCL controls the allocation of the devices.

When you explicitly specify objects with the PARALLEL keyword, the objects are not necessarily processed in the specified order. Objects that are to be written to tape and whose file sequence numbers have been specified in the JCL are processed in the specified order. If templates are used, you cannot specify file sequence numbers. In the absence of overriding JCL specifications, DB2 determines the placement and, thus, the order of processing for such objects. When only templates are used, objects are processed according to their size, with the largest objects processed first.

Both the PARALLEL and TAPEUNITS keywords act as constraints on the processing of the COPY utility. The PARALLEL keyword constrains the amount of parallelism by restricting the maximum number of objects that can be processed simultaneously. The TAPEUNITS keyword constrains the number of tape drives that can be dynamically allocated for the COPY command. The TAPEUNITS keyword can constrain the amount of parallelism if an object requires a number of tapes such that the number of remaining tapes is insufficient to service another object.

To calculate the number of threads that you need when you specify the PARALLEL keyword, use the formula $(n * 2 + 1)$, where n is the number of objects that are to be processed in parallel, regardless of the total number of objects in the list. If you do not use the PARALLEL keyword, n is 1 and COPY uses three threads for a single-object COPY job.

COPY SCOPE PENDING indicates that you want to copy only those objects in COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status. When the DSNUM ALL option is specified for partitioned objects, and one or more of the partitions are in COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status, a copy will be taken of the entire table space or index space.

For partitioned objects, if you only want the partitions in COPY-pending status or informational COPY-pending status to be copied, then a list of partitions should be specified. It is recommended that you do this by invoking COPY on a LISTDEF list built with the PARTLEVEL option. An output image copy data set will be created for each partition that is in COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status.

The LIMIT option on the TEMPLATE statement allows you to switch templates for output copy data sets. Template switching is most commonly needed to direct small data sets to DASD and large data sets to TAPE. This allows you to switch to templates that differ in the UNIT, DSNs, or HSM classes.

The following table spaces cannot be included in a list of table spaces. You must specify each one as a single object:

- DSNDB01.SYSUTILX
- DSNDB06.SYSCOPY
- DSNDB01.SYSLGRNX

The only exceptions to this restriction are the indexes over these table spaces that were defined with the COPY YES attribute. You can specify such indexes along with the appropriate table space.

Related reference

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Using more than one COPY statement

You can use more than one control statement for COPY in one DB2 utility job step.

After each COPY statement executes successfully:

- A row that refers to each image copy is recorded in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY table.
- The image copy data sets are valid and available for RECOVER, MERGECOPY, COPYTOCOPY, and UNLOAD.

If a job step that contains more than one COPY statement abends, **do not** use TERM UTILITY. Restart the job from the last commit point by using RESTART instead. Terminating COPY by using TERM UTILITY in this case creates inconsistencies between the ICF catalog and DB2 catalogs.

Copying segmented table spaces

COPY distinguishes between segmented and nonsegmented table spaces. If you specify a segmented table space, COPY locates empty and unformatted data pages in the table space and does not copy them.

Copying partitions or data sets in separate jobs

You can copy partitions or data sets in separate jobs.

You should use the PARALLEL option to copy partitions in the same COPY execution in parallel. If you have a partitioned table space or partitioning index, you can copy the partitions independently in separate simultaneous jobs. This can reduce the time it takes to create sequential image copies of the entire table space.

If a nonpartitioned table space consists of more than one data set, you can copy several or all of the data sets independently in separate jobs. To do so, run simultaneous COPY jobs (one job for each data set) and specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE on each job. However, creating copies simultaneously does not provide you with a consistent recovery point unless you subsequently run a QUIESCE for the table space.

Copying partition-by-growth table spaces

An image copy at the table space level with SHRLEVEL(CHANGE) will not contain new partitions added by SQL INSERTS after the image copy began. The newly added partitions are recoverable via the DB2 logs.

When you make an image copy of a partition-by-growth table space, the partition is empty as a result of REORG, SQL delete operations, or recovery to a prior point in time. The empty partition has a header page and space map pages or system pages. The COPY utility still copies the empty partition.

Copying an XML table space

The COPY utility supports full and incremental image copies for XML table spaces. The COPY utility options SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, SHRLEVEL CHANGE, CONCURRENT, and FLASHCOPY are also supported for XML table spaces.

Unless either the CONCURRENT option or the FLASHCOPY option is specified, COPY does not copy empty or unformatted data pages of an XML table space.

If you copy a LOB table space that has a base table space with the NOT LOGGED attribute, copy the base table space and the LOB table space together so that a RECOVER TOLOGPOINT of the entire set results in consistent data across the base table space and all of the associated LOB table spaces.

Note: RECOVER TOLASTCOPY is not allowed on a list of objects. Instead, use RECOVER TOLOGPOINT, where the TOLOGPOINT is the common RBA or LRSN associated with the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE image copies.

To copy an XML table space with a base table space that has the NOT LOGGED attribute, all associated XML table spaces must also have the NOT LOGGED attribute. The XML table space acquires this NOT LOGGED attribute by being linked to the logging attribute of its associated base table space. You cannot independently alter the logging attribute of an XML table space.

If the LOG column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE record for an XML table space has the value of "X", the logging attributes of the XML table space and its base table space are linked, and that the logging attribute of both table spaces is NOT LOGGED. To break the link, alter the logging attribute of the base table space back to LOGGED, and the logging attribute of both table spaces are changed back to LOGGED.

Copying catalog and directory objects

Use the DSNTIJIC installation job to create backup copies of catalog and directory objects.

If you are migrating from a Version 9 or earlier DB2 for z/OS system, and your Version 10 DB2 for z/OS system is in conversion mode, use the DSNTIJIC job that is produced by running the installation CLIST in MIGRATE mode.

Depending on the migration mode in which the DB2 for z/OS system is running, the COPY utility skips new or obsolete catalog and directory objects during processing and issues message DSNU1530I with RC0 for each skipped object. For example, in conversion mode, the COPY utility skips catalog and directory objects that are new for the version to which you are migrating. In new function mode, the COPY utility skips catalog and directory objects that are obsolete in the version to which you are migrating.

If the output image copy has a hardcoded DD statement to a tape device, the COPY utility opens and closes the data set to write a tape mark. This ensures that subsequent image copies stacked to the same tape volume can be written.

Specifying OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP) or OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,HALT) does not impact the skipping of new or obsolete objects.

The catalog table SYSIBM.SYSCOPY and the directory tables SYSIBM.SYSUTILX and SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX record information from the COPY utility. Copying the table spaces for those tables can lock out separate COPY jobs that are running simultaneously; therefore, defer copying the table spaces for SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, SYSIBM.SYSUTILX, and SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX until the other copy jobs have completed. However, if you must copy other objects while another COPY job processes the catalog or directory, specify SHRLEVEL(CHANGE) for copying the catalog and directory table spaces. Beginning in DB2 Version 10, the COPY control statements in the DSNTIJIC job specify SHRLEVEL(CHANGE).

Related information

 [DSNU1530I \(DB2 Messages\)](#)

Make copies of XML schema repository objects

Although the XML schema repository is not part of the DB2 catalog, you need to create backup copies of XML schema repository table spaces when you back up catalog objects.

To determine which table spaces are part of the XML schema repository, see job DSNTESR.

The table spaces for which you need to make image copies are in database DSNXSR.

Copying indexes

If you copy a COPY YES index of a table space that has the NOT LOGGED attribute, copy the indexes and table spaces together to ensure that the indexes and the table space have the same recoverable point.

An index should be image copied after an ALTER INDEX REGENERATE. You should copy the index after it has been rebuilt for these types of ALTER statements:

- alter to padded
- alter to not padded
- alter add of a key column
- alter of a numeric data type key column

Any new partitions added by SQL INSERT are not contained in the image copy, but the newly added partitions are recoverable by the DB2 logs.

When the index has the COMPRESS YES attribute, concurrent copies of indexes and FlashCopy image copies of indexes are compressed because DFSMSdss is invoked to copy the VSAM linear data sets (LDS) for the index. Image copies of indexes are not compressed because the index pages are copied from the DB2 buffer pool. When image copies are taken without the concurrent option, you can choose to compress the image copies by using access method compression via DFSMS or by using IDRC if the image copies reside on tape.

Using DFSMSdss concurrent copy

You might be able to gain improved availability by using the concurrent copy function of the DFSMSdss component of the Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS). You can subsequently run the DB2 RECOVER utility to restore those image copies and apply the necessary log records to them to complete recovery.

The CONCURRENT option of COPY invokes DFSMSdss concurrent copy. The COPY utility records the resulting DFSMSdss concurrent copies in the catalog table SYSIBM.SYSCOPY with ICTYPE=F and STYPE=C or STYPE=J. STYPE=C indicates that the concurrent copy was taken of the "I" instance of the table space (which means that the instance qualifier in the name of the corresponding data set begins with the letter "I"). STYPE=J indicates that the concurrent copy was taken of the "J" instance of the table space (which means that the instance qualifier in the name of the corresponding data set begins with the letter "J").

To obtain a consistent offline backup copy outside of DB2:

1. Start the DB2 objects that are being backed up for read-only access by issuing the following command:

```
-START DATABASE(database-name) SPACENAM(tablespace-name) ACCESS(RO)
```

Allowing read-only access is necessary to ensure that no updates to data occur during this procedure.

2. Run QUIESCE with the WRITE(YES) option to quiesce all DB2 objects that are being backed up.
3. Back up the DB2 data sets after the QUIESCE utility completes successfully.
4. Issue the following command to allow transactions to access the data:

```
-START DATABASE(database-name) SPACENAM(tablespace-name)
```

If you use the CONCURRENT option:

- You must supply either a COPYDDN DD name, a RECOVERYDDN DD name, or both. Note that the required JCL parameter specifications for the output data sets for the CONCURRENT option might differ from the JCL specifications required for sequential format data sets. For example, do not specify the BUFNO parameter for the output data sets when specifying the CONCURRENT option.
- You can set the disposition to DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG) if you specify the new data set for the image copy on a scratch volume (a specific volume serial number is not specified). You must set the disposition to DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG) if you specify a specific volume serial number for the new image copy data set.
- If you are restarting COPY, specify DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG) or DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG) for the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN data sets. The DFSMSdss DUMP command does not support appending to an existing data set. Therefore, the COPY utility converts any DISP=MOD data sets to DISP=OLD before invoking DFSMSdss.
- If the SYSPRINT DD statement points to a data set, you must use a DSSPRINT DD statement.
- If the page size in the table space matches the control interval for the associated data set, you can use either the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option or the SHRLEVEL

REFERENCE option. If the page size does not match the control interval, you must use the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option for table spaces with a 8-KB, 16-KB, or 32-KB page size.

Restrictions on using DFSMSdss concurrent copy

You cannot use a copy that is made with DFSMSdss concurrent copy with the PAGE or ERRORRANGE options of the RECOVER utility. If you specify PAGE or ERROR RANGE, RECOVER bypasses any concurrent copy records when searching the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY table for a recovery point.

You can use the CONCURRENT option with SHRLEVEL CHANGE on a table space if the page size in the table space matches the control interval for the associated data set.

Also, you cannot run the following DB2 stand-alone utilities on copies that are made by DFSMSdss concurrent copy:

- DSN1COMP
- DSN1COPY
- DSN1PRNT

You cannot execute the CONCURRENT option from the DB2I Utilities panel or from the DSNU TSO CLIST command.

Requirements for using DFSMSdss concurrent copy

DFSMSdss concurrent copy is enabled by specific hardware. Contact IBM or the vendor for your specific storage product to verify whether your controller or storage server supports the concurrent copy function.

Table space availability

If you specify COPY SHRLEVEL REFERENCE with the CONCURRENT option, and if you want to copy all of the data sets for a list of table spaces to the same dump data set, specify FILTERDDN in your COPY statement to improve table space availability. If you do not specify FILTERDDN, COPY might force DFSMSdss to process the list of table spaces sequentially, which might limit the availability of some of the table spaces that are being copied.

Related concepts

“How DB2 restarts with lists” on page 41

Specifying conditional image copies

Use the CHANGELIMIT option of the COPY utility to specify conditional image copies. You can use it to get a report of image copy information about a table space, or you can let DB2 decide whether to take an image copy based on this information.

You cannot use the CHANGELIMIT option for a table space or partition that is defined with TRACKMOD NO. If you change the TRACKMOD option from NO to YES, you must take an image copy before you can use the CHANGELIMIT option. When you change the TRACKMOD option from NO to YES for a linear table space, you must take a full image copy by using DSNUM ALL before you can copy using the CHANGELIMIT option.

Obtaining image copy information about a table space

When you specify COPY CHANGELIMIT REPORTONLY, COPY reports image copy information for the table space and recommends the type of copy, if any, to take. The report includes:

- The total number of pages in the table space. This value is the number of pages that are to be copied if a full image copy is taken.
- The number of empty pages, if the table space is segmented.
- The number of changed pages. This value is the number of pages that are to be copied if an incremental image copy is taken.
- The percentage of changed pages.
- The type of image copy that is recommended.

Adding conditional code to your COPY job

You can add conditional code to your jobs so that an incremental or full image copy, or some other step, is performed depending on how much the table space has changed. For example, you can add a conditional MERGECOPY step to create a new full image copy if your COPY job took an incremental copy. COPY CHANGELIMIT uses the following return codes to indicate the degree that a table space or list of table spaces has changed:

1 (informational)

If no CHANGELIMIT was met.

2 (informational)

If the percentage of changed pages is greater than the low CHANGELIMIT and less than the high CHANGELIMIT value.

3 (informational)

If the percentage of changed pages is greater than or equal to the high CHANGELIMIT value.

If you specify multiple COPY control statements in one job step, that job step reports the highest return code from all of the imbedded statements. Basically, the statement with the highest percentage of changed pages determines the return code and the recommended action for the entire list of COPY control statements that are contained in the subsequent job step.

Using conditional copy with generation data groups (GDGs)

When you use generation data groups (GDGs) and need to make an incremental image copy, take the following steps to prevent creating an empty image copy:

1. Include in your job a first step in which you run COPY with CHANGELIMIT REPORTONLY. Set the SYSCOPY DD statement to DD DUMMY so that no output data set is allocated. If you specify REPORTONLY and use a template, DB2 does not dynamically allocate the data set.
2. Add a conditional JCL statement to examine the return code from the COPY CHANGELIMIT REPORTONLY step.
3. Add a second COPY step without CHANGELIMIT REPORTONLY to copy the table space or table space list based on the return code from the second step.

Preparing for recovery

Read the following information pertaining to recovery, if you are taking incremental copies, if you have recently run REORG or LOAD, or if you plan to recover a LOB table space.

Using incremental copies

The RECOVER TABLESPACE utility merges all incremental image copies since the last full image copy, and it must have all the image copies available at the same time. If this requirement is likely to strain your system resources—for example, by demanding more tape units than are available—consider regularly merging multiple image copies into one copy.

Even if you do not periodically merge multiple image copies into one copy when you do not have enough tape units, RECOVER TABLESPACE can still attempt to recover the object. RECOVER dynamically allocates the full image copy and attempts to dynamically allocate all the incremental image copy data sets. If every incremental copy can be allocated, recovery proceeds to merge pages to table spaces and apply the log. If a point is reached where RECOVER TABLESPACE cannot allocate an incremental copy, the log RBA of the last successfully allocated data set is noted. Attempts to allocate incremental copies cease, and the merge proceeds using only the allocated data sets. The log is applied from the noted RBA, and the incremental image copies that were not allocated are simply ignored.

After running LOAD or REORG

Recommendation: Create primary and backup image copies after specifying a LOAD or REORG operation with LOG NO when an inline copy is not created. Create these copies, so that if the primary image copy is not available, fallback recovery using the secondary image copy is possible.

Creating a point of recovery

If you use COPY SHRLEVEL REFERENCE to copy a list of objects that contains all referentially related structures, you do not need to QUIESCE these objects in order to create a consistent point of recovery because the objects will be recovered with transactional consistency (the objects will only contain data that has been committed). However, recovering objects to a quiesce point will be faster because no work has to be backed out. Also, you may still want to establish quiesce points for related sets of objects if there is a need to plan for point-in-time recovery for the entire set.

For LOB data, you should quiesce and copy both the base table space and the LOB table space at the same time to establish a recovery point of consistency, called a recovery point. Be aware that QUIESCE does not create a recovery point for a LOB table space that contains LOBs that are defined with LOG NO.

Setting and clearing the informational COPY-pending status

For an index that was defined with the COPY YES attribute the following utilities can place the index in the informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) status:

- REORG INDEX
- REORG TABLESPACE LOG YES or NO
- LOAD TABLE LOG YES or NO
- REBUILD INDEX

After the utility processing completes, take a full image copy of the index space so that the RECOVER utility can recover the index space. If you need to recover an index of which you did not take a full image copy, use the REBUILD INDEX utility to rebuild the index from data in the table space.

Table spaces with the NOT LOGGED attribute that have been updated since the last full copy will be in informational COPY-pending status. To copy the table spaces that have been updated, run the COPY utility with the SCOPE PENDING option.

Improving performance

Certain activities can improve COPY performance.

You can merge a full image copy and subsequent incremental image copies into a new full copy by running the MERGECOPY utility. After reorganizing a table space, the first image copy **must** be a full image copy.

Do not base the decision of whether to run a full image copy or an incremental image copy on the number of rows that are updated since the last image copy was taken. Instead, base your decision on the percentage of pages that contain at least one updated record (not the number of updated records). Regardless of the size of the table, if more than 50% of the pages contain updated records, use full image copy (this saves the cost of a subsequent MERGECOPY). To find the percentage of changed pages, you can execute COPY with the CHANGELIMIT REPORTONLY option. Alternatively, you can execute COPY CHANGELIMIT to allow COPY to determine whether a full image copy or incremental copy is required.

Using DB2 data compression for table spaces can improve COPY performance because COPY does not decompress data. The performance improvement is proportional to the amount of compression.

Copying table spaces with mixed volume IDs

You cannot copy a table space or index space that uses a storage group that is defined with mixed specific and non-specific volume IDs by using CREATE STOGROUP or ALTER STOGROUP. If you specify such a table space or index space, the job terminates and you receive error message DSNU419I.

Defining generation data groups for the COPY utility

Use generation data groups to hold image copies. Use of generation data groups offers the benefit of automating the allocation of data set names and the deletion of the oldest data set.

When you define the generation data group:

- You can specify that the oldest data set is automatically deleted when the maximum number of data sets is reached. If you do that, make the maximum number large enough to support all recovery requirements. When data sets are deleted, use the MODIFY utility to delete the corresponding rows in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.
- Make the limit number of generation data sets equal to the number of copies that you want to keep. Use NOEMPTY to avoid deleting all the data sets from the integrated catalog facility catalog when the limit is reached.

Attention: Do not take incremental image copies when using generation data groups unless data pages have changed. When you use generation data groups, taking an incremental image copy when no data pages have changed causes the following results:

- The new image copy data set is empty.
- No SYSCOPY record is inserted for the new image copy data set.
- Your oldest image copy is deleted.

Recommendation: Use templates when using generation data groups.

Related concepts

“Specifying conditional image copies” on page 152

Using DB2 with DFSMS products

You can use DB2 with DFSMS products.

If image copy data sets are managed by HSM or SMS, all data sets are cataloged.

If you plan to use SMS, catalog all image copies. Never maintain cataloged and uncataloged image copies that have the same name.

Image copies on tape

Do not combine a full image copy and incremental image copies for the same table space on one tape volume. If you do, the RECOVER TABLESPACE utility cannot allocate the incremental image copies.

Termination of COPY

You can terminate the COPY utility.

An active or stopped COPY job may be terminated with the TERM UTILITY command. However, if you issue TERM UTILITY while COPY is in the active or stopped state, DB2 inserts an ICTYPE=T record in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table for each object that COPY had started processing, but not yet completed. (Exception: If the COPY utility is already in the UTILTERM phase, the image copy is considered completed.) For copies that are made with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, some objects in the list might not have an ICTYPE=T record. For SHRLEVEL CHANGE, some objects might have a valid ICTYPE=F, I, or T record, or no record at all. The COPY utility does not allow you to take an incremental image copy if an ICTYPE=T record exists. You must make a full image copy.

Implications of DISP on the DD statement

The result of terminating a COPY job that uses the parameter DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG) varies as follows:

- If only one COPY control statement exists, no row is written to SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, but an image copy data set has been created and is cataloged in the ICF catalog. You should delete that image copy data set.
- If several COPY control statements are in one COPY job step, a row for each successfully completed copy is written to SYSIBM.SYSCOPY. However, all the image copy data sets have been created and cataloged. You should delete all image copy data sets that are not recorded in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

Restart of COPY

You can restart the COPY utility.

Recommendation: Use restart current when possible, because it:

- Is valid for full image copies and incremental copies
- Is valid for a single job step with several COPY control statements
- Is valid for a list of objects
- Requires a minimum of re-processing
- Keeps the DB2 catalog and the integrated catalog facility catalog synchronized

If you do **not** use the TERM UTILITY command, you can restart a COPY job. COPY jobs with the CONCURRENT option restart from the beginning, and other COPY jobs restart from the last commit point. You cannot use RESTART(PHASE) for any COPY job. If you are restarting a COPY job with uncataloged output data sets, you must specify the appropriate volumes for the job in the JCL or on the TEMPLATE utility statement. Doing so could impact your ability to use implicit restart.

If the recommended procedure is not followed an ABEND 413-1C may occur during restart of the COPY.

Restarting with a new data set

If you define a new output data set for a current restart, complete the following actions before restarting the COPY job:

1. Copy the failed COPY output to the new data set.
2. Delete the old data set.
3. Rename the new data set to use the old data set name.

Restarting COPY after an out-of-space condition

You can also restart COPY from the last commit point after receiving an out-of-space condition.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Related tasks

“Restarting after the output data set is full” on page 40

Sample COPY control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own COPY control statements.

In some cases, you might run a COPY utility job more than once. To avoid duplicate image copy data sets, a DSN qualifier is used in the following examples.

Example 1: Making a full image copy

The following control statement specifies that the COPY utility is to make a full image copy of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E. The copy is to be written to the data set that is defined by the SYSCOPY DD statement in the JCL; SYSCOPY is the default.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJMU111.COPYTS',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSCOPY DD DSN=COPY001F.IFDY01,UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=CPY01I,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//SYSIN DD *
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
/*

```

Instead of defining the data sets in the JCL, you can use templates. In the following example, the preceding job is modified to use a template. In this example, the name of the template is LOCALDDN. The LOCALDDN template is identified in the COPY statement by the COPYDDN option.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJMU111.COPYTS',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
TEMPLATE LOCALDDN UNIT SYSDA DSN(COPY001F.IFDY01)
          SPACE(15,1) CYL DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E COPYDDN(LOCALDDN)
/*

```

Recommendation: When possible, use templates to allocate data sets.

Example 2: Making full image copies for local site and recovery site

The following COPY control statement specifies that COPY is to make primary and backup full image copies of table space DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C at both the local site and the recovery site. The COPYDDN option specifies the output data sets for the local site, and the RECOVERYDDN option specifies the output data sets for the recovery site. The PARALLEL option indicates that up to 2 objects are to be processed in parallel.

The OPTIONS statement at the beginning indicates that if COPY encounters any errors (return code 8) while making the requested copies, DB2 ignores that particular item. COPY skips that item and moves on to the next item. For example, if DB2 encounters an error copying the specified data set to the COPY1 data set, DB2 ignores the error and tries to copy the table space to the COPY2 data set.

```

OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP)
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D81P.DSN8S81C
          COPYDDN(COPY1,COPY2)
          RECOVERYDDN(COPY3,COPY4)
          PARALLEL(2)

```

Example 3: Making full image copies of a list of objects

The control statement below specifies that COPY is to make local and recovery full image copies (both primary and backup) of the following objects:

- Table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D, and its indexes:
 - DSN81010.XDEPT1
 - DSN81010.XDEPT2
 - DSN81010.XDEPT3
- Table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E, and its indexes:
 - DSN8710.XEMP1
 - DSN8710.XEMP2

These copies are to be written to the data sets that are identified by the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options for each object. The COPYDDN option specifies the data sets for the copies at the local site, and the RECOVERYDDN option specifies the data sets for the copies at the recovery site. The first parameter of each of these options specifies the data set for the primary copy, and the second parameter specifies the data set for the backup copy. For example, the primary copy of table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D at the recovery site is to be written to the data set that is identified by the COPY3 DD statement.

PARALLEL(4) indicates that up to four of these objects can be processed in parallel. As the COPY job of an object completes, the next object in the list begins processing in parallel until all of the objects have been processed.

SHRLEVEL REFERENCE specifies that no updates are allowed during the COPY job. This option is the default and is recommended to ensure the integrity of the data in the image copy.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJMU111.COPYTS',
// UTPROC='',
// SYSTEM='DSN'
//COPY1 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.LP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY2 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.LB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY3 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.RP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY4 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.RB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY5 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.LP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY6 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.LB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY7 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.RP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY8 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.RB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY1 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.LP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY2 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.LB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY3 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.RP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY4 DD DSN=C81A.S20001.D2003142.T155241.RB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY5 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.LP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY6 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.LB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY7 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.RP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY8 DD DSN=C81A.S20002.D2003142.T155241.RB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY9 DD DSN=C81A.S20003.D2003142.T155241.LP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY10 DD DSN=C81A.S20003.D2003142.T155241.LB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY11 DD DSN=C81A.S20003.D2003142.T155241.RP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY12 DD DSN=C81A.S00003.D2003142.T155241.RB,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY13 DD DSN=C81A.S00004.D2003142.T155241.LP,
// SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY14 DD DSN=C81A.S00004.D2003142.T155241.LB,
```

```

//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY15 DD DSN=C81A.S00004.D2003142.T155241.RP,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY16 DD DSN=C81A.S00004.D2003142.T155241.RB,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY17 DD DSN=C81A.S00005.D2003142.T155241.LP,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY18 DD DSN=C81A.S00005.D2003142.T155241.LB,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY19 DD DSN=C81A.S00005.D2003142.T155241.RP,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY20 DD DSN=C81A.S00005.D2003142.T155241.RB,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY21 DD DSN=C81A.S00006.D2003142.T155241.LP,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY22 DD DSN=C81A.S00006.D2003142.T155241.LB,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY23 DD DSN=C81A.S00006.D2003142.T155241.RP,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY24 DD DSN=C81A.S00006.D2003142.T155241.RB,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY25 DD DSN=C81A.S00007.D2003142.T155241.LP,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY26 DD DSN=C81A.S00007.D2003142.T155241.LB,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY27 DD DSN=C81A.S00007.D2003142.T155241.RP,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//COPY28 DD DSN=C81A.S00007.D2003142.T155241.RB,
//          SPACE=(CYL,(15,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//SYSIN DD *
COPY
  TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
    COPYDDN (COPY1,COPY2)
    RECOVERYDDN (COPY3,COPY4)
  INDEX DSN81010.XDEPT1
    COPYDDN (COPY5,COPY6)
    RECOVERYDDN (COPY7,COPY8)
  INDEX DSN81010.XDEPT2
    COPYDDN (COPY9,COPY10)
    RECOVERYDDN (COPY11,COPY12)
  INDEX DSN81010.XDEPT3
    COPYDDN (COPY13,COPY14)
    RECOVERYDDN (COPY15,COPY16)
  TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
    COPYDDN (COPY17,COPY18)
    RECOVERYDDN (COPY19,COPY20)
  INDEX DSN81010.XEMP1
    COPYDDN (COPY21,COPY22)
    RECOVERYDDN (COPY23,COPY24)
  INDEX DSN81010.XEMP2
    COPYDDN (COPY25,COPY26)
    RECOVERYDDN (COPY27,COPY28)
  PARALLEL(4)
  SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
/*

```

Figure 16. Example of making full image copies of multiple objects

You can also write this COPY job so that it uses lists and templates, as shown below. In this example, the name of the template is T1. Note that this TEMPLATE statement does not contain any space specifications for the dynamically allocated data sets. Instead, DB2 determines the space requirements. The T1 template is identified in the COPY statement by the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options.

The name of the list is COPYLIST. This list is identified in the COPY control statement by the LIST option.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJMU111.COPYTS',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
TEMPLATE T2 UNIT(SYSDA) SPACE CYL
         DSN(T2.&SN..T&TI..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.)
TEMPLATE T1 UNIT(SYSDA) SPACE CYL
         DSN(T1.&SN..T&TI..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.)
LIMIT(5 MB,T2)
LISTDEF COPYLIST
        INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XDEPT1
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XDEPT2
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XDEPT3
        INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XEMP1
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XEMP2
COPY LIST COPYLIST COPYDDN(T1,T1)
        RECOVERYDDN(T1,T1)
        PARALLEL(4) SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
/*
```

Figure 17. Example of using a list and template to make full image copies of multiple objects

Example 4: Using template switching

The following TEMPLATE control statement assumes that table space SMALL.TS occupies 10 cylinders and table space LARGE.TS occupies 100 cylinders. Both COPY statements use the SMALLTP template which specifies a limit of 20 cylinders. Table space SMALL.TS is smaller than this limit so no switching is performed. The output data set for table space SMALL.TS will be allocated on UNIT=SYSALLDA. Table space LARGE.TS is larger than this limit so the template is switched to the LARGETP template. The output data set for table space LARGE.TS will be allocated on UNIT=TAPE.

```
TEMPLATE LARGETP DSN &DB..&TS..D&DA..T&TI. UNIT=TAPE
TEMPLATE SMALLTP DSN &DB..&TS..D&DA..T&TI. UNIT=SYSALLDA LIMIT( 20 CYL, LARGETP )
COPY TABLESPACE SMALL.TS COPYDDN( SMALLTP )
COPY TABLESPACE LARGE.TS COPYDDN( SMALLTP )
```

Note that the DSN option of the TEMPLATE statement identifies the names of the data sets to which the copies are to be written.

Each of the preceding COPY jobs create a point of consistency for the table spaces and their indexes. You can subsequently use the RECOVER utility with the TOLOGPOINT option to recover all of these objects.

Example 5: Making full image copies of a list of objects in parallel on tape

The following COPY control statement specifies that COPY is to make image copies of the specified table spaces and their associated index spaces in parallel and stack the copies on different tape devices.

The PARALLEL 2 option specifies that up to two objects can be processed in parallel. The TAPEUNITS 2 option specifies that up to two tape devices can be dynamically allocated at one time. The COPYDDN option for each object specifies the data set that is to be used for the local image copy. In this example, all of these

data sets are dynamically allocated and defined by templates. For example, table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D is copied into a data set that is defined by the A1 template.

The TEMPLATE utility control statements define the templates A1 and A2.

```
//COPY2A EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=DSN
//SYSIN DD *
        TEMPLATE A1 DSN(&DB..&SP..COPY1) UNIT CART STACK YES
        TEMPLATE A2 DSN(&DB..&SP..COPY2) UNIT CART STACK YES
COPY PARALLEL 2 TAPEUNITS 2
        TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D COPYDDN(A1)
        INDEXSPACE DSN8810.XDEPT COPYDDN(A1)
        TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E COPYDDN(A2)
        INDEXSPACE DSN8810.YDEPT COPYDDN(A2)
```

Although use of templates is recommended, you can also define the output data sets by coding JCL DD statements, as in the following example. This COPY control statement also specifies a list of objects to be processed in parallel, but in this case, the data sets are defined by DD statements. In each DD statement, notice the parameters for the VOLUME option. These values show that the data sets are defined on three different tape devices as follows:

- The first tape device contains data sets that are defined by DD statements DD1 and DD4. (For DD4, the VOLUME option has a value of *.DD1 for the REF parameter.)
- A second tape device contains data sets that are defined by DD statements DD2 and DD3. (For DD3, the VOLUME option has a value of *.DD3 for the REF parameter.)
- A third tape device contains the data set that is defined by DD statement DD5.

The following table spaces are to be processed in parallel on two different tape devices:

- DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D on the device that is defined by the DD1 DD statement and the device that is defined by the DD5 DD statement
- DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E on the device that is defined by the DD2 DD statement

Copying of the following table spaces must wait until processing has completed for DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D and DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E:

- DSN8D81A.DSN8S81F on the device that is defined by the DD2 DD statement after DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E completes processing
- DSN8D81A.DSN8S81G on the device that is defined by the DD1 DD statement after DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D completes processing

```

//COPY1A EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=DSN
//DD1 DD DSN=DB1.TS1.CLP,
//      DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=TAPE,LABEL=(1,SL),
//      VOLUME=(,RETAIN)
//DD2 DD DSN=DB2.TS2.CLP,
//      DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=TAPE,LABEL=(1,SL),
//      VOLUME=(,RETAIN)
//DD3 DD DSN=DB3.TS3.CLB.BACKUP,
//      DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=TAPE,LABEL=(2,SL),
//      VOLUME=(,RETAIN,REF=*.DD2)
//DD4 DD DSN=DB4.TS4.CLB.BACKUP,
//      DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=TAPE,LABEL=(2,SL),
//      VOLUME=(,RETAIN,REF=*.DD1)
//DD5 DD DSN=DB1.TS1.CLB.BACKUP,
//      DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=TAPE,LABEL=(1,SL),
//      VOLUME=(,RETAIN)
COPY PARALLEL 2 TAPEUNITS 3
      TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D COPYDDN(DD1,DD5)
      TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E COPYDDN(DD2)
      TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81F COPYDDN(DD3)
      TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81G COPYDDN(DD4)

```

Figure 18. Example of making full image copies of a list of objects in parallel on tape

Example 6: Using both JCL-defined and template-defined data sets to copy a list of objects on tape

This example uses both JCL DD statements and utility templates to define four data sets for the image copies. The JCL defines two data sets (DB1.TS1.CLP and DB2.TS2.CLB.BACKUP), and the TEMPLATE utility control statements define two data sets that are to be dynamically allocated (&DB.&SP..COPY1 and &DB.&SP..COPY2).

The COPYDDN options in the COPY control statement specify the data sets that are to be used for the local primary and backup image copies of the specified table spaces. For example, the primary copy of table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S71D is to be written to the data set that is defined by the DD1 DD statement (DB1.TS1.CLP), and the primary copy of table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S71E is to be written to the data set that is defined by the A1 template (&DB.&SP..COPY1).

Four tape devices are allocated for this COPY job: the JCL allocates two tape drives, and the TAPEUNITS 2 option in the COPY statement indicates that two tape devices are to be dynamically allocated. Note that the TAPEUNITS option applies only to those tape devices that are dynamically allocated by the TEMPLATE statement.

Recommendation: Although this example shows how to use both templates and DD statements, use only templates, if possible.

```

//COPY1D EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=DSN
//DD1 DD DSN=DB1.TS1.CLP,
//      DISP=(,CATLG),
//      UNIT=3490,LABEL=(1,SL)
//      VOLUME=(,RETAIN)
//DD2 DD DSN=DB2.TS2.CLB.BACKUP,
//      DISP=(,CATLG),
//      UNIT=3490,LABEL=(2,SL)
//      VOLUME=(,RETAIN)
//SYSIN DD *
  TEMPLATE A1 DSN(&DB..&SN..COPY1) UNIT CART STACK YES
  TEMPLATE A2 DSN(&DB..&SN..COPY2) UNIT CART STACK YES
  COPY PARALLEL 2 TAPEUNITS 2
    TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D COPYDDN(DD1,DD2)
    TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E COPYDDN(A1,A2)

```

Figure 19. Example of using both JCL-defined and template-defined data sets to copy a list of objects on a tape

Example 7: Using LISTDEF to define a list of objects to copy in parallel to tape

The following example uses the LISTDEF utility to define a list of objects to be copied in parallel to different tape sources. The COPY control statement specifies that the table spaces that are included in the PAYROLL list are to be copied. (The PAYROLL list is defined by the LISTDEF control statement.) The TEMPLATE control statements define two output data sets, one for the local primary copy (&DB.©.LOCAL) and one for the recovery primary copy (&DB.©.REMOTE).

```

//COPY3A EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=DSN
//SYSIN DD *
  LISTDEF PAYROLL INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBPAYROLL.*
  INCLUDE BOTH
  TEMPLATE LOCAL DSN(&DB..&COPY..LOCAL) (+1) UNIT CART STACK YES
  TEMPLATE REMOTE DSN(&DB..&COPY..REMOTE) (+1) UNIT CART STACK YES
  COPY LIST PAYROLL PARALLEL(10) TAPEUNITS(8)
  COPYDDN(LOCAL) RECOVERYDDN(REMOTE)

```

In the preceding example, the utility determines the number of tape streams to use by dividing the value for TAPEUNITS (8) by the number of output data sets (2) for a total of 4 in this example. For each tape stream, the utility attaches one subtask. The list of objects is sorted by size and processed in descending order. The first subtask to finish processes the next object in the list. In this example, the PARALLEL(10) option limits the number of objects to be processed in parallel to 10 and attaches four subtasks. Each subtask copies the objects in the list in parallel to two tape drives, one for the primary and one for the recovery output data sets.

Example 8: Making incremental copies with updates allowed

The FULL NO option in the following COPY control statement specifies that COPY is to make incremental image copies of any specified objects. In this case, the objects to be copied are those objects that are included in the NAME1 list, as indicated by the LIST option. The preceding LISTDEF utility control statement defines the NAME1 list to include index space DSN8D81A.XEMP1 and table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D. Although one of the objects to be copied is an index space and COPY does not take incremental image copies of index spaces, the job does not fail; COPY takes a full image copy of the index space instead. However, if a COPY FULL NO statement identifies only an index that is not part of a list, the COPY job fails.

All specified copies (local primary and backup copies and remote primary and backup copies) are written to data sets that are dynamically allocated according to the specifications of the COPYDS template. This template is defined in the preceding TEMPLATE utility control statement.

The SHRLEVEL CHANGE option in the following COPY control statement specifies that updates can be made during the COPY job.

```
TEMPLATE COPYDS DSN &US.2.&SN..&LR.&PB..D&DATE.  
  LISTDEF NAME1 INCLUDE INDEXSPACE DSN8D81A.XEMP1  
              INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D  
  COPY LIST NAME1 COPYDDN(COPYDS, COPYDS) RECOVERYDDN(COPYDS,COPYDS)  
  FULL NO SHRLEVEL CHANGE
```

Example 9: Making a conditional image copy

The CHANGELIMIT(5) option in the following control statement specifies the following conditions for making an image copy of table space DSN8D81P.DSN8S81C:

- Take a full image copy of the table space if the percentage of changed pages is equal to or greater than 5%.
- Take an incremental image copy of the table space if the percentage of changed pages is greater than 0 and less than 5%.
- Do not take an image copy if no pages have changed.

```
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C CHANGELIMIT(5)
```

Example 10: Reporting image copy information for a table space

The REPORTONLY option in the following control statement specifies that image copy information is to be displayed only; no image copies are to be made. The CHANGELIMIT(10,40) option specifies that the following information is to be displayed:

- Recommendation that a full image copy be made if the percentage of changed pages is equal to or greater than 40%.
- Recommendation that an incremental image copy be made if the percentage of changed pages is greater than 10% and less than 40%.
- Recommendation that no image copy be made if the percentage of changed pages is 10% or less.

```
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C CHANGELIMIT(10,40) REPORTONLY
```

Example 11: Invoking DFSMSdss concurrent copy

The CONCURRENT option in the following COPY control statement specifies that DFSMSdss concurrent copy is to make a full image copy of the objects in the COPYLIST list (table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D and table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P). The COPYDDN option indicates that the copy is to be written to the data set that is defined by the SYSCOPY1 template. The DSSPRINT DD statement specifies the data set for message output.

```

//COPY      EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=DSN
//SYSPRINT DD DSN=COPY1.PRINT1,DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=DB2CC5
//DSSPRINT DD DSN=COPY1.PRINT2,DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=DB2CC5
//SYSIN    DD *
           TEMPLATE SYSCOPY1 DSN &DB..&TS..COPY&IC.&LR.&PB..D&DATE..T&TIME.
           UNIT(SYSDA) DISP (MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
           LISTDEF COPYLIST INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
           INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P
           COPY LIST COPYLIST
           COPYDDN (SYSCOPY1)
           CONCURRENT

```

Figure 20. Example of invoking DFSMSdss concurrent copy with the COPY utility

Example 12: Invoking DFSMSdss concurrent copy and using a filter data set

The control statement specifies that DFSMSdss concurrent copy is to make full image copies of the objects in the TSLIST list (table spaces TS1, TS2, and TS3). The FILTERDDN option specifies that COPY is to use the filter data set that is defined by the FILT template. All output is sent to the SYSCOPY data set, as indicated by the COPYDDN(SYSCOPY) option. SYSCOPY is the default. This data set is defined in the preceding TEMPLATE control statement.

```

LISTDEF TSLIST
           INCLUDE TABLESPACE TS1
           INCLUDE TABLESPACE TS2
           INCLUDE TABLESPACE TS3
TEMPLATE SYSCOPY DSN &DB..&TS..COPY&IC.&LR.&PB..D&DATE..T&TIME.
           UNIT(SYSDA) DISP (MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
TEMPLATE FILT DSN FILT.TEST1.&SN..D&DATE.
           UNIT(SYSDA) DISP (MOD,CATLG,DELETE)
COPY LIST TSLIST
FILTERDDN(FILT)
COPYDDN(SYSCOPY)
CONCURRENT
           SHRLEVEL REFERENCE

```

Figure 21. Example of invoking DFSMSdss concurrent copy with the COPY utility and using a filter data set

Example 13: Copying LOB table spaces together with related objects

Assume that table space TPIQUD01 is a base table space and that table spaces TLIQUDA1, TLIQUDA2, TLIQUDA3, and TLIQUDA4 are LOB table spaces. The control statement specifies that COPY is to take the following actions:

- Take a full image copy of each specified table space if the percentage of changed pages is equal to or greater than the highest decimal percentage value for the CHANGELIMIT option for that table space. For example, if the percentage of changed pages for table space TPIQUD01 is equal to or greater than 6.7%, COPY is to take a full image copy.
- Take an incremental image copy of each specified table space if the percentage of changed pages falls in the range between the specified decimal percentage values for the CHANGELIMIT option for that table space. For example, if the percentage of changed pages for table space TLIQUDA1 is greater than 7.9% and less than 25.3%, COPY is to take an incremental image copy.
- Do not take an image copy of each specified table space if the percentage of changed pages is equal to or less than the lowest decimal percentage value for

the CHANGLIMIT option for that table space. For example, if the percentage of changed pages for table space TLIQUDA2 is equal to or less than 2.2%, COPY is not to take an incremental image copy.

- Take full image copies of index spaces IPIQUD01, IXIQUD02, IUIQUD03, IXIQUDA1, IXIQUDA2, IXIQUDA3, and IXIQUDA4.

```

COPY
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TPIQUD01 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(3.3,6.7)
  COPYDDN(COPYTB1)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUDA1 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(7.9,25.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA1)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUDA2 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(2.2,4.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA2)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUDA3 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(1.2,9.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA3)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUDA4 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(2.2,4.0)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA4)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IPIQUD01 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIX1)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IXIQUD02 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIX2)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IUIQUD03 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIX3)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IXIQUDA1 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIXA1)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IXIQUDA2 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIXA2)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IXIQUDA3 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIXA3)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IXIQUDA4 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIXA4)
SHRLEVEL REFERENCE

```

Figure 22. Example of copying LOB table spaces together with related objects

Example 14: Using GDGs to make a full image copy

The following control statement specifies that the COPY utility is to make a full image copy of table space DBLT2501.TPLT2501. The local copies are to be written to data sets that are dynamically allocated according to the COPYTEM1 template. The remote copies are to be written to data sets that are dynamically allocated according to the COPYTEM2 template. For both of these templates, the DSN option indicates the name of generation data group JULTU225 and the generation number of +1. (If a GDG base does not already exist, DB2 creates one.) Both of these output data sets are to be modeled after the JULTU225.MODEL data set (as indicated by the MODELDCB option in the TEMPLATE statements).

```

//*****
//* COMMENT: MAKE A FULL IMAGE COPY OF THE TABLESPACE.
//*          USE A TEMPLATE FOR THE GDG.
//*****
//STEP2   EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU225.COPY',
//         UTPROC=' ',
//         SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN   DD *
          TEMPLATE COPYTEM1
            UNIT SYSDA
            DSN 'JULTU225.GDG.LOCAL.&PB.(+1)'
            MODELDCB JULTU225.MODEL
          TEMPLATE COPYTEM2
            UNIT SYSDA
            DSN 'JULTU225.GDG.REMOTE.&PB.(+1)'
            MODELDCB JULTU225.MODEL
          COPY TABLESPACE DBLT2501.TPLT2501

```

```

FULL YES
COPYDDN (COPYTEM1,COPYTEM1)
RECOVERYDDN (COPYTEM2,COPYTEM2)
SHRLEVEL REFERENCE

```

Example 15: Copying clone table data

The following control statement indicates that COPY is to copy only clone table data in the specified table spaces or indexes.

```

COPY SHRLEVEL REFERENCE CLONE
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TPIQUD01 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(3.3,6.7)
  COPYDDN(COPYTB1)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA1 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(7.9,25.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA1)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA2 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(2.2,4.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA2)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA3 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(1.2,9.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA3)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA4 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(2.2,4.0)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA4)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IPIQUD01 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIX1)

```

Example 16: Copying updated table space data

The following control statement indicates that COPY is to copy only the objects that have been updated. SCOPE PENDING indicates that you want to copy only those objects in COPY-pending or informational COPY-pending status.

```

COPY SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TPIQUD01 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(3.3,6.7)
  COPYDDN(COPYTB1)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA1 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(7.9,25.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA1)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA2 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(2.2,4.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA2)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA3 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(1.2,9.3)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA3)
  TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TLIQUA4 DSNUM ALL CHANGLIMIT(2.2,4.0)
  COPYDDN(COPYTA4)
  INDEXSPACE DBIQUD01.IPIQUD01 DSNUM ALL
  COPYDDN(COPYIX1)PARALLEL(4)
SCOPE PENDING
/*

```

Chapter 12. COPYTOCOPY

The COPYTOCOPY online utility makes image copies from an image copy that was taken by the COPY utility. The COPYTOCOPY utility can also make image copies from inline copies that the REORG or LOAD utilities make.

Starting with the local primary copy or a recovery-site primary copy, or a copy created by using FlashCopy technology, COPYTOCOPY can make up to four sequential format copies of one or more of the following types of copies:

- Local primary
- Local backup
- Recovery site primary
- Recovery site backup

You cannot run COPYTOCOPY on concurrent copies.

The RECOVER utility uses the copies when recovering a table space or index space to the most recent time or to a previous time. These copies can also be used by MERGECOPY, UNLOAD, and possibly a subsequent COPYTOCOPY execution.

Output

Output from the COPYTOCOPY utility consists of:

- Up to three sequential data sets that contain the image copy. If the copy base is a FlashCopy, four sequential copies can be made.
- Up to three sequential data sets that contain the image copy.
- Rows in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table that describe the image copy data sets that are available to the RECOVER utility. Your installations responsible for ensuring that these data sets are available if the RECOVER utility requests them.

The entries for SYSCOPY columns remain the same as the original entries in the SYSCOPY row when the COPY utility recorded them. The COPYTOCOPY job inserts values in the columns DSNAME, GROUP_MEMBER, JOBNAME, AUTHID, DSVOLSER, and DEVTYPE.

Restriction: COPYTOCOPY does not support the following catalog and directory objects:

- DSNDB01.SYSUTILX and its indexes
- DSNDB01.DBD01 and its indexes
- DSNDB01.SYSDBDXA and its indexes
- DSNDB06.SYSCOPY and its indexes

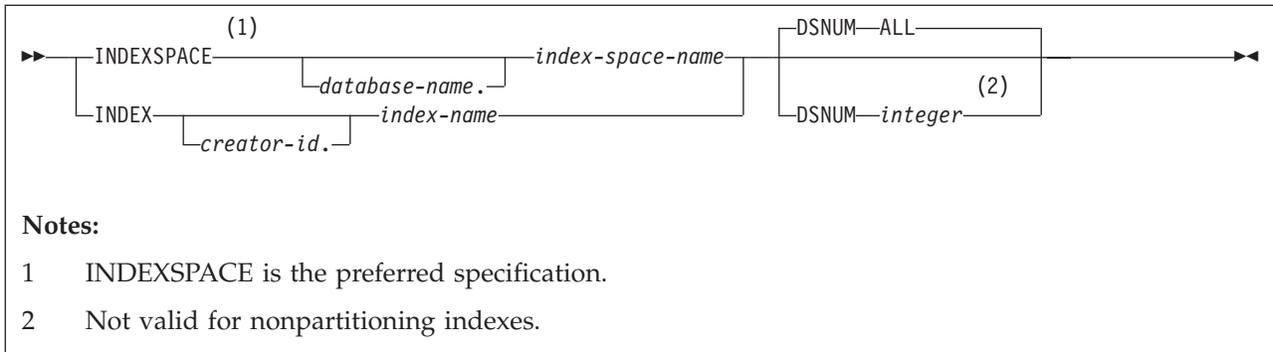
An image copy from a COPY job with the CONCURRENT option cannot be processed by COPYTOCOPY.

COPYTOCOPY does not check the recoverability of an object.

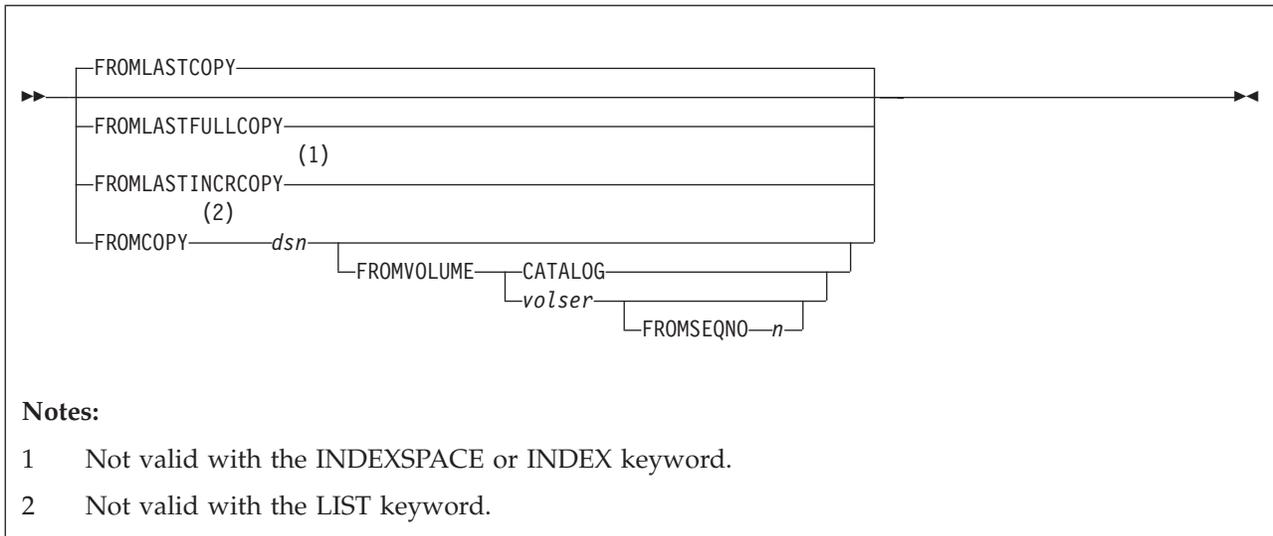
Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

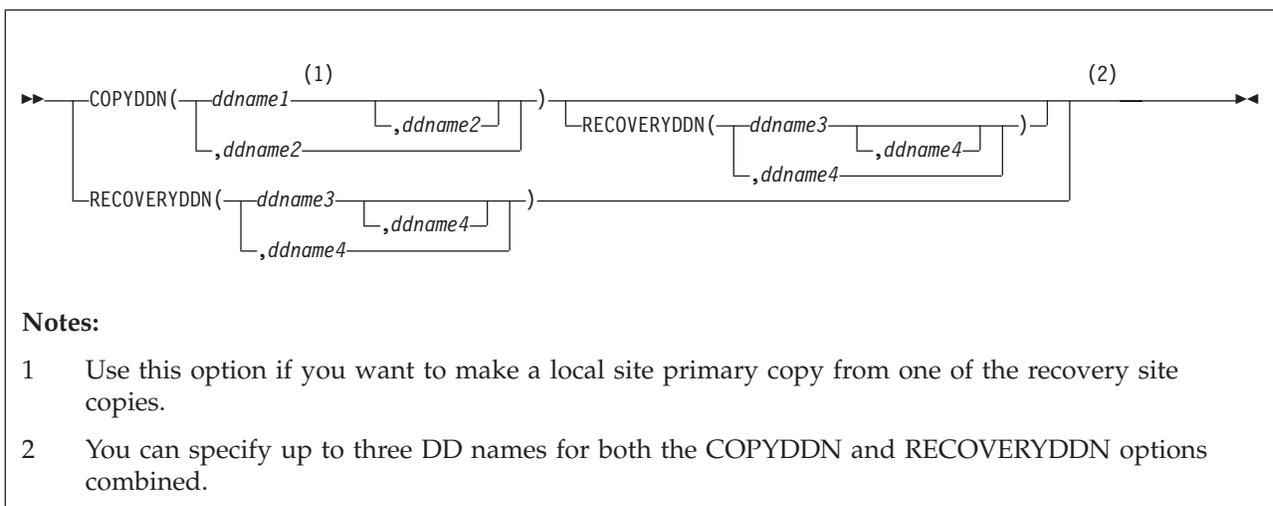
- IMAGCOPY privilege for the database



from-copy-spec:



data-set-spec:



Option descriptions

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each COPYTOCOPY control statement. Do not specify LIST with either the INDEX or TABLESPACE keywords. DB2 invokes COPYTOCOPY once for the entire list. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

TABLESPACE

Specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database it belongs to) that is to be copied. *database-name* is the name of the database that the table space belongs to. The **default** value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name is the name of the table space to be copied.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the qualified name of the index space that is to be copied; the name is obtained from the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES table. Define the index space with the COPY YES attribute.

database-name optionally specifies the name of the database that the index space belongs to. The **default** value is DSNDB04.

index-space-name specifies the name of the index space that is to be copied.

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Specifies the index that is to be copied. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

creator-id optionally specifies the creator of the index. The **default** value is the user identifier for the utility.

index-name specifies the name of the index that is to be copied.

DSNUM

Identifies a partition or data set, within the table space or the index space, that is to be copied. The keyword ALL specifies that the entire table space or index space is to be copied.

You cannot specify DSNUM for nonpartitioned indexes.

ALL

Specifies that the entire table space or index space is to be copied. You must use ALL for a nonpartitioned secondary index.

integer

Is the number of a partition or data set that is to be copied.

An integer value is not valid for nonpartitioned secondary indexes.

For a partitioned table space or index space, the integer is its partition number. The maximum is 4096.

For a nonpartitioned table space, find the integer at the end of the data set name as cataloged in the VSAM catalog. The data set name has the following format:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.spacename.y000Z.Annn

In this format:

<i>catname</i>	Is the VSAM catalog name or alias.
<i>x</i>	Is C or D.
<i>dbname</i>	Is the database name.
<i>spacename</i>	Is the table space or index space name.
<i>y</i>	Is I or J.
<i>z</i>	Is 1 or 2.
<i>nnn</i>	Is the data set integer.

Specifying or using the default of DSNUM(ALL) causes COPYTOCOPY to look for an input image copy that was taken at the entire table space or index space level.

FROMLASTCOPY

Specifies the most recent image copy that was taken for the table space or index space that is to be the input to the COPYTOCOPY utility. This could be a full image copy or incremental copy that is retrieved from SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

FROMLASTFULLCOPY

Specifies the most recent full image copy that was taken for the object, which is to be the input to the COPYTOCOPY job.

FROMLASTINRCOPY

Specifies the most recent incremental image copy that was taken for the object that is to be the input to COPYTOCOPY job.

FROMLASTINRCOPY is not valid with the INDEXSPACE or INDEX keyword. If FROMLASTINRCOPY is specified for an INDEXSPACE or INDEX, COPYTOCOPY uses the last full copy that was taken, if one is available.

FROMCOPY *dsn*

Specifies a particular image copy data set (*dsn*) as the input to the COPYTOCOPY job. This option is not valid for LIST.

If the image copy data set is a generation data set, then supply a fully qualified data set name, including the absolute generation and version number. If the image copy data set is not a generation data set and more than one image copy data set have the same data set name, use the FROMVOLUME option to identify the data set exactly.

FROMVOLUME

Identifies the image copy data set.

CATALOG

Identifies the data set as cataloged. Use this option only for an image copy that was created as a cataloged data set. (Its volume serial is not recorded in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.)

COPYTOCOPY refers to the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table during execution. If you use FROMVOLUME CATALOG, the data set must be cataloged. If you remove the data set from the catalog after creating it, you must catalog the data set again to make it consistent with the record that appears in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY for this copy.

vol-ser

Identifies the data set by an alphanumeric volume serial identifier of its first volume. Use this option only for an image copy that was created as a noncataloged data set. Specify the first *vol-ser* in the SYSCOPY record to locate a data set that is stored on multiple tape volumes. If an individual volume serial number contains leading zeros, it must be enclosed in single quotation marks.

FROMSEQNO *n*

Identifies the image copy data set by its file sequence number. *n* is the file sequence number.

COPYDDN (*ddname1,ddname2*)

Specifies a DD name (*ddname*) or a TEMPLATE name for the primary (*ddname1*) and backup (*ddname2*) copied data sets for the image copy at the local site. If *ddname2* is specified by itself, COPYTOCOPY expects the local site primary image copy to exist. If it does not exist, error message DSNU1401 is issued and the process for the object is terminated.

Recommendation: Catalog all of your image copy data sets.

You cannot have duplicate image copy data sets. If the DD statement identifies a noncataloged data set with the same name, volume serial, and file sequence number as one that is already recorded in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, COPYTOCOPY issues a message and no copy is made. If the DD statement identifies a cataloged data set with only the same name, no copy is made. For cataloged image copy data sets, you must specify CATLG for the normal termination disposition in the DD statement; for example, DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG). The DSVOLSER field of the SYSCOPY entry is blank.

When the image copy data set is going to a tape volume, specify VOL=SER parameter in the DD statement.

The COPYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

RECOVERYDDN (*ddname3,ddname4*)

Specifies a DD name (*ddname*) or a TEMPLATE name for the primary (*ddname3*) and backup (*ddname4*) copied data sets for the image copy at the recovery site. If *ddname4* is specified by itself, COPYTOCOPY expects the recovery site primary image copy to exist. If this image copy does not exist, error message DSNU1401 is issued and the process for the object is terminated.

You cannot have duplicate image copy data sets. The same rules apply for RECOVERYDDN as for COPYDDN.

The RECOVERYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

CLONE

Indicates that COPYTOCOPY is to process only image copy data sets that were taken against clone tables or indexes on clone tables. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

Related reference

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Data sets that COPYTOCOPY uses

The COPYTOCOPY utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table describes the data sets that COPYTOCOPY uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 21. Data sets that COPYTOCOPY uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
Output copies	From one to four output data sets that contain the resulting image copy data sets. Specify their DD names with the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options of the utility control statement.	Yes

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Table space or Index space

Object that is to be copied. (If you want to copy only certain partitions in a partitioned table space, use the DSNUM option in the control statement.)

DB2 catalog objects

Objects in the catalog that COPYTOCOPY accesses. The utility records each copy in the DB2 catalog table SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

Input image copy data set

This information is accessed through the DB2 catalog. COPYTOCOPY retains all tape mounts for you. You do not need to code JCL statements to retain tape mounts. If the image copy data sets that are used by COPYTOCOPY reside on the same tape, you do not need to remove the tape.

Output data set size

Image copies are written to sequential non-VSAM data sets.

Recommendation: Use a template for the image copy data set for a table space by specifying a TEMPLATE statement without the SPACE keyword. When you omit this keyword, the utility calculates the appropriate size of the data set for you.

Alternatively, you can find the approximate size, in bytes, of the image copy data set for a table space by using the following procedure:

1. Find the *high-allocated page number* from the COPYPAGESF column of SYSIBM.SYSCOPY or from information in the VSAM catalog data set.
2. Multiply the high-allocated page number by the page size.

Another option is to look at the size of the input image copy.

JCL parameters: You can specify a block size for the output by using the `BLKSIZE` parameter on the `DD` statement for the output data set. Valid block sizes are multiples of 4096 bytes. It is recommended that the `BLKSIZE` parameter be omitted. The `TAPEBLKSZLIM` parameter of the `DEVSUPxx` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB` controls the block size limit for tapes. See the *z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Guide* for more details.

Cataloging image copies

To catalog your image copy data sets, use the `DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)` parameter in the `DD` statement or `TEMPLATE` that is named by the `COPYDDN` or `RECOVERYDDN` option. After the image copy is taken, the `DSVOLSER` column of the row that is inserted into `SYSIBM.SYSCOPY` contains blanks.

Duplicate image copy data sets are not allowed. If a cataloged data set is already recorded in `SYSIBM.SYSCOPY` with the same name as the new image copy data set, a message is issued and the copy is not made.

When `RECOVER` locates the entry in `SYSIBM.SYSCOPY`, it uses the ICF catalog to allocate the required data set. If you have uncataloged the data set, the allocation fails. In that case, the recovery can still go forward; `RECOVER` searches for a previous image copy. But even if `RECOVER` finds one, it must use correspondingly more of the log to recover. You are responsible for keeping the *z/OS* catalog consistent with `SYSIBM.SYSCOPY` with regard to existing image copy data sets.

Concurrency and compatibility for COPYTOCOPY

The `COPYTOCOPY` utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Claims

The following table shows which claim classes `COPYTOCOPY` claims on the target object.

Table 22. Claim classes of COPYTOCOPY operations.

Target	COPYTOCOPY
Table space or partition, or index space or partition	UTRW

Legend:

- UTRW - Utility restrictive state - read-write access allowed

Compatibility

The following table documents which utilities can run concurrently with `COPYTOCOPY` on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also documented in the table.

Table 23. Compatibility of COPYTOCOPY with other utilities

Action	Compatible with COPYTOCOPY?
CHECK DATA	Yes
CHECK INDEX	Yes
CHECK LOB	Yes
COPY	No
DIAGNOSE	Yes
LOAD	No
MERGECOPY	No
MODIFY	No
QUIESCE	Yes
REBUILD INDEX	Yes
RECOVER	No
REORG INDEX	No
REORG TABLESPACE	No
REPAIR	Yes
REPORT	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX	Yes
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes

Full or incremental image copies with COPYTOCOPY

You can copy a full image copy or an incremental image copy by using FROMLASTCOPY keyword.

If you do not specify FROMLASTCOPY, it will be used by default, as shown in the following example. In this example, the COPYTOCOPY control statement specifies that the utility is to make a backup copy of the most recent full image copy or an incremental image copy of the table space DSN8S10E in database DSN8D10A:

```
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
      COPYDDN(,DDNNAME2)
```

The COPYTOCOPY utility makes a copy from an existing image copy and writes pages from the image copy to the output data sets. The JCL for the utility job must include DD statements or a template for the output data sets. If the object consists of multiple data sets and all are copied in one job, the copies reside in one physical sequential output data set.

Incremental image copies with COPYTOCOPY

An incremental image copy is a copy of the pages that have changed since the last full or incremental image copy.

To make a copy of an incremental image copy, use the keyword FROMLASTINRCOPY.

The following example control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make a local site backup image copy, a recovery site primary image copy, and a recovery site backup image copy from an incremental image copy.

```
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
  FROMLASTINRCOPY
  COPYDDN(,COPY2)
  RECOVERYDDN(COPY3,COPY4)
```

Using more than one COPYTOCOPY statement

You can use more than one control statement for COPYTOCOPY in one DB2 utility job step.

After each COPYTOCOPY statement executes successfully:

- A row referring to the image copy is recorded in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY table.
- The image copy data set is valid and available for RECOVER, MERGECOPY, COPYTOCOPY, and UNLOAD.

If a job step that contains more than one COPYTOCOPY statement abnormally terminates, do not use TERM UTILITY. Restart the job from the last commit point by using RESTART instead. Terminating COPYTOCOPY in this case might cause inconsistencies between the ICF catalog and DB2 catalogs if generation data sets are used.

Copying an inline copy made by REORG with a range of partitions

COPYTOCOPY does not support a range of partitions within a partitioned table space. Specify individual DSNUM(*n*). From the inline copy, COPYTOCOPY copies only the specified partition into the output image copy data set.

Copying from a specific image copy

You can specify a particular image copy that is to be used as input to the COPYTOCOPY utility by using the FROMCOPY keyword.

The following control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make three copies of the table space TPA9031C in database DBA90301 from the image copy data set DH109003.COPY1.STEP1.COPY3:

```
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBA90301.TPA9031C
  FROMCOPY DH109003.COPY1.STEP1.COPY3
  COPYDDN(,COPY2)
  RECOVERYDDN(COPY3,COPY4)
```

If the input data set is a FlashCopy image copy and the copied object is partitioned, you must also specify the data set number by including the DSNUM option in the control statement.

If you specify the FROMCOPY keyword and the specified data set is not found in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, COPYTOCOPY issues message DSNU1401I. Processing for the object then terminates.

Copying a FlashCopy image copy by using COPYTOCOPY

COPYTOCOPY can create up to four sequential image copies of a FlashCopy image copy. COPYTOCOPY and COPY are the only utilities that can create sequential copies from a FlashCopy image copy.

Making sequential copies of a FlashCopy image copy is useful if you need to unload data from an image copy. Because the UNLOAD utility does not accept FlashCopy image copies as input, you must first make a sequential copy of the FlashCopy image copy and then unload the data from the sequential copy.

To copy a FlashCopy image copy:

In the COPYTOCOPY utility control statement, specify all of the following options:

- FROMCOPY option with the name of VSAM data set that contains the FlashCopy image copy
- DSNUM option with the appropriate data set or partition number for the FlashCopy image copy
- COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN as needed to indicate which sequential copies you want to create

Related concepts

“FlashCopy image copies” on page 142

“Unloading data from image copy data sets” on page 770

Using TEMPLATE with COPYTOCOPY

Template data set name substitution variables resolve as usual. COPYTOCOPY does not use the template values of the original COPY utility execution.

Updating SYSCOPY records

The image copies COPYTOCOPY made are registered in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY for later use by the RECOVER utility. Other utilities can use these copies, too.

Columns that are inserted by COPYTOCOPY are the same as those of the original entries in SYSCOPY row when the COPY utility recorded them. Except for columns GROUP_MEMBER, JOBNAME, AUTHID, DSNAME, DEVTYPE, and DSVOLSER, the columns are those of the COPYTOCOPY job. When COPYTOCOPY is invoked at the partition level (DSNUM *n*) and the input data set is an inline copy that was created by the REORG of a range of partitions, COPYTOCOPY inserts zeros in the HIGHDSNUM and LOWDSNUM columns of the SYSCOPY record.

How to determine which input copy to use

Certain information will help you determine which input copy to use.

If the FROMCOPY keyword is not specified, the COPYTOCOPY utility uses the following search order to determine the input data set for the utility:

- If you run the utility at the local site, the search order is the local site primary copy, the local site backup copy, the recovery site primary copy, and the recovery site backup copy.
- If you run the utility at the recovery site, the search order is the recovery site primary copy, the recovery site backup copy, the local site primary copy, and the local site backup copy.

If the input data set cannot be allocated or opened, COPYTOCOPY attempts to use the next image copy data set, with the same START_RBA value in SYSCOPY column, in the preceding search order.

If you use the FROMCOPY keyword, only the specified data set is used as the input to the COPYTOCOPY job.

Defining generation data groups for the COPYTOCOPY utility

You can use generation data groups to hold image copies. Use of generation data groups offers the benefit of automating allocation of data set names and deletion of the oldest data set. You can also use templates when using generation data groups.

To define the generation group, follow these guidelines:

- Use generation data groups to hold image copies because their use automates the allocation of data set names and the deletion of the oldest data set.
- Use templates when using generation data groups.
- When you define the generation data group:
 - You can specify that the oldest data set is to be automatically deleted when the maximum number of data sets is reached. If you do that, make the maximum number large enough to accommodate all recovery requirements. When data sets are deleted, use the MODIFY utility to delete the corresponding rows in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.
 - Make the limit number of generation data sets equal to the number of copies that you want to keep. Use NOEMPTY to avoid deleting all the data sets from the integrated catalog facility catalog when the limit is reached.

Using DB2 with DFSMS products

You can use DB2 with DFSMS products.

If image copy data sets are managed by HSM or SMS, all data sets are cataloged.

If you plan to use SMS, catalog all image copies. Never maintain cataloged and uncataloged image copies that have the same name.

Image copies on tape

Do not combine a full image copy and incremental image copies for the same table space on one tape volume. If you do, the RECOVER TABLESPACE utility cannot allocate the incremental image copies.

Copying a LOB or XML table space

You can make both full and incremental image copies of a LOB or XML table space.

Copying a list of objects from tape

COPYTOCOPY determines the number of tape drives to use for the function.

If you use JCL to define tape drives, the JCL allocates tape drives for those definitions. If you use TEMPLATES to allocate tape drives for the output data sets, the utility dynamically allocates the tape drives according to the following algorithm:

- One tape drive if the input data set resides on tape.
- A tape drive for each template with STACK YES that references tape.

- Three tape drives, one for each of the local and remote output image copies, in case non-stacked templates reference tape.

Thus, COPYTOCOPY allocates a minimum of three tape drives. The utility allocates four tape drives if the input data set resides on tape, and more tape drives if you specified tape templates with STACK YES.

If input data sets to be copied are stacked on tape and output data sets are defined by a template, the utility sorts the list of objects by the file sequence numbers (FSN) of the input data sets and processes the objects serially.

Image copies of compressed indexes are copied in uncompressed format, so if you perform COPYTOCOPY using those image copies as input, it will result in uncompressed image copies.

For example, image copies of the following table spaces with their FSNs are stacked on TAPE1:

- DB2.TS1 FSN=1
- DB2.TS2 FSN=2
- DB2.TS3 FSN=3
- DB2.TS4 FSN=4

In the following statements, COPYTOCOPY uses a template for the output data set:

```
//COPYTOCOPY EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=V71A
//SYSIN DD *
TEMPLATE A1 &DB..&SP..COPY1 TAPE UNIT CART STACK YES
COPYTOCOPY
TABLESPACE DB1.TS4
LASTFULL
RECOVERYDDN(A1)
TABLESPACE DB1.TS1
LASTFULL
RECOVERYDDN(A1)
TABLESPACE DB1.TS2
LASTFULL
RECOVERYDDN(A1)
TABLESPACE DB1.TS3
LASTFULL
RECOVERYDDN(A1)
```

As a result, the utility sorts the objects by FSN and processes them in the following order:

- DB1.TS1
- DB1.TS2
- DB1.TS3
- DB1.TS4

If the output data sets are defined by JCL, the utility gives stacking preference to the output data sets over input data sets. If the input data sets are not stacked, the utility sorts the objects by size in descending order.

Termination or restart of COPYTOCOPY

You can terminate or restart the COPYTOCOPY utility.

Termination of COPYTOCOPY

You can use the TERM UTILITY command to terminate a COPYTOCOPY job

Restart of a COPYTOCOPY job

If you do **not** use the TERM UTILITY command, you can restart a COPYTOCOPY job. COPYTOCOPY jobs restart from the last commit point. You cannot use RESTART(PHASE) for any COPYTOCOPY job. If you are restarting a COPYTOCOPY job with uncataloged output data sets, you must specify the appropriate volumes for the job in the JCL or on the TEMPLATE utility statement. Doing so could impact your ability to use implicit restart.

To prepare for restarting a COPYTOCOPY job, specify DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG) on your DD statements.

Restart of COPYTOCOPY after an out-of-space condition

You can restart COPYTOCOPY from the last commit point after receiving an out-of-space condition.

Related concepts

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Related tasks

“Restarting after the output data set is full” on page 40

Sample COPYTOCOPY control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own COPYTOCOPY control statements.

Example 1: Making a local backup copy

The following control statement specifies that the COPYTOCOPY utility is to make a local backup copy of the most recent full image copy or incremental image copy, whichever is most recent. The COPYDDN option specifies that the data set for the local site backup image copy is defined by the COPY2 DD statement. Because no data set is specified for the local site primary image copy, which is usually the first parameter of the COPYDDN option, COPYTOCOPY expects this copy to already exist. If it does not exist, DB2 issues an error message and terminates the job.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='DH109001.COPY1',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//COPY2 DD DSN=DH109001.C2C01.STEP2.COPY2,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      SPACE=(1000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBA90101.TLA9011A COPYDDN(,COPY2)
//
```

Example 2: Copying the most recent copy

The following control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make a local site backup copy, a recovery site primary copy, and a recovery site backup copy of table space DBA90102.TPA9012C. The COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options also indicate the data sets to which these copies should be written. For example, the recovery site primary copy is to be written to the COPY3 data set. The

FROMLASTCOPY option specifies that the most recent full image copy or incremental image copy is to be used as the input copy data set. This option is the default and is therefore not required.

```
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBA90102.TPA9012C
      FROMLASTCOPY COPYDDN(,COPY2)
      RECOVERYDDN(COPY3,COPY4)
```

Example 3: Copying the most recent full image copy

The following control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make primary and backup copies at the recovery site of table space DBA90201.TPA9021C. The FROMLASTFULLCOPY option specifies that the most recent full image copy is to be used as the input copy data set.

```
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBA90201.TPA9021C
      FROMLASTFULLCOPY
      RECOVERYDDN(COPY3,COPY4)
```

Example 4: Specifying a copy data set for input

The following control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make a local site backup copy, a recovery site primary copy, and a recovery site backup copy from data set DH109003.COPY1.STEP1.COPY3. This input data set is specified by the FROMCOPY option. The output data sets (COPY2, COPY3, and COPY4) are specified by the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options.

```
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBA90301.TPA9031C
      FROMCOPY DH109003.COPY1.STEP1.COPY3
      COPYDDN(,COPY2)
      RECOVERYDDN(COPY3,COPY4)
```

Example 5: Identifying a cataloged image copy data set

The following control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make a local site backup copy from a cataloged data set that is named DH109003.COPY1.STEP1.COPY4. This data set is identified by the FROMCOPY and FROMVOLUME options. The FROMCOPY option specifies the input data set name, and the FROMVOLUME CATALOG option indicates that the input data set is cataloged. Use the FROMVOLUME option to distinguish a data set from other data sets that have the same name.

```
COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBA90302.TLA9032A
      FROMCOPY DH109003.COPY1.STEP1.COPY4
      FROMVOLUME CATALOG
      COPYDDN(,COPY2)
```

Example 6: Identifying an uncataloged image copy data set

The control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make a local site backup copy, a recovery site primary copy, and a recovery site backup copy from an uncataloged data set, JUKQU2BP.COPY1.STEP1.TP01. The FROMCOPY option identifies this input data set name, and the FROMVOLUME option identifies the volume (SCR03) for the input data set. Use the FROMVOLUME option to distinguish a data set from other data sets that have the same name. The COPYDDN option identifies the data set for the local site backup copy. This data set is to be dynamically allocated according to the specifications of the C2C1_T1 template, which is defined in one of the preceding TEMPLATE control statements. The RECOVERYDDN option identifies the data sets for the recovery site copies. These data sets are to be dynamically allocated according to the specifications of the C2C1_T2 and C2C1_T3 templates, which are defined in the preceding

TEMPLATE control statements.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUKQU2BP.C2C1',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN DD *

    TEMPLATE C2C1_T1
           DSN(JUKQU2BP.C2C1.LB.&SN.)
           DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
           UNIT(SYSDA)

    TEMPLATE C2C1_T2
           DSN(JUKQU2BP.C2C1.RP.&SN.)
           DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
           UNIT(SYSDA)

    TEMPLATE C2C1_T3
           DSN(JUKQU2BP.C2C1.RB.&SN.)
           DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
           UNIT(SYSDA)

    COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBKQBP01.TPKQBP01
           FROMCOPY JUKQU2BP.COPY1.STEP1.TP01
           FROMVOLUME SCR03
           COPYDDN(,C2C1_T1)
           RECOVERYDDN(C2C1_T2,C2C1_T3)

/*
```

Figure 23. Example of identifying an uncataloged image copy data set

Example 7: Processing a list of objects

The following control statement specifies that COPYTOCOPY is to make local site backup copies of the three partitions of table space DBA90402.TPA9042C that are specified by the DSNUM option (partitions 2, 3, and 4). COPYTOCOPY uses the following input copy data sets, as indicated by the FROMLASTFULLCOPY, FROMLASTCOPY, and FROMLASTINRCOPY options:

- The most recent full image copy for partition 2
- The most recent full image copy or incremental image copy, whichever is most recent, for partition 3
- The most recent incremental image copy for partition 4

The COPYDDN option for each partition indicates the output data sets (COPY2, COPY3, and COPY4).

```
COPYTOCOPY
    TABLESPACE DBA90402.TPA9042C DSNUM 2
           FROMLASTFULLCOPY COPYDDN(,COPY2)
    TABLESPACE DBA90402.TPA9042C DSNUM 3
           FROMLASTCOPY COPYDDN(,COPY3)
    TABLESPACE DBA90402.TPA9042C DSNUM 4
           FROMLASTINRCOPY COPYDDN(,COPY4)
```

Example 8: Using LISTDEF and TEMPLATE switching

The following COPYTOCOPY control statement specifies that the utility is to copy the list of objects that are included in the CPY1 list, which is defined by the LISTDEF control statement. The copies are to be written to the data sets that are defined by the T3 template, which is defined in the TEMPLATE control statement. Additionally, T3 template has defined the LIMIT keyword, that is to switch from

T3 template to T4 template if the output data set size is bigger than the specified limit value 5 MB. This template defines the naming convention for the output data sets that are to be dynamically allocated.

The `OPTIONS PREVIEW` statement before the `LISTDEF` statement is used to force the `CPY1` list contents to be included in the output. For long lists, using this statement is not recommended, because it might cause the output to be too long. The `OPTIONS OFF` statement ends the `PREVIEW` mode processing, so that the following `TEMPLATE` and `COPYTOCOPY` jobs run normally.

```

OPTIONS PREVIEW
  LISTDEF CPY1 INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA906*.T*A906*
           INCLUDE INDEXSPACES COPY YES INDEXSPACE ADMF001.I?A906*
  OPTIONS OFF
  TEMPLATE T4 UNIT(3B0)
           DSN(T4.&SN..T&TI..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.)
  TEMPLATE T3 UNIT(SYSDA) SPACE CYL
           DSN(T3.&SN..T&TI..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.)
           LIMIT(5 MB,T4)
  COPYTOCOPY LIST CPY1 COPYDDN(T3,T3)

```

Example 8: Using LISTDEF and TEMPLATE with the CLONE option

The following `COPYTOCOPY` control statement specifies that the utility is to copy the list of objects that are included in the `C2C1_LIST` list, which is defined by the `LISTDEF` control statement. The `CLONE` option indicates that `COPYTOCOPY` is to process only image copy data sets that were taken against clone objects.

```

LISTDEF C2C1_LIST
  INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBKQBS01.TPKQBS01
  INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DBKQBS01.IPKQBS11
  INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DBKQBS01.IXKQBS12
  INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBKQBS02.TSKQBS02
  INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DBKQBS02.IXKQBS21
  INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DBKQBS02.IXKQBS22

  TEMPLATE C2C1_T1
           DSN(JUKQU2BS.C2C1.LB.&SN.)
           DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
           UNIT(SYSDA)

  TEMPLATE C2C1_T2
           DSN(JUKQU2BS.C2C1.RP.&SN.)
           DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
           UNIT(SYSDA)

  TEMPLATE C2C1_T3
           DSN(JUKQU2BS.C2C1.RB.&SN.)
           DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
           UNIT(SYSDA)

  COPYTOCOPY LIST C2C1_LIST
           FROMLASTFULLCOPY
           COPYDDN(,C2C1_T1)
           RECOVERYDDN(C2C1_T2,C2C1_T3)
           CLONE

```

Chapter 13. DIAGNOSE

The DIAGNOSE online utility generates information that is useful in diagnosing problems. Use this utility only under the direction of IBM Software Support.

Interpreting output

One intended use of this utility is to aid in determining and correcting system problems. When diagnosing DB2 problems, you might need to refer to licensed documentation to interpret output from this utility.

Authorization required

To execute this utility for options which access relational data, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorizations:

- REPAIR privilege for the database
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- DATAACCESS authority
- SQLADM authority
- SYSCtrl or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can execute the DIAGNOSE utility on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

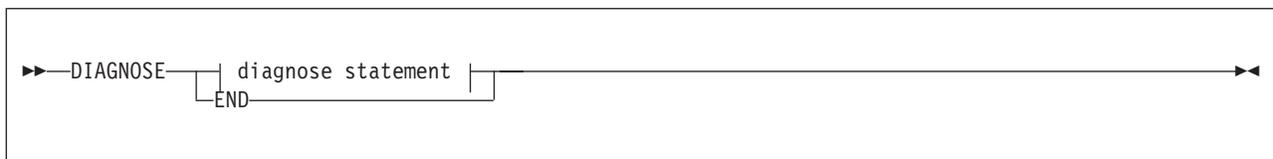
An ID with installation SYSADM authority can execute the DIAGNOSE utility with the WAIT statement option on any table space.

Syntax and options of the DIAGNOSE control statement

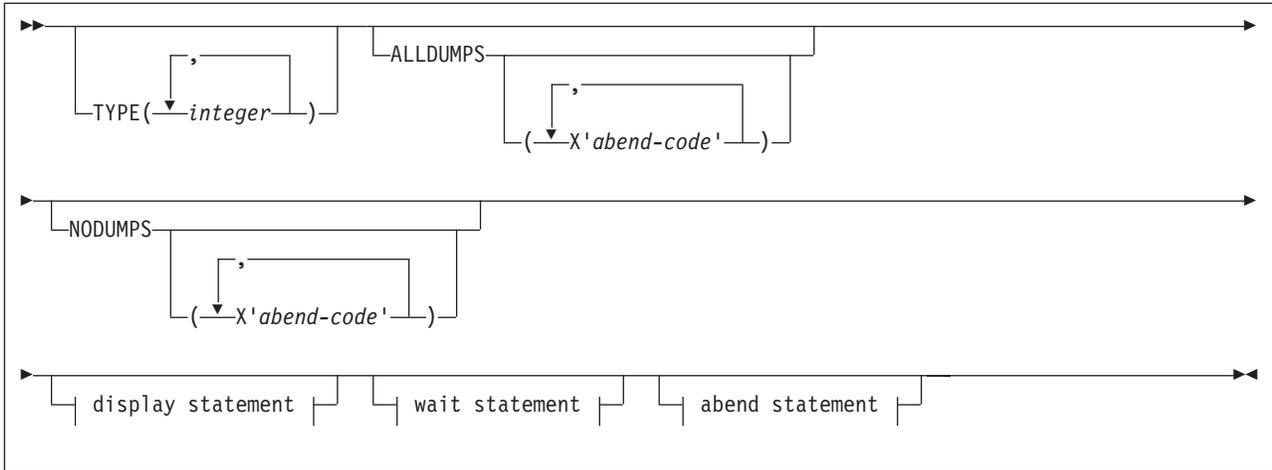
The DIAGNOSE utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

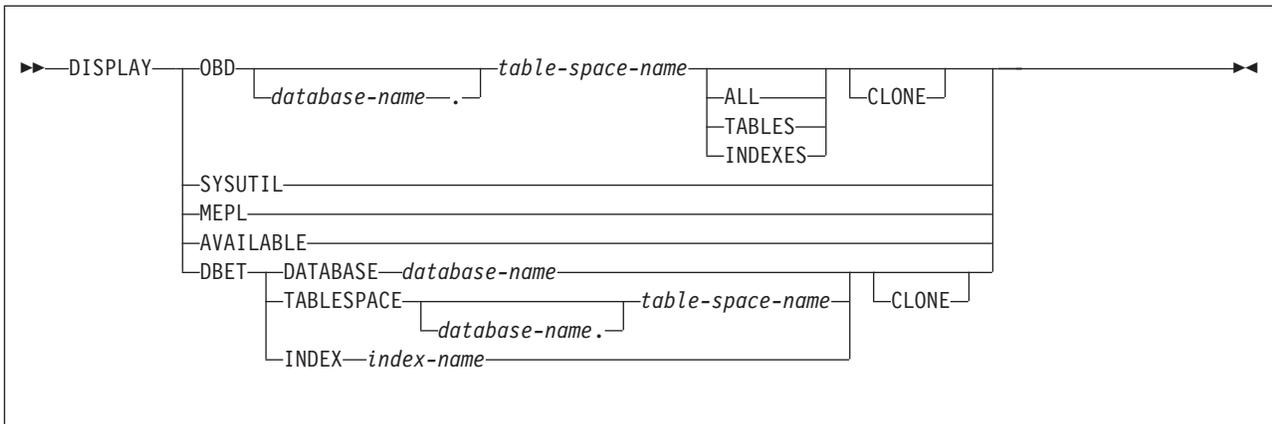
Syntax diagram



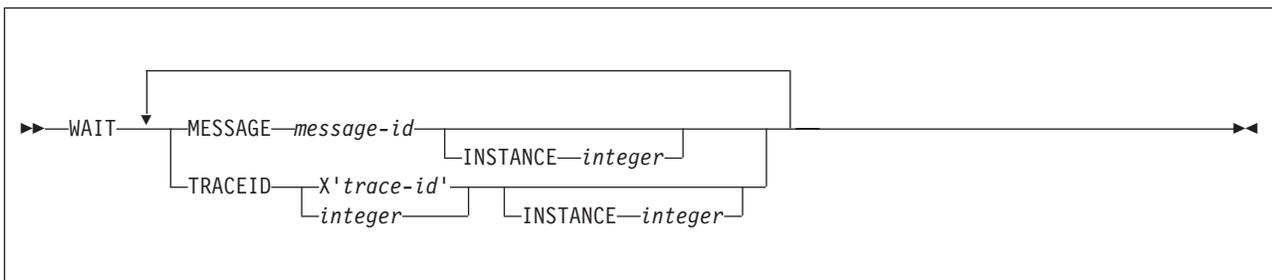
diagnose statement:



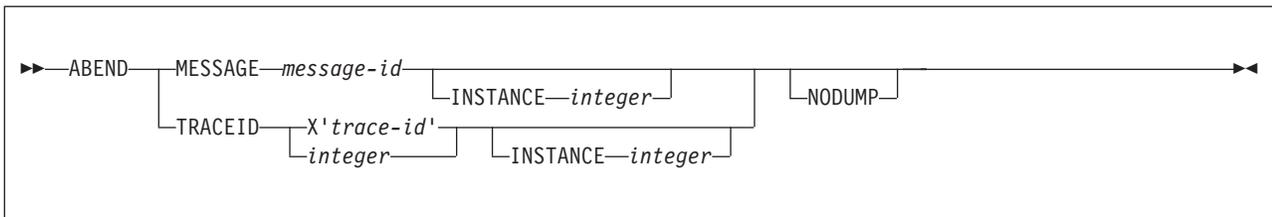
display statement:



wait statement:



abend statement:



Option descriptions

TYPE(*integer*, ...)

Specifies one or more types of diagnose that you want to perform.

integer is the number of types of diagnoses. The maximum number of types is 32. IBM Software Support defines the types as needed to diagnose problems with IBM utilities.

ALLDUMPS(X'*abend-code*', ...)

Forces a dump to be taken in response to any utility abend code.

X'*abend-code*' is a member of a list of abend codes to which the scope of ALLDUMPS is limited.

abend-code is a hexadecimal value.

NODUMPS(X'*abend-code*', ...)

Suppresses the dump for any utility abend code.

X'*abend-code*' is a member of a list of abend codes to which the scope of NODUMPS is limited.

abend-code is a hexadecimal value.

DISPLAY

Formats the specified database items using SYSPRINT.

OBD *database-name.table-space-name*

Formats the object descriptor (OBD) of the table space.

database-name is the name of the database in which the table space belongs.

table-space-name is the name of the table space whose OBD is to be formatted.

ALL

Formats all OBDs of the table space. The OBD of any object that is associated with the table space is also formatted.

TABLES

Formats the OBDs of all tables in the specified table spaces.

INDEXES

Formats the OBDs of all indexes in the specified table spaces.

SYSUTIL

Formats every record from SYSIBM.SYSUTIL. This directory table stores information about all utility jobs.

MEPL

Dumps the module entry point lists (MEPLs) to SYSPRINT.

AVAILABLE

Displays the utilities that are installed on this subsystem in both bitmap and readable format. The presence or absence of the utility products 5655-N97 (IBM DB2 Utilities Suite for z/OS) affects the results of this display. See message DSNU862I for the output of this display.

DBET

Dumps the contents of a database exception table (DBET) to SYSPRINT.

DATABASE *database-name*

Dumps the DBET entry that is associated with the specified database.

database-name is the name of the database.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Dumps the DBET entry that is associated with the specified table space.

database-name is the name of the database.

table-space-name is the name of the table space.

INDEX *creator-name.index-name*

Dumps the DBET entry that is associated with the specified index.

creator-name is the ID of the creator of the index.

index-name is the name of the index.

Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

CLONE

Indicates that DIAGNOSE is to display information for only the specified objects that are clone tables, table spaces that contain clone tables, indexes on clone tables, or index spaces that contain indexes on clone tables.

WAIT

Suspends utility execution when it encounters the specified utility message or utility trace ID. DIAGNOSE issues a message to the console and utility execution does not resume until the operator replies to that message, the utility job times out, or the utility job is canceled. This waiting period allows events to be synchronized while you are diagnosing concurrency problems. The utility waits for the operator to reply to the message, allowing the opportunity to time or synchronize events.

If neither the utility message nor the trace ID are encountered, processing continues.

ABEND

Forces an abend during utility execution if the specified utility message or utility trace ID is issued.

If neither the utility message nor the trace ID are encountered, processing continues.

NODUMP

Suppresses the dump that is generated by an abend of DIAGNOSE.

MESSAGE *message-id*

Specifies a DSNUxxx or DSNUxxxx message that causes a wait or an abend to occur when that message is issued.

message-id is the message, in the form of Uxxx or Uxxxx.

INSTANCE *integer*

Specifies that a wait or an abend is to occur when the MESSAGE option message has been encountered a specified number of times. If INSTANCE is not specified, a wait or abend occurs each time that the message is encountered.

integer is the number of times that a message is to be encountered before a wait or an abend occurs.

TRACEID *trace-id*

Specifies a trace ID that causes a wait or an abend to occur when the ID is encountered. You can find valid trace IDs can be found in data set *prefix.SDSNSAMP(DSNWEIDS)*.

trace-id is a trace ID that is associated with the utility trace (RMID21). You can specify *trace-id* in either decimal (*integer*) or hexadecimal (*X'trace-id'*) format.

INSTANCE *integer*

Specifies that a wait or an abend is to occur when the TRACEID option has been encountered a specified number of times. If INSTANCE is not specified, a wait or abend occurs each time that the trace ID is encountered.

integer is the number of times that a trace ID is to be encountered before a wait or an abend occurs.

END

Ends DIAGNOSE processing.

Data sets that DIAGNOSE uses

The DIAGNOSE utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that DIAGNOSE uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set.

Table 24. Data sets that DIAGNOSE uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Database

Database about which DIAGNOSE is to gather diagnosis information.

Table space

Table space about which DIAGNOSE is to gather diagnosis information.

Index space

Index about which DIAGNOSE is to gather diagnosis information.

Concurrency and compatibility for DIAGNOSE

The DIAGNOSE utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DIAGNOSE can run concurrently on the same target object with any SQL operation or utility, except a utility that is running on DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

Forcing a utility abend

You can force a utility abend by specifying either a message or a trace IFCID in the utility control statement.

To perform this task, specify the options and values for this task in your utility control statement.

DIAGNOSE can force a utility to abend when a specific message is issued. To force an abend when unique-index or referential-constraint violations are detected, you must specify the message that is issued when the error is encountered. Specify this message by using the MESSAGE option of the ABEND statement.

Instead of using a message, you can force an abend by using the TRACEID option of the ABEND statement to specify a trace IFCID that is associated with the utility to force an abend.

Use the INSTANCE keyword to specify the number of times that the specified message or trace record is to be generated before the utility abends.

Termination or restart of DIAGNOSE

You can terminate and restart the DIAGNOSE utility.

You can terminate a DIAGNOSE utility job by using the TERM UTILITY command if you submitted the job or have SYSOPR, SYSCTRL, or SYSADM authority.

You can restart a DIAGNOSE utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample DIAGNOSE control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DIAGNOSE control statements.

Example 1: Displaying DB2 MEPLs

The following DIAGNOSE utility control statement specifies that the DB2 MEPLs are to be displayed. You can use the output from this statement to find the service level of a specific DB2 module. The output lists each module, the most recent PTF or APAR that was applied to the module, and the date that the PTF or APAR was installed.

Important: Specify DB2 load libraries in the JOBLIB or STEPLIB of the DIAGNOSE DISPLAY MEPL job that are at the same maintenance level as the load libraries for the DB2 subsystem on which you execute the utility. Doing this ensures that the information that DIAGNOSE DISPLAY MEPL reports reflects the current state of the DB2 subsystem.

```
DIAGNOSE
  DISPLAY MEPL
```

Example 2: Forcing a dump

The following control statement forces a dump if an abend occurs with either of the following reason codes: X'00E40322' or X'00E40323'.

```
DIAGNOSE
  ALLDUMPS(X'00E40322',X'00E40323')
```

The following control statement forces a dump for any utility abend that occurs during the execution of the specified COPY job. The DIAGNOSE END option ends DIAGNOSE processing.

```

DIAGNOSE
  ALLDUMPS
  COPY TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
DIAGNOSE END

```

Example 3: Performing a diagnosis of a specific type

The control statement in this example specifies that you want to perform a diagnosis of type 66. Run this job under the direction of IBM Software Support to diagnose problems with utility parallelism.

```

//STEP3 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JU0SU226.REBUI',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN DD *
DIAGNOSE TYPE(66)
        REBUILD INDEX (IDOS0302, IDOS0304, IPOS0301)
        SORTDEVT SYSDA SORTNUM 3
DIAGNOSE END
/*

```

Figure 24. Example of diagnosing type 66

Example 4: Forcing a utility abend

The control statement in this example forces an abend of the specified COPY job when one instance of message DSNU400 is issued. The NODUMP option indicates that the DIAGNOSE utility is not to generate a dump in this situation.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJMU116.COPY1',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSCOPY1 DD DSN=IUJMU116.COPY.STEP1.SYSCOPY1,DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
DIAGNOSE ABEND MESSAGE U400
        INSTANCE 1
        NODUMP
        COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
        COPYDDN SYSCOPY1
DIAGNOSE END
/*

```

The following control statement forces an abend of the specified LOAD job when message DSNU311 is issued for the fifth time. The NODUMP option indicates that the DIAGNOSE utility is not to generate a dump in this situation.

```

DIAGNOSE
  ABEND MESSAGE U311 INSTANCE 5 NODUMP
LOAD DATA RESUME NO
  INTO TABLE TABLE1
  (NAME POSITION(1) CHAR(20))
DIAGNOSE END

```

Figure 25. Example of forcing an abend of the COPY utility

Example 5: Suspending utility execution

The control statement in this example indicates that the specified COPYTOCOPY job is to be suspended when it encounters 51 occurrences of the trace ID X'2E6F'.

```

//STEP2 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='DH109012.C2C01',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//COPY2 DD DSN=DH109012.C2C01.STEP2.COPY2,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(1000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//COPY3 DD DSN=DH109012.C2C01.STEP2.COPY3,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(1000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//COPY4 DD DSN=DH109012.C2C01.STEP2.COPY4,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(1000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
        DIAGNOSE WAIT TRACEID X'2E6F' INSTANCE 51
        COPYTOCOPY TABLESPACE DBA91201.TPA91201 DSNUM 1
                FROMLASTFULLCOPY COPYDDN(,COPY2)
                        RECOVERYDDN(COPY3,COPY4)

        DIAGNOSE END
/*

```

Figure 26. Example of suspending utility execution

Example 6: Displaying only CLONE data

The control statement indicates that the DIAGNOSE utility is to be display information for only the specified objects that are table clones, table spaces that contain clone tables, indexes on clone tables, or index spaces that contain indexes on clone tables.

```

DIAGNOSE DISPLAY DBET
        DATABASE DBNI0501
        CLONE

```

Chapter 14. EXEC SQL

The EXEC SQL online utility control statement declares cursors or executes dynamic SQL statements. You can use this utility as part of the DB2 cross-loader function of the LOAD utility.

The cross-loader function enables you to use a single LOAD job to transfer data from one location to another location or from one table to another table at the same location. You can use either a local server or any DRDA-compliant remote server as a data input source for populating your tables. Your input can even come from other sources besides DB2 for z/OS; you can use IBM Information Integrator Federation feature for access to data from sources as diverse as Oracle and Sybase, as well as the entire DB2 family of database servers.

Output

The EXEC SQL control statement produces a result table when you specify a cursor.

Authorization required

The EXEC SQL statement itself requires no privileges to execute. The authorization rules that are defined for the dynamic preparation of the SQL statement specified by EXECUTE IMMEDIATE apply.

Execution phases of EXEC SQL

The EXEC SQL control statement executes entirely in the EXEC phase. You can restart the EXEC phase if necessary.

Related tasks

“Loading data by using the cross-loader function” on page 290

Related reference

 Statements (DB2 SQL)

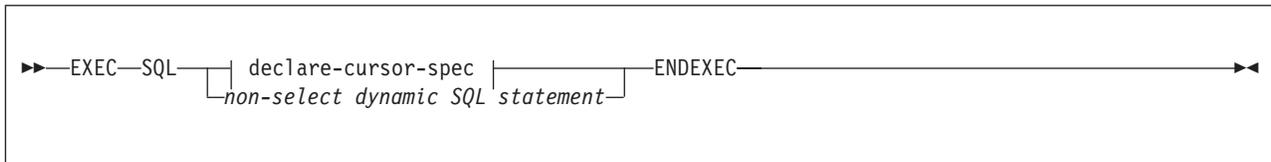
Syntax and options of the EXEC SQL control statement

The EXEC SQL utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

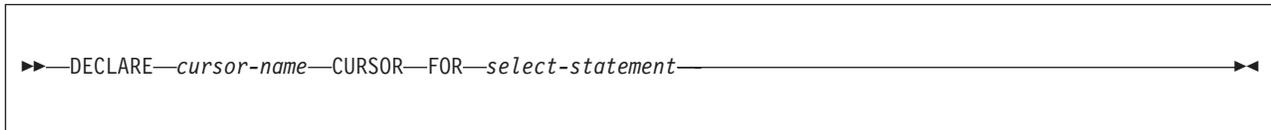
You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Utility control statements submitted in UNICODE, including EXEC SQL, are translated into EBCDIC before processing; however, character string constants are not translated. Character string constants are left in the character set in which they were specified. In some cases, it may be necessary to use hexadecimal string constants in order to achieve the desired behavior.

Syntax diagram



declare-cursor-spec:



Option descriptions

cursor-name

Specifies the cursor name. The name must not identify a cursor that is already declared within the same input stream. When using the DB2 cross-loader function to load data from a remote server, you must identify the cursor with a three-part name. Cursor names that are specified with the EXEC SQL utility **cannot be longer than eight characters**.

select-statement

Specifies the result table for the cursor. This statement can be any valid SQL SELECT statement, including joins, unions, conversions, aggregations, special registers, and user-defined functions. The result table cannot include XML columns.

non-select dynamic SQL statement

Specifies a dynamic SQL statement that is to be used as input to EXECUTE IMMEDIATE. You can specify the following dynamic SQL statements in a utility statement:

- ALTER
- COMMENT ON
- COMMIT
- CREATE
- DELETE
- DROP
- EXPLAIN
- GRANT
- INSERT
- LABEL ON
- LOCK TABLE
- RENAME
- REVOKE
- ROLLBACK
- SET CURRENT DECFLOAT ROUNDING MODE
- SET CURRENT DEGREE
- SET CURRENT LOCALE LC_CTYPE
- SET CURRENT OPTIMIZATION HINT
- SET PATH
- SET CURRENT PRECISION
- SET CURRENT RULES
- SET CURRENT SQLID

UPDATE

Each SQL statement runs as a separate thread. When the utility executes the SQL statement, the specified statement string is parsed and checked for errors. If the SQL statement is invalid, EXEC SQL does not execute the statement and reports the error condition. If the SQL statement is valid, but an error occurs during execution, EXEC SQL reports that error condition. When an error occurs, the utility terminates.

Related reference

 [select-statement \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

Concurrency and compatibility for EXEC SQL

The EXEC SQL utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

You can use the EXEC SQL control statement with any utility that allows concurrent SQL access on a table space. Other databases are not affected.

Termination or restart of EXEC SQL

You can terminate and restart the EXEC SQL utility.

You can terminate an EXEC SQL utility job by using the TERM UTILITY command if you submitted the job or have SYSOPR, SYSCTRL, or SYSADM authority.

You can restart an EXEC SQL utility job, but it starts from the beginning again. If you are restarting this utility as part of a larger job in which EXEC SQL completed successfully, but a later utility failed, do not change the EXEC SQL utility control statement, if possible. If you must change the EXEC SQL utility control statement, use caution; any changes can cause the restart processing to fail.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample EXEC SQL control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own EXEC SQL control statements.

Example 1: Creating a table

The following control statement specifies that DB2 is to create table MYEMP with the same rows and columns as sample table EMP.

GUPI

```
EXEC SQL
  CREATE TABLE MYEMP LIKE DSN81010.EMP CCSID EBCDIC
ENDEXEC
```

GUPI

This type of statement can be used to create a mapping table.

Example 2: Inserting rows into a table

The following control statement specifies that DB2 is to insert all rows from sample table EMP into table MYEMP.

GUIP

```
EXEC SQL
  INSERT INTO MYEMP SELECT * FROM DSN81010.EMP
ENDEXEC
```

GUIP

Example 3: Declaring a cursor

The following control statement declares C1 as the cursor for a query that is to return all rows from table DSN8810.EMP.

GUIP

```
EXEC SQL
  DECLARE C1 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM DSN81010.EMP
ENDEXEC
```

GUIP

You can use a declared cursor with the DB2 cross-loader function to load data from a local server or from any DRDA-compliant remote server as part of the DB2 cross-loader function.

Related reference

“Sample REORG TABLESPACE control statements” on page 574

Chapter 15. LISTDEF

The LISTDEF utility enables you to group database objects into reusable lists. You can then specify these lists in other utility control statements to indicate that the utility is to process all of the items in the list.

You can use LISTDEF to standardize object lists and the utility control statements that refer to them. This standardization reduces the need to customize or alter utility job streams.

If you do not use lists and you want to run a utility on multiple objects, you must run the utility multiple times or specify an itemized list of objects in the utility control statement.

Output

Output from the LISTDEF control statement consists of a list with a name.

Authorization required

To execute the LISTDEF utility, you must have SELECT authority on SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES, SYSIBM.SYSTABLES, and SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE.

You must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- SELECT authority on SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES, SYSIBM.SYSTABLES, and SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
- SQLADM authority
- DATAACCESS authority
- System DBADM authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

Additionally, you must have the authority to execute the utility that is used to process the list, as currently documented in the “Authorization required” topic for each utility.

If you do not have authorization to execute the utility on one or more of the items in the list, the utility will stop on the first authorization error. To skip items in the list that return an error, use the OPTIONS (ITEMERROR, SKIP) control statement.

Execution phases of LISTDEF

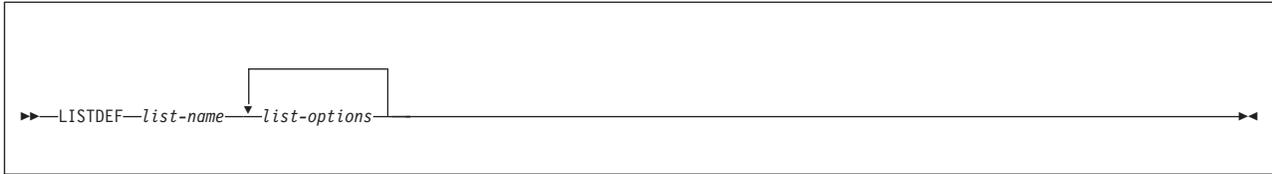
The LISTDEF control statement executes entirely within the UTILINIT phase.

Syntax and options of the LISTDEF control statement

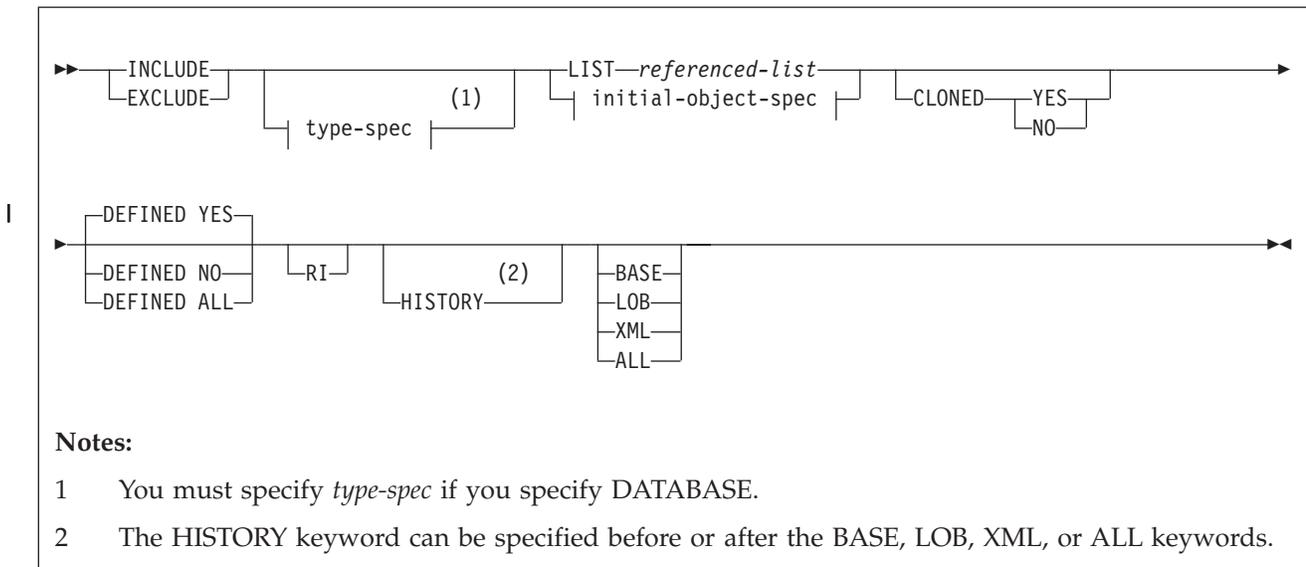
The LISTDEF utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

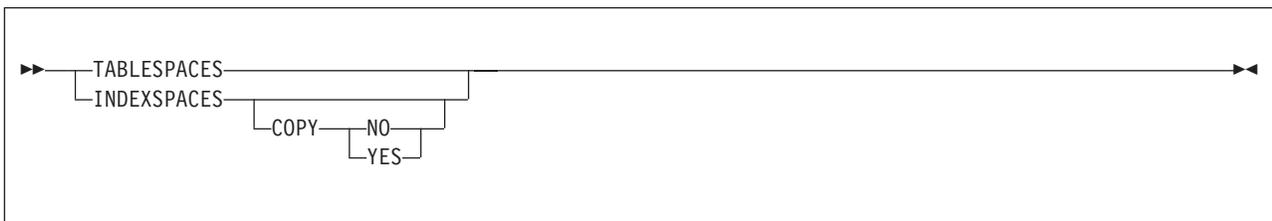
Syntax diagram



list-options:



type-spec:



initial-object-spec:

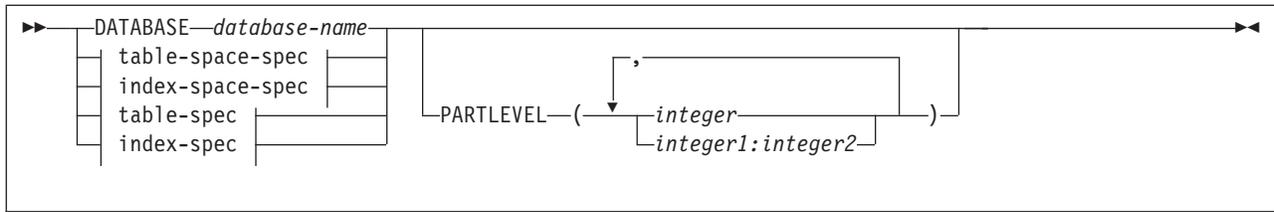
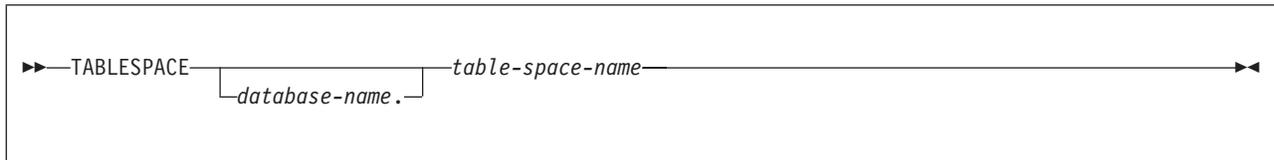


table-space-spec:



index-space-spec:

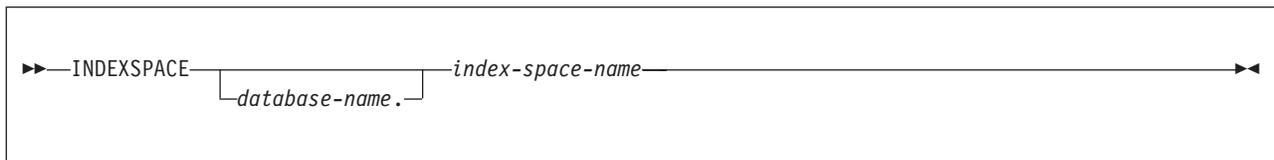
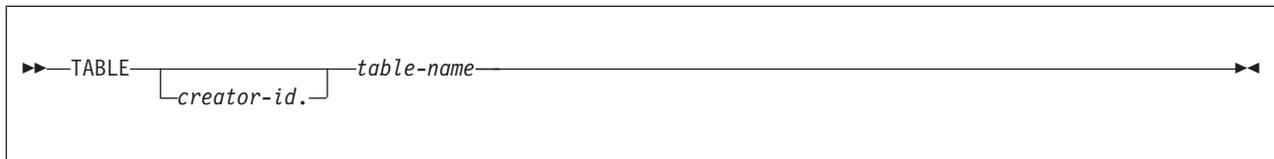
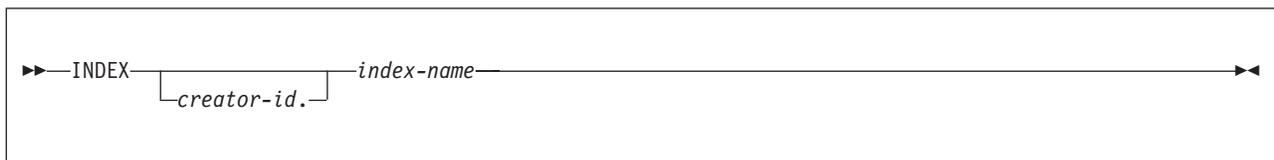


table-spec:



index-spec:



Option descriptions

LISTDEF *list-name*

Defines a list of DB2 objects and assigns a name to the list. The list name makes the list available for subsequent execution as the object of a utility control statement or as an element of another LISTDEF statement.

list-name is the name (up to 18 alphanumeric characters in length) of the defined list.

You can put LISTDEF statements either in a separate LISTDEF library data set or before a DB2 utility control statement that refers to the *list-name*.

INCLUDE

Specifies that the list of objects that results from the expression that follows is to be added to the list. You must first specify an INCLUDE clause. You can then specify subsequent INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clauses in any order to add to or delete clauses from the existing list.

EXCLUDE

Specifies, after the initial INCLUDE clause, that the list of objects that results from the expression that follows is to be excluded from the list if the objects are in the list. If the objects are not in the list, they are ignored, and DB2 proceeds to the next INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause.

TABLESPACES

Specifies that the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE object expression is to create a list of related table spaces.

TABLESPACES is the default type for lists that use a table space or a table for the initial search. For more information about specifying these objects, see the descriptions of the TABLESPACE and TABLE options.

No default type value exists for lists that use other lists for the initial search. The list that is referred to by the LIST option is used unless you specify TABLESPACES or INDEXSPACES. Likewise, no type default value exists for lists that use databases for the initial search. If you specify the DATABASE option, you must specify INDEXSPACES or TABLESPACES. For more information about specifying lists and databases, see the descriptions of the LIST and DATABASE options.

The result of the TABLESPACES keyword varies depending on the type of object that you specify in the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause. These results are shown in The following table.

Table 25. Result of the TABLESPACES keyword based on the object type that is specified in the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause.

Object type specified in INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause	Result of the TABLESPACES keyword
DATABASE	Returns all table spaces that are contained within the database
TABLESPACE	Returns the specified table space
TABLE	Returns the table space that contains the table
INDEXSPACE	Returns the table space that contains the related table
INDEX	Returns the table space that contains the related table
LIST of table spaces	Returns the table spaces from the expanded referenced list
LIST of index spaces	Returns the related table spaces for the index spaces in the expanded referenced list
LIST of table spaces and index spaces	Returns the table spaces from the expanded referenced list and the related table spaces for the index spaces in the same list

INDEXSPACES

Specifies that the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE object expression is to create a list of related index spaces.

INDEXSPACES is the default type for lists that use an index space or an index for the initial search. For more information about specifying these objects, see the descriptions of the INDEXSPACE and INDEX options.

No default type value exists for lists that use other lists for the initial search. The list that is referred to by the LIST option is used unless you specify TABLESPACES or INDEXSPACES. Likewise, no type default value exists for lists that use databases for the initial search. If you specify the DATABASE option, you must specify INDEXSPACES or TABLESPACES. For more information about specifying lists and databases, see the descriptions of the LIST and DATABASE options.

The result of the INDEXSPACES keyword varies depending on the type of object that you specify in the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause. These results are shown in The following table.

Table 26. Result of the INDEXSPACES keyword based on the object type that is specified in the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause.

Object type specified in INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause	Result of the INDEXSPACES keyword
DATABASE	Returns all index spaces that are contained within the database
TABLESPACE	Returns all index spaces for indexes over all tables in the table space
TABLE	Returns all index spaces for indexes over the table
INDEXSPACE	Returns the specified index space.
INDEX	Returns the index space that contains the index
LIST of table spaces	Returns the related index spaces for the table spaces in the expanded referenced list
LIST of index spaces	Returns the index spaces from the expanded referenced list
LIST of table spaces and index spaces	Returns the index spaces from the expanded referenced list and the related index spaces for the table spaces in the same list

COPY

Specifies whether indexes that were defined with or altered to COPY YES or COPY NO attributes are to be included or excluded in this portion of the list. If you omit COPY, all index spaces that satisfy the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE expression, regardless of their COPY attribute, are included or excluded in this portion of the list. If specified, this keyword must immediately follow the INDEXSPACES keyword. If you specify this keyword elsewhere, it is interpreted as the start of the COPY utility control statement.

YES

Specifies that only index spaces that were defined with or altered to COPY YES are to be included in this portion of the list. Use INCLUDE with COPY YES to develop a list of index spaces that the COPY utility can process.

NO

Specifies that only index spaces that were defined with or altered to COPY NO are to be included in this portion of the list. Use EXCLUDE with COPY NO to remove indexes that the COPY utility cannot process from a larger list.

LIST *referenced-list*

Specifies the name of a previously defined object list that is to be expanded and used for the initial search for the object.

referenced-list is the name of the list. You must explicitly specify this name. You cannot specify pattern-matching characters (%,* , ?, and _) for lists.

No default type value exists for lists that are developed from the LIST option. The list is expanded as defined, and it is then modified by subsequent keywords, if any.

You can specify a *type-spec* of TABLESPACES to create a list of only table spaces. If the list to be processed contains index spaces, the TABLESPACES keyword creates a list that includes related table spaces.

You can specify a *type-spec* of INDEXSPACES to create a list of only index spaces. If the list to be processed contains table spaces, the INDEXSPACES keyword creates a list that includes related index spaces.

You can use the LIST keyword to make aggregate lists of lists, to exclude entire lists from other lists, and to develop lists of objects that are related to other lists.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

DATABASE *database-name*

Specifies the database that is to be used for the initial search for the object.

You can specify the *database-name* explicitly or as a pattern-matched name. DATABASE * and DATABASE % are not supported.

If you specify DATABASE, you must also specify either TABLESPACES or INDEXSPACES as the list type. Depending on the list type that you specify, DB2 includes all table spaces or index spaces in *database-name* that satisfy the pattern-matching expression in the list.

You cannot specify DSNDB01, DSNDB06, DSNDB07, or user-defined work file databases in a LISTDEF.

Use caution when you specify an implicit DATABASE name. Authorization to access objects that are within an implicit database is not uniform. Use the OPTIONS EVENT (ITEMERROR, SKIP) control statement to continue processing when authorization errors occur.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space that is to be used for the initial search for the object.

If you specify TABLESPACE, the default list type is TABLESPACES. All table spaces that satisfy the pattern-matching expression are included in the list unless the list is modified by other keywords. TABLESPACE *.* and TABLESPACE %.% are not supported.

database-name specifies the name of the database to which the table space belongs. The **default** value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name specifies the name of the table space.

You can explicitly specify or use pattern-matching characters to specify *database-name*, *table-space-name*, or both.

You cannot include any objects in DSNDB07 or any user-defined work file databases in a LISTDEF. Pattern matching is not supported for DSNDB01 and DSNDB06 objects.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the index space that is to be used for the initial search for the object.

If you specify INDEXSPACE, the default list type is INDEXSPACES. All index spaces that satisfy the pattern-matching expression are included in the list unless the index spaces are excluded by other LISTDEF options. INDEXSPACE *.* and INDEXSPACE %.% are not supported.

database-name specifies the name of the database to which the index space belongs. The **default** value is **DSNDB04**.

index-space-name specifies the name of the index space.

You can explicitly specify or use pattern-matching characters to specify *database-name*, *index-space-name*, or both.

You cannot include any objects in DSNDB07 or any user-defined work file databases in a LISTDEF. Pattern-matching is not supported for DSNDB01 and DSNDB06 objects.

TABLE *creator-id.table-name*

Specifies the table that is to be used for the initial search for the object.

If you specify TABLE, the default list type is TABLESPACES. All table spaces that contain tables that satisfy the pattern-matching expression are included in the list unless the list is modified by other keywords. TABLE *.* and TABLE %.% are not supported.

creator-id specifies the qualifier creator ID for the table. The **default** value is the user identifier for the utility. *table-name* specifies the name of the table. If you specify a table name with CLONED, the CLONED keyword is ignored.

You can explicitly specify or use pattern-matching characters to specify *creator-id*, *table-name*, or both. However, the underscore pattern-matching character is ignored in a table name.

Pattern-matching is not supported for catalog and directory objects. In a LISTDEF statement, you must include catalog and directory objects by their fully qualified names.

Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Specifies the index that is to be used for the initial search for the object.

If you specify INDEX, the default list type is INDEXSPACES. All index spaces that contain indexes that satisfy the pattern-matching expression are included in the list unless the list is modified by other keywords. INDEX *.* and INDEX %.% are not supported.

creator-id specifies the qualifier creator ID for the index. The **default** value is the user identifier for the utility.

index-name specifies the name of the index.

Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

You can explicitly specify or use pattern-matching characters to specify *creator-id*, *index-name*, or both. However, the underscore pattern-matching character is ignored in an index name.

Pattern-matching is not supported for catalog and directory objects. In a LISTDEF statement, you must include catalog and directory objects by their fully qualified names.

PARTLEVEL

Specifies the partition granularity for partitioned table spaces, partitioning indexes, and data-partitioned secondary indexes that are to be contained in the list. You cannot specify the PARTLEVEL keyword with the RI keyword.

(*integer*)

integer is the integer partition number where *integer* >= 0.

|
|

If you specify PARTLEVEL 0, the resulting list contains one entry for each nonpartitioned object.

If you specify PARTLEVEL with a nonzero operand, the resulting list contains one entry for the specified partition for partitioned objects and one entry for each nonpartitioned object.

If you specify PARTLEVEL without (*integer*), the resulting list contains one entry for each partition in the partitioned object and one entry for each nonpartitioned object.

(*integer1:integer2*)

integer1:integer2 indicates the partitions or a range of partitions to be specified in a list. The partition range must follow these guidelines:

- *integer1* >= 1
- *integer1* < *integer2*

An INCLUDE with the PARTLEVEL keyword can be removed from the list only by an EXCLUDE with PARTLEVEL.

For partition-by-growth objects, the PARTLEVEL keyword will result in an entry for each partition that exists when the LISTDEF list is evaluated. Partitions that are added after the list is evaluated will not be in the list. If a partition is added during long-running job steps in which the list is reused, the partitions that were added during the job step will not be in the list and will not be processed. If a utility job that uses a PARTLEVEL list is restarted, the original list is saved during the original execution for a later restart, and the list will not include the added partitions.

CLONED

Use the CLONED keyword to have LISTDEF perform a final filtering of the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause contents based on the existence or absence of clone data. This operation is performed last, after processing all other keywords on the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause.

CLONED YES specifies that only tablespaces and indexspaces that contain cloned objects are to be returned in the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause. CLONED NO specifies that only tablespaces and indexspaces that do not contain cloned objects are to be returned in the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause. Omit the CLONED keyword if the existence of clone data is not a factor.

The use of CLONED YES or CLONED NO only impacts the contents of the list. It does not determine if clone or base data is later processed by the utility using the list. Only the presence or absence of the CLONE keyword on individual utility control statements determines if clone or base data is processed.

DEFINED

Specifies whether table spaces or index spaces with defined or undefined data sets are to be returned in the INCLUDED or EXCLUDED clause. If you omit the DEFINED keyword, DEFINED YES is the default.

YES

Specifies that only table spaces or index spaces that are currently defined will be included in the INCLUDED or EXCLUDED clause.

YES is the default if DEFINED is not specified. By default, only defined objects will be included in the list. Before DB2 Version 10, the DEFINED

keyword did not exist and all objects, both defined and undefined, were included in the list. Specify DEFINED ALL to get the behavior of DB2 9 for z/OS and earlier.

NO

Specifies that only table spaces or index spaces that are currently undefined are included in the INCLUDED or EXCLUDED clause. Use EXCLUDE with DEFINED NO to remove table spaces and index spaces that are currently undefined and would not normally be processed by the utility. If you specify DEFINED NO, you cannot specify CLONED YES.

ALL

Specifies that table spaces or index spaces that are both undefined and defined will be included in the INCLUDED or EXCLUDED clause.

Before DB2 Version 10, the DEFINED keyword did not exist and all objects, both defined and undefined, were included in the list. Specify DEFINED ALL to get the behavior of DB2 9 for z/OS and earlier.

RI Specifies that all objects that are referentially related to the object expression (PRIMARY KEY <--> FOREIGN KEY) are to be included in the list. DB2 processes all referential relationships repeatedly until the entire referential set is developed. You cannot specify RI with PARTLEVEL(*n*).

Auxiliary indicator keywords: Use one of four auxiliary indicator keywords to direct LISTDEF processing to follow auxiliary relationships to include related LOB or XML objects in the list. The auxiliary relationship can be followed in either direction. Auxiliary objects include the auxiliary table spaces, auxiliary tables, indexes on auxiliary tables, and their containing index spaces.

Incomplete LOB or XML definitions cause seemingly related objects to not be found. The auxiliary relationship does not exist until you create the AUX TABLE with the STORES keyword.

No default auxiliary indicator keyword exists. If you do not specify BASE, LOB, XML, or ALL, DB2 does not follow the auxiliary relationships.

ALL

Specifies that BASE, LOB, and XML objects are to be included in the list. Auxiliary relationships are to be followed from all objects that result from the initial object lookup, and BASE, LOB, and XML objects are to remain in the final enumerated list.

The behavior of the ALL keyword is altered by the presence or absence of the HISTORY keyword. When ALL is specified with HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains all related history objects. When ALL is specified without HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains all related non-history objects.

BASE

Specifies that only base table spaces (non-LOB, non-XML) and index spaces are to be included in this element of the list. If the result of the initial search for the object is a base object, auxiliary relationships are not followed. If the result of the initial search for the object is a LOB, or XML object, the auxiliary relationship is applied to the base table space or index space, and only those objects become part of the resulting list.

The behavior of the BASE keyword is altered by the presence or absence of the HISTORY keyword. When BASE is specified with HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains only base history objects. When BASE is specified without HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains only non-history base objects.

LOB

Specifies that only LOB table spaces and related index spaces that contain indexes on auxiliary tables are to be included in this element of the list. If the result of the initial search for the object is a LOB object, auxiliary relationships are not followed. If the result of the initial search for the object is a base object, the auxiliary relationship is applied to the LOB table space or index space, and only those objects become part of the resulting list.

The behavior of the LOB keyword is altered by the presence or absence of the HISTORY keyword. When LOB is specified with HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains only LOB history objects. When LOB is specified without HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains only non-history LOB objects.

XML

Specifies that only XML table spaces and related index spaces that contain indexes on auxiliary tables are to be included in this element of the list. If the result of the initial search for the object is an XML object, auxiliary relationships are not followed. If the result of the initial search for the object is a base object, the auxiliary relationship is applied to the XML table space or index space, and only those objects become part of the resulting list.

The behavior of the XML keyword is altered by the presence or absence of the HISTORY keyword. When XML is specified with HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains only XML history objects. When XML is specified without HISTORY, the resulting list clause contains only non-history XML objects.

HISTORY

Specifies that only history (versioning) objects should be included on the resulting list clause.

HISTORY is a filtering keyword which operates against the clause contents after other keywords are applied. Use the keywords BASE, LOB, XML, or ALL with or without the HISTORY keyword to look up related objects. The order in which these keywords are specified has no meaning. Two INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clauses are required if both history and non-history objects are required.

Concurrency and compatibility for LISTDEF

The LISTDEF utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

LISTDEF is a control statement that is used to set up an environment for another utility to follow. The LISTDEF list is stored until it is referenced by a specific utility. When referenced by an utility, the list expands. At that time, the concurrency and compatibility restrictions of that utility apply, with the additional restriction that the catalog tables that are necessary to expand the list must be available for read-only access.

List processing limitations

Although DB2 does not limit the number of objects that a list can contain, be aware that if your list is too large, the utility might fail with an error or abend in either DB2 or another program. These errors or abends can be caused by storage limitations, limitations of the operating system, or other restrictions imposed by either DB2 or non-DB2 programs. Whether such a failure occurs depends on many factors including, but not limited to the following items:

- The amount of available storage in both the utility batch and DBM1 address spaces
- The utility that is running.
- The type and number of other utilities that are running at the same time.
- The specific combination of keywords and operands of all the utilities that are running

Recommendation: If you receive a failure that you suspect is caused by running a utility on a list that is too large, divide your list into smaller lists and run the utility or utilities in separate job steps on the smaller lists until they run successfully.

Creating the LISTDEF control statement

The LISTDEF control statement defines a list of objects and assigns a name to the list.

You must include the following elements in the control statement:

- The name of the list.
- An INCLUDE clause, optionally followed by additional INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clauses to either include or exclude objects from the list.

Related concepts

“Including objects in a list”

Including objects in a list

Use the INCLUDE and EXCLUDE clauses to specify the objects that are to be included in the list. Each INCLUDE clause adds objects to the list. Each EXCLUDE clause removes objects from the list. You must first specify an INCLUDE clause. You can then specify subsequent INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clauses in any order to add to or delete objects from the existing list.

DB2 constructs the list, one clause at a time, by adding objects to or removing objects from the list. If an EXCLUDE clause attempts to remove an object that is not yet in the list, DB2 ignores the EXCLUDE clause of that object and proceeds to the next INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause. Be aware that a subsequent INCLUDE can return a previously excluded object to the list.

You must specify either INCLUDE or EXCLUDE. No default specification exists.

Specifying objects to include or exclude

Each INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause identifies specific objects to add to or remove from the list.

You must include the following elements in each INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause:

- The object that is to be used in the initial catalog lookup for each INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause. The search for objects can begin with databases, table spaces, index spaces, tables, indexes, or other lists. You can explicitly specify the names of these objects or, with the exception of other lists, use a pattern matching expression. The resulting list contains only table spaces, only index spaces, or both.
- The type of objects that the list contains, either TABLESPACES or INDEXSPACES. You must explicitly specify the list type only when you specify

a database as the initial object by using the keyword DATABASE. Otherwise, LISTDEF uses the default list type values shown in the following table. These values depend on the type of object that you specified for the INCLUDE or EXCLUDE clause.

Table 27. Default list type values that LISTDEF uses.

Specified object	Default list type value
TABLESPACE	TABLESPACES
TABLE	TABLESPACES
INDEXSPACE	INDEXSPACES
INDEX	INDEXSPACES
LIST	Existing type value of the list

For example, the following INCLUDE clause specifies that table space DBLT0301.TLLT031A is to be added to the LIST:

```
INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0301.TLLT031A
```

In the preceding example, table space DBLT0301.TLLT031A is specified as the object that LISTDEF is to use for the initial catalog lookup. By default, the list type value for a TABLESPACE object is TABLESPACES. Therefore, the list includes only table space DBLT0301.TLLT031A.

The following example INCLUDE clause is similar to the preceding example, except that it includes the INDEXSPACES keyword:

```
INCLUDE INDEXSPACES TABLESPACE DBLT0301.TLLT031A
```

In this example, the clause specifies that all index spaces over all tables in table space DBLT0301.TLLT031A are to be added to the list.

Optionally, you can add related objects to the list by specifying keywords that indicate a relationship, such as referentially related objects or auxiliary related objects. Valid specifications include the following keywords:

- BASE (non-LOB and non-XML objects)
- LOB (LOB objects)
- XML (XML objects)
- ALL (BASE, LOB, and XML objects)
- TABLESPACES (related table spaces)
- INDEXSPACES (related index spaces)
- RI (related by referential constraints, including informational referential constraints)

The preceding keywords perform two functions: they determine which objects are related, and they then filter the contents of the list. The behavior of these keywords varies depending on the type of object that you specify. For example, if your initial object is a LOB object, the LOB keyword is ignored. If, however, the initial object is not a LOB object, the LOB keyword determines which LOB objects are related, and DB2 excludes non-LOB objects from the list.

DB2 processes each INCLUDE and EXCLUDE clause in the following order:

1. Perform the initial search for the object that is based on the specified pattern-matching expression, including PARTLEVEL specification, if specified.
2. Add or remove related objects and filter the list elements based on the specified list type, either TABLESPACES or INDEXSPACES (COPY YES or COPY NO).

3. Add or remove related objects depending on the presence or absence of the RI, BASE, LOB, XML, and ALL keywords.

For example, to generate a list of all table spaces in the ACCOUNT database but exclude all LOB table spaces, you can specify the following LISTDEF statement:

```
LISTDEF ACCNT INCLUDE TABLESPACES DATABASE ACCOUNT BASE
```

In the preceding example, the name of the list is ACCNT. The TABLESPACES keyword indicates that the list is to include table spaces that are associated with the specified object. In this case, the table spaces to be included are those table spaces in database ACCOUNT. Finally, the BASE keyword limits the objects to only base table spaces.

If you want a list of only LOB index spaces in the ACCOUNT database, you can specify the following LISTDEF statement:

```
LISTDEF ACLOBIX INCLUDE INDEXSPACES DATABASE ACCOUNT LOB
```

In the preceding example, the INDEXSPACES and LOB keywords indicate that the INCLUDE clause is to add only LOB index spaces to the ACLOBIX list.

Restriction: Utilities do not support SYSUTILX-related objects inside a LISTDEF specification. You cannot specify the following objects in a LISTDEF:

- TABLESPACE DSNDB01.SYSUTILX
- TABLE SYSIBM.SYSUTILX
- TABLE SYSIBM.SYSUTIL
- INDEXSPACE DSNDB01.DSNLUX01
- INDEXSPACE DSNDB01.DSNLUX02
- INDEX SYSIBM.DSNLUX01
- INDEX SYSIBM.DSNLUX02

Using pattern matching expressions

You can use four special pattern-matching characters (% , * , _ , ?) to define generic object names in a LISTDEF statement. These characters are similar to those characters that are used in the SQL LIKE predicate. Utilities that reference a list access the DB2 catalog at execution time and dynamically expand each generic object name into an equivalent enumerated list. A utility processes this enumerated list either sequentially or in parallel, depending on the utility function and the parameters that you specify.

Restrictions: DB2 does not support all-inclusive lists (such as DATABASE * or TABLESPACE *.*).

Pattern-matching of DB2 catalog and directory objects (DSNDB06 and DSNDB01) is not supported. Catalog and directory objects must be included in a LISTDEF by their full table space or index space name. Even if catalog and directory objects match a LISTDEF pattern matching expression, they are not included in the list. To process those objects, you must use syntax from releases prior to Version 7.

Specify pattern-matching object names by using the pattern-matching characters that are shown in the following table. This table lists the pattern-matching character, the equivalent SQL symbol, and any additional information.

Table 28. LISTDEF pattern-matching characters

LISTDEF pattern-matching character	Equivalent symbol used in SQL LIKE predicates	Usage notes
Percent sign (%)	Percent sign (%)	Performs the same function.
Question mark (?)	Underscore (_)	Use the question mark (?) instead of underscore (_) as a pattern-matching character in table and index names. The underscore character (_) in table and index names represents a single occurrence of itself.
Asterisk (*)	Percent sign (%)	Performs the same function.
Underscore (_)	Underscore (_)	Use the underscore (_) as an alternative to the question mark (?) for database, table space, and index space names.

Including catalog and directory objects

If you specify DB2 directory objects (DSNDB01) and DB2 catalog objects (DSNDB06) in object lists, you must specify the fully qualified table space or index space names for those objects. Pattern-matching is not supported for catalog or directory objects. DB2 issues error messages for any catalog or directory objects that are invalid for a utility.

Although DB2 catalog and directory objects can appear in LISTDEF lists, these objects might be invalid for a utility and result in an error message.

The following valid INCLUDE clauses contain catalog and directory objects:

- INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
- INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
- INCLUDE INDEXSPACE DSNDB06.DSNDXX01
- INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DSNDB06.DSNDXX01

Restriction: If you specify a catalog or directory object in a LISTDEF control statement, you cannot specify the following keywords:

- DATABASE
- TABLE
- INDEX
- BASE
- LOB
- ALL
- Databases DSNDB01, DSNDB06, and DSNDB07
- Table or indexes with a creator id of SYSIBM

These keywords require DB2 to access the catalog, which can cause problems when you specify a catalog or directory object.

All LISTDEF lists automatically exclude work file databases, which consist of DSNDB07 objects and user-defined work file objects, because DB2 utilities do not process these objects.

Previewing the contents of a list

You can preview the objects that are to be included in a list by using the PREVIEW function.

When you run a utility using the PREVIEW function, DB2 expands any LISTDEF control statements into the equivalent enumerated list, prints it to SYSPRINT, and stops execution.

Specify PREVIEW in one of two ways, either as a JCL parameter or on the OPTIONS PREVIEW control statement.

Creating LISTDEF libraries

You can create a library of LISTDEF control statements by using a DD statement to name LISTDEF data sets.

For example, assume that data sets ADMF001.DB.LIST1 and ADMF001.DB.LIST2 each contain several LISTDEF statements. For any utility jobs that reference these LISTDEF statements, you can include the following DD statement in the JCL:

```
//LISTDSN DD DSN=ADMF001.DB.LIST1,DISP=SHR
//          DD DSN=ADMF001.DB.LIST2,DISP=SHR
```

This DD statement defines a LISTDEF library. The statement gives a name (LISTDSN) to a group of data sets that contain LISTDEF statements, in this case ADMF001.DB.LIST1 and ADMF001.DB.LIST2. Defining such a library enables you to subsequently refer to the LISTDEF statements in that library by using the OPTIONS LISTDEFDD control statement.

Any data sets that are identified as part of a LISTDEF library must contain only LISTDEF statements.

In the utility job that references those LISTDEF statements, include an OPTIONS statement before the utility statement. In the OPTIONS statement, specify the DD name of the LISTDEF library as LISTDEFDD *ddname*.

DB2 uses this LISTDEF library for any subsequent utility control statements, until either the end of input or until you specify another OPTIONS LISTDEFDD *ddname*. The default DD name for the LISTDEF definition library is SYSLISTD.

When DB2 encounters a reference to a list, DB2 first searches SYSIN. If DB2 does not find the definition of the referenced list, DB2 searches the specified LISTDEF library.

Using lists in other utility jobs

You can reference lists in other utility jobs.

Placing the LISTDEF control statement

Specify LISTDEF control statements in the SYSIN DD statement prior to the utility control statement that references it, or in one or more LISTDEF library data sets.

Any LISTDEF statement that is defined within the SYSIN DD statement overrides another LISTDEF definition of the same name found in a LISTDEF library data set.

Referencing the list in another utility control statement

To use a list that has been defined with the LISTDEF control statement as the target object for a specific utility, specify the list name, prefixed by the LIST keyword. For example, you could QUIESCE all objects in a list by specifying the following control statement:

```
QUIESCE LIST X
```

In general, utilities processes the objects in the list in the order in which they are specified. However, some utilities alter the list order for optimal processing as follows:

- CHECK INDEX, REBUILD INDEX, and RUNSTATS INDEX process all index spaces that are related to a given table space at one time, regardless of list order.
- UNLOAD processes all specified partitions of a given table space at one time regardless of list order.

The LIST keyword is supported by the utilities that are listed in the following table. When possible, utility processing optimizes the order of list processing as indicated in the table.

Table 29. How specific utilities process lists

Utility	Order of list processing
CHECK INDEX	Items are grouped by related table space.
COPY	Items are processed in the specified order on a single call to COPY; the PARALLEL keyword is supported.
COPYTOCOPY	Items are processed in the specified order on a single call to COPYTOCOPY.
MERGECOPY	Items are processed in the specified order.
MODIFY RECOVERY	Items are processed in the specified order.
MODIFY STATISTICS	Items are processed in the specified order.
QUIESCE	All items are processed in the specified order on a single call to QUIESCE.
REBUILD	Items are grouped by related table space.
RECOVER	Items are processed in the specified order on a single call to RECOVER.
REORG	Items are processed in the specified order.
REPORT	Items are processed in the specified order.
RUNSTATS INDEX	Items are grouped by related table space.
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Items are processed in the specified order.
UNLOAD	Items at the partition level are grouped by table space.

Some utilities such as COPY and RECOVER, can process a LIST without a specified object type. Object types are determined from the list contents. Other utilities, such as REPORT, RUNSTATS, and REORG INDEX, must know the object type that is to be processed before processing can begin. These utilities require that you specify an object type in addition to the LIST keyword (for example: REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE LIST, RUNSTATS INDEX LIST, and REORG INDEX LIST). See the syntax diagrams for an individual utility for details.

Related tasks

“Creating LISTDEF libraries” on page 213

Using the **TEMPLATE** utility with **LISTDEF**

Together, the LISTDEF and TEMPLATE utilities enable faster development of utility job streams, and require fewer modifications when the underlying list of database objects change.

Many utilities require output data sets. In those cases, you should use the TEMPLATE control statement to specify the naming convention and, optionally, the allocation parameters for each type of output data set. Templates, like lists, can be reused if the naming convention is robust enough to prevent duplicate data set names from being allocated.

In some cases you can use traditional JCL DD statements with LISTDEF lists, but this method is usually not practical unless you are processing small lists one object at a time.

Related reference

Chapter 31, “TEMPLATE,” on page 699

Using the **OPTIONS** utility with **LISTDEF**

You can use the OPTIONS utility with LISTDEF.

Use the following three functions of the OPTIONS utility in conjunction with the LISTDEF utility when needed:

OPTIONS PREVIEW

Enables you to preview the list contents before actual processing.

OPTIONS ITEMERROR

Enables you to alter the handling of errors that might occur during list processing.

OPTIONS LISTDEFDD

Enables you to identify a LISTDEF library. The default value is LISTDEFDD.

Related tasks

“Creating LISTDEF libraries” on page 213

Termination or restart of **LISTDEF**

You can terminate and restart the LISTDEF utility.

You can terminate a LISTDEF utility job by using the TERM UTILITY command if you submitted the job or have SYSOPR, SYSCTRL, or SYSADM authority.

You can restart a LISTDEF utility job, but it starts from the beginning again. Use caution when changing LISTDEF lists prior to a restart. When DB2 restarts list processing, it uses a saved copy of the list. Modifying the LISTDEF list that is referred to by the stopped utility has no effect. Only control statements that follow the stopped utility are affected.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample LISTDEF control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own LISTDEF control statements.

Example 1: Defining a list of objects

The following control statement defines a list that includes the following objects:

- Table space DBLT0301.TLLT031A
- Index space DBLT0301.IXIT031A
- Table space DBLT0301.IPLT031C
- Table space that contains ADMF001.TBLT032A_1

The name of the list is NAME1. This list can be referenced by any subsequent utility statements.

```
LISTDEF NAME1 INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0301.TLLT031A
              INCLUDE INDEXSPACE DBLT0301.IXLT031A
              INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0301.TPLT031C
              INCLUDE TABLE ADMF001.TBLT032A_1
```

Example 2: Defining a list of all objects in a database

The following control statement defines a list (EXAMPLE2) that includes all table spaces and all index spaces in the PAYROLL database.

```
LISTDEF EXAMPLE2 INCLUDE TABLESPACES DATABASE PAYROLL
                 INCLUDE INDEXSPACES DATABASE PAYROLL
```

Example 3: Using pattern-matching characters

The following control statement defines a list (PAYROLL) that includes the following objects:

- All table spaces in the PAYROLL database, except for any table spaces whose names begin with TEMP.
- All index spaces in the PAYROLL database that end with IX, except for those index spaces that begin with TMPIX.

The subsequent COPY utility control statement processes this list.

```
LISTDEF PAYROLL INCLUDE TABLESPACE PAYROLL.*
                EXCLUDE TABLESPACE PAYROLL.TEMP*
                INCLUDE INDEXSPACE PAYROLL.*IX
                EXCLUDE INDEXSPACE PAYROLL.TMPIX*
COPY LIST PAYROLL ...
```

Example 4: Defining a list of partitions and nonpartitioned table spaces

The following control statement defines a list (EXAMPLE4) that includes one entry for each partition of the qualifying partitioned table spaces and one entry for each qualifying nonpartitioned table space. The table spaces must satisfy the PAY*.* name pattern.

```
LISTDEF EXAMPLE4 INCLUDE TABLESPACE PAY*.* PARTLEVEL
```

Assume that three table spaces qualify. Of these table spaces, two are partitioned table spaces (PAY2.DEPTA and PAY2.DEPTF) that each have three partitions and one is a nonpartitioned table space (PAY1.COMP). In this case, the EXAMPLE4 list includes the following items:

- PAY2.DEPTA partition 1
- PAY2.DEPTA partition 2
- PAY2.DEPTA partition 3
- PAY2.DEPTF partition 1
- PAY2.DEPTF partition 2
- PAY2.DEPTF partition 3
- PAY1.COMP

If you specified PARTLEVEL(2) instead of PARTLEVEL, the EXAMPLE4 list includes the following items:

- PAY2.DEPTA partition 2
- PAY2.DEPTF partition 2
- PAY1.COMP

If you specified PARTLEVEL(0) instead of PARTLEVEL, the EXAMPLE4 list includes only PAY1.COMP.

Example 5: Defining a list of COPY YES indexes

The following control statement defines a list (EXAMPLE5) that includes related index spaces from the referenced list (EXAMPLE4) that have been defined or altered to COPY YES.

```
LISTDEF EXAMPLE5 INCLUDE LIST EXAMPLE4 INDEXSPACES COPY YES
```

Example 6: Defining a list that includes all table space partitions except for one

The following control statement defines a list (EXAMPLE6) that includes all partitions of table space X, except for partition 12. The INCLUDE clause adds an entry for each partition, and the EXCLUDE clause removes the entry for partition 12.

```
LISTDEF EXAMPLE6 INCLUDE TABLESPACE X PARTLEVEL  
                    EXCLUDE TABLESPACE X PARTLEVEL(12)
```

Note that if the PARTLEVEL keyword is not specified in both clauses, as in the following two sample statements, the INCLUDE and EXCLUDE items do not intersect. For example, in the following statement, table space X is included in the list in its entirety, not at the partition level. Therefore, partition 12 cannot be excluded.

```
LISTDEF EXAMPLE6 INCLUDE TABLESPACE X  
                    EXCLUDE TABLESPACE X PARTLEVEL(12)
```

In the following sample statement, the list includes only partition 12 of table space X, so table space X in its entirety can not be excluded.

```
LISTDEF EXAMPLE6 INCLUDE TABLESPACE X PARTLEVEL(12)  
                    EXCLUDE TABLESPACE X
```

Example 7: Defining a LISTDEF library and using a list in a QUIESCE job

In this example, the first two LISTDEF control statements define the NAME1 and NAME2 lists. The NAME1 list is stored in a sequential data set (JULTU103.TCASE.DATA2), and the NAME2 list is stored in a member of a partitioned data set (JULTU103.TCASE.DATA3(MEM1)). These output data sets are identified by the SYSUT2 DD statements (in the JCL for the CREATE1 and CREATE2 jobs).

The LISTLIB DD statement (in the JCL for the QUIESCE job) defines a LISTDEF library. When you define a LISTDEF library, you give a name to a group of data sets that contain LISTDEF statements. In this case, the library is to include the following data sets:

- The sequential data set JULTU103.TCASE.DATA2 (which includes the NAME1 list)
- The MEM1 member of the partitioned data set JULTU103.TCASE.DATA3 (which includes the NAME2 list).

Defining such a library enables you to subsequently refer to a group of LISTDEF statements with a single reference.

The OPTIONS utility control statement in this example specifies that the library that is identified by the LISTLIB DD statement is to be used as the default LISTDEF definition library. This declaration means that for any referenced lists, DB2 is to first search SYSIN for the list definition. If DB2 does not find the list definition in SYSIN, it is to search any data sets that are included in the LISTLIB LISTDEF library.

The last LISTDEF statement defines the NAME3 list. This list includes all objects in the NAME1 and NAME2 lists, except for three table spaces (TSLT032B, TSLT031B, TSLT032C). Because the NAME1 and NAME2 lists are not included in SYSIN, DB2 searches the default LISTDEF library (LISTLIB) to find them.

Finally, the QUIESCE utility control statement specifies this list of objects (NAME3) for which DB2 is to establish a quiesce point.

```
//CREATE1 JOB 'USER=NAME',CLASS=A,...
/*-----
/* Create an input data set.
/*-----
//LOAD1 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//SYSPRINT DD DUMMY
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=JULTU103.TCASE.DATA2,
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=2400)
//SYSUT1 DD *
LISTDEF NAME1 INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0301.TLLT031A
INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0301.TSLT031B
/*
//CREATE2 JOB 'USER=NAME',CLASS=A,...
/*-----
/* Create an input data set.
/*-----
//CRECNTL EXEC PGM=IEFBR14
//CNTL DD DSN=JULTU103.TCASE.DATA3,UNIT=SYSDA,
// VOL=SER=SCR03,
// SPACE=(TRK,(2,2,2)),DCB=(DSORG=PO,
```

```

//          LRECL=80,RECFM=FB,BLKSIZE=4560),
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
/*
/*-----
/* Create member of input data set.
/*-----
//FILLCNTL EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1  DD  DSN=JULTU103.TCASE.DATA3,DISP=OLD
//SYSUT2  DD  DSN=JULTU103.TCASE.DATA3,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN  DD  DATA
./ ADD NAME=MEM1
    LISTDEF NAME2 INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0302.TLLT032A
                  INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0302.TSLT032B
                  INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0302.TPLT032C

./ ENDUP
/*

//QUIESCE JOB 'USER=NAME',CLASS=A,...
//*****
/* QUIESCE LISTDEF DD LILSTDEF data sets
//*****
//STEP1  EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU103.QUIESC2',
//          UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR'
//LISTLIB DD DSN=JULTU103.TCASE.DATA2,DISP=SHR
//          DD DSN=JULTU103.TCASE.DATA3(MEM1),DISP=SHR
//SYSIN   DD *
          OPTIONS LISTDEFDD LISTLIB
          LISTDEF NAME3 INCLUDE LIST NAME1
                        INCLUDE LIST NAME2
                        EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0302.TSLT032B
                        EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0301.TSLT031B
                        EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0302.TPLT032C
          QUIESCE LIST NAME3
/*

```

Figure 27. Example of building a LISTDEF library and then running the QUIESCE utility

Example 8: Defining a list that includes related objects

The following LISTDEF control statement defines a list (EXAMPLE8) that includes table space DBLT0101.TPLT011C and all objects that are referentially related to it. Only base table spaces are included in the list. The subsequent RECOVER utility control statement specifies that all objects in the EXAMPLE8 list are to be recovered.

```

//STEP2  EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU101.RECOVE5',
//          UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN   DD *
          LISTDEF EXAMPLE8 INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT0101.TPLT011C RI BASE
          RECOVER LIST EXAMPLE8
/*

```

Example 9: Defining a list of cloned data

The following control statement indicates that the INCLUDE expression is to return only the names of clone tables, table spaces that contain clone tables, indexes on clone tables, or index spaces that contain indexes on clone tables.

```

LISTDEF REORG_TBSP INCLUDE TABLESPACE DB42240*.T*
                   CLONED YES
                   EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DB42240*.TL4224L*
                   EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DB42240*.TL4224B*

```

```
EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DB42240*.TL4224C*
EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DB42240*.TL4224D*
EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DB42240*.TL4224E*
EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DB42240*.TL4224F*
EXCLUDE TABLESPACE DB422401.TSHR5702
```

Chapter 16. LOAD

Use the LOAD online utility to load one or more tables of a table space. The LOAD utility loads records into the tables and builds or extends any indexes that are defined on them.

If the table space already contains data, you can choose whether you want to add the new data to the existing data or replace the existing data.

The loaded data is processed by any edit or validation routine that is associated with the table, and any field procedure that is associated with any column of the table. The LOAD utility ignores and does not enforce informational referential constraints.

Output

LOAD DATA generates one or more of the following forms of output:

- A loaded table space or partition.
- A discard file of rejected records.
- A summary report of errors that were encountered during processing; this report is generated only if you specify ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS or if the LOAD involves unique indexes.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorizations:

- Ownership of the table
- LOAD privilege for the database
- STATS privilege for the database is required if STATISTICS keyword is specified
- DATAACCESS authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

LOAD operates on a table space level, so you must have authority for all tables in the table space when you perform LOAD.

To run LOAD STATISTICS, the privilege set must include STATS authority on the database. To run LOAD STATISTICS REPORT YES, the privilege set must also include the SELECT privilege on the tables required.

If either the FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT option is specified, the batch user ID that invokes the LOAD utility must have the authority to execute the DFSMSdss COPY command.

If you use RACF access control with multilevel security and LOAD is to process a table space that contains a table that has multilevel security with row-level granularity, you must be identified to RACF and have an accessible valid security label. You must also meet the following authorization requirements:

- To replace an entire table space with LOAD REPLACE, you must have the write-down privilege unless write-down rules are not in effect.
- You must have the write-down privilege to specify values for the security label columns, unless write-down rules are not in effect. If these rules are in effect and

you do not have write-down privilege, DB2 assigns your security label as the value for the security label column for the rows that you are loading.

Execution phases of LOAD

The LOAD utility operates in the following phases:

UTILINIT

Performs initialization.

RELOAD

Loads record types and writes temporary file records for indexes and foreign keys. RELOAD makes one pass through the sequential input data set. Check constraints are checked for each row. Internal commits provide commit points at which to restart in case operation should halt in this phase.

RELOAD creates inline copies if you specified the COPYDDN or RECOVERYDDN keywords.

A subtask is started at the beginning of the RELOAD phase to sort the keys. The sort subtask initializes and waits for the main RELOAD phase to pass its keys to SORT. RELOAD loads the data, extracts the keys, and passes them in memory for sorting. At the end of the RELOAD phase, the last key is passed to SORT, and record sorting completes.

Note that load partition parallelism starts subtasks. PREFORMAT for table spaces occurs at the end of the RELOAD phase.

SORT Sorts temporary file records before creating indexes or validating referential constraints, if indexes or foreign keys exist. The SORT phase is skipped if all the following conditions apply for the data that is processed during the RELOAD phase:

- Each table has no more than one key.
- All keys are the same type (index key only, indexed foreign key, or foreign key only).
- The data that is being loaded or reloaded is in key order (if a key exists). If the key is an index key only and the index is a data-partitioned secondary index, the data is considered to be in order if the data is grouped by partition and ordered within partition by key value. If the key in question is an indexed foreign key and the index is a data-partitioned secondary index, the data is never considered to be in order.
- The data that is being loaded or reloaded is grouped by table, and each input record is loaded into one table only.

SORT passes the sorted keys in memory to the BUILD phase, which builds the indexes.

BUILD

Creates indexes from temporary file records for all indexes that are defined on the loaded tables. Build also detects duplicate keys. PREFORMAT for indexes occurs at the end of the BUILD phase.

SORTBLD

Performs all activities that normally occur in both the SORT and BUILD phases, if you specify a parallel index build.

INDEXVAL

Corrects unique index violations or index evaluation errors from the information in SYSERR, if any exist.

ENFORCE

Checks referential constraints, except informational referential constraints, and corrects violations. Information about violations of referential constraints is stored in SYSERR.

DISCARD

Copies records that cause errors from the input data set to the discard data set.

REPORT

Generates a summary report, if you specified ENFORCE CONSTRAINT or if load index validation is performed. The report is sent to SYSPRINT.

LOGAPPLY

If LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, log apply applies the updates to the FlashCopy image copy to ensure that all activity is reflected up to the point of consistency.

LOGCSR

If LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, the LOGCSR phase identifies any uncommitted work to back out from the FlashCopy image copy.

LOGUNDO

If LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT is specified, the LOGUNDO phase backs out uncommitted work from the FlashCopy image copy.

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup.

Related concepts

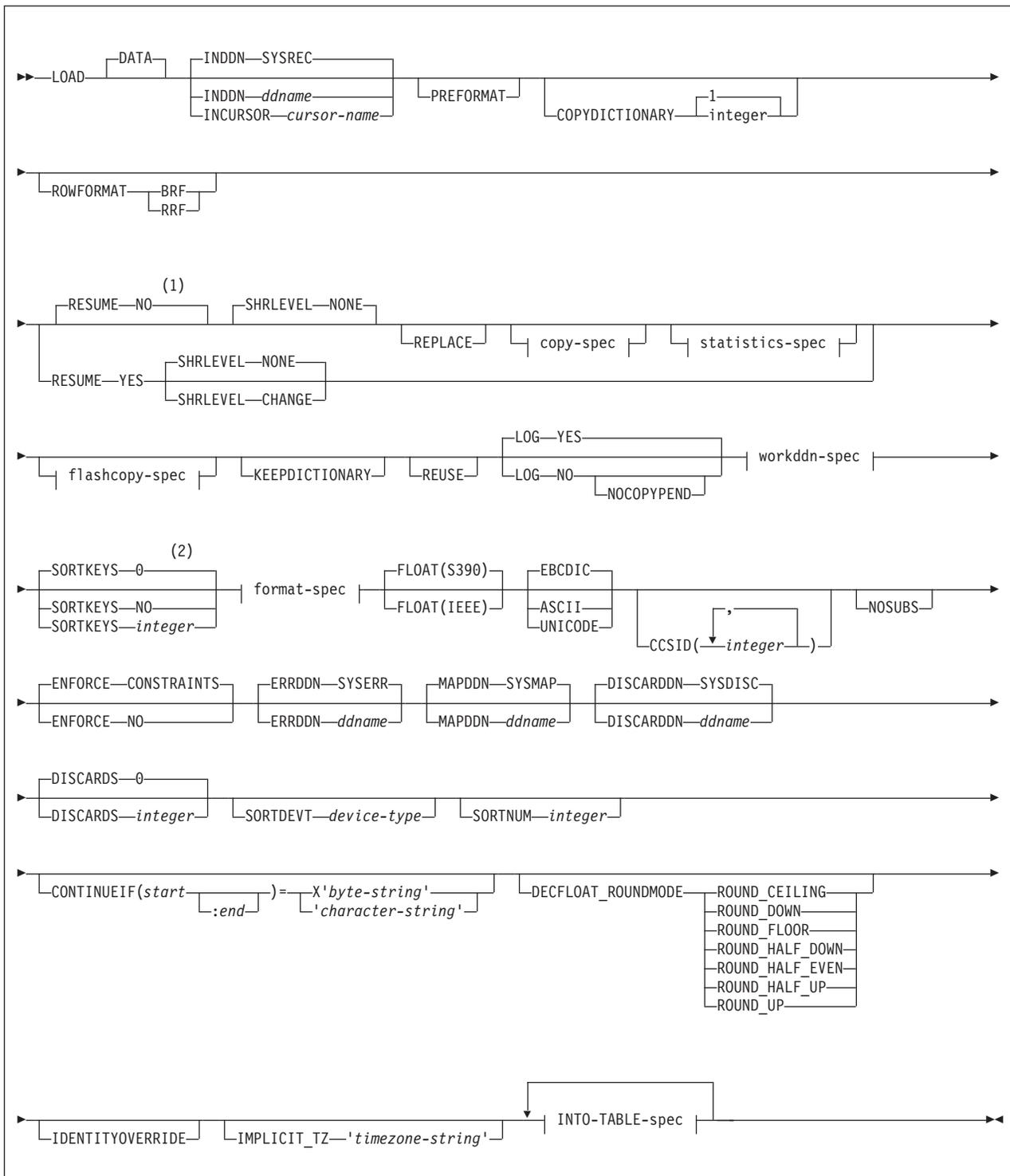
 [Multilevel security \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Syntax and options of the LOAD control statement

The LOAD utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

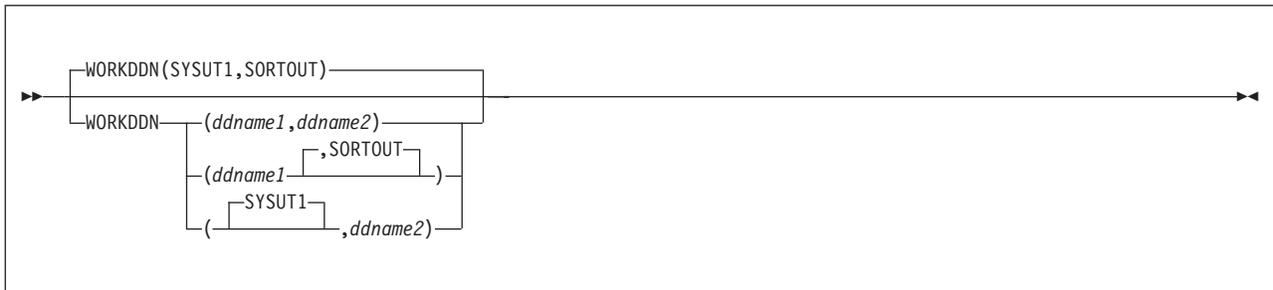
Syntax diagram



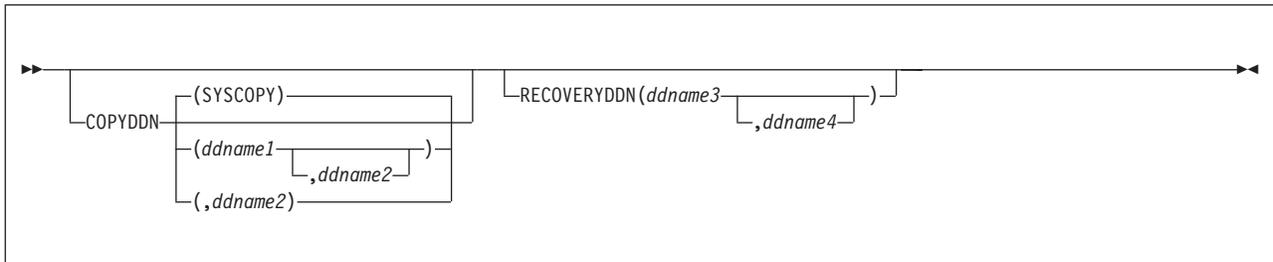
Notes:

- 1 The value specified in the INTO TABLE for RESUME or REPLACE overrides the default value for LOAD RESUME.
- 2 The default is 0 if the input is on tape, a cursor, a PDS member or for SYSREC DD *. For sequential data sets on disk, LOAD computes the default based on the input data set size.

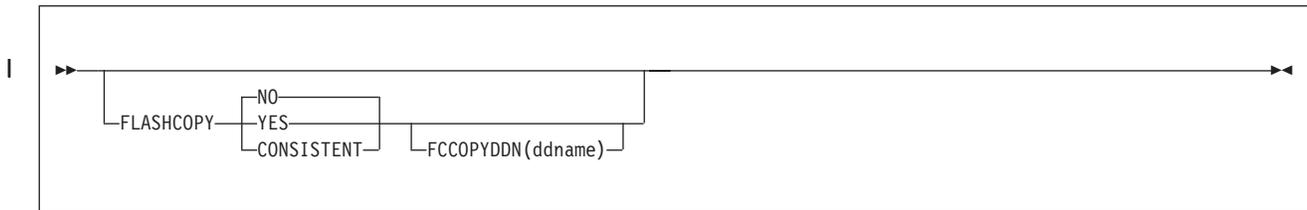
workddn-spec:



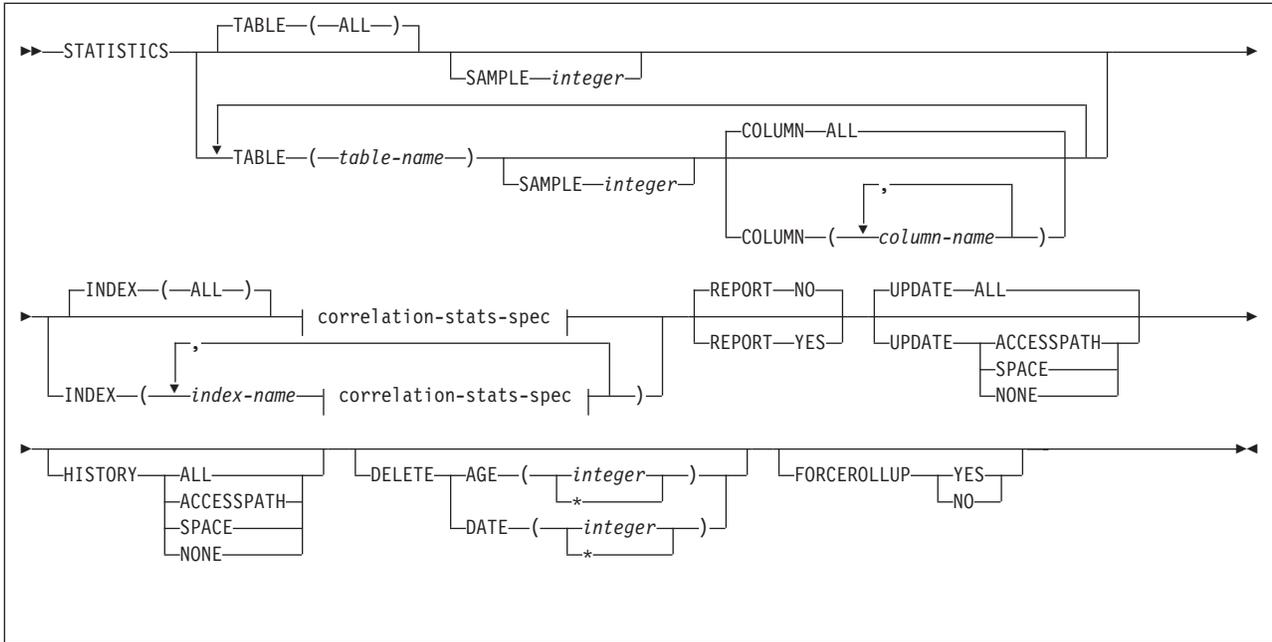
copy-spec:



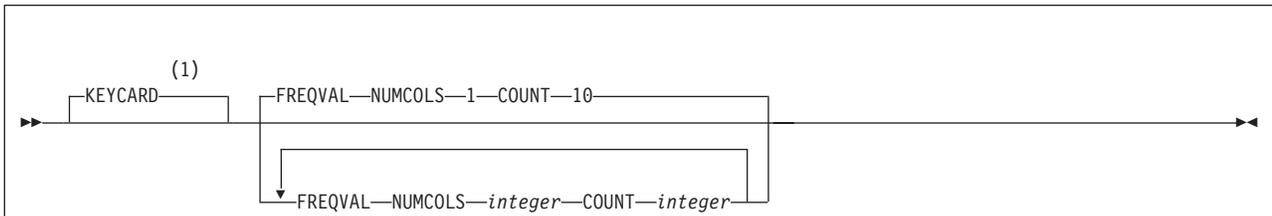
flashcopy-spec:



statistics-spec:



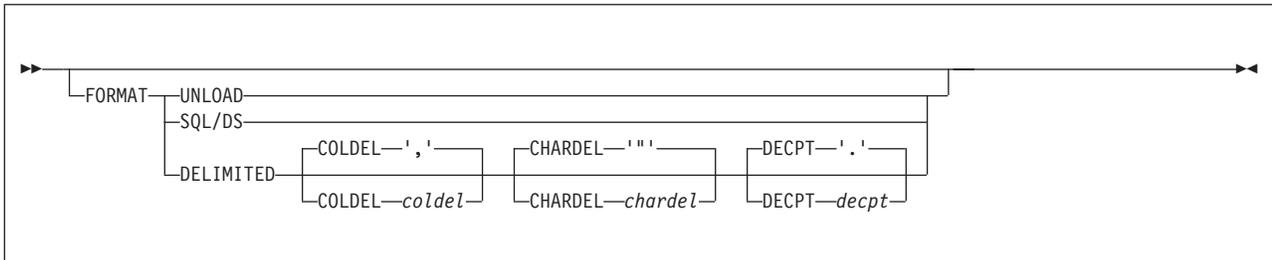
correlation-stats-spec:



Notes:

- 1 The `KEYCARD` option is deprecated. The `KEYCARD` functionality is now built into the default execution of the inline statistics for indexes and cannot be disabled.

format-spec:



INTO-TABLE-spec:

For the syntax diagram and the option descriptions of the into-table specification, see “`INTO-TABLE-spec`” on page 245.

Option descriptions

DATA

Specifies that data is to be loaded. This keyword is optional and is used for clarity only.

INDDN *ddname*

Specifies the data definition (DD) statement or template that identifies the input data set for the partition. The record format for the input data set must be fixed-length or variable-length. The data set must be readable by the basic sequential access method (BSAM).

The *ddname* is the name of the input data set.

The default value is **SYSREC**.

INCURSOR *cursor-name*

Specifies the cursor for the input data set. You must declare the cursor before it is used by the LOAD utility. Use the EXEC SQL utility control statement to define the cursor. You cannot load data into the same table on which you defined the cursor. You cannot load data into a table that is a parent in a RI relationship with the dependent table on which the cursor is defined.

The specified cursor can be used with the DB2 family cross-loader function, which enables you to load data from any DRDA-compliant remote server. For more information about using the cross-loader function, see “Loading data by using the cross-loader function” on page 290.

cursor-name is the cursor name. Cursor names that are specified with the LOAD utility cannot be longer than eight characters.

You cannot use the INCURSOR option with the following options:

- SHRLEVEL CHANGE
- NOSUBS
- FORMAT UNLOAD
- FORMAT SQL/DS
- CONTINUEIF
- WHEN

In addition, you cannot specify field specifications or use discard processing with the INCURSOR option.

PREFORMAT

Specifies that the remaining pages are preformatted up to the high-allocated RBA in the table space and index spaces that are associated with the table that is specified in *table-name*. The preformatting occurs after the data has been loaded and the indexes are built.

PREFORMAT can operate on an entire table space and its index spaces, or on a partition of a partitioned table space and on the corresponding partitions of partitioned indexes, if any exist. Specifying LOAD PREFORMAT (rather than PART *integer* PREFORMAT) tells LOAD to serialize at the table space level, which can inhibit concurrent processing of separate partitions. If you want to serialize at the partition level, specify PART *integer* PREFORMAT.

The PREFORMAT keyword does not apply to auxiliary table spaces.

COPYDICTIONARY *integer*

Allows the LOAD utility to copy an existing compression dictionary from a partition to other partitions of a partitioned table space. LOAD copies the current compression dictionary from the partition whose partition number is

integer, and uses that compression dictionary to compress the input data for partitions that are being replaced. The default value of *integer* is 1.

COPYDICTIONARY provides a method for copying a compression dictionary to an empty partition. The partition that is being copied must have a valid compression dictionary.

COPYDICTIONARY causes LOAD to copy the compression dictionary only to partitions that have the COMPRESS YES attribute.

Use of the COPYDICTIONARY keyword has these restrictions:

- COPYDICTIONARY can be used only when the target of the LOAD statement is a partitioned or range-partitioned table space.
- PART *integer* REPLACE must also be specified in the LOAD statement.
- LOAD RESUME NO cannot be specified with COPYDICTIONARY. However RESUME NO can be specified in the INTO-table-spec.
- RESUME YES cannot be specified with COPYDICTIONARY.
- KEEPDICTIONARY cannot also be specified in the LOAD statement.

ROWFORMAT

Specifies the output row format in the affected table space or partition. This keyword affects only utility behavior in Version 9 new-function mode, and overrides the existing RRF subsystem parameter setting. This keyword has no effect on LOB, catalog, directory, XML, or universal table spaces participating in a CLONE relationship.

BRF

Specifies that the table space or partition being reorganized or replaced will be converted to or remain in basic row format.

RRF

Specifies that the table space or partition being reorganized or replaced will be converted to or remain in reorder row format.

RESUME

Indicates whether records are to be loaded into an empty or non-empty table space. For nonsegmented table spaces, space is not reused for rows that have been marked as deleted or for rows of dropped tables.

Important: Specifying LOAD RESUME (rather than PART *integer* RESUME) tells LOAD to serialize on the entire table space, which can inhibit concurrent processing of separate partitions. If you want to process other partitions concurrently, specify PART *integer* RESUME.

NO

Loads records into an empty table space. If the table space is not empty, and you have not used REPLACE, a message is issued and the utility job step terminates with a job step condition code of 8.

For nonsegmented table spaces that contain deleted rows or rows of dropped tables, using the REPLACE keyword provides increased efficiency.

The **default** value is NO, unless you override it with PART *integer* RESUME YES.

YES

Loads records into a non-empty table space. If the table space is empty, a warning message is issued, but the table space is loaded. Loading begins at the current end of data in the table space. Space is not reused for rows that are marked as deleted or for rows of dropped tables.

LOAD RESUME SHRLEVEL CHANGE activates the before triggers and after triggers for each row that is loaded.

SHRLEVEL

Specifies the extent to which applications can concurrently access the table space or partition during the LOAD utility job. The following parameter values are listed in order of increasing extent of allowed concurrent access.

NONE

Specifies that applications have no concurrent access to the table space or partition.

CHANGE

Specifies that applications can concurrently read from and write to the table space or partition into which LOAD is loading data. If you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, you cannot specify the following parameters: INCURSOR, RESUME NO, REPLACE, KEEPDICTIONARY, LOG NO, ENFORCE NO, STATISTICS, COPYDDN, RECOVERYDDN, MAPDDN, PREFORMAT, REUSE, or PART *integer* REPLACE.

For a partition-directed LOAD, if you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, only RESUME YES can be specified or inherited from the LOAD statement.

LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE does not perform the SORT, BUILD, SORTBLD, INDEXVAL, or ENFORCE phases, and the compatibility and concurrency considerations differ.

A LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE job functions like a mass INSERT. Whereas a regular LOAD job drains the entire table space, LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE functions like an INSERT statement and uses claims when accessing an object.

Normally, a LOAD RESUME YES job loads the records at the end of the already existing records. However, for a LOAD RESUME YES job with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option, the utility tries to insert the new records in available free space as close to the clustering order as possible. This LOAD job does not create any additional free pages. If you insert a lot of records, these records are likely to be stored out of clustering order. In this case, you should run the REORG TABLESPACE utility after loading the records.

When an identity column exists in the table being loaded, performance can be improved by specifying the CACHE attribute for the identity column.

Lock escalation will be disabled on XML table spaces for LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE.

Recommendation: If you have loaded a lot of records, run RUNSTATS SHRLEVEL CHANGE UPDATE SPACE and then a conditional REORG.

Log records that DB2 creates during LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE can be used by DB2 DataPropagator, if the tables that are being loaded are defined with DATA CAPTURE CHANGES.

LOAD jobs with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option do not insert any records into SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

Note that before and after row triggers are activated for SHRLEVEL CHANGE but not for SHRLEVEL NONE. Statement triggers for each row are also activated for SHRLEVEL CHANGE but not for SHRLEVEL NONE.

REPLACE

Indicates whether the table space and all its indexes need to be reset to empty

before records are loaded. With this option, the newly loaded rows replace **all** existing rows of all tables in the table space, not just those of the table that you are loading. For DB2 STOGROUP-defined data sets, the data set is deleted and redefined with this option, unless you also specified the REUSE option. You must have LOAD authority for all tables in the table space where you perform LOAD REPLACE. If you attempt a LOAD REPLACE without this authority, you get an error message.

You cannot use REPLACE with the PART *integer* REPLACE option of INTO TABLE; you must either replace an entire table space by using the REPLACE option or replace a single partition by using the PART *integer* REPLACE option of INTO TABLE.

Specifying LOAD REPLACE (rather than PART *integer* REPLACE) tells LOAD to serialize at the table space level. If you want to serialize at the partition level, specify PART *integer* REPLACE. See the information about specifying REPLACE at the partition level under the keyword descriptions for INTO TABLE.

LOAD REPLACE is not allowed on a table or a history table defined with data versioning.

COPYDDN (*ddname1,ddname2*)

Specifies the DD statements for the primary (*ddname1*) and backup (*ddname2*) copy data sets for the image copy.

ddname is the DD name.

The **default** value is **SYSCOPY** for the primary copy. No default exists for the backup copy.

The COPYDDN keyword can be specified only with REPLACE. A full image copy data set (SHRLEVEL REFERENCE) is created for the table or partitions that are specified when LOAD executes. The table space or partition for which an image copy is produced is not placed in COPY-pending status.

Image copies that are taken during LOAD REPLACE are not recommended for use with RECOVER TOCOPY because these image copies might contain unique index violations, referential constraint violations, or index evaluation errors.

When using COPYDDN for XML data, an inline copy is taken only of the base table space, not the XML table space.

Using COPYDDN when loading a table with LOB columns does not create a copy of any index, LOB table space, or XML table space. You must perform these tasks separately.

The COPYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

RECOVERYDDN *ddname3,ddname4*

Specifies the DD statements for the primary (*ddname3*) and backup (*ddname4*) copy data sets for the image copy at the recovery site.

ddname is the DD name.

You cannot have duplicate image copy data sets. The same rules apply for RECOVERYDDN and COPYDDN.

The RECOVERYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

FLASHCOPY

Specifies whether FlashCopy technology is used to create a copy of the object. Valid values are YES, NO, or CONSISTENT. When FlashCopy is used, a separate data set is created for each partition or piece of the object.

Specify YES or CONSISTENT only if the DB2 data sets are on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes.

The FlashCopy specifications on the utility control statement override any specifications for FlashCopy that are defined by using the DB2 subsystem parameters. If the FlashCopy subsystem parameters specify the use of FlashCopy as the default behavior of this utility, the FLASHCOPY option can be omitted from the utility control statement.

Important: If the input data set is less than one cylinder, FlashCopy technology might not be used for copying the objects regardless of the FLASHCOPY settings. The copy is performed by IDCAMS if FlashCopy is not used.

NO

Specifies that no FlashCopy is made. NO is the default value for FLASHCOPY.

YES

Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object.

Important: Under the following circumstances, the COPY utility might not use FlashCopy even though YES is specified:

- FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available
- The source tracks are already the target of a FlashCopy operation
- The target tracks are the source of a FlashCopy operation
- The maximum number of relationships for the copy is exceeded

In the event that FlashCopy is not used, the LOAD utility uses traditional I/O methods to copy the object, which can result in longer than expected execution time.

CONSISTENT

When SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified, specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object and that any uncommitted work included in the copy is backed out of the copy to make the copy consistent. If SHRLEVEL NONE is specified on the LOAD control statement, the image copy is already consistent and you do not need to specify CONSISTENT.

A consistent FlashCopy image copy can be used for recovery without also requiring a sequential format image copy.

Specifying FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT requires additional time and system resources during utility processing, because the utility must read the logs and apply the changes to the image copy. Similarly, recovering from a consistent FlashCopy image copy also requires additional time and system resources to read the logs and reapply work that was previously backed out.

| **Restriction:** CONSISTENT cannot be specified when copying objects that
| have been defined with the NOT LOGGED attribute. If CONSISTENT is
| specified for an object that is defined with the NOT LOGGED attribute, the
| utility does not make a copy of the object and issues message DSNU076I
| with return code 8.

FCCOPYDDN

| Specifies the template to be used to create the FlashCopy image copy data set
| names. If a value is not specified for FCCOPYDDN on the LOAD control
| statement when FlashCopy is used, the value specified on the FCCOPYDDN
| subsystem parameter determines the template to be used.

| (*template-name*)

| The data set names for the FlashCopy image copy are allocated according
| to the template specification. For table space or index space level
| FlashCopy image copies, because a data set is allocated for each partition
| or piece, ensure that the data set naming convention in the template
| specification is unique enough. Use the &DSNUM variable, which resolves
| to a partition number or piece number at execution time.

STATISTICS

| Specifies the gathering of statistics for a table space, index, or both; the
| statistics are stored in the DB2 catalog.

| If you specify the STATISTICS keyword with no other *statistics-spec* or
| *correlation-stats-spec* options, DB2 gathers only table space statistics. Statistics
| are collected on a base table space, but not on a LOB table space or XML table
| space.

Restrictions:

- If you specify STATISTICS for encrypted data, DB2 might not provide useful statistics on this data.
- You cannot specify STATISTICS if the named table is a table clone.

TABLE

| Specifies the table for which column information is to be gathered. All tables
| must belong to the table space that is specified in the TABLESPACE option.

| (**ALL**)

| Specifies that information is to be gathered for all columns of all tables in
| the table space.

| (*table-name*)

| Specifies the tables for which column information is to be gathered. If you
| omit the qualifier, the user identifier for the utility job is used. Enclose the
| table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

| If you specify more than one table, you must repeat the TABLE option.
| Multiple TABLE options must be specified entirely before or after any
| INDEX keyword that may also be specified. For example, the INDEX
| keyword may not be specified between any two TABLE keywords.

SAMPLE *integer*

| Indicates the percentage of rows that LOAD is to sample when collecting
| non-indexed column statistics. You can specify any value from 1 through 100.
| The **default** value is 25.

COLUMN

| Specifies the columns for which column information is to be gathered.

You can specify this option only if you specify the particular tables for which statistics are to be gathered (TABLE (table-name)). If you specify particular tables and do not specify the COLUMN option, the default, COLUMN(ALL), is used. If you do not specify a particular table when using the TABLE option, you cannot specify the COLUMN option; however, COLUMN(ALL) is assumed.

(ALL)

Specifies that statistics are to be gathered for all columns in the table.

(column-name, ...)

Specifies the columns for which statistics are to be gathered.

You can specify a list of column names; the maximum is 10. If you specify more than one column, separate each name with a comma.

INDEX

Specifies indexes for which information is to be gathered. Column information is gathered for the first column of the index. All the indexes must be associated with the same table space, which must be the table space that is specified in the TABLESPACE option.

(ALL)

Specifies that the column information is to be gathered for all indexes that are defined on tables in the table space.

(index-name)

Specifies the indexes for which information is to be gathered. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

KEYCARD

| The KEYCARD option is deprecated in the LOAD control statement and no
| longer needs to be specified to collect statistics on the values in the key
| columns of an index.

| When the STATISTICS and INDEX options are specified, the LOAD utility
| automatically collects all of the distinct values in all of the 1 to *n* key column
| combinations for the indexes being rebuilt. *n* is the number of columns in the
| index. With the collection of inline statistics for indexes, this functionality is
| performed by default and cannot be disabled.

| The LOAD utility tolerates the specification of the KEYCARD option. The
| utility does not issue any messages if the control statement includes or
| excludes the KEYCARD option when STATISTICS and INDEX are specified.

FREQVAL

Controls the collection of frequent-value statistics. If you specify FREQVAL, it must be followed by two additional keywords:

NUMCOLS

Indicates the number of key columns that are to be concatenated together when collecting frequent values from the specified index. Specifying '3' means that frequent values are to be collected on the concatenation of the first three key columns. The **default** value is 1, which means that DB2 collects frequent values on the first key column of the index.

COUNT

Indicates the number of frequent values that are to be collected. Specifying '15' means that DB2 collects 15 frequent values from the specified key columns. The **default** value is 10.

REPORT

Indicates whether a set of messages is to be generated to report the collected statistics.

NO

Indicates that the set of messages is not sent to SYSPRINT as output.

YES

Indicates that the set of messages is sent to SYSPRINT as output. The generated messages are dependent on the combination of keywords (such as TABLESPACE, INDEX, TABLE, and COLUMN) that are specified with the RUNSTATS utility. However, these messages are not dependent on the specification of the UPDATE option. REPORT YES always generates a report of SPACE and ACCESSPATH statistics.

UPDATE

Indicates whether the collected statistics are to be inserted into the catalog tables. UPDATE also allows you to select statistics that are used for access path selection or statistics that are used by database administrators.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that updates are to be made only to the catalog table columns that provide statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that updates are to be made only to the catalog table columns that provide statistics to help database administrators assess the status of a particular table space or index.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog tables are to be updated with the collected statistics. This option is valid only when REPORT YES is specified.

HISTORY

Records all catalog table inserts or updates to the catalog history tables.

The default is supplied by the value that is specified in STATISTICS HISTORY on panel DSNTIPO.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog history tables.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that updates are to be made only to the catalog history table columns that provide statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that only space-related catalog statistics are to be updated in catalog history tables.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog history tables are to be updated with the collected statistics.

DELETE AGE (integer)

Deletes all statistics history rows that are related to the specified object and that are older than a specified number of days.

| **(integer)**

| Specifies the number of days in a range from 0 to 32767. This option
| cannot delete records that are created today (age 0).

| (*) Deletes all records, regardless of their age.

| **DELETE DATE (integer)**

| **(integer)**

| Specifies the date in an eight-character format. Specify a year (yyyy),
| month (mm), and day (dd) in the form yyymmdd.

| (*) Deletes all records, regardless of the date on which they were written.

| **FORCEROLLUP**

| Specifies whether aggregation or rollup of statistics is to take place when
| RUNSTATS is executed even if some parts are empty. This keyword enables
| the optimizer to select the best access path.

| **YES**

| Indicates that forced aggregation or rollup processing is to be done, even
| though some parts might not contain data.

| **NO**

| Indicates that aggregation or rollup is to be done only if data is available
| for all parts.

| If data is not available for all parts, DSNU623I message is issued if the
| installation value for STATISTICS ROLLUP on panel DSNTIPO is set to
| NO.

| **KEEPDICTIONARY**

| Prevents the LOAD utility from building a new compression dictionary. LOAD
| retains the current compression dictionary and uses it for compressing the
| input data. This option eliminates the cost that is associated with building a
| new dictionary.

| The KEEPDICTIONARY keyword is ignored for XML table spaces. If you
| specify REPLACE, any existing dictionary for the XML table space or partition
| is deleted. If you do not specify REPLACE, any existing dictionary for the
| XML table space or partition is saved.

| DB2 ignores the KEEPDICTIONARY option if the REORG utility changes the
| table space from basic row format to reordered row format.

| This keyword is valid only if the table space that is being loaded has the
| COMPRESS YES attribute.

| If the table space or partition is empty, DB2 performs one of these actions:

- DB2 builds a dictionary if a compression dictionary does not exist.
- DB2 keeps the dictionary if a compression dictionary exists.

| If RESUME NO and REPLACE are specified when the table space or partition
| is not empty, DB2 performs the same actions as it does when the table space or
| partition is empty.

| If the table space or partition is not empty and RESUME YES is specified, DB2
| performs one of these actions:

- DB2 does not build a dictionary if a compression dictionary does not exist.
- DB2 keeps the dictionary if a compression dictionary exists.

Note: You must use `KEEPDICTIONARY` to ensure that the compression dictionary is maintained.

REUSE

Specifies (when used with `REPLACE`) that `LOAD` is to logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them. If you do not specify `REUSE`, DB2 deletes and redefines DB2-managed data sets to reset them.

`REUSE` must be accompanied by `REPLACE` to do the logical reset for all data sets. However, if you specify `REUSE` for the table space and `REPLACE` only at the partition level, only the replaced partitions are logically reset.

If a data set has multiple extents, the extents are not released if you specify the `REUSE` parameter.

LOG

Indicates whether logging is to occur during the `RELOAD` phase of the load process.

YES

Specifies normal logging during the load process. All records that are loaded are logged. If the table space has the `NOT LOGGED` attribute, DB2 does the `LOAD` with no logging.

NO

Specifies no logging of data during the load process. If the table space has the `LOGGED` attribute, the `NO` option sets the `COPY-pending` restriction against the table space or partition that the loaded table resides in. No table or partition in the table space can be updated by SQL until the restriction is removed. For ways to remove the restriction, see “Resetting `COPY-pending` status” on page 311.

If you load a single partition of a partitioned table space and the table space has a secondary index, some logging might occur during the build phase as DB2 logs any changes to the index structure. This logging allows recoverability of the secondary index in case an abend occurs, and it also allows concurrency.

DB2 treats table spaces that were created as `NOT LOGGED` as if you specified `LOG NO`. If you specify `LOG NO` without specifying `COPYDDN`, the base table space is placed in `COPY-pending` status. If XML columns are nullable and not loaded, only the base table space is placed in `COPY-pending` status.

A LOB table space affects logging while DB2 loads a LOB column regardless of whether the LOB table space was defined with `LOG YES` or `LOG NO`.

NOCOPYPEND

Specifies that `LOAD` is not to set the table space in the `COPY-pending` status, even though `LOG NO` was specified. A `NOCOPYPEND` specification does not turn on or change any informational `COPY-pending` (`ICOPY`) status for indexes. A `NOCOPYPEND` specification will not turn off any `COPY-pending` status that was set prior to the `LOAD`. Normal completion of a `LOAD LOG NO NOCOPYPEND` job returns a 0 code if no other errors or warnings exist.

DB2 ignores a NOCOPYPEND specification if you also specified COPYDDN to make a local-site inline image copy during the LOAD. If the table space has the NOT LOGGED attribute, NOCOPYPEND is ignored.

Attention: Specify the NOCOPYPEND option only if the data in the table space can be easily re-created by another LOAD job if the data is lost. If you do not take an image copy following the LOAD, you cannot recover the table space by using the RECOVER utility, and you might lose data.

WORKDDN (*ddname1,ddname2*)

Specifies the DD statements for the temporary work file for sort input and sort output. Temporary work files for sort input and output are required if the LOAD involves tables with indexes.

ddname1 is the DD name for the temporary work file for sort input. The **default** value is SYSUT1.

ddname2 is the DD name for the temporary work file for sort output. The **default** value is SORTOUT.

The WORKDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name. For more information about TEMPLATE specifications, see Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699.

SORTKEYS

Specifies that index keys are to be sorted in parallel during the SORTBLD phase to improve performance.

integer

Specifies an *integer* to provide an estimate of the number of index keys that are to be sorted. Integer must be a positive integer between 0 and 562 949 953 421 311. The **default** value is 0 if any of the following conditions are true:

- The target table has no index and SHRLEVEL is NONE.
- The target table has one index.
- The input is on tape, a cursor, a PDS member, or for SYSREC DD *.

NO

Indicates that the SORTKEYS default is to be turned off.

For sequential data sets on disk, LOAD computes the default value for SORTKEYS based on the input data set size.

If the NUMRECS keyword is specified at the table level in the same LOAD statement, you cannot specify an integer value on the SORTKEYS keyword. To turn off parallel sorts, you can specify SORTKEYS NO when the NUMRECS keyword is specified. The NUMRECS keyword is specified at the table level to improve the estimation of work file data set sizes when loading data into multi-table table spaces with uneven distribution of rows between the tables.

For more information about sorting keys, see "Improved performance with SORTKEYS" on page 295 and "Building indexes in parallel for LOAD" on page 300.

FORMAT

Identifies the format of the input record. If you use **FORMAT UNLOAD** or **FORMAT SQL/DS**, it uniquely determines the format of the input, and no field specifications are allowed in an **INTO TABLE** option.

If you omit **FORMAT**, the format of the input data is determined by the rules for field specifications. If you specify **FORMAT DELIMITED**, the format of the input data is determined by the rules that are described in Appendix G, "Delimited file format," on page 1045.

UNLOAD

Specifies that the input record format is compatible with the DB2 unload format. (The DB2 unload format is the result of **REORG** with the **UNLOAD ONLY** option.)

Input records that were unloaded by the **REORG** utility are loaded into the tables from which they were unloaded, if an **INTO TABLE** option specifies each table. Do not add columns or change column definitions of tables between the time you run **REORG UNLOAD ONLY** and **LOAD FORMAT UNLOAD**.

Any **WHEN** clause on the **LOAD FORMAT UNLOAD** statement is ignored; DB2 reloads the records into the same tables from which they were unloaded. Not allowing a **WHEN** clause with the **FORMAT UNLOAD** clause ensures that the input records are loaded into the proper tables. Input records that cannot be loaded are discarded.

If the **DCB RECFM** parameter is specified on the **DD** statement for the input data set, and the data set format has not been modified since the **REORG UNLOAD (ONLY)** operation, the record format must be variable (**RECFM=V**).

SQL/DS

Specifies that the input record format is compatible with the **SQL/DS** unload format. The data type of a column in the table that is to be loaded must be the same as the data type of the corresponding column in the **SQL/DS** table.

If the **SQL/DS** input contains rows for more than one table, the **WHEN** clause of the **INTO TABLE** option indicates which input records are to be loaded into which DB2 table.

LOAD cannot load **SQL/DS** strings that are longer than the DB2 limit.

SQL/DS data that has been unloaded to disk under DB2 Server for VSE & VM resides in a simulated z/OS-type data set with a record format of **VBS**. Consider this format when transferring the data to another system that is to be loaded into a DB2 table (for example, the DB2 Server for VSE & VM. **FILEDEF** must define it as a z/OS-type data set). Processing the data set as a standard CMS file puts the **SQL/DS** record type field at the wrong offset within the records; **LOAD** is unable to recognize them as valid **SQL/DS** input.

DELIMITED

Specifies that the input data file is in a delimited format. When data is in a delimited format, all fields in the input data set are character strings or external numeric values. In addition, each column in a delimited file is separated from the next column by a column delimiter character.

For each of the delimiter types that you can specify, you must ensure that the delimiter character is specified in the code page of the source data. The

delimiter character can be specified as either a character or hexadecimal constant. For example, to specify '#' as the delimiter, you can specify either COLDEL '#' or COLDEL X'23'. If the utility statement is coded in a character type that is different from the input file, such as a utility statement that is coded in EBCDIC and input data that is in Unicode, you should specify the delimiter character in the utility statement as a hexadecimal constant, or the result can be unpredictable.

You cannot specify the same character for more than one type of delimiter (COLDEL, CHARDEL, and DECPT). For more information about delimiter restrictions, see "Loading delimited files" on page 283.

Unicode input data for FORMAT DELIMITED must be UTF-8, CCSID 1208.

If you specify the FORMAT DELIMITED option, you cannot use any of the following options:

- CONTINUEIF
- INCURSOR
- Multiple INTO TABLE statements
- WHEN

Also, LOAD ignores any specified POSITION statements within the LOAD utility control statement.

For more information about using delimited output and delimiter restrictions, see "Loading delimited files" on page 283. For more information about delimited files see Appendix G, "Delimited file format," on page 1045.

COLDEL *coldel*

Specifies the column delimiter that is used in the input file. The **default** value is a comma (,). For ASCII and UTF-8 data this is X'2C', and for EBCDIC data it is a X'6B'.

CHARDEL *chardel*

Specifies the character string delimiter that is used in the input file. The **default** value is a double quotation mark ("). For ASCII and UTF-8 data this is X'22', and for EBCDIC data it is X'3F'.

To delimit character strings that contain the character string delimiter, repeat the character string delimiter where it is used in the character string. LOAD interprets any pair of character delimiters that are found between the enclosing character delimiters as a single character. For example, the phrase "what a "nice warm" day" is interpreted as what a "nice warm" day. The LOAD utility recognizes these character delimiter pairs for only CHAR, VARCHAR, and CLOB fields.

Character string delimiters are required only when the string contains the CHARDEL character. However, you can put the character string delimiters around other character strings. Data that has been unloaded in delimited format by the UNLOAD utility includes character string delimiters around all character strings.

DECPT *decpt*

Specifies the decimal point character that is used in the input file. The **default** value is a period (.).

The default decimal point character is a period in a delimited file, X'2E' in an ASCII or Unicode UTF-8 file.

Note: If you use an application defaults load module (either DSNHDECP, which is the default, or a user-specified application defaults load module), ensure that the specified decimal value is the same as the decimal value that is used in the input data. You must specify the decimal value to match the decimal value that is used in the input data.

SPANNED

Indicates whether records are to be loaded from a VBS data set in spanned record format. For more information about spanned record format, see “Unloading data in spanned record format” on page 768.

YES

Indicates that the LOAD utility is to load data from spanned records.

The input data set must be in spanned record format and all LOB and XML data must be at the end of the record.

You must provide a field specification list with all LOB and XML fields at the end of the record. For LOB and XML columns, do not specify a particular position with the POSITION option or specify POSITION(*).

If you specify FORMAT SPANNED YES, do not specify the WHEN clause.

If you specify FORMAT SPANNED YES, the LOAD utility does not use parallel processing.

NO

Indicates that the LOAD utility is not to load data in spanned record format.

FLOAT

Specifies that LOAD is to expect the designated format for floating point numbers.

(S390)

Specifies that LOAD is to expect that floating point numbers are provided in System/390[®] hexadecimal floating point (HFP) format. **(S390)** is the format that DB2 stores floating point numbers in. It is also the **default** value if you do not explicitly specify the FLOAT keyword.

(IEEE)

Specifies that LOAD is to expect that floating point numbers are provided in IEEE binary floating point (BFP) format.

When you specify FLOAT(IEEE), DB2 converts the BFP data to HFP format as the data is being loaded into the DB2 table. If a conversion error occurs while DB2 is converting from BFP to HFP, DB2 places the record in the discard file.

FLOAT(IEEE) is mutually exclusive with any specification of the FORMAT keyword. If you specify both FLOAT(IEEE) and FORMAT, DB2 issues message DSNU070I.

BFP format is sometimes called IEEE floating point.

EBCDIC

Specifies that the input data file is EBCDIC.

ASCII

Specifies that the input data file is ASCII. Numeric, date, time, and timestamp internal formats are not affected by the ASCII option.

UNICODE

Specifies that the input data file is Unicode. The UNICODE option does not affect the numeric internal formats.

CCSID

Specifies up to three coded character set identifiers (CCSIDs) for the input file. The first value specifies the CCSID for SBCS data that is found in the input file, the second value specifies the CCSID for mixed DBCS data, and the third value specifies the CCSID for DBCS data. If any of these values is specified as 0 or omitted, the CCSID of the corresponding data type in the input file is assumed to be the same as the installation default CCSID. If the input data is EBCDIC, the omitted CCSIDs are assumed to be the EBCDIC CCSIDs that are specified at installation, and if the input data is ASCII, the omitted CCSIDs are assumed to be the ASCII CCSIDs that are specified at installation. If the CCSIDs of the input data file do not match the CCSIDs of the table that is being loaded, the input data is converted to the table CCSIDs before being loaded.

integer is any valid CCSID specification.

If the input data is Unicode, the default CCSID values are the Unicode CCSIDs that are specified at system installation.

NOSUBS

Specifies that LOAD is not to accept substitution characters in a string.

Place a substitution character in a string when that string is being converted from ASCII to EBCDIC, or when the string is being converted from one CCSID to another. For example, this substitution occurs when a character (sometimes referred to as a code point) that exists in the source CCSID (code page) does not exist in the target CCSID (code page).

When you specify the NOSUBS option and the LOAD utility determines that a substitution character has been placed in a string as a result of a conversion, it performs one of the following actions:

- **If discard processing is active:** DB2 issues message DSNU310I and places the record in the discard file.
- **If discard processing is not active:** DB2 issues message DSNU334I, and the utility abnormally terminates.

ENFORCE

Specifies whether LOAD is to enforce check constraints and referential constraints, except informational referential constraints, which are not enforced.

CONSTRAINTS

Indicates that constraints are to be enforced. If LOAD detects a violation, it deletes the errant row and issues a message to identify it. If you specify this option and referential constraints exist, sort input and sort output data sets must be defined.

NO

Indicates that constraints are not to be enforced. This option places the target table space in the CHECK-pending status if at least one referential constraint or check constraint is defined for the table.

ERRDDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a work data set that is being used during error processing. Information about errors that are encountered during processing is stored in this data set. A SYSERR data set is required if you request discard processing.

ddname is the DD name.

The default value is **SYSERR**.

The ERRDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name. For more information about TEMPLATE specifications, see Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699.

MAPDDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a work data set that is to be used during error processing. The work data set is used to correlate the identifier of a table row with the input record that caused an error. A SYSMAP data set is required if you specify ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS and the tables have a referential relationship, or if you request discard processing when loading one or more tables that contain unique indexes or extended indexes.

ddname is the DD name.

The default value is **SYSMAP**.

The MAPDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name. For more information about TEMPLATE specifications, see Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699.

DISCARDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a discard data set that is to hold copies of records that are not loaded (for example, if they contain conversion errors). The discard data set also holds copies of records that are loaded and then removed (because of unique index errors, referential or check constraint violations, or index evaluation errors). Flag input records for discarding during RELOAD, INDEXVAL, and ENFORCE phases. However, the discard data set is not written until the DISCARD phase when the flagged records are copied from the input data set to the discard data set. The discard data set must be a sequential data set that can be written to by BSAM, with the same record format, record length, and block size as the input data set.

ddname is the DD name.

The default value is **SYSDISC**.

If you omit the DISCARDN option, the utility application program saves discarded records only if a SYSDISC DD statement is in the JCL input.

The DISCARDN keyword is not supported if you use a BatchPipes® file as an input to LOAD, using INDDN name for TEMPLATE SUBSYS.

The DISCARDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

DISCARDS *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of source records that are to be written on the discard data set. *integer* can range from 0 to 2147483647. If the discard maximum is reached, LOAD abnormally terminates, the discard data set is

empty, and you cannot see which records were discarded. You can either restart the job with a larger limit, or terminate the utility.

DISCARDS 0 specifies that you do not want to set a maximum value. The entire input data set can be discarded.

The default value is 0.

SORTDEVT *device-type*

Specifies the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the external sort program. You can specify any disk device type that is acceptable to the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTION options for the sort program.

If you omit SORTDEVT and a sort is required, you must provide the DD statements that the sort application program needs for the temporary data sets.

A TEMPLATE specification does not dynamically allocate sort work data sets. The SORTDEVT keyword controls dynamic allocation of these data sets.

SORTNUM *integer*

Specifies the number of temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort application program.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

If you omit SORTDEVT, SORTNUM is ignored. If you use SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program. In this case, the sort program uses its own default.

You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort. The SORTNUM value applies to each sort invocation in the utility. For example, if three indexes, SORTKEYS is specified, there are no constraints that limit parallelism, and SORTNUM is specified as 8, a total of 24 sort work data sets are allocated for a job.

Each sort work data set consumes both above-the-line and below-the-line virtual storage, so if you specify a value for SORTNUM that is too high, the utility might decrease the degree of parallelism due to virtual storage constraints, and possibly decreasing the degree down to one, meaning no parallelism.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

CONTINUEIF

Indicates that you want to be able to treat each input record as a portion of a larger record. After CONTINUEIF, write a condition in one of the following forms:

(start:end) = X'*byte-string*'
(start:end) = '*character-string*'

If the condition is true in any record, the next record is concatenated with it before loading takes place. You can concatenate any number of records into a larger record, up to a maximum size of 32767 bytes.

Character-string constants should be specified in LOAD utility control statements in the character set that matches the input data record. Specify EBCDIC constants in the LOAD control statement if your data is in EBCDIC and specify UNICODE constants if your data is in UNICODE. You may also code the CONTINUEIF condition using the hexadecimal form. For example, use (1:1)=X'31' rather than (1:1)='1'.

(start:end)

Specifies column numbers in the input record; the first column of the record is column 1. The two numbers tell the starting and ending columns of a continuation field in the input record.

Other field position specifications (such as those for WHEN, POSITION, or NULLIF) refer to the field position within the final assembled load record, not within the input record.

The continuation field is removed from the input record and is not part of the final load record.

If you omit *:end*, DB2 assumes that the length of the continuation field is the length of the byte string or character string. If you use *:end*, and the length of the resulting continuation field is not the same as the length of the byte string or character string, the shorter string is padded. Character strings are padded with blanks. Hexadecimal strings are padded with zeros.

X'byte-string'

Specifies a string of hexadecimal characters. This byte-string value in the continuation field indicates that the next input record is a continuation of the current load record. Records with this byte-string value are concatenated until the value in the continuation field changes. For example, the following CONTINUEIF specification indicates that for any input records that have a value of X'FF' in column 72, LOAD is to concatenate that record with the next input record.

```
CONTINUEIF (72) = X'FF'
```

'character-string'

Specifies a string of characters that has the same effect as *X'byte-string'*. For example, the following CONTINUEIF specification indicates that for any input records that have the string CC in columns 99 and 100, LOAD is to concatenate that record with the next input record.

```
CONTINUEIF (99:100) = 'CC'
```

DECFLOAT_ROUNDMODE

Specifies the rounding mode to use when DECFLOATs are manipulated. The following rounding modes are supported:

ROUND_CEILING

Round toward +infinity. The discarded digits are removed if they are all zero or if the sign is negative. Otherwise, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

ROUND_DOWN

Round toward 0 (truncation). The discarded digits are ignored.

ROUND_FLOOR

Round toward -infinity. The discarded digits are removed if they are all zero or positive. Otherwise, the sign is negative and the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

ROUND_HALF_DOWN

Round to the nearest number. If equidistant, round down. If the discarded digits are greater than 0.5, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up). The discarded digits are ignored if they are 0.5 or less.

ROUND_HALF_EVEN

Round to the nearest number. If equidistant, round so that the final digit is even. If the discarded digits are greater than .05, the result coefficient

should be incremented by 1 (rounded up). The discarded digits are ignored if they are less than 0.5. If the result coefficient is .05 and the rightmost digit is even, the result coefficient is not altered. If the result coefficient is .05 and the rightmost digit is odd, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

ROUND_HALF_UP

Round to nearest. If equidistant, round up. If the discarded digits are greater than or equal to 0.5, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up). Otherwise the discarded digits are ignored.

ROUND_UP

Round away from 0. If all of the discarded digits are 0, the result is unchanged. Otherwise, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

If you do not specify DECFLOAT_ROUNDMODE, the LOAD statement uses the DFPDEFDM value in the application defaults load module as the default value. The application defaults load module is either DSNHDECP, which is the default, or a user-specified application defaults load module.

IDENTITYOVERRIDE

Allows unloaded data to be reloaded into a GENERATED ALWAYS identity column of the same table using LOAD REPLACE or LOAD RESUME. When this option is used and input field specifications are coded, the identity column must be specified and NULLIF or DEFAULTIF is not allowed.

Specifying this option allows LOAD INTO TABLE PART when an identity column that is defined as GENERATED ALWAYS or GENERATED BY DEFAULT is part of the partitioning index.

IMPLICIT_TZ

Specifies the implicit time zone to use when the timestamp value that is being loaded does not contain a time zone, and the data type of the target column is TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE.

'timezone-string'

Specifies the implicit time zone value. The time zone is the difference (in hours and minutes) between local time and UTC. The range of the hour component is -12 to 14, and the minute component is 00 to 59. The time zone is specified in the form \pm h:tm, with values ranging from -12:59 to +14:00.

INTO-TABLE-spec

The INTO-TABLE-spec control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs. More than one table or partition for each table space can be loaded with a single invocation of the LOAD utility. At least one INTO TABLE statement is required for each table that is to be loaded. Each INTO TABLE statement:

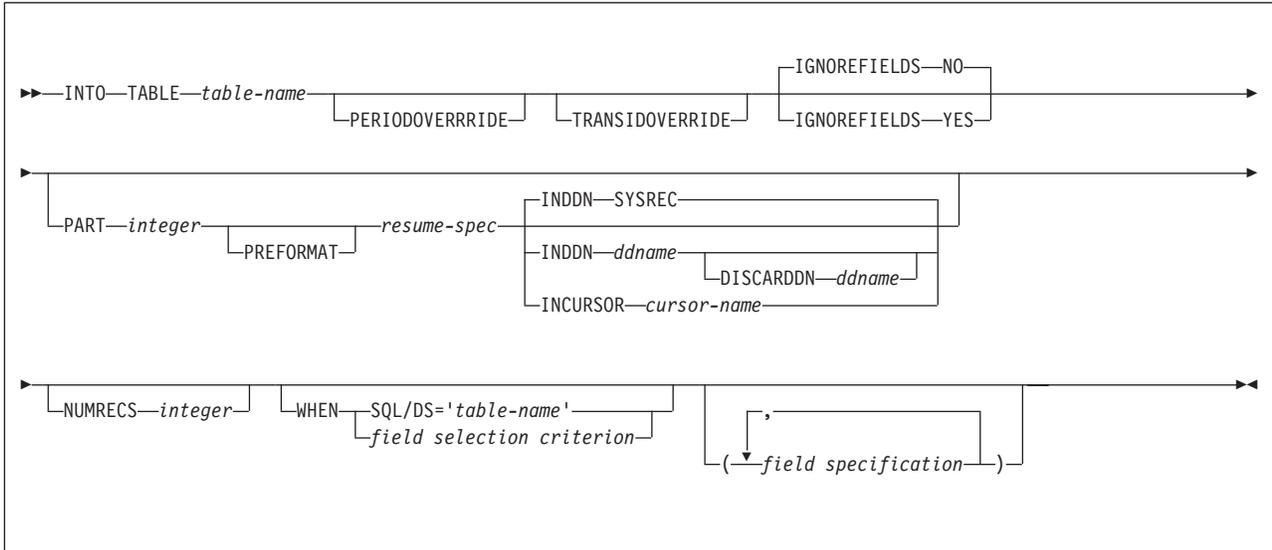
- Identifies the table that is to be loaded
- Describes fields within the input record
- Defines the format of the input data set

All tables that are specified by INTO TABLE statements must belong to the same table space.

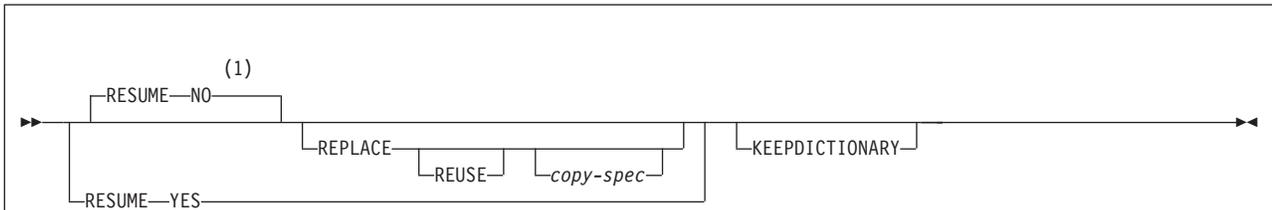
If the data is already in UNLOAD or SQL/DS format, and FORMAT UNLOAD or FORMAT SQL/DS is used on the LOAD statement, no field specifications are allowed.

When loading XML or LOB columns from a VBS data set, the LOB and XML values need to be at the end of the record as specified by a field specification list.

INTO-TABLE-spec:



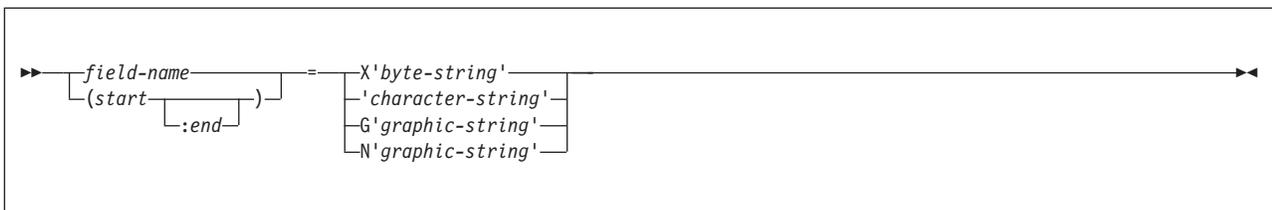
resume-spec:



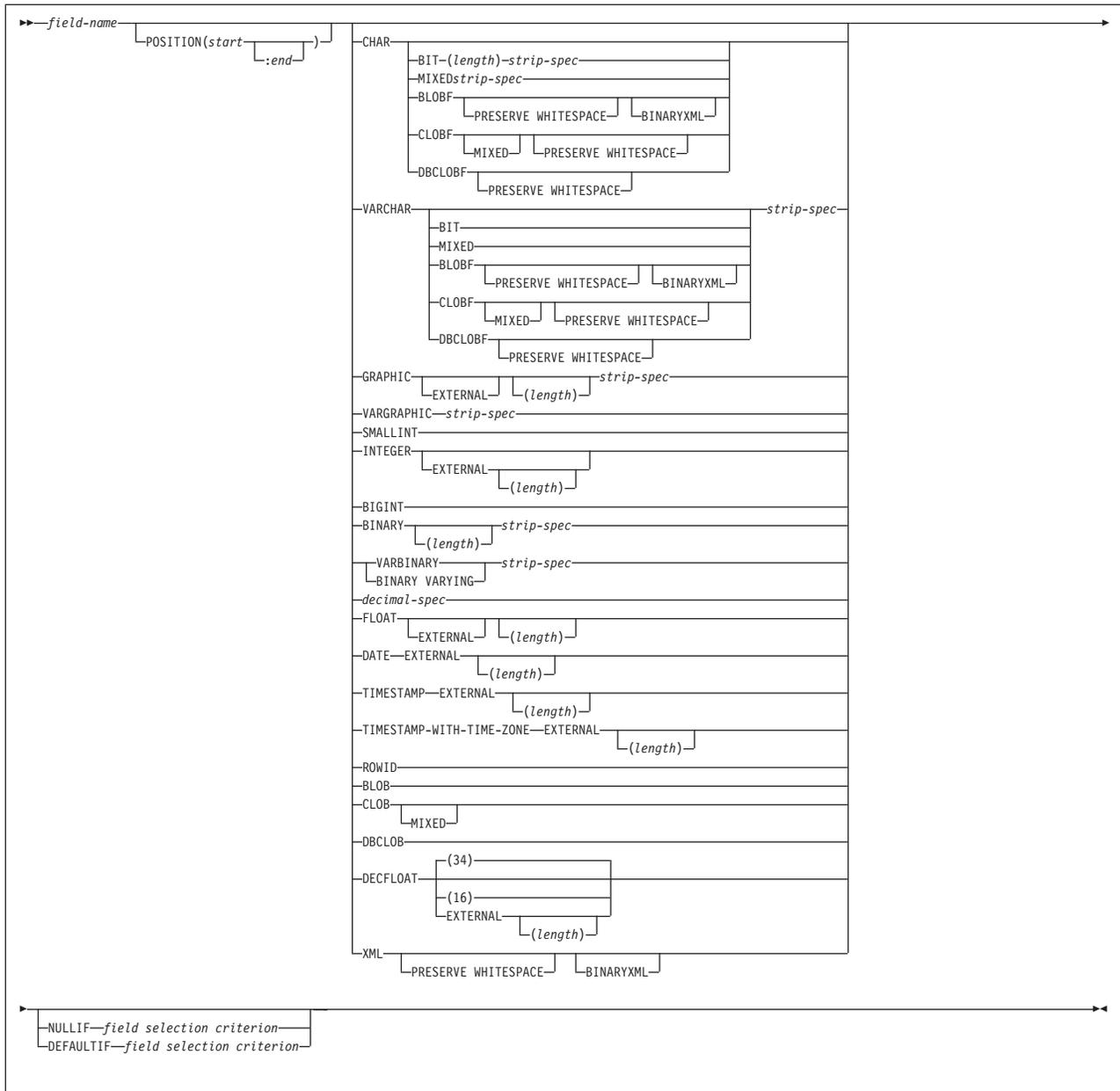
Notes:

- 1 The value specified in the INTO TABLE for RESUME or REPLACE overrides the default value for LOAD RESUME.

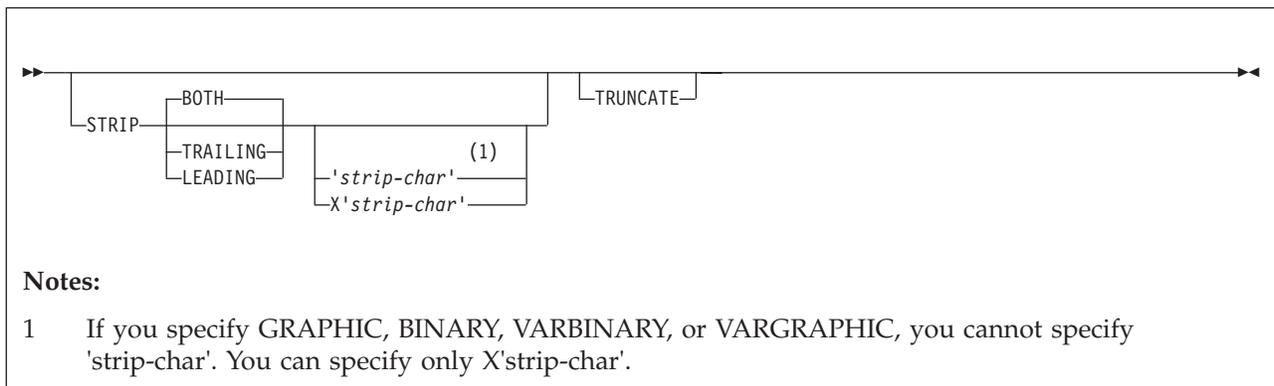
field selection criterion:



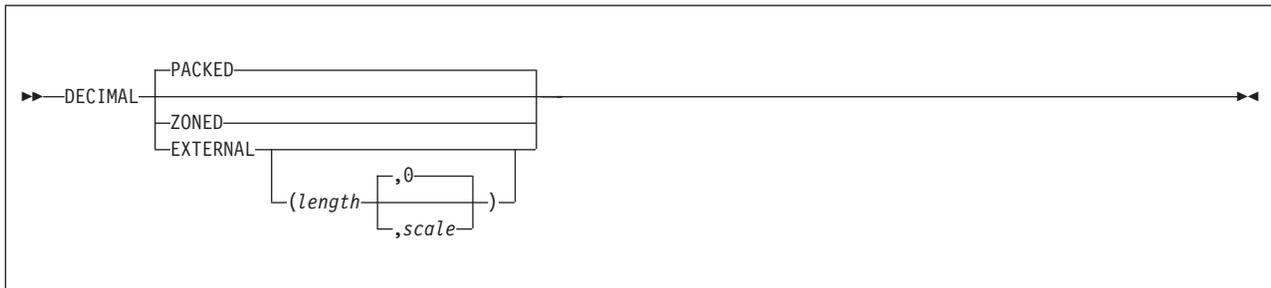
field specification:



strip spec:



decimal spec:



Option descriptions for INTO TABLE

table-name

Specifies the name of the table that is to be loaded. The table must be described in the catalog and must not be a catalog table, a system-maintained materialized query table, or an accelerated query table.

If the table name is not qualified by a schema name, the authorization ID of the invoker of the utility job step is used as the schema qualifier of the table name. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

Data from every LOAD record in the data set is loaded into the specified table unless:

- A WHEN clause is used, and the data does not match the field selection criterion.
- The FORMAT UNLOAD option is used on the LOAD statement, and the data comes from a table that is not specified in an INTO TABLE statement.
- A certain partition is specified, and the data does not belong to that partition.
- Data conversion errors occur.
- Any errors occur that are not generated by data conversion.

PERIODOVERRIDE

Allows unloaded data to be reloaded into a GENERATED ALWAYS column participating in the PERIOD constraint of the SYSTEM/BUSINESS period. When this option is used and input field specifications are coded, both set of columns participating in the PERIOD relationship must be specified, and NULLIF or DEFAULTIF is not allowed.

TRANSIDVERRIDE

Allows unloaded data to be reloaded into a GENERATED ALWAYS column participating in the TRANSACTION START ID column.

IGNOREFIELDS

Indicates whether LOAD is to skip fields in the input data set that do not correspond to columns in the target table. Examples of fields that do not correspond to table columns are DSN_NULL_IND_#####, DSN_ROWID, DSN_IDENTITY, and DSN_RCTIMESTAMP fields that are generated by the REORG utility.

NO

Specifies that the LOAD process is not to skip any fields.

YES

Specifies that LOAD is to skip fields in the input data set that do not correspond to columns in the target table.

Specifying YES can be useful if each input record contains a variable-length field, followed by some variable-length data that you do not want to load and then some data that you want to load. Because of the variable-length field, you cannot use the POSITION keyword to skip over the variable-length data that you do not want to load. By specifying IGNOREFIELDS, you can give a field specification for the variable-length data that you do not want to load; and by giving it a name that is not one of the table column names, LOAD skips the field without loading it.

Use this option with care, because it also causes fields to be skipped if you intend to load a column but have misspelled the name.

NUMRECS

Indicates the number of input records for the specified table or table partition.

integer

A positive integer that is used as an estimate of the number of complete input records that are to be loaded into the specified table. The specified number refers to fully assembled input records when CONTINUEIF is used.

Use the NUMRECS keyword for multi-table table spaces to indicate the number of input records that will be loaded into each of the tables or table partitions.

Specifying the number of records improves the sizing of the sort work data sets that the utility requires when indexes are built in parallel. If the LOAD utility underestimates the size of the sort work data sets, the execution of the LOAD utility could fail.

For single-table table spaces you can also use the NUMRECS keyword when the input data set is located on tape or if only a fraction of the input records will be loaded.

If an integer value is specified on the SORTKEYS keyword at the table-space level, the NUMRECS keyword cannot be specified in the same LOAD statement.

If multiple tables or partitions are loaded in the same LOAD statement, the NUMRECS keyword must be specified either for all of the tables or partitions or for none of the tables or partitions.

PART *integer*

Specifies that data is to be loaded into a partition of a partitioned table space. This option is valid only for partitioned table spaces, not including partition-by-growth table spaces.

integer is the number of the partition into which records are to be loaded. The same partition number cannot be specified more than once if partition parallelism has been requested. Any data that is outside the range of the specified partition is not loaded. The maximum is 4096.

LOAD INTO PART *integer* is not allowed if:

- An identity column is part of the partitioning index, unless IDENTITYOVERRIDE is specified for the identity column GENERATED ALWAYS
- A row ID is part of the partitioning index
- The table space is partition-by-growth

PREFORMAT

Specifies that the remaining pages are to be preformatted up to the

high-allocated RBA in the partition and its corresponding partitioning index space. The preformatting occurs after the data is loaded and the indexes are built.

RESUME

Specifies whether records are to be loaded into an empty or non-empty partition. For nonsegmented table spaces, space is not reused for rows that have been marked as deleted or by rows of dropped tables is not reused. If the RESUME option is specified at the table space level, the RESUME option is not allowed in the PART clause.

If you want the RESUME option to apply to the entire table space, use the LOAD RESUME option. If you want the RESUME option to apply to a particular partition, specify it by using PART *integer* RESUME.

NO

Loads records into an empty partition. If the partition is not empty, and you have not used REPLACE, a message is issued, and the utility job step terminates with a job step condition code of 8.

For nonsegmented table spaces that contains deleted rows or rows of dropped tables, using the REPLACE keyword provides increased efficiency.

YES

Loads records into a non-empty partition. If the partition is empty, a warning message is issued, but the partition is loaded.

REPLACE

Indicates that you want to replace only the contents of the partition that is cited by the PART option, rather than the entire table space.

You cannot use LOAD REPLACE with the PART *integer* REPLACE option of INTO TABLE. If you specify the REPLACE option, you must either replace an entire table space, using LOAD REPLACE, or a single partition, using the PART *integer* REPLACE option of INTO TABLE. You can, however, use PART *integer* REPLACE with LOAD RESUME YES.

REUSE

Specifies, when used with the REPLACE option, that LOAD should logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them. If you do not specify REUSE, DB2 deletes and redefines DB2-managed data sets to reset them.

If you specify REUSE with REPLACE on the PART specification (and not for LOAD at the table space level), only the specified partitions are logically reset. If you specify REUSE for the table space and REPLACE for the partition, data sets for the replaced parts are logically reset.

KEEPDICTIONARY

Specifies that the LOAD utility is not to build a new dictionary. LOAD retains the current dictionary and uses it for compressing the input data. This option eliminates the cost that is associated with building a new dictionary.

This keyword is valid only if a dictionary exists and the partition that is being loaded has the COMPRESS YES attribute.

If the partition has the COMPRESS YES attribute, but no dictionary exists, one is built and an error message is issued.

INDDN *ddname*

Specifies the data definition (DD) statement or template that identifies the

input data set for the partition. The record format for the input data set must be fixed or variable. The data set must be readable by the basic sequential access method (BSAM).

The *ddname* is the name of the input data set.

The default value is **SYSREC**. INDDN can be a template name.

When loading LOB data using file reference variables, this input data set should include the names of the files that contain the LOB column values. Each file can be either a sequential file, PDS member, PDSE member, or separate HFS file.

If you specify INDDN, with or without DISCARDN, in one INTO TABLE PART specification and you supply more than one INTO TABLE PART clause, you must specify INDDN in all INTO TABLE PART specifications.

Specifying INDDN at the partition level and supplying multiple PART clauses, each with their own INDDN, enables load partition parallelism, which can significantly improve performance. Loading all partitions in a single job with load partition parallelism is recommended instead of concurrent separate jobs whenever one or more nonpartitioned secondary indexes are on the table space.

The field specifications apply separately to each input file. Therefore, if multiple INTO TABLE PART INDDN clauses are used, field specifications are required on each one.

DISCARDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a discard data set for the partition. The discard data set holds copies of records that are not loaded (for example, if they contain conversion errors). The discard data set also holds copies of records that were loaded and then removed (due to unique index errors, or referential or check constraint violations).

Flag input records for discarding during the RELOAD, INDEXVAL, and ENFORCE phases. However, the utility does not write the discard data set until the DISCARD phase when the utility copies the flagged records from the input data set to the discard data set.

The discard data set must be a sequential data set, and it must be write-accessible by BSAM, with the same record format, record length, and block size as the input data set.

The *ddname* is the name of the discard data set. DISCARDN can be a template name.

If you omit the DISCARDN option, LOAD does not save discarded records.

INCURSOR *cursor-name*

Specifies the cursor for the input data set. You must declare the cursor before it is used by the LOAD utility. Use the EXEC SQL utility control statement to define the cursor. You cannot load data into the same table on which you defined the cursor.

The specified cursor can be used as part of the DB2 family cross loader function, which enables you to load data from any DRDA-compliant remote server. For more information about using the cross loader function, see "Loading data by using the cross-loader function" on page 290.

cursor-name is the cursor name. Cursor names that are specified with the LOAD utility cannot be longer than eight characters.

You cannot use the INCURSOR option with the following options:

- SHRLEVEL CHANGE
- NOSUBS
- FORMAT UNLOAD
- FORMAT SQL/DS
- CONTINUEIF
- WHEN.

In addition, you cannot specify field specifications with the INCURSOR option.

WHEN

Indicates which records in the input data set are to be loaded. If no WHEN clause is specified (and if FORMAT UNLOAD was not used in the LOAD statement), **all** records in the input data set are loaded into the specified tables or partitions. (Data that is beyond the range of the specified partition is not loaded.)

The option following WHEN describes a condition; input records that satisfy the condition are loaded. Input records that do not satisfy any WHEN clause of any INTO TABLE statement are written to the discard data set, if one is being used.

Character-string constants should be specified in LOAD utility control statements in the character set that matches the input data record. Specify EBCDIC constants in the LOAD control statement if your data is in EBCDIC and specify UNICODE constants if your data is in UNICODE. You may also code the WHEN condition using the hexadecimal form. For example, use (1:1)=X'31' rather than (1:1)='1'.

SQL/DS='table-name'

Is valid only when the FORMAT SQL/DS option is used on the LOAD statement.

table-name is the name of a table that has been unloaded into the unload data set. The table name after INTO TABLE tells which DB2 table the SQL/DS table is loaded into. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

If no WHEN clause is specified, input records from every SQL/DS table are loaded into the table that is specified after INTO TABLE.

field-selection-criterion

Describes a field and a character constant. Only those records in which the field contains the specified constant are to be loaded into the table that is specified after INTO TABLE.

A field in a selection criterion must:

- Contain a character or graphic string. No data type conversions are performed when the contents of the field in the input record are compared to a string constant.
- Start at the same byte offset in each assembled input record. If any record contains varying-length strings, which are stored with length fields, that **precede** the selection field, they must be padded so that the start of the selection field is always at the same offset.

The field and the constant do not need to be the same length. If they are not, the shorter of the two is padded before a comparison is made. Character and graphic strings are padded with blanks. Hexadecimal strings are padded with zeros.

field-name

Specifies the name of a field that is defined by a *field-specification*. If *field-name* is used, the start and end positions of the field are given by the POSITION option of the field specification.

(start:end)

Identifies column numbers in the assembled load record; the first column of the record is column 1. The two numbers indicate the starting and ending columns of a selection field in the load record.

If *end* is not used, the field is assumed to have the same length as the constant.

X'byte-string'

Identifies the constant as a string of hexadecimal characters. For example, the following WHEN clause specifies that a record is to be loaded if it has the value X'FFFF' in columns 33 through 34.

```
WHEN (33:34) = X'FFFF'
```

'character-string'

Identifies the constant as a string of characters. For example, the following WHEN clause specifies that a record is to be loaded if the field DEPTNO has the value D11.

```
WHEN DEPTNO = 'D11'
```

G'graphic-string'

Identifies the constant as a string of double-byte characters. For example, the following WHEN clause specifies that a record is to be loaded if it has the specified value in columns 33 through 36.

```
WHEN (33:36) = G'<*>'
```

In this example, < is the shift-out character,* is a double-byte character, and > is the shift-in character.

If the first or last byte of the input data is a shift-out character, it is ignored in the comparison. Specify G as an uppercase character.

N'graphic-string'

Identifies the constant as a string of double-byte characters. N and G are synonymous for specifying graphic string constants. Specify N as an uppercase character.

(field-specification, ...)

Describes the location, format, and null value identifier of the data that is to be loaded.

If no field specifications are used:

- The fields in the input records are assumed to be in the same order as in the DB2 table.
- The formats are set by the FORMAT option on the LOAD statement, if that option is used.
- Fixed strings in the input are assumed to be of fixed maximum length. VARCHAR and VARGRAPHIC fields must contain a valid 2-byte binary length field preceding the data; no intervening gaps are allowed between the VARCHAR or VARGRAPHIC fields and the field that follows.
- BINARY fields are assumed to be of fixed maximum length.
- VARBINARY fields must contain a valid 2-byte binary length field preceding the data.

- ROWID fields are varying length, and must contain a valid 2-byte binary length field preceding the data; no intervening gaps are allowed between ROWID fields and the fields that follow.
- LOB fields are varying length, and require a valid 4-byte binary length field preceding the data; no intervening gaps are allowed between them and the LOB fields that follow.
- Numeric data is assumed to be in the appropriate internal DB2 number representation.
- The NULLIF or DEFAULTIF options cannot be used.

If any field specification is used for an input table, a field specification must exist for each field of the table that does not have a default value. Any field in the table with no corresponding field specification is loaded with its default value.

If any column in the output table does not have a field specification and is defined as NOT NULL, with no default, the utility job step is terminated.

Identity columns or row change timestamp columns can appear in the field specification only if you defined them with the GENERATED BY DEFAULT attribute.

field-name

Specifies the name of a field, which can be a name of your choice. If the field is to be loaded, the name must be the name of a column in the table that is named after INTO TABLE unless IGNOREFIELDS is specified. You can use the field name as a vehicle to specify the range of incoming data. See Example 4: Loading data of different data types for an example of loading selected records into an empty table space.

The starting location of the field is given by the POSITION option. If POSITION is not used, the starting location is one column after the end of the previous field.

LOAD determines the length of the field in one of the following ways, in the order listed:

1. If the field has data type VARCHAR, VARGRAPHIC, VARBINARY, ROWID, or XML the length is assumed to be contained in a 2-byte binary field that precedes the data. For VARCHAR, VARBINARY, and XML fields, the length is in bytes; for VARGRAPHIC fields, the length field identifies the number of double-byte characters.
If the field has data type CLOB, BLOB, or DBCLOB, the length is assumed to be contained in a 4-byte binary field that precedes the data. For BLOB and CLOB fields, the length is in bytes; for DBCLOB fields, the length field identifies the number of double-byte characters.
2. If *:end* is used in the POSITION option, the length is calculated from *start* and *end*. In that case, any length attribute after the CHAR, GRAPHIC, INTEGER, DECIMAL, FLOAT, or DECFLOAT specifications is ignored.
3. The length attribute on the CHAR, GRAPHIC, INTEGER, DECIMAL, FLOAT, or DECFLOAT specifications is used as the length.
4. The length is taken from the DB2 field description in the table definition, or it is assigned a default value according to the data type. For DATE and TIME fields, the length is defined during installation. For variable-length fields, the length is defined from the column in the DB2 table definition, excluding the null indicator byte, if it is present. The following table shows the default length, in bytes, for each data type.

Table 30. Default length of each data type (in bytes)

Data type	Default length in bytes
BIGINT	8
BINARY	Length that is used in column definition
BLOB	Varying
CHARACTER	Length that is used in column definition
CLOB	Varying
DATE	10 (or installation default)
DBCLOB	Varying
DECFLOAT(16)	8
DECFLOAT(34)	16
DECIMAL EXTERNAL	Decimal precision for output columns that are decimal, otherwise the length that is used in column definition
DECIMAL PACKED	Length that is used in column definition
DECIMAL ZONED	Decimal precision for output columns that are decimal, otherwise the length that is used in column definition
FLOAT (single precision)	4
FLOAT (double precision)	8
GRAPHIC	2 multiplied by (length that is used in column definition)
INTEGER	4
MIXED	Mixed DBCS data
ROWID	Varying
SMALLINT	2
TIME	8 (or installation default)
TIMESTAMP	26
VARBINARY	Varying
VARCHAR	Varying
VARGRAPHIC	Varying
XML	Varying
TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	33

If a data type is not given for a field, its data type is assumed to be the same as that of the column into which it is loaded, as given in the DB2 table definition.

POSITION(*start:end*)

Indicates where a field is in the assembled load record.

start and *end* are the locations of the first and last columns of the field; the first column of the record is column 1. The option can be omitted.

Column locations can be specified as:

- An integer *n*, meaning an actual column number
- *, meaning one column after the end of the previous field

- $*+n$, where n is an integer, meaning n columns after the location that is specified by $*$

Do not enclose the entire POSITION option specification in parentheses; enclose only the *start:end* description in parentheses. Valid and invalid specifications are shown in the following table.

Table 31. Example of valid and invalid POSITION specifications

Valid	Invalid
POSITION (10:20)	(POSITION (10:20))

Data types in a field specification: The data type of the field can be specified by any of the keywords that follow. Except for graphic fields, *length* is the length in bytes of the input field.

All numbers that are designated EXTERNAL are in the same format in the input records.

CHAR(*length*)

Specifies a fixed-length character string. If you do not specify *length*, the length of the string is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify *length* or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for CHAR, which is determined from the length of the column in the table. You can also specify CHARACTER and CHARACTER(*length*).

When you specify CHAR as the type for the file name for CLOBF, BLOBF, or DBCLOBF, you must also provide the length so that the LOAD utility can determine the correct file name. Otherwise message DSNU338I will be issued for an invalid column specification.

BIT

Specifies that the input field contains BIT data. If BIT is specified, LOAD bypasses any CCSID conversions for the input data. If the target column has the BIT data type attribute, LOAD bypasses any code page translation for the input data.

MIXED

Specifies that the input field contains mixed SBCS and DBCS data. If MIXED is specified, any required CCSID conversions use the mixed CCSID for the input data. If MIXED is not specified, any such conversions use the SBCS CCSID for the input data.

BLOBF

Indicates that the input field contains the name of a BLOB file which is going to be loaded to a specified BLOB/XML column.

BINARYXML Specifies that the XML document to be loaded using file reference variables is in Extensible Dynamic Binary XML DB2 Client/Server Binary XML Format (binary XML) format.

CLOBF

Indicates that the input field contains the name of a CLOB file which is going to be loaded to a specified CLOB/XML column.

DBCLOBF

Indicates that the input field contains the name of a DBCLOBF file which is going to be loaded to a specified DBCLOB/XML column.

PRESERVE WHITESPACE

Specifies that the white space in the XML column is preserved. The default is not to preserve the white space.

STRIP

Specifies that LOAD is to remove zeros (the default) or the specified characters from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data. LOAD pads the CHAR field, so that it fills the rest of the column.

LOAD applies the strip operation before performing any character code conversion or padding.

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data.

TRAILING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

'strip-char'

Specifies a single-byte or double-byte character that LOAD is to strip from the data.

Specify this character value in EBCDIC. Depending on the input encoding scheme, LOAD applies SBCS CCSID conversion to the *strip-char* value before it is used in the strip operation.

If the subtype of the column to be loaded is BIT or you want to specify a *strip-char* value in an encoding scheme other than EBCDIC, use the hexadecimal form (*X'strip-char'*). LOAD does not perform any CCSID conversion if the hexadecimal form is used.

X'strip-char'

Specifies in hexadecimal form a single-byte or double-byte character that LOAD is to strip from the data. For single-byte characters, specify this value in the form *X'hh'*, where *hh* is two hexadecimal characters. For double-byte characters, specify this value in the form *X'hhhh'*, where *hhhh* is four hexadecimal characters.

Use the hexadecimal form to specify a character in an encoding scheme other than EBCDIC. When you specify the character value in hexadecimal form, LOAD does not perform any CCSID conversion.

If you specify a strip character in the hexadecimal format, you must specify the character in the input encoding scheme.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that LOAD is to truncate the input character string from the right if the string does not fit in the target column. LOAD performs the truncation operation after any CCSID translation.

If the input data is BIT data, LOAD truncates the data at a byte boundary. If the input data is SBCS or MIXED data, LOAD truncates the data at a character boundary. (Double-byte characters are not split.) If a MIXED field is truncated to fit a column, the truncated string can be shorter than the

specified column size. In this case, blanks in the output CCSID are padded to the right. If MIXED data is in EBCDIC, truncation preserves the SO (shift-out) and SI (shift-in) characters around a DBCS string.

VARCHAR

Specifies a character field of varying length. The length in bytes must be specified in a 2-byte binary field preceding the data. (The length does not include the 2-byte field itself.) The length field must start in the column that is specified as *start* in the POSITION option. If *end* is used, it is ignored.

BIT

Specifies that the input field contains BIT data. If BIT is specified, LOAD bypasses any CCSID conversions for the input data. If the target column has the BIT data type attribute, LOAD bypasses any code page translation for the input data.

MIXED

Specifies that the input field contains mixed DBCS data. If MIXED is specified, any required CCSID conversions use the mixed CCSID for the input data. If MIXED is not specified, any such conversions use the SBCS CCSID for the input data.

BLOBF

Indicates that the input field contains the name of a BLOB file which is going to be loaded to a specified BLOB/XML column.

BINARYXML Specifies that the XML document to be loaded using file reference variables is in binary XML format.

CLOBF

Indicates that the input field contains the name of a CLOB file which is going to be loaded to a specified CLOB/XML column.

DBCLOBF

Indicates that the input field contains the name of a DBCLOBF file which is going to be loaded to a specified DBCLOB/XML column.

PRESERVE WHITESPACE

Specifies that the white space in the XML column is preserved. The default is not to preserve the white space.

STRIP

Specifies that LOAD is to remove zeros (the default) or the specified characters from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data. LOAD adjusts the VARCHAR length field to the length of the stripped data.

LOAD applies the strip operation before performing any character code conversion or padding.

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data.

TRAILING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

'strip-char'

Specifies a single-byte or double-byte character that LOAD is to strip from the data.

Specify this character value in EBCDIC. Depending on the input encoding scheme, LOAD applies SBCS CCSID conversion to the *strip-char* value before it is used in the strip operation.

If the subtype of the column to be loaded is BIT or you want to specify a *strip-char* value in an encoding scheme other than EBCDIC, use the hexadecimal form (*X'strip-char'*). LOAD does not perform any CCSID conversion if the hexadecimal form is used.

X'strip-char'

Specifies in hexadecimal form a single-byte or double-byte character that LOAD is to strip from the data. For single-byte characters, specify this value in the form *X'hh'*, where *hh* is two hexadecimal characters. For double-byte characters, specify this value in the form *X'hhhh'*, where *hhhh* is four hexadecimal characters.

Use the hexadecimal form to specify a character in an encoding scheme other than EBCDIC. When you specify the character value in hexadecimal form, LOAD does not perform any CCSID conversion.

If you specify a strip character in the hexadecimal format, you must specify the character in the input encoding scheme.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that LOAD is to truncate the input character string from the right if the string does not fit in the target column. LOAD performs the truncation operation after any CCSID translation.

If the input data is BIT data, LOAD truncates the data at a byte boundary. If the input data is character type data, LOAD truncates the data at a character boundary. If a mixed-character type data is truncated to fit a column of fixed size, the truncated string can be shorter than the specified column size. In this case, blanks in the output CCSID are padded to the right.

GRAPHIC(*length*)

Specifies a fixed-length graphic type. You can specify both *start* and *end* for the field specification.

If you use GRAPHIC, the input data must not contain shift characters. *start* and *end* must indicate the starting and ending positions of the data itself.

length is the number of double-byte characters. The length of the field in bytes is twice the value of *length*. If you do not specify *length*, the number of double-byte characters is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify *length* or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for GRAPHIC, which is determined from the length of the column in the table.

For example, let *** represent three double-byte characters. Then, to describe ***, specify either POS(1:6) GRAPHIC or POS(1) GRAPHIC(3). A GRAPHIC field that is described in this way cannot be specified in a field selection criterion.

STRIP

Specifies that LOAD is to remove zeros (the default) or the specified characters from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data.

LOAD applies the strip operation before performing any character code conversion or padding.

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data.

TRAILING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

X'strip-char'

Specifies the hexadecimal form of the double-byte character that LOAD is to strip from the data. Specify this value in the form X'hhhh', where *hhhh* is four hexadecimal characters.

You must specify the character in the input encoding scheme.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that LOAD is to truncate the input character string from the right if the string does not fit in the target column. LOAD performs the truncation operation after any CCSID translation.

LOAD truncates the data at a character boundary. Double-byte characters are not split.

GRAPHIC EXTERNAL(*length*)

Specifies a fixed-length field of the graphic type with the external format. You can specify both *start* and *end* for the field specification.

If you use GRAPHIC EXTERNAL, the input data must contain a shift-out character in the starting position, and a shift-in character in the ending position. Other than the shift characters, this field must have an even number of bytes. The first byte of any pair must not be a shift character.

length is the number of double-byte characters. *length* for GRAPHIC EXTERNAL does not include the number of bytes that are represented by shift characters. The length of the field in bytes is twice the value of *length*. If you do not specify *length*, the number of double-byte characters is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify *length* or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for GRAPHIC, which is determined from the length of the column in the table.

For example, let *** represent three double-byte characters, and let < and > represent shift-out and shift-in characters. Then, to describe <***>, specify either POS(1:8) GRAPHIC EXTERNAL or POS(1) GRAPHIC EXTERNAL(3).

STRIP

Specifies that LOAD is to remove zeros (the default) or the specified characters from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data.

LOAD applies the strip operation before performing any character code conversion or padding.

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data.

TRAILING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

X'strip-char'

Specifies the hexadecimal form of the double-byte character that LOAD is to strip from the data. Specify this value in the form X'hhhh', where *hhhh* is four hexadecimal characters.

You must specify the character in the input encoding scheme.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that LOAD is to truncate the input character string from the right if the string does not fit in the target column. LOAD performs the truncation operation after any CCSID translation.

LOAD truncates the data at a character boundary. Double-byte characters are not split.

VARGRAPHIC

Identifies a graphic field of varying length. The length, in double-byte characters, must be specified in a 2-byte binary field preceding the data. (The length does not include the 2-byte field itself.) The length field must start in the column that is specified as *start* in the POSITION option. *:end*, if used, is ignored.

VARGRAPHIC input data must not contain shift characters.

STRIP

Specifies that LOAD is to remove zeros (the default) or the specified characters from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data. LOAD adjusts the VARGRAPHIC length field to the length of the stripped data (the number of DBCS characters).

LOAD applies the strip operation before performing any character code conversion or padding.

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data.

TRAILING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

X'strip-char'

Specifies the hexadecimal form of the double-byte character that LOAD

is to strip from the data. Specify this value in the form X'hhhh', where *hhhh* is four hexadecimal characters.

You must specify the character in the input encoding scheme.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that LOAD is to truncate the input character string from the right if the string does not fit in the target column. LOAD performs the truncation operation after any CCSID translation.

LOAD truncates the data at a character boundary. Double-byte characters are not split.

SMALLINT

Specifies a 2-byte binary number. Negative numbers are in two's complement notation.

INTEGER

Specifies a 4-byte binary number. Negative numbers are in two's complement notation. You can also specify INT.

INTEGER EXTERNAL(*length*)

A string of characters that represent a number. The format is that of an SQL numeric constant. If you do not specify *length*, the length of the string is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify *length* or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for INTEGER, which is 4 bytes. You can also specify INT EXTERNAL.

BIGINT

Specifies an 8-byte binary number. Negative numbers are in two's complement notation.

BINARY(*length*)

Specifies a fixed-length binary string. If you do not specify *length*, the length of the string is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify *length* or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for BINARY, which is determined from the length of the column in the table. The default for X'*strip-char*' is hexadecimal zero (X'00'). No data conversion is applied to the field.

STRIP

Specifies that LOAD is to remove binary zeros (the default) or the specified X'*strip-char*' from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data. LOAD pads the BINARY field, so that it fills the rest of the column.

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of binary zeros or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data.

TRAILING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

X'*strip-char*'

Specifies, in hexadecimal form, a single-byte or double-byte character

that LOAD is to strip from the data. For single-byte characters, specify this value in the form X'hh', where *hh* is two hexadecimal characters.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that LOAD is to truncate the input character string from the right if the string does not fit in the target column.

LOAD truncates the data at a character boundary.

VARBINARY

Specifies a varying length binary string. The length in bytes must be specified in a 2-byte binary field preceding the data (the length does not include the 2-byte field itself). The length field must start in the column that is specified as start in the POSITION option. If *:end* is used, it is ignored. The default for X'*strip-char*' is hexadecimal zero (X'00'). No data conversion is applied to the field.

STRIP

Specifies that LOAD is to remove binary zeros (the default) or the specified characters from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data. LOAD pads the VARBINARY field, so that it fills the rest of the column.

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of binary zeros or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data.

TRAILING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of binary zeros or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that LOAD is to remove occurrences of binary zeros or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

X'*strip-char*'

Specifies, in hexadecimal form, a single-byte character that LOAD is to strip from the data. For single-byte characters, specify this value in the form X'hh', where *hh* is two hexadecimal characters.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that LOAD is to truncate the input character string from the right if the string does not fit in the target column.

LOAD truncates the data at a character boundary.

DECIMAL PACKED

Specifies a number of the form *ddd...ds*, where *d* is a decimal digit that is represented by four bits, and *s* is a 4-bit sign value. The plus sign (+) is represented by A, C, E, or F, and the minus sign (-) is represented by B or D. The maximum number of *ds* is the same as the maximum number of digits that are allowed in the SQL definition. You can also specify DECIMAL, DEC, or DEC PACKED.

DECIMAL ZONED

Specifies a number in the form *znznzn...z/sn*, where *z*, *n*, and *s* have the following values:

- n* A decimal digit represented by the right 4 bits of a byte (called the *numeric bits*)
- z* That digit's zone, represented by the left 4 bits

s The right-most byte of the decimal operand; *s* can be treated as a zone or as the sign value for that digit

The plus sign (+) is represented by A, C, E, or F, and the minus sign (-) is represented by B or D. The maximum number of *zns* is the same as the maximum number of digits that are allowed in the SQL definition. You can also specify DEC ZONED.

DECIMAL EXTERNAL(*length*,*scale*)

Specifies a string of characters that represent a number. The format is that of an SQL numeric constant.

length

Overall length of the input field, in bytes. If you do not specify *length*, the length of the input field is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify *length* or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for DECIMAL EXTERNAL, which is determined by using decimal precision.

scale

Specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal point. *scale* must be an integer greater than or equal to 0, and it can be greater than *length*. The **default** value is 0.

If *scale* is greater than *length*, or if the number of provided digits is less than the *specified scale*, the input number is padded on the left with zeros until the decimal point position is reached. If *scale* is greater than the target *scale*, the source scale locates the implied decimal position. All fractional digits greater than the target scale are truncated. If *scale* is specified and the target column has a data type of small integer or integer, the decimal portion of the input number is ignored. If a decimal point is present, its position overrides the field specification of *scale*.

FLOAT(*length*)

Specifies either a 64-bit floating-point number or a 32-bit floating-point number. If *length* is between 1 and 21 inclusive, the number is 32 bits in the s390 (HFP) format:

Bit 0 Represents a sign (0 for plus and 1 for minus)

Bits 1-7

Represent an exponent

Bits 8-31

Represent a mantissa

If *length* is between 1 and 24 inclusive, the number is 32 bits in the IEEE (BFP) format:

Bit 0 Represents a sign (0 for plus and 1 for minus)

Bits 1-8

Represent an exponent

Bits 9-31

Represent a mantissa

If *length* is not specified, or is between 22 and 53 inclusive, the number is 64 bits in the s390 (HFP) format:

Bit 0 Represents a sign (0 for plus and 1 for minus)

Bits 1-7

Represent an exponent

Bits 8-63

Represent a mantissa.

If *length* is not specified, or is between 25 and 53 inclusive, the number is 64 bits in the IEEE (BFP) format:

Bit 0 Represents a sign (0 for “plus”, and 1 for “minus”)

Bits 1-11

Represent an exponent

Bits 12-63

Represent a mantissa.

You can also specify REAL for single-precision floating-point numbers and DOUBLE PRECISION for double-precision floating-point numbers.

FLOAT EXTERNAL(*length*)

Specifies a string of characters that represent a number. The format is that of an SQL floating-point constant.

A specification of FLOAT(IEEE) or FLOAT(S390) does not apply for this format (string of characters) of floating-point numbers.

If you do not specify *length*, the length of the string is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify *length* or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for FLOAT, which is 4 bytes for single precision and 8 bytes for double precision.

DATE EXTERNAL(*length*)

Specifies a character string representation of a date. The length, if unspecified, is the specified length on the LOCAL DATA LENGTH install option, or, if none was provided, the default is 10 bytes. If you specify a length, it must be within the range of 8 to 254 bytes.

Dates can be in any of the following formats. You can omit leading zeros for month and day. You can include trailing blanks, but no leading blanks are allowed.

- *dd.mm.yyyy*
- *mm/dd/yyyy*
- *yyyy-mm-dd*
- Any local format that your site defined at the time DB2 was installed

TIME EXTERNAL(*length*)

Specifies a character string representation of a time. The length, if unspecified, is the specified length on the LOCAL TIME LENGTH install option, or, if none was provided, the default is 8 bytes. If you specify a length, it must be within the range of 4 to 254 bytes.

Times can be in any of the following formats:

- *hh.mm.ss*
- *hh:mm AM*
- *hh:mm PM*
- *hh:mm:ss*
- Any local format that your site defined at the time DB2 was installed

You can omit the *mm* portion of the *hh:mm AM* and *hh:mm PM* formats if *mm* is equal to 00. For example, 5 PM is a valid time, and can be used instead of 5:00 PM.

TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL(*length*)

Specifies a character string representation of a time. The default for *length* is 26 bytes. If you specify a length, it must be within the range of 19 to 32 bytes.

Timestamps can be in any of the following formats. Note that *nnnnnn* represents the number of microseconds, and can be from 0 to 12 digits. You can omit leading zeros from the month, day, or hour parts of the timestamp; you can omit trailing zeros from the microseconds part of the timestamp.

- *yyyy-mm-dd-hh.mm.ss*
- *yyyy-mm-dd-hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn*
- *yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.nnnnnn*

TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE EXTERNAL(*length*)

Specifies a character string representation of a timestamp with time zone. The default for *length* is 33 bytes. If you specify a length, it must be within the range of 26 to 39 bytes.

Timestamp with time zone can be in any of the following formats. Note that *nnnnnn* represents the number of digits in the fractional seconds, and can be from 0 to 12 digits. You can omit leading zeros from the month, day, or hour parts of the timestamp; you can omit trailing zeros from the fractional seconds part of the timestamp.

- *yyyy-mm-dd-hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn±th:tm*
- *yyyy-mm-dd-hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn ±th:tm*
- *yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.nnnnnn±th:tm*
- *yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.nnnnnn ±th:tm*

ROWID

Specifies a row ID. The input data must be a valid value for a row ID; DB2 does not perform any conversions.

A field specification for a row ID column is not allowed if the row ID column was created with the GENERATED ALWAYS option.

If the row ID column is part of the partitioning key, LOAD INTO TABLE PART is not allowed; specify LOAD INTO TABLE instead.

BLOB

Specifies a BLOB field. You must specify the length in bytes in a 4-byte binary field that precedes the data. (The length does **not** include the 4-byte field itself.) The length field must start in the column that is specified as *start* in the POSITION option. If *end* is used, it is ignored.

CLOB

Specifies a CLOB field. You must specify the length in bytes in a 4-byte binary field that precedes the data. (The length does **not** include the 4-byte field itself.) The length field must start in the column that is specified as *start* in the POSITION option. If *end* is used, it is ignored.

MIXED

Specifies that the input field contains mixed SBCS and DBCS data. If MIXED is specified, any required CCSID conversions use the mixed CCSID for the input data; if MIXED is not specified, any such conversions use the SBCS CCSID for the input data.

DBCLOB

Specifies a DBCLOB field. You must specify the length in double-byte characters in a 4-byte binary field that precedes the data. (The length does **not** include the 4-byte field itself.) The length field must start in the column that is specified as *start* in the POSITION option. If *end* is used, it is ignored.

DECFLOAT (*length*)

Specifies either a 128-bit decimal floating-point number or a 64-bit decimal floating-point number. The value of the length must be either 16 or 34. If the length is 16, the number is in 64 bit decimal floating-point number format. If the length is 34, the number is in 128 bit decimal floating-point format. If the length is not specified, the number is in 128 bit decimal floating-point format.

DECFLOAT EXTERNAL (*length*)

Specifies a string of characters that represent a number. The format is an SQL numeric constant. If you do not specify a length, the length of the string is determined from the POSITION specification. If you do not specify a length or POSITION, LOAD uses the default length for DECFLOAT.

XML

Specifies the input field type is XML. Field type XML can only be loaded to a XML column. Specify XML when loading the XML value directly from the input record. If the format of the input record is in nondelimited, you must specify a 2 byte length field precedes the actual data value.

BINARYXML Specifies that the XML document to be loaded using the file reference variables is in binary XML format.

PRESERVE WHITESPACE

Specifies that the white space in the XML column is preserved. The default is not to preserve the white space.

DEFAULTIF *field-selection-criterion*

Describes a condition that causes the DB2 column to be loaded with its default value. You can write the *field-selection-criterion* with the same options as described under field-selection-criterion. If the contents of the DEFAULTIF field match the provided character constant, the field that is specified in *field-specification* is loaded with its default value.

If the DEFAULTIF field is defined by the name of a VARCHAR or VARGRAPHIC field, DB2 takes the length of the field from the 2-byte binary field that appears before the data portion of the VARCHAR or VARGRAPHIC field.

Character-string constants should be specified in LOAD utility control statements in the character set that matches the input data record. Specify EBCDIC constants in the LOAD control statement if your data is in EBCDIC and specify UNICODE constants if your data is in UNICODE. You may also code the DEFAULTIF condition using the hexadecimal form. For example, if the input data is in EBCDIC and the control statement is in UTF-8, use (1:1)=X'31' in the condition rather than (1:1)='1'.

You can use the DEFAULTIF attribute with the ROWID keyword. If the condition is met, the column is loaded with a value that DB2 generates.

You cannot specify the DEFAULTIF option for XML columns.

NULLIF *field-selection-criterion*

Describes a condition that causes the DB2 column to be loaded with NULL. You can write the *field-selection-criterion* with the same options as described under field-selection-criterion. If the contents of the NULLIF field match the provided character constant, the field that is specified in *field-specification* is loaded with NULL.

If the NULLIF field is defined by the name of a VARCHAR or VARGRAPHIC field, DB2 takes the length of the field from the 2-byte binary field that appears before the data portion of the VARCHAR or VARGRAPHIC field.

To load a null value into a BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF field, use a null input file name.

Character-string constants should be specified in LOAD utility control statements in the character set that matches the input data record. Specify EBCDIC constants in the LOAD control statement if your data is in EBCDIC and specify UNICODE constants if your data is in UNICODE. You may also code the NULLIF condition using the hexadecimal form. For example, if the input data is in EBCDIC and the control statement is in UTF-8, use (1:1)=X'31' in the condition rather than (1:1)='1'.

The fact that a field in the output table is loaded with NULL does not change the format or function of the corresponding field in the input record. The input field can still be used in a field selection criterion. For example, assume that a LOAD statement has the following field specification:

```
(FIELD1 POSITION(*) CHAR(4)
 FIELD2 POSITION(*) CHAR(3) NULLIF(FIELD1='SKIP')
 FIELD3 POSITION(*) CHAR(5))
```

Assume also that LOAD is to process the following source record:

```
SKIP  FLD03
```

In this example, the record is loaded as follows:

FIELD1

Has the value 'SKIP'.

FIELD2

Is NULL (not ' ' as in the source record).

FIELD3

Has the value 'FLD03'.

You cannot use the NULLIF parameter with the ROWID keyword because row ID columns cannot be null.

Field selection criterion

Describes a condition that causes the DB2 column to be loaded with NULL or with its default value.

Related concepts

 [Constants \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

 [STRIP \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Before running LOAD

Certain activities might be required before you run the LOAD utility, depending on your situation.

You cannot run the LOAD utility on the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 databases, except to add rows to the following catalog tables:

- SYSSTRINGS

- MODESELECT
- LUMODES
- LULIST
- USERNAMES
- LUNAMES
- LOCATIONS
- IPNAMES

If you are using LOAD for a partition-by-growth table space, you can load data only at the table space level, not at the partition level.

Preprocessing input data

No sorting of the data rows occurs during LOAD processing. Rows are loaded in the physical sequence in which they are found.

Recommendation: Sort your input records in clustering sequence before loading the data.

You should also:

- Ensure that no duplicate keys exist for unique indexes.
- Correct check constraint violations and referential constraint violations in the input data set.
- Ensure that any input data that is provided for a security label column is a valid security label. Security label columns are defined with the AS SECURITY LABEL clause. These columns are used for multilevel security with row-level granularity.

When loading data into a segmented table space, sort your data by table to ensure that the data is loaded in the best physical organization.

Loading data by using a cursor

Before you can load data by using a cursor, you need to bind the DSNUT101 package at each location from which you plan to load data. A local package for DSNUT101 is bound by installation job DSNTIJSJ when you install or migrate to a new version of DB2 for z/OS.

The following example statement binds the DSNUT101 package at a remote location:

```

BIND PACKAGE(location.DSNUT101) MEMBER(DSNUGSQL) -
      ACTION(REPLACE) ISOLATION(CS) ENCODING(EBCDIC) -
      VALIDATE(BIND) CURRENTDATA(NO) -
      LIBRARY('prefix.SDSNDBRM')

```

Running LOAD on a table with a spatial index

You cannot run the LOAD utility to load data into a table on which a spatial index is defined. You need to drop the spatial index, run LOAD on the table, and then create the spatial index again.

Related concepts

 Multilevel security (DB2 Administration Guide)

Data sets that LOAD uses

The LOAD utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that LOAD uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set, and any optional data sets that you want to use. Alternatively, you can use the TEMPLATE utility to dynamically allocate some of these data sets.

Table 32. Data sets that LOAD uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
STPRIN01	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY). This data set is used when statistics are collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.	No ¹
Input data set	The input data set that contains the data that is to be loaded. Specify its template or DD name with the INDDN option of the utility control statement. The default name is SYSREC. It must be a sequential data set that is readable by BSAM.	Yes ³
Sort data sets	Two temporary work data sets for sort input and sort output. Specify their DD or template names with the WORKDDN option of the utility control statement. The default DD name for sort input is SYSUT1. The default DD name for sort output is SORTOUT.	Yes ^{4,5}
Mapping data set	Work data set for mapping the identifier of a table row back to the input record that caused an error. Specify its template or DD name with the MAPDDN option of the utility control statement. The default DD name is SYSMAP.	Yes ^{4,6}
UTPRINT	Contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY).	Yes
Discard data set	A work data set that contains copies of records that are not loaded. It must be a sequential data set that is readable by BSAM. Specify its DD or template name with the DISCARDN option of the utility control statement. The default DD name is SYSDISC.	Yes ⁸
Error data set	Work data set for error processing. Specify its DD or template name with the ERRDDN option of the utility control statement. The default DD or template name is SYSERR.	Yes

Table 32. Data sets that LOAD uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
Copy data sets	One to four output data sets that contain image copy data sets. Specify their DD or template names with the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options of the utility control statement.	No ⁹
FlashCopy image copies	For table space or index space level copies, a VSAM data set for the output FlashCopy image copy of each partition or piece. For a partition level or piece level copy, a VSAM data set for the output FlashCopy image copy of the partition or piece.	No ¹³
Sort work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when sorting keys. If index build parallelism is used, the DD names have the form <i>SWmmWKmm</i> . If index build parallelism is not used, the DD names have the form <i>SORTWKmm</i> .	Yes ^{10,12}
Sort work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index. The DD names have the form <i>ST01WKmm</i> .	No ^{2,11,12}

Note:

1. STPRIN01 is required if statistics are being collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index, but LOAD dynamically allocates the STPRIN01 data set if UTPRINT is allocated to SYSOUT.
2. Required when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.
3. As an alternative to specifying an input data set, you can specify a cursor with the INCURSOR option.
4. Required if referential constraints exist and ENFORCE(CONSTRAINTS) is specified (This option is the default).
5. Used for tables with indexes.
6. Required for discard processing when loading one or more tables that have unique indexes.
7. Required if a sort is done.
8. If you omit the DD statement for this data set, LOAD creates the data set with the same record format, record length, and block size as the input data set.
9. Required for inline copies.
10. Required if any indexes are to be built or if a sort is required for processing errors.
11. If the DYNALLOC parm of the SORT program is not turned on, you need to allocate the data set. Otherwise, the sort program dynamically allocates the temporary data set.
12. It is recommended that you use dynamic allocation by specifying SORTDEVT in the utility statement because dynamic allocation reduces the maintenance required of the utility job JCL.
13. Required if you specify either FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT.

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table Table that is to be loaded. (If you want to load only one partition of a table, you must use the PART option in the control statement.)

Defining work data sets

Use the formulas and instructions in The following table to calculate the size of work data sets for LOAD. Each row in the table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set and either formulas or instructions that you should use to determine the size of the data set. The key for the formulas is located at the bottom of the table.

Table 33. Size of work data sets for LOAD jobs

Work data set	Size
SORTOUT	$max(f,e)$
ST01WK nm	$2 \times (\text{maximum record length} \times \text{numcols} \times (\text{count} + 2) \times \text{number of indexes})$
SYSDISC	Same size as input data set
SYSERR	e
SYSMAP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Simple table space for discard processing: m Partitioned or segmented table space without discard processing: $max(m,e)$
SYSUT1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Simple table space: $max(k,e)$ Partitioned or segmented table space: $max(k,e,m)$ <p>If you specify an estimate of the number of keys with the SORTKEYS option: $max(f,e)$ for a simple table space $max(f,e,m)$ for a partitioned or segmented table space</p>

Note:

variable

meaning

k Key calculation

f Foreign key calculation

m Map calculation

e Error calculation

$max()$ Maximum value of the specified calculations

$numcols$ Number of key columns to concatenate when you collect frequent values from the specified index

$count$ Number of frequent values that DB2 is to collect

maximum record length

Maximum record length of the SYSCOLDISTSTATS record that is processed when collecting frequency statistics (You can obtain this value from the RECLENGTH column in SYSTABLES.)

• Calculating the key: k

If a mix of data-partitioned secondary indexes and nonpartitioned indexes exists on the table that is being loaded or a foreign key exists that is exactly indexed by a data-partitioned secondary index, use this formula:

$max(\text{longest index key} + 15, \text{longest foreign key} + 15) * (\text{number of extracted keys}).$

Otherwise, use this formula:

$max(\text{longest index key} + 13, \text{longest foreign key} + 13) * (\text{number of extracted keys})$.

For nonpadded indexes, the length of the longest key means the maximum possible length of a key with all varying-length columns padded to their maximum lengths, plus 2 bytes for each varying-length column.

- **Calculating the number of extracted keys:**

1. Count 1 for each index.
2. Count 1 for each foreign key that is not exactly indexed (that is, where foreign key and index definitions do not correspond identically).
3. For each foreign key that is exactly indexed (that is, where foreign key and index definitions correspond identically):
 - a. Count 0 for the first relationship in which the foreign key participates if the index is not a data-partitioned secondary index. Count 1 if the index is a data-partitioned secondary index.
 - b. Count 1 for subsequent relationships in which the foreign key participates (if any).
4. Multiply count by the number of rows that are to be loaded.

- **Calculating the foreign key: f**

If a mix of data-partitioned secondary indexes and nonpartitioned indexes exists on the table that is being loaded or a foreign key exists that is exactly indexed by a data-partitioned secondary index, use this formula:

$max(\text{longest foreign key} + 15) * (\text{number of extracted keys})$

Otherwise, use this formula:

$max(\text{longest foreign key} + 13) * (\text{number of extracted keys})$

- **Calculating the map: m**

The data set must be large enough to accommodate one map entry (length = 21 bytes) per table row that is produced by the LOAD job.

- **Calculating the error: e**

The data set must be large enough to accommodate one error entry (length = 560 bytes) per defect that is detected by LOAD (for example, conversion errors, unique index violations, violations of referential constraints).

- **Calculating the number of possible defects:**

- For discard processing, if the discard limit is specified, the number of possible defects is equal to the discard limit.

If the discard limit is the maximum, calculate the number of possible defects by using the following formula:

$number\ of\ input\ records +$
 $(number\ of\ unique\ indexes * number\ of\ extracted\ keys) +$
 $(number\ of\ relationships * number\ of\ extracted\ foreign\ keys)$

- For nondiscard processing, the data set is not required.

Allocating twice the space that is used by the input data sets is usually adequate for the sort work data sets. Two or three large SORTWKnn data sets are preferable to several small ones.

Sort work data sets cannot span volumes. Smaller volumes require more sort work data sets to sort the same amount of data; therefore, large volume sizes can reduce the number of needed sort work data sets. It is recommended that at least 1.2 times the amount of data to be sorted be provided in sort work data sets on disk.

Related reference

[DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

[DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Concurrency and compatibility for LOAD

The LOAD utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats Individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

For nonpartitioned secondary indexes, LOAD PART:

- Drains only the logical partition
- Does not set the page set REBUILD-pending status (PSRBD)
- Does not consider PCTFREE or FREEPAGE attributes when inserting keys

Claims and drains

The following table shows which claim classes LOAD drains and the restrictive states the utility sets.

Table 34. Claim classes of LOAD operations

Target	LOAD SHRLEVEL NONE	LOAD PART SHRLEVEL NONE	LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE	LOAD PART SHRLEVEL CHANGE
Table space, index, or physical partition of a table space or index space	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	CW/UTRW	CW/UTRW
Nonpartitioned secondary index ¹	DA/UTUT	DR	CW/UTRW	CW/UTRW
Data-partitioned secondary index ²	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	CW/UTRW	CW/UTRW
Index logical partition ³	None	DA/UTUT	None	CW/UTRW
Primary index (with ENFORCE option only)	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	CR/UTRW	CR/UTRW
RI dependents	CHKP (NO)	CHKP (NO)	CHKP (NO)	CHKP (NO)

Table 34. Claim classes of LOAD operations (continued)

Target	LOAD SHRLEVEL NONE	LOAD PART SHRLEVEL NONE	LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE	LOAD PART SHRLEVEL CHANGE
--------	--------------------	-------------------------	----------------------	---------------------------

Legend:

- CHKP (NO): Concurrently running applications do not see CHECK-pending status after commit.
- CR: Claim the read claim class.
- CW: Claim the write claim class.
- DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access.
- DR: Drain the repeatable read class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers.
- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers.
- UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control.
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed.
- UTRW: Utility restrictive state, read-write access allowed.
- None: Object is not affected by this utility.
- RI: Referential integrity

Note:

1. Includes the document ID indexes and node ID indexes over non-partitioned XML table spaces and XML indexes.
2. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over partitioned XML table spaces.
3. Includes logical partitions of an XML index over partitioned table spaces.

Compatibility

The following table shows whether or not utilities are compatible with LOAD and can run concurrently on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space.

Table 35. Compatibility of LOAD with other utilities

Action	LOAD SHRLEVEL NONE	LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE
BACKUP SYSTEM	YES	YES
CHECK DATA DELETE NO	No	No
CHECK DATA DELETE YES	No	No
CHECK INDEX	No	No
CHECK LOB	No	No
COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	Yes
COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	No	No
COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	Yes
COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	No	No
COPYTOCOPY	No	Yes
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes
LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	Yes
LOAD SHRLEVEL NONE	No	No
MERGECOPY	No	Yes

Table 35. Compatibility of LOAD with other utilities (continued)

Action	LOAD SHRLEVEL NONE	LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE
MODIFY RECOVERY	No	Yes
MODIFY STATISTICS	No	Yes
QUIESCE	No	No
REBUILD INDEX	No	No
RECOVER (no options)	No	No
RECOVER ERROR RANGE	No	No
RECOVER TOCOPY or TORBA	No	No
REORG INDEX	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	No	No
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY	No	No
REPAIR LOCATE KEY or RID DELETE or REPLACE	No	No
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE REPLACE	No	No
REPORT	Yes	No
RESTORE SYSTEM	No	No
RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	No	No
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	Yes
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	No	No
STOSPACE	Yes	Yes
UNLOAD	No	Yes

SQL operations and other online utilities on the same target partition are incompatible.

When to use SORTKEYS NO

The SORTKEYS value determines when you can restart a LOAD job on a table space that has LOB columns.

- The default value for SORTKEYS is SORTKEYS 0. If you plan to load a table that has LOB columns using LOAD RESUME YES SHRLEVEL NONE, and you might need to restart the LOAD job with RESTART(CURRENT), you must specify SORTKEYS NO.
- The point at which you can restart LOAD REPLACE SHRLEVEL NONE on a table that has no LOB columns depends on whether you specify SORTKEYS NO:
 - If you specify SORTKEYS NO, you can restart with RESTART(CURRENT).

- If you do not specify SORTKEYS NO, you can restart only with RESTART(PHASE)

Loading variable-length data

You can load variable-length data by using the LOAD utility.

To load variable-length data:

Include a 2-byte binary length field before each field of variable-length data. The value in that field depends on the data type of the column into which you load the data. Use:

- The number of single-byte characters if the data type is VARCHAR
- The number of double-byte characters if the data type is VARGRAPHIC

For example, assume that you have a variable-length column that contains X'42C142C142C2', which might be interpreted as either six single-byte characters or three double-byte characters. With the two-byte length field, use:

- X'0006'X'42C142C142C2' to signify six single-byte characters in a VARCHAR column
- X'0003'X'42C142C142C2' to signify three double-byte characters in a VARGRAPHIC column

How LOAD orders loaded records

The LOAD utility loads records into a table space in the order in which they appear in the input stream. It does not sort the input stream, and it does not insert records in sequence with existing records, even if a clustering index exists.

To achieve clustering when loading an empty table or replacing data, sort the input stream. When adding data to a clustered table, consider reorganizing the table after running LOAD.

Because rows with duplicate key values for unique indexes fail to be loaded, any records that are dependent on such rows either:

- Fail to be loaded because they would cause referential integrity violations (if you specify ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS)
- Are loaded without regard to referential integrity violations (if you specify ENFORCE NO)

As a result, violations of referential integrity might occur. Such violations can be detected by LOAD (without the ENFORCE(NO) option) or by CHECK DATA.

Replacing data with LOAD

You can use LOAD REPLACE to replace data in a table space that has one or more tables. You can replace all the data in a table space (by using the REPLACE option), or you can load new records into a table space without destroying the rows that are already there (by using the RESUME option).

DB2 processes data sets depending on the options you set for the LOAD utility. If you run LOAD REPLACE without the REUSE option, data sets that are not user-managed are deleted before the LOAD utility runs. The LOAD utility defines a new data set with a control interval that matches the page size.

When you run LOAD REPLACE with the ROWFORMAT RRF option on a table space or partition that is in basic row format, LOAD REPLACE converts the table space or partition to the reordered row format. If the ROWFORMAT BRF option is specified, existing basic row format table spaces will not be converted to reordered row format. If the clause EDITPROC or VALIDPROC is used in a table space or partition, the table space or partition remains in basic format after the LOAD REPLACE. Replacing data with LOAD applies only in new-function mode. LOAD REPLACE does not convert table spaces that are defined with COMPRESS YES to reordered row format. For table spaces that are defined with COMPRESS YES and contain some partitions in basic row format and some partitions in reordered row format, LOAD REPLACE converts the partitions that are in basic row format to reordered row format.

| If an object is in REORG-pending status, you can perform a LOAD REPLACE of
 | the entire table space, which resets REORG-pending status. You can also perform a
 | LOAD PART REPLACE or RESUME of any partitions that are not in
 | REORG-pending status. In this situation, no other LOAD operations are allowed. If
 | an object is in advisory REORG-pending status (AREO*), you can perform a LOAD
 | REPLACE of the entire table space, which resets advisory REORG-pending status.

| If an object is in REBUILD-pending status, you can perform a LOAD REPLACE of
 | the entire table space, which resets REBUILD-pending status. You can also perform
 | a LOAD PART REPLACE or RESUME of any partitions. If these partitions are in
 | REBUILD-pending status, a LOAD PART REPLACE or RESUME resets that status.
 | If an object is in advisory REBUILD-pending status, you can perform a LOAD
 | REPLACE of the entire table space, which resets advisory REBUILD-pending
 | status. If a user-defined table space is in refresh-pending (REFP) status, you can
 | replace the data by using LOAD REPLACE.

Using LOAD REPLACE with LOG YES

The LOAD REPLACE or PART REPLACE with LOG YES option logs only the reset and not each deleted row. If you need to see what rows are being deleted, use the SQL DELETE statement.

Replacing one table in a single-table table space:

The following control statement specifies that LOAD is to replace one table in a single-table table space:

```
LOAD DATA
  REPLACE
  INTO TABLE DSN81010.DEPT
  ( DEPTNO    POSITION (1)    CHAR(3),
    DEPTNAME  POSITION (5)    VARCHAR,
    MGRNO     POSITION (37)   CHAR(6),
    ADMRDEPT  POSITION (44)   CHAR(3),
    LOCATION  POSITION (48)   CHAR(16) )
  ENFORCE NO
```

Figure 28. Example of using LOAD to replace one table in a single-table table space

Replacing one table in a multiple-table table space

When using LOAD REPLACE on a multiple-table table space, you must be careful because LOAD works on an entire table space at a time. Thus, to replace all rows in a multiple-table table space, you must work with one table at a time, by using

the RESUME YES option on all but the first table. For example, if you have two tables in a table space, you need to do the following steps:

1. Use LOAD REPLACE on the first table as shown in the following control statement. This option removes data from the table space and replaces just the data for the first table.

```
LOAD DATA CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'
REPLACE
INTO DSN81010.TOPTVAL
( MAJSYS POSITION (2) CHAR(1),
  ACTION POSITION (4) CHAR(1),
  OBJECT POSITION (6) CHAR(2),
  SRCHCRIT POSITION (9) CHAR(2),
  SCRCTYPE POSITION (12) CHAR(1),
  HEADTXT POSITION (80) CHAR(50),
  SELTXT POSITION (159) CHAR(50),
  INFOTXT POSITION (238) CHAR(71),
  HELPTXT POSITION (317) CHAR(71),
  PFKTXT POSITION (396) CHAR(71),
  DSPINDEX POSITION (475) CHAR(2) )
```

Figure 29. Example of using LOAD REPLACE on the first table in a multiple-table table space

2. Use LOAD with RESUME YES on the second table as shown in the control statement in the following example. This option adds the records for the second table without destroying the data in the first table.

```
LOAD DATA CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'
RESUME YES
INTO DSN81010.TDSPTXT
( DSPINDEX POSITION (2) CHAR(2),
  LINENO POSITION (6) CHAR(2),
  DSPLINE POSITION (80) CHAR(79) )
```

Figure 30. Example of using LOAD with RESUME YES on the second table in a multiple-table table space

If you need to replace just one table in a multiple-table table space, you need to delete all the rows in the table, and then use LOAD with RESUME YES. For example, assume that you want to replace all the data in DSN81010.TDSPTXT without changing any data in DSN81010.TOPTVAL. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Delete all the rows from DSN81010.TDSPTXT by using the following SQL DELETE statement:

```
EXEC SQL
  DELETE FROM DSN81010.TDSPTXT
ENDEXEC
```

Tip: The mass delete works most quickly on a segmented table space.

2. Use the LOAD job that is shown in the following figure to replace the rows in that table.

```
LOAD DATA CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'
RESUME YES
INTO DSN81010.TDSPTXT
( DSPINDEX POSITION (2) CHAR(2),
  LINENO POSITION (6) CHAR(2),
  DSPLINE POSITION (80) CHAR(79) )
```

Figure 31. Example of using LOAD with RESUME YES to replace one table in a multiple-table table space

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Using LOAD for tables with identity columns, ROWID columns, row change timestamp columns, or generated columns

When you run the UNLOAD utility or the REORG utility with the UNLOAD EXTERNAL or DISCARD options, DB2 generates a LOAD statement that you can use to load the unloaded data into any table that has a compatible format.

If the source table has a ROWID column that is defined with GENERATED ALWAYS, the generated LOAD statement contains a dummy field named DSN_ROWID for the ROWID column. If the source table has an identity column that is defined with GENERATED ALWAYS, the generated LOAD statement contains a dummy field named DSN_IDENTITY for the identity column. If the source table has a row change timestamp column that is defined with GENERATED ALWAYS, the generated LOAD statement contains a dummy field named DSN_RCTIMESTAMP for the row change timestamp column. The keyword IGNOREFIELDS in the LOAD statement causes DB2 to skip the DSN_ROWID, DSN_IDENTITY, or DSN_RCTIMESTAMP field when it loads the data into a table. Using the combination of IGNOREFIELDS and the dummy fields, you can load the unloaded data into a compatible table that has GENERATED ALWAYS columns.

To include the data from the ROWID, identity, or row change timestamp column when you load the unloaded data into a table, define the ROWID, identity, or row change timestamp column with GENERATED BY DEFAULT. To use the generated LOAD statement, remove the IGNOREFIELDS keyword and change the dummy field names to the corresponding column names in the target table.

To load the unloaded data into a compatible table that has identity columns that are defined as GENERATED ALWAYS, use one of the following techniques:

- Using the combination of IGNOREFIELDS and the dummy DSN_IDENTITY field, load will generate the identity column data.
- To load the unloaded identity column data, add the IDENTITYOVERRIDE keyword to the LOAD control statement. Change the dummy field name, DSN_IDENTITY, to the corresponding identity column name in the target table.
- To load the unloaded data into a compatible table that has identity columns or ROWID columns that are defined as GENERATED BY DEFAULT, remove the IGNOREFIELDS keyword and change the dummy field names to the corresponding column names in the target table.
- To load the unloaded data into a compatible table that has ROWID columns that are defined as GENERATED ALWAYS, using the combination of IGNOREFIELDS and the dummy DSN_ROWID field, load will generate the ROWID column data.

Adding more data to a table or partition

You might want to use the LOAD utility to add data to a table or partition, rather than replacing existing data.

The RESUME keyword specifies whether data is to be loaded into an empty or a non-empty table space. RESUME NO loads records into an empty table space. RESUME YES loads records into a non-empty table space.

If RESUME NO is specified and the target table is not empty, no data is loaded.

If RESUME YES is specified and the target table is empty, data is loaded.

LOAD always adds rows to the end of the existing rows, but index entries are placed in key sequence.

Deleting all the data in a table space

You can delete all the data in a table space.

Specifying LOAD REPLACE without loading any records is an efficient way of clearing a table space. LOAD REPLACE is efficient for the following reasons:

- LOAD REPLACE LOG NO does not log any rows.
- LOAD REPLACE redefines the table space.
- LOAD REPLACE retains all views and privileges that are associated with a table space or table.
- LOG YES can be used to make the LOAD REPLACE recoverable.

To delete all the data in a table space, specify the input data set in the JCL as DD DUMMY. LOAD REPLACE replaces **all tables** in the table space.

Loading partitions

If you use the PART clause of the INTO TABLE option, only the specified partitions of a partitioned table are loaded. If you omit PART, the entire table is loaded.

You can specify the REPLACE and RESUME options separately by partition. The control statement in the following example specifies that DB2 is to load data into the first and second partitions of the employee table. Records with '0' in column 1 replace the contents of partition 1; records with '1' in column 1 are added to partition 2; all other records are ignored. (The following example control statement, which is simplified to illustrate the point, does not list field specifications for all columns of the table.)

```
LOAD DATA CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'  
  INTO TABLE DSN81010.EMP PART 1 REPLACE WHEN (1) = '0'  
    ( EMPNO    POSITION (1:6) CHAR(6),  
      FIRSTNME POSITION (7:18) CHAR(12),  
  
    :  
    )  
  INTO TABLE DSN81010.EMP PART 2 RESUME YES WHEN (1) = '1'  
    ( EMPNO    POSITION (1:6) CHAR(6),  
      FIRSTNME POSITION (7:18) CHAR(12),  
  
    :  
    )
```

Figure 32. Example LOAD control statement for loading partitions

To load columns in an order that is different than the order of the columns in the CREATE TABLE statement, you must code field specifications for each INTO TABLE statement.

The following example assumes that your data is in separate input data sets. That data is already sorted by partition, so you do not need to use the WHEN clause of INTO TABLE. Placing the RESUME YES option before the PART option inhibits concurrent partition processing while the utility is running.

```
LOAD DATA INDDN EMPLDS1 CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'  
RESUME YES  
INTO TABLE DSN81010.EMP REPLACE PART 1
```

```
LOAD DATA INDDN EMPLDS2 CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'  
RESUME YES  
INTO TABLE DSN81010.EMP REPLACE PART 2
```

The following example allows partitioning independence when more than one partition is loaded concurrently.

```
LOAD DATA INDDN SYSREC LOG NO  
INTO TABLE DSN81010.EMP PART 2 REPLACE
```

When index-based partitioning is used, LOAD INTO PART *integer* is not allowed if an identity column is part of the partitioning index. When table-based partitioning is used, LOAD INTO PART *integer* is not allowed if an identity column is used in a partitioning clause of the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. If IDENTITYOVERRIDE is used, these operations are allowed.

To invoke partition parallelism, specify a PART clause with INDDN or INCURSOR and optionally DISCARDN keywords for each partition in your utility control statement. This partition parallelism reduces the elapsed time that is required for loading large amounts of data into partitioned table spaces. Loading partition parallelism requires a separate input data set for each partition.

Consequences of DEFINE NO

If a partitioned table space is created with DEFINE NO, all partitions are also implicitly defined with DEFINE NO. The first data row that is inserted by the LOAD utility defines all data sets in the partitioned table space. If this process takes a long time, expect timeouts on the DBD.

Coding your LOAD job with SHRLEVEL CHANGE and using partition parallelism is equivalent to concurrent, independent insert jobs. For example, in a large partitioned table space that is created with DEFINE NO, the LOAD utility starts three tasks. The first task tries to insert the first row, which causes an update to the DBD. The other two tasks time out while they wait to access the DBD. The first task holds the lock on the DBD while the data sets are defined for the table space.

Restriction: You cannot load data at the partition level of a partition-by-growth table space.

Partition-by-growth table spaces

When you load a partition-by-growth table space, you can load data only at the table space level and not at the partition level. If you need additional partitions during the LOAD process and the maximum number of partitions for the table space is not yet reached, the LOAD utility will trigger the process to add additional partitions. If the maximum number of partitions is reached, the LOAD utility fails.

Restriction: You cannot use parallelism for LOAD processing for partition-by-growth table spaces.

Loading data containing XML columns

You can load data containing XML columns with one of two methods.

- The XML column can be loaded from the input record. XML column value can be placed in the INPUT record with or without any other any other loading column values. The input record can be in delimited or non-delimited format. For a non-delimited format, the XML column is treated like a variable character with a 2-byte length preceding the XML value. For a delimited format there are no length bytes present. If the input record is in spanned record format, specify the FORMAT SPANNED YES option.
- The XML column can be loaded from a separate file whether the XML column length is less than 32K or not.

To load data into a base table that has XML columns:

1. Create input data sets to ensure that you use the appropriate format:
 - If you use delimited format, specify XML data in the input data set as delimited character strings, separated by the column delimiter.
 - If you do not use delimited format, specify the XML input field length in a 2-byte binary field preceding the data.
2. Create a LOAD utility control statement.
 - To load XML directly from input record, specify XML as the input field type. XML is the only acceptable field type and data type conversion is not supported. Do not specify DEFAULTIF.
 - To load XML from a file, specify CHAR or VARCHAR along with either BLOBF, CLOBF or DBCLOBF to indicate that the input column contains a filename from which a BLOBF, CLOBF or DBCLOBF is to be loaded to the XML column.
3. Submit the utility control statement.

When you load XML documents into a table, and the XML value cannot be cast to the type that you specified when you created the index, the value is ignored without any warnings or errors, and the document is inserted into the table.

When you insert XML documents into a table with XML indexes that are of type DECFLOAT, the values might be rounded when they are inserted. If the index is unique, the rounding might cause duplicates even if the original values are not exactly the same.

DB2 does not compress an XML table space during the LOAD process. If the XML table space is defined with COMPRESS YES, the XML table space is compressed during REORG.

Loading delimited files

You can load a delimited file by using the FORMAT DELIMITED option. A delimited file contains cell values that are separated by delimiters. *Delimiters* are predefined characters that separate data. The column delimiter separates one column value from the next. Character string delimiters identify the beginning and end of a single cell value and are required only if the cell value contains the column delimiter.

Recommendation: If a delimited file is to be transferred to or from an operating system other than z/OS or between DB2 for z/OS systems that use different

EBCDIC or ASCII CCSIDs, use Unicode as the encoding scheme for the delimited file. Using Unicode avoids possible CCSID translation problems.

You are responsible for ensuring that the data in the file does not include the chosen delimiters. If the delimiters are part of the file's data, unexpected errors can occur.

Restrictions: The following restrictions apply to the use of delimiters:

- You cannot specify the same character for more than one type of delimiter (COLDEL, CHARDEL, and DECPT).
- You cannot specify a character constant for a delimiter if the utility control statement is not coded in the same encoding scheme as the input file. For example, the utility control statement is coded in Unicode, and the input data is coded in EBCDIC.
- You should use the hexadecimal representation for non-default delimiters if the utility control statement is coded in a different encoding scheme than the input file. For example, the utility control statement is coded in Unicode, and the input file is coded in EBCDIC. In this case, if you do not use the hexadecimal representation for the non-default delimiters, the results can be unpredictable.
- You do not need to specify the POSITION keyword when you specify the DELIMITED option. The utility ignores the POSITION keyword when you also specify DELIMITED. The utility overrides field data type specifications according to the specifications of the delimited format. (For example, length values for CHAR, VARCHAR, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, CLOB, DBCLOB, and BLOB data are the delimited lengths of each field in the input data set, and the utility expects all numeric types in external format.)
- You cannot specify a binary 0 (zero) for any delimiter.
- You cannot specify the default decimal point as a string character delimiter (CHARDEL) or a column string delimiter (COLDEL).
- You cannot specify shift-in and shift-out characters for EBCDIC MBCS data.
- You cannot specify the pipe character (|) for DBCS data.
- You cannot specify the semicolon character (x'5E') as a delimiter character for COIDEL.

The following table lists the default hexadecimal values for the delimiter characters based on encoding scheme.

Table 36. Default delimiter values for different encoding schemes

Character	EBCDIC SBCS	EBCDIC DBCS/MBCS	ASCII/Unicode SBCS	ASCII/Unicode MBCS
Character string delimiter	X'7F'	X'7F'	X'22'	X'22'
Decimal point character	X'4B'	X'4B'	X'2E'	X'2E'
Column delimiter	X'6B'	X'6B'	X'2C'	X'2C'

In most EBCDIC code pages, the hexadecimal values that are specified in the previous table are a double quotation mark(") for the character string delimiter, a period(.) for the decimal point character, and a comma(,) for the column delimiter.

The following table lists the maximum allowable hexadecimal values for any delimiter character based on the encoding scheme.

Table 37. Maximum delimiter values for different encoding schemes

Encoding scheme	Maximum allowable value
EBCDIC SBCS	None
EBCDIC DBCS/MBCS	X'3F'
ASCII/Unicode SBCS	None
ASCII/Unicode MBCS	X'7F'

The following table identifies the acceptable data type forms for the delimited file format that the LOAD and UNLOAD utilities use.

Table 38. Acceptable data type forms for delimited files.

Data type	Acceptable form for loading a delimited file	Form that is created by unloading a delimited file
CHAR, VARCHAR	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. For VARCHAR, length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
GRAPHIC (any type)	A delimited or non-delimited character stream	Data that is unloaded as a delimited character string. For VARGRAPHIC, length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
INTEGER (any type) ¹	A stream of characters that represents a number in EXTERNAL format	Numeric data in external format.
DECIMAL (any type) ²	A character string that represents a number in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a number.
FLOAT ³	A representation of a number in the range -7.2E + 75 to 7.2E + 75 in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a number in floating-point notation.
BLOB, CLOB	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. Length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
DBCLOB	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. Length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
DATE	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a date value in EXTERNAL format	Character string representation of a date.

Table 38. Acceptable data type forms for delimited files. (continued)

Data type	Acceptable form for loading a delimited file	Form that is created by unloading a delimited file
TIME	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a time value in EXTERNAL format	Character string representation of a time.
TIMESTAMP	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a timestamp value in EXTERNAL format	Character string representation of a timestamp.

Note:

1. Field specifications of INTEGER or SMALLINT are treated as INTEGER EXTERNAL.
2. Field specifications of DECIMAL, DECIMAL PACKED, or DECIMAL ZONED are treated as DECIMAL EXTERNAL.
3. Field specifications of FLOAT, REAL, or DOUBLE are treated as FLOAT EXTERNAL.

Related concepts

“Unloading delimited files” on page 777

Related reference

Appendix G, “Delimited file format,” on page 1045

Loading data with referential constraints

LOAD does not load a table with an incomplete definition; if the table has a primary key, the unique index on that key must exist. If any table that is to be loaded has an incomplete definition, the LOAD job terminates.

LOAD requires access to the primary indexes on the parent tables of any loaded tables. For simple, segmented, and partitioned table spaces, it drains all writers from the parent table's primary indexes. Other users cannot make changes to the parent tables that result in an update to their own primary indexes. Concurrent inserts and deletes on the parent tables are blocked, but updates are allowed for columns that are not defined as part of the primary index.

By default, LOAD enforces referential constraints, except informational referential constraints, which LOAD ignores. By enforcing referential constraints, LOAD provides you with several possibilities for error:

- Records that are to be loaded might have duplicate values of a primary key.
- Records that are to be loaded might have invalid foreign-key values, which are not values of the primary key of the corresponding parent table.
- The loaded table might lack primary key values that are values of foreign keys in dependent tables.

The next few paragraphs describe how DB2 signals each of those errors and the means it provides for correcting them.

Duplicate values of a primary key

A primary index must be a unique index and must exist if the table definition is complete. Therefore, when you load a parent table, you build at least its primary index. You need an error data set, and probably also a map data set and a discard data set.

Invalid foreign key values:

A dependent table has the constraint that the values of its foreign keys must be values of the primary keys of corresponding parent tables. By default, LOAD enforces that constraint in much the same way as it enforces the uniqueness of key values in a unique index. First, it loads all records to the table. Subsequently, LOAD checks the validity of the records with respect to the constraints, identifies any invalid record by an error message, and deletes the record from the table. You can choose to copy this record to a discard data set. Again you need at least an error data set, and probably also a map data set and a discard data set.

If a record fails to load because it violates a referential constraint, any of its dependent records in the same job also fail. For example, suppose that the sample project table and project activity tables belong to the same table space, that you load them both in the same job, and that some input record for the project table has an invalid department number. Then, that record fails to be loaded and does not appear in the loaded table; the summary report identifies it as causing a **primary** error.

However the project table has a primary key, the project number. In this case, the record that is rejected by LOAD defines a project number, and any row in the project activity table that refers to the rejected number is also rejected. The summary report identifies those as causing **secondary** errors. If you use a discard data set, records for both types of errors are copied to it.

Missing primary key values

The deletion of invalid records does not cascade to other dependent tables that are already in place. Suppose now that the project and project activity tables exist in separate table spaces, and that they are both currently populated and possess referential integrity. In addition, suppose that the data in the project table is now to be replaced (using LOAD REPLACE) and that the replacement data for some department was inadvertently not supplied in the input data. Rows that reference that department number might already exist in the project activity table. LOAD, therefore, automatically places the table space that contains the project activity table (and all table spaces that contain dependent tables of any table that is being replaced) into CHECK-pending status.

The CHECK-pending status indicates that the referential integrity of the table space is in doubt; it might contain rows that violate a referential constraint. DB2 places severe restrictions on the use of a table space in CHECK-pending status; typically, you run the CHECK DATA utility to reset this status.

Consequences of ENFORCE NO

If you use the ENFORCE NO option, you tell LOAD not to enforce referential constraints. Sometimes you have good reasons for doing that, but the result is that the loaded table space might violate the constraints. Hence, LOAD places the loaded table space in CHECK-pending status. If you use REPLACE, all table spaces that contain any dependent tables of the tables that were loaded are also placed in CHECK-pending status. You must reset the status of each table before you can use any of the table spaces.

Related concepts

“Resetting the CHECK-pending status” on page 312

Correcting referential constraint violations

The referential integrity checking in LOAD can delete only incorrect dependent rows, which were input to LOAD. Deletion is not always the best strategy for correcting referential integrity violations.

For example, the violations might occur because parent rows do not exist. In this case, correcting the parent tables is better than deleting the dependent rows. In this case, ENFORCE NO is more appropriate than ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS. After you correct the parent table, you can use CHECK DATA to reset the CHECK-pending status.

LOAD ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS is not equivalent to CHECK DATA. LOAD ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS deletes any rows that cause referential constraint violations. CHECK DATA detects violations and optionally deletes such rows. CHECK DATA checks a complete referential structure, although LOAD checks only the rows that are being loaded.

When loading referential structures with ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS, you should load tables before dependent tables.

Compressing data

You can use LOAD with the REPLACE, RESUME NO, or RESUME YES options to build a compression dictionary. The RESUME NO option requires the table space to be empty. If SHRLEVEL NONE is explicitly or implicitly specified, RESUME YES builds a dictionary only if the table space is empty. If SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified, RESUME YES builds a dictionary when the amount of data in the table space reaches a DB2-determined threshold.

LOAD RESUME YES or NO will build compression dictionaries for empty table spaces, except for linear/simple table spaces. LOAD REPLACE must be used on linear/simple table spaces in order to build new compression dictionaries. If your table space, or a partition in a partitioned table space, is defined with COMPRESS YES, the dictionary is created while records are loaded. After the dictionary is completely built, the rest of the data is compressed as it is loaded.

For Partition-by-growth table spaces, the utility only builds one dictionary and the same dictionary page is populated through all partitions. For XML table spaces that are defined with COMPRESS YES, compression does not occur until the first REORG.

The data is not compressed until the dictionary is built. You must use LOAD REPLACE or RESUME NO to build the dictionary, except for linear/simple table spaces where LOAD REPLACE must be used to build new compression dictionaries. To save processing costs, and initial LOAD do not go back to compress the records that were used to build the dictionary.

The number of records that are required to build a dictionary is dependent on the frequency of patterns in the data. For large data sets, the number of rows that are required to build the dictionary is a small percentage of the total number of rows that are to be compressed. For the best compression results, build a new dictionary whenever you load the data.

However, in some circumstances, you might want to compress data by using an existing dictionary. If you are satisfied with the compression that you are getting with an existing dictionary, you can keep that dictionary by using the `KEEPDICTIONARY` option of `LOAD` or `REORG`. For both `LOAD` and `REORG`, this method also saves you the processing overhead of building the dictionary. `LOAD RESUME` on a linear/simple table space will always keep the existing dictionary if one exists. In order to build new dictionaries for a linear/simple table space, `LOAD REPLACE` or `REORG` is required.

Consider using `KEEPDICTIONARY` if the last dictionary was built by `REORG`; the `REORG` utility's sampling method can yield more representative dictionaries than `LOAD` and can thus mean better compression. `REORG` with `KEEPDICTIONARY` is efficient because the data is not decompressed in the process.

However, `REORG` with `KEEPDICTIONARY` does not generate a compression report. You need to use `RUNSTATS` to update the catalog statistics and then query the catalog columns yourself.

Use `KEEPDICTIONARY` if you want to try to compress all the records during `LOAD`, and if you know that the data has not changed much in content since the last dictionary was built. An example of `LOAD` with the `KEEPDICTIONARY` option is shown in the following figure.

```
LOAD DATA
  REPLACE KEEPDICTIONARY
  INTO TABLE DSN81010.DEPT
  ( DEPTNO    POSITION (1)    CHAR(3),
    DEPTNAME  POSITION (5)    VARCHAR,
    MGRNO     POSITION (37)   CHAR(6),
    ADMRDEPT  POSITION (44)   CHAR(3),
    LOCATION  POSITION (48)   CHAR(16) )
  ENFORCE NO
```

Figure 33. Example of `LOAD` with the `KEEPDICTIONARY` option

You can also specify `KEEPDICTIONARY` for specific partitions of a partitioned table space. In this case, each partition has its own dictionary.

You can use the `COPYDICTIONARY` option to compress a dictionary from an existing partition when you load data into another, empty partition. If you perform a `LOAD` of a table space, and specify the `COPYDICTIONARY` option and a dummy input data set, you can then use `INSERT` to insert data into partitions other than the partition that is specified in `COPYDICTIONARY`. The data that is inserted is compressed.

Related reference

Chapter 25, “`REORG TABLESPACE`,” on page 493

Chapter 29, “`RUNSTATS`,” on page 651

Loading data from DL/I

To convert data in IMS DL/I databases from a hierarchic structure to a relational structure so that it can be loaded into DB2 tables, you can use the `DataRefresher™` and `IMS DataPropagator (IMS DPROP)` licensed programs.

You can use `DataRefresher` to create source-to-target mappings and to create DB2 databases. After your databases are created and the mappings are set, you can use `IMS DPROP` to propagate any changes.

IMS DPROP runs as a z/OS application and can extract data from VSAM and physical sequential access method (SAM) files, as well from DL/I databases. Using IMS DPROP, you do not need to extract all the data in a database or data set. You use a statement such as an SQL subselect to indicate which fields to extract and which conditions, if any, the source records or segments must meet.

With JCL models that you edit, you can have IMS DPROP produce the statements for a DB2 LOAD utility job. If you have more than one DB2 subsystem, you can name the one that is to receive the output. IMS DPROP can generate LOAD control statements in the job to relate fields in the extracted data to target columns in DB2 tables.

You have the following choices for how IMS DPROP writes the extracted data:

- 80-byte records, which are included in the generated job stream
- A separate physical sequential data set (which can be dynamically allocated by IMS DPROP), with a logical record length that is long enough to accommodate any row of the extracted data

In the first case, the LOAD control statements that are generated by IMS DPROP include the CONTINUEIF option to describe the extracted data to DB2 LOAD.

In the second case, you can have IMS DPROP name the data set that contains the extracted data in the SYSREC DD statement in the LOAD job. (In that case, IMS DPROP makes no provision for transmitting the extracted data across a network.)

Normally, you do not need to edit the job statements that are produced by IMS DPROP. However, in some cases you might need to edit; for example, if you want to load character data into a DB2 column with INTEGER data type, you need to edit the job statements. (DB2 LOAD does not consider CHAR and INTEGER data to be compatible.)

IMS DPROP is a versatile tool that contains more control, formatting, and output options than are described here. For more information about this tool, see *IMS DataPropagator: An Introduction*.

Loading data by using the cross-loader function

The LOAD utility can directly load the output of a dynamic SQL SELECT statement into a table. The dynamic SQL statement can be executed on data at a local server or at any remote server that complies with DRDA. This functionality is called the DB2 family cross-loader function.

This function enables you to use a single LOAD job to transfer data from one location to another location or from one table to another table at the same location. Your input for this cross-loader function can come from other sources besides DB2 for z/OS; you can use IBM Information Integrator Federation feature for access to data from sources as diverse as Oracle and Sybase, as well as the entire DB2 family of database servers.

Note: If a table that uses row or column access control security is either the data source or a load target for the cross-loader function, the data is subject to the rules defined in the corresponding row permissions or column masks. The CONTROL column in the SYSTABLES catalog table tells whether row or column access control is activated for a table.

To load data by using the cross-loader function:

1. Declare a cursor by using the EXEC SQL utility. Within the cursor definition, specify a SELECT statement that identifies the result table that you want to use as the input data for the LOAD job. The result table cannot include XML columns. The column names in the SELECT statement must be identical to the column names in the table that is being loaded. You can use the AS clause in the SELECT list to change the column names that are returned by the SELECT statement so that they match the column names in the target table. The columns in the SELECT list do not need to be in the same order as the columns in the target table. Also, the SELECT statement needs to refer to any remote tables by their three-part name.
2. Specify the cursor name with the INCURSOR option in the LOAD statement. You cannot load the input data into the same table on which you defined the cursor. You can, however, use the same cursor to load multiple tables.

When you submit the LOAD job, DB2 parses the SELECT statement in the cursor definition and checks for errors. If the statement is invalid, the LOAD utility issues an error message and identifies the condition that prevented the execution. If the statement syntax is valid but an error occurs during execution, the LOAD utility also issues an error message. The utility terminates when it encounters an error. If you specify a data-change-table-reference in the from-clause of the cursor, the changes to the source might be committed even though the load fails.

If no errors occur, the utility loads the result table that is identified by the cursor into the specified target table according to the following rules:

- LOAD matches the columns in the input data to columns in the target table by name, not by sequence.
- If the number of columns in the cursor is less than the number of columns in the table that is being loaded, DB2 loads the missing columns with their default values. If the missing columns are defined as NOT NULL without defaults, the LOAD job fails.
- If a source column is defined as NULLABLE and the corresponding target column is defined as NOT NULL without defaults, the LOAD job fails.
- If you specify IGNOREFIELDS YES, LOAD skips any columns in the input data that do not exist in the target table.
- If the data types in the target table do not match the data types in the cursor, DB2 tries to convert the data as much as possible. If the conversion fails, the LOAD job fails. You might be able to avoid these conversion errors by using SQL conversion functions in the SELECT statement of the cursor declaration.
- If the encoding scheme of the input data is different than the encoding scheme of the target table, DB2 converts the encoding schemes automatically.
- The sum of the lengths of all of the columns cannot exceed 1 GB.
- If the SELECT statement in the cursor definition specifies a table with at least one LOB column and a ROWID column, or a row change timestamp column, or a generated column that was created with the GENERATED ALWAYS clause, you cannot specify this ROWID column, the row change timestamp column, and the generated column in the SELECT list of the cursor.
- If the SELECT statement in the cursor definition specifies a table with a row change timestamp column that was created with the GENERATED ALWAYS clause, you cannot specify this row change timestamp column in the SELECT list of the cursor.

Also, although you do not need to specify casting functions for any distinct types in the input data or target table, you might need to add casting functions to any additional WHERE clauses in the SQL.

Related concepts

“Before running LOAD” on page 268

Related reference

“Sample LOAD control statements” on page 316

Using inline COPY with LOAD

You can create a full image copy data set (SHRLEVEL REFERENCE) during LOAD execution. The new copy is an inline copy. The advantage to using an inline copy is that the table space is not left in COPY-pending status regardless of which LOG option was specified for the utility. Thus, data availability is increased.

To create an inline copy, use the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN keywords. You can specify up to two primary and two secondary copies. Inline copies are produced during the RELOAD phase of LOAD processing.

The SYSCOPY record that is produced by an inline copy contains ICTYPE=F and SHRLEVEL=R. The STYPE column contains an R if the image copy was produced by LOAD REPLACE LOG(YES). It contains an S if the image copy was produced by LOAD REPLACE LOG(NO). The data set that is produced by the inline copy is logically equivalent to a full image copy with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, but the data within the data set differs in the following ways:

- Data pages might be out of sequence and some might be repeated. If pages are repeated, the last one is always the correct copy.
- Space map pages are out of sequence and might be repeated.
- If the compression dictionary is rebuilt with LOAD, the set of dictionary pages occurs twice in the data set, with the second set being the correct one.

The total number of duplicate pages is small, with a negligible effect on the required space for the data set.

You must specify LOAD REPLACE. If you specify RESUME YES or RESUME NO but not REPLACE, an error message is issued and LOAD terminates.

Creating a FlashCopy image copy with LOAD

As part of LOAD processing, you can use FlashCopy technology to take image copies. This method is potentially faster than the traditional DB2 utility methods for creating inline copies and thus reduces the time that data is unavailable. FlashCopy image copies can also potentially reduce the time that is required for recovery operations.

LOAD can also create one to four additional inline image copies by using the traditional methods. Traditional inline image copies are output to a non-VSAM sequential format data set. For more information about creating traditional inline copies, see “Using inline COPY with LOAD.”

To create a FlashCopy image copy with LOAD:

Specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT) in the LOAD utility control statement.

Specify FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT) if you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE and want to ensure that the image copy is consistent for recovery purposes. Otherwise, specify FLASHCOPY(YES). Also, be aware that if you specify CONSISTENT rather than YES, the process of creating an image copy could take longer.

Restriction: You cannot specify CONSISTENT when copying objects that have been defined with the NOT LOGGED attribute.

As an alternative to specifying FLASHCOPY in the LOAD statement, you can set the FLASHCOPY_LOAD subsystem parameter to YES, which specifies that LOAD is to use FLASHCOPY(YES) by default. The value that you specify for the FLASHCOPY option in the LOAD statement always overrides the value for the FLASHCOPY_LOAD subsystem parameter.

Optionally, you can also specify FCCOPYDDN in the LOAD statement. Use this option to specify a template for the FlashCopy image copy. If you do not specify the FCCOPYDDN option in the LOAD statement, the utility uses the value from the FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter.

Restriction: The data sets that you specify for the FlashCopy image copy must be on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes.

When you specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT), LOAD uses FlashCopy technology to create a copy of the table space after the data is loaded. If you also requested one or more inline copies in the LOAD statement (by specifying REPLACE and COPYDDN or RECOVERYDDN), the utility also creates those copies. LOAD does not use the FlashCopy image copy to create those traditional inline copies.

Any indexes that are defined with the COPY YES attribute are also copied with FlashCopy technology.

The FlashCopy image copy fails if the FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available or if any of the other FlashCopy operational restrictions exist. For a list of those operational restrictions, see “FlashCopy image copies” on page 142.

If the FlashCopy copy fails for the target object or auxiliary object and the LOAD statement includes LOG NO but not NOCOPYPEND, the table space is set to COPY-pending status.

Related concepts

“FlashCopy image copies” on page 142

Related reference

➡ DEFAULT TEMPLATE field (FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

➡ LOAD field (FLASHCOPY_LOAD subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

Improving LOAD performance

You might be able to improve the performance of the LOAD utility, depending on your situation.

The optimum order for presenting data to LOAD is as follows:

- If you are loading a single table that has, at most, one foreign key or one index key, sort the data in key sequence. (An index over a foreign key is allowed.) If the key is an index key, sort the data in either ascending or descending order, depending on how the index was defined. If the key is a foreign key, sort the data in ascending order. Null key values are treated as “high” values.
- If you are loading more than one table, choose one of the following methods:

- Load each table separately. Using this method, you can follow the rules listed in the preceding bullet for loading single tables.
- Use the WHEN clause under each INTO TABLE option on your LOAD statement to group your input data by table.

Within each table, sort the data in key sequence.

LOAD performance on a table organized by hash is likely to be slower because the rows are loaded according to the hash key rather than sequentially on the pages.

To improve LOAD utility performance:

Take one of the following actions:

- Use one LOAD DATA statement when loading multiple tables in the same table space. Follow the LOAD statement with multiple INTO TABLE WHEN clauses.
- Run LOAD concurrently against separate partitions of a partitioned table space. Alternatively, specify the INDDN and DISCARDN keywords in your utility JCL to invoke partition parallelism. This specification reduces the elapsed time required for loading large amounts of data into partitioned table spaces.

Recommendation: Use load partition parallelism to load all partitions in a single job when one or more nonpartitioned secondary indexes exists. If the only indexes are the partitioned indexes, using multiple concurrent jobs against separate partitions is better.

- Preprocess the input data.
- Load numeric data in its internal representation.
- Avoid data conversion, such as from integer to decimal or from decimal to floating-point.
- When you specify LOAD REPLACE, specify LOG NO with COPYDDN or RECOVERYDDN to create an inline copy.
- Sort the data in cluster order to avoid needing to reorganize it after loading.
- If you are using 3990 caching, and you have the secondary indexes on RAMAC , consider specifying YES on the UTILITY CACHE OPTION field of installation panel DSNTIPE. This allows DB2 to use sequential prestaging when reading data from RAMAC for the following utilities:
 - LOAD PART *integer* RESUME
 - REORG TABLESPACE PART

For these utilities, prefetch reads remain in the cache longer, thus possibly improving performance of subsequent writes.

- Avoid CCSID and encoding scheme conversions, if possible, by loading data that has the same CCSID as the target table.

CCSID conversions occur during LOAD or UNLOAD operations if you specify a CCSID or encoding scheme option that does not match that of the table that is being loaded or unloaded, respectively. For more information about CCSID conversions, see Situations in which character conversion occurs (DB2 Internationalization Guide).

Related concepts

“Before running LOAD” on page 268

Improving performance for parallel processing

Taking advantage of any new parallelism feature without allocating additional resources or tuning your system can lead to significant performance degradation.

To benefit from parallel operations when using LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE or parallel inserts, especially when secondary indexes are used, you can take the following actions:

- Use a larger buffer pool to improve the buffer-pool hit ratio.
- Define a higher deferred-write threshold to reduce the number of pages that are written to disk, which reduces the I/O time and contention.
- Define a larger checkpoint interval to reduce the number of pages that are written to disk, which reduces the I/O time and contention.
- Use ESS Parallel Access Volume (PAV) to support multiple concurrent I/Os to the same volume that contains secondary index data sets.
- Use secondary index pieces to support multiple concurrent secondary index I/Os.

Improved performance with SORTKEYS

The SORTKEYS keyword improves performance of the index key sort. The SORTKEYS keyword is the default if one of the following conditions is true: SHRLEVEL is not NONE or SHRLEVEL is NONE, and the target table has one or more indexes.

Advantages of the SORTKEYS option: With SORTKEYS, index keys are passed in memory rather than written to work files. Avoiding this I/O to the work files improves LOAD performance.

You also reduce disk space requirements for the SYSUT1 and SORTOUT data sets, especially if you provide an estimate of the number of keys to sort.

The SORTKEYS option reduces the elapsed time from the start of the RELOAD phase to the end of the BUILD phase.

You can reduce the elapsed time of a LOAD job for a table space or partition with more than one defined index by specifying the parameters to invoke a parallel index build.

Estimating the number of keys: You can specify an estimate of the number of keys for the job to sort. If the estimate is omitted or specified as 0, LOAD writes the extracted keys to the work data set, which reduces the performance improvement of using SORTKEYS.

To estimate the number of keys to sort:

1. Count 1 for each index.
2. Count 1 for each foreign key where foreign key and index definitions are not identical.
3. For each foreign key where foreign key and index definitions are identical:
 - a. Count 0 for the first relationship in which the foreign key participates.

- b. Count 1 for subsequent relationships in which the foreign key participates (if any).
4. Multiply the count by the number of rows to be loaded.

If more than one table is being loaded, repeat the preceding steps for each table, and sum the results.

Related concepts

“Building indexes in parallel for LOAD” on page 300

Improving performance with LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT

DB2 preformatting sometimes causes delay, which can affect the performance or execution time consistency of high INSERT applications or LOAD jobs with RESUME YES SHRLEVEL CHANGE. These LOAD jobs are also referred to as online LOAD jobs. When these delays occur and when you can predict the table size for a business processing cycle, consider the LOAD PREFORMAT or REORG PREFORMAT technique. This technique is of value only when DB2 preformatting causes a measurable delay with processing or causes inconsistent application elapsed times for INSERT or online LOAD jobs.

Recommendation: Assess performance before and after using LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT to quantify its value in your environment.

Considerations for using PREFORMAT

PREFORMAT is a technique that is used to eliminate the need for DB2 to preformat new pages in a table space during execution time. This technique might eliminate execution time delays but adds setup time prior to the application's execution. LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT primes a new table space and prepares it for INSERT or online LOAD processing. When the preformatted space is utilized and DB2 needs to extend the table space, normal data set extending and preformatting occurs.

Preformatting for online LOAD or INSERT processing can be desirable for high-insert tables that receive a predictable amount of data because all the required space can be pre-allocated prior to the application's execution. This benefit also applies to the case of a table that acts as a repository for work items that come into a system and that are subsequently used to feed a backend task that processes the work items.

Preformatting of a table space that contains a table that is used for query processing can cause table space scans to read additional empty pages, extending the elapsed time for these queries. LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT is not recommended for tables that have a high ratio of reads to inserts if the reads result in table space scans.

Preformatting boundaries

You can manage your own data sets or have DB2 manage the data sets. For user-managed data sets, DB2 does not delete and reallocate them during utility processing. The size of the data set does not shrink back to the original data set allocation size but either remains the same or increases in size if additional space or data is added. This characteristic has implications when LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT is used because of the preformatting that is done for all free pages between the high-used RBA (or page) to the high-allocated RBA. This preformatting includes secondary extents that have been allocated.

For DB2-managed data sets, DB2 deletes and reallocates them if you specify REPLACE on the LOAD or REORG job. This results in the data sets being re-sized to their original allocation size. They remain that size if the data that is being reloaded does not fill the primary allocation and forces a secondary allocation. This means the LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT option with DB2-managed data causes at least the full primary allocation amount of a data set to be preformatted after the reload of data into the table space.

For both user-managed and DB2-managed data sets, if the data set goes into secondary extents during utility processing, the high-allocated RBA becomes the end of the secondary extent, and that becomes the high value for preformatting.

Preformatting performance considerations

LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT can eliminate dynamic preformatting delays when inserting into a new table space. The cost of this execution time improvement is an increase in the LOAD or REORG time due to the additional required processing to preformat all pages between the data that is loaded or reorganized and the high-allocated RBA. The additional LOAD or REORG time that is required depends on the amount of disk space that is being preformatted.

Table space scans can also be elongated because empty preformatted pages are read. Use the LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT option for table spaces that start out empty and are filled through high insert activity before any query access is performed against the table space. Mixing inserts and nonindexed queries against a preformatted table space might have a negative impact on the query performance without providing a compensating improvement in the insert performance. You will see the best results where a high ratio of inserts to read operations exists.

Improving performance with LOAD by avoiding LOB and XML materialization

Using file reference variables can eliminate the need to load large LOBs or XML documents into virtual storage while the LOAD utility is running. Avoiding materialization can have a positive impact on the performance of the LOAD utility.

LOB or XML data is not materialized into memory under the following conditions:

- The LOAD utility eliminates materialization when using file reference variables for XML data that is greater than 32 KB in size.
- The LOAD utility eliminates materialization when using file reference variables for large LOB data in a row with only 1 LOB. Large LOBs are usually considered to be 2 MB or greater in size.

Converting input data

The LOAD utility converts data between compatible data types. The source type is used for user-defined distinct types.

The tables shown below identify the compatibility of data types for assignments and comparisons. Y indicates that the data types are compatible. N indicates that the data types are not compatible. D indicates the defaults that are used when you do not specify the input data type in a field specification of the INTO TABLE statement.

The following table shows the compatibility of numeric data types.

Table 39. Compatibility of converting numeric data types.

Input data types	Output data types					
	SMALLINT	BIGINT	INTEGER	DECIMAL	FLOAT	DECFLOAT
SMALLINT	D	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
BIGINT	Y	D	Y	Y	Y	Y
INTEGER	Y	Y	D	Y	Y	Y
DECIMAL	Y	Y	Y	D	Y ¹	Y ¹
FLOAT	Y	Y	Y	Y	D	Y
DECFLOAT	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	D

Notes:

1. Loading a DECFLOAT or FLOAT column from a DECIMAL PACKED input field can produce unpredictable results. Instead, use the DECIMAL EXTERNAL format for the input field.

The following table shows the compatibility of character data types.

Table 40. Compatibility of converting character data types.

Input data types	Output data types									
	BLOB	CHAR	VAR-CHAR	CLOB	GRAPHIC	VAR-GRAPHIC	DBCLOB	ROWID	BINARY	VAR-BINARY
CHAR	Y	D	Y	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y	Y
CHAR MIXED	Y	D	Y	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y ¹	N	Y	Y
VARCHAR	Y	Y	D	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y	Y
VARCHAR MIXED	Y	Y	D	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y ¹	N	Y	Y
GRAPHIC	N	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y ¹	D	Y	Y	N	N	N
VAR-GRAPHIC	N	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	D	Y	N	N	N
ROWID	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	D	N	N
BINARY	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	D	Y
VAR-BINARY	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	D

Note:

1. Conversion applies when either the input data or the target table is Unicode.

The following table shows the compatibility of time data types.

Table 41. Compatibility of converting time data types.

Input data types	Output data types			
	DATE	TIME	TIMESTAMP	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE
DATE EXTERNAL	D	N	N	N
TIME EXTERNAL	N	D	N	N
TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL	Y	Y	D	Y
TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE EXTERNAL	Y	Y	Y	D

Input fields with data types CHAR, CHAR MIXED, CLOB, DBCLOB, VARCHAR, VARCHAR MIXED, GRAPHIC, GRAPHIC EXTERNAL, and VARGRAPHIC are converted from the CCSIDs of the input file to the CCSIDs of the table space when they do not match. For example:

- You specify the ASCII or UNICODE option for the input data, and the table space is EBCDIC.
- You specify the EBCDIC or UNICODE option, and the table space is ASCII.
- You specify the ASCII or EBCDIC option, and the table space is Unicode.

- The CCSID option is specified, and the CCSIDs of the input data are not the same as the CCSIDs of the table space.

CLOB, BLOB, and DBCLOB input field types cannot be converted to any other field type.

Conversion errors cause LOAD:

- To abend, if no discard data set is provided or if the discard limit is exceeded.
- To map the input record for subsequent discarding and continue (if a discard data set is provided)

Truncation of the decimal part of numeric data is not considered a conversion error.

Specifying input fields

You can specify input fields in the LOAD utility control statement.

To specify input fields in a LOAD utility control statement:

Take one of the following actions:

- Specify the length of VARCHAR, BLOB, CLOB, DBCLOB, ROWID, VARBINARY, TIMESTAMP, and TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE data in the input file.
- Explicitly define all input field specifications.
- Use DECIMAL EXTERNAL(*length,scale*) in full.
- Specify decimal points explicitly in the input file.

Specifying the TRUNCATE and STRIP options

You can load certain fields that are longer than the length of target column by truncating the data. DB2 truncates the data only when you explicitly specify the TRUNCATE option.

You can specify TRUNCATE with the CHAR, VARCHAR, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, BINARY, and VARBINARY data type options. LOAD first applies any CCSID conversion, and then truncates the data. The TRUNCATE option of the LOAD utility truncates string data, and it has a different purpose than the SQL TRUNCATE scalar function.

You can also remove a specified character from the beginning, end, or both ends of the data by specifying the STRIP option. This option is valid only with the CHAR, VARCHAR, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, BINARY, and VARBINARY data type options. If you specify both the TRUNCATE and STRIP options, LOAD performs the strip operation first. For example, if you specify both TRUNCATE and STRIP for a field that is to be loaded into a VARCHAR(5) column, LOAD alters the character strings as shown in the following table. In this table, an underscore represents a character that is to be stripped.

Table 42. Results of specifying both TRUNCATE and STRIP for data that is to be loaded into a VARCHAR(5) column.

Specified STRIP option	Input string	String after strip operation	String that is loaded
STRIP BOTH	'_ABCDEFG_'	'ABCDEFG'	'ABCDE'

Table 42. Results of specifying both TRUNCATE and STRIP for data that is to be loaded into a VARCHAR(5) column. (continued)

Specified STRIP option	Input string	String after strip operation	String that is loaded
STRIP LEADING	'_ABC_'	'ABC_'	'ABC_'
STRIP TRAILING	'_ABC_DEF_'	'_ABC_DEF'	'_ABC_'

How LOAD builds indexes while loading data

LOAD builds all the indexes that are defined for any table that is being loaded.

At the same time the indexes are being built, LOAD checks for duplicate values of any unique index key. If LOAD finds any duplicate values, none of the corresponding rows are loaded. Error messages identify the input records that produce duplicates; optionally, the records are copied to a discard data set. At the end of the job, a summary report lists all errors that are found.

For unique indexes, any two null values are assumed to be equal, unless the index was created with the UNIQUE WHERE NOT NULL clause. In that case, if the key is a single column, it can contain any number of null values, although its other values must be unique.

Neither the loaded table nor its indexes contain any of the records that might have produced an error. Using the error messages, you can identify faulty input records, correct them, and load them again. If you use a discard data set, you can correct the records there and add them to the table with LOAD RESUME.

Building indexes in parallel for LOAD

Parallel index build reduces the elapsed time for a LOAD job by sorting the index keys and rebuilding multiple indexes in parallel, rather than sequentially. Optimally, a pair of subtasks process each index; one subtask sorts extracted keys while the other subtask builds the index. LOAD begins building each index as soon as the corresponding sort produces its first sorted record.

LOAD uses parallel index build if all of the following conditions are true:

- More than one index needs to be built.
- The LOAD utility statement specifies a non-zero estimate of the number of keys on the SORTKEYS option.

You can either allow the utility to dynamically allocate the data sets that the SORT phase needs, or provide the necessary data sets yourself. Select one of the following methods to allocate sort work and message data sets:

Method 1: LOAD determines the optimal number of sort work and message data sets.

1. Specify the SORTDEVT keyword in the utility statement.
2. Allow dynamic allocation of sort work data sets by **not** supplying SORTWKnn DD statements in the LOAD utility JCL.
3. Allocate UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

Method 2: You control allocation of sort work data sets, while LOAD allocates message data sets.

1. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form *SW_{nn}WK_{mm}*.
2. Allocate UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

Method 3: You have the most control over rebuild processing; you must specify both sort work and message data sets.

1. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form *SW_{nn}WK_{mm}*.
2. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form *UTPRIN_{nn}*.

Using this method does not eliminate the requirement for a UTPRINT DD card.

Data sets used

If you select Method 2 or 3 in the preceding information, use the following information to define the necessary data sets.

Each sort subtask must have its own group of sort work data sets and its own print message data set. Possible reasons to allocate data sets in the utility job JCL rather than using dynamic allocation are:

- To control the size and placement of the data sets
- To minimize device contention
- To optimally utilize free disk space
- To limit the number of utility subtasks that are used to build indexes

The DD names *SW_{nn}WK_{mm}* define the sort work data sets that are used during utility processing. *nn* identifies the subtask pair, and *mm* identifies one or more data sets that are to be used by that subtask pair. For example:

SW01WK01

The first sort work data set that is used by the subtask as it builds the first index.

SW01WK02

The second sort work data set that is used by the subtask as it builds the first index.

SW02WK01

The first sort work data set that is used by the subtask as it builds the second index.

SW02WK02

The second sort work data set that is used by the subtask as it builds the second index.

The DD names *UTPRIN_{nn}* define the sort work message data sets that are used by the utility subtask pairs. *nn* identifies the subtask pair.

Every time you invoke LOAD, new *UTPRIN_{nn}* data sets are dynamically allocated. LOAD does not reuse *UTPRIN_{nn}* data sets from previous job steps. This behavior might cause the number of JES2 job queue elements to be consumed more quickly than expected.

Determining the number of sort subtasks

The maximum number of utility subtask pairs that are started for parallel index build is equal to the number of indexes that are to be built.

LOAD determines the number of subtask pairs according to the following guidelines:

- The number of subtask pairs equals the number of sort work data set groups that are allocated.
- The number of subtask pairs equals the number of message data sets that are allocated.
- If you allocate both sort work and message data set groups, the number of subtask pairs equals the smallest number of data sets that are allocated.

Allocation of sort subtasks

The LOAD utility attempts to assign one sort subtask pair for each index that is to be built. If the LOAD utility cannot start enough subtasks to build one index per subtask pair, it allocates any excess indexes across the pairs (in the order that the indexes were created), so that one or more subtask pairs might build more than one index.

During parallel index build processing, LOAD assigns all foreign keys to the first utility subtask pair. Remaining indexes are then distributed among the remaining subtask pairs according to the creation date of the index. If a table space does not participate in any relationships, LOAD distributes all indexes among the subtask pairs according to the index creation date, assigning the first created index to the first subtask pair.

Refer to the following table for conceptual information about subtask pairing when the number of indexes (seven indexes) exceeds the available number of subtask pairs (five subtask pairs).

Table 43. LOAD subtask pairing for a relational table space

Subtask pair	Assigned index
SW01WK mm	Foreign keys, fifth created index
SW02WK mm	First created index, sixth created index
SW03WK mm	Second created index, seventh created index
SW04WK mm	Third created index
SW05WK mm	Fourth created index

Estimating the sort work file size

If you choose to provide the data sets, you need to know the size and number of keys in all of the indexes that are being processed by the subtask in order to calculate each sort work file size. After you determine which indexes are assigned to which subtask pairs, use one of the following formulas to calculate the required space:

- If the indexes being processed include a mixture of data-partitioned secondary indexes and nonpartitioned indexes, use the following formula: $2 * (\textit{longest index key} + 15) * (\textit{number of extracted keys})$
- Otherwise, if only one type of index is being built, use the following formula: $2 * (\textit{longest index key} + 13) * (\textit{number of extracted keys})$

longest index key

The length of the longest key that is to be processed by the subtask. For the first subtask pair for LOAD, compare the length of the longest key and the length of the longest foreign key, and use the larger value. For

nonpadded indexes, longest index key means the maximum possible length of a key with all varying-length columns, padded to their maximum lengths, plus 2 bytes for each varying-length column.

number of extracted keys

The number of keys from all indexes that are to be sorted and that the subtask is to process.

Related concepts

“Parallel index building for REORG TABLESPACE” on page 561

Related tasks

“Improved performance with SORTKEYS” on page 295

How LOAD leaves free space

When it loads data into a nonsegmented table space, the LOAD utility leaves one free page after reaching the FREEPAGE limit. This free page is added regardless of whether the loaded records belong to the same or different tables.

When loading into a segmented table space, LOAD leaves free pages, and free space on each page, in accordance with the current values of the FREEPAGE and PCTFREE parameters. (You can set those values with the CREATE TABLESPACE, ALTER TABLESPACE, CREATE INDEX, or ALTER INDEX statements.) LOAD leaves one free page after reaching the FREEPAGE limit for each table in the table space.

For XML table spaces, FREEPAGE and PCTFREE are not processed until the first REORG.

Loading with RECOVER-pending, REBUILD-pending, or REORG-pending status

You cannot load records by specifying RESUME YES if any partition of a table space is in the RECOVER-pending status. In addition, you cannot load records if any index on the table that is being loaded is in the REBUILD-pending status.

If you are replacing a partition, these preceding restrictions are relaxed; the partition that is being replaced can be in the RECOVER-pending status, and its corresponding index partition can be in the REBUILD-pending status. However, all secondary indexes must **not** be in the page set REBUILD-pending status and KEEPDICTIONARY must not have been specified on active compressed partitions.

The one RECOVER-pending restrictive status has the following description:

RECP RECOVER-pending status is set on a table space or partition. If a single logical partition is in RECP status, the partition is treated as RECP status for SQL access. A single logical partition in RECP status does not restrict utility access to other logical partitions that are not in RECP status. RECP status is reset by recovering only the single logical partition.

The four REBUILD-pending restrictive states have the following descriptions:

RBDP REBUILD-pending status is set on a physical or logical index partition. The individual physical or logical partition is inaccessible and must be rebuilt by using the REBUILD INDEX utility, or recovered by using the RECOVER utility.

PSRBD

Page set REBUILD-pending is set on nonpartitioned secondary indexes. Partitioned indexes, including data-partitioned secondary indexes, are never placed in a page set REBUILD-pending status. The entire index space is inaccessible until you rebuild it with the REBUILD utility, or recover it with the RECOVER utility.

RBDP*

REBUILD-pending star status is set only on logical partitions of nonpartitioning indexes. The entire index is inaccessible, but it is made available again when the affected partitions are rebuilt by using the REBUILD INDEX utility, or recovered by using the RECOVER utility.

The one REORG-pending restrictive status has the following description:

REORP

REORG-pending status indicates that a table space or partition needs to be reorganized.

Related concepts

“Resetting the REBUILD-pending status” on page 401

Exit procedures

Any field procedure that is associated with a column of a table that is being loaded is executed to encode the data before it is loaded. The field procedures for all columns are executed before any edit or validation procedure for the row.

Any field specification that describes the data is checked before a field procedure is executed. That is, the field specification must describe the data as it appears in the input record.

Loading ROWID columns

Columns that are defined as ROWID can be designated as input fields; refer to the LOAD field specification syntax diagram. LOAD PART is not allowed if the ROWID column is part of the partitioning key. In this situation, DB2 issues error message DSNU256I.

Columns that are defined as ROWID can be designated as GENERATED BY DEFAULT or GENERATED ALWAYS. With GENERATED ALWAYS, DB2 always generates a row ID.

ROWID generated by default

The LOAD utility can set from input data columns that are defined as ROWID GENERATED BY DEFAULT. The input field must be specified as a ROWID. No conversions are allowed. The input data for a ROWID column must be a unique, valid value for a row ID. If the value of the row is not unique, a duplicate key violation occurs. If such an error occurs, the load fails. In this case, you need to discard the duplicate value and re-run the LOAD job with a new unique value, or allow DB2 to generate the value of the row ID.

You can use the DEFAULTIF attribute with the ROWID keyword. If the condition is met, the column is loaded with a value that is generated by DB2. You cannot use the NULLIF attribute with the ROWID keyword because row ID columns cannot be null.

Row change timestamp generated always

The row change timestamp column that is defined as GENERATED ALWAYS cannot be included in the field specification list unless you specify IGNOREFIELDS YES, because DB2 generates the timestamp value for this column.

Loading a LOB column

LOB columns are treated by the LOAD utility as varying-length data. The length value for a LOB column must be 4 bytes.

To load a LOB column:

Take one of the following actions:

- **Load the LOB value directly from the input data set:** To load a LOB value directly from the input data set:
 1. In the input data set, include the LOB value preceded by a 2-byte binary field that contains the length of the LOB.
 2. Specify CLOB, BLOB, or DBCLOB in the field specification portion of the LOAD statement. These options indicate that the field in the input data set is a LOB value. For example, to load a CLOB into the RESUME column, specify something like RESUME POSITION(7) CLOB. This specification indicates that position 7 of the input data set contains the length of the CLOB followed by the CLOB value that is to be loaded into the RESUME column.
 3. If the input record is in spanned record format, specify FORMAT SPANNED YES and specify the LOB fields at the end of the field specification list.
- **Load the LOB value from a file that is listed in the input data set:** When you load a LOB value from a file, the LOB value can be greater than 32 KB. To load a LOB value from a file:
 1. In the input data set, specify the names of the files that contain the LOB values. Each file can be either a PDS, PDSE, or an HFS file.
 2. Specify either BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF in the field specification portion of the LOAD statement. For example, to load a LOB into the RESUME column of a table, specify something like RESUME POSITION(7) VARCHAR CLOBF. This specification indicates that position 7 of the input data set contains the name of a file from which a varying-length CLOB is to be loaded into the RESUME column.
 3. To insert an empty LOB value into a LOB column, specify one of the following items in the LOAD statement:
 - A blank file name for CHAR CLOBF, CHAR BLOBF, or CHAR DBCLOBF
 - A blank file name for VARCHAR CLOBF, VARCHAR BLOBF, or VARCHAR DBCLOBF
 - A file name with length 0 for VARCHAR CLOBF, VARCHAR BLOBF, or VARCHAR DBCLOB

Each of these items tell the LOAD utility that the LOB is empty, and the LOAD utility does insert it into the auxiliary table space. LOAD uses a column indicator to indicate that the LOB is empty.

This step assumes that the LOB is not NULL.

- **Load data from another table:** To transfer data from one location to another location or from one table to another table at the same location, use a cursor. This method of loading data is called the cross-loader function.

When you use the cross-loader function, the LOB value can be greater than 32 KB. For this method, DB2 uses a separate buffer for LOB data and therefore stores only 8 bytes per LOB column. The sum of the lengths of the non-LOB columns plus the sum of 8 bytes per LOB column cannot exceed 32 KB.

Related tasks

“Loading data by using the cross-loader function” on page 290

LOAD LOG on a LOB table space

A LOB table space that is defined with LOG YES or LOG NO affects logging during the load of a LOB column.

The following table shows the logging output and LOB table space effect, if any.

Table 44. LOAD LOG and REORG LOG impact for a LOB table space

LOAD LOG/ REORG LOG keyword	LOB table space LOG attribute	What is logged	LOB table space status after utility completes
LOG YES	LOG YES	Control information and LOB data	No pending status
LOG YES	LOG NO	Control information	No pending status
LOG NO	LOG YES	Nothing	COPY-Pending ¹
LOG NO	LOG NO	Nothing	COPY-Pending ¹

Note:

1. REORG LOG NO of a LOB table space requires SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, which requires that an inline copy be taken during the REORG. This means that you never set COPY-pending for REORG of LOB table spaces under any circumstances

Loading an XML column

XML columns are treated by the LOAD utility as varying-length data. The length value for an XML column must be 2 bytes.

To load an XML column:

Use one of the following approaches:

- **Load the XML value directly from the input data set:** To load an XML value directly from the input data set:
 1. In the input data set, include the XML value preceded by a 2-byte binary field that contains the length of the XML column.
 2. When loading directly from an input record, you must specify XML as the input field type. This is the only acceptable input field type for loading XML column from input record. For example, to load a data into the RESUME column which is XML, specify something like RESUME POSITION(7) XML. This specification indicates that position 7 of the input data set contains the length of the XML followed by the XML value that is to be loaded into the RESUME column.

If the input data is in Extensible Dynamic Binary XML DB2 Client/Server Binary XML Format (binary XML format), you need to specify XML BINARYXML as the input field type.
 3. If the input record is in spanned record format, specify FORMAT SPANNED YES and specify the XML fields at the end of the field specification list.

- **Load the XML value from a file that is listed in the input data set:** When you load an XML value from a file, the XML value can be greater than 32 KB. To load an XML value from a file:
 1. In the input data set, specify the name of the file that contains the value to be loaded to the XML column. The file name can be a PDS, PDSE or a HFS file.
 2. Specify either BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF in the field specification portion of the LOAD statement. For example, to load a CLOB file into an XML column RESUME, specify something like RESUME POSITION(7) VARCHAR CLOBF. This specification indicates that position 7 of the input data set contains the name of a file from which a varying-length CLOB is to be loaded into the RESUME column.
 If the input data is in binary XML format, you need to specify BLOBF BINARYXML in the field specification.
 3. When data loaded into an XML column that has an XML type modifier, LOAD validates the input data according to the XML schema that is specified in the type modifier. If LOAD detects a violation, it deletes the row and issues a message to identify the violation.

LOAD LOG on an XML table space

An XML table space that is defined with LOG YES or LOG NO affects logging during the load of an XML column.

The following table shows the logging output and XML table space effect, if any.

Table 45. LOAD LOG impact for an XML table space

LOAD LOG keyword	XML table space LOG attribute	What is logged	XML table space status after utility completes
LOG YES	LOG YES	Data	No pending status
LOG YES	LOG NO	Nothing	No pending status
LOG NO	LOG YES	Nothing	COPY-Pending
LOG NO	LOG NO	Nothing	ICOPY-Pending

Running LOAD RESUME YES SHRLEVEL CHANGE without logging

You can run LOAD RESUME YES SHRLEVEL CHANGE without logging.

To run LOAD RESUME YES SHRLEVEL CHANGE without logging:

1. Alter the table space to NOT LOGGED.
2. Run the online LOAD RESUME.
3. Alter the table space back to LOGGED.
4. Take an image copy of the table space.

You cannot restart LOAD against a NOT LOGGED table space. If the load fails, terminate the load job, recover the data from a prior image copy, and rerun the LOAD job.

Collecting inline statistics while loading a table

If you do not specify `LOAD RESUME YES`, you can use the `STATISTICS` keyword to gather inline statistics. Using the `STATISTICS` keyword eliminates the need to run `RUNSTATS` after loading a table space. However, if you perform a `LOAD PART` operation, you should run `RUNSTATS INDEX` on the nonpartitioned secondary indexes to update the catalog data about these indexes.

Use either the `STATISTICS` option or the `RUNSTATS` utility to collect statistics so that the DB2 catalog statistics contain information about the newly loaded data. Recording these new statistics enables DB2 to select SQL paths with accurate information. Then rebind any application plans that depend on the loaded tables to update the path selection of any embedded SQL statements.

If you perform a `LOAD` operation on a base table that contains an XML column, DB2 does not collect inline statistics for the related XML table space or its indexes.

Collecting inline statistics for discarded rows: If you specify the `DISCARD` and `STATISTICS` options and a row is found with check constraint errors or conversion errors, the row is not loaded into the table and DB2 does not collect inline statistics on it. However, the `LOAD` utility collects inline statistics prior to discarding rows that have unique index violations or referential integrity violations. In these cases, if the number of discarded rows is large enough to make the statistics significantly inaccurate, run the `RUNSTATS` utility separately on the table to gather the most accurate statistics.

Collecting inline statistics for data partitioned secondary indexes: To collect inline statistics on data partitioned secondary indexes, you must allocate sort work data sets.

Related reference

“Data sets that `LOAD` uses” on page 270

Inline COPY for a base table space

If you take an inline image copy of a table that has LOB columns, DB2 makes a copy of the base table space, but does not copy the LOB table spaces.

Termination of LOAD

You can terminate a `LOAD` utility job.

If you terminate `LOAD` by using the `TERM UTILITY` command during the reload phase, the records are not erased. The table space remains in `RECOVER-pending` status, and indexes remain in the `REBUILD-pending` status.

If you terminate `LOAD` by using the `TERM UTILITY` command during the sort or build phases, the indexes that are not yet built remain in the `REBUILD-pending` status.

If you terminate a `LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE`, uncommitted records are rolled back, but committed records remain in the table. The table space is not in `RECOVER-pending` status, and the indexes are not in `REBUILD-pending` status.

If the `LOAD` job terminates during the `RELOAD`, `SORT`, `BUILD`, or `SORTBLD` phases, both `RESTART` and `RESTART(PHASE)` phases restart from the beginning of

the RELOAD phase. However, restart of LOAD RESUME YES or LOAD PART RESUME YES in the BUILD or SORTBLD phase results in message DSNU257I.

The following table lists the LOAD phases and their effects on any pending states when the utility is terminated in a particular phase.

Table 46. LOAD phases and their effects on pending states when terminated.

Phase	Effect on pending status
Reload	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Places table spaces in RECOVER-pending status, and then resets the status if there are no unique indexes. Places indexes in REBUILD-pending status. Places table spaces in COPY-pending status if there are no unique indexes. Places table spaces in CHECK-pending status.
Build	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resets REBUILD-pending status for non-unique indexes. Resets RECOVER-pending status for table spaces with unique indexes, if no INDEXVAL phase is needed. Places table spaces in COPY-pending status.
Indexval	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resets REBUILD-pending status for unique indexes. Resets RECOVER-pending status for table spaces with unique indexes. Places table spaces in COPY-pending status.
Enforce	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resets CHECK-pending status for table spaces.

Restart of LOAD

You can restart a LOAD utility job.

You can restart LOAD at its last commit point (RESTART(CURRENT)) or at the beginning of the phase during which operation ceased (RESTART(PHASE)). LOAD output messages identify the completed phases; use the DISPLAY command to identify the specific phase during which operation stopped.

By default, DB2 uses RESTART(CURRENT), except if LOAD is restarting during the UTILINIT phase or the UTILTERM phase. In both of these situations, DB2 uses RESTART(PHASE) by default. You can override the default RESTART values by using the RESTART parameter.

The following restrictions apply to restarting LOAD jobs:

- If LOAD abnormally terminates or a system failure occurs while LOAD is in the UTILTERM phase, you must restart with RESTART(PHASE).
- If you restart a LOAD job for a table that has LOB columns that specified the RESUME YES option and SORTKEYS NO specified on the stopped job, you must use RESTART(CURRENT).
- If you use RESTART(PHASE) to restart a LOAD job that specified RESUME NO, the LOB table spaces and indexes on auxiliary tables are reset.
- For a table that has LOB columns, you cannot restart a LOAD job that uses the INCURSOR option.
- If you restart a LOAD job that uses the STATISTICS keyword, inline statistics collection does not occur. To update catalog statistics, run the RUNSTATS utility after the restarted LOAD job completes.
- If you are using a BatchPipes file, you cannot restart the LOAD utility. If the application that populates the BatchPipes file terminates, you need to terminate the job where LOAD is executing. If the LOAD utility was invoked from a

stored procedure, you also need to terminate the WLM application environment of the LOAD utility that reads the BatchPipes file. After you terminate the job, terminate the LOAD utility using the DB2 TERM UTILITY command, and then you can resubmit the LOAD job.

The following table provides information about restarting LOAD, depending on the phase that LOAD was in when the job stopped. The TYPE column distinguishes between the effects of specifying RESTART or RESTART(PHASE). Additional phase restrictions are explained in the notes.

Table 47. LOAD restart information

Phase	Type of RESTART	Required data sets	Notes
RELOAD	CURRENT	SYSREC and SYSUT1 SYSMAP and SYSERR	1, 2, 10
	PHASE	SYSREC	3, 10
SORT	CURRENT	SYSUT1	4, 10
	PHASE	SYSUT1	10
BUILD	CURRENT	SORTOUT	4, 5, 10
	PHASE	SORTOUT	5, 10
SORTBLD	CURRENT	SYSUT1 and SORTOUT	5, 6, 10
	PHASE	SYSUT1 and SORTOUT	5, 6, 10
INDEXVAL	CURRENT	SYSERR or SYSUT1	2
	PHASE	SYSERR or SYSUT1	2
ENFORCE	CURRENT	SORTOUT and SYSUT1	7
	PHASE	SORTOUT and SYSUT1	7
DISCARD	CURRENT	SYSMAP and SYSERR SORTOUT and SYSUT1	7, 8
	PHASE	SYSMAP and SYSERR SORTOUT and SYSUT1	7, 8
REPORT	CURRENT	SYSERR or SORTOUT SYSMAP and SYSERR	7, 9
	PHASE	SYSERR or SORTOUT SYSMAP and SYSERR	7, 9

Table 47. LOAD restart information (continued)

Phase	Type of RESTART	Required data sets	Notes
Note:			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SYSMAP and SYSERR data sets might not be required for all load jobs. 2. If the SYSERR data set is not required and has not been provided, LOAD uses SYSUT1 as a work data set to contain error information. 3. You must not restart during the RELOAD phase if you specified SYSREC DD *.This statement prevents internal commits from being taken, and RESTART performs like RESTART(PHASE), except with no data back out. Also, you must not restart if your SYSREC input consists of multiple, concatenated data sets. 4. The utility can be restarted with either RESTART or RESTART(PHASE). However, because this phase does not take checkpoints, RESTART is always re-executed from the beginning of the phase. 5. A LOAD RESUME YES job cannot be restarted in the BUILD or SORTBLD phase. 6. Use RESTART or RESTART(PHASE) to restart at the beginning of the RELOAD phase. 7. This utility can be restarted with either RESTART or RESTART(PHASE).However, the utility can be re-executed from the last internal checkpoint. This is dependent on the data sets that are used and whether any input data sets have been rewritten. 8. The SYSUT1 data set is required if the target table space is segmented or partitioned. 9. If report is required and this is a load without discard processing, SYSMAP is required to complete the report phase. 10. Any job that finished abnormally in the RELOAD, SORT, BUILD, or SORTBUILD phase restarts from the beginning of the RELOAD phase. 			

You can restart LOAD at its last commit point or at the beginning of the phase during which operation ceased. LOAD output messages identify the completed phases; use the DISPLAY command to identify the specific phase during which operation stopped.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Related tasks

“Restarting after the output data set is full” on page 40

After running LOAD

You can perform certain activities after you run the LOAD utility.

Copying the loaded table space or partition

If you use LOG YES, consider taking a full image copy of the loaded table space or partition to reduce the processing time of subsequent recovery operations. If you also specify RESUME NO or REPLACE, indicating that this is the first load into the table space, taking two or more full image copies is recommended to enable recovery.

Alternatively, take primary and backup inline copies when you do a LOAD REPLACE; full table space or partition image copies that are taken after the LOAD completes are not necessary. However, you might need to take images copies of indexes.

Resetting COPY-pending status

If you load with LOG NO and do not take an inline copy, LOAD places a table space in the COPY-pending status. Immediately after that operation, DB2 cannot recover the table space (although you can, by loading it again).

Prepare for recovery, and turn off the restriction, by making a full image copy using SHRLEVEL REFERENCE. (If you end the copy job before it is finished, the table space is still in COPY-pending status.)

You can also remove the restriction by using one of these operations:

- LOAD REPLACE LOG YES
- LOAD REPLACE LOG NO with an inline copy
- REORG LOG YES
- REORG LOG NO with an inline copy
- REPAIR SET with NOCOPYPEND

If you use LOG YES and do not make an image copy of the table space, subsequent recovery operations are possible but take longer than if you had made an image copy.

A table space that is in COPY-pending status can be read without restriction; however, it cannot be updated.

Resetting REBUILD-pending status

LOAD sets index spaces to REBUILD-pending status when a REBUILD job ends before the INDEXVAL phase is complete.

LOAD places all the index spaces for a table space in the REBUILD-pending status if you end the job (by using the TERM UTILITY command) before it completes the INDEXVAL phase. DB2 places the table space in RECOVER-pending status if you end the job before the job completes the RELOAD phase.

Resetting the RECOVER-pending status depends on when the utility terminated:

- If the data is intact and you have a full image copy of the affected indexes, you can recover the indexes using the RECOVER INDEX utility. Run the DISPLAY DATABASE command and examine the output. Data is intact when the output indicates that the indexes are in REBUILD-pending status and the table space is not in RECOVER-pending status. If you do not have an image copy available, you must rebuild the entire index by using the REBUILD INDEX utility. However, for partitioning indexes and for secondary indexes that are in REBUILD-pending (RBDP) status, you can use the PART option of REBUILD INDEX to rebuild separate partitions of the index.
- If the data is not intact, you can either load the table again or recover it to a prior point of consistency. Run the DISPLAY DATABASE command and examine the output. The recovery puts the table space into COPY-pending status and places all indexes in REBUILD-pending status.

Resetting the CHECK-pending status

LOAD places a table space in the CHECK-pending status if its referential integrity is in doubt or its check constraints are violated. The intent of the restriction is to encourage the use of the CHECK DATA utility, which locates invalid data and, optionally, removes it.

If CHECK DATA removes the invalid data, the remaining data satisfies all check and referential constraints and the CHECK-pending restriction is lifted.

Although CHECK DATA is usually preferred, you can also reset the CHECK-pending status by using any of the following operations:

- Drop tables that contain invalid rows.

- Replace the data in the table space, by using LOAD REPLACE and enforcing check and referential constraints.
- Recover all members of the table space that were set to a prior quiesce point.
- Use REPAIR SET with NOCHECKPEND.

Running CHECK DATA after LOAD REPLACE

Suppose that you choose to replace the contents of the project table by using LOAD REPLACE. While doing that, you let LOAD enforce its referential and table check constraints, so that the project table contains only valid records at the end of the job; it is not in the CHECK-pending status. However, its dependent, the project activity table, is placed in CHECK-pending status: some of its rows might have project numbers that are no longer present in the project table. (If the project table had any other dependents, they also would be in CHECK-pending status.)

You want to run CHECK DATA against the table space that contains the project activity table to reset the status. First, review the review the description of DELETE YES and exception tables. Then, when you run the utility, ensure the availability of all table spaces that contain either parent tables or dependent tables of any table in the table spaces that are being checked.

DELETE YES

This option deletes invalid records and resets the status, but it is **not** the default. Use DELETE NO, the default, to find out quickly how large your problem is; you can choose to correct it by reloading, rather than correcting the current situation.

Exception tables

With DELETE YES, you do not use a discard data set to receive copies of the invalid records; instead, you use another DB2 table called an exception table. This topic assumes that you already have an exception table available for every table that is subject to referential or table check constraints.

If you use DELETE YES, you must name an exception table for every descendent of every table in every table space that is being checked. Deletes that are caused by CHECK DATA are not subject to any of the SQL delete rules; they cascade without restraint to the lowest-level descendent.

If table Y is the exception table for table X, name it with the following clause in the CHECK DATA statement:

```
FOR EXCEPTION IN X USE Y
```

Error and sort data sets

The options ERRDDN, WORKDDN, SORTDEVT, and SORTNUM work in CHECK DATA just as they do in LOAD. That is, you need an error data set, and you can name work data sets for sort and merge processing or let DB2 allocate them dynamically.

Example:

In the following example, CHECK DATA is to be run against the table space that contains the project activity table. Assume that the exception tables DSN81010.EPROJACT and DSN81010.EEPA exist.

```

CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.PROJACT
DELETE YES
FOR EXCEPTION IN DSN81010.PROJACT USE DSN81010.EPROJACT
                IN DSN81010.EMPPROJACT USE DSN81010.EEPA
SORTDEVT SYSDA
SORTNUM 4

```

If the statement does not name error or work data sets, the JCL for the job must contain DD statements similar to the following DD statements:

```

//SYSERR DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=A

```

Running CHECK DATA after LOAD RESUME

Suppose now that you want to add records to both the project and project activity tables by using LOAD RESUME. Furthermore, you want to run both jobs at the same time, which you can do because the tables belong to separate table spaces. The only new consideration is that you must load the project activity table by using ENFORCE NO because you cannot assume that the parent project table is already fully loaded.

When the two jobs are complete, what table spaces are in CHECK-pending status?

- If you enforced constraints when loading the project table, the table space is **not** in CHECK-pending status.
- Because you did not enforce constraints on the project activity table, the table space **is** in CHECK-pending status.
- Because you used LOAD RESUME (not LOAD REPLACE) when loading the project activity table, its dependents (the employee-to-project-activity table) are **not** in CHECK-pending status. That is, the operation might not delete any parent rows from the project table, and therefore might not violate the referential integrity of its dependent. However if you delete records from PROJACT when checking, you still need an exception table for EMPPROJACT.

Therefore you should check the data in the project activity table.

DB2 records the identifier of the first row of the table that might violate referential or table check constraints. For partitioned table spaces, that identifier is in SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART; for nonpartitioned table spaces, that identifier is in SYSIBM.SYSTABLES. The SCOPE PENDING option speeds the checking by confining it to just the rows that might be in error.

Example:

In the following example, CHECK DATA is to be run against the table space that contains the project activity table after LOAD RESUME:

```

CHECK DATA TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.PROJACT
SCOPE PENDING
DELETE YES
FOR EXCEPTION IN DSN81010.PROJACT USE DSN81010.EPROJACT
                IN DSN81010.EMPPROJACT USE DSN81010.EEPA
SORTDEVT SYSDA
SORTNUM 4

```

As before, the JCL for the job needs DD statements to define the error and sort data sets.

Related reference

“Exception tables for the CHECK DATA utility” on page 79

Running CHECK INDEX after loading a table that has indexes

The CHECK INDEX utility tests whether an index is consistent with the data it indexes and issues error messages if it finds an inconsistency.

If you have any reason to doubt the accuracy of an index (for example, if the result of an SQL SELECT COUNT statement is inconsistent with RUNSTATS output), run CHECK INDEX. You might also want to run CHECK INDEX after any LOAD operation that shows some abnormal condition in its execution, or even run it periodically to verify the accuracy of important indexes.

To rebuild an index that is inconsistent with its data, use the REBUILD INDEX utility.

Recovering a failed LOAD job

To facilitate recovery in case of failure, DB2 inserts the SYSCOPY record at the beginning of the RELOAD phase if LOG YES is specified in the LOAD control statement.

As a result, you can recover the data to a point in time before the LOAD by using RECOVER TORBA.

Reorganization of an auxiliary index after LOAD

Indexes on the auxiliary tables are not built during the BUILD phase. Instead, LOB values are inserted (not loaded) into auxiliary tables during the RELOAD phase as each row is loaded into the base table. Each index on the auxiliary table is also updated as part of the insert operation.

Because the LOAD utility inserts keys into an auxiliary index, free space within the index might be consumed and index page splits might occur. Consider reorganizing an index on the auxiliary table after LOAD completes to introduce free space into the index for future inserts and loads.

Effects of running LOAD

The effects of running LOAD can be different, depending on your situation.

This topic contains information about the effects of running the LOAD utility.

The effect of LOAD on index version numbers

DB2 stores the range of used index version numbers in the OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION columns of the following catalog tables:

- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART

The OLDEST_VERSION column contains the oldest used version number, and the CURRENT_VERSION column contains the current version number.

When you run LOAD with the REPLACE option, the utility updates this range of used version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute.

LOAD REPLACE sets the OLDEST_VERSION column to the current version number, which indicates that only one version is active; DB2 can then reuse all of the other version numbers.

Recycling of version numbers is required when all of the version numbers are being used. All version numbers are being used when one of the following situations is true:

- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is one less than the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column.
- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is 15, and the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column is 0 or 1.

You can also run REBUILD INDEX, REORG INDEX, or REORG TABLESPACE to recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute. To recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY YES attribute or for table spaces, run MODIFY RECOVERY.

The effect of LOAD REPLACE on the control interval

When you run a LOAD job with the REPLACE option but without the REUSE option and the data set that contains the data is DB2-managed, DB2 deletes this data set before the LOAD and redefines a new data set with a control interval that matches the page size.

The effect of LOAD on NOT LOGGED table spaces

The following table shows the effect of LOAD on NOT LOGGED table spaces.

Table 48. LOAD parameters

LOAD REORG LOG keyword	Table space logging attribute	Table space type	What is logged	Table space status after utility completes
LOG YES	NOT LOGGED	Non-LOB	LOG YES changes to LOG NO	No pending status or ICOPY-pending ¹
LOG YES	NOT LOGGED	LOB	control information	No pending status
LOG NO	NOT LOGGED	Non-LOB	nothing	No pending status or ICOPY-pending ¹
LOG NO	NOT LOGGED	LOB	nothing	No pending status

Note:

1. The table space is set to ICOPY-pending status if the records are discarded and no pending status if the records are not discarded.

Related concepts

 [Table space versions \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Sample LOAD control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own LOAD control statements.

Example 1: Specifying field positions

The control statement specifies that the LOAD utility is to load the records from the data set that is defined by the SYSREC DD statement into table DSN8810.DEPT. SYSREC is the default input data set.

Each POSITION clause specifies the location of a field in the input record. In this example, LOAD accepts the input that is shown in Figure 35 and interprets it as follows:

- The first 3 bytes of each record are loaded into the DEPTNO column of the table.
- The next 36 bytes, including trailing blanks, are loaded into the DEPTNAME column.

If this input column were defined as VARCHAR(36), the input data would need to contain a 2-byte binary length field preceding the data. This binary field would begin at position 4.

- The next three fields are loaded into columns that are defined as CHAR(6), CHAR(3), and CHAR(16).

The RESUME YES clause specifies that the table space does not need to be empty; new records are added to the end of the table.

```
LOAD DATA
RESUME YES
INTO TABLE DSN81010.DEPT
(DEPTNO POSITION (1:3) CHAR(3),
DEPTNAME POSITION (4:39) CHAR(36),
MGRNO POSITION (40:45) CHAR(6),
ADMRDEPT POSITION (46:48) CHAR(3),
LOCATION POSITION (49:64) CHAR(16))
```

Figure 34. Example of a LOAD statement that specifies field positions

Figure 35. shows the input to the preceding LOAD job.

```
A00SPIFFY COMPUTER SERVICE DIV.      000010A00USIBMSTODB21
B01PLANNING                          000020A00USIBMSTODB21
C01INFORMATION CENTER                 000030A00USIBMSTODB21
D01DEVELOPMENT CENTER                 A00USIBMSTODB21
```

Figure 35. Records in an input data set for LOAD

The following table shows the result of executing the statement SELECT * FROM DSN81010.DEPT after the preceding input records are loaded.

Table 49. Data that is loaded into a table

DEPTNO	DEPTNAME	MGRNO	ADMRDEPT	LOCATION
A00	SPIFFY COMPUTER SERVICE DIV.	000010	A00	USIBMSTODB21
B01	PLANNING	000020	A00	USIBMSTODB21
C01	INFORMATION CENTER	000030	A00	USIBMSTODB21
D01	DEVELOPMENT CENTER		A00	USIBMSTODB21

Example 2: Replacing data in a given partition

The following control statement specifies that data from the data set that is defined by the SYSREC DD statement is to be loaded into the first partition of table DSN8810.DEPT. The default input data set is SYSREC. The REPLACE option indicates that the input data is to replace only the specified partition. If the REPLACE option was specified before the PART option, REPLACE would indicate that entire table space is to be replaced, and the data is to be loaded into the specified partition. Note that the keyword DATA does not need to be specified.

```
LOAD
  INTO TABLE DSN81010.DEPT PART 1 REPLACE
```

Example 3: Loading selected records into multiple tables

The control statement in specifies that the LOAD utility is to load certain data from the EMPLDS input data set into tables DSN81010.EMP, SMITH.EMPEMPL, and DSN8810.DEPT. The input data set is identified by the INDDN option. The WHEN clauses indicate which records are to be loaded into each table. For the EMP and DEPT tables, the utility is to load only records that begin with the string LKA. For the EMPEMPL table, the utility is to load only records that begin with the string ABC. The RESUME YES option indicates that the table space does not need to be empty for the LOAD job to proceed. The new rows are added to the end of the tables. This example assumes that the first two tables being loaded have exactly the same format, and that the input data matches that format; therefore, no field specifications are needed for those two INTO TABLE clauses. The third table has a different format, so field specifications are required and are supplied in the example.

The three tables being loaded each contain a different number of records. To improve the sizing of the sort work data sets that the LOAD utility requires, the number of records being loaded into each table is specified on the NUMRECS keyword for each table.

The POSITION clauses specify the location of the fields in the input data for the DEPT table. For each source record that is to be loaded into the DEPT table:

- The characters in positions 7 through 9 are loaded into the DEPTNO column.
- The characters in positions 10 through 35 are loaded into the DEPTNAME column.
- The characters in positions 36 through 41 are loaded into the MGRNO column.
- The characters in positions 42 through 44 are loaded into the ADMRDEPT column.

```

LOAD DATA INDDN EMPLDS
RESUME YES
INTO TABLE DSN81010.EMP
NUMRECS 100000
WHEN (1:3)='LKA'
INTO TABLE SMITH.EMPEMPL
NUMRECS 100
WHEN (1:3)='ABC'
INTO TABLE DSN81010.DEPT
NUMRECS 500
WHEN (1:3)='LKA'
(DEPTNO POSITION (7:9) CHAR,
DEPTNAME POSITION (10:35) CHAR,
MGRNO POSITION (36:41) CHAR,
ADMNDEPT POSITION (42:44) CHAR)

```

Figure 36. Example LOAD statement that loads selected records into multiple tables

Example 4: Loading data of different data types

The control statement specifies that LOAD is to load data from the SYSRECPJ input data set into table DSN81010.PROJ. The input data set is identified by the INDDN option. Assume that the table space that contains table DSN81010.PROJ is currently empty.

For each input record, data is loaded into the specified columns (that is, PROJNO, PROJNAME, DEPTNO, and so on) to form a table row. Any other PROJ columns that are not specified in the LOAD control statement are set to the default value.

The POSITION clauses define the starting positions of the fields in the input data set. The ending positions of the fields in the input data set are implicitly defined either by the length specification of the data type (CHAR *length*) or the length specification of the external numeric data type (LENGTH).

The numeric data that is represented in SQL constant format (EXTERNAL format) is converted to the correct internal format by the LOAD process and placed in the indicated column names. The two dates (PRSTDATE and PRENDATE) are assumed to be represented by eight digits and two separator characters, as in the USA format (for example, 11/15/2006). The length of the date fields is given as 10 explicitly, although in many cases, the default is the same value.

```

LOAD DATA INDDN(SYSRECPJ)
INTO TABLE DSN81010.PROJ
(PROJNO POSITION (1) CHAR(6),
PROJNAME POSITION (8) CHAR(22),
DEPTNO POSITION (31) CHAR(3),
RESPEMP POSITION (35) CHAR(6),
PRSTAFF POSITION (42) DECIMAL EXTERNAL(5),
PRSTDATE POSITION (48) DATE EXTERNAL(10),
PRENDATE POSITION (59) DATE EXTERNAL(10),
MAJPROJ POSITION (70) CHAR(6))

```

Figure 37. Example of loading data of different data types

Example 5: Loading data in delimited file format

The control statement specifies that data in delimited format is to be loaded into the specified columns (FILENO, DATE1, TIME1, and TIMESTMP) in table

TBQB0103. The FORMAT DELIMITED option indicates that the data is in delimited format. The data is to be loaded from the SYSREC data set, which is the default.

The COLDEL option indicates that the column delimiter is a comma (,). The CHARDEL option indicates that the character string delimiter is a double quotation mark ("). The DECPT option indicates that the decimal point character is a period (.). You are not required to explicitly specify these particular characters, because they are all defaults.

```

/*
//STEP3 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUQBU101.LOAD2',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSERR DD DSN=JUQBU101.LOAD2.STEP3.SYSERR,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4096,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSDISC DD DSN=JUQBU101.LOAD2.STEP3.SYSDISC,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4096,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSMAP DD DSN=JUQBU101.LOAD2.STEP3.SYSMAP,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4096,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=JUQBU101.LOAD2.STEP3.SYSUT1,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4096,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SORTOUT DD DSN=JUQBU101.LOAD2.STEP3.SORTOUT,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4096,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
LOAD DATA
FORMAT DELIMITED COLDEL ',' CHARDEL '"' DECPT '.'
INTO TABLE TBQB0103
(FILENO CHAR,
DATE1 DATE EXTERNAL,
TIME1 TIME EXTERNAL,
TIMESTAMP TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL)
/*
//SYSREC DD *
"001", 2000-02-16, 00.00.00, 2000-02-16-00.00.00.0000
"002", 2001-04-17, 06.30.00, 2001-04-17-06.30.00.2000
"003", 2002-06-18, 12.30.59, 2002-06-18-12.30.59.4000
"004", 1991-08-19, 18.59.30, 1991-08-19-18.59.30.8000
"005", 2000-12-20, 24.00.00, 2000-12-20-24.00.00.0000
/*

```

Figure 38. Example of loading data in delimited file format

Example 6: Concatenating multiple input records

The control statement specifies that data from the SYSRECOV input data set is to be loaded into table DSN81010.TOPTVAL. The input data set is identified by the INDDN option. The table space that contains the TOPTVAL table is currently empty.

Some of the data that is to be loaded into a single row spans more than one input record. In this situation, an X in column 72 indicates that the input record contains fields that are to be loaded into the same row as the fields in the next input record.

In the LOAD control statement, CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X' indicates that LOAD is to concatenate any input records that have an X in column 72 with the next record before loading the data.

For each assembled input record (that is, after the concatenation), fields are loaded into the DSN81010.TOPTVAL table columns (that is, MAJSYS, ACTION, OBJECT ..., DSPINDEX) to form a table row. Any columns that are not specified in the LOAD control statement are set to the default value.

The POSITION clauses define the starting positions of the fields in the assembled input records. Starting positions are numbered from the first column of the internally assembled input record, not from the start of the input records in the sequential data set. The ending positions of the fields are implicitly defined by the length specification of the data type (CHAR *length*).

No conversions are required to load the input character strings into their designated columns, which are also defined to be fixed-length character strings. However, because columns INFOTXT, HELPTXT, and PFKTXT are defined as 79 characters in length and the strings that are being loaded are 71 characters in length, those strings are padded with blanks as they are loaded.

```
LOAD DATA INDDN(SYSRECOV) CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'
  INTO TABLE DSN81010.TOPTVAL
  (MAJSYS POSITION (2) CHAR(1),
   ACTION POSITION (4) CHAR(1),
   OBJECT POSITION (6) CHAR(2),
   SRCHCRIT POSITION (9) CHAR(2),
   SCRCTYPE POSITION (12) CHAR(1),
   HEADTXT POSITION (80) CHAR(50),
   SELTXT POSITION (159) CHAR(50),
   INFOTXT POSITION (238) CHAR(71),
   HELPTXT POSITION (317) CHAR(71),
   PFKTXT POSITION (396) CHAR(71),
   DSPINDEX POSITION (475) CHAR(2))
```

Figure 39. Example of concatenating multiple input records before loading the data

Example 7: Loading null values

The control statement specifies that data from the SYSRECST data set is to be loaded into the specified columns in table SYSIBM.SYSSTRINGS. The input data set is identified by the INDDN option. The NULLIF option for the ERRORBYTE and SUBBYTE columns specifies that if the input field contains a blank, LOAD is to place a null value in the indicated column for that particular row. The DEFAULTIF option for the TRANSTAB column indicates that the utility is to load the default value for this column if the input field value is GG. The CONTINUEIF option indicates that LOAD is to concatenate any input records that have an X in column 80 with the next record before loading the data.

```

LOAD DATA INDDN(SYSRECST) CONTINUEIF(80:80)='X' RESUME(YES)
  INTO TABLE SYSIBM.SYSSTRINGS
    (INCCSID POSITION( 1) INTEGER EXTERNAL(5),
     OUTCCSID POSITION( 7) INTEGER EXTERNAL(5),
     TRANSTYPE POSITION( 13) CHAR(2),
     ERRORBYTE POSITION( 16) CHAR(1) NULLIF(ERRORBYTE=' '),
     SUBBYTE POSITION( 18) CHAR(1) NULLIF(SUBBYTE=' '),
     TRANSPROC POSITION( 20) CHAR(8),
     IBMREQD POSITION( 29) CHAR(1),
     TRANSTAB POSITION( 31) CHAR(256) DEFAULTIF(TRANSTYPE='GG'))

```

Figure 40. Example of loading null values

Example 8: Enforcing referential constraints when loading data

The control statement specifies that data from the SYSREC input data set is to be loaded into table DSN81010.PROJ. The default input data set is SYSREC. The table space that contains the PROJ table is not empty. RESUME YES indicates that the records are to be added to the end of the table.

The ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS option indicates that LOAD is to enforce referential constraints on the data that is being added. This option is also the default. All violations are reported in the output. All records causing these violations are not loaded and placed in the SYSDISC data set, which is the default data set for discarded records.

The CONTINUEIF option indicates that before loading the data LOAD is to concatenate any input records that have an X in column 72 with the next record.

```

LOAD DATA INDDN(SYSREC) CONTINUEIF(72:72)='X'
  RESUME YES
  ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS
  INTO TABLE DSN81010.PROJ
    (PROJNO POSITION (1) CHAR (6),
     PROJNAME POSITION (8) VARCHAR,
     DEPTNO POSITION (33) CHAR (3),
     RESPEMP POSITION (37) CHAR (6),
     PRSTAFF POSITION (44) DECIMAL EXTERNAL (5),
     PRSTDATE POSITION (50) DATE EXTERNAL,
     PRENDATE POSITION (61) DATE EXTERNAL,
     MAJPROJ POSITION (80) CHAR (6) NULLIF(MAJPROJ=' '))

```

Figure 41. Example of enforcing referential constraints when loading data

Example 9: Loading data without enforcing referential constraints

The control statement specifies that data from the SYSRECAAC input data set is to be loaded into table DSN8810.ACT. The INDDN option identifies the input data set.

ENFORCE NO indicates that the LOAD utility is not to enforce referential constraints and places the table in CHECK-pending status. Use this option if you are loading data into several tables that are related in such a way that the referential constraints cannot be checked until all tables are loaded. For example, a column in table A depends on a column in table B; a column in table B depends on a column in table C; and a column in table C depends on a column in table A.

The POSITION clauses define the starting positions of the fields in the input data set. The ending positions of the fields in the input data set are implicitly defined by the length specification of the data type (CHAR *length*). In this case, the

characters in positions 1 through 3 are loaded into the ACTNO column, the characters in positions 5 through 10 are loaded into the ACTKWD column, and the characters in position 13 onward are loaded into the ACTDESC column. Because the ACTDESC column is of type VARCHAR, the input data needs to contain a 2-byte binary field that contains the length of the character field. This binary field begins at position 13.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UB.LOAD',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSRECAC DD DSN=IUIQU2UB.LOAD.DATA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=SCR03,
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=IUIQU2UB.LOAD.STEP1.SYSUT1,
//        DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=IUIQU2UB.LOAD.STEP1.SORTOUT,
//          DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
LOAD DATA INDDN(SYSRECAC) RESUME YES
          INTO TABLE DSN81010.ACT
          (ACTNO POSITION(1) INTEGER EXTERNAL(3),
           ACTKWD POSITION(5) CHAR(6),
           ACTDESC POSITION(13) VARCHAR)
          ENFORCE NO
//*
```

Figure 42. Example of loading data without enforcing referential constraints

Example 10: Loading data by using a parallel index build

The control statement specifies that data from the SYSREC input data set is to be loaded into table DSN8810.DEPT. Assume that 22 000 rows need to be loaded into table DSN81010.DEPT, which has three indexes. In this example, the SORTKEYS option is used to improve performance by forcing a parallel index build. The SORTKEYS option specifies 66 000 as an estimate of the number keys to sort in parallel during the SORTBLD phase. (This estimate was computed by using the calculation that is described in “Improved performance with SORTKEYS” on page 295.) Because more than one index needs to be built, LOAD builds the indexes in parallel.

The SORTDEVT and SORTNUM keywords specify that the sort program is to dynamically allocate the required data sets. If sufficient virtual storage resources are available, one utility subtask pair is started to build each index. This example does not require UTPRIN nn DD statements because it uses DSNUPROC to invoke utility processing, which includes a DD statement that allocates UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

The CONTINUEIF option indicates that, before loading the data, LOAD is to concatenate any input records that have a plus sign (+) in column 79 and a plus sign (+) in column 80 with the next record.

```

//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SAMPJOB.LOAD',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SORTOUT DD DSN=SAMPJOB.LOAD.STEP1.SORTOUT,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=SAMPJOB.LOAD.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSERR DD DSN=SAMPJOB.LOAD.STEP1.SYSERR,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(2000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=2400)
//SYSMAP DD DSN=SAMPJOB.LOAD.STEP1.SYSMAP,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(2000,(20,20),,,ROUND),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=2400)
//SYSREC DSN=SAMPJOB.TEMP.DATA,DISP=SHR,UNIT=SYSDA
//SYSIN DD *
LOAD DATA REPLACE INDDN SYSREC CONTINUEIF(79:80)='++'
SORTKEYS 66000 SORTDEVT SYSDA SORTNUM 3
INTO TABLE DSN81010.DEPT
/*

```

Figure 43. Example of loading data by using a parallel index build

Example 11: Creating inline copies

The control statement specifies that the LOAD utility is to load data from the SYSREC data set into the specified columns of table ADMF001.TB0S3902.

COPYDDN(COPYT1) indicates that LOAD is to create inline copies and write the primary image copy to the data set that is defined by the COPYT1 template. This template is defined in one of the preceding TEMPLATE control statements. To create an inline copy, you must also specify the REPLACE option, which indicates that any data in the table space is to be replaced.

CONTINUEIF(79:80)='++' indicates that, before loading the data, LOAD is to concatenate any input records that have a plus sign (+) in column 79 and a plus sign (+) in column 80 with the next record.

The ERRDDN(ERRDDN) and MAPDDN(MAP) options indicate that information about errors is to be written to the data sets that are defined by the ERRDDN and MAP templates. DISCARDDDN(DISCARD) specifies that discarded records (those that violate referential constraints) are to be written to the data set that is defined by the DISCARD template. WORKDDN(UT1,OUT) specifies the temporary work files for sort input and output; LOAD is to use the data set that is defined by the UT1 template for sort input and the data set that is defined by the OUT template for sort output.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUOSU339.LOAD1',TIME=1440,
// UTPROC='',
// SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSREC DD DSN=CUST.FM.CINT135.DATA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=FORDMD,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
TEMPLATE ERRDDN UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..ERRDDN)
SPACE(50,10) TRK
TEMPLATE UT1 UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..SYSUT1)
SPACE(50,10) TRK
TEMPLATE OUT UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..SYSOUT)
SPACE(50,10) TRK
TEMPLATE MAP UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..SYSMAP)
SPACE(50,10) TRK

```

```

TEMPLATE DISCARD UNIT(SYSDA)
                DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..DISCARD)
                SPACE(50,10) TRK

TEMPLATE COPYT1
                UNIT(SYSDA)
                DSN(JUOSU339.COPY1.STEP1.&SN..COPY&LR.&PB.)
                DISP(MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
                SPACE(60,30) TRK

LOAD DATA INDDN SYSREC REPLACE
CONTINUEIF(79:80)='++'
COPYDDN(COPYT1)
ERRDDN(ERRDDN)
WORKDDN(UT1,OUT)
MAPDDN(MAP)
DISCARDN(DISCARD)
INTO TABLE
    ADMF001.TBOS3902
( ID_PARTITION      POSITION(1)   CHAR(1),
  CD_PLANT          POSITION(2)   CHAR(5),
  NO_PART_BASE      POSITION(7)   CHAR(9),
  NO_PART_PREFIX    POSITION(16)  CHAR(7),
  NO_PART_SUFFIX    POSITION(23)  CHAR(8),
  NO_PART_CONTROL   POSITION(31)  CHAR(3),
  DT_TRANS_EFFECTIVE POSITION(34)  DATE EXTERNAL(10),
  CD_INV_TRANSACTION POSITION(44)  CHAR(3),
  TS_PROCESS        POSITION(47)  TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL(26),
  QT_INV_TRANSACTION POSITION(73)  INTEGER,
  CD_UNIT_MEAS_USAGE POSITION(77)  CHAR(2),
  CD_USER_ID        POSITION(79)  CHAR(7),
  NO_DEPT           POSITION(86)  CHAR(4),
  NO_WORK_CENTER    POSITION(90)  CHAR(6))
/*

```

Figure 44. Example of creating inline copies

Example 12: Collecting statistics

This example is similar to the previous example, except that the STATISTICS option and other related options have been added so that during the LOAD job, DB2 also gathers statistics for the table space. Gathering these statistics eliminates the need to run the RUNSTATS utility after completing the LOAD operation.

The TABLE, COLUMN, and INDEX options specify that information is to be gathered for columns QT_INV_TRANSACTION, NO_DEPT, NO_PART_PREFIX, DT_TRANS_EFFECTIVE and index ID0S3902 for table TB0S3902. SAMPLE 53 indicates that LOAD is to sample 53% of the rows when gathering non-indexed column statistics. For the index, statistics on all of the distinct values in all of the key column combinations are collected by default. FREQVAL NUMCOLS 4 COUNT 20 indicates that 20 frequent values are to be collected on the concatenation of the first four key columns.

REPORT YES indicates that the statistics are to be sent to SYSPRINT as output. UPDATE ALL and HISTORY ALL indicate that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog and catalog history tables.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUOSU339.LOAD1',TIME=1440,
//        UTPROC='',
//        SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSREC DD DSN=CUST.FM.CINT135.DATA,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=FORDMD,
//        UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
        TEMPLATE ERRDDN UNIT(SYSDA)

```

```

DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..ERRDDN)
SPACE(50,10) TRK
TEMPLATE UT1 UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..SYSUT1)
SPACE(50,10) TRK
TEMPLATE OUT UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..SYSOUT)
SPACE(50,10) TRK
TEMPLATE MAP UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..SYSMAP)
SPACE(50,10) TRK
TEMPLATE DISCARD UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.T&TI..&ST..DISCARD)
SPACE(50,10) TRK

TEMPLATE COPYT1
UNIT(SYSDA)
DSN(JUOSU339.COPY1.STEP1.&SN..COPY&LR.&PB.)
DISP(MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
SPACE(60,30) TRK
LOAD DATA INDDN SYSREC REPLACE
CONTINUEIF(79:80)='++'
COPYDDN(COPYT1)
STATISTICS
TABLE (TBOS3902) SAMPLE 53
COLUMN (QT_INV_TRANSACTION,
NO_DEPT,
NO_PART_PREFIX,
DT_TRANS_EFFECTIVE)
INDEX (IDOS3902
FREQUAL NUMCOLS 4 COUNT 20)
REPORT YES UPDATE ALL HISTORY ALL
ERRDDN(ERRDDN)
WORKDDN(UT1,OUT)
MAPDDN(MAP)
DISCARDN(DISCARD)
INTO TABLE
ADMF001.TBOS3902
( ID_PARTITION POSITION(1) CHAR(1),
CD_PLANT POSITION(2) CHAR(5),
NO_PART_BASE POSITION(7) CHAR(9),
NO_PART_PREFIX POSITION(16) CHAR(7),
NO_PART_SUFFIX POSITION(23) CHAR(8),
NO_PART_CONTROL POSITION(31) CHAR(3),
DT_TRANS_EFFECTIVE POSITION(34) DATE EXTERNAL(10),
CD_INV_TRANSACTION POSITION(44) CHAR(3),
TS_PROCESS POSITION(47) TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL(26),
QT_INV_TRANSACTION POSITION(73) INTEGER,
CD_UNIT_MEAS_USAGE POSITION(77) CHAR(2),
CD_USER_ID POSITION(79) CHAR(7),
NO_DEPT POSITION(86) CHAR(4),
NO_WORK_CENTER POSITION(90) CHAR(6))
/*

```

Figure 45. Example of collecting statistics

Example 13: Loading Unicode data

The following control statement specifies that Unicode data from the REC1 input data set is to be loaded into table ADMF001.TBMG0301. The UNICODE option specifies the type of input data. Only data that satisfies the condition that is specified in the WHEN clause is to be loaded. The CCSID option specifies the

three coded character set identifiers for the input file: one for SBCS data, one for mixed data, and one for DBCS data. LOG YES indicates that logging is to occur during the LOAD job.

```
LOAD DATA INDDN REC1      LOG YES REPLACE
      UNICODE CCSID(00367,01208,01200)
      INTO TABLE "ADMFO01"."TBMG0301"
      WHEN(00004:00005 = X'0003')
```

Example 14: Loading data from multiple input data sets by using partition parallelism

The LOAD control statement in this example contains a series of INTO TABLE statements that specify which data is to be loaded into which partitions of table DBA01.TBLX3303. For each INTO TABLE statement:

- Data is to be loaded into the partition that is identified by the PART option. For example, the first INTO TABLE statement specifies that data is to be loaded into the first partition of table DBA01.TBLX3303.
- Data is to be loaded from the data set that is identified by the INDDN option. For example, the data from the PART1 data set is to be loaded into the first partition.
- Any discarded rows are to be written to the data set that is specified by the DISCARDN option. For example, rows that are discarded during the loading of data from the PART1 data set are written to the DISC1 data set.
- The data is loaded into the specified columns (EMPNO, LASTNAME, and SALARY).

LOAD uses partition parallelism to load the data into these partitions.

The TEMPLATE utility control statement defines the data set naming convention for the data set that is to be dynamically allocated during the following LOAD job. The name of the template is ERR3. The ERRDDN option in the LOAD statement specifies that any errors are to be written to the data set that is defined by this ERR3 template.

```

TEMPLATE ERR3
      DSN &UT..&JO..&ST..ERR3&MO.&DAY.
      UNIT SYSDA DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
LOAD DATA
REPLACE
ERRDDN ERR3
INTO TABLE DBA01.TBLX3303
PART 1
INDDN PART1
DISCARDN DISC1
      (EMPNO      POSITION(1)    CHAR(6),
      LASTNAME   POSITION(8)    VARCHAR(15),
      SALARY     POSITION(25)   DECIMAL(9,2))
.
.
.
INTO TABLE DBA01.TBLX3303
PART 5
INDDN PART5
DISCARDN DISC5
      (EMPNO      POSITION(1)    CHAR(6),
      LASTNAME   POSITION(8)    VARCHAR(15),
      SALARY     POSITION(25)   DECIMAL(9,2))
/*

```

Figure 46. Example of loading data from individual data sets

Example 15: Loading data from another table in the same system by using a declared cursor

The following LOAD control statement specifies that all rows that are identified by cursor C1 are to be loaded into table MYEMP. The INCURSOR option is used to specify cursor C1, which is defined in the EXEC SQL utility control statement. Cursor C1 points to the rows that are returned by executing the statement SELECT * FROM DSN8810.EMP. In this example, the column names in table DSN8810.EMP are the same as the column names in table MYEMP. Note that the cursor cannot be defined on the same table into which DB2 is to load the data.

```

EXEC SQL
      DECLARE C1 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM DSN8810.EMP
ENDEXEC
LOAD DATA
INCURSOR(C1)
REPLACE
INTO TABLE MYEMP
STATISTICS

```

Example 16: Loading data partitions in parallel from a remote site by using a declared cursor

The LOAD control statement in this example specifies that for each specified partition of table MYEMPP, the rows that are identified by the specified cursor are to be loaded. In each INTO TABLE statement, the PART option specifies the partition number, and the INCURSOR option specifies the cursor. For example, the rows that are identified by cursor C1 are to be loaded into the first partition. The data for each partition is loaded in parallel.

Each cursor is defined in a separate EXEC SQL utility control statement and points to the rows that are returned by executing the specified SELECT statement. These SELECT statements are being executed on a table at a remote server, so the

three-part name is used to identify the table. In this example, the column names in table CHICAGO.DSN8810.EMP are the same as the column names in table MYEMPP.

The four partitions being loaded each contain a different number of records. To improve the sizing of the sort work data sets that the LOAD utility requires, the number of records being loaded into each partition is specified on the NUMRECS keyword for each table.

```
EXEC SQL
  DECLARE C1 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM CHICAGO.DSN8810.EMP
  WHERE EMPNO <= '099999'
ENDEXEC
EXEC SQL
  DECLARE C2 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM CHICAGO.DSN8810.EMP
  WHERE EMPNO > '099999' AND EMPNO <= '199999'
ENDEXEC
EXEC SQL
  DECLARE C3 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM CHICAGO.DSN8810.EMP
  WHERE EMPNO > '199999' AND EMPNO <= '299999'
ENDEXEC
EXEC SQL
  DECLARE C4 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM CHICAGO.DSN8810.EMP
  WHERE EMPNO > '299999' AND EMPNO <= '999999'
ENDEXEC
LOAD DATA
  INTO TABLE MYEMPP PART 1 REPLACE INCURSOR(C1) NUMRECS 10000
  INTO TABLE MYEMPP PART 2 REPLACE INCURSOR(C2) NUMRECS 50000
  INTO TABLE MYEMPP PART 3 REPLACE INCURSOR(C3) NUMRECS 100000
  INTO TABLE MYEMPP PART 4 REPLACE INCURSOR(C4) NUMRECS 50000
```

Figure 47. Example of loading data partitions in parallel using a declared cursor

Example 17: Loading LOB data from a file

The LOAD control statement in this example specifies that data from 000130DSN!10.SDSNIVPD(DSN8R130) is to be loaded into the MY_EMP_PHOTO_RESUME table. The characters in positions 1 through 6 are loaded into the EMPNO column, and the characters starting from position 7 are to be loaded into the RESUME column. CLOBF indicates that the characters in position 7 are the name of a file from which a CLOB is to be loaded.

REPLACE indicates that the new data will replace any existing data. Although no logging is to be done, as indicated by the LOG NO option, the table space is not to be set in CHECK-pending state, because NOCOPYPEND is specified.

SORTKEYS 1 indicates that one index key is to be sorted.

```

//*****
//*   LOAD LOB from file
//*****
//LOADIT EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='LOADIT',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSREC DD*
000130DSN!10.SDSNIVPD(DSN8R130)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=SYSADM.LOAD.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=SYSADM.LOAD.SORTOUT,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
LOAD DATA
REPLACE LOG NO NOCOPYPEND
SORTKEYS 1
INTO TABLE MY_EMP_PHOTO_RESUME
(EMPNO POSITION(1:6) CHAR(6),
RESUME POSITION(7:31) CHAR CLOBF)

```

Figure 48. Example of loading LOB data from a file

Related reference

[➡ DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

[➡ DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Chapter 17. MERGECOPY

The MERGECOPY online utility merges copies or inline copies that other utilities produce. The COPY and COPYTOCOPY utilities produce image copies, and the LOAD and REORG utilities produce inline copies.

The utility can merge several incremental copies of a table space to make one incremental copy. It can also merge incremental copies with a full image copy to make a new full image copy. You cannot run MERGECOPY on concurrent copies or FlashCopy image copies.

MERGECOPY operates on the image copy data sets of a table space, and not on the table space itself.

Output

Output from the MERGECOPY utility consists of one of the following types of copies:

- A new single incremental image copy
- A new full image copy

You can create the new image copy for the local or recovery site.

Restrictions:

- MERGECOPY cannot merge image copies into a single incremental image copy for the other site, that is:
 - At local sites, you cannot use RECOVERYDDN with NEWCOPY NO.
 - At recovery sites, you cannot use COPYDDN with NEWCOPY NO.
- When none of the keywords NEWCOPY, COPYDDN, or RECOVERYDDN is specified, the default, NEWCOPY NO COPYDDN(SYSCOPY), is valid for the local site only.
- You cannot run MERGECOPY on concurrent copies.
- You cannot run the MERGECOPY utility on the DSNDB01.DBD01, DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, or DSNDB06.SYSCOPY table spaces because you cannot make incremental copies of those table spaces.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- IMAGCOPY privilege for the database
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute MERGECOPY, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

Execution phases of MERGECOPY

The MERGECOPY utility operates in these phases:

Phase Description

UTILINIT

Performs initialization

MERGECOP

Merges incremental copies

UTILTERM

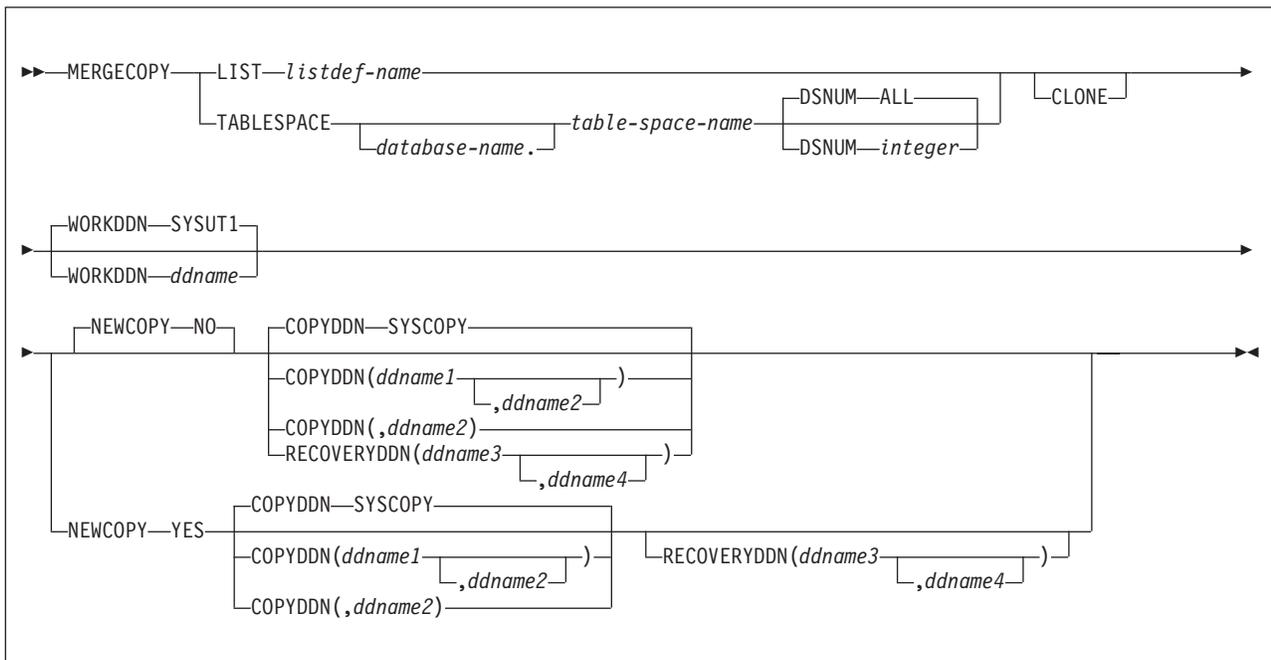
Performs cleanup

Syntax and options of the MERGECOPY control statement

The MERGECOPY utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, you can use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name that contains only table spaces. You can specify one LIST keyword per MERGECOPY control statement. Do not specify LIST with the TABLESPACE keyword. MERGECOPY is invoked once for each table space in the list. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

l

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space that is to be copied, and, optionally, the database to which it belongs.

database-name

The name of the database that the table space belongs to. The **default** value is **DSNDB04**.

table-space-name

The name of the table space whose incremental image copies are to be merged.

You cannot run the MERGECOPY utility on the DSNDB01.DBD01, DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, or DSNDB06.SYSCOPY table spaces because you cannot make incremental copies of those table spaces. Because MERGECOPY does not directly access the table space whose copies it is merging, it does not interfere with concurrent access to that table space.

DSNUM

Identifies the table space or a partition or data set within the table space that is to be merged. DSNUM is optional.

ALL

Merges the entire table space.

integer

Is the number of a partition or data set that is to be merged. The maximum is 4096.

For a partitioned table space, the integer is its partition number.

For a nonpartitioned table space, find the integer at the end of the data set name as cataloged in the VSAM catalog. The data set name has the following format, where *y* is either I or J, *z* is either 1 or 2, and *nnn* is the data set integer:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.tname.y000z.Annn

You cannot specify DSNUM and LIST in the same MERGECOPY control statement. Use PARTLEVEL on the LISTDEF instead. If image copies were taken by data set (rather than by table space), MERGECOPY must use the copies by data set.

CLONE

Indicates that MERGECOPY is to process only image copy data sets that were taken against clone objects. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

WORKDDN *ddname*

Specifies a DD statement for a temporary data set or template, which is to be used for intermediate merged output. WORKDDN is optional.

ddname is the DD name. The **default** value is **SYSUT1**.

Use the WORKDDN option if you are not able to allocate enough data sets to execute MERGECOPY; in that case, a temporary data set is used to hold intermediate output. If you omit the WORKDDN option, you might find that only some of the image copy data sets are merged. When MERGECOPY has ended, a message is issued that tells the number of data sets that exist and the

number of data sets that have been merged. To continue the merge, repeat MERGECOPY with a new output data set.

NEWCOPY

Specifies whether incremental image copies are to be merged with the full image copy. NEWCOPY is optional.

NO

Merges incremental image copies into a single incremental image copy but does not merge them with the full image copy.

YES

Merges all incremental image copies with the full image copy to form a new full image copy.

COPYDDN (*ddname1,ddname2*)

Specifies the DD statements for the output image copy data sets at the local site. *ddname1* is the primary output image copy data set. *ddname2* is the backup output image copy data set. COPYDDN is optional.

The **default** value is **COPYDDN(SYSCOPY)**, where SYSCOPY identifies the primary data set.

The COPYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

RECOVERYDDN (*ddname3,ddname4*)

Specifies the DD statements for the output image copy data sets at the recovery site. You can have a maximum of two output data sets; the outputs are identical. *ddname3* is the primary output image copy data set. *ddname4* is the backup output image copy data set. RECOVERYDDN is optional. No default value exists for RECOVERYDDN.

The RECOVERYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

Related reference

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Data sets that MERGECOPY uses

The MERGECOPY utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that MERGECOPY uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 50. Data sets that MERGECOPY uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes

Table 50. Data sets that MERGECOPY uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
Image copy data set	Image copy data set that contains the resulting image copy. Specify its DD name with the COPYDDN option of the utility control statement. The default DD name is SYSCOPY.	Yes
Work data set	A temporary data set that is used for intermediate merged output. Specify its DD name with the WORKDDN option of the utility control statement. The default DD name is SYSUT1.	Yes
Input data sets	Image copy data sets that you can preallocate. You define the DD names.	No

Table space

Object whose copies are to be merged.

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Data sets

The input data sets for the merge operation are dynamically allocated. To merge incremental copies, allocate in the JCL a work data set (WORKDDN) and up to two new copy data sets (COPYDDN) for the utility job. You can allocate the data sets to tape or disk. If you allocate them to tape, you need an additional tape drive for each data set.

With the COPYDDN option of MERGECOPY, you can specify the DD names for the output data sets. The option has the format COPYDDN (*ddname1*,*ddname2*), where *ddname1* is the DD name for the primary output data set in the system that currently runs DB2, and *ddname2* is the DD name for the backup output data set in the system that currently runs DB2. The default for *ddname1* is SYSCOPY.

The RECOVERYDDN option of MERGECOPY lets you specify the output image copy data sets at the recovery site. The option has the format RECOVERYDDN (*ddname3*, *ddname4*), where *ddname3* is the DD name for the primary output image copy data set at the recovery site, and *ddname4* is the DD name for the backup output data set at the recovery site.

Defining the work data set

The work data set should be at least equal in size to the largest input image copy data set that is being merged. Use the same DCB attributes that are used for the image copy data sets.

Concurrency and compatibility for MERGECOPY

The MERGECOPY utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

The following table shows the restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 51. Claim classes of MERGECOPY operations.

Target	MERGECOPY
Table space or partition	UTRW

Legend:

UTRW - Utility restrictive state - read-write access allowed.

MERGECOPY can run concurrently on the same target object with any utility **except the following utilities:**

- COPY TABLESPACE
- LOAD
- MERGECOPY
- MODIFY
- RECOVER
- REORG TABLESPACE
- UNLOAD (only when from the same image copy data set)

The target object can be a table space or partition.

Full or incremental image copy

You can use the NEWCOPY parameter if the new copy that MERGECOPY creates is to be an incremental image copy or a full image copy.

In general, creating a new full image copy is recommended. The reasons for this recommendation are as follows:

- A new full image copy creates a new recovery point.
- The additional time that it takes to create a new full image copy does not have any adverse effect on the access to the table space. The only concurrency implication is the access to SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.
- The range of log records that are to be applied by RECOVER is the same for both the new full image copy and the merged incremental image copy.
- Assuming that the copies are on tape, only one tape drive is required for image copies during a RECOVER.

If NEWCOPY is YES, the utility inserts an entry for the new full image copy into the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table.

If NEWCOPY is NO, the utility:

- Replaces the SYSCOPY records of the incremental image copies that were merged with an entry for the new incremental image copy
- Deletes all SYSCOPY records of the incremental image copies that have been merged.

In either case, if any of the input data sets might not be allocated, or you did not specify a temporary work data set (WORKDDN), the utility performs a partial merge.

For large table spaces, consider using MERGECOPY to create full image copies.

Use MERGECOPY NEWCOPY YES immediately after each incremental image copy. When you use this option, dates become a valid criterion for deletion of image copy data sets and archive logs. A minimum number of tape drives are allocated for MERGECOPY and RECOVER execution.

How to determine which input copy MERGECOPY uses

MERGECOPY will choose the input image copies that match the current site.

If MERGECOPY is executing at the local site, then the local site image copies will be chosen as the input to be merged. If MERGECOPY is executing at the recovery site, then the recovery site image copies will be chosen as the input to be merged.

Note: MERGECOPY does not accept a FlashCopy image copy as input.

Merging online copies

If you merge an online copy with incremental copies, the result is a full inline copy. The data set is logically equivalent to a full image copy, but the data within the data set differs in some respects

Related tasks

“Using inline COPY with LOAD” on page 292

Using MERGECOPY with individual data sets

Use MERGECOPY on copies of an entire table space, on individual data sets, or on partitions. However, MERGECOPY can only merge incremental copies of the same type. That is, you cannot merge incremental copies of an entire table space with incremental copies of individual data sets to form new incremental copies.

The attempt to mix the two types of incremental copies results in the following messages:

```
DSNU460I DSNUBCLO - IMAGE COPIES INCONSISTENT.  
                    MERGECOPY REQUEST REJECTED  
DSNU010I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE,  
                    HIGHEST RETURN CODE=4
```

With the NEWCOPY YES option, however, you can merge a full image copy of a table space with incremental copies of the table space and of individual data sets to make a new full image copy of the table space.

If the image copy data sets that you want to merge reside tape, refer to “How the RECOVER utility retains tape mounts” on page 453 for general information about specifying the appropriate parameters on the DD statements.

Using MERGECOPY or COPY

COPY and MERGECOPY can create a full image copy. COPY is required after a LOAD or REORG with LOG NO unless an inline copy is created. However, in other cases an incremental image copy followed by MERGECOPY is a valid alternative.

Avoiding MERGECOPY LOG RBA inconsistencies

MERGECOPY does not use information that was logged between the time of the most recent image copy and the time when MERGECOPY was run. Therefore, you cannot safely delete all log records that were made before you ran MERGECOPY.

You can safely delete all log records if you run MODIFY RECOVERY and specify the date when MERGECOPY was run as the value of DATE.

To delete all log information that is included in a copy that MERGECOPY makes:

1. Find the record of the copy in the catalog table SYSIBM.SYSCOPY by selecting database name, table space name, and date (columns DBNAME, TSNAME, and ICDATE).
2. Column START_RBA contains the RBA of the last image copy that MERGECOPY used. Find the record of the image copy that has the same value of START_RBA.
3. In that record, find the date in column ICDATE. You can use MODIFY RECOVERY to delete all copies and log records for the table space that were made before that date.

RECOVER uses the LOG RBA of image copies to determine the starting point in the log that is needed for recovery. Normally, a timestamp directly corresponds to a LOG RBA. Because of this, and because MODIFY uses dates to clean up recovery history, you might decide to use dates to delete old archive log tapes. This decision might cause a problem if you use MERGECOPY. MERGECOPY inserts the LOG RBA of the last incremental image copy into the SYSCOPY row that is created for the new image copy. The date that is recorded in the ICDATE column of SYSCOPY row is the date that MERGECOPY was executed.

Creating image copies in a JES3 environment

Ensure that sufficient units are available to mount the required image copies. In a JES3 environment, if the number of image copies that are to be restored exceeds the number of available online and offline units, and if the MERGECOPY job successfully allocates all available units, the job waits for more units to become available.

Termination or restart of MERGECOPY

You can terminate and restart the MERGECOPY utility.

You can terminate the a MERGECOPY utility job using the TERM UTILITY command.

You can restart MERGECOPY but by default, MERGECOPY restarts at the beginning of the current phase. You can also restart MERGECOPY from the last commit point after receiving an out-of-space condition.

Related concepts

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Related tasks

“Restarting after the output data set is full” on page 40

Sample MERGECOPY control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own MERGECOPY control statements.

Example 1: Creating a merged incremental copy

The control statement in this example specifies that the MERGECOPY utility is to merge incremental image copies from table space DSN8S10C into a single incremental image copy. The NEWCOPY NO option indicates that these incremental copies are not to be merged with the full image copy. The COPYDDN option specifies that the output image copies are to be written to the data sets that are defined by the COPY1 and COPY2 DD statements.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJMU107.MERGE1',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//COPY1 DD DSN=IUJMU107.MERGE1.STEP1.COPY1,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//COPY2 DD DSN=IUJMU107.MERGE1.STEP1.COPY2,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=IUJMU107.MERGE1.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C
COPYDDN (COPY1,COPY2)
NEWCOPY NO
```

Figure 49. Example of creating a merged incremental copy

Example 2: Creating merged incremental copies and using template switching

Each MERGECOPY control statement in this example specifies that MERGECOPY is to merge incremental image copies from the specified table space into a single incremental image copy for that table space. For each control statement, the COPYDDN option specifies that the output image copies are to be written to data sets that are defined by the T1 template. The T1 template has specified the LIMIT option. This means that the output image copies are to be written to DASD, if the output image copy size is less than 5 MB. If the limit is exceeded, template switching from template T1 to template T5 takes place and the output image copies are to be written to TAPE. This template is defined in the TEMPLATE utility control statement.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU224.MERGE',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=JULTU224.MERGE.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
TEMPLATE T1 UNIT(SYSDA) SPACE CYL
          DSN(T1.&SN..T&TI..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.)
          LIMIT(5 MB,T5)
TEMPLATE T5 UNIT(3B0)
          DSN(T5.&SN..T&TI..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.)
MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DBLT2401.TPLT2401 DSNUM ALL NEWCOPY NO
          COPYDDN(T1)
MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DBLT2401.TLLT24A1 DSNUM ALL NEWCOPY NO
          COPYDDN(T1)
MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DBLT2401.TLLT24A2 DSNUM ALL NEWCOPY NO
          COPYDDN(T1)
MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DBLT2401.TLLT24A3 DSNUM ALL NEWCOPY NO
          COPYDDN(T1)
MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DBLT2401.TLLT24A4 DSNUM ALL NEWCOPY NO
          COPYDDN(T1)

```

Figure 50. Example of using templates

Example 3: Creating a merged full image copy

The control statement in this example specifies that MERGECOPY is to merge all incremental image copies with the full image copy from table space DSN8S10C to create a new full image copy.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJMU107.MERGE2',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//COPY1 DD DSN=IUJMU107.MERGE2.STEP1.COPY1,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//COPY2 DD DSN=IUJMU107.MERGE2.STEP1.COPY2,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=IUJMU107.MERGE2.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C
          COPYDDN (COPY1,COPY2)
          NEWCOPY YES

```

Figure 51. Example of creating a merged full image copy

Example 4: Using MERGECOPY with CLONE keyword

The following control statement specifies that MERGECOPY is to process only image copy data sets that were taken against clone objects.

```

MERGECOPY TABLESPACE DBIQUD01.TPIQUD01 DSNUM ALL CLONE NEWCOPY YES
          COPYDDN(COPYTB1)

```

Related reference

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Chapter 18. MODIFY RECOVERY

The MODIFY online utility with the RECOVERY option deletes certain records from the DB2 catalog, directory, and DBD. This utility also recycles DB2 version numbers for reuse.

The records that can be deleted include:

- Records from the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table
- Related log records from the SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX directory table
- Entries from the DBD
- Records that were written before a specific date
- Records of a specific age
- Records for an entire table space, partition, or data set

You can also ensure that a specified number of records is retained.

You should run MODIFY regularly to remove outdated information from SYSIBM.SYSCOPY and SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX. These tables, and particularly SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX, can become very large and take up a considerable amount of space. By deleting outdated information from these tables, you can help improve performance for processes that access data from these tables.

The MODIFY RECOVERY utility automatically removes the SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX recovery records that meet the specified criteria for all indexes on the table space that were defined with the COPY YES attribute.

Output

MODIFY RECOVERY inserts a SYSIBM.SYSCOPY row with ICTYPE='M' and STYPE='R' to record the RBA or LRSN of the most recent SYSCOPY or SYSLGRNX record deleted.

For each full and incremental SYSCOPY record that is deleted from SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, the utility returns a message identifying the name of the copy data set.

If MODIFY RECOVERY deletes at least one SYSCOPY record and the target table space or partition is not recoverable, the target object is placed in COPY-pending status. If you take system-level backups with the BACKUP SYSTEM utility, then you can prevent the MODIFY RECOVERY utility from placing objects in COPY-pending status by specifying YES in the SYSTEM_LEVEL_BACKUPS field of the DB2 Utilities Parameters panel, DSNTIP6, of the installation CLIST.

For table spaces and indexes that are defined with COPY YES, the MODIFY RECOVERY utility updates the OLDEST_VERSION column of the following catalog tables:

- SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
- SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- IMAGCOPY privilege for the database to run MODIFY RECOVERY
- System DBADM authority
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority
- DBADM, authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute MODIFY RECOVERY, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

SYSIBM.SYSCOPY or SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX does not contain records for DSNDB06.SYSCOPY, DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, or DSNDB01.DBD01. You can run MODIFY RECOVERY on these table spaces, but you receive message DSNU573I, indicating that no SYSCOPY records could be found. No SYSCOPY or SYSLGRNX records are deleted.

Execution phases of MODIFY RECOVERY

The MODIFY RECOVERY phase operates in these phases:

UTILINIT

Performs initialization and setup

MODIFY

Deletes records

UTILTERM

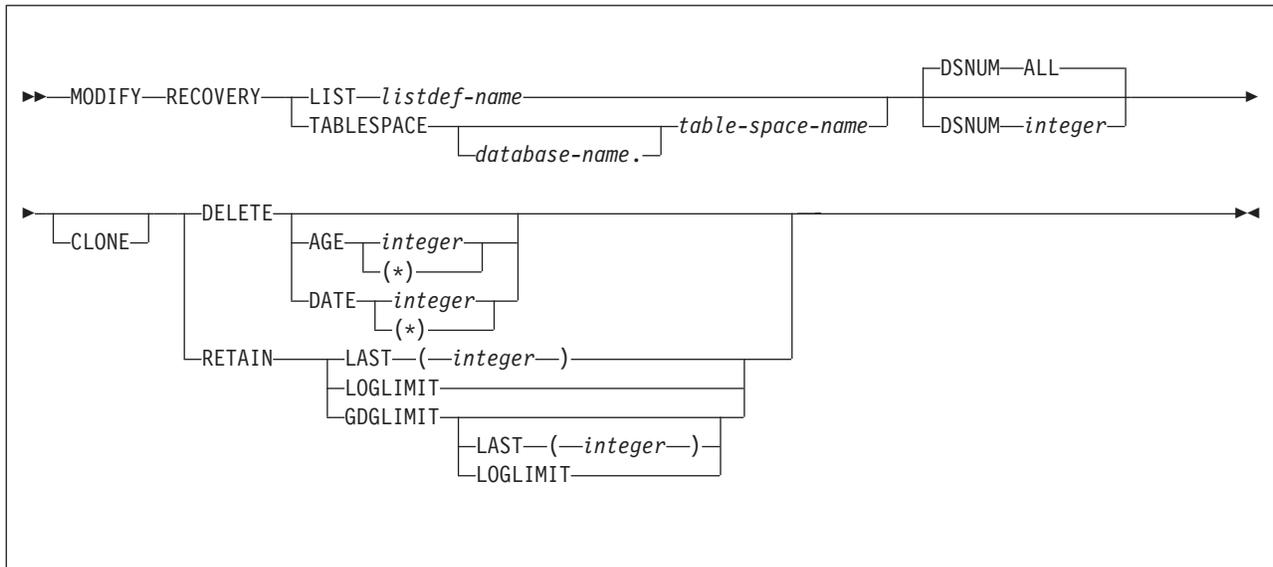
Performs cleanup

Syntax and options of the MODIFY RECOVERY control statement

The MODIFY RECOVERY utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name that contains only table spaces. You can specify one LIST keyword per MODIFY RECOVERY control statement. Do not specify LIST with the TABLESPACE keyword. MODIFY is invoked once for each table space in the list. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the database and the table space for which records are to be deleted.

database-name

Specifies the name of the database to which the table space belongs. *database-name* is optional.

The default value is **DSNDB04**.

table-space-name

Specifies the name of the table space.

DSNUM *integer*

Identifies a single partition or data set of the table space for which records are to be deleted; ALL deletes records for the entire data set and table space.

integer is the number of a partition or data set.

The default value is **ALL**.

For a partitioned table space, *integer* is its partition number. The maximum is 4096.

For a nonpartitioned table space, use the data set integer at the end of the data set name as cataloged in the VSAM catalog. If image copies are taken by partition or data set and you specify DSNUM ALL, the table space is placed in COPY-pending status if a full image copy of the entire table space does not

exist. The data set name has the following format, where *y* is either I or J, *z* is either a 1 or 2, and *nnn* is the data set integer.

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.tsname.y000z.Annn

If you specify DSNUM *n*, MODIFY RECOVERY does not delete any SYSCOPY records for the partitions that have an RBA greater than that of the earliest point to which the entire table space could be recovered. That point might indicate a full image copy, a LOAD operation with LOG YES or a REORG operation with LOG YES.

If you specify DSNUM *n* for a partitioned table space, MODIFY RECOVERY deletes SYSCOPY records for all partitioned index spaces as well as for the partition and updates the version numbers in the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog table. However, DB2 does not perform these functions for the nonpartitioned indexes.

CLONE

Indicates that MODIFY RECOVERY is to delete SYSCOPY records and SYSLGRNX records for only clone objects. If CLONE is not specified, only records for the base objects are deleted. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

DELETE

Indicates that records are to be deleted. See the DSNUM description for restrictions on deleting partition statistics.

AGE *integer*

Deletes all SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records that are older than a specified number of days. SYSLGRNX records that meet the age deletion criteria specified will be deleted even if no SYSCOPY records are deleted.

integer is the number of days, and can range from 0 to 32767. Records that are created today are of age 0 and cannot be deleted by this option.

(*) deletes all records, regardless of their age.

DATE *integer*

Deletes all SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records that are written before a specified date. SYSLGRNX records that meet the date deletion criteria specified will be deleted even if no SYSCOPY records are deleted.

integer can be in eight- or six-character format. You must specify a year (*yyyy* or *yy*), month (*mm*), and day (*dd*) in the form *yyyymmdd* or *yymmdd*. DB2 checks the system clock and converts six-character dates to the most recent, previous eight-character equivalent.

(*) deletes all records, regardless of the date on which they were written.

RETAIN

Indicates that records are to be retained. Older records are deleted.

To determine a cleanup date, RETAIN checks only records in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY with ICTYPE=F (full copy), ICBACKUP=blank (LOCALSITE primary copy), and DSNUM as stated for the specified table space.

RETAIN works internally with a date, not a complete timestamp. As a result, more copies might be kept than are specified by RETAIN. For example, if the most recent five copies have been taken on the same day, and RETAIN LAST (2) is specified, then all five copies remain in SYSCOPY.

LAST (*integer*)

Specifies the number of recent records to retain in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

LOGLIMIT

Queries the BSDS to determine the oldest archive log timestamp and deletes records older than this timestamp. For data sharing, DB2 queries the BSDS of all data sharing members to determine the overall oldest log timestamp. If the BSDS is not available for one of the members and the corresponding member is quiesced, this BSDS is ignored.

GDGLIMIT

Retrieves the limit value for the generation data group (GDG) if the most recent record in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY refers to a generation data set (GDS). DB2 retains as many records that reference the same GDG as it can without exceeding this GDG limit value. In this situation, DB2 does not consider other GDGs that are referenced by SYSIBM.SYSCOPY records. These records that reference other GDGs are deleted in accordance with the deletion date.

LAST (*integer*)

Specifies the number of recent records to retain in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY if the most recent record in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY refers to a non-GDS.

LOGLIMIT

Queries the BSDS to determine the oldest archive log timestamp if the most recent record in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY refers to a non-GDS. For data sharing, DB2 queries the BSDS of all data sharing members to determine the overall oldest log timestamp, and deletes records older than this timestamp. If the BSDS is not available for one of the members and the corresponding member is quiesced, this BSDS is ignored.

Related reference

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Before running MODIFY RECOVERY

Certain activities might be required before you run the MODIFY RECOVERY utility, depending on your situation.

Recommendations for printing SYSCOPY records with REPORT RECOVERY

If you use MODIFY RECOVERY to delete SYSCOPY records, use the REPORT utility to view all SYSCOPY records for the object at the specified site to avoid deleting the wrong records.

Removing RECOVER-pending status

You cannot run MODIFY RECOVERY on a table space that is in RECOVER-pending status.

Improving performance of MODIFY RECOVERY:

To improve performance of MODIFY RECOVERY and reduce contention on SYSLGRNX, it is recommended that you run the REORG TABLESPACE utility on DSND01.SYSLGRNX on a regular basis.

Related reference

Chapter 23, "RECOVER," on page 409

Data sets that MODIFY RECOVERY uses

The MODIFY RECOVERY utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that MODIFY RECOVERY uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 52. Data sets that MODIFY RECOVERY uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table space

Object for which records are to be deleted.

Concurrency and compatibility for MODIFY RECOVERY

The MODIFY RECOVERY utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

The following table shows the restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 53. Claim classes of MODIFY RECOVERY operations.

Target	MODIFY RECOVERY
Table space or partition	UTRW

Legend:

UTRW - Utility restrictive state - Read-write access allowed.

MODIFY RECOVERY can run concurrently on the same target object with any utility except the following utilities:

- COPY TABLESPACE
- LOAD
- MERGECOPY
- MODIFY RECOVERY
- RECOVER TABLESPACE
- REORG TABLESPACE

The target object can be a table space or partition.

How MODIFY RECOVERY deletes rows

You can use the MODIFY RECOVERY utility to delete specific rows from DB2 catalog tables in certain conditions.

SYSLGRNX and SYSCOPY rows for a single partition or the entire table space

Use the DSNUM option to specify whether SYSLGRNX and SYSCOPY rows should be deleted for a single partition or the entire table space. The DSNUM value that you should use (*ALL* or *integer*) depends on the type of image copies that exist for the table space.

Use the following guidelines to determine whether to use DSNUM *ALL* or DSNUM *integer*:

- If image copies exist at only the partition level, use DSNUM *integer*.
- If image copies exist at only the data set level for a nonpartitioned table space, use DSNUM *ALL*. If DSNUM *integer* is used, SYSLGRNX records are not deleted.
- If image copies exist at only the table space or index space level, use DSNUM *ALL*.
- If image copies exist at both the partition level and the table space or index space level, use DSNUM *ALL*.

Restriction: In this case, if you use DSNUM *integer*, MODIFY RECOVERY does not delete any SYSCOPY or SYSLGRNX records that are newer than the oldest recoverable point at the table space or index space level.

- If image copies exist at both the data set level and the table space level for a nonpartitioned table space, use DSNUM *ALL*.

Restriction: In this case, if you use DSNUM *integer*, MODIFY RECOVERY does not delete any SYSCOPY or SYSLGRNX records that are newer than the oldest recoverable point at the table space level.

The preceding guidelines pertain to all image copies, regardless of how they were created, including those copies that were created by COPY, COPYTOCOPY, LOAD, REORG or MERGECOPY.

If MODIFY RECOVERY deleted SYSCOPY or SYSLGRNX rows, it will insert a SYSCOPY record with ICTYPE='M', STYPE='R', and START_RBA equal to the START_RBA of the most recent SYSCOPY or SYSLGRNX row deleted.

SYSLGRNX rows when there are no SYSCOPY rows

Use the AGE or DATE options when you want to delete SYSLGRNX rows and there are no SYSCOPY rows that meet the deletion criteria. The SYSLGRNX rows will be deleted based on the AGE or DATE specified. The RECOVER utility will use this information to determine whether it has all of the necessary information for the recovery of objects.

Recovery rows for indexes

When you perform MODIFY RECOVERY on a table space, utility processing deletes SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX rows that meet the AGE and DATE criteria for related indexes that were defined with COPY YES.

All image copy entries

MODIFY RECOVERY allows you to delete all image copy entries for a table space or data set. In this case, MODIFY RECOVERY:

- Issues message DSNU572I.
- Sets the COPY-pending restrictive status.
- Issues return code 4.

How MODIFY RECOVERY deletes SYSOBDS entries

MODIFY RECOVERY removes entries for an object from the SYSOBDS catalog table when the last image copy that contains version 0 data rows or keys is deleted.

Reclaiming space in the DBD

You can reclaim space in the DBD when you drop a table by using the MODIFY RECOVERY utility.

To reclaim space in the DBD when you drop a table:

1. Commit the drop.
2. Run the REORG utility.
3. Run the COPY utility to make a full image copy of the table space.
4. Run the MODIFY RECOVERY utility with the DELETE or RETAIN option to delete all previous image copies.

Improving REORG performance after adding a column

After you add a column to a table space, you can take certain steps to improve performance.

After a column is added to a table space, the next REORG utility job of that table space creates default values for the new column, as follows:

- During its UNLOAD phase, the REORG job creates default values by converting all fields in each row to the external DB2 format.
- During the RELOAD phase, the REORG job then converts the default values to the internal DB2 format.

This REORG processing, referred to as a *compression cycle*, occurs on each subsequent run of the REORG utility on this table space. You can improve performance by avoiding the compression cycle each time that the REORG job runs on the table space.

To improve performance after adding a column to a table space:

1. Run the REORG utility on the table space.
2. Run the COPY utility to make a full image copy of the table space.
3. Run MODIFY RECOVERY with the DELETE or RETAIN option to delete all previous image copies. MODIFY RECOVERY changes the status of the column that is added after using the ALTER statement only if SYSCOPY rows need to be deleted.

Termination or restart of MODIFY RECOVERY

You can terminate and restart the MODIFY RECOVERY utility.

You can use the TERM UTILITY command to terminate MODIFY RECOVERY in any phase without any integrity exposure.

You can restart a MODIFY RECOVERY utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

The effect of MODIFY RECOVERY on version numbers

When you run MODIFY RECOVERY, the utility updates the range of used version numbers for table spaces and for indexes that are defined with the COPY YES attribute.

MODIFY RECOVERY updates the OLDEST_VERSION column of the appropriate catalog table or tables with the version number of the oldest version that has not yet been applied to the entire object.

If a SYSCOPY record is deleted that has an OLDEST_VERSION number that equals the CURRENT_VERSION number of the table space or index, MODIFY RECOVERY updates the OLDEST_VERSION number in the appropriate catalog table or tables with the CURRENT_VERSION number.

DB2 can reuse any version numbers that are not in the range that is set by the values in the OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION columns.

DB2 stores the range of used version numbers in the OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION columns of one or more of the following catalog tables, depending on the object:

- SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
- SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART

The OLDEST_VERSION column contains the oldest used version number, and the CURRENT_VERSION column contains the current version number.

Recycling of version numbers is required when all of the version numbers are being used. All version numbers are being used when one of the following situations is true:

- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is one less than the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column.
- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is 255 for table spaces or 15 for indexes, and the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column is 0 or 1.

To recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute, run LOAD REPLACE, REBUILD INDEX, REORG INDEX, or REORG TABLESPACE.

Related concepts

 Table space versions (DB2 Administration Guide)

Sample MODIFY RECOVERY control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own MODIFY RECOVERY control statements.

Example 1: Deleting SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records that are over a certain age

The following control statement specifies that the MODIFY RECOVERY utility is to delete all SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records that are older than 90 days for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UD.MODRCV1',
//          UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E DELETE AGE(90)
/*
```

Example 2: Deleting SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records that are older than a certain date

The following control statement specifies that MODIFY RECOVERY is to delete all SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records that were written before 10 September 2002.

```
MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D DELETE DATE(20020910)
```

Example 3: Deleting SYSCOPY records for partitions

The following control statements specifies that MODIFY RECOVERY is to delete the following SYSCOPY records for table space TU5AP053:

- Any records in partition 2 that are older than 5 days
- Any records in partition 3 that were written before 9 October 2006

```
//STEP2 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='FUN5U053.STEP2',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN DD *

      MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE TU5AP053
          DSNUM 2
          DELETE AGE(5)

      MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE TU5AP053
          DSNUM 3
          DELETE DATE(061009)
/*
```

Figure 52. Example MODIFY RECOVERY statements that delete SYSCOPY records for partitions

Example 4: Deleting all SYSCOPY records for objects in a list and viewing the results

In the following example job, the LISTDEF utility control statements define three lists (L1, L2, L3). The first group of REPORT utility control statements then specify that the utility is to report recovery information for the objects in these lists. Next, the MODIFY RECOVERY control statement specifies that the utility is to delete all SYSCOPY records for the objects in the L1 list. Finally, the second group of

REPORT control statements specify that the utility is to report the recovery information for the same three lists. In this second report, no information will be reported for the objects in the L1 list because all of the SYSCOPY records have been deleted.

```
//STEP4 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU224.RCV1',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN DD *
LISTDEF L1 INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBLT2401.T*
LISTDEF L2 INCLUDE INDEXSPACE DBLT2401.I*
LISTDEF L3 INCLUDE INDEX IXLT2402
REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE LIST L1
REPORT RECOVERY INDEXSPACE LIST L2
REPORT RECOVERY INDEX LIST L3
MODIFY RECOVERY LIST L1
DELETE DATE(*)

REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE LIST L1
REPORT RECOVERY INDEXSPACE LIST L2
REPORT RECOVERY INDEX LIST L3
/*
```

Figure 53. Example MODIFY RECOVERY statement that deletes all SYSCOPY records

Example 5: Deleting SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records for clone objects

The following control statement specifies that MODIFY RECOVERY is to delete SYSCOPY records and SYSLGRNX records for only clone objects.

```
MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE DBKQBL01.TPKQBL01
CLONE
DELETE AGE(*)
```

Example 6: Retaining SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records of a GDG

The following control statement specifies that MODIFY RECOVERY is to retain as many recent records in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY as defined in the GDG limit.

```
MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE DBKQBL01.TPKQBL01 RETAIN GDGLIMIT
```

Example 7: Retaining SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records

The following control statement specifies that MODIFY RECOVERY is to retain 4 recent records in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

```
MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE DBKQBL01.TPKQBL01 RETAIN LAST (4)
```

Related reference

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Chapter 27, "REPORT," on page 617

Chapter 19. MODIFY STATISTICS

The MODIFY STATISTICS online utility deletes unwanted statistics history records from the corresponding catalog tables. You can remove statistics history records that were written before a specific date, or you can remove records of a specific age. You can delete records for an entire table space, index space, or index.

Run MODIFY STATISTICS regularly to clear outdated information from the statistics history catalog tables. By deleting outdated information from those tables, you can improve performance for processes that access data from those tables.

Restriction: MODIFY STATISTICS does not delete statistics history records for clone tables because statistics are not collected for these tables.

Output

MODIFY STATISTICS deletes rows from the following catalog tables:

- SYSIBM.SYSCOLDIST_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSLOBSTATS_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSTABSTATS_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_HIST
- SYSKEYTARGETS_HIST
- SYSKEYTGTDIST_HIST

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- STATS privilege for the database to run MODIFY STATISTICS.
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- SQLADM authority.
- System DBADM authority.
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority.

A user ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute MODIFY STATISTICS, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

Execution phases of MODIFY STATISTICS

The MODIFY STATISTICS utility operates in these phases:

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	
----------	--

	Performs initialization and setup
--	-----------------------------------

MODIFYYS

Deletes records

UTILTERM

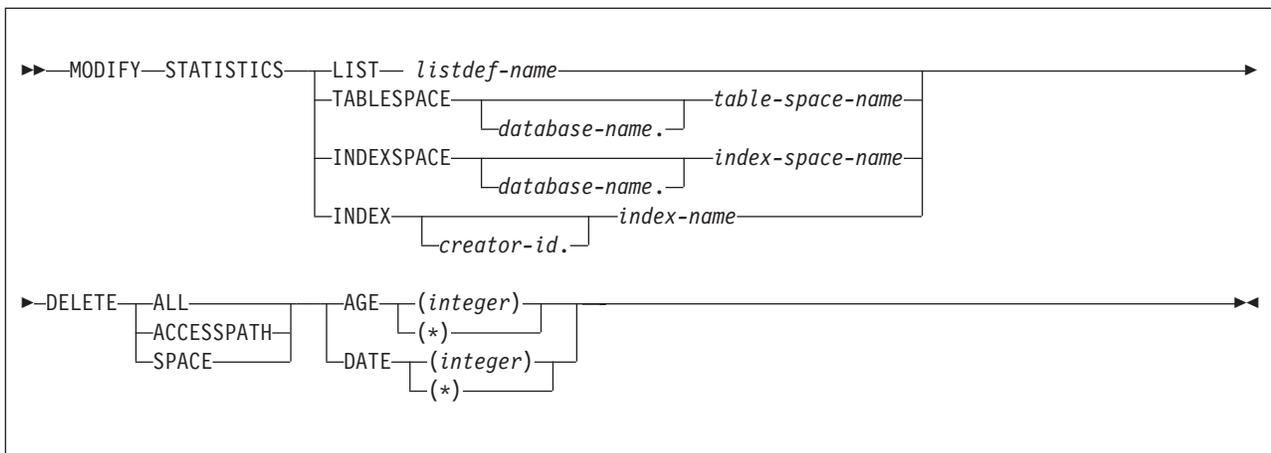
Performs cleanup

Syntax and options of the MODIFY STATISTICS control statement

The MODIFY STATISTICS utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. You cannot repeat the LIST keyword or specify it with TABLESPACE, INDEXSPACE, or INDEX.

The list can contain index spaces, table spaces, or both. MODIFY STATISTICS is invoked once for each object in the list.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the database and the table space for which catalog history records are to be deleted.

database-name

Specifies the name of the database to which the table space belongs. *database-name* is optional.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Specifies the name of the table space for which statistics are to be deleted.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the qualified name of the index space for which catalog history information is to be deleted. The utility lists the name in the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES table.

database-name

Optionally specifies the name of the database to which the index space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

index-space-name

Specifies the name of the index space for which the statistics are to be deleted.

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Specifies the index for which catalog history information is to be deleted.

creator-id

Optionally specifies the creator of the index.

The default value is DSNDB04.

index-name

Specifies the name of the index for which the statistics are to be deleted. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

DELETE

Indicates that records are to be deleted.

ALL

Deletes all statistics history rows that are related to the specified object from all catalog history tables.

Rows from the following history tables are deleted only when you specify DELETE ALL:

- SYSTABLES_HIST
- SYSTABSTATS_HIST
- SYSINDEXES_HIST
- SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST
- SYSKEYTARGETS_HIST

ACCESSPATH

Deletes all access-path statistics history rows that are related to the specified object from the following history tables:

- SYSIBM.SYSCOLDIST_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS_HIST
- SYSKEYTGTDIST_HIST

SPACE

Deletes all space-tuning statistics history rows that are related to the specified object from the following history tables:

- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART_HIST
- SYSIBM.SYSLOBSTATS_HIST

AGE (*integer*)

Deletes all statistics history rows that are related to the specified object and that are older than a specified number of days.

(integer)

Specifies the number of days in a range from 0 to 32 767. This option cannot delete records that are created today (age 0).

(*) Deletes all records, regardless of their age.

DATE (integer)

Deletes all statistics history rows that were written before a specified date.

(integer)

Specifies the date in an eight-character format. Specify a year (yyyy), month (mm), and day (dd) in the form *yyyymmdd*.

(*)

Deletes all records, regardless of the date on which they were written.

Data sets that MODIFY STATISTICS uses

The MODIFY STATISTICS utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that MODIFY STATISTICS uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 54. Data sets that MODIFY STATISTICS uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages	Yes

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table space or index space

Object for which records are to be deleted.

Concurrency and compatibility for MODIFY STATISTICS

The MODIFY STATISTICS utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

The following table shows the restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 55. Claim classes of MODIFY STATISTICS operations.

Target	MODIFY STATISTICS
Table space, index, or index space	UTRW

Legend:

UTRW - Utility restrictive state - read-write access allowed.

Deciding which statistics history rows to delete

After analyzing trends by using the relevant historical catalog information and possibly taking actions based on this information, consider deleting all or part of the statistics history catalog rows.

Deleting outdated information from the statistics history catalog tables can improve performance for processes that access data from those tables. You also make available the space in the catalog. Then, the next time you update the relevant statistics by using `RUNSTATS TABLESPACE`, `REBUILD INDEX`, or `REORG INDEX`, DB2 repopulates the statistics history catalog tables with more recent historical data. Examining this data lets you determine the efficacy of any adjustments that you made as a result of your previous analysis.

Be aware that when you manually insert, update, or delete catalog information, DB2 does not store the historical information for those operations in the historical catalog tables.

Deleting specific statistics history rows

`MODIFY STATISTICS` lets you delete some or all statistics history rows for a table space, an index space, or an index.

You can choose to delete only the statistics rows that relate to access path selection by specifying the `ACCESSPATH` option. Alternatively, you can delete the rows that relate to space statistics by using the `SPACE` option. To delete rows in all statistics history catalog tables, including the `SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_HIST` catalog table, you must specify the `DELETE ALL` option in the utility control statement.

To delete statistics from the `RUNSTATS` history tables, you can either use the `MODIFY STATISTICS` utility or issue `SQL DELETE` statements. The `MODIFY STATISTICS` utility simplifies the purging of old statistics without requiring you to write the `SQL DELETE` statements. You can also delete rows that meet the age and date criteria by specifying the corresponding keywords (`AGE` and `DATE`) for a particular object.

To avoid time outs when you delete historical statistics with `MODIFY STATISTICS`, you should increase the `LOCKMAX` parameter for `DSNDB06.SYSHIST` with `ALTER TABLESPACE`.

Termination or restart of `MODIFY STATISTICS`

You can terminate and restart the `MODIFY STATISTICS` utility.

You can use the `TERM UTILITY` command to terminate the `MODIFY STATISTICS` utility in any phase.

You can restart a `MODIFY STATISTICS` utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample MODIFY STATISTICS control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own MODIFY STATISTICS control statements.

Example 1: Deleting SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_HIST records by age

The following control statement specifies that the MODIFY STATISTICS utility is to delete all statistics history records for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E that are older than 60 days.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UD.MODSTAT1',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
MODIFY STATISTICS TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
      DELETE ALL
      AGE 60
/*
```

Example 2: Deleting access path records for all objects in a list

The following MODIFY STATISTICS control statement specifies that the utility is to delete access-path statistics history rows that were created before 17 April 2000 for objects in the specified list. The list, M1, is defined in the preceding LISTDEF control statement and includes table spaces DB0E1501.TL0E1501 and DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E.

```
//STEP9 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JU0EU115.MDFYL9',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *

LISTDEF M1 INCLUDE TABLESPACE DB0E1501.TL0E1501
          INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
MODIFY STATISTICS LIST M1
          DELETE ACCESSPATH DATE(20000417)
/*
```

Figure 54. MODIFY STATISTICS control statement that specifies that access path history records are to be deleted

Example 3: Deleting space-tuning statistics records for an index by age

The following control statement specifies that MODIFY STATISTICS is to delete space-tuning statistics records for index ADMF001.IXOE15S1 that are older than one day.

```

//STEP9 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JU0EU115.MOFYS9',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *

      MODIFY STATISTICS INDEX ADMF001.IX0E15S1
      DELETE SPACE AGE 1
/*

```

Figure 55. MODIFY STATISTICS control statement that specifies that space-tuning statistics records are to be deleted

Example 4: Deleting all statistics history records for an index space

The following control statement specifies that MODIFY STATISTICS is to delete all statistics history records for index space DBOE1501.IUOE1501. Note that the deleted records are not limited by date because (*) is specified.

```

//STEP8 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JU0EU115.MDFYL8',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *

      MODIFY STATISTICS INDEXSPACE DBOE1501.IUOE1501
      DELETE ALL DATE (*)
/*

```

Figure 56. MODIFY STATISTICS control statement that specifies that all statistics history records are to be deleted

Chapter 20. OPTIONS

The OPTIONS online utility control statement specifies processing options that are applicable across many utility executions in a job step.

By specifying various options, you can:

- Preview utility control statements
- Preview LISTDEF or TEMPLATE definitions
- Override library names for LISTDEF lists or TEMPLATE definitions
- Specify how to handle errors during list processing
- Alter the return code for warning messages
- Restore all default options

You can repeat an OPTIONS control statement within the SYSIN DD statement. If you repeat the control statement, it entirely replaces any prior OPTIONS control statement.

Output

The OPTIONS control statement sets the specified processing options for the duration of the job step, or until replaced by another OPTIONS control statement within the same job step.

Authorization required

The OPTIONS control statement performs setup for subsequent control statements. The OPTIONS statement itself requires no privileges to execute.

Execution phases of OPTIONS

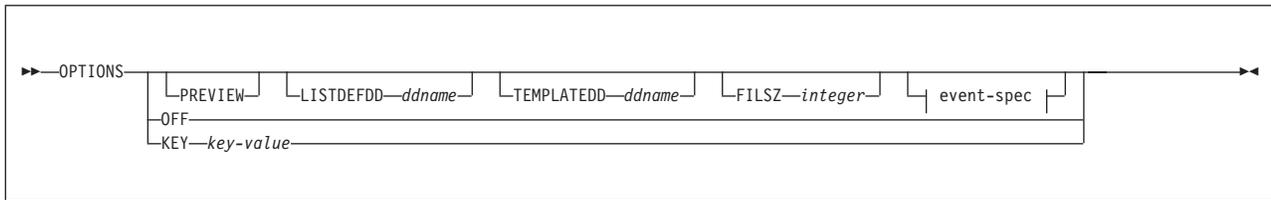
The OPTIONS control statement executes entirely in the UTILINIT phase, in which it performs setup for the subsequent utility.

Syntax and options of the OPTIONS control statement

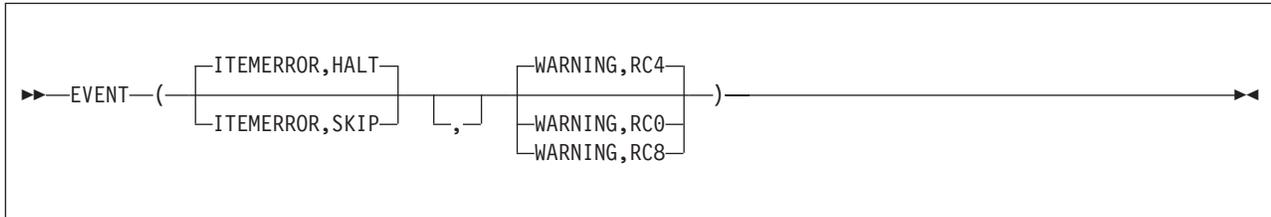
The OPTIONS utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



event-spec:



Option descriptions

PREVIEW

Specifies that the utility control statements that follow are to run in PREVIEW mode. The utility checks for syntax errors in all utility control statements, but normal utility execution does not take place. If the syntax is valid, the utility expands all LISTDEF lists and TEMPLATE DSNs that appear in SYSIN and prints results to the SYSPRINT data set.

PREVIEW evaluates and expands all LISTDEF statements into an actual list of table spaces or index spaces. It evaluates TEMPLATE DSNs and uses variable substitution for actual data set names when possible. It also expands lists from the SYSLISTD DD and TEMPLATE DSNs from the SYSTEMPL DD that a utility invocation references.

A definitive preview of TEMPLATE DSN values is not always possible. Substitution values for some variables, such as &DATE., &TIME., &SEQ. and &PART., can change at execution time. In some cases, PREVIEW generates approximate data set names. The OPTIONS utility substitutes unknown character variables with the character string "UNKNOWN" and unknown integer variables with zeroes.

Instead of OPTIONS PREVIEW, you can use a JCL PARM to activate preview processing. Although the two functions are identical, use JCL PARM to preview an existing set of utility control statements. Use the OPTION PREVIEW control statement when you invoke DB2 utilities through a stored procedure.

The JCL PARM is specified as the third JCL PARM of DSNUTILB and on the UTPROC variable of DSNUPROC, as shown in the following JCL:

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU106.RECOVE1',
//      UTPROC='PREVIEW',SYSTEM='SSTR'
```

The PARM value PREVIEW causes the utility control statements in that job step to be processed for preview only. The LISTDEF and TEMPLATE control statements are expanded, but the utility does not execute.

OPTIONS PREVIEW is identical to the PREVIEW JCL parameter, except that you can specify a subsequent OPTIONS statement to turn off the preview for

OPTIONS PREVIEW. Absence of the PREVIEW keyword in the OPTION control statement turns off preview processing, but it does not override the PREVIEW JCL parameter, which, if specified, remains in effect for the entire job step.

LISTDEFDD *ddname*

Specifies the *ddname* of the LISTDEF definition library. A LISTDEF library is a data set that contains only LISTDEF utility control statements. This data set is processed only when a referenced LIST is not found in SYSIN.

The default value is SYSLISTD.

TEMPLATEDD *ddname*

Specifies the *ddname* of the TEMPLATE definition library. A TEMPLATE library is a data set that contains only TEMPLATE utility control statements. This data set is processed only when a referenced name does not exist in the job step as a DD name and is not found in SYSIN as a TEMPLATE name.

The default value is SYSTEMPL.

FILSZ *integer*

Specifies a file size in megabytes and overrides the file size for the sort program when sort work data sets are allocated by the utility with system parameter UTSORTAL set to YES. Only use this keyword under the direction of IBM Software Support.

EVENT

Specifies one or more pairs of utility processing events and the matching action for the event. Not all actions are valid for all events.

The parentheses and commas in the EVENT operand are currently optional but they may be required in a future release.

ITEMERROR

Specifies how utility processing is to handle errors during list processing. Specifically, this keyword indicates the effect on processing in response to return code 8. By default, utility processing stops (HALT). The ITEMERROR event does not include abnormal terminations (abends).

Note that for the QUIESCE utility, the indexes for the table spaces in the list, if any, are considered as list items for the purposes of the ITEMERROR event. ITEMERROR affects how errors are handled on both the table spaces and the indexes.

HALT

Specifies that the utility is to stop after the event.

SKIP

Ignores the event and skips the list item. Processing continues with the next item in the list.

SKIP applies only during the processing of a valid list. SKIP does not apply if a utility detects that a list is not valid for the utility that is invoked. In that case, the list is rejected with an error message and the processing of the list is not initiated.

If any of the items in a list is skipped, the utility produces a return code of 8, which terminates the job step. The following code shows an OPTIONS statement with the SKIP option:

```
OPTIONS EVENT (ITEMERROR, SKIP)
COPY LISTA
COPY LISTB
```

If LISTA contains ten objects and one object produces a return code 8 during the COPY, the other nine objects in the list are copied successfully. The job step ends with a return code 8 and COPY LISTB is not executed.

WARNING

Specifies a response to the return code message event.

Use WARNING to alter the return code for warning messages. You can alter the return code from message DSNU010I with this option. If you alter the message return code, message DSNU1024I is issued to document the new return code.

Action choices are as follows:

RC0

Lowers the final return code of a single utility invocation that ends in a return code 4 to a return code of 0. Use RC0 to force a return code of 0 for warning messages.

Use this option only when return code 4 is expected, is acceptable, and other mechanisms are in place to validate the results of a utility execution.

RC4

Specifies that return codes for warning messages are to remain unchanged. Use RC4 to override a previous OPTIONS WARNING specification in the same job step.

RC8

Raises the final return code of a single utility invocation that ends in a return code 4 to a return code of 8. Use RC8 to force a return code of 8 for warning messages. The return code of 8 causes the job step to terminate and subsequent utility control statements are not executed.

OFF

Specifies that all default options are to be restored. OPTIONS OFF does not override the PREVIEW JCL parameter, which, if specified, remains in effect for the entire job step. You cannot specify any other OPTIONS keywords with OPTIONS OFF.

OPTIONS OFF is equivalent to OPTIONS LISTDEFDD SYSLISTD TEMPLATEDD SYSTEMPL EVENT (ITEMERROR, HALT, WARNING, RC4).

KEY

Specifies an option that you should use only when you are instructed by IBM Software Support. OPTIONS KEY is followed by a single operand that IBM Software Support provides when needed.

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Concurrency and compatibility for OPTIONS

The OPTIONS utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

OPTIONS is a utility control statement that you can use to set up an environment for another utility to follow. The OPTIONS statement is stored until a specific utility references the statement. When referenced by another utility, the list is

expanded. At that time, the concurrency and compatibility restrictions of that utility apply, with the additional restriction that the catalog tables that are necessary to expand the list must be available for read-only access.

Executing statements in preview mode

You can execute `OPTIONS` utility control statements in preview mode. In this case, the `OPTIONS` online utility checks for syntax errors in all utility control statements. Normal utility execution does not occur.

Statistics profiles can be previewed using the `PREVIEW` option. Under normal execution, statistics profiles are stored in the `SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES` catalog table. When executing `RUNSTATS` with the `PREVIEW` option, DB2 only prints the statistics profile for each table to `SYSPRINT` and normal utility execution does not take place.

Please note that the profile text is displayed prior to parsing for syntactical errors.

The contents of the profile is displayed using `DSNU1376I`.

To execute utility control statements in preview mode:

Specify the `PREVIEW` option in the `OPTIONS` control statement. Control statements are previewed for use with `LISTDEF` lists and `TEMPLATE` definitions but the specified options are not actually executed.

Related reference

“Syntax and options of the `RUNSTATS` control statement” on page 652

Specifying `LISTDEF` and `TEMPLATE` libraries

You can override the names of the optional library data sets.

To specify `LISTDEF` and `TEMPLATE` libraries:

Specify the `LISTDEFDD` option and the `TEMPLATEDD` option in the `OPTIONS` control statement to override the names of the optional library data sets.

Overriding standard utility processing behavior

You can alter settings for warning return codes and error handling during list processing.

To override standard utility processing behavior:

Specify the `EVENT` option in the `OPTIONS` control statement.

Termination or restart of `OPTIONS`

You can terminate and restart the `OPTIONS` utility.

You can terminate an `OPTIONS` utility job by using the `TERM UTILITY` command if you submitted the job or have `SYSOPR`, `SYSCTRL`, or `SYSADM` authority.

You can restart an `OPTIONS` utility job, but it starts from the beginning again. If you are restarting this utility as part of a larger job in which `OPTIONS` completed

successfully, but a later utility failed, do not change the OPTIONS utility control statement, if possible. If you must change the OPTIONS utility control statement, use caution; any changes can cause the restart processing to fail. For example, if you specify a valid OPTIONS statement in the initial invocation, and then on restart, specify OPTIONS PREVIEW, the job fails.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample OPTIONS control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own OPTIONS control statements.

Example 1: Checking control statement syntax and previewing lists and TEMPLATE data set names

The following OPTIONS utility control statement specifies that the subsequent utility control statements are to run in PREVIEW mode. In PREVIEW mode, DB2 checks for syntax errors in all utility control statements, but normal utility execution does not take place. If the syntax is valid, DB2 expands the CPYLIST list and the data set names in the COPYLOC and COPYREM TEMPLATE utility control statements and prints these results to the SYSPRINT data set.

```
OPTIONS PREVIEW
TEMPLATE COPYLOC UNIT(SYSDA)
      DSN(&DB..&TS..&JDATE..&STEPNAME..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.&PB.)
      DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG) SPACE(200,20) TRK
      VOLUMES(SCR03)
TEMPLATE COPYREM UNIT(SYSDA)
      DSN(&DB..&TS..&UT..T&TIME..COPY&IC.&LOCREM.&PB.)
      DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG) SPACE(100,10) TRK
LISTDEF CPYLIST INCLUDE TABLESPACES DATABASE DBLT0701
COPY LIST CPYLIST FULL YES
      COPYDDN(COPYLOC,COPYLOC)
      RECOVERYDDN(COPYREM,COPYREM)
      SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
```

Figure 57. Example OPTIONS statement for checking syntax and previewing lists and templates.

Example 2: Specifying LISTDEF and TEMPLATE definition libraries

In the following example, the OPTIONS control statements specify the DD names of the LISTDEF definition libraries and the TEMPLATE definition libraries.

The first OPTIONS statement specifies that the LISTDEF definition library is identified by the V1LIST DD statement and the TEMPLATE definition library is identified by the V1TEMPL DD statement. These definition libraries apply to the subsequent COPY utility control statement. Therefore, if DB2 does not find the PAYTBSP list in SYSIN, it searches the V1LIST library, and if DB2 does not find the PAYTEMP1 template in SYSIN, it searches the V1TEMP library.

The second OPTIONS statement is similar to the first, but it identifies different libraries and applies to the second COPY control statement. This second COPY control statement looks similar to the first COPY job. However, this statement processes a different list and uses a different template. Whereas the first COPY job uses the PAYTBSP list from the V1LIST library, the second COPY job uses the

PAYTBSP list from the V2LIST library. Also, the first COPY job uses the PAYTEMP1 template from the V1TEMPL library, the second COPY job uses the PAYTEMP1 template from the V2TEMPL library.

```
OPTIONS LISTDEFDD V1LIST TEMPLATEDD V1TEMPL
COPY LIST PAYTBSP COPYDDN(PAYTEMP1,PAYTEMP1)
```

```
OPTIONS LISTDEFDD V2LIST TEMPLATEDD V2TEMPL
COPY LIST PAYTBSP COPYDDN(PAYTEMP1,PAYTEMP1)
```

Example 3: Forcing a return code 0

In the following example, the first OPTIONS control statement forces a return code of 0 for the subsequent MODIFY RECOVERY utility control statement. Ordinarily, this statement ends with a return code of 4 because it specifies that DB2 is to delete all SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX records for table space A.B. The second OPTIONS control statement restores the default options, so that no return codes will be overridden for the second MODIFY RECOVERY control statement.

```
OPTIONS EVENT(WARNING,RC0)
MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE A.B DELETE AGE(*)
OPTIONS OFF
MODIFY RECOVERY TABLESPACE C.D DELETE AGE(30)
```

Example 4: Checking syntax and skipping errors while processing list objects

In the following control statement, the first OPTIONS utility control statement specifies that the subsequent utility control statements are to run in PREVIEW mode. In PREVIEW mode, DB2 checks for syntax errors in all utility control statements, but normal utility execution does not take place. If the syntax is valid, DB2 expands the three lists (LIST1_LISTDEF, LIST2_LISTDEF, and LIST3_LISTDEF) and prints these results to the SYSPRINT data set.

The second OPTIONS control statement specifies how DB2 is to handle return codes of 8 in any subsequent utility statements that process a valid list. If processing of a list item produces return code 8, DB2 skips that item, and continues to process the rest of the items in the list, but DB2 does not process the next utility control statement. Instead, the job ends with return code 8.

```
OPTIONS PREVIEW
LISTDEF COPY1_LISTDEF
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB01.SPT01
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSGPAUT
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA91302.T?A9132*
LISTDEF COPY2_LISTDEF
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA91303.TLA9133A
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA91303.TSA9133B
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA91303.TPA9133C
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA91304.TLA9134A
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSUSER
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSSTATS
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDDF
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSOBJ
LISTDEF COPY3_LISTDEF
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA91304.TSA9134B
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSHIST
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSGRTNS
    INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSJAVA
```

```

        INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA91304.TPA9134C
OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP)
TEMPLATE TMP1 UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
        VOLUMES(SCR03)
        DSN(DH109013.&TS..COPY&ICTYPE.&LOCREM.&PRIBAC.)
COPY LIST COPY1_LISTDEF SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
        COPYDDN (TMP1)
        RECOVERYDDN (TMP1)
        FULL YES
COPY LIST COPY2_LISTDEF SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
        COPYDDN (TMP1,TMP1)
        FULL YES
COPY LIST COPY3_LISTDEF SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
        COPYDDN (TMP1,TMP1)
        RECOVERYDDN (TMP1,TMP1)
        FULL YES

```

Figure 58. Example OPTIONS statements for checking syntax and skipping errors

Chapter 21. QUIESCE

The QUIESCE online utility establishes a *quiesce point* for a table space, partition, table space set, or list of table spaces and table space sets.

Output

A quiesce point is the current log RBA or log record sequence number (LRSN). QUIESCE then records the quiesce point in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table. With RECOVER to a prior point-in-time with consistency, a quiesce point is no longer essential when planning for point-in-time recoveries since the objects will be recovered with transactional consistency (the objects will only contain data that has been committed). However, recovering objects to a quiesce point will be faster because no work has to be backed out. Also, you may still want to establish quiesce points for related sets of objects if there is a need to plan for a point-in-time recovery for the entire set.

You can recover a table space to its quiesce point by using the RECOVER TABLESPACE utility.

With the WRITE(YES) option, QUIESCE writes changed pages for the table spaces and their indexes from the DB2 buffer pool to disk. The catalog table SYSCOPY records the current RBA and the timestamp of the quiesce point. A row with ICTYPE='Q' is inserted into SYSIBM.SYSCOPY for each table space that is quiesced. DB2 also inserts a SYSCOPY row with ICTYPE='Q' for any indexes (defined with the COPY YES attribute) over a table space that is being quiesced. (Table spaces DSNDB06.SYSCOPY, DSNDB01.DBD01, and DSNDB01.SYSUTILX are an exception; their information is written to the log.)

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- IMAGCOPY privilege for the database
- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute QUIESCE, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

You can specify DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, but you cannot include it in a list with other table spaces to be quiesced. Recover to current of the catalog/directory table spaces is preferred and recommended. However, if a point-in-time recovery of the catalog/directory table spaces is desired, a separate quiesce of DSNDB06.SYSCOPY is required after a quiesce of the other catalog/directory table spaces.

Execution phases of QUIESCE

The QUIESCE utility operates in these phases:

Phase Description

UTILINIT

Initialization and setup

QUIESCE

Determining the quiesce point and updating the catalog

UTILTERM

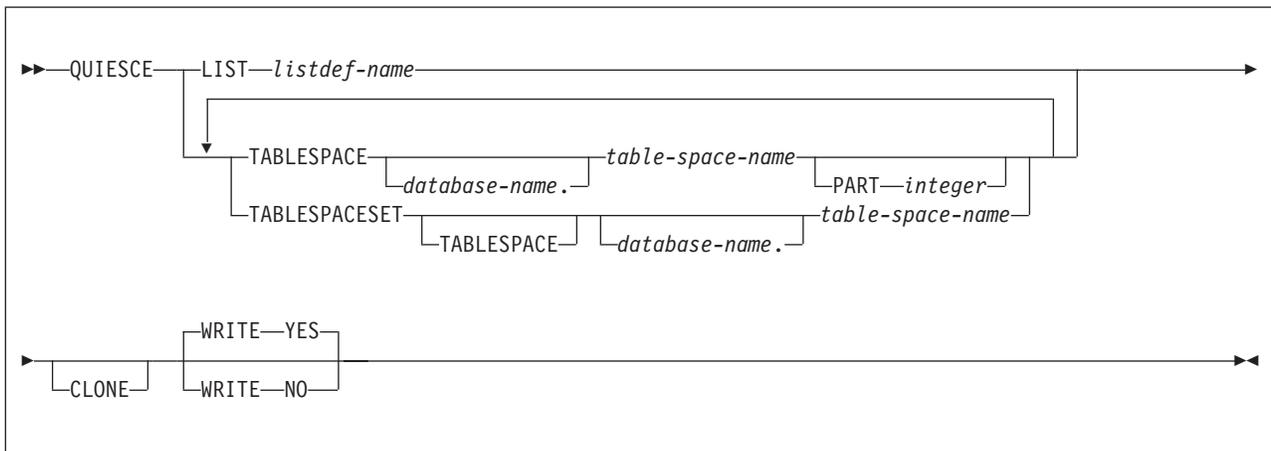
Cleanup

Syntax and options of the QUIESCE control statement

The QUIESCE utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name that contains only table spaces. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each QUIESCE control statement. Do not specify LIST with the TABLESPACE or TABLESPACESET keyword. QUIESCE is invoked once for the entire list. For the QUIESCE utility, the related index spaces are considered to be list items for the purposes of OPTIONS ITEMERROR processing. You can alter the utility behavior during processing of related indexes with the OPTIONS ITEMERROR statement. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

For QUIESCE TABLESPACE, specifies the table space that is to be quiesced.

For QUIESCE TABLESPACESET, specifies a table space in the table space set that is to be quiesced. For QUIESCE TABLESPACESET, the TABLESPACE keyword is optional.

database-name

Optionally specifies the name of the database to which the table space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Specifies the name of the table space that is to be quiesced. You can specify DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, but do not include that name in a list with other table spaces that are to be quiesced. If a point-in-time recovery is planned for the catalog and directory, DSNDB06.SYSCOPY must be quiesced separately after all other catalog and directory table spaces.

All table spaces that are involved in a versioning relationship are quiesced when QUIESCE is run on either the system-maintained temporal table or the history table space. Auxiliary LOB and XML table spaces on both system-maintained temporal table spaces and history table spaces are included.

PART *integer*

Identifies a partition that is to be quiesced.

integer is the number of the partition and must be in the range from 1 to the number of partitions that are defined for the table space. The maximum is 4096.

TABLESPACESET

Indicates that all of the referentially related table spaces in the table space set are to be quiesced. For the purposes of the QUIESCE utility, a table space set is one of these:

- A group of table spaces that have a referential relationship
- A base table space with all of its LOB table spaces
- A base table space with all of its XML table spaces

CLONE

Indicates that QUIESCE is to create a quiesce point for only the specified clone table space. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

WRITE

Specifies whether the changed pages from the table spaces and index spaces are to be written to disk.

YES

Establishes a quiesce point and writes the changed pages from the table spaces and index spaces to disk.

NO

Establishes a quiesce point but does not write the changed pages from the table spaces and index spaces to disk.

QUIESCE is not performed on table spaces with the NOT LOGGED attribute.

Before running QUIESCE

Certain activities might be required before you run the QUIESCE utility, depending on your situation.

You cannot run QUIESCE on a table space that is in COPY-pending, CHECK-pending, RECOVER-pending, or auxiliary CHECK-pending status.

Related concepts

“Resetting COPY-pending status” on page 311

“Resetting REBUILD-pending status” on page 312

Related tasks

“Resetting CHECK-pending status” on page 83

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Data sets that QUIESCE uses

The QUIESCE utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that QUIESCE uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 56. Data sets that QUIESCE uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table space

Object that is to be quiesced. (If you want to quiesce only one partition of a table space, you must use the PART option in the control statement.)

Concurrency and compatibility for QUIESCE

The QUIESCE utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Claims

The following table shows which claim classes QUIESCE drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 57. Claim classes of QUIESCE operations.

Target	WRITE YES	WRITE NO
Table space or partition	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO
Partitioning index, data-partitioned secondary index, or partition	DW/UTRO	
Nonpartitioned secondary index	DW/UTRO	

Table 57. Claim classes of QUIESCE operations. (continued)

Target	WRITE YES	WRITE NO
Legend:		
• DW - Drain the write claim class - concurrent access for SQL readers		
• UTRO - Utility restrictive state - read-only access allowed		

Compatibility

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with QUIESCE on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also documented in the table. QUIESCE does not set a utility restrictive state if the target object is DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

Table 58. Compatibility of QUIESCE with other utilities

Action	Compatible with QUIESCE?
CHECK DATA DELETE NO	Yes
CHECK DATA DELETE YES	No
CHECK INDEX	Yes
CHECK LOB	Yes
COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No
COPY INDEXSPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Yes
COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No
COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Yes
DIAGNOSE	Yes
LOAD	No
MERGECOPY	Yes
MODIFY	Yes
QUIESCE	Yes
REBUILD INDEX	No
RECOVER INDEX	No
RECOVER TABLESPACE	No
REORG INDEX	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	Yes
REPAIR DELETE or REPLACE	No
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY	Yes
REPORT	Yes
RUNSTATS	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes

To run the QUIESCE utility on DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, ensure that QUIESCE is the only utility in the job step.

QUIESCE on SYSUTILX is an exclusive job; such a job can interrupt another job between job steps, possibly causing the interrupted job to time out.

Using QUIESCE on catalog and directory objects

To plan for point in time recoveries using QUIESCE, you can quiesce DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, but DSNDB01.SYSUTILX must be the only table space in the QUIESCE control statement.

If a point-in-time recovery is planned for the catalog and directory, a separate QUIESCE control statement for DSNDB06.SYSCOPY is required after you quiesce the other catalog and directory table spaces. A separate QUIESCE of DSNDB06.SYSCOPY is needed after the QUIESCE of other objects to ensure that a subsequent point-in-time recovery of DSNDB06.SYSCOPY recovers all of the QUIESCE SYSCOPY records for the other catalog and directory objects.

Common quiesce points

You can use the QUIESCE utility with the TABLESPACESET option to obtain a common quiesce point for related table spaces.

With RECOVER to a prior point-in-time with consistency, a quiesce point is no longer essential when planning for point-in-time recoveries because the objects will be recovered with transactional consistency (the objects will only contain data that has been committed). However, recovering objects to a quiesce point will be faster because no work has to be backed out. Also, you may still want to establish quiesce points for related sets of objects if there is a need to plan for point-in-time recovery for the entire set. For the purposes of the QUIESCE utility, a table space set is:

- A group of table spaces that have a referential relationship
- A base table space with all of its LOB table spaces

If you use QUIESCE TABLESPACE instead and do not include every member, you might encounter problems when you run RECOVER on the table spaces in the structure. RECOVER checks if a complete table space set is recovered to a single point in time. If the complete table space set is not recovered to a single point in time, RECOVER places all dependent table spaces into CHECK-pending status.

You should QUIESCE and RECOVER the LOB table spaces to the same point in time as the associated base table space. A group of table spaces that have a referential relationship should all be quiesced to the same point in time.

When you use QUIESCE WRITE YES on a table space, the utility inserts a SYSCOPY row that specifies ICTYPE='Q' for each related index that is defined with COPY=YES in order to record the quiesce point.

Specifying a list of table spaces and table space sets

You can specify as many objects in your QUIESCE job as can be allowed by available memory in the batch address space and in the DB2 DBM1 address space.

Be aware of the following considerations when you specify a list of objects to quiesce:

- Each table space set is expanded into a list of table spaces that have a referential relationship, into a list that contains a base table space with all of its LOB table spaces, or into a list that contains a base table space with all of its XML table spaces.
- If you specify a list of table spaces or table space sets to quiesce and duplicate a table space, utility processing continues, and the table space is quiesced only once. QUIESCE issues return code 4 and warning message DSNU533I to alert you of the duplication.
- If you specify the same table space twice in a list, using PART *n* in one specification, and PART *m* for the other specification, each partition is quiesced once.

Running QUIESCE on a table space in pending status

When you run QUIESCE on a table space in a pending status, the output will contain various messages.

If you run QUIESCE on a table space in COPY-pending, CHECK-pending, or RECOVER-pending status, it terminates with messages that are similar to those messages shown in the following figure.

```
DSNU000I   DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = R92341Q
DSNU050I   DSNUGUTC - QUIESCE TABLESPACE UTQPD22A.UTQPS22D
                                TABLESPACE UTQPD22A.UTQPS22E
                                TABLESPACE UTQPD22A.EMPPROJA
DSNU471I  % DSNUQUIA COPY PENDING ON TABLESPACE UTQPD22A.EMPPROJA PROHIBITS
                                PROCESSING
DSNU012I  DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION TERMINATED, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=8
```

Figure 59. Termination messages when you run QUIESCE on a table space with pending restrictions

When you run QUIESCE on a table space or index space that is in COPY-pending, CHECK-pending, or RECOVER-pending status, you might also receive one or more of the messages that are shown in the following figure.

```
DSNU202I  csect RECOVER PENDING ON TABLESPACE... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU203I  csect RECOVER PENDING ON INDEX ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU204I  csect PAGESET REBUILD PENDING ON INDEX ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU208I  csect GROUP BUFFER POOL RECOVER PENDING ON INDEX ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU209I  csect RESTART PENDING ON ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU210I  csect INFORMATIONAL COPY PENDING ON INDEX ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU211I  csect CHECK PENDING ON ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU214I  csect REBUILD PENDING ON INDEX ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU215I  csect REFRESH PENDING ON ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU471I  csect COPY PENDING ON TABLESPACE ... PROHIBITS PROCESSING
DSNU568I  csect INDEX ... IS IN INFORMATIONAL COPY PENDING
```

Figure 60. Messages for pending restrictions on QUIESCE

Determining why the write to disk fails

Several conditions can cause the write to disk to fail.

QUIESCE attempts to write pages of each table space to disk. If any of the following conditions is encountered, the write to disk fails:

- The table space has a write error range.
- The table space has deferred restart pending.
- An I/O error occurs.

If any of the preceding conditions is true, QUIESCE terminates with a return code of 4 and issues a DSNU473I warning message.

Termination and restart of QUIESCE

You can terminate and restart the QUIESCE utility.

If you use TERM UTILITY to terminate QUIESCE when it is active, QUIESCE releases the drain locks on table spaces. If QUIESCE is stopped, the drain locks have already been released.

You can restart a QUIESCE utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

QUIESCE specifies whether the changed pages from the table spaces and index spaces are to be written to disk. The default option, YES establishes a quiesce point and writes the changed pages from the table spaces and index spaces to disk. The NO option establishes a quiesce point, but does not write the changed pages from the table spaces and index spaces to disk. QUIESCE is not performed on table spaces with the NOT LOGGED attribute.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample QUIESCE control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own QUIESCE control statements.

Example 1: Establishing a quiesce point for three table spaces

The following control statement specifies that the QUIESCE utility is to establish a quiesce point for table spaces DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D, DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E, and DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UD.QUIESC2',
//          UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
QUIESCE TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
        TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
        TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10P
//*
```

The following example shows the output that the preceding command produces.

```
DSNU000I  DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = TEMP
DSNU1044I  DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I  DSNUGUTC - QUIESCE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
                    TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
                    TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P
DSNU477I  = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
DSNU477I  = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
DSNU477I  = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P
DSNU474I  = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE AT RBA 000004E43B78 AND AT LRSN 000004E43B78
DSNU475I  DSNUQUIB - QUIESCE UTILITY COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME= 00:00:02
DSNU010I  DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 61. Example output from a QUIESCE job that establishes a quiesce point for three table spaces

Example 2: Establishing a quiesce point for a list of objects

In the following example, the QUIESCE control statement uses a list to specify that the QUIESCE utility is to establish a quiesce point for the same table spaces as in example 1. The list is defined in the LISTDEF utility control statement.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UD.QUIESC2',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
LISTDEF QUIESCELIST INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
                   INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
                   INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P
QUIESCE LIST QUIESCELIST
/*
```

The following example shows the output that the preceding command produces.

```
DSNU000I DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = TEMP
DSNU1044I DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I DSNUGUTC - LISTDEF QUIESCELIST INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P
DSNU1035I DSNUIHDR - LISTDEF STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
0DSNU050I DSNUGUTC - QUIESCE LIST QUIESCELIST
DSNU477I = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
DSNU477I = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
DSNU477I = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81P
DSNU474I = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE AT RBA 000004E56419 AND AT LRSN 000004E56419
DSNU475I DSNUQUIB - QUIESCE UTILITY COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME= 00:00:00
DSNU010I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 62. Example output from a QUIESCE job that establishes a quiesce point for a list of objects

Example 3: Establishing a quiesce point for a table space set.

The following control statement specifies that QUIESCE is to establish a quiesce point for the indicated table space set. In this example, the table space set includes table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D and all table spaces that are referentially related to it. Run REPORT TABLESPACESET to obtain a list of table spaces that are referentially related.

```
QUIESCE TABLESPACESET TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
```

The following example shows the output that the preceding command produces.

```
DSNU000I DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = TSLQ.STEP1
DSNU050I DSNUGUTC - QUIESCE TABLESPACESET TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACESET DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.PROJ
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.ACT
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.PROJACT
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.EMPPROJA
DSNU477I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S1D
DSNU474I - DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE AT RBA 000000052708 AND AT LRSN 000000052708
DSNU475I DSNUQUIB - QUIESCE UTILITY COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME= 00:00:25
DSNU010I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 63. Example output from a QUIESCE job that establishes a quiesce point for a table space set

Example 4: Establishing a quiesce point without writing the changed pages to disk

In the following example, the control statement specifies that the QUIESCE utility is to establish a quiesce point for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D, without writing the changed pages to disk. (The default is to write the changed pages to disk.) In this example, a quiesce point is established for COPY YES indexes, but not for COPY NO indexes. Note that QUIESCE jobs with the WRITE YES option, which is the default, process both COPY YES indexes and COPY NO indexes. For both QUIESCE WRITE YES jobs and QUIESCE WRITE NO jobs, the utility inserts a row in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY for each COPY YES index.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UD.QUIESC2',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
QUIESCE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D WRITE NO
//*
```

The preceding command produces the output that is shown in the following example. Notice that the COPY YES index EMPNOI is placed in informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) status:

```
DSNU000I DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = TEMP
DSNU1044I DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I DSNUGUTC - QUIESCE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D WRITE NO
DSNU477I = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
DSNU477I = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE SUCCESSFUL FOR INDEXSPACE DSN8D81A.EMPNOI
DSNU474I = DSNUQUIA - QUIESCE AT RBA 000004E892A3 AND AT LRSN 000004E892A3
DSNU568I = DSNUGSRX - INDEX ADMF001.EMPNOI IS IN INFORMATIONAL COPY PENDING
DSNU475I DSNUQUIB - QUIESCE UTILITY COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME= 00:00:00
DSNU010I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 64. Example output from a QUIESCE job that establishes a quiesce point, without writing the changed pages to disk.

Example 5: Establishing a quiesce point for a list of objects

The following control statement specifies that the QUIESCE utility is to establish a quiesce point for the specified clone table space and its indexes, and write the changes to disk.

```
QUIESCE TABLESPACE DBJM0901.TPJM0901 WRITE YES CLONE
```

Chapter 22. REBUILD INDEX

The REBUILD INDEX online utility reconstructs indexes or index partitions from the table that they reference.

During the rebuild process, the REBUILD INDEX utility can also create a FlashCopy image copy of the indexes being rebuilt.

Restriction: REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE should only be used to fix a broken or restricted index, or to build an index after DEFER. You should not use the REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE utility to move an index to different volumes; instead you should use the online REORG utility. REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE on a unique index will not allow the INSERT option, the DELETE option, or updates that affect the unique index.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- RECOVERDB privilege for the database
- STATS privilege for the database is required if the STATISTICS keyword is specified.
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- DATAACCESS authority
- System DBADM authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

If either the FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT option is specified, the batch user ID that invokes the REBUILD INDEX utility must have the authority to execute the DFSMSdss COPY command.

To run REBUILD INDEX STATISTICS REPORT YES, you must use a privilege set that includes the SELECT privilege on the catalog tables.

Execution phases of REBUILD INDEX

The REBUILD INDEX utility operates in the following phases:

UTILINIT

Performs initialization and setup.

UNLOAD

Unloads index entries.

SORT Sorts unloaded index entries.

BUILD

Builds indexes.

SORTBLD

Sorts and builds a table space for parallel index build processing.

UTILTERM
Performs cleanup.

Syntax and options of the REBUILD INDEX control statement

The REBUILD INDEX utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram

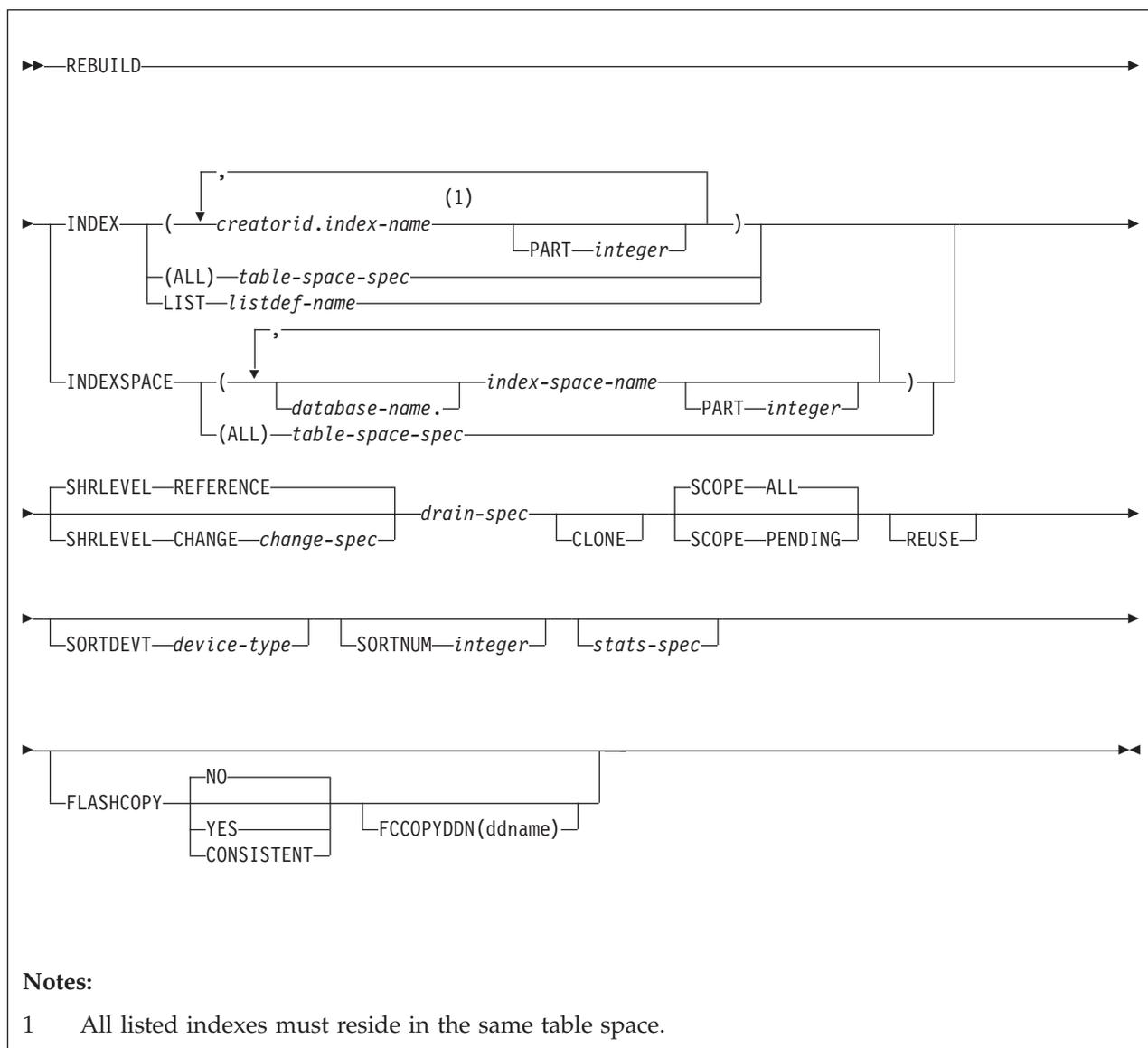
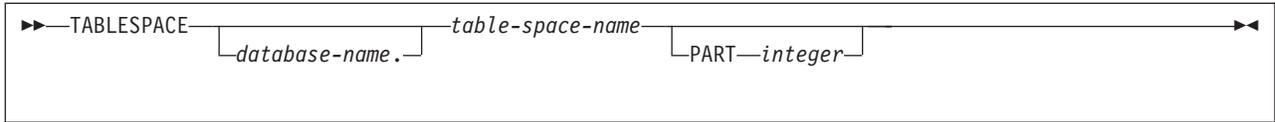
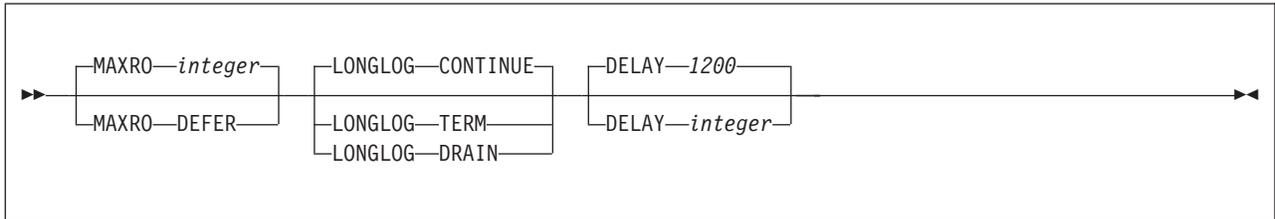


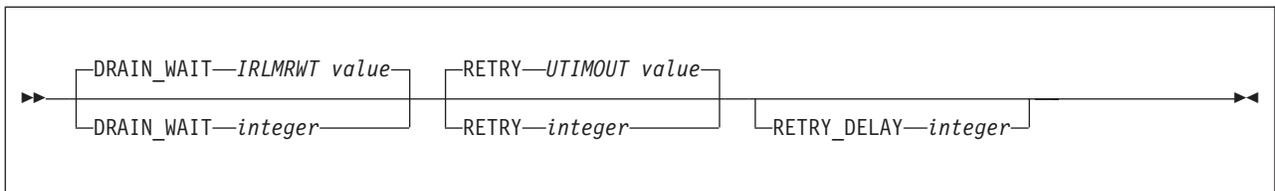
table-space-spec:



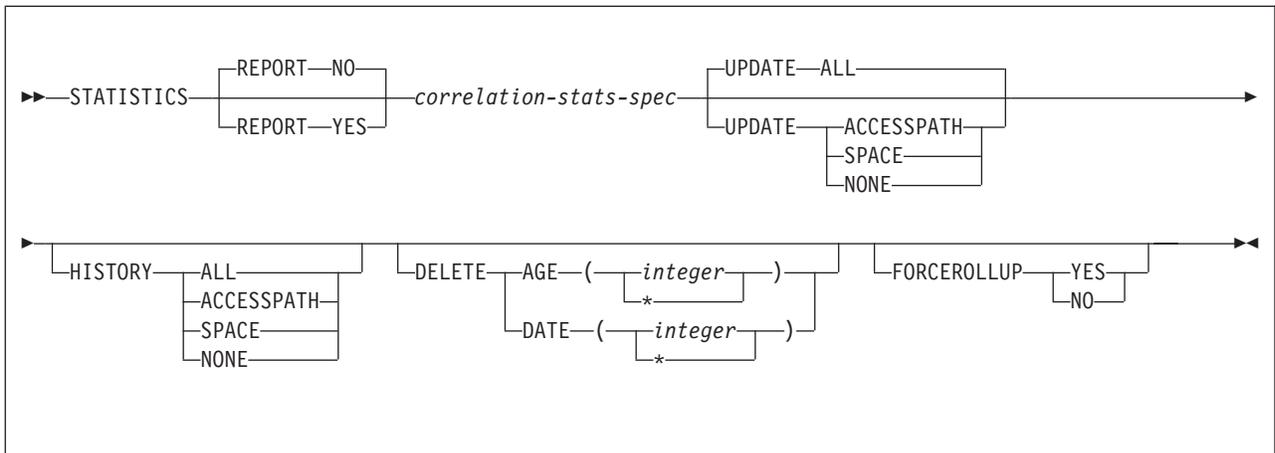
change-spec:



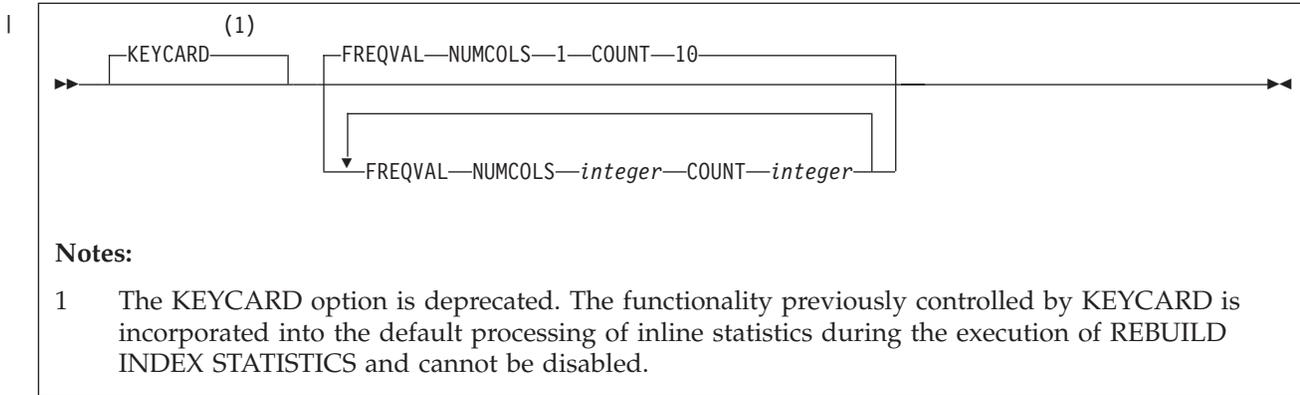
drain-spec:



stats-spec:



correlation-stats-spec:



Option descriptions

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Indicates the qualified name of the index to be rebuilt. Use the form *creator-id.index-name* to specify the name.

creator-id

Specifies the creator of the index. This qualifier is optional. If you omit the qualifier *creator-id*, DB2 uses the user identifier for the utility job.

index-name

Specifies the qualified name of the index that is to be rebuilt. For an index, you can specify either an index name or an index space name. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

To rebuild multiple indexes, separate each index name with a comma. All listed indexes must reside in the same table space. If more than one index is listed and the TABLESPACE keyword is not specified, DB2 locates the first valid index name that is cited and determines the table space in which that index resides. That table space is used as the target table space for all other valid index names that are listed.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the qualified name of the index space that is obtained from the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES table.

database-name

Specifies the name of the database that is associated with the index. This qualifier is optional.

index-space-name

Specifies the qualified name of the index space to copy. For an index, you can specify either an index name or an index space name.

If you specify more than one index space, they must all be defined on the same table space.

For an index, you can specify either an index name or an index space name.

(ALL)

Specifies that all indexes in the table space that is referred to by the TABLESPACE keyword are to be rebuilt. If you specify ALL, only indexes on the base table are included.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space from which all indexes are to be rebuilt.

database-name

Identifies the database to which the table space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Identifies the table space from which all indexes are to be rebuilt.

PART *integer*

Specifies the physical partition of a partitioning index or a data-partitioned secondary index in a partitioned table that is to be rebuilt. When the target of the REBUILD operation is a nonpartitioned secondary index, the utility reconstructs logical partitions. If any of the following situations are true for a nonpartitioned index, you cannot rebuild individual logical partitions:

- the index was created with DEFER YES
- the index must be completely rebuilt (This situation is likely in a disaster recovery scenario)
- the index is in page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) status

For these cases, you must rebuild the entire index.

integer is the number of the partition and must be in the range from 1 to the number of partitions that are defined for the table space. The maximum value is 4096.

You cannot specify PART with the LIST keyword. Use LISTDEF PARTLEVEL instead.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each REBUILD INDEX control statement. The list must contain either all index spaces or all table spaces. For a table space list, REBUILD is invoked once per table space. For an index space list, DB2 groups indexes by their related table space and executes the rebuild once per table space. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF utility control statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates the type of access that is to be allowed for the index, table space, or partition that is to be checked during REBUILD INDEX processing.

REFERENCE

Specifies that applications can read from but cannot write to the table space or partition that REBUILD accesses. Applications cannot read or write from the index REBUILD is building.

CHANGE

Specifies that applications can read from and write to the table space or partition. The index is placed in RBDP and can be avoided by dynamic SQL. CHANGE is invalid for indexes over XML tables.

Do not specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE for an index on a NOT LOGGED table space.

Restriction:

- SHRLEVEL CHANGE is not well suited for unique indexes and concurrent DML because the index is placed in RBDP while being built. Inserts and updates of the index will fail with a resource unavailable (-904) because uniqueness checking cannot be done while the index is in RBDP.
- SHRLEVEL CHANGE is not allowed on not logged tables, XML indexes, or spatial indexes.

MAXRO

Specifies the maximum amount of time for the last iteration of log processing. During that iteration, applications have read-only access.

The actual execution time of the last iteration might exceed the specified value for MAXRO.

integer

integer is the number of seconds. Specifying a small positive value reduces the length of the period of read-only access, but it might increase the elapsed time for REBUILD INDEX to complete. If you specify a huge positive value, the second iteration of log processing is probably the last iteration.

The default value is the value of the lock timeout system parameter IRLMRWT.

LONGLOG

Specifies the action that DB2 is to perform, after sending a message to the console, if the number of records that the next iteration of logging is to process is not sufficiently lower than the number that the previous iterations processed. This situation means that the reading of the log by the REBUILD INDEX utility is not being done at the same time as the writing of the application log.

CONTINUE

Specifies that until the time on the JOB statement expires, DB2 is to continue performing reorganization, including iterations of log processing, if the estimated time to perform an iteration exceeds the time that is specified for MAXRO.

TERM

Specifies that DB2 is to terminate the reorganization after the delay that is specified by the DELAY parameter.

DRAIN

Specifies that DB2 is to drain the write claim class after the delay that is specified by the DELAY parameter. This action forces the final iteration of log processing to occur.

DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum integer between the time that REBUILD send the LONGLOG message to the console and the time that REBUILD performs the action the LONGLOG parameter specifies.

The *integer* specifies the number of seconds.

The default value is 1200.

DRAIN_WAIT

Specifies the number of seconds that REBUILD INDEX is to wait when draining the table space or index. The specified time is the aggregate time for objects that are to be checked. This value overrides the values that are specified by the IRLMRWT and UTIMOUT subsystem parameters.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 1800. If you do not specify DRAIN_WAIT or specify a value of 0, the utility uses the value of the lock timeout subsystem parameter IRLMRWT.

RETRY *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of retries that REBUILD INDEX is to attempt.

integer can be any integer from 0 to 255. If you do not specify RETRY, REBUILD INDEX uses the value of the utility multiplier system parameter UTIMOUT.

Specifying RETRY can increase processing costs and result in multiple or extended periods during which the specified index, table space, or partition is in read-only access.

RETRY_DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum duration, in seconds, between retries. *integer* can be any integer from 1 to 1800.

If you do not specify RETRY_DELAY, REBUILD INDEX uses the DRAIN_WAIT value × RETRY value.

CLONE

Indicates that REBUILD INDEX is to reconstruct only the specified indexes that are on clone tables. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient. If you specify CLONE, you cannot specify STATISTICS. Statistics are not collected for clone objects.

SCOPE

Indicates the scope of the rebuild organization of the specified index or indexes.

ALL

Indicates that you want the specified index or indexes to be rebuilt.

PENDING

Indicates that you want the specified index or indexes with one or more partitions in REBUILD-pending (RBDP), REBUILD-pending star (RBDP*), page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD), RECOVER-pending (RECP), or advisory REORG-pending (AREO*) state to be rebuilt.

REUSE

Specifies that REBUILD should logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them. If you do not specify REUSE, DB2 deletes and redefines DB2-managed data sets to reset them.

If you are rebuilding the index because of a media failure, do not specify REUSE.

If a data set has multiple extents, the extents are not released if you use the REUSE parameter.

SORTDEVT *device-type*

Specifies the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program. For *device-type*, you can specify any disk device that is valid on the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTION options for the sort program.

device-type is the device type.

A TEMPLATE specification does not dynamically allocate sort work data sets. The SORTDEVT keyword controls dynamic allocation of these data sets.

SORTNUM *integer*

Specifies the number of temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program. If you omit SORTDEVT, SORTNUM is ignored. If you use SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program; the sort program uses its own default.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort. The SORTNUM value applies to each sort invocation in the utility. For example, if there are three indexes, SORTKEYS is specified, there are no constraints limiting parallelism, and SORTNUM is specified as 8, then a total of 24 sort work data sets will be allocated for a job.

Each sort work data set consumes both above the line and below the line virtual storage, so if you specify too high a value for SORTNUM, the utility may decrease the degree of parallelism due to virtual storage constraints, and possibly decreasing the degree down to one, meaning no parallelism.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

STATISTICS

Specifies that index statistics are to be collected.

If you specify the STATISTICS and UPDATE options, statistics are stored in the DB2 catalog. You cannot collect inline statistics for indexes on the catalog and directory tables.

Restriction:

- If you specify STATISTICS for encrypted data, DB2 might not provide useful statistics on this data.
- You cannot specify STATISTICS for a clone index.

REPORT

Indicates whether a set of messages to report the collected statistics is to be generated.

NO

Indicates that the set of messages is not to be sent as output to SYSPRINT.

YES

Indicates that the set of messages is to be sent as output to SYSPRINT. The generated messages are dependent on the combination of keywords (such as TABLESPACE, INDEX, TABLE, and COLUMN) that you specify with the RUNSTATS utility. However, these messages are not dependent on the specification of the UPDATE option. REPORT YES always generates a report of SPACE and ACCESSPATH statistics.

KEYCARD

The KEYCARD option is deprecated in the REBUILD INDEX control statement and no longer needs to be specified to collect cardinality statistics on the values in the key columns of an index.

When the STATISTICS option is specified, the REBUILD INDEX utility automatically collects all of the distinct values in all of the 1 to n key column combinations for the indexes being rebuilt. n is the number of columns in the index. With the deprecation of KEYCARD, this functionality cannot be disabled.

| The REBUILD INDEX utility tolerates the specification of the KEYCARD
| option. The utility does not issue any messages if the control statement
| includes or excludes the KEYCARD option when STATISTICS is specified.

FREQVAL

Controls the collection of frequent-value statistics. If you specify FREQVAL, it must be followed by two additional keywords:

NUMCOLS

Indicates the number of key columns that are to be concatenated when collecting frequent values from the specified index. If you specify 3, the utility collects frequent values on the concatenation of the first three key columns.

The default value is 1, which means that DB2 is to collect frequent values only on the first key column of the index.

COUNT

Indicates the number of frequent values that are to be collected. If you specify 15, the utility collects 15 frequent values from the specified key columns.

The default value is 10.

UPDATE

Indicates whether the collected statistics are to be inserted into the catalog tables. UPDATE also allows you to select statistics that are used for access path selection or statistics that are used by database administrators.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that the only catalog table columns that are to be updated are those that provide statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that the only catalog table columns that are to be updated are those that provide statistics to help the database administrator assess the status of a particular table space or index.

NONE

Indicates that catalog tables are not to be updated with the collected statistics. This option is valid only when REPORT YES is specified.

HISTORY

Records all catalog table inserts or updates to the catalog history tables.

The default is supplied by the value that is specified in STATISTICS HISTORY on panel DSNTIPO.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog history tables.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that the only catalog history table columns that are to be updated are those that provide statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that only space-related catalog statistics are to be updated in catalog history tables.

NONE

Indicates that catalog history tables are not to be updated with the collected statistics.

DELETE AGE (integer)

Deletes all statistics history rows that are related to the specified object and that are older than a specified number of days.

(integer)

Specifies the number of days in a range from 0 to 32767. This option cannot delete records that are created today (age 0).

(*) Deletes all records, regardless of their age.

DELETE DATE (integer)

(integer)

Specifies the date in an eight-character format. Specify a year (yyyy), month (mm), and day (dd) in the form `yyyymmdd`.

(*) Deletes all records, regardless of the date on which they were written.

FORCEROLLUP

Specifies whether aggregation or rollup of statistics is to take place when you execute RUNSTATS even if some indexes or index partitions are empty. This keyword enables the optimizer to select the best access path.

The following options are available for the **FORCEROLLUP** keyword:

YES

Indicates that forced aggregation or rollup processing is to be done, even though some indexes or index partitions might not contain data.

NO

Indicates that aggregation or rollup is to be done only if data is available for all indexes or index partitions.

If data is not available, the utility issues DSNU623I message if you have set the installation value for STATISTICS ROLLUP on panel DSNTIPO to NO.

FLASHCOPY

Specifies whether FlashCopy technology is used to create a copy of the object. Valid values are YES, NO, or CONSISTENT. When FlashCopy is used, a separate data set is created for each partition or piece of the object.

The FlashCopy specifications on the utility control statement override any specifications for FlashCopy that are defined by using the DB2 subsystem parameters. If the FlashCopy subsystem parameters specify the use of FlashCopy as the default behavior of this utility, the FLASHCOPY option can be omitted from the utility control statement.

Important: If the input data set is less than one cylinder, FlashCopy technology might not be used for copying the objects regardless of the FLASHCOPY settings. The copy is performed by IDCAMS if FlashCopy is not used.

NO

Specifies that no FlashCopy is made. NO is the default value for FLASHCOPY.

YES

Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object.

Specify YES only if the DB2 data sets are on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes.

Important: Under the following circumstances, the REBUILD INDEX utility might not use FlashCopy even though YES is specified:

- FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available
- The source tracks are already the target of a FlashCopy operation
- The target tracks are the source of a FlashCopy operation
- The maximum number of relationships for the copy is exceeded

In the event that FlashCopy is not used, the REBUILD INDEX utility uses traditional I/O methods to copy the object, which can result in longer than expected execution time.

CONSISTENT

Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object. Because the copies created by the REBUILD INDEX utility are already consistent, the utility treats a specification of CONSISTENT the same as a specification of YES.

FCCOPYDDN

Specifies the template to be used to create the FlashCopy image copy data set names. If a value is not specified for FCCOPYDDN on the REBUILD INDEX control statement when FlashCopy is used, the value specified on the FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter determines the template to be used.

(template-name)

The data set names for the FlashCopy image copy are allocated according to the template specification. For table space or index space level FlashCopy image copies, because a data set is allocated for each partition or piece, ensure that the data set naming convention in the template specification is unique enough. Use the &DSNUM variable, which resolves to a partition number or piece number at execution time.

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Before running REBUILD INDEX

Certain activities might be required before you run the REBUILD INDEX utility, depending on your situation.

Because the data that DB2 needs to build an index is in the table space on which the index is based, you do not need image copies of indexes. To rebuild the index, you do not need to recover the table space, unless it is also damaged. You do not need to rebuild an index merely because you have recovered the table space on which it is based.

If you recover a table space to a prior point in time and do not recover all the indexes to the same point in time, you must rebuild all of the indexes.

Some logging might occur if both of the following conditions are true:

- The index is a nonpartitioning index.

- The index is being concurrently accessed either by SQL on a different partition of the same table space or by a utility that is run on a different partition of the same table space.

Running REBUILD INDEX when the index has a VARBINARY column.

If you run REBUILD INDEX against an index with the following characteristics, REBUILD INDEX fails:

- The index was created on a VARBINARY column or a column with a distinct type that is based on a VARBINARY data type.
- The index column has the DESC attribute.

To fix the problem, alter the column data type to BINARY, and then run REBUILD INDEX.

Data sets that REBUILD INDEX uses

The REBUILD INDEX utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that REBUILD INDEX uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 59. Data sets that REBUILD INDEX uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
STPRIN01	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY). This data set is used when statistics are collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.	No ¹
Work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when sorting keys. If index build parallelism is used, the DD names have the form <i>SWnnWKmm</i> . If index build parallelism is not used, the DD names have the form <i>SORTWKnn</i> .	Yes
Sort work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index. The DD names have the form <i>ST01WKnn</i> .	No ^{2,3,4}
UTPRINT	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY).	Yes
FlashCopy image copy data sets	For copies of the entire index space, a separate VSAM data set for each partition or piece that is contained in the index space. For partition-level or piece-level copies, a VSAM data set for each partition or piece that is being copied.	No ⁵

Table 59. Data sets that REBUILD INDEX uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
Note:		
	1. STPRIN01 is required if statistics are being collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index, but REBUILD INDEX dynamically allocates the STPRIN01 data set if UTPRINT is allocated to SYSOUT.	
	2. Required when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.	
	3. If the DYNALLOC parm of the SORT program is not turned on, you need to allocate the data set. Otherwise, the sort program dynamically allocates the temporary data set.	
	4. It is recommended that you use dynamic allocation by specifying SORTDEVT in the utility statement because dynamic allocation reduces the maintenance required of the utility job JCL.	
	5. Required if you specify the FLASHCOPY YES	

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table space

Object whose indexes are to be rebuilt.

Calculating the size of the SORTWK nn data set

To calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the SORTWK nn data set, use the following formula:

$$2 \times (\textit{longest index key} + c) \times (\textit{number of extracted keys})$$

longest index key

The length of the longest index key that is to be processed by the subtask.

If the index is of varying length, the longest key is the maximum possible length of a key with all varying-length columns that are padded to their maximum length, plus 2 bytes for each varying-length column in the index. For example, if an index with 3 columns (A, B, and C) has length values of CHAR(8) for A, VARCHAR(128) for B, and VARCHAR(50) for C, the longest key is calculated as follows:

$$8 + 128 + 50 + 2 + 2 = 190$$

c A value as follows:

- 10 if the indexes that are being rebuilt are a mix of data-partitioned secondary indexes and nonpartitioned indexes
- 8 if the indexes that are being rebuilt are partitioned, or if none of them are data-partitioned secondary indexes.

number of keys

The number of keys from all indexes that the subtask sorts and processes.

Using two or three large SORTWK nn data sets are preferable to several small ones.

Calculating the size of the ST01WK nn data set

To calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the ST01WK nn data set, use the following formula:

$$2 \times (\textit{maximum record length} \times \textit{numcols} \times (\textit{count} + 2)) \times \textit{number of indexes}$$

The variables in the preceding formula have the following values:

maximum record length

Maximum record length of the SYSCOLDISTSTATS record that is processed when collecting frequency statistics (You can obtain this value from the RECLENGTH column in SYSTABLES.)

numcols

Number of key columns to concatenate when you collect frequent values from the specified index.

count Number of frequent values that DB2 is to collect.

Sort work data sets cannot span volumes. Smaller volumes require more sort work data sets to sort the same amount of data; therefore, large volume sizes can reduce the number of needed sort work data sets. When you allocate sort work data sets on disk, the recommended amount of space to allow provides at least 1.2 times the amount of data that is to be sorted.

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Concurrency and compatibility for REBUILD INDEX

The REBUILD INDEX utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE jobs cannot be run to rebuild indexes on the same table space concurrently. As an alternative, REBUILD INDEX can build indexes in parallel by specifying multiple indexes in a single utility statement. Concurrency for rebuilding indexes in different table space is still allowed, as is the concurrency in rebuilding different partitions of an index in a partitioned table space.

Restriction: REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE should only be used to fix a broken or restricted index, or to build an index after DEFER. You should not use the REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE utility to move an index to different volumes; instead you should use the online REORG utility. REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE on a unique index will not allow the INSERT option, the DELETE option, or updates that affect the unique index.

Claims

The following table shows which claim classes REBUILD INDEX drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 60. Claim classes of REBUILD INDEX operations.

Target	REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	REBUILD INDEX PART SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE
Table space or partition	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	CR/UTRW
Partitioning index, data-partitioned secondary index, or physical partition ¹	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	CR/UTRW
Nonpartitioned secondary index ²	DA/UTUT	DR	CR/UTRW
Logical partition of an index ³	N/A	DA/UTUT	CR/UTRW

Legend:

- CR - Claim the read claim class
- DA - Drain all claim classes; no concurrent SQL access
- DW - Drain the write claim class; concurrent access for SQL readers
- DR - Drains the repeatable-read claim class
- N/A - Not applicable
- UTUT - Utility restrictive state; exclusive control
- UTRO - Utility restrictive state; read-only access allowed
- UTRW - Utility restrictive state; read and write access allowed

Note:

1. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over partitioned XML table spaces
2. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over nonpartitioned XML table spaces and XML indexes
3. Includes logical partitions of an XML index over partitioned XML table spaces

Compatibility

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with REBUILD INDEX on the same target object. The target object can be an index space or a partition of an index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also shown. REBUILD INDEX does not set a utility restrictive state if the target object is DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

Table 61. Compatibility of REBUILD INDEX with other utilities

Action	REBUILD INDEX
CHECK DATA	No
CHECK INDEX	No
CHECK LOB	Yes
COPY INDEX	No
COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No
COPY TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Yes
DIAGNOSE	Yes
LOAD	No
MERGECOPY	Yes
MODIFY	Yes
QUIESCE	No
REBUILD INDEX	No
RECOVER INDEX	No

Table 61. Compatibility of REBUILD INDEX with other utilities (continued)

Action	REBUILD INDEX
RECOVER TABLESPACE	No
REORG INDEX	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL with cluster index	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL without cluster index	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE by KEY	No
REPAIR LOCATE by RID DELETE or REPLACE	No
REPAIR LOCATE by RID DUMP or VERIFY	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE DUMP or VERIFY	No
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE or INDEX PAGE REPLACE	No
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE DUMP or VERIFY	Yes
REPORT	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX	No
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes

To run REBUILD INDEX on SYSIBM.DSNLUX01 or SYSIBM.DSNLUX02, ensure that REBUILD INDEX is the only utility in the job step and the only utility that is running in the DB2 subsystem. Unloading a base table that has LOB columns is not compatible with REBUILD INDEX.

Access with REBUILD INDEX SHRLEVEL

You can specify the level of access that you have to your data by using the SHRLEVEL option.

Before target indexes are built, they are first drained (DRAIN ALL), then placed in RBDP. The indexes are shown in UTRW states.

For rebuilding an index or a partition of an index, the SHRLEVEL option lets you choose the data access level that you have during the rebuild:

Log processing with SHRLEVEL CHANGE

When you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, DB2 processes the log. This step executes iteratively. The first iteration processes the log records that accumulated during the previous iteration. The iterations continue until one of these conditions is met:

- DB2 estimates that the time to perform the log processing in the next iteration will be less than or equal to the time that is specified by MAXRO. If this condition is met, the next iteration is the last.
- The number of log records that the next iteration will process is not sufficiently lower than the number of log records that were processed in the previous iteration. If this condition is met but the first two conditions are not, DB2 sends

message DSNU377I to the console. DB2 continues log processing for the length of time that is specified by DELAY and then performs the action specified by LONGLOG.

Operator actions

LONGLOG specifies the action that DB2 is to perform if log processing is not occurring quickly enough. If the operator does not respond to the console message DSNU377I, the LONGLOG option automatically goes into effect. You can take one of the following actions:

- Execute the TERM UTILITY command to terminate the rebuild process.

DB2 does not take the action specified in the LONGLOG phrase if any one of these events occurs before the delay expires:

- A TERM UTILITY command is issued.
- DB2 estimates that the time to perform the next iteration is likely to be less than or equal to the time specified on the MAXRO keyword.
- REBUILD terminates for any reason (including the deadline).

Rebuilding index partitions

The REBUILD INDEX utility can rebuild one or more partitions of a partitioned index by extracting the keys from the data rows of the table on which they are based.

When you specify the PART option, one or more partitions from a partitioning index or a data-partitioned secondary index can be rebuilt. However, for nonpartitioned indexes, you cannot rebuild individual logical partitions in certain situations.

If any of the following situations are true for a nonpartitioned index, you cannot rebuild individual logical partitions:

- the index was created with DEFER YES
- the index must be completely rebuilt (This situation is likely in a disaster recovery scenario)
- the index is in page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) status

For these cases, you must rebuild the entire index.

Rebuilding indexes on partition-by-growth table spaces

The REBUILD INDEX Utility might reset more partitions than it repopulates. Any excess partitions will be empty after the REBUILD process.

Improving performance when rebuilding index partitions

Certain activities can improve performance when rebuilding index partitions.

If you use the PART option to rebuild only a single partition of an index, the utility does not need to scan the entire table space.

To rebuild several indexes (including data-partitioned secondary indexes) at the same time and reduce recovery time, use parallel index rebuild, or submit multiple index jobs.

When rebuilding nonpartitioned secondary indexes and partitions of partitioned indexes, this type of parallel processing on the same table space decreases the size of the sort data set, as well as the total time that is required to sort all the keys.

When you run the REBUILD INDEX utility concurrently on separate partitions of a partitioned index (either partitioning or secondary), the sum of the processor time is approximately the time for a single REBUILD INDEX job to run against the entire index. For partitioning indexes, the elapsed time for running concurrent REBUILD INDEX jobs is a fraction of the elapsed time for running a single REBUILD INDEX job against an entire index.

When to use SHRLEVEL CHANGE:

Schedule REBUILD with SHRLEVEL CHANGE when the rate of writing is low and transactions are short. Avoid scheduling REBUILD with SHRLEVEL CHANGE when low-tolerance applications are executing.

When to use DRAIN_WAIT:

The DRAIN_WAIT option provides improved control over the time online REBUILD waits for drains. Also, because the DRAIN_WAIT is the aggregate time that online REBUILD is to wait to perform a drain on a table space and associated indexes, the length of drains is more predictable than it is when each partition and index has its own individual waiting-time limit.

By specifying a short delay time (less than the system timeout value, IRLMRWT), you can reduce the impact on applications by reducing time-outs. You can use the RETRY option to give the online REBUILD INDEX utility chances to complete successfully. If you do not want to use RETRY processing, you can still use DRAIN_WAIT to set a specific and more consistent limit on the length of drains.

RETRY allows an online REBUILD that is unable to drain the objects that it requires to try again after a set period (RETRY_DELAY). Objects will remain in their original state if the drain fails in the LOG phase.

Because application SQL statements can queue behind any unsuccessful drain that the online REBUILD has tried, define a reasonable delay before you retry to allow this work to complete; the default is lock timeout subsystem parameter IRLMRWT.

When the default DRAIN WRITERS is used with SHRLEVEL CHANGE and RETRY, multiple read-only log iterations can occur. Because online REBUILD can have to do more work when RETRY is specified, multiple or extended periods of restricted access might occur. Applications that run with REBUILD must perform frequent commits. During the interval between retries, the utility is still active; consequently, other utility activity against the table space and indexes is restricted.

Recommendation: Run online REBUILD during light periods of activity on the table space or index.

Related concepts

“Rebuilding multiple indexes”

Rebuilding multiple indexes

When you process both node ID indexes and XML indexes together, they are processed sequentially. First the node ID index is processed and then the XML index.

Building indexes in parallel

Parallel index build reduces the elapsed time for a REBUILD INDEX job by sorting the index keys and rebuilding multiple indexes or index partitions in parallel, rather than sequentially. Optimally, a pair of subtasks processes each index; one subtask sorts extracted keys, while the other subtask builds the index. REBUILD INDEX begins building each index as soon as the corresponding sort generates its first sorted record. If you specify STATISTICS, a third subtask collects the sorted keys and updates the catalog table in parallel.

The subtasks that are used for the parallel REBUILD INDEX processing use DB2 connections. If you receive message DSNU397I that indicates that the REBUILD INDEX utility is constrained, increase the number of concurrent connections by using the MAX BATCH CONNECT parameter on panel DSNTIPE.

The greatest elapsed processing-time improvements result from parallel rebuilding for:

- Multiple indexes on a table space
- A partitioning index or a data-partitioned secondary index on all partitions of a partitioned table space
- A nonpartitioned secondary index on a partitioned table space

The following figure shows the flow of a REBUILD INDEX job with a parallel index build. The same flow applies whether you rebuild a data-partitioned secondary index or a partitioning index. DB2 starts multiple subtasks to unload the entire partitioned table space. Subtasks then sort index keys and build the partitioning index in parallel. If you specify STATISTICS, additional subtasks collect the sorted keys and update the catalog table in parallel, eliminating the need for a second scan of the index by a separate RUNSTATS job.

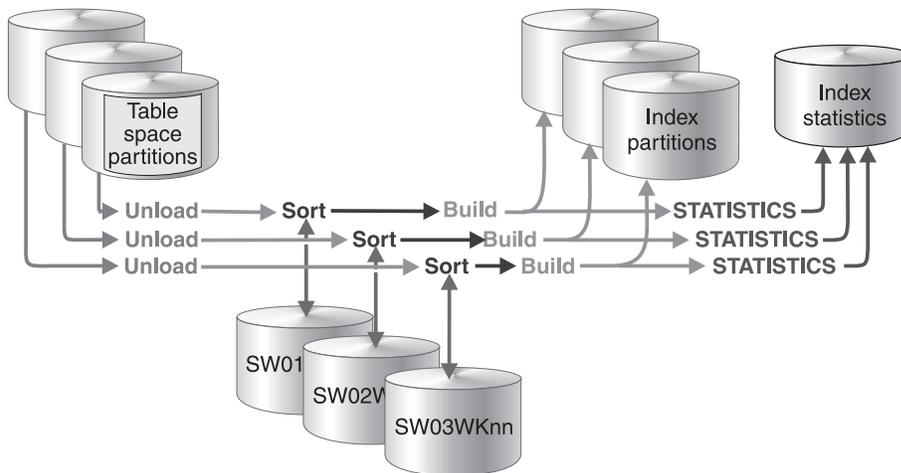


Figure 65. How a partitioning index is rebuilt during a parallel index build

The following figure shows the flow of a REBUILD INDEX job with a parallel index build. DB2 starts multiple subtasks to unload all partitions of a partitioned table space and to sort index keys in parallel. The keys are then merged and passed to the build subtask, which builds the nonpartitioned secondary index. If you specify STATISTICS, a separate subtask collects the sorted keys and updates the catalog table.

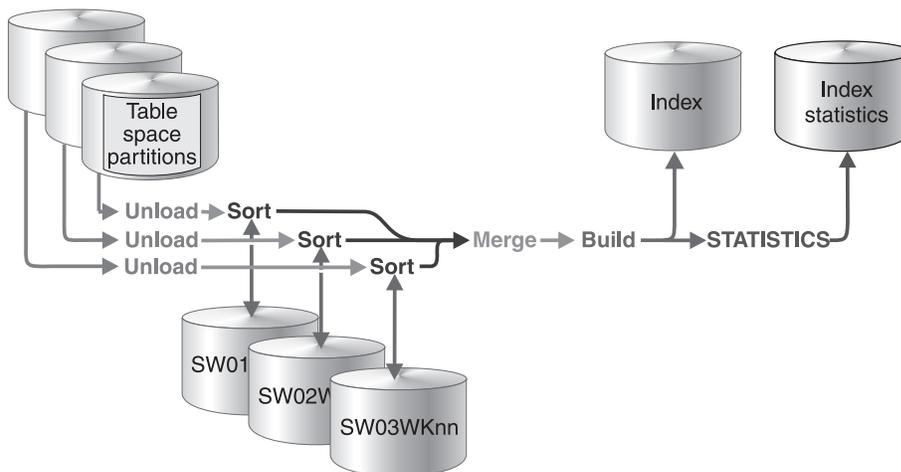


Figure 66. How a nonpartitioned secondary index is rebuilt during a parallel index build

When parallel index build is used:

REBUILD INDEX always sorts the index keys and builds them in parallel for partitioned table spaces unless constrained by available memory, sort work files, or UTPRIN nn file allocations.

Sort work data sets for parallel index build:

You can either allow the utility to dynamically allocate the data sets that SORT needs, or provide the necessary data sets yourself. Select one of the following methods to allocate sort work data sets and message data sets:

Method 1:

REBUILD INDEX determines the optimal number of sort work data sets and message data sets.

1. Specify the SORTDEVT keyword in the utility statement.

2. Allow dynamic allocation of sort work data sets by **not** supplying SORTWK nn DD statements in the REBUILD INDEX utility JCL.
3. Allocate UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

Method 2:

You control allocation of sort work data sets, and REBUILD INDEX allocates message data sets.

1. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form SW nn WK mm .
2. Allocate UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

Method 3:

You have the most control over rebuild processing; you must specify both sort work data sets and message data sets.

1. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form SW nn WK mm .
2. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form UTPRIN nn .

Data sets that are used

If you select Method 2 or 3, define the necessary data sets by using the following information.

Each sort subtask must have its own group of sort work data sets and its own print message data set. In addition, you need to allocate the merge message data set when you build a single nonpartitioned secondary index on a partitioned table space.

Possible reasons to allocate data sets in the utility job JCL rather than using dynamic allocation are to:

- Control the size and placement of the data sets
- Minimize device contention
- Optimally utilize free disk space
- Limit the number of utility subtasks that are used to build indexes

The DD names SW nn WK mm define the sort work data sets that are used during utility processing. nn identifies the subtask pair, and mm identifies one or more data sets that are to be used by that subtask pair. For example:

SW01WK01

Is the first sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the first index.

SW01WK02

Is the second sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the first index.

SW02WK01

Is the first sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the second index.

SW02WK02

Is the second sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the second index.

The DD names UTPRIN nn define the sort work message data sets that are used by the utility subtask pairs. nn identifies the subtask pair.

Every time you invoke REBUILD INDEX, new UTPRIN nn data sets are dynamically allocated. REBUILD INDEX does not reuse UTPRIN nn data sets from previous job steps. This behavior might cause the number of JES2 job queue elements to be consumed more quickly than expected.

If you allocate the UTPRINT DD statement to SYSOUT in the job statement, the sort message data sets and the merge message data set, if required, are dynamically allocated. If you want the sort message data sets, merge message data sets, or both, allocated to a disk or tape data set rather than to SYSOUT, you must supply the UTPRIN nn or the UTMERG01 DD statements (or both) in the utility JCL. If you do not allocate the UTPRINT DD statement to SYSOUT, and you do not supply a UTMERG01 DD statement in the job statement, partitions are not unloaded in parallel.

Determining the number of sort subtasks

The maximum number of utility subtasks that are started for parallel index build equals:

- For a simple table space, segmented table space, or simple partition of a partitioned table space, the number of indexes that are to be built
- For a single index that is being built on a partitioned table space, the number of partitions that are to be unloaded

REBUILD INDEX determines the number of subtasks according to the following guidelines:

- The number of subtasks equals the number of allocated sort work data set groups.
- The number of subtasks equals the number of allocated message data sets.
- If you allocate both sort work data sets and message data set groups, the number of subtasks equals the smallest number of allocated data sets.

Allocation of sort subtasks

REBUILD INDEX attempts to assign one sort subtask for each index that is to be built. If REBUILD INDEX cannot start enough subtasks to build one index per subtask, it allocates any excess indexes across the pairs (in the order that the indexes were created), so that one or more subtasks might build more than one index.

Estimating the sort work file size

If you choose to provide the data sets, you need to know the size and number of keys that are present in all of the indexes or index partitions that are being processed by the subtask in order to calculate each sort work file size. When you determine which indexes or index partitions are assigned to which subtask pairs, use the following formula to calculate the required space.

$$2 \times (\text{maximum record length} \times \text{numcols} \times (\text{count} + 2) \times \text{number of indexes})$$

The variables in the preceding formula have the following values:

maximum record length

Maximum record length of the SYSCOLDISTSTATS record that is processed when collecting frequency statistics (You can obtain this value from the RECLENGTH column in SYSTABLES.)

numcols

Number of key columns to concatenate when you collect frequent values from the specified index.

count Number of frequent values that DB2 is to collect.

Overriding dynamic sort work data set allocation

DB2 estimates how many records are to be sorted. This information is used for dynamic allocation of sort work space. Sort work space is allocated by DB2 or by the sort program that is used.

If the table space contains rows with VARCHAR columns, DB2 might not be able to accurately estimate the number of records. If the estimated number of records is too high, if the requested sort work space is not available, or if the estimated number of records is too low, which causes the sort to overflow, the utility might fail and cause an abend.

Recommendation: To enable DB2 to calculate a more accurate estimate:

- For a tablespace that is exclusively partitioned, run RUNSTATS UPDATE ALL before REORG.
- For any other type of table space, run RUNSTATS UPDATE SPACE before REORG.

When you run RUNSTATS with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, real-time statistics values are also updated.

You can override the dynamic allocation of sort work space in one of the following ways:

- Allocate the sort work data sets with SORTWK nn DD statements in your JCL.
- If the number of keys for the affected index in column TOTALENTRIES of table SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSPACESTATS is not available or is significantly incorrect, you can update the value to a more appropriate value using an SQL UPDATE statement. When REBUILD INDEX on the affected index completes, TOTALENTRIES is set to the number of keys for the affected index.
- If the number of rows in the associated table space in column TOTALROWS of table SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACESTATS is not available or is significantly incorrect, you can update the value to a more appropriate value using an SQL UPDATE statement. The next time that REORG is run, TOTALROWS is set to the number of rows in the associated table space.

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Resetting the REBUILD-pending status

REBUILD-pending status (which appears as RBDP in the output from the DISPLAY command) means that the physical or logical index partition, nonpartitioned secondary index, or logical partition of a nonpartitioned secondary index is in REBUILD-pending status.

The variations of REBUILD-pending status are as follows:

RBDP The physical or logical index partition is in the REBUILD-pending status. The individual physical or logical index partition is inaccessible. Reset the RBDP status by rebuilding the single affected partition. If multiple partitions are in RBDP status, you can rebuild either the entire index or all affected partitions.

RBDP* The logical partition of the nonpartitioned secondary index is in the REBUILD-pending status. The entire nonpartitioned secondary index is inaccessible. Reset RBDP* status by rebuilding only the affected logical partitions.

PSRBD The nonpartitioned secondary index space is in the REBUILD-pending status. The entire index space is inaccessible. Rebuild the object with the REBUILD INDEX utility. This state only applies to nonpartitioned secondary indexes.

You can reset the REBUILD-pending status for an index with any of these operations:

- REBUILD INDEX
- REORG TABLESPACE SORTDATA
- REPAIR SET INDEX with NORBDPEND
- START DATABASE command with ACCESS FORCE

Attention: Use the START DATABASE command with ACCESS FORCE only as a means of last resort.

Rebuilding critical catalog indexes

In certain situations, you might need to rebuild critical catalog indexes.

If certain table spaces in DSNDB06 are unavailable when an ID with a granted authority tries to rebuild indexes in the catalog or directory, DB2 issues message DSNT501I, RESOURCE UNAVAILABLE.

Because the catalog and directory structures changed in Version 10, if you are migrating from a Version 9 or earlier DB2 for z/OS system to a Version 10 or later DB2 for z/OS system you might also receive message DSNU1530I for some new or obsolete objects that the REBUILD INDEX skips. For example, in conversion mode, the REBUILD INDEX utility skips catalog and directory objects that are new for the version to which you are migrating. In new function mode, the REBUILD INDEX utility skips catalog and directory objects that are obsolete in the version to which you are migrating. Specifying OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP) or OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,HALT) does not impact the skipping of new or obsolete objects.

To rebuild critical catalog indexes:

Use one of the following approaches:

- Make sure the following table spaces are available before rebuilding critical catalog indexes:
 - SYSTSFAU
 - SYSTSCOL
 - SYSTSTSP
 - SYSTSTPT

- | – SYSTSTAB
- | – SYSTSIXS
- | – SYSTSIXT
- | – SYSTSIXR
- | – SYSTSIPT
- | – SYSTSREL
- | – SYSTSFOR
- | – SYSTSSYN
- | – SYSTSFLD
- | – SYSTSTAU
- | – SYSTSKEY
- | – SYSUSER

- Run the RECOVER TABLESPACE utility on the catalog or directory, using an authorization ID with the installation SYSADM or installation SYSOPR authority.

Related information

 [DSNU1530I \(DB2 Messages\)](#)

 [DSNU3343I \(DB2 Messages\)](#)

Recoverability of a rebuilt index

When you successfully rebuild an index that was defined with COPY YES, utility processing inserts a SYSCOPY row with ICTYPE='B' for each rebuilt index. Rebuilt indexes are also placed in informational COPY-pending status, which indicates that you should make a copy of the index.

Recommendation: If you have FlashCopy capability, create a FlashCopy image copy during the REBUILD INDEX. Alternatively, after the index is rebuilt, make a sequential full image copy of the index to create a recovery point. Both copy methods reset the ICOPY status of the rebuilt index.

Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REBUILD INDEX

As part of REBUILD INDEX processing, you can use FlashCopy technology to quickly take image copies of the target objects.

Restriction: You cannot create FlashCopy image copies of indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute.

To create a FlashCopy image copy with REBUILD INDEX:

Specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT) in the REBUILD INDEX utility control statement. Alternatively, you can set the FLASHCOPY_REBUILD_INDEX subsystem parameter to YES, which specifies that REBUILD INDEX is to use FLASHCOPY(YES) by default. The value that you specify for the FLASHCOPY option in the REBUILD INDEX statement always overrides the value for the FLASHCOPY_REBUILD_INDEX subsystem parameter. Optionally, you can also specify FCCOPYDDN in the REBUILD INDEX statement. Use this option to specify a template for the FlashCopy image copy. If you do not specify the FCCOPYDDN option in the REBUILD INDEX statement, the utility uses the value from the FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter.

Restriction: The data sets that you specify for the FlashCopy image copy must be on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes. When you specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT), REBUILD INDEX uses FlashCopy technology to create a consistent copy of the target objects. The FlashCopy image copy fails if the FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available or if any of the other FlashCopy operational restrictions exist. For a list of those operational restrictions, see “FlashCopy image copies” on page 142.

Related concepts

“FlashCopy image copies” on page 142

Related reference

➤ DEFAULT TEMPLATE field (FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

➤ REBUILD INDEX field (FLASHCOPY_REBUILD_INDEX subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

Termination or restart of REBUILD INDEX

You can terminate and restart the REBUILD INDEX utility.

You can terminate REBUILD INDEX by using the TERM UTILITY command. If you terminate a REBUILD INDEX job, the index space is placed in the REBUILD-pending status and is unavailable until it is successfully rebuilt.

By default, DB2 uses RESTART(PHASE) when restarting REBUILD INDEX jobs. The job starts again from the beginning.

If you restart a job that uses the STATISTICS keyword, inline statistics collection does not occur. To update catalog statistics, run the RUNSTATS utility after the restarted REBUILD INDEX job completes.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

The effect of REBUILD INDEX on index version numbers

DB2 stores the range of used index version numbers in the OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION columns of the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES and SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART catalog tables.

The OLDEST_VERSION column contains the oldest used version number, and the CURRENT_VERSION column contains the current version number.

When you run REBUILD INDEX, the utility updates this range of used version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute. REBUILD INDEX sets the OLDEST_VERSION column to the current version number, which indicates that only one version is active; DB2 can then reuse all of the other version numbers.

Recycling of version numbers is required when all of the version numbers are being used. All version numbers are being used when one of the following situations is true:

- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is one less than the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column

- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is 15, and the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column is 0 or 1.

You can also run LOAD REPLACE, REORG INDEX, or REORG TABLESPACE to recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute. To recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY YES attribute or for table spaces, run MODIFY RECOVERY.

Related concepts

 [Table space versions \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Sample REBUILD INDEX control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own REBUILD INDEX control statements.

Example 1: Rebuilding an index

The following control statement specifies that the REBUILD INDEX utility is to rebuild the DSN81010.XDEPT1 index.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU2UT.RBLD1',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSREC DD DSN=IUIQU2UT.RBLD1.STEP1.SYSREC,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(8000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
REBUILD INDEX (DSN81010.XDEPT1)
/*
```

Example 2: Rebuilding index partitions

The following control statement specifies that REBUILD INDEX is to rebuild partitions 2 and 3 of the DSN81010.XEMP1 index. The partition numbers are indicated by the PART option.

```
REBUILD INDEX (DSN81010.XEMP1 PART 2, DSN81010.XEMP1 PART 3)
```

Example 3: Rebuilding multiple partitions of a partitioning or secondary index

The following control statement specifies that REBUILD INDEX is to rebuild partitions 2 and 3 of the DSN81010.XEMP1 index. The partition numbers are indicated by the PART option. The SORTDEVT and SORTNUM keywords indicate that the utility is to use dynamic data set and message set allocation. Parallelism is used by default.

If sufficient virtual storage resources are available, DB2 starts one pair of utility sort subtasks for each partition. This example does not require UTPRIN nn DD statements because it uses DSNUPROC to invoke utility processing. DSNUPROC includes a DD statement that allocates UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

```
//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SAMPJOB.RBINDEXT',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
REBUILD INDEX (DSN81010.XEMP1 PART 2, DSN81010.XEMP1 PART 3)
SORTDEVT SYSWK
SORTNUM 4
/*
```

Example 4: Rebuilding all partitions of a partitioning index

The control statement specifies that REBUILD INDEX is to rebuild all index partitions of the DSN81010.XEMP1 partitioning index. Parallelism is used by default. For this example, REBUILD INDEX allocates sort work data sets in two groups, which limits the number of utility subtask pairs to two. This example does not require UTPRIN nm DD statements because it uses DSNUPROC to invoke utility processing. DSNUPROC includes a DD statement that allocates UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

```
//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SAMPJOB.RCVINDEX',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
/* First group of sort work data sets for parallel index rebuild
//SW01WK01 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW01WK02 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW01WK03 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
/* Second group of sort work data sets for parallel index rebuild
//SW02WK01 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW02WK02 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW02WK03 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
        REBUILD INDEX (DSN81010.XEMP1)
/*
```

Figure 67. Example REBUILD INDEX statement

Example 5: Rebuilding all indexes of a table space

The following control statement specifies that REBUILD INDEX is to rebuild all indexes for table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E. The SORTDEVT and SORTNUM keywords indicate that the utility is to use dynamic data set and message set allocation. Parallelism is used by default.

If sufficient virtual storage resources are available, DB2 starts one utility sort subtask to build the partitioning index and another utility sort subtask to build the nonpartitioning index. This example does not require UTPRIN nm DD statements because it uses DSNUPROC to invoke utility processing. DSNUPROC includes a DD statement that allocates UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

```
//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SAMPJOB.RCVINDEX',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
REBUILD INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
        SORTDEVT SYSWK
        SORTNUM 4
/*
```

Example 6: Rebuilding indexes only if they are in a restrictive state and gathering inline statistics

The control statement in this example specifies that REBUILD INDEX is to rebuild partition 9 of index ID0S482D if it is in REBUILD-pending (RBDP), RECOVER-pending (RECP), or advisory REORG-pending (AREO*) state. This condition that the index be in a certain restrictive state is indicated by the SCOPE PENDING option. The STATISTICS FORCEROLLUP YES option indicates that the utility is to collect inline statistics on the index partition that it is rebuilding and to force aggregation of those statistics.

```

//STEP6 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUOSU248.CHK6',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSREC DD DSN=JUOSU248.CHKIXPX.STEP6.SYSREC,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSCOPY DD DSN=JUOSU248.CHKIXPX.STEP6.SYSCOPY,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=JUOSU248.CHKIXPX.STEP6.SORTOUT,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
        REBUILD INDEX (IDOS482D PART 9)
            STATISTICS FORCEROLLUP YES
            SCOPE PENDING
/*

```

Figure 68. Example REBUILD INDEX statement with STATISTICS option

Example 7: Rebuilding indexes that are on clone tables

The following control statement specifies that REBUILD INDEX is to reconstruct only the specified indexes that are on clone tables.

```

REBUILD INDEX (ADMF001.IUKQAI01)
    CLONE

```

Example 8: Rebuilding indexes with SHRLEVEL CHANGE.

The following control statement specifies that during the rebuild, applications can read from and write to ADMF001.IUKQAI01.

```

REBUILD INDEX (ADMF001.IUKQAI01)
    SHRLEVEL CHANGE

```

Chapter 23. RECOVER

The RECOVER online utility recovers data to the current state or to a previous point in time by restoring a copy and then applying log records. The online RECOVER utility can also recover data to a previous point in time by backing out committed work.

The largest unit of data recovery is the table space or index space; the smallest is the page. You can recover a single object or a list of objects. The RECOVER utility recovers an entire table space, index space, a partition or data set, pages within an error range, or a single page. You can recover data from sequential image copies of an object, a FlashCopy image copy of an object, a system-level backup, or the log. Point-in-time recovery with consistency automatically detects the uncommitted transactions running at the recover point in time and will roll back their changes on the recovered objects. So after recover, objects will be left in their transactionally consistent state.

Output

Output from RECOVER consists of recovered data (a table space, index, partition or data set, error range, or page within a table space).

If you specify the TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY option to recover data to a point in time, RECOVER puts any associated index spaces in REBUILD-pending status. If you specify the TOLOGPOINT or TORBA option to recover data to a point in time, RECOVER can put any associated index spaces in REBUILD-pending status only if the indexes are not recovered in the same RECOVER statement as their corresponding table space. You must run REBUILD INDEX to remove the REBUILD-pending status from the index space.

If you use the RECOVER utility to recover a point-in-time object that is part of a referentially related table space set, a base table space and LOB table space set, or a base table space and XML table space set, you must ensure that you recover the entire set of table spaces. If you do not include every member of the set, or if you do not recover the entire set to the same point in time, RECOVER sets the Auxiliary CHECK-pending status on for all dependent table spaces, base table spaces, or LOB table spaces in the set.

Recommendation: If you use the RECOVER utility to recover data to an image copy by specifying TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY, specify a copy that was made with the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- RECOVERDB privilege for the database
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- DATAACCESS authority

- SYSCtrl or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute RECOVER, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

Restrictions on running RECOVER

- RECOVER cannot recover a table space or index space that is defined to use a storage group that is defined with mixed specific and nonspecific volume IDs. If you specify such a table space or index space, the job terminates and you receive error message DSNU419I.
- RECOVER cannot recover an index has been altered to PADDED or NOT PADDED. Instead, you should rebuild the index.
- If a table space or partition in reordered row format is recovered to a point in time when the table space or partition was in basic row format, then the table space or partition will revert to basic row format. Similarly, if a table space or partition in basic row format is recovered to a point in time when the table space or partition was in reordered row format, then the table space or partition will revert to reordered row format.
- You cannot run RECOVER on a table space or index space on which mixed specific and non-specific volume IDs were defined with CREATE STOGROUP or ALTER STOGROUP.
- RECOVER cannot recover a table space or an index space to a point in time that is prior to a REORG operation that materializes pending definition changes.
- You can take system-level backups using the BACKUP SYSTEM utility. However, if any of the following utilities were run since the system-level backup that was chosen as the recovery base, then the use of the system-level backup is prohibited for object level recoveries to a prior point in time:
 - REORG TABLESPACE
 - REORG INDEX
 - REBUILD INDEX
 - LOAD REPLACE
 - RECOVER from image copy or concurrent copy

Note: This restriction does not apply if you are using z/OS V1R11.0 or later and you have set up DFSMSHsm to capture catalog information.

Execution phases of RECOVER

The RECOVER utility operates in these phases:

Phase Description

UTILINIT

Performs initialization and setup.

RESTORE

Locates and merges any appropriate sequential image copies and restores the table space to a backup level; processes a list of objects in parallel if you specify the PARALLEL keyword.

RESTORER

If you specify the PARALLEL keyword, reads and merges the sequential image copies.

RESTOREW

If you specify the PARALLEL keyword, writes the pages to the object.

PRELOGC

Preliminary LOGCSR phase. Determines uncommitted work that was backed out when the recovery base for an object is a FlashCopy image copy with consistency.

PRELOGA

Preliminary LOGAPPLY phase. Applies the uncommitted work up to the point of consistency for the object with a FlashCopy image copy with consistency recovery base.

LOGAPPLY

Applies any outstanding log changes to the object that is restored from the previous phase or step. If a recover job fails in the middle of the LOGAPPLY phase, it can be restarted from last commit point.

LOGCSR

Analyzes log records and constructs information about in-flight, indoubt, inabort, and postponed abort units of recovery. This phase is executed if either the TORBA and TOLOGPOINT option has been specified. If a recover job fails in the middle of the LOGCSR phase, it can be restarted from the beginning of the LOGCSR phase. For those DB2 members that have finished the LOGCSR phase before the RECOVER job failure, they will go through the LOGCSR phase again.

For BACKOUT YES processing, LOGCSR analyzes log records and constructs information about committed and aborted units of recovery.

LOGUNDO

Rolls back any uncommitted changes that the active units of recovery made to the recovered objects. This phase is executed if either the TORBA and TOLOGPOINT option has been specified. If you need to restart the recover job after it enters into the LOGUNDO phase, objects that were not changed by URs that were active during the recover to point in time will be marked as finished and no need for further processing.

For BACKOUT YES processing, the LOGUNDO phase backs out committed changes from the current state of the object to the prior point in time specified. In addition, any uncommitted changes at the point in time specified are rolled back.

UTILTERM

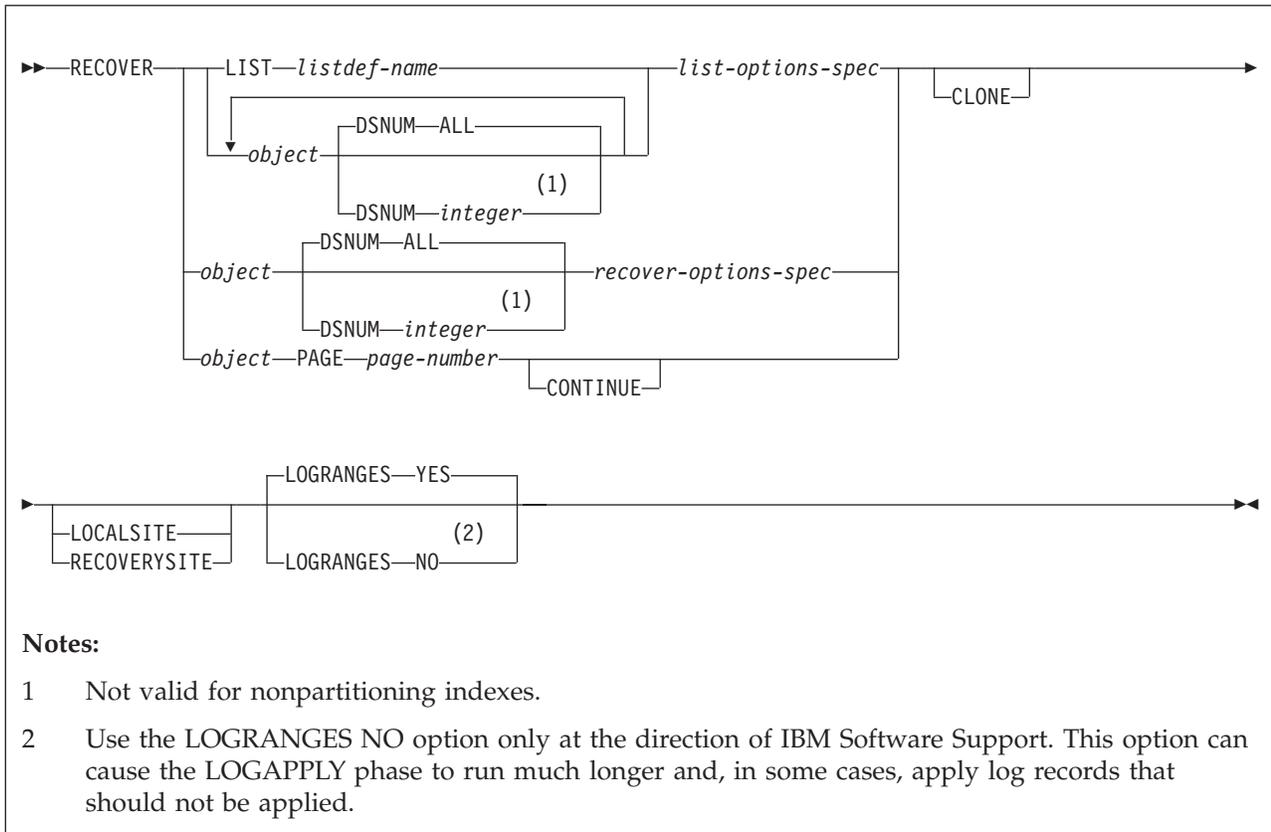
Performs cleanup.

Syntax and options of the RECOVER control statement

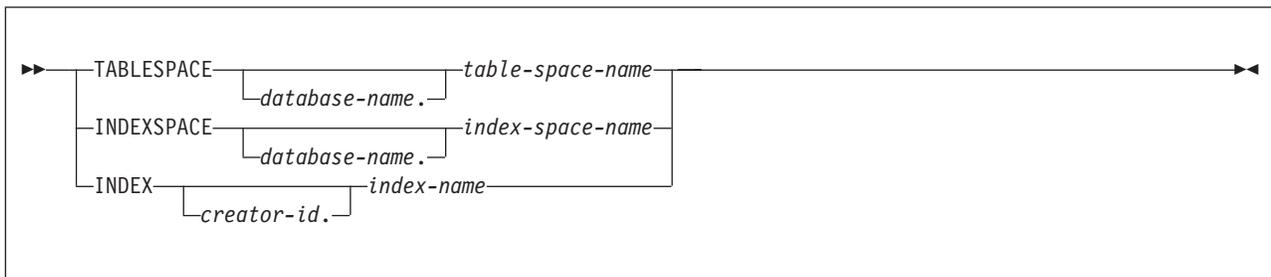
The RECOVER utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

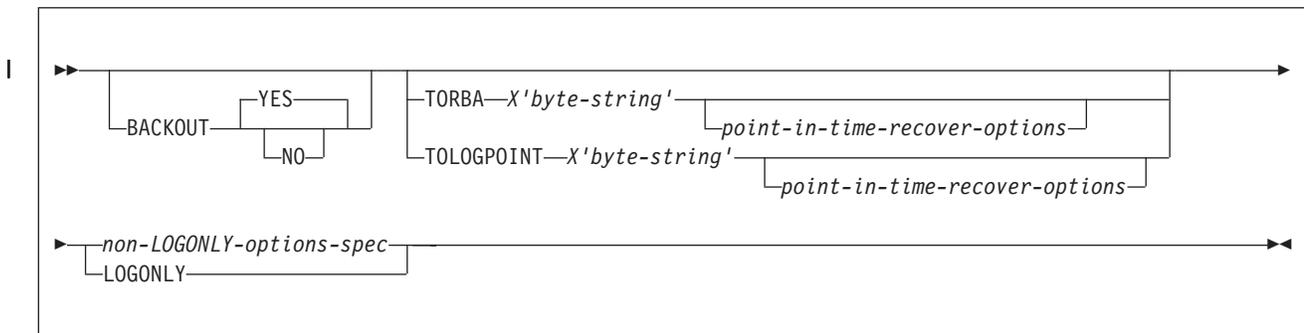
Syntax diagram



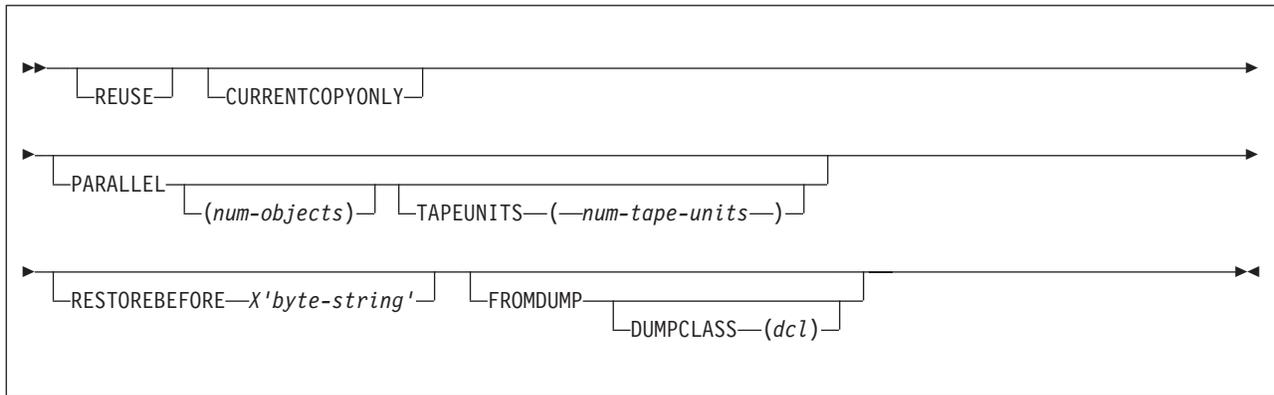
object:



list-options-spec:



non-LOGONLY-options-spec:



recover-options-spec:

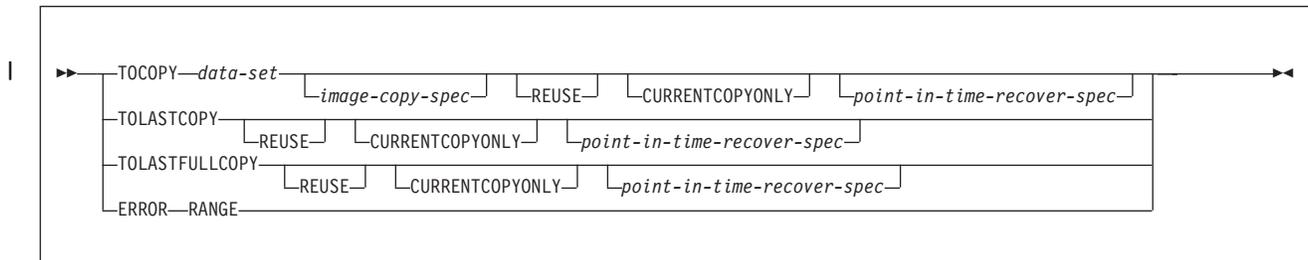
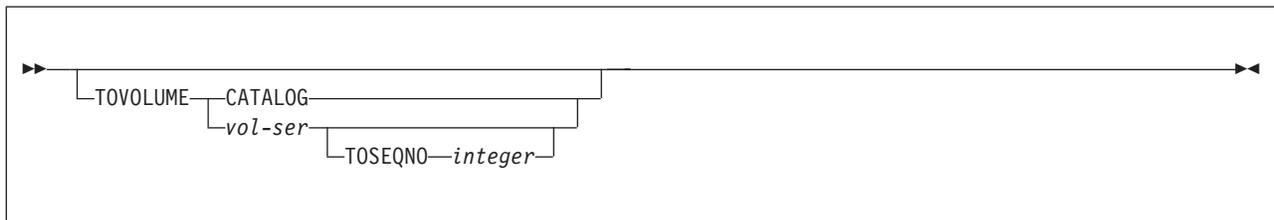
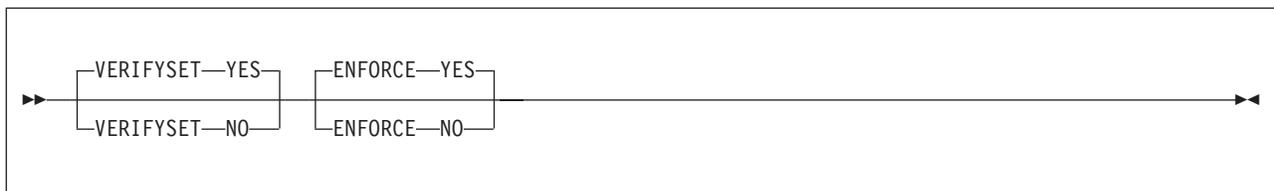


image-copy-spec:



point-in-time-recovery-options-spec:



Option descriptions

You can specify a list of objects by repeating the TABLESPACE, INDEX, or INDEXSPACE keywords. If you use a list of objects, the valid keywords are: DSNUM, TORBA, TOLOGPOINT, LOGONLY, PARALLEL, and either LOCALSITE or RECOVERYSITE.

The options TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, TOLASTFULLCOPY, TORBA and TOLOGPOINT are all referred to as point-in-time recovery options.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each control statement of RECOVER. The list can contain a mixture of table spaces and index spaces. RECOVER is invoked once for the entire list.

This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space (and optionally, the database to which it belongs) that is to be recovered.

You can specify a list of table spaces by repeating the TABLESPACE keyword. You can recover an individual catalog or directory table space in a list with its IBM-defined indexes.

database-name

Is the name of the database to which the table space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Is the name of the table space that is to be recovered.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the index space that is to be recovered.

database-name

Specifies the name of the database to which the index space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

index-space-name

Specifies the name of the index space that is to be recovered.

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Specifies the index in the index space that is to be recovered. The RECOVER utility can recover only indexes that were defined with the COPY YES attribute and subsequently copied.

creator-id

Optionally specifies the creator of the index.

The default value is the user identifier for the utility.

index-name

Specifies the name of the index in the index space that is to be recovered. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

DSNUM

Identifies a partition within a partitioned table space or a partitioned index, or identifies a data set within a nonpartitioned table space that is to be recovered. You cannot specify a single data set of a nonpartitioned index or a logical partition of a nonpartitioned index. Alternatively, the option can recover the entire table space or index space.

ALL

Specifies that the entire table space or index space is to be recovered.

integer

Specifies the number of the partition or data set that is to be recovered. The maximum value is 4096.

Specifying DSNUM is not valid for nonpartitioning indexes.

For a partitioned table space or index space:

The integer is its partition number.

For a nonpartitioned table space:

Find the integer at the end of the data set name. The data set name has the following format:

catname.DSNDB*x*.*dbname*.*tsname*.*y*000*z*.*Annn*

catname

Is the VSAM catalog name or alias.

x

Is C or D.

dbname

Is the database name.

tsname Is the table space name.

y

Is I or J.

z

Is 1 or 2.

nnn

Is the data set integer.

PAGE *page-number*

Specifies a particular page that is to be recovered. You cannot specify this option if you are recovering from a concurrent copy.

page-number is the number of the page, in either decimal or hexadecimal notation. For example, both 999 and X'3E7' represent the same page. PAGE is invalid with the LIST specification.

CONTINUE

Specifies that the recovery process is to continue. Use this option only if an error causes RECOVER to terminate during reconstruction of a page. In this case, the page is marked as "broken". After you repair the page, you can use the CONTINUE option to recover the page, starting from the point of failure in the recovery log.

TORBA X'*byte-string*'

Specifies, in a non-data-sharing environment, a point on the log to which RECOVER is to recover. Specify an RBA value.

In a data sharing environment, use TORBA only when you want to recover to a point before the originating member joined the data sharing group. If you specify an RBA after this point, the recovery fails.

For a NOT LOGGED table space, the value must be a recoverable point.

Using TORBA terminates the recovery process with the last log record whose relative byte address (RBA) is not greater than *byte-string*, which is a string of up to 12 hexadecimal characters. If *byte-string* is the RBA of the first byte of a log record, that record is included in the recovery.

Uncommitted work by units of recovery that are active at the specified RBA will be backed out by RECOVER, leaving each object in a consistent state.

TOLOGPOINT X'*byte-string*'

Specifies a point on the log to which RECOVER is to recover. Specify either an RBA or an LRSN value.

The LRSN is a string of 12 hexadecimal characters and is reported by the DSN1LOGP utility.

For a NOT LOGGED table space, the value must be a recoverable point.

Uncommitted work by units of recovery that are active at the specified LRSN or RBA will be backed out by RECOVER, leaving each object in a consistent state.

REUSE

Specifies that RECOVER is to logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them. If you do not specify REUSE, DB2 deletes and redefines DB2-managed data sets to reset them.

If you are recovering an object because of a media failure, do not specify REUSE.

If a data set has multiple extents, the extents are not released if you use the REUSE parameter.

CURRENTCOPYONLY

Specifies that RECOVER is to improve the performance of restoring concurrent copies (copies that were made by the COPY utility with the CONCURRENT option) by using only the most recent primary copy for each object in the list.

When you specify CURRENTCOPYONLY for a concurrent copy, RECOVER builds a DFSMSdss RESTORE command for each group of objects that is associated with a concurrent copy data set name. If the RESTORE fails, RECOVER does not automatically use the next most recent copy or the backup copy, and the object fails. If you specify DSNUM ALL with CURRENTCOPYONLY and one partition fails during the restore process, the entire utility job on that object fails.

If you specify CURRENTCOPYONLY and the most recent primary copy of the object to be recovered is not a concurrent copy, DB2 ignores this keyword.

For objects in the recovery list whose recovery base is a system-backup, the default is CURRENTCOPYONLY.

PARALLEL

Specifies the maximum number of objects in the list that are to be restored in parallel from image copies on disk or tape. RECOVER attempts to retain tape mounts for tapes that contain stacked image copies when the PARALLEL keyword is specified. In addition, to maximize performance, RECOVER determines the order in which objects are to be restored. PARALLEL also specifies the maximum number of objects in the list that are to be restored in parallel from system-level backups that have been dumped to tape. The processing may be limited by DFSMSHsm.

If you specify TAPEUNITS with PARALLEL, you control the number of tape drives that are dynamically allocated for the recovery function. The TAPEUNITS keyword applies only to tape drives that are dynamically allocated. The TAPEUNITS keyword does not apply to JCL-allocated tape drives. The total number of tape drives that are allocated for the RECOVER job is the sum of the JCL-allocated tape drives, and the number of tape drives, which is determined as follows:

- The specified value for TAPEUNITS.

- The value that is determined by the RECOVER utility if you omit the TAPEUNITS keyword. The number of tape drives that RECOVER attempts to allocate is determined by the object in the list that requires the most tape drives.

If you specify PARALLEL, you cannot specify TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY.

(num-objects)

Specifies the number of objects in the list that are to be processed in parallel. If storage constraints are encountered, you can adjust this value to a smaller value.

If you specify 0 or do not specify TAPEUNITS keyword, RECOVER determines the optimal number of objects to process in parallel.

TAPEUNITS

Specifies the number of tape drives that the utility should dynamically allocate for the list of objects that are to be processed in parallel. If you omit this keyword, the utility determines the number of tape drives to allocate for the recovery function.

The TAPEUNITS option does not apply to recovery from system-level backups. In this case, DFSMShsm determines the number of tape drives that are used for the recovery.

(num-tape-units)

Specifies the number of tape drives to allocate. If you specify 0 or do not specify a value for *num-tape-units*, RECOVER determines the maximum number of tape units to use at one time. RECOVER TAPEUNITS has a max value of 32767.

FROMDUMP

Specifies that only dumps of the database copy pool are used for the restore of the data sets.

DUMPCLASS *(dcl)*

Indicates the DFSMShsm dump class to use to restore the data sets.

The FROMDUMP and DUMPCLASS options that you specify for the RECOVER utility override the RESTORE/RECOVER FROM DUMP and DUMPCLASS NAME install options that you specify on installation panel DSNTIP6.

RESTOREBEFORE *X'byte-string'*

Specifies that RECOVER is to search for an image copy, concurrent copy, or system-level backup (if yes has been specified for SYSTEM-LEVEL BACKUPS on install panel DSNTIP6) with an RBA or LRSN value earlier than the specified *X'byte-string'* value to use in the RESTORE phase. To avoid specific image copies, concurrent copies, or system-level backups with matching or more recent RBA or LRSN values in START_RBA, the RECOVER utility applies the log records and restores the object to its current state or the specified TORBA or TOLOGPOINT value. The RESTOREBEFORE value is compared with the RBA or LRSN value in the START_RBA column in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY record for those copies. For system-level backups, the RESTOREBEFORE value is compared with the data complete LRSN.

If you specify a TORBA or TOLOGPOINT value with the RESTOREBEFORE option, the RBA or LRSN value for RESTOREBEFORE must be lower than the specified TORBA OR TOLOGPOINT value. If you specify RESTOREBEFORE, you cannot specify TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY.

LOGONLY

Specifies that the target objects are to be recovered from their existing data sets by applying only log records to the data sets. DB2 applies all log records that were written after a point that is recorded in the data set itself.

To recover an index space by using RECOVER LOGONLY, you must define the index space with the COPY YES attribute.

Use the LOGONLY option when the data sets of the target objects have already been restored to a point of consistency by another process offline, such as DFSMSdss concurrent copy.

LOGONLY is not allowed on a table space or index space with the NOT LOGGED attribute.

TOCOPY *data-set*

Specifies the particular image copy data set that DB2 is to use as a source for recovery.

data-set is the name of the data set.

If the data set is a full image copy, it is the only data set that is used in the recovery. If it is an incremental image copy, RECOVER also uses the previous full image copy and any intervening incremental image copies.

If you specify the data set as the local backup copy, DB2 first tries to allocate the local primary copy. If the local primary copy is unavailable, DB2 uses the local backup copy.

If you use TOCOPY or TORBA to recover a single data set of a nonpartitioned table space, DB2 issues message DSNU520I to warn that the table space can become inconsistent following the RECOVER job. This point-in-time recovery can cause compressed data to exist without a dictionary or can even overwrite the data set that contains the current dictionary.

If you use TOCOPY with a particular partition or data set (identified with DSNUM), the image copy must be for the same partition or data set, or for the whole table space or index space. If you use TOCOPY with DSNUM ALL, the image copy must be for DSNUM ALL. You cannot specify TOCOPY with a LIST specification. If the image copy is a Flash Copy image copy data set, and the object is partitioned, you must specify the number of the partition that is to be recovered on the DSNUM parameter.

If the image copy data set is a z/OS generation data set, supply a fully qualified data set name, including the absolute generation and version number.

If the image copy data set is not a generation data set and more than one image copy data set with the same data set name exists, use one of the following options to identify the data set exactly:

TOVOLUME

Identifies the image copy data set.

CATALOG

Indicates that the data set is cataloged. Use this option only for an image copy that was created as a cataloged data set. (Its volume serial is not recorded in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.)

RECOVER refers to the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table during execution. If you use TOVOLUME CATALOG, the data set must be cataloged. If you remove the data set from the catalog after creating it, you must catalog the data set again to make it consistent with the record for this copy that appears in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.

vol-ser

Identifies the data set by an alphanumeric volume serial identifier of its first volume. Use this option only for an image copy that was created as a noncataloged data set. Specify the first *vol-ser* in the SYSCOPY record to locate a data set that is stored on multiple tape volumes.

TOSEQNO *integer*

Identifies the image copy data set by its file sequence number. *integer* is the file sequence number.

TOLASTCOPY

Specifies that RECOVER is to restore the object to the last image copy that was taken. If the last image copy is a full image copy, it is restored to the object. If the last image copy is an incremental image copy, the most recent full copy along with any incremental copies are restored to the object.

If the image copy is a Flash Copy image copy data set, and the object is partitioned, you must specify the number of the partition that is to be recovered on the DSNUM parameter.

TOLASTFULLCOPY

Specifies that the RECOVER utility is to restore the object to the last full image copy that was taken. Any incremental image copies that were taken after the full image copy are not restored to the object.

If the image copy is a Flash Copy image copy data set, and the object is partitioned, you must specify the number of the partition that is to be recovered on the DSNUM parameter.

ERROR RANGE

Specifies that all pages within the range of reported I/O errors are to be recovered. Recovering an error range is useful when the range is small, relative to the object that contains it; otherwise, recovering the entire object is preferred. You cannot specify this option if you are recovering from a concurrent copy.

In some situations, recovery using the ERROR RANGE option is not possible, such as when a sufficient quantity of alternate tracks cannot be obtained for all bad records within the error range. You can use the IBM Device Support Facility, ICKDSF service utility to determine whether this situation exists. In such a situation, redefine the error data set at a different location on the volume or on a different volume, and then run the RECOVER utility without the ERROR RANGE option.

You cannot specify ERROR RANGE with a LIST specification.

VERIFYSET

For point-in-time recoveries of base, LOB, XML, and history objects, specifies whether the RECOVER utility verifies that all related objects that are required for the point-in-time recovery are included in the RECOVER control statement.

Note: The VERIFYSET option does not apply to point-in-time recoveries of catalog and directory objects.

VERIFYSET YES

The RECOVER utility verifies that all of the objects that are required to perform a point-in-time recovery of the base, LOB, XML, and history objects, have been included in the RECOVER control statement.

VERIFYSET YES is the default.

VERIFYSET NO

The RECOVER utility does not verify that all of the objects that are required to perform a point-in-time recovery of the base, LOB, XML, and history objects, have been included in the RECOVER control statement.

Specifying VERIFYSET NO allows you to break up a point-in-time recovery into multiple jobs or to avoid recovering objects that have changed since the selected recovery point.

ENFORCE YES

Specifies that CHKP and ACHKP pending states are set for a point-in-time recovery when only a subset of the related objects (BASE, LOB, XML, and RI) have been recovered to a point in time. ENFORCE YES is the default for catalog and directory objects. There is no override for the ENFORCE YES option for catalog and directory objects.

ENFORCE NO

Specifies that CHKP and ACHKP pending states are not set for a point-in-time recovery when only a subset of the related objects (BASE, LOB, XML, and RI) have been recovered to a point in time.

CLONE

Indicates that RECOVER is to recover only clone table data in the specified table spaces, index spaces or indexes that contain indexes on clone tables. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

LOCALSITE

Specifies that RECOVER is to use image copies from the local site. If you specify neither LOCALSITE or RECOVERYSITE, RECOVER uses image copies from the current site of invocation. (The current site is identified on the installation panel DSNTIPO under SITE TYPE and in the macro DSN6SPRM under SITETYP.)

RECOVERYSITE

Specifies that RECOVER is to use image copies from the recovery site. If you specify neither LOCALSITE or RECOVERYSITE, RECOVER uses image copies from the current site of invocation. (The current site is identified on the installation panel DSNTIPO under SITE TYPE and in the macro DSN6SPRM under SITETYP.)

LOGRANGES YES

Specifies that RECOVER should use SYSLGRNX information for the LOGAPPLY phase. This option is the default.

LOGRANGES NO

Specifies that RECOVER should not use SYSLGRNX information for the LOGAPPLY phase. Use this option only under the direction of IBM Software Support.

This option can cause RECOVER to run much longer. In a data sharing environment this option can result in the merging of all logs from all members that were created since the last image copy.

This option can also cause RECOVER to apply logs that should not be applied. For example, assume that you take an image copy of a table space and then run REORG LOG YES on the same table space. Assume also that the REORG utility abends and you then issue the TERM UTILITY command for the REORG job. The SYSLGRNX records that are associated with the REORG job are deleted, so a RECOVER job with the LOGRANGES YES option (the

default) skips the log records from the REORG job. However, if you run RECOVER LOGRANGES NO, the utility applies these log records.

BACKOUT

Specifies the recovery of objects to a prior point in time by a log-only backout. This could decrease the amount of time that an object is unavailable during a recovery to a prior point in time if the specified recovery point in time is relatively recent.

NO

Specifies that a BACKOUT will not be started.

YES

Specifies to use the log to backout changes made since the log point that is specified in the RECOVER syntax by the TOLOGPOINT or TORBA options. Any uncommitted work at the specified log point is backed out to make the objects transactionally consistent.

With BACKOUT YES, the changes are backed out from the current state of the object. No image copy is restored.

YES is the default for the BACKOUT option.

Before running RECOVER

Certain activities might be required before you run the RECOVER utility, depending on your situation.

If the table space or index space to be recovered is associated with a storage group, DB2 deletes and redefines the necessary data sets. If the STOGROUP has been altered to remove the volume on which the table space or index space is located, RECOVER places the data set on another volume of the storage group.

If you are using Flash Copy image copies, before you start the RECOVER utility confirm that the image copies are available in disk storage. If any of the required Flash Copy image copies have been migrated to tape, issue the DFSMSHsm RECALL command to restore the image copies from tape to DASD.

Recovering data and indexes

You do not always need to recover both the data and indexes. If you recover the table space or index space to a current RBA or LRSN, any referentially related objects do not need to be recovered. If you plan to recover a damaged object to a point in time, use a consistent point in time for all of its referentially related objects, including related LOB and XML table spaces, for optimal performance. You must rebuild the indexes from the data if one of the following conditions is true:

- The table space is recovered to a point in time.
- An index is damaged.
- An index is in REBUILD-pending status.
- No image copy of the index is available.

If you need to recover both the data and the indexes, and no image copies of the indexes are available:

1. Use RECOVER TABLESPACE to recover the data.
2. Run REBUILD INDEX on any related indexes to rebuild them from the data.

If you have image copies of both the table spaces and the indexes, you can recover both sets of objects in the same RECOVER utility statement. The objects are

recovered from the image copies and logs.

Data sets that RECOVER uses

The RECOVER utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that RECOVER uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 62. Data sets that RECOVER uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
auth-id.job-name.HSM	A temporary data set that is automatically allocated by the utility and deleted when the utility completes	Yes

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Table space, index space, or index

Object that is to be recovered. If you want to recover less than an entire table space:

- Use the DSNUM option to recover a partition or data set.
- Use the PAGE option to recover a single page.
- Use the ERROR RANGE option to recover a range of pages with I/O errors.

Image copy data set

Copy that RECOVER is to restore. DB2 accesses this information through the DB2 catalog.

System-level backups

The RECOVER utility chooses the most recent backup (a sequential image copy, a concurrent copy, a FlashCopy image copy, or a system-level backup) to restore based on the recovery point for the table spaces or indexes (with the COPY YES attribute) being recovered.

Related concepts

“Before running RESTORE SYSTEM” on page 646

“How the RECOVER utility retains tape mounts” on page 453

Related tasks

“Recovering with a system-level backup” on page 424

Concurrency and compatibility for RECOVER

The RECOVER utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible. However, if a nonpartitioned secondary index exists on a partitioned

table space, utilities that operate on different partitions of a table space can be incompatible because of contention on the nonpartitioned secondary index.

The following table shows which claim classes RECOVER claims and drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Claims

Table 63. Claim classes of RECOVER operations.

Target	RECOVER (no option)	RECOVER TORBA or TOCOPY	RECOVER PART TORBA or TOCOPY	RECOVER ERROR-RANGE
Table space or partition	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT CW/UTRW ¹
Partitioning index, data-partitioned secondary index, or physical partition ²	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT CW/UTRW ¹
Nonpartitioned secondary index ³	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT CW/UTRW ¹
RI dependents	none	CHKP (YES)	CHKP (YES)	none

Legend:

- CHKP (YES): Concurrently running applications enter CHECK-pending after commit
- CW: Claim the write claim class
- DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access
- DR: Drain the repeatable read class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers
- RI: Referential integrity
- UTRW: Utility restrictive state, read-write access allowed
- UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control
- none: Object is not affected by this utility

Note:

1. During the UTILINIT phase, the claim and restrictive states change from DA/UTUT to CW/UTRW.
2. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over nonpartitioned XML table spaces and XML indexes.
3. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over partitioned XML table spaces.

RECOVER does not set a utility restrictive state if the target object is DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

Compatibility

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with RECOVER on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also documented in the table.

Table 64. Compatibility of RECOVER with other utilities

Action	Compatible with RECOVER (no option)?	Compatible with RECOVER TOCOPY or TORBA?	Compatible with RECOVER ERROR-RANGE?
CHECK DATA	No	No	No

Table 64. Compatibility of RECOVER with other utilities (continued)

Action	Compatible with RECOVER (no option)?	Compatible with RECOVER TOCOPY or TORBA?	Compatible with RECOVER ERROR-RANGE?
CHECK INDEX	No	No	No
CHECK LOB	No	No	No
COPY INDEXSPACE	No	No	No
COPY TABLESPACE	No	No	No
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes	Yes
LOAD	No	No	No
MERGECOPY	No	No	No
MODIFY	No	No	No
QUIESCE	No	No	No
REBUILD INDEX	No	No	No
REORG INDEX	Yes	No	Yes
REORG TABLESPACE	No	No	No
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX	Yes	No	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE	No	No	No
REPORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX	No	No	No
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	No	No	No
STOSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes
UNLOAD	No	No	No

To run on DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, RECOVER must be the only utility in the job step and the only utility running in the DB2 subsystem.

RECOVER on any catalog or directory table space is an exclusive job; such a job can interrupt another job between job steps, possibly causing the interrupted job to time out.

Recovering with a system-level backup

You can take system-level backups by using the BACKUP SYSTEM utility. In some cases, the RECOVER utility can use a system-level backup of the database copy pool as a recovery base.

Recovery of objects from system-level backups requires z/OS Version 1.8 or later.

To specify that system-level backups can be used by RECOVER:

Specify YES for the SYSTEM_LEVEL_BACKUPS installation option on installation panel DSNTIP6.

The RECOVER utility chooses the most recent backup to restore. The backup can be:

- A sequential format image copy
- A VSAM FlashCopy[®] image copy

- A concurrent copy
- A system-level backup

The choice of which backup is to be restored is based on the recovery point for the table spaces or indexes that are being recovered. (For an index to be recovered in this way, the COPY YES attribute must be specified.) However, several exceptions for using a system-level backup exist.

Exceptions:

If any of the following utilities were run since the system-level backup that was chosen as the recovery base, the use of the system-level backup by the RECOVER utility is prohibited:

- REORG TABLESPACE
- REORG INDEX
- REBUILD INDEX
- LOAD REPLACE
- RECOVER from image copy or concurrent copy

In these cases, the recovery terminates with message DSNU1528I and return code 8.

Note: For z/OS Version 1 Release 11 and later, the RECOVER utility can use a system-level backup, even if the REBUILD INDEX, RECOVER, REORG, and LOAD utilities ran after the system-level backup was created. The RECOVER utility has been modified so that you can use system-level backups, even if a data set has moved since the backup was created.

The RECOVER utility invokes DFSMSHsm to restore the data sets for the object from the system-level backup of the database copy pool.

How to determine which system-level backups DB2 recovers

DB2 recovers different system level backups, depending on your situation.

To determine which system-level backups will be recovered:

- If you specify YES in the RESTORE/RECOVER FROM DUMP field on installation panel DSNTIP6 or you specify the FROMDUMP option in the RECOVER utility statement, DB2 uses only the dumps on tape of the database copy pool.
- If you specify a dump class name in the DUMP CLASS NAME field on installation panel DSNTIP6 or you specify the DUMPCLASS option in the RECOVER utility statement, DB2 uses dumps on tape of the database copy pool to restore the data sets from the DFSMSHsm dump class.
- If you do not specify a dump class name in the DUMP CLASS NAME field on installation panel DSNTIP6, or you do not specify the DUMPCLASS option in the RECOVER utility statement, RESTORE SYSTEM issues the DFSMSHsm LIST COPYPOOL command and uses the first dump class listed in the output.

If FROMDUMP was not specified on the RECOVER utility statement or on install panel DSNTIP6, the system-level backup on disk is used. If the system-level backup does not reside on disk, an error message is issued. If FROMDUMP was specified either on the RECOVER utility statement or on install panel DSNTIP6, then the dumped copy of the system-level backup on tape is used.

Determining the recovery base

Review the REPORT RECOVERY output to determine whether the objects to be recovered have sequential image copies, concurrent copies, FlashCopy image copies, or a utility log yes event. If you take system-level backups and YES was specified for SYSTEM_LEVEL_BACKUPS on install panel DSNTIP6, look at this information in conjunction with your system-level backup information in the BSDS to determine the recovery base.

Determining whether the system-level backups reside on disk or tape

Restoring data sets for objects in the database copy pool that are to be recovered from a system-level backup on disk occurs virtually instantaneously. Restoring data sets for objects that are to be recovered from a system-level backup on tape volumes takes much longer.

To determine whether the system-level backups of the database copy pool reside on the disk or tape:

1. Run the DFSMSHsm LIST COPYPOOL command with the ALLVOLS option.
2. Run the DSNJU004 utility output. For data sharing, run the DSNJU004 utility output on each member.
3. Review the output from the DFSMSHsm LIST COPYPOOL command with the ALLVOLS option.
4. Review the DB2 system-level backup information in the DSNJU004 utility output.

If the system-level backup chosen as the recovery base for the database copy pool no longer resides on DASD and the FROMDUMP option has not been specified, then the recovery of the object will fail. You can then specify the RECOVER FROMDUMP option, or specify it on install panel DSNTIP6, to direct the utility to use the system-level backup that was dumped to tape. The RECOVER RESTOREBEFORE option can also be used to direct the utility to use a recovery base prior to the system-level backup.

Recovering a table space

Each table space that is involved is unavailable for most other applications until recovery is complete. If you make image copies by table space, you can recover the entire table space, or you can recover a data set or partition from the table space. If you make image copies separately by partition or data set, you must recover the partitions or data sets by running separate RECOVER operations.

The following RECOVER statement specifies that the utility is to recover table space DSN8S10D in database DSN8D10A:

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
```

To recover multiple table spaces, create a list of table spaces that are to be recovered; repeat the TABLESPACE keyword before each specified table space. The following RECOVER statement specifies that the utility is to recover partition 2 of the partitioned table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E, and recover the table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D to the quiesce point (RBA X'000007425468').

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E DSNUM 2
TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
TORBA X'000007425468'
```

The following example shows the RECOVER statement for recovering four data sets in database DSN8D10A, table space DSN8S10E:

```
RECOVER PARALLEL (4)
  TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E DSNUM 1
  TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E DSNUM 2
  TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E DSNUM 3
  TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E DSNUM 4
```

Each of the 4 partitions will be restored in parallel. You can also schedule the recovery of these data sets to run in four separate jobs.

If a table space or data set is in the COPY-pending status, recovering it might not be possible.

Related concepts

“Resetting COPY-pending status” on page 311

Recovering a list of objects

You can recover table spaces, table space partitions, pieces of a linear table space, index spaces, index space partitions, and indexes.

When you recover an object to a prior point in time, you should recover a set of referentially related table spaces together to avoid putting any of the table spaces in CHECK-pending status. Use REPORT TABLESPACESET to obtain a table space listing.

Objects to be restored from a system-level backup will be restored by the main task for the RECOVER utility by invoking DFSMSHsm. Objects to be restored from a FlashCopy image copy will be restored by invoking DFSMSHsm.

Each object can have a different base from which to recover: system-level backup, image copy, concurrent copy, or FlashCopy image copy.

RECOVER does not place dependent table spaces that are related by informational referential constraints into CHECK-pending status.

The RECOVER utility merges incremental copies serially and dynamically. As a result, recovery of a table space list with numerous incremental copies can be time-consuming and operator-intensive.

If referential integrity violations are not an issue, you can run a separate job to recover each table space.

When you specify the PARALLEL keyword, DB2 supports parallelism during the RESTORE phase and performs recovery as follows:

- During initialization and setup (the UTILINIT recover phase), the utility locates the full and incremental copy information for each object in the list from SYSIBM.SYSCOPY.
- The utility sorts the list of objects for recovery into lists to be processed in parallel according to the number of tape volumes, file sequence numbers, and sizes of each image copy.
- The number of objects that can be restored in parallel depends on the maximum number of available tape devices and on how many tape devices the utility requires for the incremental and full image copy data sets. You can control the number of objects that are to be processed in parallel on the PARALLEL

keyword. You can control the number of dynamically allocated tape drives on the TAPEUNITS keyword, which is specified with the PARALLEL keyword.

- If an object in the list requires a DB2 concurrent copy, the utility sorts the object in its own list and processes the list in the main task, while the objects in the other sorted lists are restored in parallel. If the concurrent copies that are to be restored are on tape volumes, the utility uses one tape device and counts it toward the maximum value that is specified for TAPEUNITS.
- If objects in the list require a system-level backup that has been dumped to tape as its recovery base (that is, the FROMDUMP option has been specified), the DB2 RECOVER Utility will invoke DFSMSHsm to restore the data sets for the objects in parallel, with the degree of parallelism being capped by the maximum number of tasks that can be started by the RECOVER. DFSMSHsm will restore the data sets in parallel based on its install options.

Recovering a data set or partition

You can use the RECOVER utility to recover individual partitions and data sets. The phases for data set recovery are the same as for table space recovery.

If image copies are taken at the data set level, RECOVER must be performed at the data set level. To recover the whole table space, you must recover all the data sets individually in one or more RECOVER steps. If recovery is attempted at the table space level, DB2 returns an error message.

Alternatively, if image copies are taken at the table space, index, or index space level, you can recover individual data sets by using the DSNUM parameter.

RECOVER does **not** support recovery of the following types of indexes:

- A single data set for nonpartitioned secondary indexes
- A logical partition of a nonpartitioned secondary index

Recovering with incremental copies

The RECOVER utility merges all incremental image copies that were taken since the last full image copy.

The utility must have all the image copies available at the same time. If this requirement is likely to strain your system resources, for example, by demanding more tape units than are available, consider running MERGECOPY regularly to merge image copies into one copy.

Even if you do not periodically merge multiple image copies into one copy when you do not have enough tape units, the utility can still perform. RECOVER dynamically allocates the full image copy and attempts to dynamically allocate all the incremental image copy data sets. If RECOVER successfully allocates every incremental copy, recovery proceeds to merge pages to table spaces and apply the log. If a point is reached where an incremental copy cannot be allocated, RECOVER notes the log RBA or LRSN of the last successfully allocated data set. Attempts to allocate incremental copies cease, and the merge proceeds using only the allocated data sets. The log is applied from the noted RBA or LRSN, and the incremental image copies that were not allocated are ignored.

Recovering with FlashCopy image copies

Recovering from a FlashCopy image copy is potentially faster than recovering from a traditional image copy. If an appropriate FlashCopy image copy is available, the RECOVER utility can use it to instantaneously restore an image copy.

Consider the following information when planning for recovery with FlashCopy image copies:

- Create both FlashCopy image copies and traditional sequential image copies to provide a complete recovery base for media failures.
- Creating and recovering from a consistent FlashCopy image copy can consume more processing resources than creating and recovering from a FlashCopy image copy that was not guaranteed to be consistent. To recover from a consistent FlashCopy image copy, the RECOVER utility must read the logs to apply changes that were made to the recovered object after the point of consistency. Some of those changes are likely to be work that was previously backed out and must be reapplied, because the work was uncommitted at the time the FlashCopy image copy was created. (In this case, recovery requires more analysis of the logs during the PRELOGC phase. The preliminary log apply phase, PRELOGA, and the other log phases also require more analysis.) The START_RBA value in the SYSCOPY record of the FlashCopy image copy indicates the low RBA or LRSN of the logs that are needed for processing by RECOVER.
- Recovering with FlashCopy image copies could prevent a subsequent BACKUP SYSTEM utility job on the same data from completing successfully if the FlashCopy relationship is still outstanding.

This limitation exists because of the characteristics of FlashCopy relationships. When the RECOVER utility uses fast replication to restore a FlashCopy image copy, it establishes a FlashCopy relationship. This relationship is between the FlashCopy image copy data set (the FlashCopy source) and the underlying data sets for the table space or index space (the FlashCopy target). Cascading FlashCopy relationships, where a data set or extent is both a FlashCopy target and a source, is not supported by the hardware.

BACKUP SYSTEM also uses FlashCopy technology. Therefore, any of the FlashCopy targets from the RECOVER operation (those underlying data sets for the table space or index space) cannot also be used as a source for BACKUP SYSTEM while the FlashCopy relationship from RECOVER still exists.

If you plan to use BACKUP SYSTEM, use the REC_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter as described in step 1 to control whether the RECOVER utility should use FlashCopy to restore FlashCopy image copies.

- If the FlashCopy image copy has been migrated or deleted, RECOVER uses the sequential image copies if available.

To recover with FlashCopy image copies:

1. Ensure that the REC_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter is set to PREFERRED or REQUIRED.

If this subsystem parameter is set to PREFERRED, RECOVER attempts to use fast replication (FlashCopy) to restore the FlashCopy image copy. Fast replication is not used if the underlying data sets for the table space or index space are already in a FlashCopy relationship due to the BACKUP SYSTEM utility or to the COPY utility. In this case, traditional I/O methods are used instead of fast replication to restore the FlashCopy image copy.

If this subsystem parameter is set to REQUIRED, RECOVER must use fast replication to restore the FlashCopy image copy. If fast replication cannot be used, the recovery of the object fails. For example, the recovery could fail if the BACKUP SYSTEM utility has established a FlashCopy relationship with the production volume.

Restriction: If the RECOVER utility establishes a FlashCopy relationship to restore a FlashCopy image copy and the BACKUP SYSTEM utility is started, the creation of the system-level backup might fail. The reason for the failure is because cascading FlashCopy relationships are not supported.

Otherwise, if this subsystem parameter is set to NONE, RECOVER restores the FlashCopy image copy using traditional I/O methods. Use this option if you use BACKUP SYSTEM and you do not want recovery from FlashCopy image copies to interfere with the creation of system-level backups.

2. Specify an appropriate RECOVER utility control statement. You do not need to specify any extra options in the RECOVER statement to indicate that you want FlashCopy image copies to be used. The RECOVER utility uses FlashCopy image copies if available.

However, if you specify that RECOVER is to use a specific FlashCopy image copy (by specifying TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY), specify the DSNUM option with the appropriate data set or partition number for the FlashCopy image copy that you want to use.

Related concepts

“FlashCopy image copies” on page 142

“Subsystem parameters for refining DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities” on page 35

Related reference

 FAST RESTORE field (REC_FASTREPLICATION subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

Recovering a page

Using RECOVER PAGE enables you to recover data on a page that is damaged.

In some situations, you can determine (usually from an error message) which page of an object has been damaged. You can use the PAGE option to recover a single page. You can use the CONTINUE option to continue recovering a page that was damaged during the LOGAPPLY phase of a RECOVER operation.

Suppose that you start RECOVER for table space TSPACE1. During processing, message DSNI012I informs you of a problem that damages page number 5. RECOVER completes, but the damaged page, number 5, is in a stopped state and is not recovered. When RECOVER ends, message DSNU501I informs you that page 5 is damaged.

To repair the damaged page:

1. Use the DUMP option of the REPAIR utility to view the contents of the damaged page. Determine what change should have been made by the applicable log record, and apply it by using the REPLACE option of REPAIR. Use the RESET option to turn off the inconsistent-data indicator.

Attention: Be extremely careful when using the REPAIR utility to replace data. Using REPAIR to change data to invalid values can produce unpredictable results, particularly when you change page header information. Improper use of REPAIR can result in damaged data, or in some cases, system failure.

2. Resubmit the RECOVER utility job by specifying TABLESPACE(TSPACE1) PAGE(5) CONTINUE. The RECOVER utility finishes recovering the damaged page by applying the log records that remain after the one that caused the problem.

If more than one page is damaged during RECOVER, perform the preceding steps for each damaged page.

Recovering an error range

By using the ERROR RANGE option of RECOVER, you can repair pages with reported I/O errors. DB2 maintains a page error range for I/O errors for each data set; pages within the range cannot be accessed. The DISPLAY DATABASE command displays the range.

When recovering an error range, RECOVER:

1. Locates, allocates, and applies image copies.
2. Applies changes from the log.

The following RECOVER statement specifies that the utility is to recover any current error range problems for table space TS1:

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DB1.TS1 ERROR RANGE
```

Recovering an error range is useful when the range is small, relative to the object containing it; otherwise, recovering the entire object is preferable.

Message DSNU086I indicates that I/O errors were detected on a table space and that you need to recover it. Before you attempt to use the ERROR RANGE option of RECOVER, you should run the ICKDSF service utility to correct the disk error. If an I/O error is detected during RECOVER processing, DB2 issues message DSNU538I to identify the affected target tracks are involved. The message provides enough information to run ICKDSF correctly.

In some situations, which are announced by error messages, recovery of only an error range is not possible. In such a situation, recovering the entire object is preferable.

During the recovery of the entire table space or index space, DB2 might still encounter I/O errors that indicate DB2 is still using a bad volume. For user-defined data sets, you should use Access Method Services to delete the data sets and redefine them with the same name on a new volume. If you use DB2 storage groups, you can remove the bad volume from the storage group by using ALTER STOGROUP. If you use DFSMS storage groups, you should also remove the bad volume from the DFSMS storage group.

Effect on RECOVER of the NOT LOGGED or LOGGED table space attributes

You can recover NOT LOGGED table spaces to any recoverable point.

Recoverable points are established when you take one of the following actions:

- Alter a table space from LOGGED to NOT LOGGED. If a base table space is altered to NOT LOGGED and its associated LOB table spaces already have the NOT LOGGED attribute, the ALTER to NOT LOGGED is not a recoverable point.
- Take an image copy from a NOT LOGGED table space.
- When a table has the NOT LOGGED attribute, and an ALTER TABLE with the ADD PARTITION clause is executed.
- When insertion of data into a partition-by-growth table space causes DB2 to add a new partition.

To recover a set of objects with LOB relationships, you should run RECOVER with the TOLOGPOINT option to identify a common recoverable point for all objects. For a non-LOB table space, or a LOB table space with a base table space that has the NOT LOGGED attribute, the logging attribute of the table space must meet these following conditions:

- For recovery to the current point in time, the current value of the logging attribute of the object must match the logging attribute at the most current recoverable point.
- For recovery to a prior point in time, the current value of the logging attribute of the object must match the logging attribute at the time that is specified by TOLOGPOINT, TORBA, TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY

Recovering with a data set copy that is not made by DB2

You can restore a data set to a point of consistency by using a data set copy that was not made by the COPY utility.

After recovery to the point of consistency, if you choose to continue and recover to the current point in time, you do not want RECOVER to begin processing by restoring the data set from a DB2 image copy. Therefore, use the LOGONLY option of RECOVER, which causes RECOVER to skip the RESTORE phase and apply the log records only, starting from the first log record that was written after the data set was backed up.

Because the data sets are restored offline without DB2 involvement, RECOVER LOGONLY checks that the data set identifiers match those that are in the DB2 catalog. If the identifiers do not match, message DSNU548I is issued, and the job terminates with return code 8.

You can use the LOGONLY option on a list of objects.

To ensure that no other transactions can access DB2 objects between the time that you restore a data set and the time that you run RECOVER LOGONLY, follow these steps:

1. Stop the DB2 objects that are being recovered by issuing the following command:


```
-STOP DATABASE(database-name) SPACENAM(space-name)
```
2. Restore all DB2 data sets that are being recovered.
3. Start the DB2 objects that are being recovered by issuing the following command:


```
-START DATABASE(database-name) SPACENAM(space-name) ACCESS(UT)
```
4. Run the RECOVER utility without the TORBA or TOLOGPOINT parameters and with the LOGONLY parameter to recover the DB2 data sets to the current

point in time and to perform forward recovery using DB2 logs. If you want to recover the DB2 data sets to a prior point in time, run the RECOVER utility with either TORBA or TOLOGPOINT, and with the LOGONLY parameters.

5. If you did not recover related indexes in the same RECOVER control statement, rebuild all indexes on the recovered object.
6. Issue the following command to allow access to the recovered object if the recovery completes successfully:

```
-START DATABASE(database-name) SPACENAM(space-name) ACCESS(RW)
```

With the LOGONLY option, when recovering a single piece of a multi-piece linear page set, RECOVER opens the first piece of the page set. If the data set is migrated by DFSMSHsm, the data set is recalled by DFSMSHsm. Without LOGONLY, no data set recall is requested.

Backing up a single piece of a multi-piece linear page set is not recommended. This action can cause a data integrity problem if the backup is used to restore the data set at a later time.

Recovering catalog and directory objects

You can recover catalog and directory objects.

Requirements for recovering catalog and directory objects

- Indexes on catalog tables, such as SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, should be user-managed indexes and not stogroup-managed.
- Recovering and rebuilding catalog and directory objects requires Install SYSADM or Install SYSOPR authority.
- If you are performing a recovery at a remote site, start the remote DB2 for z/OS system with ACCESS(MAINT) specified on the START DB2 command and with DEFER ALL specified in the DSNZPARM load module.

If DB2 is not started as ACCESS MAINT, resource unavailable conditions on the real-time statistics (RTS) catalog indexes might occur during REBUILD INDEX(ALL) for the catalog and directory indexes.

Recovery order for catalog and directory objects

If you are recovering any subset of the objects in the following list, start with the object that appears first, and continue in the order of the list. For example, if you need to recover SYSLGRNX, SYSUTILX, and SYSUSER, recover first SYSUTILX, then SYSLGRNX, and then SYSUSER. You do not need to recover all of the objects; only recover those objects that require recovery. If you copy your catalog or directory indexes, use the RECOVER utility to recover your indexes. Otherwise, use the REBUILD INDEX utility to rebuild those indexes.

Note: If the DB2 for z/OS system is in conversion mode when migrating from a Version 9 or earlier system, recover the catalog and directory objects in the order defined in the documentation for the DB2 for z/OS from which you are migrating. In DB2 for z/OS Version 10, the order in which catalog and directory objects must be recovered changed from the order used in earlier versions. For example, if you are migrating from a Version 9 system to a Version 10 system, are in conversion mode, and need to recover catalog and directory objects, follow the order of recovery defined in the DB2 for z/OS Version 9 documentation.

Depending on the migration mode in which the DB2 for z/OS system is running, the RECOVER utility skips new or obsolete catalog and directory objects during processing and issues message DSNU1530I with RC0 for each skipped object. For example, in conversion mode, the RECOVER utility skips catalog and directory objects that are new for the version to which you are migrating. In new-function mode, the RECOVER utility skips catalog and directory objects that are obsolete in the version to which you are migrating. Specifying OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,SKIP) or OPTIONS EVENT(ITEMERROR,HALT) does not impact the skipping of new or obsolete objects.

1. DSNDB01.SYSUTILX
2. REBUILD INDEX(ALL) on DSNDB01.SYSUTILX
3. DSNDB01.DBD01.
4. REBUILD INDEX(ALL) on DSNDB01.DBD01
5. DSNDB01.SYSDBDXA
6. REBUILD INDEX(ALL) on DSNDB01.SYSDBDXA
7. DSNDB06.SYSCOPY
8. All indexes on SYSIBM.SYSCOPY. If no user-defined indexes that are stogroup-managed are defined on SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, execute the following utility statement to rebuild IBM-defined and any user-defined indexes on SYSIBM.SYSCOPY:

```
REBUILD INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSCOPY
```

If user-defined indexes that are stogroup-managed are defined on SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, rebuild the IBM-defined indexes by name (REBUILD INDEX (SYSIBM.index-name-1, SYSIBM.index-name-2, . . . , SYSIBM.index-name-n)) and then rebuild the user-defined indexes in 15 on page 436.

9. DSNDB01.SYSLGRNX
10. REBUILD INDEX(ALL) on DSNDB01.SYSLGRNX
11. DSNDB06.SYSGROUP, DSNDB06.SYSTSSTG, DSNDB06.SYSTSVOL
12. REBUILD INDEX(ALL) on DSNDB06.SYSGROUP, DSNDB06.SYSTSSTG, DSNDB06.SYSTSVOL. If no user-defined indexes that are storage-group-managed are defined on these table spaces, execute the following utility statement to rebuild IBM-defined and any user-defined indexes on the table spaces:

```
REBUILD INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
REBUILD INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSTSSTG
REBUILD INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSTSVOL
```

If user-defined indexes that are stogroup-managed are defined on these table spaces, rebuild the IBM-defined indexes by name (REBUILD INDEX (SYSIBM.index-name-1, SYSIBM.index-name-2, . . . , SYSIBM.index-name-n)) and then rebuild the user-defined indexes in 15 on page 436.

13. Recover all of the remaining catalog and directory table spaces in a single RECOVER utility statement with PARALLEL specified.

In enabling-new-function mode, recover all of the active, new, and obsolete catalog and directory table spaces, including:

- The directory table spaces in DSNDB01:
 - SCT02
 - SPT01
 - SYSSPUXA

– SYSSPUXB

- The catalog table spaces shown in the following table:

Table 65. Remaining catalog table spaces to recover in enabling-new-function mode

Remaining catalog table spaces to recover in enabling-new-function mode			
SYSALTER	SYSTSASC	SYTSPDO	SYSTSREL
SYSCONTX	SYSTSATS	SYTSPDT	SYTSSROU
SYSDBASE	SYTSSATW	SYTSPEN	SYTSSSCM
SYSDBAUT	SYTSSATX	SYTSPHX	SYTSSSTM
SYSDDF	SYTSSAUX	SYTSPKA	SYTSSSYN
SYSDBCDC	SYTSSCOL	SYTSPKC	SYTSSTAB
SYSGPAUT	SYTSSCON	SYTSPKD	SYTSSTAU
SYSGRNTS	SYTSSCTD	SYTSPKG	SYTSSTBC
SYSHIST	SYTSSCTL	SYTSPKL	SYTSSTPF
SYSJAUXA	SYTSSCTR	SYTSPKS	SYTSSTPT
SYSJAUXB	SYTSSDAT	SYTSPKX	SYTSSSTRG
SYSJAVA	SYTSSDBA	SYTSPKY	SYTSSSTRT
SYSOBJ	SYTSSDBR	SYTSPLA	SYTSSSTP
SYSPKAGE	SYTSSDBU	SYTSPLD	SYTSSUNI
SYSPLAN	SYTSSDEP	SYTSPLN	SYTSSVEW
SYSPLUXA	SYTSSENV	SYTSPLY	SYTSSVTR
SYSPLUXB	SYTSSFAU	SYTSPRH	SYTSSVWD
SYSROLES	SYTSSFLD	SYTSPRM	SYTSSVWT
SYSRTSTS	SYTSSFOR	SYTSPTX	SYTSSXTM
SYSSEQ	SYTSSIPT	SYTSPVR	SYTSSXTS
SYSSEQ2	SYTSSIXR	SYTSSQRA	SYSUSER
SYSSTATS	SYTSSIXS	SYTSSQRO	SYSVIEWS
SYSSTR	SYTSSIXT	SYTSSQRP	SYSXML
SYSTARG	SYTSSKEY	SYTSSQRY	
SYSTSADT	SYTSSKYC	SYTSSRAU	

In new-function mode, recover all of the active catalog and directory table spaces, including:

- The directory table spaces in DSNDB01:
 - SCT02
 - SPT01
 - SYSSPUXA
 - SYSSPUXB
- The catalog table spaces shown in the following table:

Table 66. Remaining catalog table spaces to recover in new-function mode

Remaining catalog table spaces to recover in new-function mode			
SYSALTER	SYSTSATX	SYTSPDT	SYSTSRAU
SYSCONTX	SYTSAUX	SYTSPEN	SYTSPREL
SYSDDF	SYTSCOL	SYTSPHX	SYTSPROU
SYSEBCDC	SYTSCON	SYTSPKA	SYTSSCM
SYSGPAUT	SYTSCTD	SYTSPKC	SYTSSSTM
SYSGRTNS	SYTSCTL	SYTSPKD	SYTSSYN
SYSHIST	SYTSCTR	SYTSPKG	SYTSTAB
SYTSAUXA	SYTSDAT	SYTSPKL	SYTSTAU
SYTSAUXB	SYTSDBA	SYTSPKS	SYTSTBC
SYTJAVA	SYTSDBR	SYTSPKX	SYTSTPF
SYTPLUXA	SYTSDBU	SYTSPKY	SYTSTPT
SYTPLUXB	SYTSDPE	SYTSPLA	SYTSTRG
SYTROLES	SYTSENV	SYTSPLD	SYTSTRT
SYTSTSTS	SYTSEFAU	SYTSPLN	SYTSTSP
SYTSEQ	SYTSEFLD	SYTSPLY	SYTSTUNI
SYTSEQ2	SYTSEFOR	SYTSPRH	SYTSTVEW
SYTSTATS	SYTSEIPT	SYTSPRM	SYTSTVTR
SYTSTR	SYTSEIXR	SYTSPTX	SYTSTVWD
SYTSTARG	SYTSEIXS	SYTSPVR	SYTSTVWT
SYTSTADT	SYTSEIXT	SYTSPQRA	SYTSTXTM
SYTSTASC	SYTSEKEY	SYTSPQRO	SYTSTXTS
SYTSTATS	SYTSEKYC	SYTSPQRP	SYTSTUSR
SYTSTATW	SYTSPDO	SYTSPQRY	SYTSTXML

14. REBUILD INDEX(ALL) on DSNDB06.SYTSTSTS

15. Rebuild all of the remaining catalog and directory indexes using REBUILD INDEX(ALL) for each table space recovered in 13 on page 434. Rebuild all user-defined indexes on the catalog that have not been rebuilt or recovered yet.

For all catalog and directory table spaces, you can list the IBM-defined indexes that have the COPY YES attribute in the same RECOVER utility statement.

Recovery of the items on the list can be done concurrently or included in the same job step. However, some restrictions apply:

- When you recover the following table spaces or indexes, the job step in which the RECOVER statement appears must not contain any other utility statements. No other utilities can run while the RECOVER utility is running.
 - DSNDB01.SYTUTILX
 - All indexes on SYTUTILX
 - DSNDB01.DBD01
- When you recover the following table spaces, no other utilities can run while the RECOVER utility is running. Other utility statements can exist in the same job step.
 - DSNDB06.SYTSCOPY
 - DSNDB01.SYTSLGRNX

If the logging environment requires adding or restoring active logs, restoring archive logs, or performing any action that affects the log inventory in the BSDS, you should recover the BSDS before catalog and directory objects. To copy active log data sets, use the Access Method Services REPRO function.

Why the order is important:

To recover one object, RECOVER must obtain information about it from some other object. The following table lists the objects from which RECOVER must obtain information, when the subsystem is in new-function mode.

Table 67. Objects that the RECOVER utility accesses in new-function mode

Object name	Reason for access by RECOVER
DSNDB01.SYSUTILX	Utility restart information. The object is not accessed when it is recovered; RECOVER for this object is not restartable, and no other commands can be in the same job step. SYSCOPY information for SYSUTILX is obtained from the log.
DSNDB01.DBD01, DSNDB01.SYSDBDXA	Descriptors for the catalog database (DSNDB06), the work file database (DSNDB07), and user databases. RECOVER for this object is not restartable, and no other commands can be in the same job step. SYSCOPY information for DBD01 is obtained from the log.
DSNDB06.SYSCOPY	Locations of image copy data sets. SYSCOPY information for SYSCOPY itself is obtained from the log.
DSNDB01.SYSLGRNX	The RBA or LRSN of the first log record after the most recent copy.
DSNDB06.SYSTSDBA, DSNDB06.SYSTSDBU, DSNDB06.SYSUSER	Verification that the authorization ID is authorized to run RECOVER.
From several of the following table spaces in DSNDB06:	Information about table spaces that are to be recovered.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SYSTSFAU • SYSTSCOL • SYSTSTSP • SYSTSTPT • SYSTSTAB • SYSTSIXS • SYSTSIXT • SYSTSIXR • SYSTSIPT • SYSTSREL • SYSTSFOR • SYSTSSYN • SYSTSFLD • SYSTSTAU • SYSTSKEY 	

You can use REPORT RECOVERY to obtain SYSCOPY information for DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, DSNDB01.DBD01, and DSNDB06.SYSCOPY.

Recovery of XML schema repository objects

Although the XML schema repository database, DSNXSR, is not part of the DB2 catalog, you need to recover all table spaces in the DSNXSR database and rebuild all indexes on those table spaces immediately after you recover the DB2 catalog.

If you perform a point-in-time recovery of the catalog, you need to recover objects in the DSNXSR database to the same point in time.

Planning for point-in-time recovery for the catalog, directory, and all user objects

When you recover the DB2 catalog, directory, and all user objects, consider the entire catalog and directory, including all table spaces and index spaces, as one logical unit. Recover all objects in the catalog, directory, and all user objects to the same point of consistency. If a point-in-time recovery of the catalog, directory, and all user objects is planned, a separate quiesce of the DSNDB06.SYSCOPY table space is required after a quiesce of the other catalog and directory table spaces.

You should be aware of some special considerations when you are recovering catalog, directory, and all user objects to a point in time in which the DB2 subsystem was in a different mode. For example, if your DB2 subsystem is currently in new-function mode, and you need to recover to a point in time in which the subsystem was in conversion mode.

Recommendation: Before you recover the DB2 catalog, directory, and all user objects to a prior point in time, shut down the DB2 system cleanly and then restart the system in access(maint) mode. Recover the catalog and directory objects to the current state. You can use sample queries and documentation, which are provided in DSNTESEQ in the SDSNSAMP sample library, to check the consistency of the catalog.

Indexes are rebuilt by REBUILD INDEX. If the only items you have recovered are table spaces in the catalog or directory, you might need to rebuild their indexes. Use the CHECK INDEX utility to determine whether an index is inconsistent with the data it indexes. You can use the RECOVER utility to recover catalog and directory indexes if the index was defined with the COPY YES attribute and if you have a full index image copy.

You must recover the catalog and directory before recovering user table spaces.

Be aware that the following table spaces, along with their associated indexes, do not have entries in SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX, even if they were defined with COPY YES:

- DSNDB01.SYSUTILX
- DSNDB01.DBD01
- DSNDB01.SYSLGRNX
- DSNDB06.SYSCOPY
- DSNDB06.SYSTSSTG
- DSNDB06.SYSTSVOL
- DSNDB01.SCT02
- DSNDB01.SPT01
- DSNDB01.DBD01
- DSNDB01.SPT01

These objects are assumed to be open from the point of their last image copy, so the RECOVER utility processes the log from that point forward.

Point-in-time recovery

Full recovery of the catalog and directory table spaces and indexes is strongly recommended. However, if you need to plan for point-in-time recovery of the catalog and directory, here is a way to create a point of consistency:

1. Quiesce all catalog and directory table spaces in a list, except for DSNDB06.SYSCOPY and DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.
2. Quiesce DSNDB06.SYSCOPY.

Recommendation: Quiesce DSNDB06.SYSCOPY in a separate utility statement; when you recover DSNDB06.SYSCOPY to its own quiesce point, it contains the ICTYPE = 'Q' (quiesce) SYSCOPY records for the other catalog and directory table spaces.

3. Quiesce DSNDB01.SYSUTILX in a separate job step.

If you need to recover to a point in time, recover DSNDB06.SYSCOPY and DSNDB01.SYSUTILX to their own quiesce points, and recover other catalog and directory table spaces to their common quiesce point. The catalog and directory objects must be recovered in a particular order, as described in the previous table.

A point-in-time recovery on catalog and directory objects bypasses the checking for:

- A complete referential integrity (RI) set. If the complete RI set is not recovered together, CHKP is not set on the dependents.
- A complete base and LOB set. If base and LOB objects are not recovered together, ACHKP or CHKP is not set.

After a point-in-time recovery on the catalog and directory, run the CHECK DATA utility on the objects to ensure consistency.

Recovering critical catalog table spaces:

An ID with a granted authority receives message DSNT500I RESOURCE UNAVAILABLE while trying to recover a table space in the catalog or directory if certain table spaces in the following list are unavailable:

- In table space DSNDB06:
 - SYSTSFAU
 - SYSTSCOL
 - SYSTSTSP
 - SYSTSTPT
 - SYSTSTAB
 - SYSTSIXS
 - SYSTSIXT
 - SYSTSIXR
 - SYSTSIPT
 - SYSTSREL
 - SYSTSFOR
 - SYSTSSYN

- SYSTSFLD
- SYSTSTAU
- SYSTSKEY
- DSNDB06.SYSUSER

If you receive message DSNT500I, you must either make these table spaces available, or run the RECOVER utility on the catalog or directory by using an authorization ID that has the installation SYSADM or installation SYSOPR authority.

Related concepts

 Management of the bootstrap data set (DB2 Administration Guide)

Related information

 REPRO command (DFSMS Access Method Services for Catalogs)

 DSNU3343I (DB2 Messages)

Reinitializing DSNDB01.SYSUTILX

You need to reinitialize the DSNDB01.SYSUTILX directory table space if you cannot successfully execute the DISPLAY UTILITY and TERMINATE UTILITY commands. In this case, DSNDB01.SYSUTILX is damaged and you cannot recover DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, because errors occur in the LOGAPPLY phase.

Because DSNDB01.SYSUTILX contains information about active and outstanding utilities, the process of reinitializing this table space involves determining which objects have a utility in progress and resolving any pending states to make the object available for access.

If DSNDB01.SYSUTILX must be reinitialized, use the following procedure with caution:

1. Issue the `-DIS DB(*) SPACENAM(*) RESTRICT` command and analyze the output. Write down the following items:
 - All of the objects with a utility in progress (The objects in UTUT, UTRO, or UTRW status have utilities in progress.)
 - Any pending states for these objects (RECP, CHKP, and COPY are examples of pending states.)
2. Edit the following installation jobs so that they contain only the commands that pertain to DSNDB01.SYSUTILX:
 - a. **DSNTIJDE**—Delete VSAM LDS for DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.
 - b. **DSNTIJIN**—Define VSAM LDS for DSNDB01.SYSUTILX and tailor the AMS DEFINE command to fit the needs of your DB2 system.
 - c. **DSNTIJID**
 - Initialize DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.
3. Run the three edited installation jobs in the order listed.
4. Issue the `-START DB(dbname) ACCESS(UT)` command for each database that has objects with a utility in progress.
5. Issue the `-START DB(dbname)SPACENAM(spname) ACCESS(FORCE)` command on each object with a utility in progress. This action clears all utilities that are in progress or in pending states. (Any pending states are cleared, but you still need to resolve the pending states as directed in the next step.)

6. Resolve the pending states for each object by running the appropriate utility. For example, if an object was in the RECP status, run the RECOVER utility.
7. Issue `-START DB(dbname) ACCESS(RW)` for each database.

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Recovering a table space that contains LOB or XML data

The RECOVER utility can set the auxiliary warning status for a LOB table space or XML table space if it finds at least one invalid LOB or XML column.

DB2 marks a LOB or XML column invalid if all of the following conditions are true:

- The LOB table space or XML table space was defined with the LOG(NO) attribute.
- The LOB table space or XML table space was recovered.
- The LOB or XML was updated since the last image copy.

The status of an object that is related to a LOB or XML table space can change due to a recovery operation, depending on the type of recovery that is performed. If all of the following objects for all LOB or XML columns are recovered in a single RECOVER utility statement to the present point in time, no pending status exists:

- Base table space
- Index on the auxiliary table
- LOB table space
- XML table space

In conversion mode, RECOVER to a point in time requires base, LOB, and XML table spaces to be recovered as a set. A successful recovery will leave the table spaces in a read/write state with no prohibitive pending status. Indexes on the base table space and indexes on a LOB or XML table are not required in the recover set. If the base table space is range-partitioned or classic partitioned, partition-level recoveries are allowed. Refer to the following table for information about the status of a base table space, index on the auxiliary table, LOB table space, or XML table space that was recovered without its related objects in DB2 Version 10 CM mode.

Table 68. Object status after being recovered without its related objects

Object	Recovery type	Base table space status	Base index space status	LOB or XML table space status	Index on a LOB or XML table
Base table space	Current RBA or LRSN	None	None	None	None
Base table space	Prior point-in-time	AUX-CHECK-pending ¹	REBUILD pending	None	REBUILD pending
Base index space	Current RBA or LRSN	None	None	None	None
Base index space	Prior point-in-time	None	CHECK-pending ¹	None	None
Index on a LOB or XML table	Current RBA or LRSN	None	None	None	None
Index a LOB or XML table	Prior point-in-time	None	None	None	CHECK pending

Table 68. Object status after being recovered without its related objects (continued)

Object	Recovery type	Base table space status	Base index space status	LOB or XML table space status	Index on a LOB or XML table
LOB or XML table space	TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, TOLASTFULLCOPY	AUX-CHECK-pending ¹	None	None	REBUILD pending
LOB or XML table space	TORBA or TOLOGPOINT	AUX-CHECK-pending ¹	None	Auxiliary warning	REBUILD pending

Notes:

1. For LOB table spaces defined with LOG NO, the update event is logged, even though the data change is not. If such a log record is applied to the LOB table space and a LOB is consequently marked invalid, the LOB or XML table space is set to auxiliary warning status.

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Recovering a table space that contains clone objects

The recovery guidelines and considerations for a cloned table space or cloned index are the same as for a base table space or base index except in the point-in-time recovery case.

For an object currently involved in cloning, or one that was previously involved in cloning, a point-in-time recovery cannot be done to a time that precedes the most recent EXCHANGE statement. The time of the most recent EXCHANGE for a table space can be determined by querying SYSIBM.COPY for the table space to be recovered where ICTYPE = 'A' and STYPE = 'E'.

When an EXCHANGE is done, two rows will be written to SYSIBM.SYSCOPY for the table space being processed: one for the base object and one for the clone object. These rows are differentiated by the SYSCOPY.INSTANCE column value: one will have INSTANCE=1 and the other INSTANCE=2. These SYSIBM.SYSCOPY rows do not indicate base or clone. The SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table contains an INSTANCE column that indicates the instance number of the current base objects. The SYSTABLESPACE.INSTANCE column value can be used to determine which SYSIBM.SYSCOPY row is for a base object and which is for a clone object.

Point-in-time recovery

A recovery operation that is done with one of the point-in-time recovery options is known as a point-in-time recovery. You can recover objects to any RBA or LRSN by using TORBA or TOLOGPOINT unless the objects are currently, or were previously, involved with cloning.

With TORBA or TOLOGPOINT, the RBA or LRSN does not have to be a consistent point in time. The RECOVER utility automatically handles any uncommitted units of work and the data is left in a consistent state.

An explicit point of consistency is a quiesce point or a set of image copies that were taken with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE. Recovering to a point-in-time with consistency is available only in new-function mode. Recoveries to a consistent point in time will be the most efficient because there will be no uncommitted units

of work to back out. You do not need to take a full image copy after recovering to a point in time, except in the case of fallback recovery. DB2 records the RBAs or LRSNs that are associated with the point-in-time recovery in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table to allow future recover operations to skip the unwanted range of log records. You can recover objects to any RBA or LRSN; the RBA or LRSN does not have to be a consistent point in time. The RECOVER utility automatically handles any uncommitted units of work and the data is left in a consistent state.

Because a point-in-time recovery of only the table space leaves data in a consistent state and indexes in an inconsistent state, you must rebuild all indexes by using REBUILD INDEX.

If you use a point-in-time recovery option to recover a single data set of a nonpartitioned table space, DB2 issues message DSNU520I to warn that the table space can become inconsistent following the RECOVER job. This point-in-time recovery can cause compressed data to exist without a dictionary or can even overwrite the data set that contains the current dictionary.

If you use the point-in-time recovery option to recover a partition-by-growth table space that has an image copy with fewer partitions than the current table space, any excess partitions (partitions that are currently defined but not in the image copy) will be empty after the RECOVER processing.

If a table space or partition in reordered row format is recovered to a point in time when the table space or partition was in basic row format, the table space or partition will revert to basic row format. Similarly, if a table space or partition in basic row format is recovered to a point in time when the table space or partition was in reordered row format, the table space or partition will revert to reordered row format.

After recovering a set of table spaces to a point in time, you can use CHECK DATA to check for inconsistencies.

You can also use point-in-time recovery and the point-in-time recovery options to recover all user-defined table spaces and indexes that are in refresh-pending status (REFP).

Recommendation: After running any point-in-time recoveries, run REORG TABLESPACE and REBUILD INDEX to reset the real-time statistics. For more information about the affect of point-in-time recoveries on real-time statistics, see “Effects of running RECOVER” on page 455.

Restriction: RECOVER cannot use system-level backups as a recovery base unless DFSMSHsm is at z/OS 1.8 or higher.

Backing out work to a point-in-time

The RECOVER utility can recover your data to a point in time by backing out committed work from the current state of the data. To recover data by backing out, specify BACKOUT YES on the RECOVER control statement.

In some circumstances, recovering to a point in time by backing out work can be faster than recovering to a point in time by restoring a copy of the data and applying the logs forward.

When the RECOVER utility performs a point-in-time recovery by backing out committed work, the recovery is a point-in-time recovery with consistency, because any work that was uncommitted at the point in time to which the data is being recovered is also backed out. When the recovery is complete, the data is left in a transaction consistent state.

The RECOVER utility cannot perform a backout recovery to a point in time that is earlier than the timestamp of the latest SQL ALTER record in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY for the object being recovered.

You also cannot perform a backout recovery to a point-in-time that is earlier than the completion time of a previous backout recovery.

Before running the RECOVERY utility with the BACKOUT YES option, run the REPORT utility with the RECOVER option on the object being recovered to identify events that might prevent you from recovering the object by backout to a given point in time.

Recovery considerations after rebalancing partitions with REORG

Image copies that were taken prior to resetting the REORG-pending status of any partition of a partitioned table space are not usable for recovering to a current RBA or LRSN. Avoid performing a point-in-time recovery for a partitioned table space to a point in time that is after the REORG-pending status was set, but before a rebalancing REORG was performed. To determine an appropriate point in time:

1. Run REPORT RECOVERY.
2. Select an image copy for which the recovery point is a point after the rebalancing REORG was performed.

If you run the REORG utility to turn off a REORG-pending status, and then recover to a point in time before that REORG job, DB2 sets restrictive statuses on all partitions that you specified in the REORG job, as follows:

- Sets REORG-pending (and possibly CHECK-pending) on for the data partitions
- Sets REBUILD-pending on for the associated index partitions
- Sets REBUILD-pending on for the associated logical partitions of nonpartitioned secondary indexes

Recommendation: To create a new consistent recovery point, take one of these actions immediately following an ALTER INDEX or TABLE operation that changes partition boundaries:

- Run REORG with COPYDDN and SHRLEVEL NONE specified.
- Take a full image copy immediately after REORG completes.

Using offline copies to recover after rebalancing partitions

To recover data after a REORG job redistributes the data among partitions, use RECOVER LOGONLY. If you perform a point-in-time recovery, you must keep the offline copies synchronized with the SYSCOPY records. Therefore, do **not** use the MODIFY RECOVERY utility to delete any SYSCOPY records with an ICTYPE column value of 'A' because these records might be needed during the recovery. Delete these SYSCOPY records only when you are sure that you no longer need to use the offline copies that were taken before the REORG that performed the rebalancing.

Actions that can affect recovery status

When you perform the following actions before you recover a table space, the recovery status is affected as described:

- If you alter a table to rotate partitions:
 - You can recover the partition to the current time.
 - You can recover the partition to a point in time after the alter. The utility can use a recovery base, (for example, a full image copy, a REORG LOG YES operation, or a LOAD REPLACE LOG YES operation) that occurred before the alter.
 - You cannot recover the partition to a point in time before the alter; the recover fails with MSGDSNU556I and RC8.
- If you change partition boundaries with ALTER or REORG REBALANCE:
 - You can recover the partition to the current time if a recovery base (for example, a full image copy, a REORG LOG YES operation, or a LOAD REPLACE LOG YES operation) exists.
 - You can recover the partition to a point in time after the alter.
 - You can recover the partitions that are affected by the boundary change to a point in time before the alter; RECOVER sets REORG-pending status on the affected partitions and you must reorganize the table space or range of partitions. All affected partitions must be in the recovery list of a single RECOVER statement.
- If you alter a table to add a partition:
 - You can recover the partition to the current time.
 - You can recover the partition to a point in time after the alter.
 - You can recover the partition to a point in time before the alter; RECOVER resets the partition to be empty.
- If you alter a table to add a column (by using ALTER TABLE ADD COLUMN) and subsequently drop the default value of the column (by using ALTER COLUMN DROP DEFAULT), you cannot recover the table space to a point in time between those two events.
- If you convert a table space from basic row format to reordered row format, you cannot recover a piece of the table space to a point in time when the table space was in basic row format. Similarly, if you convert a table space from reordered row format to basic row format, you cannot recover a piece of the table space to a point in time when the table space was in reordered row format. In both cases, you must recover the entire table space.
- If you regenerate an index (by using ALTER INDEX REGENERATE), you cannot recover the index or index space to a point in time prior to the time that it was regenerated. Instead, rebuild the index by using the REBUILD INDEX utility.
- If you alter an index such that DB2 creates a new version of the index, you cannot recover the index to a point in time prior to the first ALTER INDEX that created a new version of that index.
- If you convert a table to support multiple XML versions:
 - You cannot recover the associated table space to a point in time before the table was converted.
 - You cannot recover any indexes for that table to a point in time before the table was converted.
- If you alter the organization of your table space to hash organization:
 - You can recover the table space to the current time.
 - You can recover the table space to a point in time before or after the alter.
 - You can recover the table space to a point in time before or after the REORG that materialized the hash organization. RECOVER places the table space in AREOR status if the table space was recovered to a point before the REORG.
- If you alter the size of the hash space in your table space:
 - You can recover the table space to the current time.

- You can recover the table space to a point in time before or after the alter.
- You can recover the table space to a point in time before or after the REORG that materialized the change in hash space size.
- If you drop the hash organization (using ALTER):
 - You can recover the table space to the current time.
 - You can recover the table space to a point in time after the alter.
 - You cannot recover the table space to a point in time before the alter.
- If you execute and materialize an alter bufferpool, alter segsize, alter maxpartitions, or alter member cluster:
 - You cannot perform a PIT recovery to a time before the alter occurred.

When you perform the following actions before you recover an index to a prior point in time or to the current time, the recovery status is affected as described:

- If you alter the data type of a column to a numeric data type, you cannot recover the index until you take a full image copy of the index. However, the index can be rebuilt.
- If you alter an index to NOT PADDED or PADDED , you cannot recover the index until you take a full image copy of the index. However, the index can be rebuilt.

Planning for point-in-time recovery

Recovering to a point in time that is a point of consistency (QUIESCE or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE set) is desirable because there will be no uncommitted work to back out.

When making copies of a single object, use SHRLEVEL REFERENCE to establish consistent points for TOCOPY, TOLASTCOPY, or TOLASTFULLCOPY recovery. Copies that are made with SHRLEVEL CHANGE do not copy data at a single instant because changes can occur as the copy is made. A subsequent RECOVER TOCOPY operation can produce inconsistent data. Instead use RECOVER with the TOLOGPOINT option to identify a point after the SHRLEVEL CHANGE copy and any uncommitted units of work will be backed out.

When copying a list of objects, use SHRLEVEL REFERENCE. If a subsequent recovery to a point in time is necessary, you can use a single RECOVER utility statement to list all of the objects, along with TOLOGPOINT to identify the common RBA or LRSN value. If you use SHRLEVEL CHANGE to copy a list of objects, you should follow it with a QUIESCE of the objects.

To improve the performance of the recovery, take a full image copy of the table space or set of table spaces, and then quiesce them by using the QUIESCE utility. This action enables RECOVER TORBA or TOLOGPOINT to recover the table spaces to the quiesce point with minimal use of the log.

Authorization: Restrict use of the point-in-time recovery options to personnel with a thorough knowledge of the DB2 recovery environment.

Ensuring consistency

You can use RECOVER TORBA, RECOVER TOLOGPOINT, and RECOVER TOCOPY to recover one of the following single objects:

- Partition of a partitioned table space
- Partition of a partitioning index space
- Data set of a simple table space

For any of the previously listed objects, restore all data sets to the same level; otherwise, the data becomes inconsistent.

If possible, specify a table space and all of its indexes (or a set of table spaces and all related indexes) in the same RECOVER utility statement, and specify TOLOGPOINT or TORBA to identify a QUIESCE point. This action avoids placing indexes in the CHECK-pending or REBUILD-pending status. If the TOLOGPOINT is not a common QUIESCE point for all objects, use the following procedure:

1. RECOVER table spaces to the value for TOLOGPOINT (either an RBA or LRSN).
2. Use concurrent REBUILD INDEX jobs to recover the indexes over each table space.

This procedure ensures that the table spaces and indexes are synchronized, and it eliminates the need to run the CHECK INDEX utility.

If you cannot specify TOLOGPOINT or TORBA to identify a QUIESCE point, you can specify any point in time, and DB2 will leave the data in a consistent state. The RECOVER utility automatically handles any uncommitted units of work and leaves the data in a consistent state when TORBA or TOLOGPOINT is specified.

When using RECOVER with the TORBA or TOLOGPOINT option, ensure that all of the objects that are changed by the active units of recovery at the recovery point are recovered to the same point-in-time so that they are synchronized:

- DB2 rolls back changes made to units of recovery that are in flight, in abort, postponed abort, or indoubt during the recovery point-in-time.
- DB2 does not roll back changes made to units of recovery that are INCOMMIT during the recovery point-in-time.
- DB2 rolls back only changes to objects in the RECOVER statement.

Resetting CHECK-pending status

Point-in-time recovery can cause table spaces to be placed in CHECK-pending status if they have table check constraints or referential constraints defined on them. When recovering tables that are involved in a referential constraint, you should recover all the table spaces that are involved in a constraint.

RECOVER does not place dependent table spaces that are related by informational referential constraints into CHECK-pending status.

The TORBA and TOLOGPOINT options set the CHECK-pending status for table spaces when you perform any of the following actions:

- Recover all members of a set of table spaces that are to be recovered to the same point in time, but referential constraints were defined for a dependent table after that point in time. Table spaces that contain those dependent tables are placed in CHECK-pending status.
- In DB2 Version 10 conversion mode, recover table spaces with defined LOB or XML columns without recovering their LOB or XML table spaces. In DB2 Version 10 new-function mode, base table spaces and their associated LOB or XML table spaces must be recovered together.

To avoid setting CHECK-pending status, you must perform both of the following steps:

- Recover all dependent objects to the same point in time.

If you do not recover each table space to the same quiesce point, and if any of the table spaces are part of a referential integrity structure, the following actions occur:

- All dependent table spaces that are recovered are placed in CHECK-pending status with the scope of the whole table space.
- All dependent table spaces of the recovered table spaces are placed in CHECK-pending status with the scope of the specific dependent tables.
- Do not add table check constraints or referential constraints after the point in time to which you want to recover.

If you recover each table space of a table space set to the same point in time, but referential constraints were defined after the same point in time, the CHECK-pending status is set for the table space that contains the table with the referential constraint.

The TORBA and TOLOGPOINT options set the CHECK-pending status for indexes when you recover one or more of the indexes to a previous point in time, but you do not recover the related table space in the same RECOVER statement.

You can turn off CHECK-pending status for an index by using the TORBA and TOLOGPOINT options. Recover indexes along with the related table space to the same point in time (preferably a quiesce point) or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE point. RECOVER processing resets the CHECK-pending status for all indexes in the same RECOVER statement.

Compressed data

Use caution when recovering a portion of a table space or partition (for example, one data set) to a prior point in time. If the data set that is being recovered has been compressed with a different dictionary, you can no longer read the data.

Related concepts

 Recovery of data to a prior point in time (DB2 Administration Guide)

“How the RECOVER utility performs fallback recovery” on page 452

“Resetting the REBUILD-pending status” on page 401

Related tasks

 Compressing your data (Managing Performance)

“Reviewing CHECK INDEX output” on page 102

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

“REBUILD-pending status” on page 1006

“REORG-pending status” on page 1008

Avoiding specific image copy data sets

You might accidentally lose an image copy, or you might want to avoid a specific image copy data set. Because the corresponding row is still present in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, the RECOVER utility always attempts to allocate the data set.

Use the RESTOREBEFORE option and specify the RBA or LRSN of the image copy, concurrent copy, or system-level backup that you want to avoid, and RECOVER

will search for an older recovery base. The RECOVER utility then applies log records to restore the object to its current state or the specified TORBA or TOLOGPOINT value.

Image copy on tape

If the image copy is on tape, messages IEF233D and IEF455D request the tape for RECOVER, as shown in the following example:

```
IEF233D M BAB,COPY      ,R92341QJ,DSNUPROC,
          OR RESPOND TO IEF455D MESSAGE
*42 IEF455D MOUNT COPY   ON BAB FOR R92341QJ,DSNUPROC OR REPLY 'NO'
R 42,NO
IEF234E K BAB,COPY      ,PVT,R92341QJ,DSNUPROC
```

By replying NO, you can initiate the fallback to the previous image copy. RECOVER responds with messages DSNU030I and DSNU508I, as shown in the following example:

```
DSNU030I   csect-name - UNABLE TO ALLOCATE R92341Q.UTQPS001.FCOPY010
          RC=4, CODE=X'04840000'
DSNU508I   csect-name - IN FALLBACK PROCESSING TO PRIOR FULL IMAGE COPY
```

Reason code X'0484' means that the request was denied by the operator.

Image copy on disk:

If the image copy is on disk, you can delete or rename the image copy data set before RECOVER starts executing. RECOVER issues messages DSNU030I and DSNU508I, as shown in the following example:

```
DSNU030I   csect-name - UNABLE TO ALLOCATE R92341Q.UTQPS001.FCOPY010,
          RC=4, CODE=X'17080000'
DSNU508I   csect-name - IN FALLBACK PROCESSING TO PRIOR FULL IMAGE COPY
```

Reason code X'1708' means that the ICF catalog entry cannot be found.

Improving RECOVER performance

Certain activities might improve the performance of the RECOVER utility.

To improve recovery time, consider recovering to a quiesce point or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE copy instead of recovering to any point in time. The following factors impact performance when you recover to a non quiesce point:

- The duration of the units of recovery that were active at the recovery point.
- The number of DB2 members that have active units of recovery to roll back.

Use MERGECOPY to merge your table space image copies before recovering the table space. If you do not merge your image copies, RECOVER automatically merges them. If RECOVER cannot allocate all the incremental image copy data sets when it merges the image copies, RECOVER uses the log instead.

Include a list of table spaces and indexes in your RECOVER utility statement to apply logs in a single scan of the logs.

If you use RECOVER TOCOPY for full image copies, you can improve performance by using data compression. The improvement is proportional to the degree of compression.

Consider specifying the PARALLEL keyword to restore image copies from disk or tape to a list of objects in parallel.

If you are recovering concurrent copies, consider specifying the CURRENTCOPYONLY option to improve performance. When you specify this option, RECOVER can issue one DFSMSdss RESTORE command for multiple objects. The utility issues one RESTORE command for each group of objects that is associated with the concurrent copy data set. If you do not use the CURRENTCOPYONLY keyword, RECOVER issues one RESTORE command for each object.

If you are recovering an object from a system-level backup, RECOVER invokes DFSMSHsm, which controls parallelism. If the system-level backup resides on disk, the RECOVER utility passes the object to DFSMSHsm before processing the objects to be restored from image copies or concurrent copies. If the system-level backup resides on tape, the RECOVER utility processes the objects to be restored from system-level backups, image copies, and concurrent copies at the same time.

Recovery from a FlashCopy image copy with consistency or from a sequential image copy with consistency might take longer due to the additional processing required to read the logs and apply any changes made after the point of consistency.

Optimizing the LOGAPPLY phase

The time that is required to recover a table space depends also on the time that is required to read and apply log data. You can take several steps to optimize the process. If possible, DB2 reads the required log records from the active log to provide the best performance.

Any log records that are not found in the active logs are read from the archive log data sets, which are dynamically allocated to satisfy the requests. The type of storage that is used for archive log data sets is a significant factor in the performance. Consider the following actions to improve performance:

- RECOVER a list of objects in one utility statement to take only a single pass of the log.
- Keep archive logs on disk to provide the best possible performance.
- Control archive logs data sets by using DFSMSHsm to provide the next best performance. DB2 optimizes recall of the data sets. After the data set is recalled, DB2 reads it from disk.
- If the archive log must be read from tape, DB2 optimizes access by means of ready-to-process and look-ahead mount requests. DB2 also permits delaying the deallocation of a tape drive if subsequent RECOVER jobs require the same archive log tape. Those methods are described in more detail in the subsequent paragraphs.

The BSDS contains information about which log data sets to use and where they reside. You must keep the BSDS information current. If the archive log data sets are cataloged, the ICF catalog indicates where to allocate the required data set.

DFSMSHsm data sets

The recall of the first DFSMSHsm archive log data set starts automatically when the LOGAPPLY phase starts. When the recall is complete and the first log record is

read, the recall for the next archive log data set starts. This process is known as *look-ahead* recalling. Its purpose is to recall the next data set while it reads the preceding one.

When a recall is complete, the data set is available to all RECOVER jobs that require it. Reading proceeds in parallel.

Non-DFSMSHsm tape data sets

DB2 reports on the console all tape volumes that are required for the entire job. The report distinguishes two types of volumes:

- Any volume that is **not** marked with an asterisk (*) is **required** for the for the job to complete. Obtain these volumes from the tape library as soon as possible.
- Any volume that **is** marked with an asterisk (*) contains data that is also contained in one of the active log data sets. The volume might or might not be required.

As tapes are mounted and read, DB2 makes two types of mount requests:

- *Ready-to-process*: The current job needs this tape immediately. As soon as the tape is loaded, DB2 allocates and opens it.
- *Look-ahead*: This is the next tape volume that is required by the current job. Responding to this request enables DB2 to allocate and open the data set before it is needed, thus reducing overall elapsed time for the job.

You can dynamically change the maximum number of input tape units that are used to read the archive log by specifying the COUNT option of the SET ARCHIVE command. For example, use the following command to assign 10 tape units to your DB2 subsystem:

```
-SET ARCHIVE COUNT (10)
```

The DISPLAY ARCHIVE READ command shows the currently mounted tape volumes and their statuses.

Delayed deallocation

DB2 can delay deallocating the tape units used to read the archive logs. This is useful when several RECOVER utility statements run in parallel. By delaying deallocation, DB2 can re-read the same volume on the same tape unit for different RECOVER jobs, without taking time to allocate it again.

You can dynamically change the amount of time that DB2 delays deallocation by using the TIME option of the SET ARCHIVE command. For example, to specify a 60 minute delay, issue the following command:

```
-SET ARCHIVE TIME(60)
```

In a data sharing environment, you might want to specify zero (0) to avoid having one member hold onto a data set that another member needs for recovery.

Performance summary

1. Achieve the best performance by allocating archive logs on disk.
2. Consider staging cataloged tape data sets to disk before allocation by the log read process.
3. If the data sets are read from tape, set both the COUNT and the TIME values to the maximum allowable values within the system constraints.

Recovering image copies in a JES3 environment

You can recover sequential or concurrent image copies in a JES3 environment.

To recover image copies in a JES3 environment:

Ensure that sufficient units are available to mount the required image copies. In a JES3 environment, if the number of image copies that need to be restored exceeds the number of available online and offline units, and the RECOVER job successfully allocates all available units, the job waits for more units to become available.

Resetting RECOVER-pending or REBUILD-pending status

Several possible operations on a table space can place the table space in the RECOVER-pending status and the index space in REBUILD-pending status.

To reset RECOVER-pending or REBUILD-pending status:

Use one of the following methods:

- Recover the table space, index space, or partition.
- Use REBUILD INDEX to rebuild the index space from existing data.
- Use the LOAD utility, with the REPLACE option, on the table space or partition.
- Use the REPAIR utility, with the NORCVRPEND option, on the table space, index space, or partition. Be aware that the REPAIR utility does not fix the data inconsistency in the table space or index.
- Rebuild indexes, run REORG TABLESPACE SORTDATA for table spaces and indexes.

How the RECOVER utility allocates incremental image copies

RECOVER attempts to dynamically allocate all required incremental image copy data sets.

If any of the incremental image copies are missing, RECOVER performs the following actions:

- Identifies the first incremental image copy that is missing
- Uses the incremental image copies up to the missing incremental image copy
- Doesn't use the remaining incremental image copy data sets
- Applies additional log records to compensate for any incremental image copies that were not used

For example, if the incremental image copies are on tape and an adequate number of tape drives are not available, RECOVER does not use the remaining incremental image copy data sets.

How the RECOVER utility performs fallback recovery

The RECOVER utility attempts to use the latest primary copy data set as a starting point for recovery. If the latest primary copy data set is not available, RECOVER attempts to use the backup copy data set, if one is available.

If neither image copy is usable, RECOVER attempts to fall back to a previous recovery point. If the previous recovery point is a full image copy, the RECOVER utility uses the full image copy, any incremental image copies, and the log to recover. If a previous REORG LOG YES or LOAD REPLACE LOG YES was done, RECOVER attempts to recover from the log and applies any changes that occurred between the two image copies. If good full image copies are not available, and no previous REORG LOG YES or LOAD REPLACE LOG YES jobs were run, the RECOVER utility terminates. The RECOVER utility will not fall back to a system-level backup.

If one of the following actions occurs, the index remains untouched, and utility processing terminates with return code 8:

- RECOVER processes an index for which no full copy exists.
- The copy cannot be used because of utility activity that occurred on the index or on its underlying table space,

If you always make multiple image copies, RECOVER should seldom fall back to an earlier point. Instead, RECOVER relies on the backup copy data set if the primary copy data set is unusable.

In a JES3 environment, you can do a fallback recovery by issuing a JES3 cancel,s command at the time the allocation mount message is issued. This action might be necessary if a volume is not available or if the given volume is not desired.

RECOVER does not perform parallel processing for objects that are in backup or fallback recovery. Instead, the utility performs non-parallel image copy allocation processing of the objects. RECOVER defers the processing of objects that require backup or fallback processing until all other objects are recovered, at which time the utility processes the objects one at a time.

Related concepts

“Preparing for recovery” on page 153

How the RECOVER utility retains tape mounts

The RECOVER utility can automatically retain the tape volumes for the input image copies when a list of objects is being recovered.

For input image copies (for the objects being recovered) that are stacked on one or more tape volumes, you do not need to code JCL DD statements to retain the tape volumes on the tape drive. Instead, you can use the PARALLEL and TAPEUNITS keywords. The PARALLEL keyword directs the RECOVER utility to process the objects in parallel. The objects will be sorted based on how the input image copies are stacked on tape to maximize efficiency during the RESTORE phase by retaining the tape volumes on the tape drive and by restoring the input image copies in the right order (by ascending file sequence numbers). The TAPEUNITS keyword will limit the number of tape units (or drives) that the RECOVER utility will use during the RESTORE phase. In special cases, RECOVER cannot retain all of the tape volumes, so the tape volumes may be demounted and deallocated even if the PARALLEL and TAPEUNITS keywords are specified.

Avoiding damaged media

When a media error is detected, DB2 prints a message that indicates the extent of the damage. If an entire volume is bad and storage groups are being used, you must remove the bad volume first. If you don't remove the volume the RECOVER utility might re-access the damaged media.

To avoid damaged media:

1. Use ALTER STOGROUP to remove the bad volume and add another volume. If your data sets are managed by DFSMS storage group, then you need to also remove the bad volume from the DFSMS storage group.
2. Run the RECOVER utility for all objects on that volume.

If the RECOVER utility cannot complete because of severe errors that are caused by the damaged media, you might need to use Access Method Services (IDCAMS) with the NOSCRATCH option to delete the cluster for the table space or index. If the table space or index is defined by using STOGROUP, the RECOVER utility automatically redefines the cluster. For user-defined table spaces or indexes, you must redefine the cluster before invoking the RECOVER utility.

Termination or restart of RECOVER

You can terminate and restart the RECOVER utility.

Termination

Terminating a RECOVER job with the TERM UTILITY command leaves the table space that is being recovered in RECOVER-pending status, and the index space that is being recovered in the REBUILD-pending status. If you recover a table space to a previous point in time, its indexes are left in the REBUILD-pending status. The data or index is unavailable until the object is successfully recovered or rebuilt. If the utility fails in the LOGAPPLY, LOGCSR, or LOGUNDO phases, fix the problem that caused the job to stop and restart the job rather than terminate the job. For the rest of objects in the recover job, the RECOVER utility restores the original image copy and repeats the LOGAPPLY, LOGCSR, and LOGUNDO process again for this subset of objects. All the objects being recovered in one recover job will be available to the application at the end of the RECOVER utility, even if some of the objects do not have any active URs operating on them and therefore no rollback is needed for these objects.

Restart

You can restart RECOVER from the last commit point (RESTART(CURRENT)) or the beginning of the phase (RESTART(PHASE)). By default, DB2 uses RESTART(CURRENT).

If you attempt to recover multiple objects by using a single RECOVER statement and the utility fails in:

- The RESTORE phase: All objects in the process of being restored are placed in the RECOVER-pending or REBUILD-pending status. The status of the remaining objects is unchanged.
- The LOGAPPLY phase: All objects that are specified in the RECOVER statement are placed in the RECOVER-pending or REBUILD-pending status.

In both cases, you must identify and fix the causes of the failure before performing a current restart.

If RECOVER fails in the LOGCSR phase and you restart the utility, the utility restart behavior is RESTART(PHASE).

If RECOVER fails in the LOGUNDO phase and you restart the utility, the utility repeats the RESTORE, LOGAPPLY, LOGCSR, and LOGUNDO phases for only those objects that had active units of recovery that needed to be handled and that did not complete undo processing prior to the failure.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Effects of running RECOVER

When you run RECOVER without the REUSE option and the data set that contains that data is DB2–managed, DB2 deletes this data set before the RECOVER and redefines a new data set with a control interval that matches the page size.

If you use the RECOVER utility to recover objects to a previous point in time, the counter columns in the real-time statistics tables might not be valid. Therefore, after any point-in-time recoveries, you should run the following utilities:

- REORG TABLESPACE to reestablish real time statistic values for table spaces
- REBUILD INDEX to reestablish real time statistic values for indexes

These actions do not apply if you recover objects to the current state. When you recover objects to the current state, the counter columns in the real-time statistics tables are still valid; DB2 does not modify them.

Sample RECOVER control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own RECOVER control statements.

Example 1: Recovering a table space

The following control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D to the current point in time.

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
```

Example 2: Recovering a table space partition

The following control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover the second partition of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D. The partition number is indicated by the DSNUM option.

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D DSNUM 2
```

Example 3: Recovering a table space partition to the last image copy that was taken

The following control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover the first partition of table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D to the last image copy that was taken. If the last image copy that was taken is a full image copy, this full

image copy is restored. If the last image copy that was taken is an incremental image copy, the most recent full image copy, along with any incremental image copies, are restored.

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D DSNUM 1 TOLASTCOPY
```

Example 4: Recovering table spaces to a point in time

The following control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover the second partition of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E and all of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D to the indicated quiesce point (LRSN X'00000551BE7D'). The quiesce point is indicated by the TOLOGPOINT option. Note that the value for this option can be either an LRSN or an RBA.

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E DSNUM 2
        TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
        TOLOGPOINT X'00000551BE7D'
```

Example 5: Recovering an index to the last full image copy that was taken without deleting and redefining the data sets

The following control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover index ADMF001.IADH082P to the last full image copy. The REUSE option specifies that DB2 is to logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them.

```
RECOVER INDEX ADMF001.IADH082P REUSE TOLASTFULLCOPY
```

Example 6: Recovering from concurrent copies

The RECOVER utility control statement specifies that the utility is to recover all of the objects that are included in the RCVR4_LIST. This list is defined by the preceding LISTDEF utility control statement. Because the most recent primary copy for all of these objects is a concurrent copy, the CURRENTCOPYONLY option is used in the RECOVER statement to improve the performance of restoring these concurrent copies. The LOCALSITE option indicates that RECOVER is to use image copies at the local site.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUOLU210.RCVR4',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=JUOLU210.RCVR4.STEP1.SYSUT1,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=JUOLU210.RCVR4.STEP1.SORTOUT,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *

LISTDEF RCVR4_LIST
INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBOL1002.TSOL1002
INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBOL1003.TPOL1003 PARTLEVEL 3
INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBOL1003.TPOL1003 PARTLEVEL 6
INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBOL1003.TPOL1004 PARTLEVEL 5
INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBOL1003.TPOL1004 PARTLEVEL 9
INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DBOL1003.IPOL1051 PARTLEVEL 22
INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DBOL1003.IPOL1061 PARTLEVEL 10
INCLUDE INDEXSPACES INDEXSPACE DBOL1003.IXOL1062

RECOVER LIST RCVR4_LIST
LOCALSITE
CURRENTCOPYONLY

/*

```

Figure 69. Example RECOVER control statement with the CURRENTCOPYONLY option

Example 7: Recovering a list of objects on different tape devices in parallel

The control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover the list of table spaces. Full image copies and incremental image copies of the eight table spaces are stacked on four different tape volumes. The utility sorts the list of objects and, if possible, recovers two objects at a time in parallel. This number of objects is specified by the PARALLEL option. The TAPEUNITS option specifies that up to four tape drives are to be dynamically allocated.

```

//RECOVER EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
RECOVER PARALLEL(2) TAPEUNITS(4)
TABLESPACE DB1.TS8
TABLESPACE DB1.TS7
TABLESPACE DB1.TS6
TABLESPACE DB1.TS5
TABLESPACE DB1.TS4
TABLESPACE DB1.TS3
TABLESPACE DB1.TS2
TABLESPACE DB1.TS1

```

Figure 70. Example RECOVER control statement for a list of objects on tape

Example 8: Recovering a list of objects to a point in time

The following RECOVER control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover the specified list of objects to a common point in time (LRSN X'00000551BE7D'). The LISTDEF control statement defines which objects are to be included in the list. These objects are logically consistent after successful completion of this RECOVER job. The PARALLEL option indicates that RECOVER is to restore four objects at a time in parallel. If any of the image copies are on tape (either stacked or not stacked), RECOVER determines the number of tape drives to

use to optimize the process. Note that any uncommitted work for all of the objects at the specified RBA have been backed out by the recover to point in time with consistency.

```
LISTDEF RCVRLIST INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XDEPT1
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XDEPT2
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XDEPT3
        INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XEMP1
        INCLUDE INDEX DSN8810.XEMP2
RECOVER LIST RCVRLIST TOLOGPOINT X'00000551BE7D' PARALLEL(4)
```

Example 9: Recovering clone table data

The following control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to recover only clone table data in DBA90601.TLX9061A and recover the data to the last image copy that was taken. The REUSE option specifies that RECOVER is to logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them.

```
RECOVER TABLESPACE DBA90601.TLX9061A REUSE TOLASTCOPY
        CLONE
```

Example 10: Recovering an image copy

The following control statement specifies that the RECOVER utility is to search for an image copy with an RBA or LRSN value earlier than the specified X'00000551BE7D' value to use in the RESTORE phase. Only specified dumps of the database copy pool are used for the restore of the data sets.

```
RECOVER LIST RCVRLIST RESTOREBEFORE X'00000551BE7D' PARALLEL(4)
        FROMDUMP DUMPCLASS(dcname)
```

Chapter 24. REORG INDEX

The REORG INDEX online utility reorganizes an index space to improve access performance and reclaim fragmented space. You can specify the degree of access to your data during reorganization, and you can collect inline statistics by using the STATISTICS keyword.

You can determine when to run REORG INDEX by using the LEAFDISTLIMIT catalog query option. If you specify the REPORTONLY option, REORG INDEX produces a report that indicates whether a REORG is recommended; in this case, a REORG is not performed. These options are not available for indexes on the directory.

Output

The following list summarizes REORG INDEX output:

REORG specified **Results**

REORG INDEX

Reorganizes the entire index (all parts if partitioning).

REORG INDEX PART *n*

Reorganizes PART *n* of a partitioning index or of a data-partitioned secondary index

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- REORG privilege for the database
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- DATAACCESS authority
- SYSCtrl authority
- SYSADM authority

To execute this utility on an index space in the catalog or directory, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- REORG privilege for the DSNDB06 (catalog) database
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the DSNDB06 (catalog) database.
- Installation SYSOPR authority
- SYSCtrl authority
- SYSADM or Installation SYSADM authority
- STATS privilege for the database is required if STATISTICS keyword is specified.

While trying to reorganize an index space in the catalog or directory, a user with authority other than installation SYSADM or installation SYSOPR might receive the following message:

```
DSNT500I "resource unavailable"
```

This message is issued when the DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT or DSNDB06.SYSUSER catalog table space or one of the indexes is unavailable. If this problem occurs, run the REORG INDEX utility again, using an authorization ID with the installation SYSADM or installation SYSOPR authority.

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute REORG INDEX, but only on an index in the DSNDB06 database.

If either the FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT option is specified, the batch user ID that invokes the REORG INDEX utility must have the authority to execute the DFSMSdss COPY command.

To run REORG INDEX STATISTICS REPORT YES, ensure that the privilege set includes the SELECT privilege on the catalog tables and on the tables for which statistics are to be gathered.

Execution phases of REORG INDEX

The REORG INDEX utility operates in these phases:

UTILINIT

Performs initialization and setup

UNLOAD

Unloads index space and writes keys to a sequential data set.

BUILD

Builds indexes. Updates index statistics.

LOG Processes log iteratively. Used only if you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE.

SWITCH

Switches access between original and new copy of index space or partition. Used only if you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE.

UTILTERM

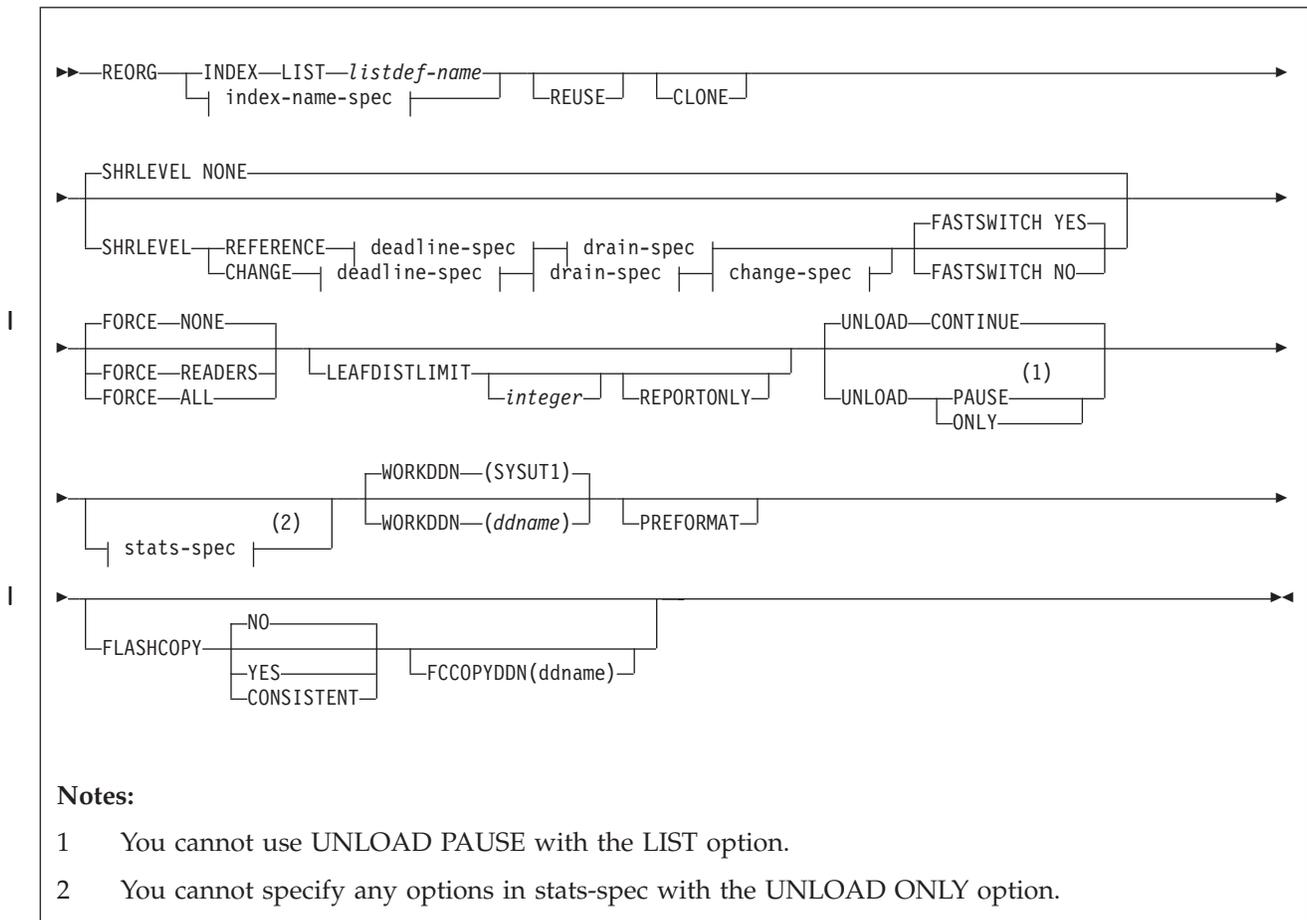
Performs cleanup. For DB2-managed data sets and either SHRLEVEL CHANGE or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, the utility deletes the original copy of the table space or index space.

Syntax and options of the REORG INDEX control statement

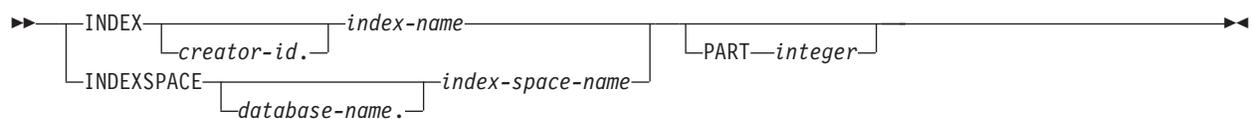
The REORG INDEX utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

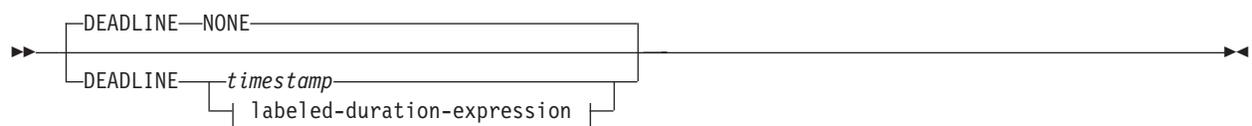
Syntax diagram



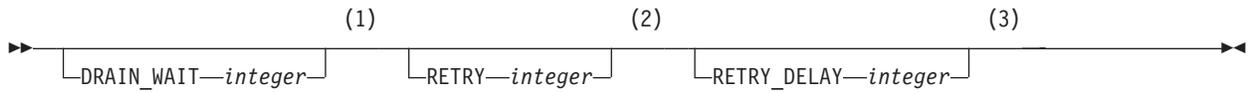
index-name-spec



deadline-spec



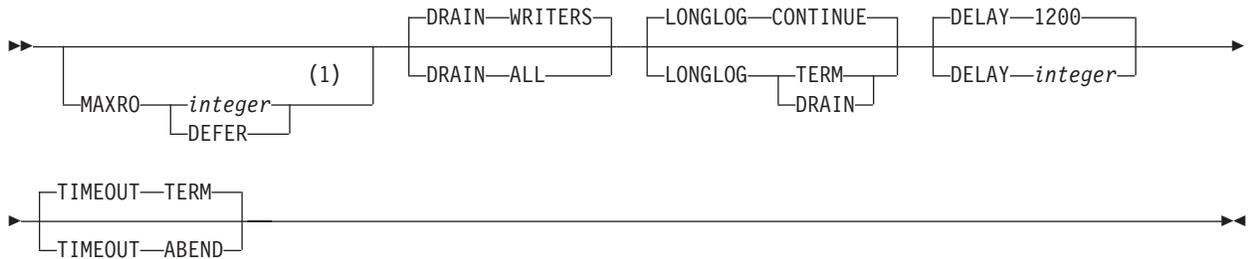
drain-spec



Notes:

- 1 The default for `DRAIN_WAIT` is the value of the `IRLMRWT` subsystem parameter.
- 2 The default for `RETRY` is the value of the `UTIMOUT` subsystem parameter.
- 3 The default for `RETRY_DELAY` is the smaller of the following two values: `DRAIN_WAIT` value × `RETRY` value, `DRAIN_WAIT` value × 10

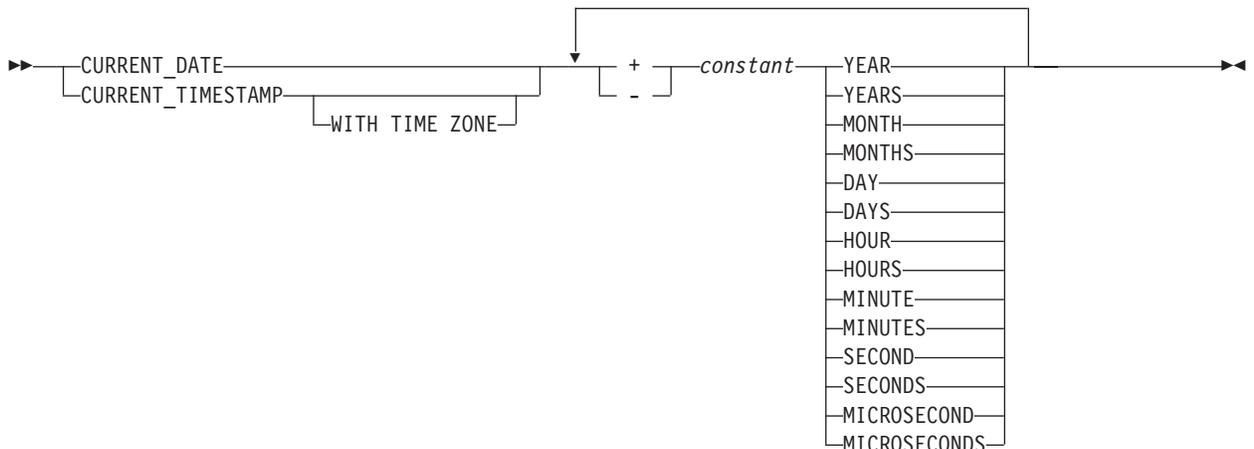
change-spec

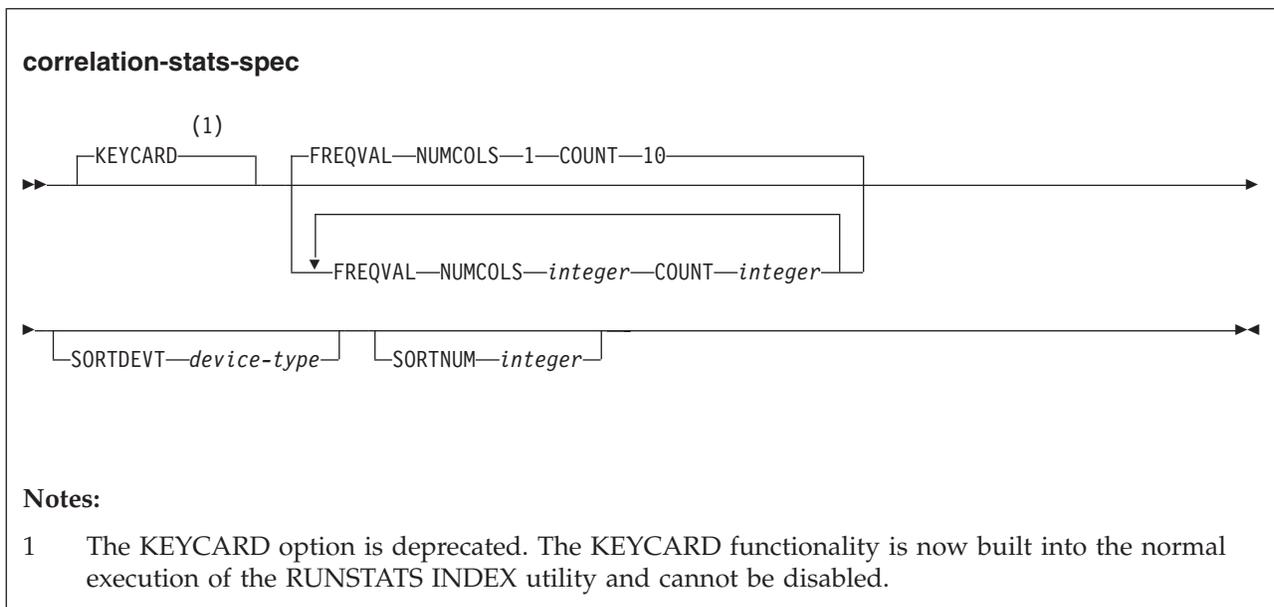
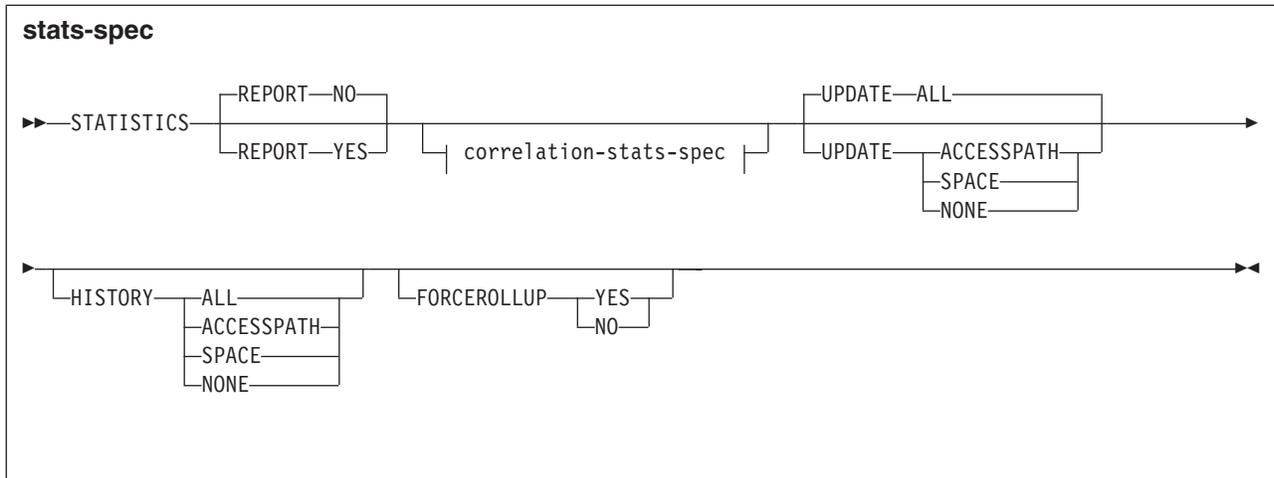


Notes:

- 1 The default for `MAXRO` is the `RETRY_DELAY` default value.

labeled-duration-expression





Option descriptions

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Specifies an index that is to be reorganized.

creator-id. specifies the creator of the index and is optional. If you omit the qualifier creator ID, DB2 uses the user identifier for the utility job. *index-name* is the qualified name of the index to copy. For an index, you can specify either an index name or an index space name. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the qualified name of the index space that is obtained from the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES table.

database-name specifies the name of the database that is associated with the index and is optional.

The default value is **DSNDB04**.

index-space-name specifies the qualified name of the index space that is to be reorganized; the name is obtained from the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES table.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The INDEX keyword is required to differentiate this REORG INDEX LIST from REORG TABLESPACE LIST. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each control statement of REORG INDEX. The list must not contain any table spaces. REORG INDEX is invoked once for each item in the list. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

Do not specify STATISTICS INDEX *index-name* with REORG INDEX LIST. If you want to collect inline statistics for a list of indexes, just specify STATISTICS.

You cannot specify DSNUM and PART with LIST on any utility.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

PART *integer*

Identifies a partition that is to be reorganized. You can reorganize a single partition of a partitioning index. You cannot specify PART with LIST. *integer* must be in the range from 1 to the number of partitions that are defined for the partitioning index. The maximum value is 4096.

integer designates a single partition.

If you omit the PART keyword, the entire index is reorganized.

REUSE

When used with SHRLEVEL NONE, specifies that REORG is to logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them. If you do not specify REUSE and SHRLEVEL NONE, DB2 deletes and redefines DB2-managed data sets to reset them.

If a data set has multiple extents and you use the REUSE parameter, the extents are not released.

If you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE with REUSE, REUSE does not apply

CLONE

Indicates that REORG INDEX is to reorganize only the specified index spaces and indexes that are defined on clone tables. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

SHRLEVEL

Specifies the method for performing the reorganization. The parameter following SHRLEVEL indicates the type of access that is to be allowed during the RELOAD phase of REORG.

NONE

Specifies that reorganization is to operate by unloading from the area that is being reorganized (while applications can read but cannot write to the area), building into that area (while applications have no access), and then allowing read-write access again.

If you specify NONE (explicitly or by default), you cannot specify the following parameters:

- MAXRO

- LONGLOG
- DELAY
- DEADLINE
- DRAIN_WAIT
- RETRY
- RETRY_DELAY

REFERENCE

Specifies that reorganization is to operate as follows:

- Unload from the area that is being reorganized while applications can read but cannot write to the area.
- Build into a shadow copy of that area while applications can read but cannot write to the original copy.
- Switch the future access of the applications from the original copy to the shadow copy by exchanging the names of the data sets, and then allowing read-write access again.

If you specify REFERENCE, you cannot specify the following parameters:

- UNLOAD (Reorganization with REFERENCE always performs UNLOAD CONTINUE.)
- MAXRO
- LONGLOG
- DELAY

CHANGE

Specifies that reorganization is to operate as follows:

- Unload from the area that is being reorganized while applications can read and write to the area.
- Build into a shadow copy of that area while applications can read and write to the original copy.
- Apply the log of the original copy to the shadow copy while applications can read and usually write to the original copy.
- Switch the future access of the applications from the original copy to the shadow copy by exchanging the names of the data sets, and then allowing read-write access again.

If you specify CHANGE, you cannot specify the UNLOAD parameter. Reorganization with CHANGE always performs UNLOAD CONTINUE.

SHRLEVEL CHANGE cannot be specified if the table space has the NOT LOGGED attribute.

DEADLINE

Specifies the deadline for the SWITCH phase to begin. If DB2 estimates that the SWITCH phase does not begin by the deadline, DB2 issues the messages that the DISPLAY UTILITY command issues and then terminates reorganization.

The final result and all the timestamp calculation of DEADLINE will be in TIMESTAMP(6).

NONE

Specifies that no deadline exists by which the switch phase of log processing must begin.

timestamp

Specifies the deadline for the switch phase of log processing to begin. This deadline must not have already occurred when REORG is executed.

labeled-duration-expression

Calculates the deadline for the switch phase of log processing to begin. The calculation is based on either CURRENT TIMESTAMP or CURRENT DATE. You can add or subtract one or more *constant* values to specify the deadline. This deadline must not have already occurred when REORG is executed. CURRENT TIMESTAMP and CURRENT DATE are evaluated once, when the REORG statement is first processed. If a list of objects is specified, the same value will be in effect for all objects in the list.

CURRENT_DATE

Specifies that the deadline is to be calculated based on the CURRENT DATE.

CURRENT_TIMESTAMP

Specifies that the deadline is to be calculated based on the CURRENT TIMESTAMP.

WITH TIME ZONE

Specifies that the CURRENT TIMESTAMP is compared with the time zone column. The timestamp precision of the special register CURRENT_TIMESTAMP should be the same as the column timestamp precision. Otherwise the default timestamp precision is used. The time zone of CURRENT_TIMESTAMP is the value of special register CURRENT TIMEZONE. The comparison is done by comparing the UTC portion of the timestamp.

constant

Indicates a unit of time and is followed by one of the seven duration keywords: YEARS, MONTHS, DAYS, HOURS, MINUTES, SECONDS, or MICROSECONDS. The singular form of these words is also acceptable: YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND, MICROSECOND.

If REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE terminates because of a DEADLINE specification, DB2 issues message DSNU374I with reason code 2 but does not set a restrictive status.

DRAIN_WAIT *integer*

Specifies the number of seconds that the utility waits when draining for SQL statements (inserts, updates, deletes, and selects). The specified time is the aggregate time for all partitions of the index that is to be reorganized. This value overrides the values specified by IRLMRWT and UTIMOUT, for these SQL statements only. For operations like commands, the IRLMRWT and UTIMOUT values are used. Valid values for *integer* are from 0 to 1800. If the keyword is omitted or if a value of 0 is specified, the utility uses the value of the lock timeout system parameter IRLMRWT.

RETRY *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of retries that REORG is to attempt. Valid values for *integer* are from 0 to 255.

Specifying RETRY can lead to increased processing costs and can result in multiple or extended periods of read-only access.

The default value is the value of the UTIMOUT subsystem parameter.

RETRY_DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum duration, in seconds, between retries. Valid values for *integer* are from 1 to 1800.

If you do not specify **RETRY_DELAY**, REORG INDEX uses the smaller of the following two values:

- DRAIN_WAIT value × RETRY value
- DRAIN_WAIT value × 10

MAXRO *integer*

Specifies the maximum amount of time for the last iteration of log processing. During that iteration, applications have read-only access.

The actual execution time of the last iteration might exceed the specified MAXRO value.

The ALTER UTILITY command can change the value of MAXRO.

The default value is the **RETRY_DELAY** default value.

integer

integer is the number of seconds. Specifying a small positive value reduces the length of the period of read-only access, but it might increase the elapsed time for REORG to complete. If you specify a huge positive value, the second iteration of log processing is probably the last iteration.

The default value is 300 seconds.

DEFER

Specifies that the iterations of log processing with read-write access can continue indefinitely. REORG never begins the final iteration with read-only access, unless you change the MAXRO value by using the ALTER UTILITY command.

If you specify DEFER, you should also specify LONGLOG CONTINUE.

If you specify DEFER, and DB2 determines that the actual time for an iteration and the estimated time for the next iteration are both less than 5 seconds, DB2 adds a 5-second pause to the next iteration. This pause reduces consumption of processor time. The first time this situation occurs for a given execution of REORG, DB2 sends message DSNU362I to the console. The message states that the number of log records that must be processed is small and that the pause occurs. To change the MAXRO value and thus cause REORG to finish, execute the ALTER UTILITY command. DB2 adds the pause whenever the situation occurs; however, DB2 sends the message only if 30 minutes have elapsed since the last message was sent for a given execution of REORG.

DRAIN

Specifies drain behavior at the end of the log phase after the MAXRO threshold is reached and when the last iteration of the log is to be applied.

WRITERS

Specifies the current default action, in which DB2 drains only the writers during the log phase after the MAXRO threshold is reached and subsequently issues DRAIN ALL on entering the switch phase.

ALL

Specifies that DB2 is to drain all readers and writers during the log phase, after the MAXRO threshold is reached.

Consider specifying DRAIN ALL if the following conditions are both true:

- SQL update activity is high during the log phase.
- The default behavior results in a large number of -911 SQL error messages.

LONGLOG

Specifies the action that DB2 is to perform, after sending a message to the console, if the number of records that the next iteration of log process is to process is not sufficiently lower than the number that the previous iterations processed. This situation means that REORG INDEX is not reading the application log quickly enough to keep pace with the writing of the application log.

CONTINUE

Specifies that until the time on the JOB statement expires, DB2 is to continue performing reorganization, including iterations of log processing, if the estimated time to perform an iteration exceeds the time that is specified with MAXRO.

A value of DEFER for MAXRO and a value of CONTINUE for LONGLOG together mean that REORG INDEX is to continue allowing access to the original copy of the area that is being reorganized and does not switch to the shadow copy. The user can execute the ALTER UTILITY command with a large value for MAXRO when the switching is desired.

TERM

Specifies that DB2 is to terminate reorganization after the delay specified by the DELAY parameter.

DRAIN

Specifies that DB2 is to drain the write claim class after the delay that is specified by the DELAY parameter. This action forces the final iteration of log processing to occur.

DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum interval between the time that REORG sends the LONGLOG message to the console and the time REORG that performs the action that is specified by the LONGLOG parameter.

integer is the number of seconds.

The default value is 1200.

TIMEOUT

Specifies the action that is to be taken if the REORG INDEX utility gets a time-out condition while trying to drain objects in either the log or switch phases.

TERM

Indicates that DB2 is to behave as follows if you specify the TERM option and a time out condition occurs:

1. DB2 issues an implicit TERM UTILITY command, causing the utility to end with a return code 8.
2. DB2 issues the DSNU590I and DSNU170I messages.
3. DB2 leaves the objects in a RW state.

ABEND

Indicates that if a time-out condition occurs, DB2 is to leave the objects in a UTRO or UTUT state.

FORCE

Specifies the action to be taken when the utility is draining the table space.

When REORG FORCE is canceling the threads, it performs a soft cancel similar to the cancel that the CANCEL THREAD does.

NONE

Specifies that no action is taken when REORG performs drain. The REORG utility waits for the claimers to commit. The utility will timeout or restart when the drain fails, as determined by existing conditions.

READERS

Specifies that read claimers are canceled when REORG is requesting a drain all on the last REPLY processing.

ALL

specifies that both read and write claimers are canceled when REORG is requesting a drain all or drain writers on the last REPLY processing.

FASTSWITCH

Specifies which switch methodology is to be used for a given reorganization.

YES

Enables the SWITCH phase to use the FASTSWITCH methodology. This option is not allowed for the catalog (DSNDB06) or directory (DSNDB01).

NO

Causes the SWITCH phase to use IDCAMS RENAME.

LEAFDISTLIMIT *integer*

Specifies that the value for *integer* is to be compared to the LEAFDIST value for the specified partitions of the specified index in SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART. If any LEAFDIST value exceeds the specified LEAFDISTLIMIT value, REORG is performed or, if you specify REPORTONLY, recommended.

The default value is **200**.

Because a node ID index, auxiliary index, hash index, or XML index has a LEAFDIST value of -2, REORG is not performed for any of those indexes when LEAFDISTLIMIT is specified.

REPORTONLY

Specifies that REORG is only to be recommended, not performed. REORG produces a report with one of the following return codes:

- 1 No limit met; no REORG performed or recommended.
- 2 REORG performed or recommended.

UNLOAD

Specifies whether the utility job is to continue processing or terminate after the data is unloaded.

CONTINUE

Specifies that, after the data has been unloaded, the utility is to continue processing.

PAUSE

Specifies that, after the data has been unloaded, processing is to end. The utility stops and the RELOAD status is stored in SYSIBM.SYSUTIL so that processing can be restarted with RELOAD RESTART(PHASE).

This option is useful if you want to redefine data sets during reorganization. For example, with a user-defined data set, you can:

- Run REORG with the UNLOAD PAUSE option.
- Redefine the data set using Access Method Services.
- Restart REORG by resubmitting the previous job and specifying RESTART(PHASE).

If no records are unloaded during an UNLOAD PAUSE, when REORG is restarted, the RELOAD and BUILD phases are bypassed.

You cannot use UNLOAD PAUSE if you specify the LIST option.

ONLY

Specifies that, after the data has been unloaded, the utility job ends and the status in SYSIBM.SYSUTIL that corresponds to this utility ID is removed.

STATISTICS

Specifies that statistics for the index are to be collected; the statistics are either reported or stored in the DB2 catalog. You cannot collect inline statistics for indexes on the catalog and directory tables.

Restrictions:

- If you specify STATISTICS for encrypted data, DB2 might not provide useful information on this data.
- You cannot specify STATISTICS for clone objects.

If pending definition changes are materialized during REORG INDEX with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, index statistics are collected and updated in the DB2 catalog by default.

If the STATISTICS keyword was not specified in the REORG INDEX with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE statement when pending definition changes are materialized, the following keywords are run by default: STATISTICS UPDATE ALL HISTORY ALL. If you also specify the STATISTICS keyword in the REORG INDEX with the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE statement when pending definition changes are materialized, the options specified overwrite the default options.

Recommendation: Some partition statistics can become obsolete due to the materialization of pending definition changes. The partition statistics that can become obsolete are COLGROUP statistics, statistics for key column values in indexes, HISTOGRAM statistics, frequency statistics with NUMCOLS > 1, and statistics for extended indexes where applicable. Run the RUNSTATS utility to collect the partition statistics again.

REPORT

Indicates whether a set of messages is to be generated to report the collected statistics.

NO

Indicates that the set of messages is not to be sent as output to SYSPRINT.

YES

Indicates that the set of messages is to be sent as output to SYSPRINT. The generated messages are dependent on the combination of keywords (such as TABLESPACE, INDEX, TABLE, and COLUMN) that are specified with the RUNSTATS utility. However, these messages are **not** dependent on the specification of the UPDATE option. REPORT YES always generates a report of SPACE and ACCESSPATH statistics.

KEYCARD

The KEYCARD option is deprecated in the REORG INDEX control statement and no longer needs to be specified to collect cardinality statistics on the values in the key columns of an index.

When the STATISTICS option is specified, the REORG INDEX utility now always collects all of the distinct values in all of the 1 to *n* key column

combinations for the indexes being rebuilt. *n* is the number of columns in the index. With the deprecation of KEYCARD, this functionality cannot be disabled.

The REORG INDEX utility tolerates the specification of the KEYCARD option. The utility does not issue any messages if the control statement includes or excludes the KEYCARD option when STATISTICS is specified.

FREQVAL

Specifies that frequent value statistics are to be collected. If you specify FREQVAL, you must also specify NUMCOLS and COUNT.

NUMCOLS

Indicates the number of key columns to concatenate together when you collect frequent values from the specified index. Specifying 3 means that DB2 is to collect frequent values on the concatenation of the first three key columns.

The default value is 1, which means DB2 is to collect frequent values on the first key column of the index.

COUNT

Indicates the number of frequent values that are to be collected. Specifying 15 means that DB2 is to collect 15 frequent values from the specified key columns.

The default value is 10.

SORTDEVT *device-type*

Specifies the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the external sort program. For *device-type*, specify any disk device that is valid on the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTION options for the sort program.

SORTNUM *integer*

Specifies the number of temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated when collecting statistics for a data-partitioned secondary index. If you omit SORTDEVT, SORTNUM is ignored. If you use SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program; the sort program uses its own default.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

REORG INDEX does not sort index keys. Only one sort can be performed, and that is if inline statistics are being collected for a DPSI.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

UPDATE

Indicates whether the collected statistics are to be inserted into the catalog tables. UPDATE also allows you to select statistics that are used for access path selection or statistics that are used by database administrators.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that only the catalog table columns that provide statistics that are used for access path selection are to be updated.

SPACE

Indicates that only the catalog table columns that provide statistics to help the database administrator to assess the status of a particular table space or index are to be updated.

NONE

Indicates that catalog tables are not to be updated with the collected statistics. This option is valid only when REPORT YES is specified.

HISTORY

Indicates that all catalog table inserts or updates to the catalog history tables are to be recorded.

The default is supplied by the specified value in STATISTICS HISTORY on panel DSNTIPO.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog history tables.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that only the catalog history table columns that provide statistics used for access path selection are to be updated.

SPACE

Indicates that only space-related catalog statistics are to be updated in catalog history tables.

NONE

Indicates that catalog history tables are not to be updated with the collected statistics.

FORCEROLLUP

Specifies whether aggregation or rollup of statistics are to take place when RUNSTATS is executed even when some parts are empty. This option enables the optimizer to select the best access path.

YES

Indicates that forced aggregation or rollup processing is to be done, even though some parts might not contain data.

NO

Indicates that aggregation or rollup is to be done only if data is available for all parts.

If data is not available for all parts and if the installation value for STATISTICS ROLLUP on panel DSNTIPO is set to NO, DSNU623I message is issued.

WORKDDN(*ddname*)

ddname specifies the DD statement for the unload data set.

ddname

Is the DD name of the temporary work file for build input.

The default value is SYSUT1.

The WORKDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses DD name.

Even though WORKDDN is an optional keyword, a DD statement for the unload output data set is required in the JCL. If you do not specify

WORKDDN, or if you specify it without *ddname*, the JCL must have a DD statement with the name SYSUT1. If *ddname* is given, you must provide a DD statement or TEMPLATE that matches the DD name.

PREFORMAT

Specifies that the remaining pages are to be preformatted up to the high-allocated RBA in the index space. The preformatting occurs after the index is built.

PREFORMAT can operate on an entire index space, or on a partition of a partitioned index space.

PREFORMAT is ignored if you specify UNLOAD ONLY.

FLASHCOPY

Specifies whether FlashCopy technology is used to create a copy of the object. Valid values are YES, NO, or CONSISTENT. When FlashCopy is used, a separate data set is created for each partition or piece of the object.

The FlashCopy specifications on the utility control statement override any specifications for FlashCopy that are defined by using the DB2 subsystem parameters. If the FlashCopy subsystem parameters specify the use of FlashCopy as the default behavior of this utility, the FLASHCOPY option can be omitted from the utility control statement.

Important: If the input data set is less than one cylinder, FlashCopy technology might not be used for copying the objects regardless of the FLASHCOPY settings. The copy is performed by IDCAMS if FlashCopy is not used.

NO

Specifies that no FlashCopy is made. NO is the default value for FLASHCOPY.

YES

Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object.

Specify YES only if the DB2 data sets are on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes.

Important: Under the following circumstances, the REORG INDEX utility might not use FlashCopy even though YES is specified:

- FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available
- The source tracks are already the target of a FlashCopy operation
- The target tracks are the source of a FlashCopy operation
- The maximum number of relationships for the copy is exceeded

In the event that FlashCopy is not used, the REORG INDEX utility uses traditional I/O methods to copy the object, which can result in longer than expected execution time.

If SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified when the copy operation is forced to use traditional I/O methods, an even longer outage might occur, because the FlashCopy image copies are created during the SWITCH phase of utility execution.

CONSISTENT

Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object. Because the

copies created by the REORG INDEX utility are already consistent, the utility treats a specification of CONSISTENT the same as a specification of YES.

FCCOPYDDN

Specifies the template to be used to create the FlashCopy image copy data set names. If a value is not specified for FCCOPYDDN on the REORG INDEX control statement when FlashCopy is used, the value specified on the FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter determines the template to be used.

(template-name)

The data set names for the FlashCopy image copy are allocated according to the template specification. For table space or index space level FlashCopy image copies, because a data set is allocated for each partition or piece, ensure that the data set naming convention in the template specification is unique enough. Use the &DSNUM variable, which resolves to a partition number or piece number at execution time.

Related concepts

“Improving performance with LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT” on page 296

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

Chapter 15, “LISTDEF,” on page 199

Chapter 31, “TEMPLATE,” on page 699

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

Before running REORG INDEX

Certain activities might be required before you run the REORG INDEX utility, depending on your situation.

Region size

The recommended minimum region size is 4096 KB.

Restart-pending status and SHRLEVEL CHANGE

If you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, REORG drains the write claim class near the end of REORG processing. In a data sharing environment, if a data sharing member fails and that member has restart-pending status for a target page set, the drain can fail. You must postpone running REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE until all restart-pending statuses have been removed. You can use the DISPLAY GROUP command to determine whether a member's status is FAILED. You can use the DISPLAY DATABASE command with the LOCKS option to determine if locks are held.

Data sharing considerations for REORG

You must not execute REORG on an object if another DB2 subsystem holds retained locks on the object or has long-running noncommitting applications that use the object. You can use the DISPLAY GROUP command to determine whether a member's status is "FAILED." You can use the DISPLAY DATABASE command with the LOCKS option to determine if locks are held.

Fallback recovery considerations

Successful REORG INDEX processing inserts a SYSCOPY row with ICTYPE='W' for an index that was defined with COPY YES. REORG also places a reorganized index in informational COPY-pending status. You should take a full image copy of the index after the REORG job completes to create a valid point of recovery.

RECOVER-pending and REBUILD-pending status

You cannot reorganize an index if any partition of the index is in the RECOVER-pending status or in the REBUILD-pending status. Similarly, you cannot reorganize a single index partition if it is in the RECOVER-pending status or in the REBUILD-pending status.

The RECOVER-pending restrictive state is:

RECP The index space or partition is in a RECOVER-pending status. A single logical partition in RECP does not restrict access to other logical partitions that are not in RECP. You can reset RECP by recovering only the single logical partition.

The REBUILD-pending restrictive states are:

RBDP REBUILD-pending status is set on a physical or logical index partition. The individual physical or logical partition is inaccessible; you must rebuild the object using the REBUILD INDEX utility.

PSRBD

Page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) is set for nonpartitioning indexes. The entire index space is inaccessible; you must rebuild the object by using the REBUILD INDEX utility.

RBDP*

A REBUILD-pending status is set only on logical partitions of nonpartitioning indexes. The entire index is inaccessible, but it is made available again when you rebuild the affected partitions by using the REBUILD INDEX utility.

CHECK-pending status

You cannot reorganize an index when the data is in the CHECK-pending status.

Running REORG INDEX when the index has a VARBINARY column

If you run REORG INDEX against an index with the following characteristics, REORG INDEX fails:

- The index was created on a VARBINARY column or a column with a distinct type that is based on a VARBINARY data type.
- The index column has the DESC attribute.

To fix the problem, alter the column data type to BINARY, and then rebuild the index.

Related reference

“REBUILD-pending status” on page 1006

“RECOVER-pending status” on page 1007

Chapter 8, “CHECK DATA,” on page 61

Data sets that REORG INDEX uses

The REORG INDEX utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that REORG uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 69. Data sets that REORG INDEX uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contain the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
STPRIN01	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY). This data set is used when statistics are collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.	No ¹
Work data set	A temporary data set for unload output and build input. Specify the DD or template name with the WORKDDN option of the utility control statement. The default DD name is SYSUT1.	Yes
Sort work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index. The DD names have the form ST01WK mm .	No ^{2,3,4}
UTPRINT	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY).	Yes
FlashCopy image copy data sets	For copies of the entire index space, a separate VSAM data set for each partition or piece that is contained in the index space. For partition-level or piece-level copies, a VSAM data set for each partition or piece that is being copied.	No ⁵

Note:

1. STPRIN01 is required if statistics are being collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index, but REORG INDEX dynamically allocates the STPRIN01 data set if UTPRINT is allocated to SYSOUT.
2. Required when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.
3. If the DYNALLOC parm of the SORT program is not turned on, you need to allocate the data set. Otherwise, the sort program dynamically allocates the temporary data set.
4. It is recommended that you use dynamic allocation by specifying SORTDEVT in the utility statement because dynamic allocation reduces the maintenance required of the utility job JCL.
5. Required if you specify the FLASHCOPY YES

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Index Object to be reorganized.

Calculating the size of the work data sets

When reorganizing an index space, you need a non-DB2 sequential work data set. That data set is identified by the DD statement that is named in the WORKDDN option. During the UNLOAD phase, the index keys and the data pointers are unloaded to the work data set. This data set is used to build the index. It is required only during the execution of REORG.

Use the following formula to calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the WORKDDN data set SYSUT1:

size = number of keys x (key length + 8)

Calculating the size of the sort work data sets

To calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the ST01WK nn data set, use the following formula:

$2 \times (\text{maximum record length} \times \text{numcols} \times (\text{count} + 2) \times \text{number of indexes})$

The variables in the preceding formula have the following values:

maximum record length

Maximum record length of the SYSCOLDISTSTATS record that is processed when collecting frequency statistics (You can obtain this value from the RECLENGTH column in SYSTABLES.)

numcols

Number of key columns to concatenate when you collect frequent values from the specified index.

count Number of frequent values that DB2 is to collect.

Sort work data sets cannot span volumes. Smaller volumes require more sort work data sets to sort the same amount of data; therefore, large volume sizes can reduce the number of needed sort work data sets. When you allocate sort work data sets on disk, the recommended amount of space to allow provides at least 1.2 times the amount of data that is to be sorted.

Changing data set definitions

If the index space is defined by storage groups, space allocation is handled by DB2 and data set definitions cannot be altered during the reorganization process. DB2 deletes and redefines the necessary data sets to reorganize the object.

For REORG with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, you can use the ALTER STOGROUP command to change the characteristics of a DB2-managed data set. You can effectively change the characteristics of a user-managed data set by specifying the desired new characteristics when creating the shadow data set. In particular, placing the original and shadow data sets on different disk volumes might reduce contention and thus improve the performance of REORG and the performance of applications during REORG execution.

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

Shadow data sets

When you execute the REORG INDEX utility with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the utility uses shadow data sets.

For user-managed data sets, you must preallocate the shadow data sets before you execute REORG INDEX with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE. If an index or partitioned index resides in DB2-managed data sets and shadow data sets do not already exist when you execute REORG INDEX, DB2 creates the shadow data sets. At the end of REORG processing, the DB2-managed shadow data sets are deleted. You can create the shadows ahead of time for DB2-managed data sets.

Shadow data set names

Each shadow data set must have the following name:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.psname.y000z.Lnnn

In the preceding name, the variables have the following meanings:

variable

meaning

catname

The VSAM catalog name or alias

x

C or D

dbname

Database name

psname

Table space name or index name

y

I or J

z

1 or 2

Lnnn

Partition identifier. Use one of the following values:

- A001 through A999 for partitions 1 through 999
- B000 through B999 for partitions 1000 through 1999
- C000 through C999 for partitions 2000 through 2999
- D000 through D999 for partitions 3000 through 3999
- E000 through E996 for partitions 4000 through 4096



To determine the names of existing data sets, execute one of the following queries against the SYSTABLEPART or SYSINDEXPART catalog tables:

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, IPREFIX
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
WHERE DBNAME = 'dbname'
AND TSNAME = 'psname';
```

```

SELECT DBNAME, IXNAME, IPREFIX
FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES X, SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART Y
WHERE X.NAME = Y.IXNAME
AND X.CREATOR = Y.IXCREATOR
AND X.DBNAME = 'dbname'
AND X.INDEXSPACE = 'psname';

```

GUPI

Defining shadow data sets

Consider the following actions when you preallocate the data sets:

- Allocate the shadow data sets according to the rules for user-managed data sets.
- Define the shadow data sets as LINEAR.
- Use SHAREOPTIONS(3,3).
- Define the shadow data sets as EA-enabled if the original table space or index space is EA-enabled.
- Allocate the shadow data sets on the volumes that are defined in the storage group for the original table space or index space.

If you specify a secondary space quantity, DB2 does not use it. Instead, DB2 uses the SECQTY value for the table space or index space.

Recommendation: Use the MODEL option, which causes the new shadow data set to be created like the original data set. This method is shown in the following example:

```

DEFINE CLUSTER +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.pname.x0001.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.pname.y0001.L001')) +
  DATA +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.pname.x0001.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.pname.y0001.L001'))

```

Creating shadow data sets for indexes

DB2 treats preallocated shadow data sets as DB2-managed data sets.

When you preallocate shadow data sets for indexes, create the data sets as follows:

- Create shadow data sets for the partition of the table space and the corresponding partition in each partitioning index and data-partitioned secondary index.
- Create a shadow data set for logical partitions of nonpartitioned secondary indexes.

Use the same naming scheme for these index data sets as you use for other data sets that are associated with the base index, except use J0001 instead of I0001.

Estimating the size of shadow data sets

If you do not change the value of FREEPAGE or PCTFREE, the amount of space that is required for a shadow data set is approximately comparable to the amount of space that is required for the original data set.

Concurrency and compatibility for REORG INDEX

The REORG INDEX utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same index space are compatible.

Claims

The following table shows which claim classes REORG INDEX drains and any restrictive state the utility sets on the target object. The target is an index or index partition.

Table 70. Claim classes of REORG INDEX operations

Phase	REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL NONE	REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE
UNLOAD	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO	CR/UTRW
BUILD	DA/UTUT	none	none
Last iteration of LOG	n/a	DA/UTUT ¹	DW/UTRO
SWITCH	n/a	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT

Legend:

- CR: Claim the read claim class.
- DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access.
- DR: Drain the repeatable read class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers.
- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers.
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read only access allowed.
- UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control.
- none: Any claim, drain, or restrictive state for this object does not change in this phase.

Note:

1. Applicable if you specified DRAIN ALL.

Compatibility

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with REORG INDEX on the same target object. The target object can be an index space or a partition. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that is also shown. REORG INDEX does not set a utility restrictive state if the target object is an index on DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

Table 71. Compatibility of REORG INDEX with other utilities

Action	REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL NONE, REFERENCE, or CHANGE
CHECK DATA	No
CHECK INDEX	No
CHECK LOB	Yes
COPY INDEXSPACE	No
COPY TABLESPACE	Yes
DIAGNOSE	Yes
LOAD	No

Table 71. Compatibility of REORG INDEX with other utilities (continued)

Action	REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL NONE, REFERENCE, or CHANGE
MERGECOPY	Yes
MODIFY	Yes
QUIESCE	No
REBUILD INDEX	No
RECOVER INDEX	No
RECOVER INDEXSPACE	No
RECOVER TABLESPACE (with no options)	Yes
RECOVER TABLESPACE ERROR RANGE	Yes
RECOVER TABLESPACE TOCOPY or TORBA	No
REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL NONE, REFERENCE, or CHANGE	No
REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE, REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, or REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No
REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL with cluster index	No
REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL without cluster index	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE REPLACE	No
REPAIR LOCATE KEY	No
REPAIR LOCATE RID DELETE	No
REPAIR LOCATE RID DUMP, VERIFY, or REPLACE	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE REPLACE	Yes
REPORT	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX	No
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes

To run on SYSIBM.DSNLUX01 or SYSIBM.DSNLUX02, REORG INDEX must be the only utility in the job step and the only utility that is running in the DB2 subsystem.

Determining when an index requires reorganization

You might need to do some analysis to determine if an index requires reorganization.

To determine when an index requires reorganization:

1. Issue the following SQL statement to identify user-created indexes and DB2 catalog indexes that you should consider reorganizing with the REORG INDEX utility: 

```
EXEC SQL
SELECT IXNAME, IXCREATOR
FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART
WHERE LEAFDIST > 200
ENDEXEC
```

◀ PSPI

- Issue the following SQL statement to determine the average distance (multiplied by 100) between successive leaf pages during sequential access of the ZZZ index. ▶ PSPI

```
EXEC SQL
SELECT LEAFDIST
FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART
WHERE IXCREATOR = 'index_creator_name'
AND IXNAME = 'index_name'
ENDEXEC
```

◀ PSPI

Be aware that using a LEAFDIST value of more than 200 as an indicator of a disorganized index is merely a rough guideline for general cases. This guidance is not absolute. In some cases, 200 is an acceptable value for LEAFDIST. For example, with FREEPAGE 0 and index page splitting, the LEAFDIST value can climb sharply. In this case, a LEAFDIST value that exceeds 200 can be acceptable.

An increase in the LEAFDIST value over time probably indicates that the index needs to be reorganized. The optimal value of the LEAFDIST catalog column is zero. However, immediately after you run the REORG and RUNSTATS utilities, LEAFDIST might be greater than zero as a result of empty pages for FREEPAGE and non-leaf pages.

Using the LEAFDISTLIMIT and REPORTONLY options to determine when reorganization is needed

You can determine when to run REORG for indexes by using the LEAFDISTLIMIT and REPORTONLY options.

To determine when reorganization is needed:

- Run the REORG INDEX utility and specify the LEAFDISTLIMIT option and the REPORTONLY option. REORG produces a report with one of the following return codes; but a REORG is not performed.
 - No limit met; no REORG performed or recommended.
 - REORG performed or recommended.
- Optional: Alternatively, information from the SYSINDEXPART catalog table can tell you which indexes qualify for reorganization.

Access with REORG INDEX SHRLEVEL

You can specify the level of access that you have to your data by using the SHRLEVEL option.

For reorganizing an index or a partition of an index, the SHRLEVEL option lets you choose the level of access that you have to your data during reorganization:

- REORG with SHRLEVEL NONE, the default, reloads the reorganized data into the original area that is being reorganized. Applications have read-only access

during unloading and no access during reloading. SHRLEVEL NONE is the only access level that resets REORG-pending status.

- REORG with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE reloads the reorganized data into a new (shadow) copy of the area that is being reorganized. Near the end of reorganization, DB2 switches applications' future access from the original to the shadow copy. For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, applications have read-only access during unloading and reloading, and a brief period of no access during switching.
- REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE reloads the reorganized data into a shadow copy of the area that is being reorganized. Applications can read from and write to the original area, and DB2 records the writing in the log. DB2 then reads the log and applies it to the shadow copy to bring the shadow copy up to date. This step executes iteratively, with each iteration processing a sequence of log records. Near the end of reorganization, DB2 switches applications' future access from the original to the shadow copy. Applications have read-write access during unloading and reloading, a brief period of read-only access during the last iteration of log processing, and a brief period of no access during switching.

Log processing with SHRLEVEL CHANGE

When you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, DB2 processes the log to update the shadow copy. This step executes iteratively. The first iteration processes the log records that accumulated during the previous iteration. The iterations continue until one of these conditions is met:

- DB2 estimates that the time to perform the log processing in the next iteration will be less than or equal to the time that is specified by MAXRO. If this condition is met, the next iteration is the last.
- DB2 estimates that the switch phase will not start by the deadline specified by DEADLINE. If this condition is met, DB2 terminates reorganization.
- The number of log records that the next iteration will process is not sufficiently lower than the number of log records that were processed in the previous iteration. If this condition is met but the first two conditions are not, DB2 sends message DSNU377I to the console. DB2 continues log processing for the length of time that is specified by DELAY and then performs the action specified by LONGLOG.

Operator actions

LONGLOG specifies the action that DB2 is to perform if log processing is not occurring quickly enough. If the operator does not respond to the console message DSNU377I, the LONGLOG option automatically goes into effect. You can take one of the following actions:

- Execute the START DATABASE(db) SPACENAM(ts)... ACCESS(RO) command and the QUIESCE utility to drain the write claim class. DB2 performs the last iteration, if MAXRO is not DEFER. After the QUIESCE, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.
- Execute the START DATABASE(db) SPACENAM(ts)... ACCESS(RO) command and the QUIESCE utility to drain the write claim class. Then, after reorganization has made some progress, execute the START DATABASE(db) SPACENAM(ts)... ACCESS(RW) command. This action increases the likelihood that log processing can improve. After the QUIESCE, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.

- Execute the ALTER UTILITY command to change the value of MAXRO. Changing it to a huge positive value, such as 9999999, causes the next iteration to be the last iteration.
- Execute the ALTER UTILITY command to change the value of LONGLOG.
- Execute the TERM UTILITY command to terminate reorganization.
- Adjust the amount of buffer space that is allocated to reorganization and to applications. This adjustment can increase the likelihood that log processing improve after adjusting the space, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.
- Adjust the scheduling priorities of reorganization and applications. This adjustment can increase the likelihood that log processing improve. After adjusting the priorities, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.

DB2 does not take the action specified in the LONGLOG phrase if any one of these events occurs before the delay expires:

- An ALTER UTILITY command is issued.
- A TERM UTILITY command is issued.
- DB2 estimates that the time to perform the next iteration is likely to be less than or equal to the time specified on the MAXRO keyword.
- REORG terminates for any reason (including the deadline).

When REORG INDEX is used with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, pending definition changes are materialized for pending alterations on the index. Pending changes are not materialized for pending alterations on the table space. If pending alterations are involved only on the index, advisory-REORG pending status (AREOR) is reset from the index. If REORG INDEX with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is run at the partition level, pending definition changes are not materialized.

REORG INDEX with SHRLEVEL NONE proceeds without materializing pending definition changes if there were any on the index being reorganized.

Index statistics are collected and updated in the DB2 catalog when pending definition changes are materialized during REORG INDEX with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE.

Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REORG INDEX

As part of REORG INDEX processing, you can use FlashCopy technology to quickly take image copies of the target objects.

Restriction: You cannot create FlashCopy image copies of indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute.

To create a FlashCopy image copy with REORG INDEX:

Specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT) in the REORG INDEX utility control statement. Alternatively, you can set the FLASHCOPY_REORG_INDEX subsystem parameter to YES, which specifies that REORG INDEX is to use FLASHCOPY(YES) by default. The value that you specify for the FLASHCOPY option in the REORG INDEX statement always overrides the value for the FLASHCOPY_REORG_INDEX subsystem parameter. Optionally, you can also specify FCCOPYDDN in the REORG INDEX statement.

Use this option to specify a template for the FlashCopy image copy. If you do not specify the FCCOPYDDN option in the REORG INDEX statement, the utility uses the value from the FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter.

Restriction: The data sets that you specify for the FlashCopy image copy must be on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes.

When you specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT), REORG INDEX uses FlashCopy technology to create a consistent copy of the target objects. The FlashCopy image copy fails if the FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available or if any of the other FlashCopy operational restrictions exist. For a list of those operational restrictions, see “FlashCopy image copies” on page 142.

Related concepts

“FlashCopy image copies” on page 142

Related reference

 DEFAULT TEMPLATE field (FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

 REORG INDEX field (FLASHCOPY_REORG_INDEX subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

Temporarily interrupting REORG

You can temporarily pause REORG.

If you specify UNLOAD PAUSE, REORG pauses after unloading the index space into the work data set. The job completes with return code 4. You can restart REORG by using the phase restart or current restart. The REORG statement must not be altered.

The SYSIBM.SYSUTIL record for the REORG INDEX utility remains in "stopped" status until REORG is restarted or terminated.

While REORG is interrupted by PAUSE, you can re-define the table space attributes for user defined table spaces. PAUSE is not required for STOGROUP-defined table spaces. Attribute changes are done automatically by a REORG following an ALTER INDEX.

Improving performance with REORG INDEX

You can improve the performance of the REORG INDEX utility by taking certain actions.

Recommendation: Run online REORG during light periods of activity on the table space or index.

To improve REORG performance:

- Run REORG concurrently on separate partitions of a partitioned index space. The processor time for running REORG INDEX on partitions of a partitioned index is approximately the same as the time for running a single REORG index job. The elapsed time is a fraction of the time for running a single REORG job on the entire index.
- Schedule REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE when the rate of writing is low and transactions are short. Avoid scheduling REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE when low-tolerance applications are executing.

- Run REORG with DRAIN_WAIT.

The DRAIN_WAIT option provides improved control over the time online REORG waits for drains. Also, because the DRAIN_WAIT is the aggregate time that online REORG is to wait to perform a drain on a table space and associated indexes, the length of drains is more predictable than it is when each partition and index has its own individual waiting-time limit.

By specifying a short delay time (less than the system timeout value, IRLMRWT), you can reduce the impact on applications by reducing time-outs. You can use the RETRY option to give the online REORG INDEX utility chances to complete successfully. If you do not want to use RETRY processing, you can still use DRAIN_WAIT to set a specific and more consistent limit on the length of drains.

RETRY allows an online REORG that is unable to drain the objects it requires to try again after a set period (RETRY_DELAY). If the drain fails in the SWITCH phase, the objects remain in their original state (read-only mode for SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or read-write mode for SHRLEVEL CHANGE). Likewise, objects will remain in their original state if the drain fails in the LOG phase.

Because application SQL statements can queue behind any unsuccessful drain that the online REORG has tried, define a reasonable delay before you retry to allow this work to complete; the default is 5 minutes.

When the default DRAIN WRITERS is used with SHRLEVEL CHANGE and RETRY, multiple read-only log iterations can occur. Because online REORG can have to do more work when RETRY is specified, multiple or extended periods of restricted access might occur. Applications that run with REORG must perform frequent commits. During the interval between retries, the utility is still active; consequently, other utility activity against the table space and indexes is restricted.

Termination of REORG INDEX

You can terminate the REORG INDEX utility.

If you terminate REORG with the TERM UTILITY command during the UNLOAD phase, objects have not yet been changed, and you can rerun the job.

If you terminate REORG with the TERM UTILITY command during the build phase, the behavior depends on the SHRLEVEL option:

- For SHRLEVEL NONE, the index is left in RECOVER-pending status. After you recover the index, rerun the REORG job.
- For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, the index keys are reloaded into a shadow index, so the original index has not been affected by REORG. You can rerun the job.

If you terminate REORG with the TERM UTILITY command during the log phase, the index keys are reloaded into a shadow index, so the original index has not been affected by REORG. You can rerun the job.

If you terminate REORG with the TERM UTILITY command during the switch phase, all data sets that were renamed to their shadow counterparts are renamed back, so the objects are left in their original state. You can rerun the job. If a problem occurs in renaming to the original data sets, the objects are left in RECOVER-pending status. You must recover the index.

The REORG-pending status is not reset until the UTILTERM execution phase. If the REORG INDEX utility abnormally terminates or is terminated, the objects are left in RECOVER-pending status.

The following table lists any restrictive states that are set based on the phase in which REORG INDEX terminated.

Table 72. Restrictive states set based on the phase in which REORG INDEX terminated

Phase	Effect on restrictive status
UNLOAD	No effect.
BUILD	Sets REBUILD-pending (RBDP) status at the beginning of the build phase, and resets RBDP at the end of the phase. SHRLEVEL NONE places an index that was defined with the COPY YES attribute in RECOVER pending (RECP) status.
LOG	No effect.
SWITCH	Under certain conditions, if TERM UTILITY is issued, it must complete successfully; otherwise, objects might be placed in RECP status or RBDP status. For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, sets the RECP status if the index was defined with the COPY YES attribute at the beginning of the switch phase, and resets RECP at the end of the phase. If the index was defined with COPY NO, this phase sets the index in RBDP status at the beginning of the phase, and resets RBDP at the end of the phase.

Related reference

Appendix C, "Advisory or restrictive states," on page 1001

Restart of REORG INDEX

You can restart a REORG INDEX utility job.

If you restart REORG in the outlined phase, it re-executes from the beginning of the phase. DB2 always uses RESTART(PHASE) by default unless you restart the job in the UNLOAD phase. In this case, DB2 uses RESTART(CURRENT) by default.

If REORG abnormally terminates or a system failure occurs while it is in the UTILTERM phase, you must restart the job with RESTART(PHASE).

The following table provides information about restarting REORG INDEX. For each phase of REORG and for each type of REORG INDEX (with SHRLEVEL NONE, with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, and with SHRLEVEL CHANGE), the table indicates the types of restart that are allowed (CURRENT and PHASE). None indicates that no restart is allowed. The "Data sets required" column lists the data sets that must exist to perform the specified type of restart in the specified phase.

Table 73. REORG INDEX utility restart information

Phase	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL NONE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL CHANGE	Data sets required	Notes
UNLOAD	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE	None	SYSUT1	
BUILD	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE	None	SYSUT1	1

Table 73. REORG INDEX utility restart information (continued)

Phase	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL NONE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL CHANGE	Data sets required	Notes
LOG	Phase does not occur	Phase does not occur	None	None	
SWITCH	Phase does not occur	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE	originals and shadows	1

Note:

1. You can restart the utility with either RESTART or RESTART(PHASE). However, because this phase does not take checkpoints, RESTART always re-executes from the beginning of the phase.

If you restart a REORG STATISTICS job that was stopped in the BUILD phase by using RESTART CURRENT, inline statistics collection does not occur. To update catalog statistics, run the RUNSTATS utility after the restarted job completes. Restarting a REORG STATISTICS job with RESTART(PHASE) is conditional after executing UNLOAD PAUSE. To determine if catalog table statistics are to be updated when you restart a REORG STATISTICS job, see the following table. This table lists whether or not statistics are updated based on the execution phase and whether the job is restarted with RESTART(CURRENT) or RESTART(PHASE).

Table 74. Whether statistics are updated when REORG INDEX STATISTICS jobs are restarted in certain phases

Phase	RESTART CURRENT	RESTART PHASE
UTILINIT	No	Yes
UNLOAD	No	Yes
BUILD	No	Yes

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Related tasks

“Restarting after the output data set is full” on page 40

Review of REORG INDEX output

The output from REORG INDEX consists of a reorganized index or index partition.

The following table summarizes the results of REORG INDEX based upon what you specified.

Table 75. Summary of the results of REORG INDEX

Specification	Results
REORG INDEX	Entire index (all partitions of a partitioned index)
REORG INDEX PART <i>n</i>	Part <i>n</i> of partitioned index

When reorganizing an index, REORG leaves free pages and free space on each page in accordance with the current values of the FREEPAGE and PCTFREE parameters. (You can set those values by using the CREATE INDEX or ALTER INDEX statement.) REORG leaves one free page after reaching the FREEPAGE limit for each table in the index space.

Catalog updates: REORG INDEX updates SYSINDEXPART OLDEST_VERSION and SYSINDEXES OLDEST_VERSION (if applicable).

Effect of REORG INDEX on index version numbers

DB2 stores the range of used index version numbers in the OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION columns of the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES and SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART catalog tables.

The OLDEST_VERSION column contains the oldest used version number, and the CURRENT_VERSION column contains the current version number.

When you run REORG INDEX, the utility updates this range of used version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute. REORG INDEX sets the OLDEST_VERSION column to the current version number, which indicates that only one version is active; DB2 can then reuse all of the other version numbers.

Recycling of version numbers is required when all of the version numbers are being used. All version numbers are being used when one of the following situations is true:

- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is one less than the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column.
- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is 15 and the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column is 0 or 1.

You can also run LOAD REPLACE, REBUILD INDEX, or REORG TABLESPACE to recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute. To recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY YES attribute or for table spaces, run MODIFY RECOVERY.

Related concepts

 [Table space versions \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Sample REORG INDEX control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own REORG INDEX control statements.

Example 1: Reorganizing an index

The following control statement specifies that the REORG INDEX utility is to reorganize index XMSGTXT1. The UNLOAD PAUSE option indicates that after the data has been unloaded, the utility is to stop. Processing can be restarted in the RELOAD phase. This option is useful if you want to redefine data sets during reorganization.

```
REORG INDEX DSN81010.XMSGTXT1
UNLOAD PAUSE
```

Example 2: Collecting inline statistics while reorganizing an index.

The following control statement specifies that REORG INDEX is to collect statistics for index XEMPL1 while reorganizing that index. The SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option indicates that during this processing, only read access is allowed on the areas that are being reorganized.

```
REORG INDEX DSN81010.XEMPL1
      SHRLEVEL REFERENCE STATISTICS
```

Example 3: Updating access path statistics in the catalog and catalog history tables while reorganizing an index

The following control statement specifies that while reorganizing index IU0E0801, REORG INDEX is to collect statistics and update access path statistics in the catalog and catalog history tables. The utility is also to send any output, including space and access path statistics, to SYSPRINT.

```
REORG INDEX IU0E0801
      STATISTICS
      REPORT YES
      UPDATE ACCESSPATH
      HISTORY ACCESSPATH
```

Example 4: Reorganizing a list of indexes

In the following control statement, the OPTIONS utility control statement specifies that the subsequent TEMPLATE and LISTDEF utility control statements are to run in PREVIEW mode. If the syntax of these statements is correct, DB2 expands the REORG_INDX list and the data set names in the SREC, SUT1, and SOUT templates and prints these results to the SYSPRINT data set. The second OPTIONS control statement turns off the PREVIEW mode, and the subsequent REORG INDEX job runs normally.

The REORG INDEX statement specifies that the utility is to reorganize the indexes that are included in the REORG_INDX list. The SHRLEVEL CHANGE option indicates that during this processing, read and write access is allowed on the areas that are being reorganized, with the exception of a 100-second period during the last iteration of log processing. During this time, which is specified by the MAXRO option, applications have read-only access. The WORKDDN option indicates that REORG INDEX is to use the data set that is defined by the SUT1 template. If the SWITCH phase does not begin by the deadline that is specified on the DEADLINE option, processing terminates.

```

//STEP2 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='HUHRU257.REORGI',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR',DB2LEV=DB2A
//SYSIN DD *
      OPTIONS PREVIEW
      TEMPLATE SREC
          UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
          DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SREC)
      TEMPLATE SUT1
          UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,DELETE,CATLG)
          DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SUT1)
      TEMPLATE SOUT
          UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,DELETE,CATLG)
          DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SOUT)
      LISTDEF REORG_INDXX INCLUDE INDEX ADMF001.IPHR5701
          INCLUDE INDEX ADMF001.IXHR570*
      OPTIONS OFF
      REORG INDEX LIST REORG_INDXX
      PREFORMAT
      SHRLEVEL CHANGE
      DEADLINE 2010-2-4-23.10.12
      MAXRO 100
      WORKDDN (SUT1)
/*

```

Figure 71. Example statements for job that reorganizes a list of indexes

Example 5: Reorganizing clone indexes

The following control statement specifies that REORG INDEX is to reorganize only the specified index spaces that contain indexes on clone tables. The SHRLEVEL CHANGE option indicates that during this processing, applications can read and write to the area.

```
REORG INDEX ADMF001.IPJM0901 SHRLEVEL CHANGE CLONE
```

Example 6: Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REORG INDEX

The following REORG INDEX control statement reorganizes the index spaces associated with table space DSN8S81E and creates a FlashCopy image copy of the index.

```

//SYSADMA JOB (ACCOUNT),'NAME',NOTIFY=&SYSUID
//*
//UTIL EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=VA1A,UID='TEMP',UTPROC=''
//DSNUPROC.SYSREC DD DSN=SYSOPS.DSNAME,
// DISP=(NEW,DELETE),
// SPACE=(CYL,(20,20),RLSE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=SCR03
//DSNUPROC.SYSUT1 DD DSN=SYSOPS.SYSUT1,
// DISP=(NEW,DELETE,DELETE),
// SPACE=(CYL,(9,90),RLSE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=SCR03
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
LISTDEF COPY_LIST INCLUDE INDEXSPACES TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E PARTLEVEL ALL
TEMPLATE SCOPY UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,DELETE)
DSN(DSNT1.&DB..&TS..CPY1.D&TIME.)
TEMPLATE FCOPY UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,DELETE)
DSN(DSNFC.&DB..&TS..P&PA..D&TIME.)
REORG INDEX LIST COPY_LIST SHRLEVEL REFERENCE FLASHCOPY YES
FCCOPYDDN(FCOPY) COPYDDN(SCOPY)

```

Chapter 25. REORG TABLESPACE

The REORG TABLESPACE online utility reorganizes a table space to improve access performance and to reclaim fragmented space. In addition, the utility can reorganize a single partition or range of partitions of a partitioned table space.

You can specify the degree of access to your data during reorganization, and you can collect inline statistics by using the STATISTICS keyword. If you specify REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD EXTERNAL, the data is unloaded in a format that is acceptable to the LOAD utility of any DB2 subsystem. You can also delete rows during the REORG job by specifying the DISCARD option.

You can determine when to run REORG for non-LOB table spaces by using the OFFPOSLIMIT or INDREFLIMIT catalog query options. If you specify the REPORTONLY option, REORG produces a report that indicates whether a REORG is recommended without actually performing the REORG. These options are not applicable and are disregarded if the target object is a directory table space.

Run the REORG TABLESPACE utility on a LOB table space to help increase the effectiveness of prefetch. For a LOB table space, REORG TABLESPACE performs these actions:

- Removes imbedded free space
- Attempts to make LOB pages contiguous

If you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, a REORG of a LOB table space will make LOB pages continuous, remove imbedded free space, and reclaim physical space if applicable.

You can run REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE on a LOB table space. REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE processes a LOB table space the same as REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE with one exception. If a mapping table is specified it will be ignored. The restriction for REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE on NOT LOGGED table spaces will apply to LOB table spaces. REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE on a LOB table space uses shadow data sets and includes a LOG phase.

If you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE followed by a REORG of the base table space with XML columns, the XML columns are converted to a format that supports multiple XML versions.

Do not execute REORG on an object if another DB2 holds retained locks on the object or has long-running noncommitting applications that use the object. You can use the DISPLAY GROUP command to determine whether a member's status is failed. You can use the DISPLAY DATABASE command with the LOCKS option to determine if locks are held.

Output

If the table space or partition has the COMPRESS YES attribute, the data is compressed when it is reloaded. If you specify the KEEPDICTIONARY option of REORG, the current dictionary is used; otherwise a new dictionary is built.

You can execute the REORG TABLESPACE utility on the table spaces in the DB2 catalog database (DSNDB06) and on some table spaces in the directory database (DSNDB01). It cannot be executed on any table space in the DSNDB07 database.

The following table summarizes the results of REORG TABLESPACE according to the type of REORG specified.

Table 76. Summary of REORG TABLESPACE output

Type of REORG specified	Results
REORG TABLESPACE	Reorganizes all data and all indexes.
REORG TABLESPACE PART <i>n</i>	Reorganizes data for PART <i>n</i> of the table space and PART <i>n</i> of all partitioned indexes.
REORG TABLESPACE PART <i>n:m</i>	Reorganizes data for PART <i>n</i> through PART <i>m</i> of the table space and PART <i>n</i> through PART <i>m</i> of all partitioned indexes.

Note: When SCOPE PENDING is also specified, the REORG TABLESPACE utility reorganizes the specified table space only if it is in REORG-pending or advisory REORG-pending status. For a partitioned table space, REORG TABLESPACE SCOPE PENDING reorganizes only the partitions that are in REORG-pending or advisory REORG-pending status.

Authorization required

To execute this utility on a user table space, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- REORG privilege for the database
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- SYSCtrl authority
- SYSADM authority
- DATAACCESS authority

To execute this utility on a table space in the catalog or directory, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- REORG privilege for the DSNDB06 (catalog) database
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the DSNDB06 (catalog) database
- Installation SYSOPR authority
- SYSCtrl authority
- SYSADM or Installation SYSADM authority
- STATS privilege for the database is required if STATISTICS keyword is specified.

If you specify REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE , you must create a mapping table. You must use a privilege set that includes DELETE, INSERT, and UPDATE privileges on the mapping table.

If either the FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT option is specified, the batch user ID that invokes the REORG TABLESPACE utility must have the authority to execute the DFSMSdss COPY command.

To run REORG TABLESPACE STATISTICS REPORT YES, you must use a privilege set that includes the SELECT privilege on the catalog tables and tables for which statistics are to be gathered.

An authority other than installation SYSADM or installation SYSOPR can receive message DSNT500I resource unavailable, while trying to reorganize a table space in the catalog or directory. This message can be issued when the DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT or DSNDB06.SYSUSER catalog table space or one of the indexes is unavailable. If this problem occurs, run the REORG TABLESPACE utility again using an authorization ID with the installation SYSADM or installation SYSOPR authority.

If you use RACF access control with multilevel security and REORG TABLESPACE is to process a table space that contains a table that has multilevel security with row-level granularity, you must be identified to RACF and have an accessible valid security label. You must also meet the following authorization requirements: .

- For REORG statements that include the UNLOAD EXTERNAL option, each row is unloaded only if your security label dominates the data security label. If your security label does not dominate the data security label, the row is not unloaded, but DB2 does not issue an error message.
- For REORG statements that include the DISCARD option, qualifying rows are discarded only if one of the following situations is true:
 - Write-down rules are in effect, you have write-down privilege, and your security label dominates the data's security label.
 - Write-down rules are not in effect and your security label dominates the data's security label.
 - Your security label is equivalent to the data security label.

Execution phases of REORG TABLESPACE

The REORG TABLESPACE utility operates in these phases:

UTILINIT

Performs initialization and setup.

UNLOAD

Unloads the table space and sorts data if a clustering index exists and the utility job includes either the SORTDATA or SHRLEVEL CHANGE options. If you specify NOSYSREC, the utility passes rows in memory to the RELOAD phase; otherwise, it writes them to a sequential data set. If PART SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or PART SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified, during UNLOAD one or more subtasks unload nonpartitioned indexes and build shadow nonpartitioned indexes.

RELOAD

Reloads data from the sequential data set into the table space and creates full image copies if you specify COPYDDN, RECOVERYDDN, SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, or SHRLEVEL CHANGE. A subtask sorts the index keys. The utility also updates table and table space statistics.

SORT Sorts index keys. The sorted keys are passed in memory to the BUILD phase.

BUILD

Builds indexes and updates index statistics.

SORTBLD

If parallel index build occurs, all activities that normally occur in both the SORT and BUILD phases occur in the SORTBLD phase instead.

LOG Processes the log iteratively and appends changed pages to the full image copies. This phase occurs only if you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE PART *x*.

SWITCH

Switches access to shadow copy of table space or partition. This phase occurs only if you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE.

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup.

Execution phases of REORG TABLESPACE on a LOB table space

The REORG TABLESPACE utility operates in these phases when you run it on a LOB table space:

Phase	Description
UTILINIT	Performs initialization and setup.
REORGLOB	For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, the utility unloads LOBs to a shadow data set. RECOVER-pending is not set on the LOB table space. Any error during this phase will leave the original data set intact.
SWITCH	Switches access to shadow copy of table space or partition.
UTILTERM	Performs cleanup.

UTILINIT

Performs initialization and setup.

REORGLOB

For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, the utility unloads LOBs to a shadow data set. RECOVER-pending is not set on the LOB table space. Any error during this phase will leave the original data set intact.

SWITCH

Switches access to shadow copy of table space or partition.

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup.

You cannot restart REORG TABLESPACE on a LOB table space in the REORGLOB phase. Before executing REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE on a LOB table space that is defined with LOG NO, you should take a full image copy to ensure recoverability. For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, an inline image copy is required to ensure recoverability.

Syntax and options of the REORG TABLESPACE control statement

The REORG TABLESPACE utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

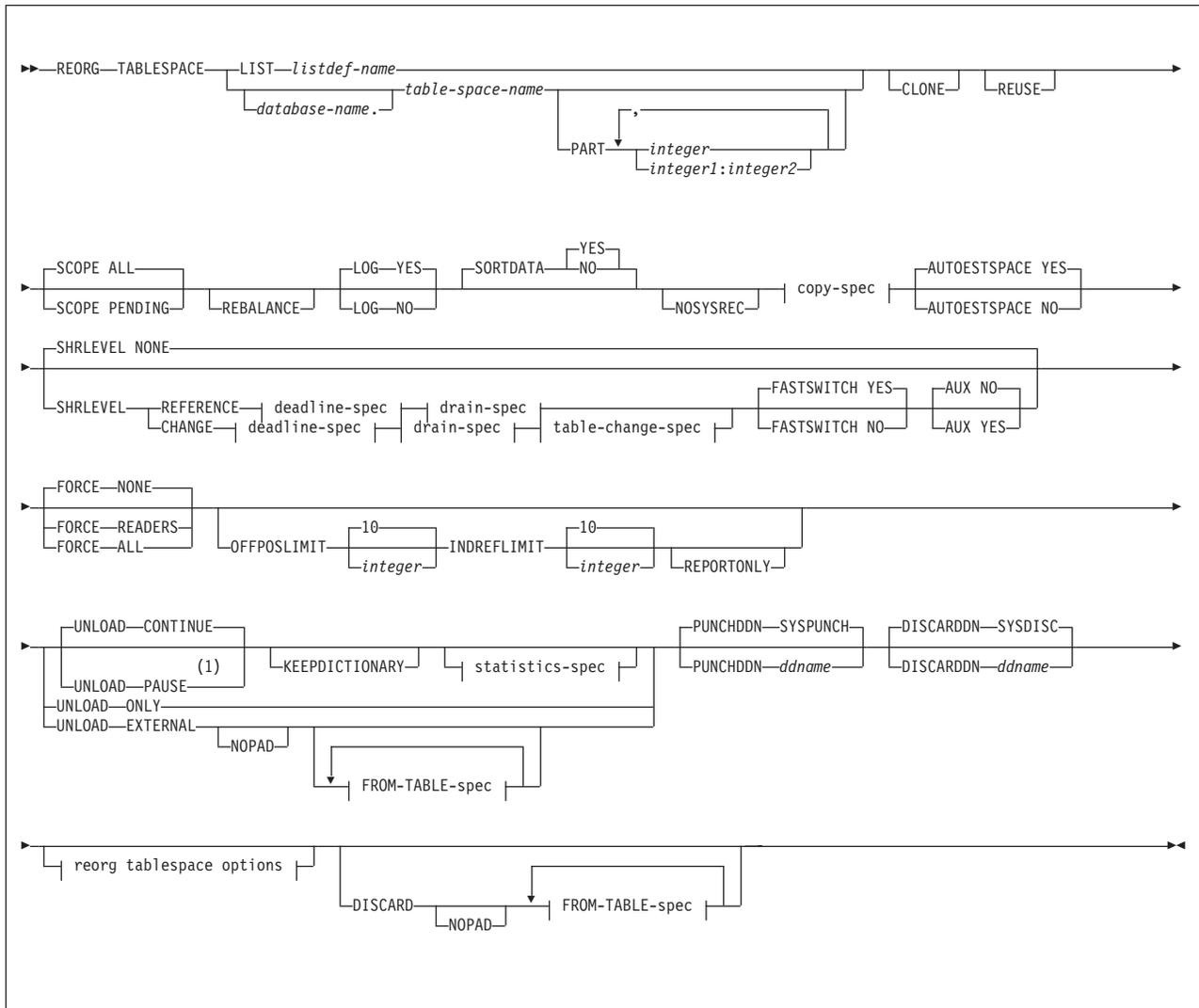
You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

The following options are not valid with LOB table spaces.

- OFFPOSLIMIT*integer*
- UNLOAD
- STATISTICS
- SAMPLE*integer*

- PART
- INDREFLIMIT

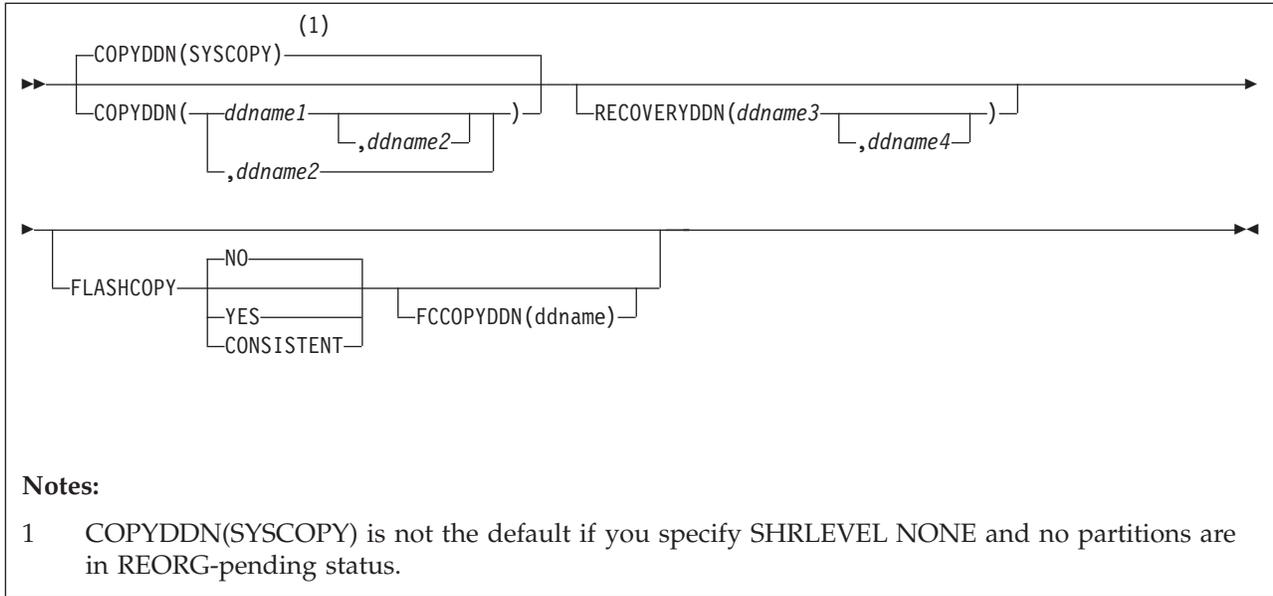
Syntax diagram



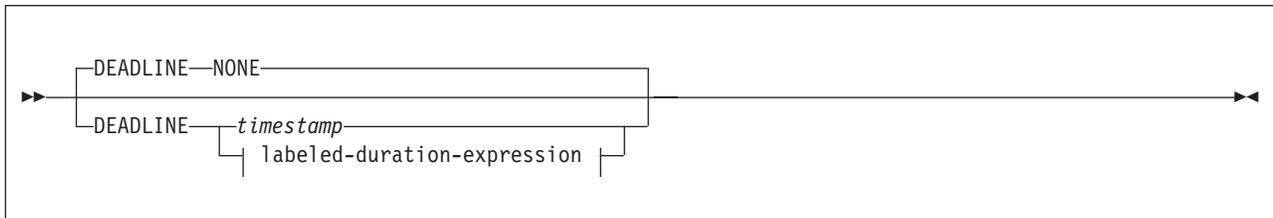
Notes:

1 You cannot use UNLOAD PAUSE with the LIST option.

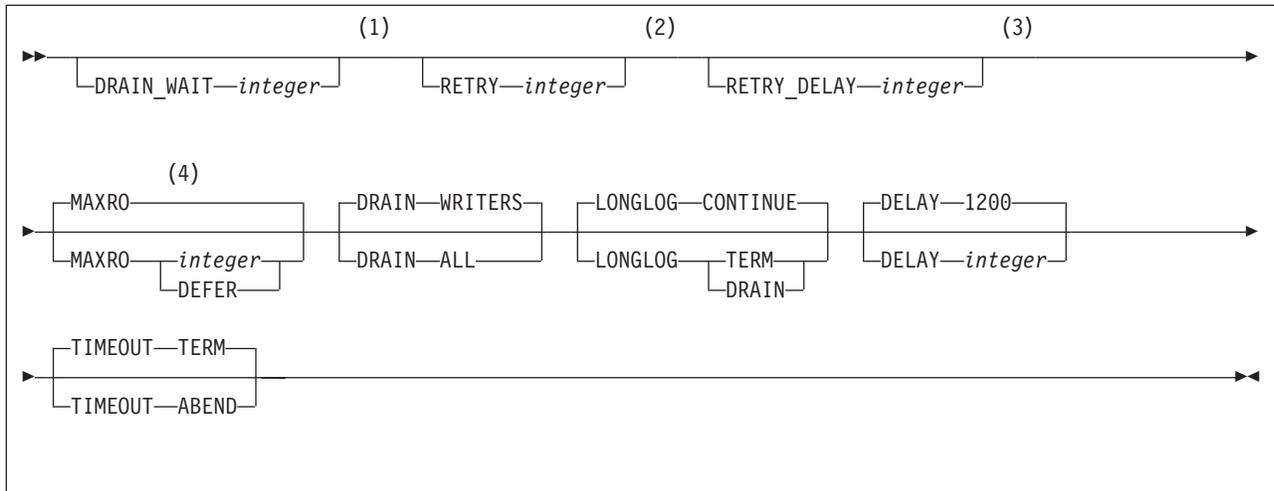
copy-spec:



deadline-spec:



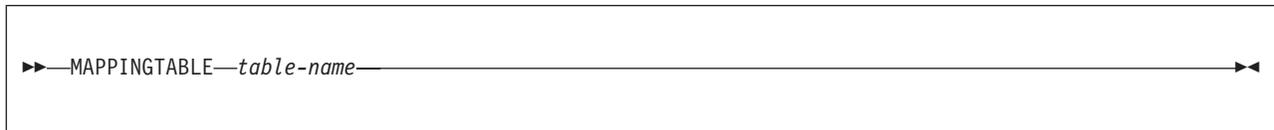
drain-spec:



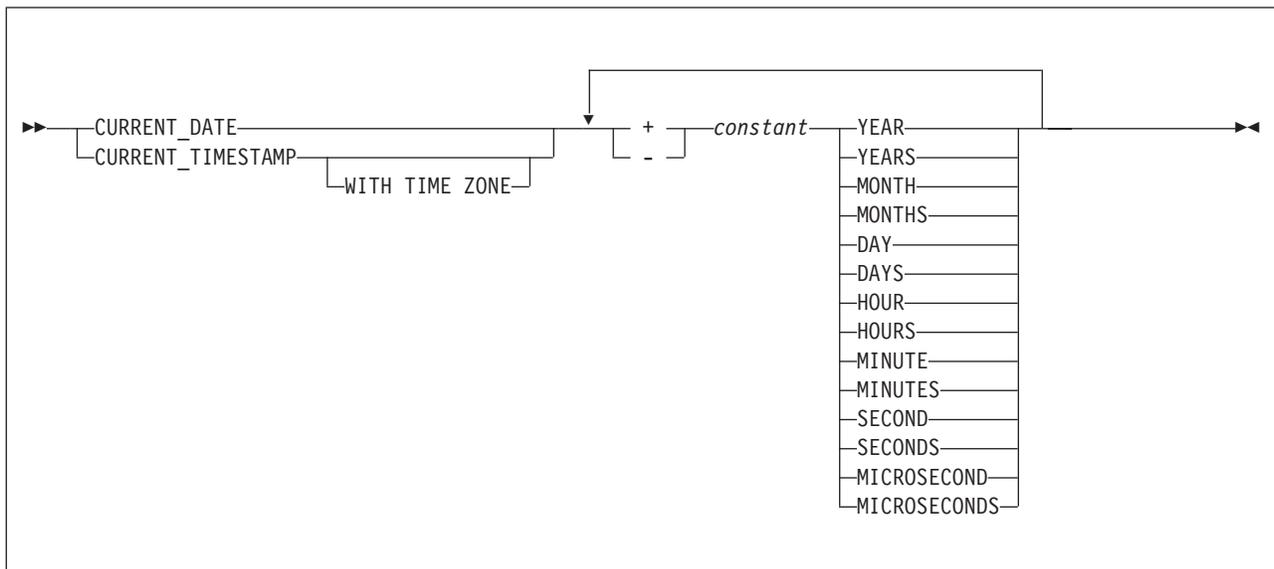
Notes:

- 1 The default for DRAIN_WAIT is the value of the IRLMRWT subsystem parameter.
- 2 The default for RETRY is the value of the UTIMOUT subsystem parameter.
- 3 The default for RETRY_DELAY is the smaller of the following two values: DRAIN_WAIT value × RETRY value, DRAIN_WAIT value × 10
- 4 The default for MAXRO is the RETRY_DELAY default value.

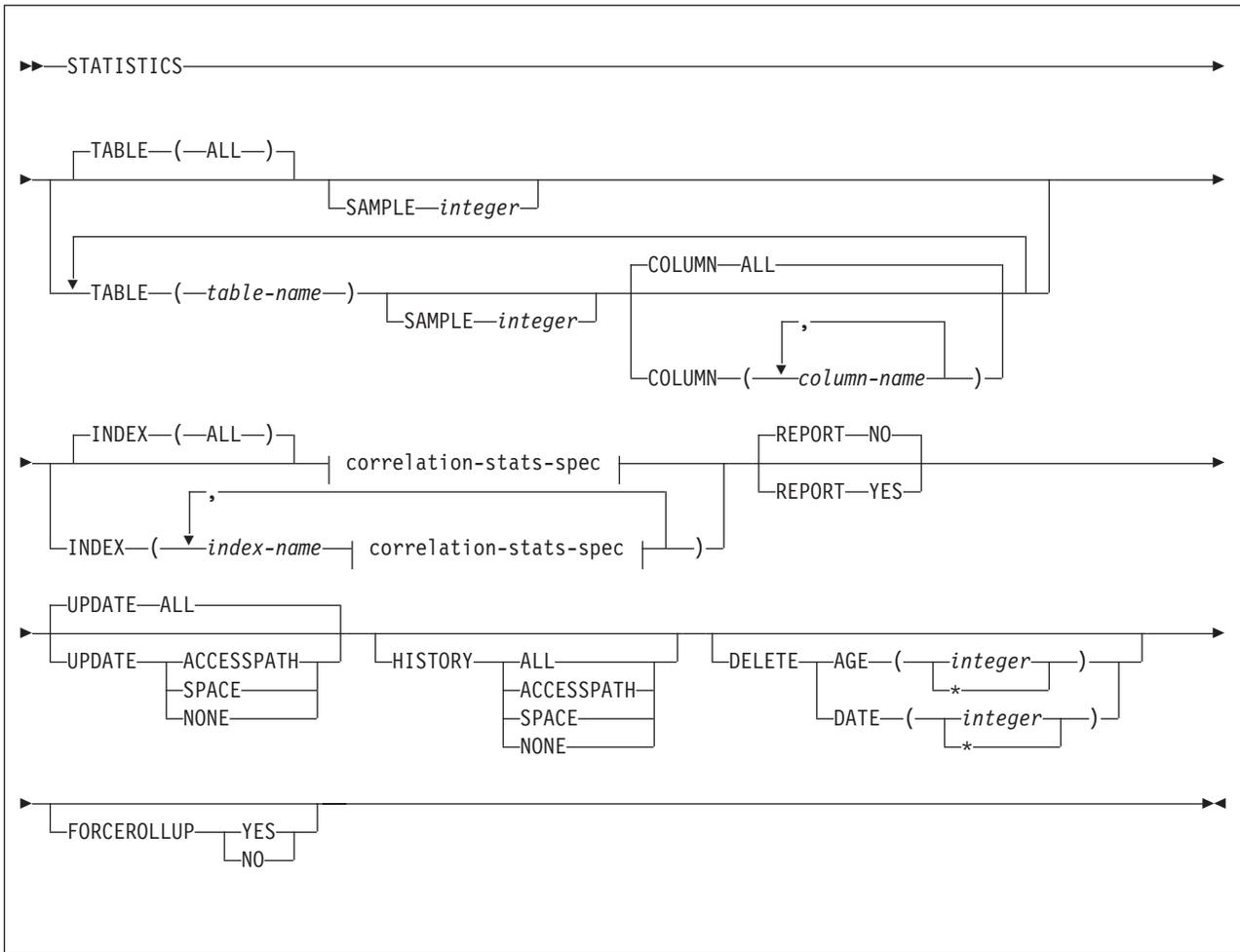
table-change-spec:



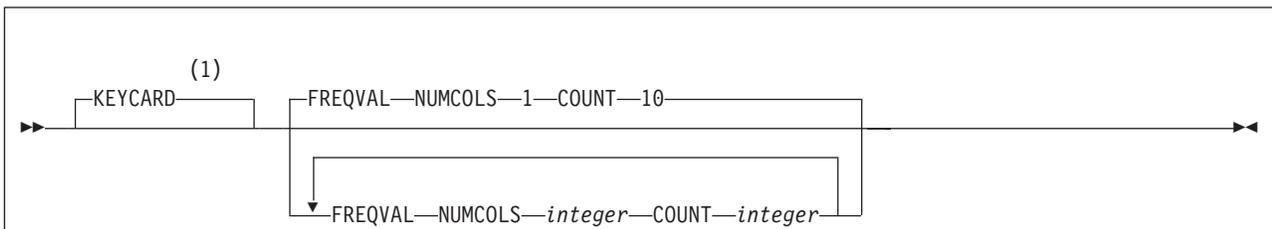
labeled-duration-expression:



statistics-spec:



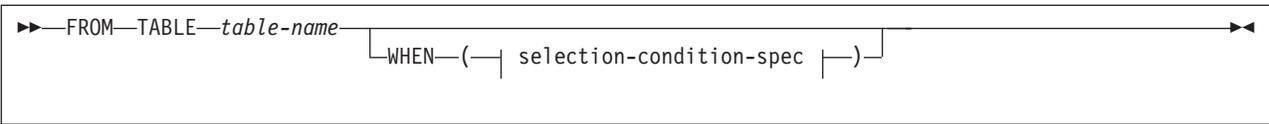
correlation-stats-spec:



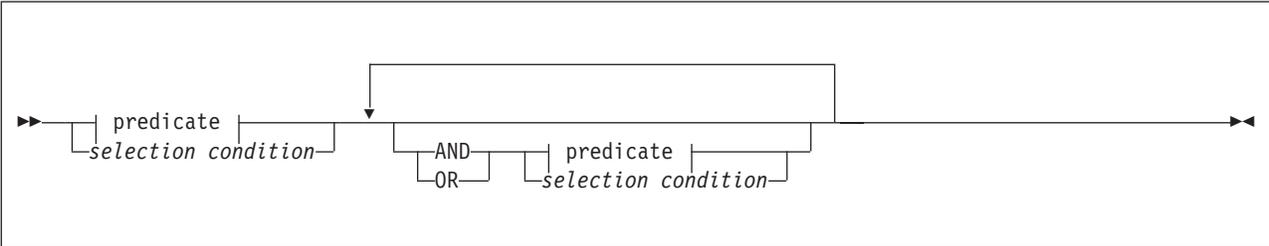
Notes:

- 1 The KEYCARD option is deprecated. The KEYCARD functionality is now built into the default execution of the inline statistics and cannot be disabled.

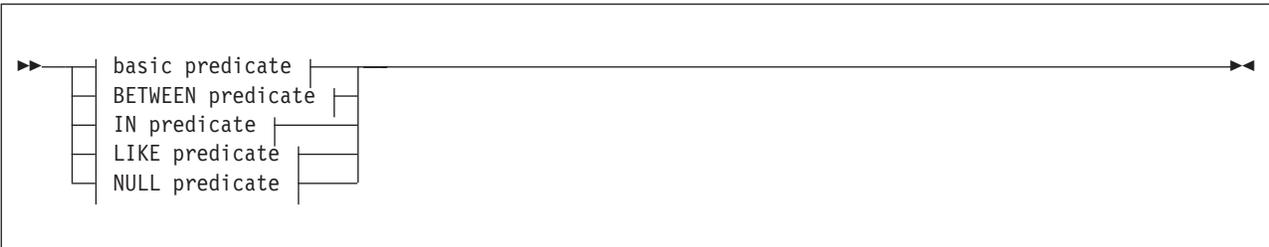
FROM-TABLE-spec:



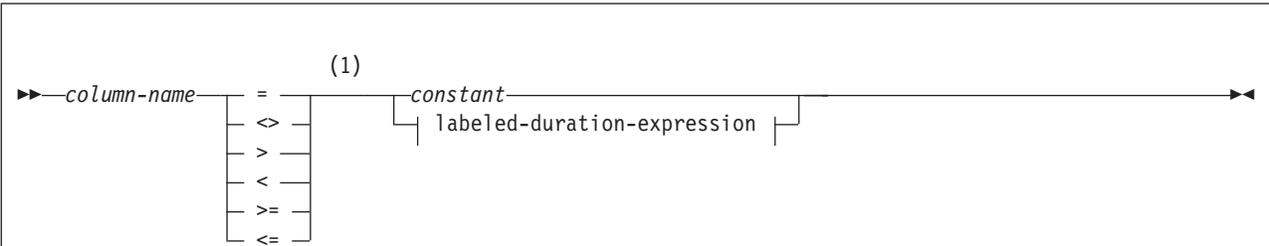
selection-condition-spec:



predicate:



basic predicate:



Notes:

- 1 The following forms of the comparison operators are also supported in basic and quantified predicates: !=, !<, and !>. For details, see comparison operators.

BETWEEN predicate:

If you reorganize a table space, its indexes are also reorganized.

database-name

Is the name of the database to which the table space belongs. The name cannot be DSNDB07.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Is the name of the table space that is to be reorganized. The name cannot be SYSUTILX if the specified database name is DSNDB01.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each control statement of REORG TABLESPACE. The list must contain only table spaces.

Do not specify FROM TABLE, STATISTICS TABLE *table-name*, or STATISTICS INDEX *index-name* with REORG TABLESPACE LIST. If you want to collect inline statistics for a list of table spaces, specify STATISTICS TABLE (ALL). If you want to collect inline statistics for a list of indexes, specify STATISTICS INDEX (ALL). Do not specify PART with LIST.

REORG TABLESPACE is invoked once for each item in the list. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

CLONE

Indicates that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize only clone tables from the specified table spaces. This utility will only process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient. Base tables in the specified table spaces are not reorganized. If you specify CLONE, you cannot specify STATISTICS. Statistics are not collected for clone tables.

REUSE

When used with SHRLEVEL NONE, specifies that REORG is to logically reset and reuse DB2-managed data sets without deleting and redefining them. If you do not specify REUSE and SHRLEVEL NONE, DB2 deletes and redefines DB2-managed data sets to reset them.

If a data set has multiple extents, the extents are not released if you use the REUSE parameter.

REUSE does not apply if you also specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE.

SCOPE

Indicates the scope of the reorganization of the specified table space or of one or more specified partitions.

ALL

Indicates that you want the specified table space or one or more partitions to be reorganized. The default is ALL.

PENDING

Indicates that you want the specified table space or one or more partitions to be reorganized only if they are in REORG-pending (REORP, AREO*, or AREOR) status.

PART *integer*

PART *integer1:integer2*

Identifies a partition range that is to be reorganized. You can reorganize a single partition of a partitioned table space or a range of partitions within a partitioned table space. You can also reorganize multiple partitions, partition ranges, or disjointed partition ranges. *integer* must be in the range from 1 to the number of partitions that are defined for the table space or partitioning index. The maximum is 4096.

integer

Designates a single partition.

integer1:integer2

Designates one or more ranges of existing table space partitions from *integer1* through *integer2*. *integer2* must be greater than *integer1*.

If you omit the PART keyword, the entire table space is reorganized.

If you specify the PART keyword for a LOB table space, DB2 issues an error message, and utility processing terminates with return code 8.

If you specify a partition range and the high or low partitions in the list are in a REORG-pending state, the adjacent partition that is outside the specified range must not be in REORG-pending state; otherwise, the utility terminates with an error.

Restriction: You cannot run concurrent **REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE PART** *integer* on the same table space with one or more non-partitioned indexes defined in it. Instead of submitting multiple jobs, you can merge the jobs into one job by specifying all the target partitions in the same REORG job.

REBALANCE

Specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to set new partition boundaries so that rows are evenly distributed across the reorganized partitions. If the columns that are used in defining the partition boundaries have many duplicate values within the data rows, even balancing is not always possible. Specify REBALANCE for more than one partition; if you specify a single partition for rebalancing, REORG TABLESPACE ignores the specification.

You can specify REBALANCE with SHRLEVEL NONE or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE. REBALANCE cannot be specified with SHRLEVEL CHANGE or SCOPE PENDING.

Do not specify REBALANCE for:

- Partition-by-growth table spaces
- Base tables with XML columns
- XML table spaces

When you specify REBALANCE, you must create an inline copy by performing one of the following actions:

- Provide a SYSCOPY DD statement in the JCL.
- Use the TEMPLATE utility to dynamically allocate the SYSCOPY data set.
- Specify a DD name with the COPYDDN option in the REORG control statement and specify either a corresponding DD statement or TEMPLATE statement.

When REBALANCE is specified with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, pending definition changes for conversion of a partitioned table space to a range-partitioned universal table space are not materialized.

Restriction: REBALANCE cannot be specified for an object that is involved in a clone relationship. Since the base and clone tables share catalog information, this can change the partition boundaries of the target table.

At completion, DB2 invalidates packages and the dynamic cache.

LOG

Specifies whether records are to be logged during the RELOAD phase of REORG. If the records are not logged, the table space is recoverable only after an image copy is taken. If you specify COPYDDN, FCCOPYDDN, RECOVERYDDN, SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, an image copy is taken during REORG execution.

YES

Specifies that log records are to be taken during the RELOAD phase. This option is not allowed for any table space in DSNDB01 or DSNDB06, or if the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE options are used.

If you specify SHRLEVEL NONE (explicitly or by default), the default value is YES.

LOG YES is required for LOB REORG SHRLEVEL NONE. LOG NO is required for LOB REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE.

If the table space has the NOT LOGGED attribute, and SHRLEVEL NONE is specified, DB2 does the LOAD with LOG NO.

NO

Specifies that records are not to be logged. This option puts the table space in COPY-pending status if REORG is executed at the remote site, and RECOVERYDDN is not specified.

You must specify LOG NO for REORG of a LOB table space if you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE.

SORTDATA

YES

Specifies that the data is to be unloaded by a table space scan, and sorted in clustering order.

The default value is SORTDATA YES unless you specify UNLOAD ONLY or UNLOAD EXTERNAL. If you specify one of these options, the default is SORTDATA NO.

NO

Specifies that the data is to be unloaded in the order of the clustering index. SORTDATA NO cannot be specified with SHRLEVEL CHANGE.

Specify SORTDATA NO if one of the following conditions is true:

- The data is in or near perfect clustering order, and the REORG utility is used to reclaim space from dropped tables.
- The data is very large, and an insufficient amount of disk space is available for sorting.

NOSYSREC

Specifies that the output of sorting (if a clustering index exists) is the input to reloading, without the REORG TABLESPACE utility using an unload data set. You can specify this option only if the REORG TABLESPACE job includes SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL NONE, and only if you do not specify UNLOAD PAUSE or UNLOAD ONLY.

COPYDDN (*ddname1,ddname2*)

Specifies the DD statements for the primary (*ddname1*) and backup (*ddname2*) copy data sets for the image copy.

ddname1 and *ddname2* are the DD names.

The default value is **SYSCOPY** for the primary copy. A full image copy data set is created when **REORG** executes. This copy is called an inline copy. The name of the data set is listed as a row in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table with ICTYPE='R' (as it is for the COPY SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option). The table space does not remain in COPY-pending status regardless of which LOG option you specify.

If you specify SHRLEVEL NONE (explicitly or by default) for REORG, and COPYDDN is not specified, an image copy is not created at the local site.

COPYDDN(SYSCOPY) is assumed, and a DD statement for SYSCOPY is required if either of the following conditions are true:

- You specify REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, and you do not specify COPYDDN.
- A table space or partition is in REORG-pending (REORP) status.
- You specify REBALANCE.

The COPYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

REORG can take inline copies of XML table spaces.

RECOVERYDDN (*ddname3,ddname4*)

Specifies the DD statements for the primary (*ddname3*) and backup (*ddname4*) copy data sets for the image copy at the recovery site.

ddname3 and *ddname4* are the DD names.

You cannot have duplicate image copy data sets. The same rules apply for RECOVERYDDN as for COPYDDN.

The RECOVERYDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE of a LOB table space supports inline copies, but REORG SHRLEVEL NONE does not.

FLASHCOPY

Specifies whether FlashCopy technology is used to create a copy of the object. Valid values are YES, NO, or CONSISTENT. When FlashCopy is used, a separate data set is created for each partition or piece of the object.

The FlashCopy specifications on the utility control statement override any specifications for FlashCopy that are defined by using the DB2 subsystem parameters. If the FlashCopy subsystem parameters specify the use of FlashCopy as the default behavior of this utility, the FLASHCOPY option can be omitted from the utility control statement.

Important: If the input data set is less than one cylinder, FlashCopy technology might not be used for copying the objects regardless of the FLASHCOPY settings. The copy is performed by IDCAMS if FlashCopy is not used.

|
| **NO**

| Specifies that no FlashCopy is made. NO is the default value for
| FLASHCOPY.

| **YES**

| Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object.

| Specify YES only if the DB2 data sets are on FlashCopy Version 2 disk
| volumes.

| **Important:** Under the following circumstances, the REORG TABLESPACE
| utility might not use FlashCopy even though YES is specified:

- | • FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available
- | • The source tracks are already the target of a FlashCopy operation
- | • The target tracks are the source of a FlashCopy operation
- | • The maximum number of relationships for the copy is exceeded

| In the event that FlashCopy is not used, the REORG TABLESPACE utility
| uses traditional I/O methods to copy the object, which can result in longer
| than expected execution time.

| If SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified when the
| copy operation is forced to use traditional I/O methods, an even longer
| outage might occur, because the FlashCopy image copies are created
| during the SWITCH phase of utility execution.

| **CONSISTENT**

| Specifies that FlashCopy technology is used to copy the object. Because the
| copies created by the REORG TABLESPACE utility are already consistent,
| the utility treats a specification of CONSISTENT the same as a specification
| of YES.

| **FCCOPYDDN**

| Specifies the template to be used to create the FlashCopy image copy data set
| names. If a value is not specified for FCCOPYDDN on the REORG
| TABLESPACE control statement when FlashCopy is used, the value specified
| on the FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter determines the template to be used.

| (*template-name*)

| The data set names for the FlashCopy image copy are allocated according
| to the template specification. For table space or index space level
| FlashCopy image copies, because a data set is allocated for each partition
| or piece, ensure that the data set naming convention in the template
| specification is unique enough. Use the &DSNUM variable, which resolves
| to a partition number or piece number at execution time.

| **AUTOESTSPACE**

| Specifies that REORG automatically calculates and formats the size of the fixed
| hash space for hash-organized table spaces. The use of AUTOESTSPACE yes
| might reduce the number of rows in the overflow area.

| **YES**

| Specifies that DB2 uses real time statistics (RTS) values to adjust the size of
| the hash space. User-specified HASH SPACE values stored in the
| SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE and SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART catalog tables are
| not changed. YES is the default value for AUTOESTSPACE.

| **NO**

| Specifies that DB2 uses the HASH SPACE value specified for CREATE

TABLE or ALTER TABLE. These values are stored in the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE and SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART catalog tables.

SHRLEVEL

Specifies the method that is to be used for the reorganization. The parameter following SHRLEVEL indicates the type of access that is to be allowed during the RELOAD phase of REORG.

NONE

Specifies that reorganization is to operate as follows:

- Unloading from the area that is being reorganized (while applications can read but cannot write to the area)
- Reloading into that area (while applications have no access), and then allowing read-write access again

If you specify NONE (explicitly or by default), you cannot specify the following parameters:

- MAPPINGTABLE
- MAXRO
- LONGLOG
- DELAY
- DEADLINE
- DRAIN_WAIT
- RETRY
- RETRY_DELAY

Restriction: If you specify UNLOAD PAUSE or UNLOAD ONLY, you cannot specify NOSYSREC. SHRLEVEL NONE cannot be specified for tables that are defined with ORGANIZE BY HASH.

When SHRLEVEL NONE is specified, pending definition changes are not materialized.

Starting in DB2 Version 10 new-function mode, SHRLEVEL NONE is not supported when REORG is run against a LOB table space.

In DB2 Version 10 conversion mode, if SHRLEVEL NONE is specified when the target table space is a LOB table space, SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is used.

REFERENCE

Specifies that reorganization is to operate as follows:

- Unloading from the area that is being reorganized (while applications can read but cannot write to the area)
- Reloading into a shadow copy of that area (while applications can read but cannot write to the original copy)
- Switching the future access of an application from the original copy to the shadow copy by exchanging the names of the data sets, and then allowing read-write access again

If you specify REFERENCE for a LOB table space, you must take an inline copy during the reorganization.

To determine which data sets are required when you execute REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE.

If you specify REFERENCE, you cannot specify the following parameters:

- LOG. Reorganization with REFERENCE always creates an image copy and always refrains from logging records during reloading.

- UNLOAD. Reorganization with REFERENCE always performs UNLOAD CONTINUE.
- MAPPINGTABLE.

Restriction: You cannot specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE when REORG TABLESPACE with PART is run on a NOT LOGGED table space on which nonpartitioned indexes are defined.

CHANGE

Specifies that reorganization is to operate as follows:

- By unloading from the area that is being reorganized (while applications can read and write to the area)
- Reloading into a shadow copy of that area (while applications have read-write access to the original copy of the area)
- Applying the log of the original copy to the shadow copy (while applications can read and usually write to the original copy)
- Switching the future access of an application from the original copy to the shadow copy by exchanging the names of the data sets, and then allowing read-write access again

To determine which data sets are required when you execute REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE.

If you specify CHANGE, you cannot specify the following parameters:

- LOG. Reorganization with CHANGE always creates an image copy and always refrains from logging records during reloading.
- UNLOAD. Reorganization with CHANGE always performs UNLOAD CONTINUE.

If you specify CHANGE, you must create a mapping table and specify the name of the mapping table with the MAPPINGTABLE option.

Restriction: You cannot specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE if the table space has the NOT LOGGED attribute, unless the table space is a LOB table space.

DEADLINE

Specifies the deadline for the SWITCH phase to begin. If DB2 estimates that the SWITCH phase will not begin by the deadline, DB2 issues the messages that the DISPLAY UTILITY command would issue and then terminates the reorganization.

The final result and all the timestamp calculation of DEADLINE will be in TIMESTAMP(6).

If REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE terminates because of a DEADLINE specification, DB2 issues message DSNU374I with reason code 2 but does not set a restrictive status.

NONE

Specifies that a deadline by which the SWITCH phase of log processing must begin does not exist.

timestamp

Specifies the deadline for the SWITCH phase of log processing to begin. This deadline must not have already occurred when REORG is executed.

labeled-duration-expression

Calculates the deadline for the SWITCH phase of log processing to begin.

The calculation is based on either CURRENT_TIMESTAMP or CURRENT_DATE. You can add or subtract one or more *constant* value to specify the deadline. This deadline must not have already occurred when REORG is executed. CURRENT_TIMESTAMP and CURRENT_DATE are evaluated once, when the REORG statement is first processed. If a list of objects is specified, the same value will be in effect for all objects in the list.

CURRENT_DATE

Specifies that the deadline is to be calculated based on the CURRENT_DATE.

CURRENT_TIMESTAMP

Specifies that the deadline is to be calculated based on the CURRENT_TIMESTAMP.

WITH TIME_ZONE

Specifies that the CURRENT_TIMESTAMP is compared with the time zone column. The timestamp precision of the special register CURRENT_TIMESTAMP should be the same as the column timestamp precision. Otherwise the default timestamp precision is used. The time zone of CURRENT_TIMESTAMP is the value of special register CURRENT_TIMEZONE. The comparison is done by comparing the UTC portion of the timestamp.

constant

Indicates a unit of time and is followed by one of the seven duration keywords: YEARS, MONTHS, DAYS, HOURS, MINUTES, SECONDS, or MICROSECONDS. The singular form of these words is also acceptable: YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND, MICROSECOND.

DRAIN_WAIT *integer*

Specifies the number of seconds that the utility waits when draining the table space or index. The specified time is the aggregate time for objects that are to be reorganized. This value overrides the values that are specified by IRLMRWT and UTIMOUT. Valid values for *integer* are from 0 to 1800. If the keyword is omitted or if a value of 0 is specified, the utility uses the value of the lock timeout system parameter IRLMRWT.

RETRY *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of retries that REORG is to attempt. Valid values for *integer* are from 0 to 255.

Specifying RETRY can lead to increased processing costs and can result in multiple or extended periods of read-only access. For example, when you specify RETRY and SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the size of the copy that is taken by REORG might increase.

The default value is the value of the UTIMOUT subsystem parameter.

RETRY_DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum duration, in seconds, between retries. Valid values for *integer* are from 1 to 1800.

If you do not specify RETRY_DELAY, REORG TABLESPACE uses the smaller of the following two values:

- DRAIN_WAIT value × RETRY value
- DRAIN_WAIT value × 10

MAPPINGTABLE *table-name*

Specifies the name of the mapping table that REORG TABLESPACE is to use to

map between the RIDs of data records in the original copy of the area and the corresponding RIDs in the shadow copy. This parameter is required if you specify `SHRLEVEL CHANGE`, and you must create a mapping table and an index for it before running `REORG TABLESPACE`. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

MAXRO *integer*

Specifies the maximum amount of time for the last iteration of log processing. During that iteration, applications have read-only access. `MAXRO` is a log phase parameter. If `MAXRO` is specified when a log phase is not needed, an error message is issued.

The actual execution time of the last iteration might exceed the specified value for `MAXRO`.

The `ALTER UTILITY` command can change the value of `MAXRO`.

The default value is the `RETRY_DELAY` default value.

integer

integer is the number of seconds. Specifying a small positive value reduces the length of the period of read-only access, but it might increase the elapsed time for `REORG` to complete. If you specify a huge positive value, the second iteration of log processing is probably the last iteration.

DEFER

Specifies that the iterations of log processing with read-write access can continue indefinitely. `REORG` never begins the final iteration with read-only access, unless you change the `MAXRO` value with `ALTER UTILITY`.

If you specify `DEFER`, you should also specify `LONGLOG CONTINUE`.

If you specify `DEFER`, and DB2 determines that the actual time for an iteration and the estimated time for the next iteration are both less than 5 seconds, DB2 adds a 5 second pause to the next iteration. This pause reduces consumption of processor time. The first time this situation occurs for a given execution of `REORG`, DB2 sends message `DSNU362I` to the console. The message states that the number of log records that must be processed is small and that the pause occurs. To change the `MAXRO` value and thus cause `REORG` to finish, execute the `ALTER UTILITY` command. DB2 adds the pause whenever the situation occurs; however, DB2 sends the message only if 30 minutes have elapsed since the last message was sent for a given execution of `REORG`.

DRAIN

Specifies drain behavior at the end of the log phase after the `MAXRO` threshold is reached and when the last iteration of the log is to be applied. `DRAIN` is a log phase parameter. If `DRAIN` is specified when a log phase is not needed, an error message is issued.

WRITERS

Specifies the current default action, in which DB2 drains only the writers during the log phase after the `MAXRO` threshold is reached and subsequently issues `DRAIN ALL` on entering the switch phase.

ALL

Specifies that DB2 is to drain all readers and writers during the log phase, after the `MAXRO` threshold is reached.

Consider specifying `DRAIN ALL` if the following conditions are both true:

- SQL update activity is high during the log phase.

- The default behavior results in a large number of -911 SQL error codes.

LONGLOG

Specifies the action that DB2 is to perform, after sending a message to the console, if the number of records that the next iteration of logging is to process is not sufficiently lower than the number that the previous iterations processed. This situation means that the reading of the log by the REORG TABLESPACE utility is not being done at the same time as the writing of the application log. LONGLOG is a log phase parameter. If LONGLOG is specified when a log phase is not needed, an error message is issued.

CONTINUE

Specifies that until the time on the JOB statement expires, DB2 is to continue performing reorganization, including iterations of log processing, if the estimated time to perform an iteration exceeds the time that is specified for MAXRO.

A value of DEFER for MAXRO and a value of CONTINUE for LONGLOG together mean that REORG is to continue allowing access to the original copy of the area that is being reorganized and does not switch to the shadow copy. The user can execute the ALTER UTILITY command with a large value for MAXRO to initiate switching.

TERM

Specifies that DB2 is to terminate the reorganization after the delay that is specified by the DELAY parameter.

DRAIN

Specifies that DB2 is to drain the write claim class after the delay that is specified by the DELAY parameter. This action forces the final iteration of log processing to occur. DRAIN is a log phase parameter. If DRAIN is specified when a log phase is not needed, an error message is issued.

DELAY *integer*

Specifies the minimum interval between the time that REORG sends the LONGLOG message to the console and the time that REORG performs the action that is specified by the LONGLOG parameter. DELAY is a log phase parameter. If DELAY is specified when a log phase is not needed, an error message is issued.

integer is the number of seconds.

The default value is 1200.

TIMEOUT

Specifies the action that is to be taken if the REORG utility gets a time-out condition while trying to drain an object in either the log or switch phases.

TERM

Indicates that DB2 is to behave as follows if you specify the TERM option and a time-out condition occurs:

1. DB2 issues an implicit TERM UTILITY command, causing the utility to end with a return code 8.
2. DB2 issues the DSNU590I and DSNU170I messages.
3. DB2 leaves the object in a read-write state.

ABEND

Indicates that, if a time-out condition occurs, DB2 takes one of the following actions:

- If DRAIN ALL is specified, DB2 leaves the object in a UTRW state.

- If DRAIN WRITERS is specified or used by default:
 - If the failure occurs when there is a write drain lock on the object, DB2 leaves the object in a UTRW state.
 - If the failure occurs when there is a read drain lock on the object, DB2 leaves the object in a UTRO state.

FORCE

Specifies the action to be taken when the utility is draining the table space.

When REORG FORCE is canceling the threads, it performs a soft cancel similar to the cancel that the CANCEL THREAD does.

NONE

Specifies that no action is taken when REORG performs drain. The REORG utility waits for the claimers to commit. The utility will timeout or restart when the drain fails, as determined by existing conditions.

READERS

Specifies that read claimers are canceled when REORG is requesting a drain all on the last RETRY processing.

ALL

specifies that both read and write claimers are canceled when REORG is requesting a drain all or drain writers on the last RETRY processing.

AUX

Specifies that the LOB table spaces associated with the partitions of a partitioned table space being reorganized by the REORG utility are also reorganized.

NO

Indicates that a reorganization is performed on the base table space, but the associated LOB table spaces are not reorganized.

If the AUX keyword is omitted, AUX NO is the default unless one of the cases described in AUX YES are true.

YES

Indicates that LOB table spaces associated with the base partitioned table space are reorganized when the base table space is reorganized. Partitions of the associated table spaces are also reorganized.

If the AUX keyword is omitted, in the following cases, AUX YES is the default:

- REORG TABLESPACE of a partition-by-growth base table space with one or more LOB columns, where the REORG is reorganizing the entire partition-by-growth table space.
- REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE REBALANCE of a partitioned base table space with one or more LOB columns.
- REORG TABLESPACE of a partitioned base table space with one or more LOB columns where one or more partition ranges are in REORG pending state because an ALTER TABLE PARTITION command has been issued to change the partition key boundaries.
- REORG TABLESPACE DISCARD of a table in a partitioned table space with one or more LOB columns.

When AUX YES is implicitly or explicitly specified, and the COPYDDN parameter specifies a TEMPLATE utility control statement with the &SN. or &TS. variables, REORG takes the following actions for the LOB table spaces:

- Creates inline image copies
- Resets COPY-pending status

Restriction: When REORG with AUX YES is run on a partition-by-growth table space with LOB columns, and REORG generates a new partition during the LOG phase, REORG cannot create inline image copies for LOB table spaces for the newly created partition. REORG leaves the LOB tables space in COPY-pending status and issues a warning message.

Recommendation: After running REORG with AUX YES on a partition-by-growth table space with LOB columns, run COPY with SCOPE PENDING and a LISTDEF utility control statement that includes the LOB table spaces. Doing so creates a recovery base and removes COPY-pending status for the LOB table spaces.

FASTSWITCH

Specifies which switch methodology is to be used for a given reorganization.

YES

Enables the SWITCH phase to use the FASTSWITCH methodology. This option is not allowed for the catalog (DSNDB06) or directory (DSNDB01).

NO

Causes the SWITCH phase to use IDCAMS RENAME.

When FASTSWITCH NO is specified with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, pending definition changes are not materialized.

OFFPOSLIMIT *integer*

Indicates that the specified value is to be compared to the value that DB2 calculates for the explicit clustering indexes of every table in the specified partitions that are in SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART. The calculation is computed as follows:

$$(\text{NEAROFFPOSF} + \text{FAROFFPOSF}) \times 100 / \text{CARDF}$$

Alternatively, DB2 checks the values in SYSINDEXPART for a single nonpartitioned table space, or for each partition if you specified an entire partitioned table space as the target object. If at least one calculated value exceeds the OFFPOSLIMIT value, REORG is performed or recommended. This option is valid for non-LOB table spaces only.

integer is the value that is to be compared and can range from 0 to 65535.

The default value is 10.

INDREFLIMIT *integer*

Indicates that the specified value is to be compared to the value that DB2 calculates for the specified partitions in SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART for the specified table space. The calculation is computed as follows:

$$(\text{NEARINDREF} + \text{FARINDREF}) \times 100 / \text{CARDF}$$

Alternatively, DB2 checks the values in SYSTABLEPART for a single nonpartitioned table space, or for each partition if you specified an entire partitioned table space as the target object. If at least one calculated value exceeds the calculated value exceeds the INDREFLIMIT value, REORG is performed or recommended. This option is valid for non-LOB table spaces only.

integer is the value that is to be compared and can range from 0 to 65535.

The default value is 10.

REPORTONLY

Specifies that REORG is only to be recommended, not performed. REORG produces a report with one of the following return codes:

- 1 No limit met; no REORG is to be performed or recommended.
- 2 REORG is to be performed or recommended.

UNLOAD

Specifies whether the utility job is to continue processing or end after the data is unloaded. Unless you specify UNLOAD EXTERNAL, data can be reloaded only into the same table and table space (as defined in the DB2 catalog) on the same subsystem. (This does not preclude VSAM redefinition during UNLOAD PAUSE.)

You must specify UNLOAD ONLY for the data set to be in a format that is compatible with the FORMAT UNLOAD option of LOAD. However, with LOAD, you can load the data only into the same object from which it is unloaded.

This option is valid for non-LOB table spaces only.

You must specify UNLOAD EXTERNAL for the data set to be in a format that is usable by LOAD without the FORMAT UNLOAD option. With UNLOAD EXTERNAL, you can load the data into any table with compatible columns in any table space on any DB2 subsystem.

CONTINUE

Specifies that, after the data has been unloaded, the utility is to continue processing. An edit routine can be called to decode a previously encoded data row if an index key requires extraction from that row.

If you specify DISCARD, rows are decompressed and edit routines are decoded. If you also specify DISCARD to a file, rows are decoded by field procedure, and the following columns are converted to DB2 external format:

- SMALLINT
- INTEGER
- FLOAT
- DECIMAL
- TIME
- TIMESTAMP

Otherwise, edit routines or field procedures are bypassed on both the UNLOAD and RELOAD phases for table spaces. Validation procedures are not invoked during either phase.

PAUSE

Specifies that, after the data has been unloaded, processing is to end. The utility stops and the RELOAD status is stored in SYSIBM.SYSUTIL so that processing can be restarted with RELOAD RESTART(PHASE).

This option is useful if you want to redefine data sets during reorganization. For example, with a user-defined data set, you can:

- Run REORG with the UNLOAD PAUSE option.
- Redefine the data set by using Access Method Services.
- Restart REORG by resubmitting the previous job and specifying RESTART(PHASE).

However, you cannot use UNLOAD PAUSE if you specify the LIST option.

ONLY

Specifies that, after the data has been unloaded, the utility job ends and the status that corresponds to this utility ID is removed from SYSIBM.SYSUTIL.

If you specify UNLOAD ONLY with REORG TABLESPACE, any edit routine or field procedure is executed during record retrieval in the unload phase.

This option is not allowed for any table space in DSNDB01 or DSNDB06.

The DISCARD and WHEN options are not allowed with UNLOAD ONLY.

EXTERNAL

Specifies that, after the data has been unloaded, the utility job is to end and the status that corresponds to this utility ID is removed.

The UNLOAD utility has more functions. If you specify UNLOAD EXTERNAL with REORG TABLESPACE, rows are decompressed, edit routines are decoded, field procedures are decoded, and SMALLINT, INTEGER, FLOAT, DECIMAL, DATE, TIME, and TIMESTAMP columns are converted to DB2 external format. Validation procedures are not invoked.

Do not specify the EXTERNAL keyword for:

- Table spaces in DSNDB01 or DSNDB06
- Base tables with XML columns
- XML table spaces

The DISCARD option is not allowed with UNLOAD EXTERNAL.

NOPAD

Specifies that the variable-length columns in the unloaded or discarded records are to occupy the actual data length without additional padding. The unloaded records can have varying lengths. If you do not specify NOPAD, default REORG processing pads variable-length columns in the unloaded or discarded records to their maximum length; the unloaded or discarded records have equal lengths for each table.

You can specify the NOPAD option only with UNLOAD EXTERNAL or with UNLOAD DISCARD.

Although the LOAD utility processes records with variable-length columns that were unloaded or discarded with the NOPAD option, these records cannot be processed by applications that process only fields that are in fixed positions.

For the generated LOAD statement to provide a NULLIF condition for fields that are not in a fixed position, DB2 generates an input field definition with a name in the form of DSN_NULL_IND_#####, where ##### is the number of the associated column.

For example, the LOAD statement that is generated for the EMP sample table looks similar to the LOAD statement that is in the following figure:

```
LOAD DATA INDDN SYSREC LOG NO RESUME YES
EBCDIC CCSID(00500,00000,00000)
INTO TABLE "DSN81010"."EMP"
WHEN(00004:00005 = X'0012')
( "EMPNO           " POSITION(00007:00012) CHAR(006)
, "FIRSTNME       " POSITION(00013)    VARCHAR
, "MIDINIT        " POSITION(*)        CHAR(001)
, "LASTNAME       " POSITION(*)        VARCHAR
, DSN_NULL_IND_00005 POSITION(*)        CHAR(1)
, "WORKDEPT       " POSITION(*)        CHAR(003)
```


selection condition

Specifies a condition that is true, false, or unknown about a specific row. When the condition is true, the row qualifies for UNLOAD or DISCARD. When the condition is false or unknown, the row does not qualify.

A selection condition consists of at least one predicate and any *logical operators* (AND, OR, NOT). The result of a selection condition is derived by applying the specified *logical operators* to the result of each specified predicate. If logical operators are not specified, the result of the selection condition is the result of the specified predicate.

Selection conditions within parentheses are evaluated first. If the order of evaluation is not specified by parentheses, AND is applied before OR.

If the control statement is in the same encoding scheme as the input data, you can code character constants in the control statement. Otherwise, if the control statement is not in the same encoding scheme as the input data, you must code the condition with hexadecimal constants. If the target table is ASCII, any character constants must be specified in hexadecimal. For example, if the table space is in EBCDIC and the control statement is in UTF-8, use (1:1)=X'F1' in the condition rather than (1:1)='1'.

Restriction: REORG TABLESPACE cannot filter rows that contain encrypted data.

predicate

A *predicate* specifies a condition that is true, false, or unknown about a given row or group.

basic predicate

Specifies the comparison of a column with a constant. If the value of the column is null, the result of the predicate is unknown. Otherwise, the result of the predicate is true or false.

Predicate

Is true if and only if

column-name = **constant**

The column is equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

column-name < > **constant**

The column is not equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

column-name > **constant**

The column is greater than the constant or labeled duration expression.

column-name < **constant**

The column is less than the constant or labeled duration expression.

column-name > = **constant**

The column is greater than or equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

column-name < = **constant**

The column is less than or equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

Comparison operators: The following forms of the comparison operators are also supported in basic and quantified predicates: !=, !<, and !>, where ! means not. In addition, in code pages 437, 819, and 850, the forms $\neg=$, $\neg<$, and $\neg>$ are supported. All these product-specific forms of the comparison operators are intended only to support existing REORG statements that use these operators and are not recommended for use in new REORG statements.

A not sign (\neg), or the character that must be used in its place in certain countries, can cause parsing errors in statements that are passed from one DBMS to another. The problem occurs if the statement undergoes character conversion with certain combinations of source and target CCSIDs. To avoid this problem, substitute an equivalent operator for any operator that includes a not sign. For example, substitute '< >' for ' $\neg=$ ', '<=>' for ' $\neg>$ ', and '>=>' for ' $\neg<$ '.

BETWEEN predicate

Indicates whether a given value lies between two other given values that are specified in ascending order. Each of the predicate's two forms (BETWEEN and NOT BETWEEN) has an equivalent search condition, as shown in the following table. If relevant, the table also shows any equivalent predicates.

Table 77. BETWEEN predicates and their equivalent search conditions

Predicate	Equivalent predicate	Equivalent search condition
<i>column</i> BETWEEN <i>value1</i> AND <i>value2</i>	None	(<i>column</i> >= <i>value1</i> AND <i>column</i> <= <i>value2</i>)
<i>column</i> NOT BETWEEN <i>value1</i> AND <i>value2</i>	NOT(<i>column</i> BETWEEN <i>value1</i> AND <i>value2</i>)	(<i>column</i> < <i>value1</i> OR <i>column</i> > <i>value2</i>)

Note: The values can be constants or labeled duration expressions.

For example, the following predicate is true for any row when salary is greater than or equal to 10 000 and less than or equal to 20 000:

SALARY BETWEEN 10000 AND 20000

labeled-duration-expression

Specifies an expression that begins with the following special register values:

- CURRENT DATE (CURRENT_DATE is acceptable.)
- CURRENT TIMESTAMP (CURRENT_TIMESTAMP is acceptable.)

Optionally, the expression contains the arithmetic operations of addition or subtraction, expressed by a number followed by one of the seven duration keywords:

- YEARS (or YEAR)
- MONTHS (or MONTH)
- DAYS (or DAY)
- HOURS (or HOUR)
- MINUTES (or MINUTE)
- SECONDS (or SECOND)
- MICROSECONDS (or MICROSECOND)

Utilities evaluate a *labeled-duration-expression* as a timestamp and implicitly perform a conversion to a date if the comparison is with a date column.

Incrementing and decrementing CURRENT DATE: The result of adding a duration to a date, or of subtracting a duration from a date, is itself a date. (For the purposes of this operation, a month denotes the equivalent of a calendar page. Adding months to a date, then, is like turning the pages of a calendar, starting with the page on which the date appears.) The result must fall between the dates January 1, 0001 and December 31, 9999 inclusive.

The following table describes the effects of adding and subtracting years, months, days, and other dates.

Table 78. Effects of adding durations to and subtracting durations from CURRENT DATE

Value that is added or subtracted	Effect
Years	Adding or subtracting a duration of years affects only the year portion of the date. The month is unchanged, as is the day unless the result would be February 29 of a non-leap-year. In this case, the day portion of the result is set to 28.
Months	<p>Adding or subtracting a duration of months affects only months and, if necessary, years. The day portion of the date is unchanged unless that day does not exist in the resulting month. (September 31, for example). In this case the day is set to the last day of the month.</p> <p>Adding a month to a date gives the same day one month later unless that day does not exist in the later month. In that case, the day in the result is set to the last day of the later month. For example, January 28 plus one month gives February 28; one month added to January 29, 30, or 31 results in either February 28 or, for a leap year, February 29. If one or more months is added to a given date and then the same number of months is subtracted from the result, the final date is not necessarily the same as the original date.</p>
Days	Adding or subtracting a duration of days affects the day portion of the date, and potentially the month and year.
Dates	<p>When a positive date duration is added to a date, or a negative date duration is subtracted from a date, the date is incremented by the specified number of years, months, and days.</p> <p>When a positive date duration is subtracted from a date, or a negative date duration is added to a date, the date is decremented by the specified number of days, months, and years.</p>

The order in which labeled date durations are added to and subtracted from dates can affect the results. When you add labeled date durations to a date, specify them in the order of YEARS + MONTHS + DAYS. When you subtract labeled date durations from a date, specify them in the order of DAYS - MONTHS - YEARS. For example, to add one year and one day to a date, specify the following code:

```
CURRENT DATE + 1 YEAR + 1 DAY
```

To subtract one year, one month, and one day from a date, specify the following code:

```
CURRENT DATE - 1 DAY - 1 MONTH - 1 YEAR
```

Incrementing and decrementing timestamps: The result of adding a duration to a timestamp, or of subtracting a duration from a timestamp, is itself a timestamp. Date and time arithmetic is performed as previously defined, except that an overflow or underflow of hours is carried into the date part of the result, which must be within the range of valid dates. For example, if the current date is January 15 and the current time is 20:00, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP+8 HOURS yields January 16, 04:00. Likewise, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP-22 HOURS yields January 14, 22:00.

IN predicate

Specifies that a value is to be compared with a set of values. In the IN predicate, the second operand is a set of one or more values that are specified by constants. Each of the predicate's two forms (IN and NOT IN) has an equivalent search condition, as shown in the following table.

Table 79. IN predicates and their equivalent search conditions

Predicate	Equivalent search condition
<i>value1</i> IN (<i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> ,..., <i>valuen</i>)	(<i>value1</i> = <i>value2</i> OR ... OR <i>value1</i> = <i>valuen</i>)
<i>value1</i> NOT IN (<i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> ,..., <i>valuen</i>)	<i>value1</i> \neq <i>value2</i> AND ... AND <i>value1</i> \neq <i>valuen</i>)

Note: The values can be constants or labeled duration expressions.

For example, the following predicate is true for any row with an employee in department D11, B01, or C01:

```
WORKDEPT IN ('D11', 'B01', 'C01')
```

LIKE predicate

Qualifies strings that have a certain pattern. Specify the pattern by using a string in which the underscore and percent sign characters can be used as wildcard characters. The underscore character (_) represents a single, arbitrary character. The percent sign (%) represents a string of zero or more arbitrary characters.

In this description, let *x* denote the column that is to be tested and *y* denote the pattern in the string constant.

The following rules apply to predicates of the form “*x* LIKE *y*...”. If NOT is specified, the result is reversed.

- When *x* or *y* is null, the result of the predicate is unknown.
- When *y* is empty and *x* is not empty, the result of the predicate is false.
- When *x* is empty and *y* is not empty, the result of the predicate is false unless *y* consists only of one or more percent signs.
- When *x* and *y* are both empty, the result of the predicate is true.
- When *x* and *y* are both not null, the result of the predicate is true if *x* matches the pattern in *y* and false if *x* does not match the pattern in *y*.

The pattern string and the string that is to be tested must be of the same type; that is, both *x* and *y* must be character strings, or both *x* and *y* must be graphic strings. When *x* and *y* are graphic strings, a character is a DBCS character. When *x* and *y* are character strings and

x is not mixed data, a character is an SBCS character, and y is interpreted as SBCS data regardless of its subtype.

Within the pattern, a percent sign (%) or underscore character (_) can represent the literal occurrence of a percent sign or underscore character. To have a literal meaning, each character must be preceded by an escape character.

The ESCAPE clause designates a single character. You can use that character, and only that character, multiple times within the pattern as an escape character. When the ESCAPE clause is omitted, no character serves as an escape character and percent signs and underscores in the pattern can only be used to represent arbitrary characters; they cannot represent their literal occurrences.

The following rules apply to the use of the ESCAPE clause:

- The ESCAPE clause cannot be used if x is mixed data.
- If x is a character string, the data type of the string constant must be character string. If x is a graphic string, the data type of the string constant must be graphic string. In both cases, the length of the string constant must be 1.
- The pattern must not contain the escape character except when followed by the escape character, '%', or '_'. For example, if '+' is the escape character, any occurrences of '+' other than '++', '+_', or '+%' in the pattern is an error.

When that pattern does not include escape characters, a simple description of its meaning is:

- The underscore character (_) represents a single, arbitrary character.
- The percent sign (%) represents a string of zero or more arbitrary characters.
- Any other character represents a single occurrence of itself.

Strings and patterns:

The string y is interpreted as a sequence of the minimum number of substring specifiers, such that each character of y is part of exactly one substring specifier. A substring specifier is an underscore, a percent sign, or any non-empty sequence of characters other than an underscore or percent sign.

The string x matches the pattern y if a partitioning of x into substrings exists, such that:

- A substring of x is a sequence of zero or more contiguous characters, and each character of x is part of exactly one substring.
- If the n th substring specifier is an underscore, the n th substring of x is any single character.
- If the n th substring specifier is a percent sign, the n th substring of x is any sequence of zero or more characters.
- If the n th substring specifier is neither an underscore nor a percent sign, the n th substring of x is equal to that substring specifier and has the same length as that substring specifier.
- The number of substrings of x is the same as the number of substring specifiers.

When escape characters are present in the pattern string, an underscore, percent sign, or escape character represents a single occurrence of itself if and only if it is preceded by an odd number of successive escape characters.

Mixed-data patterns:

If *x* is mixed data, the pattern is assumed to be mixed data, and its special characters are interpreted as follows:

- A single-byte underscore refers to one single-byte character; a double-byte underscore refers to one double-byte character.
- A percent sign, either single-byte or double-byte, refers to any number of characters of any type, either single-byte or double-byte.
- Redundant shift bytes in *x* or *y* are ignored.

NULL predicate

Specifies a test for null values.

If the value of the column is null, the result is true. If the value is not null, the result is false. If NOT is specified, the result is reversed.

KEEPDICTIONARY

Prevents REORG TABLESPACE from building a new compression dictionary when unloading the rows. The efficiency of REORG increases with the KEEPDICTIONARY option for the following reasons:

- The processing cost of building the compression dictionary is eliminated.
- Existing compressed rows do not need to be compressed again.
- Existing compressed rows do not need to be expanded, unless indexes require it or SORTDATA is used.

Possible reasons for not specifying KEEPDICTIONARY are:

- If the data has changed significantly since the last dictionary was built, rebuilding the dictionary might save a significant amount of space.
- If the current dictionary was built either by the LOAD utility or automatically by DB2 based on records that have been inserted over time, rebuilding the dictionary by using REORG might produce a better compression dictionary.
- If the data is being converted from basic row format to reordered row format, REORG will build a new dictionary for the new format. DB2 ignores the KEEPDICTIONARY option if the REORG utility changes the table space from basic row format to reordered row format.

KEEPDICTIONARY is valid only if a compression dictionary exists and the table space or partition that is being reorganized has the COMPRESS YES attribute. If a dictionary does not exist, one is built, a warning message is issued, and all the records are compressed.

Messages DSNU234I and DSNU244I, which show compression statistics, are not issued when you specify REORG UNLOAD CONTINUE KEEPDICTIONARY or REORG UNLOAD PAUSE KEEPDICTIONARY.

REORG ignores the KEEPDICTIONARY option if a partition that is being reorganized is in REORG-pending status.

Note: You must use KEEPDICTIONARY to ensure that the compression dictionary is maintained.

STATISTICS

Specifies that statistics for the table space or associated index, or both, are to be gathered; the statistics are reported or stored in the DB2 catalog. If statistics are collected with the default options, only the statistics for the table space are updated.

If you specify a table space partition or a range of partitions along with the STATISTICS keyword, DB2 collects statistics only for the specified table space partitions. This option is valid for non-LOB table spaces only.

If you specify a base table space with the STATISTICS keyword, DB2 does not gather statistics for the related XML table space or its indexes.

Restrictions:

- If you specify STATISTICS for encrypted data, DB2 might not provide useful statistics on this data.
- You cannot specify STATISTICS if you specify the CLONE keyword.

Statistics for both table space and associated indexes are collected and updated in the DB2 catalog when:

- When pending definition changes are materialized during REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE.

If the STATISTICS keyword in the REORG TABLESPACE statement are specified, the options specified overwrite the default options.

Recommendation: Partition statistics can become obsolete. The partition statistics that can be obsolete are COLGROUP statistics, statistics for key column values in indexes, HISTOGRAM statistics, frequency statistics with NUMCOLS > 1, and statistics for extended indexes where applicable. Run the RUNSTATS utility to collect the partition statistics again.

If the STATISTICS keyword was not specified in the REORG TABLESPACE statement, the following keywords are used by default:

- STATISTICS TABLE ALL
- INDEX ALL
- UPDATE ALL
- HISTORY ALL

TABLE

Specifies the table for which column information is to be gathered. All tables must belong to the table space that is specified in the TABLESPACE option.

Do not specify STATISTICS TABLE *table-name* with REORG TABLESPACE LIST. Instead, specify STATISTICS TABLE (ALL).

(ALL)

Specifies that information is to be gathered for all columns of all tables in the table space.

(*table-name*)

Specifies the tables for which column information is to be gathered. If you omit the qualifier, the user identifier for the utility job is used. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

If you specify more than one table, you must repeat the TABLE option. Multiple TABLE options must be specified entirely before or after any INDEX keyword that may also be specified. For example, the INDEX keyword may not be specified between any two TABLE keywords.

SAMPLE *integer*

Indicates the percentage of rows to be sampled when collecting non-indexed column statistics. You can specify any value from 1 through 100.

The default value is 25. The SAMPLE option is not allowed for LOB table spaces.

COLUMN

Specifies columns for which column information is to be gathered.

You can specify this option only if you specify a particular table for which statistics are to be gathered (TABLE (*table-name*)). If you specify particular tables and do not specify the COLUMN option, the default, COLUMN(ALL), is used. If you do not specify a particular table when using the TABLE option, you cannot specify the COLUMN option; however, COLUMN(ALL) is assumed.

(ALL)

Specifies that statistics are to be gathered for all columns in the table.

(*column-name, ...*)

Specifies the columns for which statistics are to be gathered.

You can specify a list of column names; the maximum is 10. If you specify more than one column, separate each name with a comma.

INDEX

Specifies indexes for which information is to be gathered. Column information is gathered for the first column of the index. All the indexes must be associated with the same table space, which must be the table space that is specified in the TABLESPACE option.

Do not specify STATISTICS INDEX *index-name* with REORG TABLESPACE LIST. Instead, specify STATISTICS INDEX (ALL).

(ALL)

Specifies that the column information is to be gathered for all indexes that are defined on tables that are contained in the table space.

(*index-name*)

Specifies the indexes for which information is to be gathered. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

KEYCARD

The KEYCARD option is deprecated in the REORG TABLESPACE control statement and no longer needs to be specified to collect cardinality statistics on the values in the key columns of an index.

When the STATISTICS and INDEX options are specified, the REORG TABLESPACE utility always collects all of the distinct values in all of the 1 to *n* key column combinations in an index. *n* is the number of columns in the index. With the deprecation of KEYCARD, this functionality cannot be disabled.

The REORG TABLESPACE utility tolerates the specification of the KEYCARD option. The utility does not issue any messages if the control statement includes or excludes the KEYCARD option when STATISTICS and INDEX are specified.

FREQVAL

Specifies that frequent-value statistics are to be collected. If you specify FREQVAL, you must also specify NUMCOLS and COUNT.

NUMCOLS

Indicates the number of key columns to concatenate together when you collect frequent values from the specified index. Specifying 3 means that DB2 is to collect frequent values on the concatenation of the first three key columns.

The default value is 1, which means DB2 is to collect frequent values on the first key column of the index.

COUNT

Indicates the number of frequent values that are to be collected. For example, specifying 15 means that DB2 is to collect 15 frequent values from the specified key columns.

The default value is 10.

REPORT

Specifies whether a set of messages is to be generated to report the collected statistics.

NO

Indicates that the set of messages is not to be sent as output to SYSPRINT.

YES

Indicates that the set of messages is to be sent as output to SYSPRINT. The generated messages are dependent on the combination of keywords (such as TABLESPACE, INDEX, TABLE, and COLUMN) that are specified with the RUNSTATS utility. However, these messages are **not** dependent on the specification of the UPDATE option. REPORT YES always generates a report of SPACE and ACCESSPATH statistics.

UPDATE

Indicates whether the collected statistics are to be inserted into the catalog tables. UPDATE also allows you to select statistics that are used for access path selection or statistics that are used by database administrators.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that only the catalog table columns that provide statistics that are used for access path selection are to be updated.

SPACE

Indicates that only the catalog table columns that provide statistics to help database administrators assess the status of a particular table space or index are to be updated.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog tables are to be updated with the collected statistics. This option is valid only when REPORT YES is specified.

HISTORY

Specifies that all catalog table inserts or updates to the catalog history tables are to be recorded.

The default value is whatever value is specified in the STATISTICS HISTORY field on panel DSNTIPO.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog history tables.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that only the catalog history table columns that provide statistics that are used for access path selection are to be updated.

SPACE

Indicates that only space-related catalog statistics are to be updated in catalog history tables.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog history tables are to be updated with the collected statistics.

DELETE AGE (*integer*)

Deletes all statistics history rows that are related to the specified object and that are older than a specified number of days.

(*integer*)

Specifies the number of days in a range from 0 to 32767. This option cannot delete records that are created today (age 0).

(*) Deletes all records, regardless of their age.

DELETE DATE (*integer*)

(*integer*)

Specifies the date in an eight-character format. Specify a year (yyyy), month (mm), and day (dd) in the form *yyyymmdd*.

(*) Deletes all records, regardless of the date on which they were written.

FORCEROLLUP

Specifies whether aggregation or rollup of statistics is to take place when RUNSTATS is executed even if statistics have not been gathered on some partitions; for example, partitions have not had any data loaded. Aggregate statistics are used by the optimizer to select the best access path.

YES

Indicates that forced aggregation or rollup processing is to be done, even though some partitions might not contain data.

NO

Indicates that aggregation or rollup is to be done only if data is available for all partitions.

If data is not available for all partitions, DSNU623I message is issued if the installation value for STATISTICS ROLLUP on panel DSNTIPO is set to NO.

PUNCHDDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a data set that is to receive the LOAD utility control statements that are generated by REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD EXTERNAL or REORG TABLESPACE DISCARD FROM TABLE ... WHEN.

ddname is the DD name.

The default value is SYSPUNCH.

PUNCHDDN is required if the limit key of the last partition of a partitioned table space has been reduced.

The PUNCHDDN keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

DISCARD *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for a discard data set, which contains copies of records that meet the DISCARD FROM TABLE ... WHEN specification.

ddname is the DD name.

If you omit the DISCARD option, the utility saves discarded records only if a SYSDISC DD statement is in the JCL input.

The default value is **SYSDISC**.

The **DISCARD** keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

UNLDD *ddname*

Specifies the name of the unload data set.

ddname is the DD name of the unload data set.

The default value is **SYSREC**.

The UNLDD keyword specifies either a DD name or a TEMPLATE name specification from a previous TEMPLATE control statement. If utility processing detects that the specified name is both a DD name in the current job step and a TEMPLATE name, the utility uses the DD name.

SORTDEVT *device-type*

Specifies the device type for temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the external sort program.

device-type is the device type; it can be any disk device that is acceptable to the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTION control statement for the sort program.

If you omit SORTDEVT and require a sort of the index keys, you must provide the DD statements that the sort program needs for the temporary data sets.

SORTDEVT is ignored for the catalog and directory table spaces that are listed in "Reorganizing the catalog and directory" on page 553.

SORTDEVT cannot be used for LOB table spaces.

The utility does not allow a TEMPLATE specification to dynamically allocate sort work data sets. The SORTDEVT keyword controls dynamic allocation of these data sets.

SORTNUM *integer*

Specifies the number of temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated for all sorts that REORG performs.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

If you omit SORTDEVT, SORTNUM is ignored. If you use SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program. The sort program uses its own default.

You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort. The SORTNUM value applies to each sort invocation in the utility. For example, if there are three indexes, SORTKEYS is specified, there are no constraints limiting parallelism, and SORTNUM is specified as 8, then a total of 24 sort work data sets will be allocated for a job.

Each sort work data set consumes both above the line and below the line virtual storage, so if you specify too high a value for SORTNUM, the utility may decrease the degree of parallelism due to virtual storage constraints, and possibly decreasing the degree down to one, meaning no parallelism.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

SORTNUM is ignored for the catalog and directory table spaces listed in “Reorganizing the catalog and directory” on page 553.

PREFORMAT

Specifies that the remaining pages are to be preformatted up to the high RBA in the table space and index spaces that are associated with the table that is specified in FROM TABLE *table-name* option. The preformatting occurs after the data is loaded and the indexes are built.

PREFORMAT can operate on an entire table space and its index spaces, or on a partition of a partitioned table space and its corresponding partitioning index space.

PREFORMAT is ignored if you specify UNLOAD ONLY or UNLOAD EXTERNAL.

ROWFORMAT

Specifies the output row format in the affected table space or partition. This keyword affects only utility behavior in Version 9 NFM, and overrides the existing SPRMRRF setting when it is specified. This keyword has no effect on LOB, catalog, directory, XML and Universal Table Spaces participating in a CLONE relationship.

BRF

Specifies that the table space or partition being reorganized or replaced will be converted to or remain in basic row format.

RRF

Specifies that the table space or partition being reorganized or replaced will be converted to or remain in reorder row format.

DISCARD

Specifies that records that meet the specified WHEN conditions are to be discarded during REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or UNLOAD PAUSE. If you specify DISCARD DN or a SYSDISC DD statement in the JCL, discarded records are saved in the associated data set.

You can specify any SHRLEVEL option with DISCARD; however, if you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, modifications that are made during the reorganization to data rows that match the discard criteria are not permitted. In this case, REORG TABLESPACE terminates with an error.

If you specify DISCARD, rows are decompressed and edit routines are decoded. If you also specify DISCARD to a file, rows are decoded by field procedure, and the following columns are converted to DB2 external format:

- SMALLINT
- INTEGER
- FLOAT
- DECIMAL
- TIME
- TIMESTAMP

Otherwise, edit routines or field procedures are bypassed on both the UNLOAD and RELOAD phases for table spaces. Validation procedures are not invoked during either phase.

Do not specify DISCARD with the UNLOAD EXTERNAL or UNLOAD ONLY option.

You cannot specify DISCARD for a base table with XML columns or for an XML table space.

REORG TABLESPACE DISCARD cannot be specified on a system-maintained temporal table space when versioning is active. When versioning is active and DISCARD is specified, REORG TABLESPACE fails with message DSNU076I and return code 8.

Related tasks

 [Compressing your data \(Managing Performance\)](#)

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

 [-CANCEL THREAD \(DB2\) \(DB2 Commands\)](#)

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Chapter 31, "TEMPLATE," on page 699

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Before running REORG TABLESPACE

Certain activities might be required before you run the REORG TABLESPACE utility, depending on your situation.

Catalog and directory table spaces

Before running REORG on a catalog or directory table space, you must take an image copy. Be aware that for the DSNDB06.SYSCOPY catalog table space, and the DSNDB01.DBD01, and DSNDB01.SYSUTILX directory table spaces, REORG scans logs to verify that an image copy is available. If the scan of the logs does not find an image copy, DB2 requests archive logs.

Region size

The recommended minimum region size is 4096 KB. Region sizes greater than 32 MB enable increased parallelism for index builds. Data unload and reload parallelism can also benefit from a greater region size value.

Mapping table and SHRLEVEL CHANGE

Before running REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL CHANGE on a table space with non-LOB data, you must create a mapping table and index for the table space. The table space that contains the mapping table must be segmented and cannot be the table space to be reorganized. To create the mapping table, use a CREATE TABLESPACE statement similar to the following statement:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE table-space-name SEGSIZE integer
```

The number of rows in the mapping table should not exceed 110% of the number of rows in the table space or partition that is to be reorganized. The mapping table must have only the columns and the index that are created by the following SQL statements:

```
CREATE TABLE table-name1
  (TYPE          CHAR(1) NOT NULL,
   SOURCE_RID   CHAR(5) NOT NULL,
   TARGET_XRID  CHAR(9) NOT NULL,
   LRSN        CHAR(6) NOT NULL);
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX index-name1 ON table-name1
  (SOURCE_RID ASC, TYPE, TARGET_XRID, LRSN);
```

The REORG utility removes all rows from the mapping table when the utility completes.

You must specify the TARGET_XRID column as CHAR(9), even though the RIDs are 5 bytes long.

You must have DELETE, INSERT, and UPDATE authorization on the mapping table.

You can run more than one REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE job concurrently on separate table spaces. You can also run more than one REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE job concurrently on different partitions of the same table space, but only if the table space does not have any NPIs. When you run concurrently with other jobs, each REORG job must have a separate mapping table. The mapping tables do not need to reside in separate table spaces. If only one mapping table exists, the REORG jobs must be scheduled to run serially. If more than one REORG job tries to access the same mapping table at the same time, one of the REORG jobs fails.

Recommendation: Consider the following approach to ensure that multiple REORG jobs do not attempt to use the same mapping table concurrently. Assign the same name to the mapping table and the utility ID. Because utility IDs must be unique, this naming decision ensures that the mapping tables are not used by two REORG jobs that run concurrently.

Restart-pending status and SHRLEVEL CHANGE

If you specify SHRLEVEL CHANGE, REORG drains the write claim class near the end of REORG processing. In a data sharing environment, if a data sharing member fails and that member has restart-pending status for a target page set, the drain can fail. You must postpone running REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE until all restart-pending statuses are removed. You can use the DISPLAY GROUP command to determine whether a member's status is failed. You can use the DISPLAY DATABASE command with the LOCKS option to determine if locks are held.

RECOVER-pending and REBUILD-pending status

You cannot reorganize a table space if any partition or range of partitions of the partitioned table space is in the RECOVER-pending status. Similarly, you cannot reorganize a single table space partition if any of the following conditions are true:

- The partition is in the RECOVER-pending status.
- The corresponding partitioning index is in the REBUILD-pending or RECOVER-pending status, and the data is unloaded by the cluster index method.

- The specified partition or partitions are a subset of a range of partitions that are in REORG-pending status; you must reorganize the entire range to reset the restrictive status.

The only RECOVER-pending restrictive state is:

RECP The table space, index space, or partition of a table space or index space is in a RECOVER-pending status. A single logical partition in RECP does not restrict access to other logical partitions that are not in RECP. You can reset RECP by recovering only the single logical partition.

The three REBUILD-pending restrictive states are:

RBDP REBUILD-pending status is set on a physical or logical index partition. The individual physical or logical partition is inaccessible and must be rebuilt by using the REBUILD INDEX utility.

PSRBD

Page set REBUILD-pending status is set for nonpartitioning indexes. The entire index space is inaccessible and must be rebuilt by using the REBUILD utility.

RBDP*

A REBUILD-pending status that is set only on logical partitions of nonpartitioning indexes. The entire index is inaccessible, but it is made available again when the affected partitions are rebuilt by using the REBUILD INDEX utility.

CHECK-pending status

If a table space is in both REORG-pending and CHECK-pending status (or auxiliary CHECK-pending status), run REORG first, and then run CHECK DATA to clear the respective states. Otherwise, if a table space is not in REORG-pending status, you cannot reorganize a table space or range of partitions if the table space or any partition in the range is in CHECK-pending status until the CHECK-pending status is removed.

REORG-pending status

You must allocate a discard data set (SYSDISC) or specify the DISCARD option if the last partition of the table space is in REORG-pending status.

Fallback recovery considerations

If RECOVER cannot use the latest image copy or copies as a starting point for the recovery, it attempts to use previous copies; if that attempt fails, RECOVER restores the data from the log.

However, if you use REORG SHRLEVEL NONE LOG NO, RECOVER cannot restore data from the log past the point at which the object was last reorganized successfully. Therefore, you must take an image copy after running REORG with LOG NO to establish a level of fallback recovery.

Recommendation:

Immediately following an ALTER INDEX operation that modifies key values, create a new recovery point by taking one of the following actions:

- Run REORG and specify COPYDDN and SHRLEVEL NONE.

- Take a full image copy immediately after REORG completes.

If you performed a REORG to reset REORG-pending status (REORP), you should also take an inline image copy or run the COPY utility. Image copies that are taken prior to resetting the REORG-pending status cannot be used for recovery to the current RBA or LRSN.

Successful REORG LOG NO processing inserts a row into SYSIBM.SYSCOPY with ICTYPE=W for each index that was defined with COPY YES. REORG also places a reorganized index in informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) status. You should take a full image copy of the index after the REORG job completes to create a valid point of recovery.

Restrictions when running REORG TABLESPACE on encrypted data

If you plan to run REORG TABLESPACE on encrypted data, do not use the WHEN statement to filter encrypted fields; REORG TABLESPACE cannot filter rows that contain encrypted data

Restriction for partitions with the COMPRESS YES attribute when using REBALANCE

Do not run REORG REBALANCE on a partitioned table space where a subset of partitions have the COMPRESS YES attribute and the remaining partitions have the COMPRESS NO attribute.

Restriction when using REBALANCE and duplicate partitioning key values exist

A REORG REBALANCE might distribute rows among the partitions that are being rebalanced in such a way that one or more partitions do not have any rows. This situation occurs when many rows with duplicate partitioning key values exist, and not enough unique values exist to enable REORG to distribute them over all of the partitions.

Restriction for unload parallelism when using REBALANCE

If you specify REORG REBALANCE, you cannot use unload parallelism.

Restriction when physical partition numbers do not match logical partition numbers

A REORG REBALANCE might not be possible if the logical and physical partition numbers for the specified table space do not match. This situation can be created by a series of ALTER ROTATEs and ALTER ADD PARTs.

For example, assume that you create a table space with three partitions. The following table shows the mapping that exists between the physical and logical partition numbers.

Table 80. Mapping of physical and logical partition numbers when a table space with three partitions is created.

Logical partition number	Physical partition number
1	1

Table 80. Mapping of physical and logical partition numbers when a table space with three partitions is created. (continued)

Logical partition number	Physical partition number
2	2
3	3

Then, assume that you request the following series of actions:

1. ALTER ROTATE FIRST TO LAST

The new mapping of partition numbers is shown in the following table.

Table 81. Mapping of physical and logical partition numbers after ALTER ROTATE FIRST TO LAST.

Logical partition number	Physical partition number
1	2
2	3
3	1

2. ALTER ADD PART

The new mapping of partition numbers is shown in the following table.

Table 82. Mapping of physical and logical partition numbers after ALTER ADD PART.

Logical partition number	Physical partition number
1	2
2	3
3	1
4	4

3. ALTER ROTATE FIRST TO LAST

The new mapping of partition numbers is shown in the following table.

Table 83. Mapping of physical and logical partition numbers after second ALTER ROTATE FIRST TO LAST.

Logical partition number	Physical partition number
1	3
2	1
3	4
4	2

Assume that you then try to execute a REORG TABLESPACE REBALANCE PART 1:2. This statement requests a reorganization and rebalancing of physical partitions 1 and 2. Note that physical partition 1 is logical partition 2, and physical partition 2 is logical partition 4. Thus, the utility is processing logical partitions 2 and 4. If during the course of rebalancing, the utility needs to move keys from logical partition 2 to logical partition 3, the job fails, because logical partition 3 is not within the specified physical partition range.

Reorganizing a table space with an index that has a VARBINARY column

If you run REORG against a table space, and that table space includes a table that has an index with the following characteristics, REORG fails:

- The index was created on a VARBINARY column or a column with a distinct type that is based on a VARBINARY data type.
- The index column has the DESC attribute.

To fix the problem, drop the index, or alter the column data type to BINARY, and then rebuild the index

Related concepts

 Job DSNTEJ1 (DB2 Installation Guide)

Related reference

“CHECK-pending status” on page 1003

“REBUILD-pending status” on page 1006

“RECOVER-pending status” on page 1007

Data sets that REORG TABLESPACE uses

The REORG TABLESPACE utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table describes the data sets that REORG TABLESPACE uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set, and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 84. Data sets that REORG TABLESPACE uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSUT1	A temporary data set for sort input.	No
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
STPRIN01	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY). This data set is used when statistics are collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.	No ¹
SYSDISC	Data set that contains discarded records from REORG DISCARD. The default DD name is SYSDISC.	No ³
SYSPUNCH	Data set that contains a LOAD statement that is generated by REORG, which loads records that REORG DISCARD or REORG UNLOAD EXTERNAL wrote to the DISCARD or UNLOAD data sets. The default DD name is SYSPUNCH.	No ⁴
UTPRINT	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY).	Yes

Table 84. Data sets that REORG TABLESPACE uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
Unload data set	Data set that contains the unloaded data that is to be reloaded during the RELOAD phase. Specify its DD or template name with the UNLDDN option or with the RECDSN field on the DB2I Utilities panel. The data set must be a sequential data set that is readable by BSAM. The default DD name is SYSREC. The unload data set must be large enough to contain all the unloaded records from all the tables in the target table space. If at least one table in the table space does not have an index, REORG cannot use the SORTDATA method with SHRLEVEL CHANGE. As a result, you must unload the data in the SYSREC data set.	Yes ⁵
Sequential copies	From one to four output data sets that are to contain the image copies. Specify their DD or template names with the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options of the utility control statement.	No ⁶
FlashCopy image copies	For table space or index space level copies, a VSAM data set for the output FlashCopy image copy of each partition or piece. For a partition level or piece level copy, a VSAM data set for the output FlashCopy image copy of the partition or piece.	No ¹²
Work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output. The DD names have the form DATAWK mm .	No ⁷
Work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when sorting keys, or for sorting data when SORTDATA is specified but NOSYSREC is not. If index build parallelism is used, the DD names have the form SW mm WK mm . If index build parallelism is not used, the DD names have the form SORTWK mm .	Yes ⁸
Sort work data sets	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index. The DD names have the form ST01WK mm .	No ^{2,9}
Sort work data sets	Temporary data sets for unload parallelism. The DD names have the form DAnnWK mm .	Yes ¹⁰

Table 84. Data sets that REORG TABLESPACE uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
Print data sets	Data sets for unload parallelism. The DD names have the form DTPRIN <i>nn</i> . Every time you invoke REORG TABLESPACE, new DTPRIN <i>nn</i> data sets are dynamically allocated. REORG TABLESPACE does not reuse DTPRIN <i>nn</i> data sets from previous job steps. This behavior might cause the number of JES2 job queue elements to be consumed more quickly than expected.	Yes ^{10,11}

Note:

1. STPRIN01 is required if statistics are being collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index, but REORG TABLESPACE dynamically allocates the STPRIN01 data set if UTPRINT is allocated to SYSOUT.
2. Required when collecting inline statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.
3. Required if you specify DISCARD DN
4. Required you specify PUNCH DDN
5. Required unless NOSYSREC or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified.
6. Required if a partition is in REORG-pending status or REBALANCE, COPY DDN, RECOVERY DDN, SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified.
7. Required if NOSYSREC or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is specified, but SORTDEVT is not specified.
8. Required if any indexes exist and SORTDEVT is not specified.
9. If the DYNALLOC parm of the SORT program is not turned on, you need to allocate the data set. Otherwise, the sort program dynamically allocates the temporary data set.
10. If you specify the SORTDEVT keyword, the data sets are dynamically allocated. It is recommended that you use dynamic allocation by specifying SORTDEVT in the utility statement because dynamic allocation reduces the maintenance required of the utility job JCL.
11. If UTPRINT is allocated to SYSOUT, the data sets are dynamically allocated.
12. Required if you specify either FLASHCOPY YES or FLASHCOPY CONSISTENT.

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Table space

Object that is to be reorganized.

Calculating the size of the unload data set

The required size for the unload data set varies depending on the options that you use for REORG.

1. If you use REORG with UNLOAD PAUSE or CONTINUE and you specify KEEPDICTIONARY (assuming that a compression dictionary already exists), the size of the unload data set, in bytes, is the VSAM high-allocated RBA for the table space. You can obtain the high-allocated RBA from the associated VSAM catalog.

For SHRLEVEL CHANGE, also add the result of the following calculation (in bytes) to the VSAM high-used RBA:

number of records * 11

2. If you use REORG with UNLOAD ONLY, UNLOAD PAUSE, or CONTINUE and you do not specify KEEPDICTIONARY, you can calculate the size of the unload data set, in bytes, by using the following formula:

maximum row length * number of rows

The maximum row length is the row length, including the 6-byte record prefix, plus the length of the longest clustering key. If multiple tables exist in the table space, use the following formula to determine the maximum row length:

Sum over all tables ((row length + (2 * number of VARBIN columns)) * number of rows)

For SHRLEVEL CHANGE, also add the result of the following formula to the preceding result:

$(21 * ((NEARINDREF + FARINDREF) * 1.1))$

In the preceding formula:

NEARINDREF

Is the value that is obtained from the NEARINDREF column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART catalog table. The accuracy of the data set size calculation depends on recent information in the SYSTABLEPART catalog table.

FARINDREF

Is the value that is obtained from the FARINDREF column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART catalog table.

3. If you have variable-length fields, the calculation in step 2 might result in excessive space. Use the average uncompressed row length, multiplied by the number of rows.
4. If you use REORG with UNLOAD PAUSE or CONTINUE with the DISCARD option, and the table has variable length fields, use the maximum row length in the calculation. The DISCARD option without the NOPAD option pads the variable length fields.

For certain table spaces in the catalog and directory, the unload data set for the table spaces have a different format. The calculation for the size of this data set is as follows:

data set size in bytes = $(28 + \text{longrow}) * \text{numrows}$

In the preceding formula:

longrow

Is the length of the longest row in the table space.

numrows

Is the number of rows in the data set.

The length of the row is calculated as follows:

Sum of column lengths + 4 bytes for each link

The length of the column is calculated as follows:

Maximum length of the column + 1 (if nullable) + 2 (if varying length)

Calculating the size of the sort work data sets

Allocating twice the space that is used by the unload data sets is usually adequate for the sort work data sets. For compressed data, double again the amount of space that is allocated for the sort work data sets if you use either of the following REORG options:

- UNLOAD PAUSE without KEEPDICTIONARY
- UNLOAD CONTINUE without KEEPDICTIONARY

Using two or three large SORTWK nn data sets is preferable to using several small ones. If adequate space is not available, you cannot run REORG.

Sort work data sets cannot span volumes. Smaller volumes require more sort work data sets to sort the same amount of data; therefore, large volume sizes can reduce the number of needed sort work data sets. When you allocate sort work data sets on disk, the recommended amount of space to allow provides at least 1.2 times the amount of data that is to be sorted.

Specifying a destination for sort program messages

The REORG utility job step must contain a UTPRINT DD statement that defines a destination for messages that are issued by the sort program during the SORT phase of REORG. DB2I, the %DSNU CLIST command, and the DSNUPROC procedure use the following default DD statement:

```
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
```

Calculating the size of the statistics sort work data sets:

To calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the ST01WK nn data set, use the following formula:

$$2 \times (\text{maximum record length} \times \text{numcols} \times (\text{count} + 2) \times \text{number of indexes})$$

The variables in the preceding formula have the following values:

maximum record length

Maximum record length of the SYSCOLDISTSTATS record that is processed when collecting frequency statistics (You can obtain this value from the RECLENGTH column in SYSTABLES.)

numcols

Number of key columns to concatenate when you collect frequent values from the specified index.

count Number of frequent values that DB2 is to collect.

Related concepts

“Reorganizing the catalog and directory” on page 553

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

Shadow data sets

When you execute the REORG utility with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the utility uses shadow data sets.

For user-managed data sets, you must preallocate the shadow data sets before you execute REORG with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE. If a table space, partition, or index resides in DB2-managed data sets and shadow data sets do not already exist when you execute REORG, DB2 creates the shadow data sets. At the end of REORG processing, the DB2-managed shadow data sets are deleted.

Shadow data set names

Each shadow data set must have the following name:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.psname.y000z.Lnnn

In the preceding name, the variables have the following meanings:

variable

meaning

catname

The VSAM catalog name or alias

x

C or D

dbname

Database name

psname

Table space name or index name

y

I or J

z

1 or 2

Lnnn

Partition identifier. Use one of the following values:

- A001 through A999 for partitions 1 through 999
- B000 through B999 for partitions 1000 through 1999
- C000 through C999 for partitions 2000 through 2999
- D000 through D999 for partitions 3000 through 3999
- E000 through E996 for partitions 4000 through 4096

To determine the names of existing data sets, execute one of the following queries

against the SYSTABLEPART or SYSINDEXPART catalog tables: 

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
 WHERE DBNAME = 'dbname'
    AND TSNAME = 'psname';

SELECT DBNAME, IXNAME, IPREFIX
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES X, SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART Y
 WHERE X.NAME = Y.IXNAME
    AND X.CREATOR = Y.IXCREATOR
    AND X.DBNAME = 'dbname'
    AND X.INDEXSPACE = 'psname';
```

 **GUIP**

For a partitioned table space, DB2 returns rows from which you select the row for the partitions that you want to reorganize.

For example, assume that you have a ten-partition table space and you want to determine a naming convention for the data set in order to successfully execute the

REORG utility with the SHRLEVEL CHANGE PART 2:6 options. The following queries of the DB2 catalog tables SYSTABLEPART and SYSINDEXPART provide the required information:

GUPI

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, PARTITION, IPREFIX FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
  WHERE DBNAME = 'DBDV0701' AND TSNAME = 'TPDV0701'
  ORDER BY PARTITION;
SELECT IXNAME, PARTITION, IPREFIX FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART
  WHERE IXNAME = 'IXDV0701'
  ORDER BY PARTITION;
```

GUPI

The preceding queries produce the information that is shown in the following table.

The following table shows the results from the first query.

Table 85. Query results from the first preceding query

DBNAME	TSNAME	PARTITION	IPREFIX
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	1	I
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	4	I
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	3	J
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	2	I
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	5	J
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	6	J
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	7	I
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	8	I
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	9	I
DBDV0701	TPDV0701	10	I

The following table shows the results from the second query.

Table 86. Query results from the second preceding query

IXNAME	PARTITION	IPREFIX
IXDV0701	10	I
IXDV0701	9	I
IXDV0701	8	I
IXDV0701	7	I
IXDV0701	6	J
IXDV0701	5	J
IXDV0701	4	I
IXDV0701	3	J
IXDV0701	2	I
IXDV0701	1	I

To execute REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE PART 2:6, you need to preallocate the following shadow objects. The naming convention for these objects use information from the query results that are shown in the previous tables.

```

vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.TPDV0701.J0001.A002
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.TPDV0701.I0001.A003
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.TPDV0701.J0001.A004
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.TPDV0701.I0001.A005
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.TPDV0701.I0001.A006
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.IXDV0701.J0001.A002
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.IXDV0701.I0001.A003
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.IXDV0701.J0001.A004
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.IXDV0701.I0001.A005
vcatnam.DSNDBC.DBDV0701.IXDV0701.I0001.A006

```

Defining shadow data sets

Consider the following actions when you preallocate the data sets:

- Allocate the shadow data sets according to the rules for user-managed data sets.
- Define the shadow data sets as LINEAR.
- Use SHAREOPTIONS(3,3).
- Define the shadow data sets as EA-enabled if the original table space or index space is EA-enabled.
- Allocate the shadow data sets on the volumes that are defined in the storage group for the original table space or index space.

If you specify a secondary space quantity, DB2 does not use it. Instead, DB2 uses the SECQTY value for the table space or index space.

Recommendation: Use the MODEL option, which causes the new shadow data set to be created like the original data set. This method is shown in the following example:

```

DEFINE CLUSTER +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.psname.x0001.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBC.dbname.psname.y0001.L001')) +
  DATA +
  (NAME('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.psname.x0001.L001') +
  MODEL('catname.DSNDBD.dbname.psname.y0001.L001') )

```

Creating shadow data sets for indexes:

When you preallocate data sets for indexes, create the shadow data sets as follows:

- Create shadow data sets for the partition of the table space and the corresponding partition in each partitioning index and data-partitioned secondary index.
- Create a shadow data set for each nonpartitioned secondary index.

Use the same naming scheme for these index data sets as you use for other data sets that are associated with the base index, except use J0001 instead of I0001. For more information about this naming scheme, see the information about the shadow data set naming convention at the beginning of this topic.

Estimating the size of shadow data sets

If you have not changed the value of FREEPAGE or PCTFREE, the amount of required space for a shadow data set is comparable to the amount of required space for the original data set.

Preallocating shadow data sets for REORG PART

By creating the shadow data sets before executing REORG PART, even for DB2-managed data sets, you prevent possible over-allocation of the disk space during REORG processing. When reorganizing a partition, you must create the shadow data sets for the partition of the table space and for the partition of the partitioning index. In addition, before executing REORG PART with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE on partition *mmm* of a partitioned table space, you must create a shadow data set for each nonpartitioning index that resides in user-defined data sets. Each shadow data set is to be used for a copy of the index and must be as large as the entire original nonpartitioned index. The name for this shadow data set has the form *catname.DSNDBx.dbname.pname.y0mmm.Annn*.

Concurrency and compatibility for REORG TABLESPACE

The REORG TABLESPACE utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions, and individual logical partitions of nonpartitioning indexes as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible. However, REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE or REFERENCE on a partition or range of partitions rebuild entire nonpartitioned indexes; therefore, two REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE or REFERENCE PART jobs on different partitions of the same table space are not compatible.

Restriction: You cannot run concurrent REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE PART *integer* on the same table space. Instead of submitting multiple jobs, you can merge the jobs into one job and specify a range using REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE PART *integer1:integer2*, or specify REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE SCOPE PENDING if multiple partitions are in a REORG-pending state.

This information includes a series of tables that show which claim classes REORG drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

For nonpartitioned indexes, if you specify SHRLEVEL NONE, REORG PART:

- Drains only the logical partition (and the repeatable read class for the entire index)
- Does not set the page set REBUILD-pending status (PSRCP)
- Does not use PCTFREE or FREEPAGE attributes when inserting keys

Claims

For SHRLEVEL NONE, the following table shows which claim classes REORG drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object. For each column, the table indicates the claim or drain that is acquired and the restrictive state that is set in the corresponding phase. UNLOAD CONTINUE and UNLOAD PAUSE, unlike UNLOAD ONLY, include the RELOAD phase and thus include the drains and restrictive states of that phase.

Table 87. Claim classes of REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE operations

Target	UNLOAD phase of REORG	RELOAD phase of REORG if UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	UNLOAD phase of REORG PART	RELOAD phase of REORG PART if UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE
Table space, partition, or a range of partitions of a table space	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Partitioning index, data-partitioned secondary index, or partition of either type of index ¹	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Nonpartitioned index ²	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	None	DR
Logical partition of nonpartitioning index ³	None	None	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT

Legend:

- DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access.
- DR: Drain the repeatable read class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers.
- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers.
- UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control.
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed.
- None: Any claim, drain, or restrictive state for this object does not change in this phase.

Note:

1. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over partitioned XML table spaces.
2. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over nonpartitioned XML table spaces and XML indexes.
3. Includes logical partitions of an XML index over partitioned XML table spaces.

For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, the following table shows which claim classes REORG drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object. For each column, the table indicates the claim or drain that is acquired and the restrictive state that is set in the corresponding phase.

Table 88. Claim classes of REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE operations

Target	UNLOAD phase of REORG	SWITCH phase of REORG	UNLOAD phase of REORG PART	SWITCH phase of REORG PART
Table space or partition of table space	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Partitioning index, data-partitioned secondary index, or partition of either ¹	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Nonpartitioned secondary index ²	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT	CR/UTRW	DA/UTUT
Logical partition of nonpartitioning index ³	None	None	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT

Table 88. Claim classes of REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE operations (continued)

Target	UNLOAD phase of REORG	SWITCH phase of REORG	UNLOAD phase of REORG PART	SWITCH phase of REORG PART
Legend:				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access. • DDR: Dedrain the read claim class, concurrent SQL access. • DR: Drain the repeatable read class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers. • DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers. • UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control. • UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed. • None: Any claim, drain, or restrictive state for this object does not change in this phase. 				
Note:				
1. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over partitioned XML table spaces.				
2. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over nonpartitioned XML table spaces and XML indexes.				
3. Includes logical partitions of an XML index over partitioned XML table spaces.				

For REORG of an entire table space with SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the following table shows which claim classes REORG drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 89. Claim classes of REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE operations

Target	UNLOAD phase	Last iteration of LOG phase	SWITCH phase
Table space	CR/UTRW ¹	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT
Index	CR/UTRW ¹	DW/UTRO	DA/UTUT

Legend:

- CR: Claim the read claim class.
- DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access.
- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers.
- UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control.
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed.
- UTRW: Utility restrictive state, read-write access allowed.

For REORG of a partition with SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the following table shows which claim classes REORG drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 90. Claim classes of REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE operations on a partition

Target	UNLOAD phase	Last iteration of LOG phase	SWITCH phase
Partition of table space	CR/UTRW	DW/UTRO or DA/UTUT ⁴	DA/UTUT
Partition of partitioning index ¹	CR/UTRW	DW/UTRO or DA/UTUT ⁴	DA/UTUT
Nonpartitioning index ²	None	None	DR
Logical partition of nonpartitioning index ³	CR/UTRW	DW/UTRO or DA/UTUT ⁴	DA/UTUT

Table 90. Claim classes of REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE operations on a partition (continued)

Target	UNLOAD phase	Last iteration of LOG phase	SWITCH phase
Legend:			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CR: Claim the read claim class. • DA: Drain all claim classes, no concurrent SQL access. • DDR: Dedrain the read claim class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers. • DR: Drain the repeatable read class, no concurrent access for SQL repeatable readers. • DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers. • UTUT: Utility restrictive state, exclusive control. • UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed. • UTRW: Utility restrictive state, read-write access allowed. • None: Any claim, drain, or restrictive state for this object does not change in this phase. 			
Note:			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over partitioned XML table spaces. 2. Includes document ID indexes and node ID indexes over nonpartitioned XML table spaces and XML indexes. 3. Includes logical partitions of an XML index over partitioned XML table spaces. 4. DA/UTUT applies if you specify DRAIN ALL. 			

Compatibility

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with REORG on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also shown.

Table 91. Compatibility of REORG TABLESPACE with other utilities

Action	REORG SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE, REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, or REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE	REORG SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD ONLY without clustering index	REORG SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD ONLY with clustering index
CATMAINT	No	No	No
CHECK DATA	No	No	No
CHECK INDEX	No	Yes	Yes
CHECK LOB	No	No	No
COPY INDEXSPACE	No	Yes	Yes
COPY TABLESPACE	No	Yes	Yes
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes	Yes
LOAD	No	No	No
MERGECOPY	No	No	No
MODIFY	No	No	No
QUIESCE	No	Yes	Yes
REBUILD INDEX	No	Yes	No
RECOVER INDEX	No	Yes	No
RECOVER INDEXSPACE	No	No	No
RECOVER TABLESPACE	No	No	No

Table 91. Compatibility of REORG TABLESPACE with other utilities (continued)

Action	REORG SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE, REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, or REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE	REORG SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD ONLY without clustering index	REORG SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD ONLY with clustering index
REORG INDEX	No	Yes	No
REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE, REORG SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, or REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	No	Yes	Yes
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY	No	Yes	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE KEY or RID DELETE or REPLACE	No	No	No
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE REPLACE	No	Yes	No
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE REPLACE	No	No	No
REPORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS	No	Yes	Yes
STOSPACE	No	Yes	Yes
UNLOAD	No	Yes	Yes

The following table shows which DB2 operations can be affected when reorganizing catalog table spaces.

Table 92. DB2 operations that are affected by reorganizing catalog table spaces

Catalog table space	Actions that might not run concurrently
Any table space except SYSCOPY and SYSSTR	CREATE, ALTER, and DROP statements
SYSCOPY, SYSDBASE, SYSDBAUT, SYSSTATS, SYSUSER, SYSHIST	Utilities
SYSDBASE, SYSDBAUT, SYSGPAUT, SYSPKAGE, SYSPLAN, SYSUSER	GRANT and REVOKE statements
SYSDBAUT, SYSDBASE, SYSGPAUT, SYSPKAGE, SYSPLAN, SYSSTATS, SYSUSER, SYSVIEWS	BIND and FREE commands
SYSPKAGE, SYSPLAN	Plan or package execution

Determining when an object requires reorganization

You might need to do some analysis to determine if an object requires reorganization.

Recommendation: Run RUNSTATS if the statistics are not current. If you have an object that should also be reorganized, run REORG with STATISTICS and take inline copies. If you run REORG PART and nonpartitioning indexes exist, subsequently run RUNSTATS for each nonpartitioning index.

To determine when an object requires reorganization:

- Run the REORG TABLESPACE utility and specify the OFFPOSLIMIT and INDREFLIMIT catalog query options with the REPORTONLY option. REORG produces a report with one of the following return codes; but a REORG is not performed.
 - 1 No limit met; no REORG is performed or recommended.
 - 2 REORG is performed or recommended.
- Alternatively, use the SYSTABLEPART and SYSINDEXPART catalog tables to find which table spaces and indexes qualify for reorganization. The information in these catalog tables can also be used to determine when the DB2 catalog table spaces require reorganization. For catalog table spaces SYSDBASE, SYSVIEWS, and SYSPLAN, you should not use the value for columns FAROFFPOSF and NEAROFFPOSF of SYSINDEXPART to determine whether to reorganize.

Information from the SYSTABLEPART catalog table can also tell you how well disk space is being used. If you want to find the number of varying-length rows that were relocated to other pages because of an update, run RUNSTATS, and

then issue the following statement: 

```
SELECT CARD, NEARINDREF, FARINDREF
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
WHERE DBNAME = 'XXX'
AND TSNAME = 'YYY';
```



- Reorganize table spaces or partitions that are in REORG-pending status. Use the DISPLAY DATABASE RESTRICT command to display those table spaces and partitions that require reorganization.
- A large number (relative to previous values that you have received) for FARINDREF indicates that I/O activity on the table space is high. If you find that this number increases over a period of time, you probably need to reorganize the table space to improve performance, and increase PCTFREE or FREEPAGE for the table space with the ALTER TABLESPACE statement.

The following statement returns the percentage of unused space in nonsegmented table space YYY. In nonsegmented table spaces, the space that is used by dropped tables is not reclaimed until you reorganize the table space.



```
SELECT PERCDROP
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
WHERE DBNAME = 'XXX'
AND TSNAME = 'YYY';
```



Issue the following statement to determine whether the rows of a table are stored in the same order as the entries of its clustering index: 

```
SELECT NEAROFFPOSF, FAROFFPOSF
FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART
WHERE IXCREATOR = 'index_creator_name'
AND IXNAME = 'index_name';
```

PSPI

- Several indicators are available to signal a time for reorganizing table spaces. A large value for FAROFFPOSF might indicate that clustering is deteriorating. In this case, reorganize the table space to improve query performance.

A large value for NEAROFFPOSF might indicate also that reorganization might improve performance. However, in general NEAROFFPOSF is not as critical a factor as FAROFFPOSF.

FAROFFPOSF and NEAROFFPOSF do not have query performance considerations for the following DB2 catalog tables:

```
DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
DSNDB06.SYSPLAN
DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS
```

For any table, the REORG utility repositions rows into the sequence of the key of the clustering index that is defined on that table.

For nonclustering indexes, the statistical information that is recorded by RUNSTATS in SYSINDEXES and SYSINDEXPART might appear even worse after the clustering index is used to reorganize the data. This applies only to the CLUSTERING and CLUSTERED columns in SYSINDEXES and to the NEAROFFPOS and FAROFFPOS columns in SYSINDEXPART.

Access with REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL

You can specify the level of access that you have to your data by using the SHRLEVEL option.

For reorganizing a table space, or a partition of a table space, the SHRLEVEL option lets you choose the level of access that you have to your data during reorganization.

- REORG with SHRLEVEL NONE, the default, reloads the reorganized data into the original area that is being reorganized. Applications have read-only access during unloading and no access during reloading. For data-partitioned secondary indexes, the option rebuilds the index parts during the BUILD phase. (Rebuilding these indexes does not create contention between parallel REORG PART jobs.) For nonpartitioned secondary indexes, the option corrects the indexes. Using REORG SHRLEVEL NONE is the only access level that resets REORG-pending status.
- REORG with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE reloads the reorganized data into a new (shadow) copy of the area that is being reorganized. Near the end of reorganization, DB2 switches the future access of the application from the original data to the shadow copy. For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, applications have read-only access during unloading and reloading, and a brief period of no access during switching.
- REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE reloads the reorganized data into a shadow copy of the area that is being reorganized. For REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE, a mapping table correlates RIDs in the original copy of the table space or partition with RIDs in the shadow copy. Applications can read from and write to the original area, and DB2 records the writing in the log. DB2 then reads the log and applies it to the shadow copy to bring the shadow copy up to date. This step executes iteratively, with each iteration processing a sequence of log records. Near the end of reorganization, DB2 switches the future

access of the application from the original data to the shadow copy. Applications have read-write access during unloading and reloading, a brief period of read-only access during the last iteration of log processing, and a brief period of no access during switching.

- REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE materializes pending definition changes for table spaces and indexes if pending alterations are involved. Advisory-REORG pending status (AREOR) is reset for the table space and associated indexes. REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE at the partition level does not materialize pending definition changes at the table space level.
REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL NONE proceeds without materializing pending definition changes if there were any on the object being reorganized.
When pending definition changes are materialized during REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, statistics for both table space and associated indexes are collected and updated in the DB2 catalog.
- REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE does not drop empty partitions from a partition-by-growth universal table space.
- REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE and the REBALANCE option does not materialize pending definition changes for conversion of a partitioned table space to range-partitioned universal table space.
- REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE and the FASTSWITCH NO option does not materialize pending definition changes.
- When REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is run with the AUX YES option on an entire base table space of one of the following types, the pending changes that are associated with the base table space are materialized, but the pending changes that are associated with the LOB table spaces are not materialized.
 - Simple table space
 - Segmented table space
 - Range-partitioned universal table space
 - Partition-by-growth universal table space
- When REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE is run with the AUX YES option on a subset of partitions of a partitioned table base table space, neither the pending changes that are associated with the base table space nor the pending changes that are associated with the LOB table spaces are materialized
- If large amounts of data are deleted from a partition-by-growth universal table space, including XML table spaces, run the REORG TABLESPACE utility with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE on the entire table space to reclaim physical space from the partition-by-growth table space.

Log processing with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE PART for nonpartitioned indexes or SHRLEVEL CHANGE:

When you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE PART for nonpartitioned indexes or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, DB2 processes the log to update the shadow copy. This step executes iteratively. The first iteration processes the log records that accumulated during the previous iteration. The iterations continue until one of these conditions is met:

- DB2 estimates that the time to perform the log processing in the next iteration will be less than or equal to the time that is specified for MAXRO. If this condition is met, the next iteration is the last iteration.
- DB2 estimates that the SWITCH phase will not start by the deadline that is specified for DEADLINE. If this condition is met, DB2 terminates reorganization.
- The number of log records that the next iteration is to process is not sufficiently lower than the number of log records that were processed in the previous iteration. If this condition is met but the first two conditions are not met, DB2 sends message DSNU377I to the console. DB2 continues log processing for the length of time that is specified for DELAY and then performs the action that is specified for LONGLOG.

Operator actions

LONGLOG specifies the action that DB2 performs if the pace of processing log records between iterations is slow. If no action is taken after message DSNU377I is sent to the console, the LONGLOG option automatically goes into effect. Some examples of possible actions that you can take:

- Execute the `START DATABASE(database) SPACENAM(tablespace) ... ACCESS(RO)` command and the QUIESCE utility to drain the write claim class. DB2 performs the last iteration, if MAXRO is not DEFER. After the QUIESCE, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.
- Execute the `START DATABASE(database) SPACENAM(tablespace) ... ACCESS(RO)` command and the QUIESCE utility to drain the write claim class. Then, after reorganization makes some progress, execute the `START DATABASE(database) SPACENAM(tablespace) ... ACCESS(RW)` command. This increases the likelihood that processing of log records between iterations can continue at an acceptable rate. After the QUIESCE, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.
- Execute the ALTER UTILITY command to change the value of MAXRO. Changing it to a huge positive value, such as 9999999, causes the next iteration to be the last iteration.
- Execute the ALTER UTILITY command to change the value of LONGLOG.
- Execute the TERM UTILITY command to terminate reorganization.
- Adjust the amount of buffer space that is allocated to reorganization and to applications. This adjustment can increase the likelihood that processing of log records between iterations can continue at an acceptable rate. After adjusting the space, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.
- Adjust the scheduling priorities of reorganization and applications. This adjustment can increase the likelihood that processing of log records between iterations can continue at an acceptable rate. After adjusting the priorities, you should also execute the ALTER UTILITY command, even if you do not change any REORG parameters.

DB2 does not take the action specified in the LONGLOG phrase if any one of these events occurs before the delay expires:

- An ALTER UTILITY command is issued.
- A TERM UTILITY command is issued.
- DB2 estimates that the time to perform the next iteration is likely to be less than or equal to the time specified on the MAXRO keyword.
- REORG terminates for any reason (including the deadline).

Related concepts

“Before running REORG TABLESPACE” on page 530

Omitting the output data set

For REORG TABLESPACE, you can use the NOSYSREC option to omit the unload data set.

To omit the output data set:

Specify the NOSYSREC option in the REORG TABLESPACE utility control statement and do not specify the UNLOAD PAUSE or UNLOAD ONLY options. This option provides a performance advantage. However, you should be aware of the following facts:

- For REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE, REORG omits the unload data set, even if you do not specify NOSYSREC.
- For REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, if you do not use the NOSYSREC option and an error occurs during reloading, you can restart at the RELOAD phase of REORG by using the contents of the unload data set. However, if the REORG job includes both SORTDATA and NOSYSREC, you must restart at the UNLOAD phase.
- For REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE with NOSYSREC, if an error occurs during reloading, you must execute the RECOVER TABLESPACE utility, starting from the most recent image copy. Therefore, if you specify NOSYSREC with SHRLEVEL NONE, you must create an image copy before starting REORG TABLESPACE.

Unloading without reloading

REORG can unload data without continuing and without creating a SYSIBM.SYSUTIL record after the job ends.

If you specify UNLOAD ONLY, REORG unloads data from the table space and then ends. You can reload the data at a later date with the LOAD utility, specifying FORMAT UNLOAD.

Between unloading and reloading, you can add a validation routine to a table. During reloading, all the rows are checked by the validation procedure.

Do not use REORG UNLOAD ONLY to propagate data. When you specify the UNLOAD ONLY option, REORG unloads only the data that physically resides in the base table space; LOB and XML columns are not unloaded. For purposes of data propagation, you should use UNLOAD or REORG UNLOAD EXTERNAL instead.

REORG UNLOAD ONLY and REORG UNLOAD EXTERNAL cannot be used to unload inline LOBs.

Reclaiming space from dropped tables

Reorganization omits tables that were previously dropped, reclaiming the space that they acquired. For partition-by-growth table spaces, you cannot use REORG to reclaim the space.

Related tasks

“Reclaiming space in the DBD” on page 348

Reorganizing the catalog and directory

You can run REORG TABLESPACE on the table spaces in the catalog database (DSNDB06) and on the SCT02, SPT01, DBD01, and SYSLGRNX table spaces in the directory database (DSNDB01).

Important:

You must take a full image copy before and after reorganizing any catalog or directory object. Otherwise, you cannot recover any catalog or directory objects without the full image copies. When you reorganize the DSNDB06.SYSCOPY table space with the LOG NO option and omit the COPYDDN option, DB2 places the table space in COPY-pending status. Take a full image copy of the table space to remove the COPY-pending status before continuing to reorganize the catalog or directory table spaces.

Running REORG LOG NO COPYDDN avoids the COPY-pending status, because an inline copy is taken during the REORG.

The FASTSWITCH YES option is ignored for catalog and directory objects.

When to run REORG on the catalog and directory

You do not need to run REORG TABLESPACE on the catalog and directory table spaces as often as you do on user table spaces. RUNSTATS collects statistics about user table spaces which you use to determine if a REORG is necessary. You can use the same statistics to determine if a REORG is needed for catalog table spaces. The only difference is the information in the columns NEAROFFPOSF and FAROFFPOSF in table SYSINDEXPART. The values in these columns can be double the recommended value for user table spaces before a reorganization is needed if the table space is DSNDB06.SYSDBASE, DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS, DSNDB06.SYSPLAN, DSNDB06.SYSGROUP, or DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT.

Reorganize the whole catalog before a catalog migration or once every couple of years. Reorganizing the catalog is useful for reducing the size of the catalog table spaces. To improve query performance, reorganize the indexes on the catalog tables.

When statistical information indicates that DSNDB06.SYSDBASE, DSNDB06.SYSPLAN, or DSNDB06.SYSPKAGE requires reorganization, you should also reorganize the corresponding directory table space. These catalog table spaces and their corresponding directory table spaces are listed in the following table.

Table 93. Catalog table spaces and their corresponding directory table spaces

Catalog table space	Directory table space
DSNDB06.SYSDBASE	DSNDB01.DBD01
DSNDB06.SYSPLAN	DSNDB01.SCT02
DSNDB06.SYSPKAGE	DSNDB01.SPT01

Associated directory table spaces

When certain catalog table spaces are reorganized, you should also reorganize the associated directory table space. The associated directory table spaces are listed in the previous table.

Limitations for reorganizing the catalog and directory

- You cannot reorganize DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.
- If SHRLEVEL NONE is specified, the UNLOAD ONLY or UNLOAD EXTERNAL and LOG YES options are not allowed for catalog and directory table spaces. However, LOG YES is required if SHRLEVEL NONE is specified for the catalog LOB table spaces. If SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is specified, LOG NO must be specified.
- The SORTDEVT and SORTNUM options are ignored for the following catalog and directory table spaces:
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
 - DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
 - DSNDB06.SYSPLAN
 - DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS
 - DSNDB01.DBD01

The COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options are valid for the preceding catalog and directory tables if SHRLEVEL REFERENCE is also specified.

- REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL CHANGE cannot operate on the following catalog and directory table spaces:
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
 - DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
 - DSNDB06.SYSPLAN
 - DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS
 - DSNDB01.DBD01
- REORG TABLESPACE with STATISTICS cannot collect inline statistics on the following catalog and directory table spaces:
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
 - DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
 - DSNDB06.SYSPLAN
 - DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS
 - DSBDB06.SYSSTATS
 - DSNDB06.SYSHIST
 - DSNDB01.DBD01

Phases for reorganizing the catalog and directory

REORG TABLESPACE processes certain catalog and directory table spaces differently from other table spaces; it does not execute the BUILD and SORT phases for the following table spaces:

- DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
- DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
- DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
- DSNDB06.SYSPLAN
- DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS
- DSNDB01.DBD01

For these table spaces, REORG TABLESPACE reloads the indexes (in addition to the table space) during the RELOAD phase, rather than storing the index keys in a work data set for sorting.

For all other catalog and directory table spaces, DB2 uses index build parallelism.

Changing data set definitions

If the table space is defined by storage groups, DB2 allocates space, and you cannot alter data set definitions while a REORG job is in process. DB2 deletes and redefines the necessary data sets to reorganize the object.

For REORG with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, you can use the ALTER STOGROUP command to change the characteristics of a DB2-managed data set. To change the characteristics of a user-managed data set, specify the desired new characteristics when you create the shadow data set. For example, placing the original and shadow data sets on different disk volumes might reduce contention and thus improve the performance of REORG and the performance of applications during REORG execution.

Related reference

“Shadow data sets” on page 539

Temporarily interrupting REORG

You can temporarily pause REORG TABLESPACE.

If you specify UNLOAD PAUSE, REORG pauses after unloading the table space into the unload data set. You cannot use NOSYSREC and PAUSE. The job completes with return code 4. You can restart REORG by using the phase restart or current restart. Do not alter the REORG statement.

The REORG utility remains in stopped status until REORG is restarted or terminated.

While REORG is interrupted by PAUSE, you can redefine the table space attributes for user-defined table spaces. PAUSE is not required for STOGROUP-defined table spaces. Attribute changes are done automatically by a REORG following an ALTER TABLESPACE.

Building a compression dictionary

The REORG utility builds the compression dictionary during the UNLOAD process. This dictionary is then used during the RELOAD phase to compress the data

To build a compression dictionary:

Specify the KEEPDICTIONARY option to save the cost of rebuilding the dictionary if you are satisfied with the current compression ratio.

How to override dynamic sort work data set allocation

DB2 estimates how many records are to be sorted. This information is used for dynamic allocation of sort work space. Sort work space is allocated by DB2 or by the sort program that is used.

If the table space contains rows with VARCHAR columns, DB2 might not be able to accurately estimate the number of records. If the estimated number of records is too high, if the requested sort work space is not available, or if the estimated number of records is too low, which causes the sort to overflow, the utility might fail and cause an abend.

Recommendation: To enable DB2 to calculate a more accurate estimate:

- For a table space that is exclusively partitioned, run RUNSTATS UPDATE ALL before REORG.
- For any other type of table space, run RUNSTATS UPDATE SPACE before REORG.

When you run RUNSTATS with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, real-time statistics values are also updated.

You can override the dynamic allocation of sort work space in one of the following ways:

- Allocate the sort work data sets with SORTWK n DD statements in your JCL.
- If the number of rows in the affected table space in column TOTALROWS of table SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACESTATS is not available or is significantly incorrect, you can update the value to a more appropriate value using an SQL UPDATE statement. When REORG on the affected table space completes, TOTALROWS is set to the number of rows in the associated table space.
- If the number of keys for an associated index in column TOTALENTRIES of table SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSPACESTATS is not available or is significantly incorrect, you can update the value to a more appropriate value using an SQL UPDATE statement. The next time that REBUILD INDEX is run, TOTALENTRIES is set to the number of keys for the affected index.

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Rebalancing partitions by using REORG

You can rebalance partitions by using the REORG TABLESPACE utility.

You can use the following methods to rebalance partitions:

- Use ALTER INDEX to modify the limit keys for partition boundaries before you use REORG TABLESPACE.
- Use ALTER TABLE ALTER PARTITION before you use REORG TABLESPACE.
- Use REBALANCE on the REORG TABLESPACE utility.

Restriction: You cannot use the REBALANCE option with the SCOPE PENDING option.

If you use ALTER INDEX to modify the limit keys for partition boundaries, you must subsequently use REORG TABLESPACE to redistribute data in the partitioned table spaces based on the new key values and to reset the REORG-pending status. The following example specifies options that help maximize performance while performing the necessary rebalancing reorganization:

```
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8S10E PART 2:3
NOSYSREC COPYDDN SYSCOPY STATISTICS TABLE INDEX(ALL)
```

You can reorganize a range of partitions, even if the partitions are not in REORG-pending status. If you specify the STATISTICS keyword, REORG collects data about the specified range of partitions.

If you perform a REORG on partitions that are in the REORG-pending status, be aware that:

- You can specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE when objects are in the REORG-pending status. REORG materializes any pending definition changes at the table space level and the indexes.
- REORG ignores the KEEPDICTIONARY option for any partition that is in REORG-pending status; REORG automatically rebuilds the dictionaries for the affected partitions. However, if you specify a range of partitions that includes some partitions that are not in REORG-pending restrictive status, REORG honors the KEEPDICTIONARY option for those nonrestricted partitions.
- If any partition is in REORG-pending status when REORG executes, DB2 writes a SYSCOPY record with STYPE=A for each partition that is specified on the REORG job.
- If you take an inline image copy of a range of partitions, DB2 writes one SYSCOPY record with ICTYPE=F for each partition, and each record has the same data set name.
- Specify the DISCARDN and PUNCHDDN data sets for a table space that is defined as LARGE or DSSIZE, but has had the limit key for the last partition of the table space reduced by a subsequent ALTER INDEX statement. Otherwise, REORG terminates and issues message DSNU035I and return code 8.

You cannot reorganize a subset of a range of partitions that are in REORG-pending status; you must reorganize the entire range to reset the restrictive status.

Rebalancing partitions when the clustering index does not match the partitioning key

For a table that has a clustering index that does not match the partitioning key, you must run REORG TABLESPACE twice so that data is rebalanced and all rows are in clustering order. The first utility execution rebalances the data and the second utility execution sorts the data.

For example, assume you have a table space that was created with the following SQL:

```
-----  
SQL to create a table and index with  
separate columns for partitioning  
and clustering  
-----
```

```
CREATE TABLESPACE TS IN DB  
  USING STOGROUP SG  
  Numparts 4 BUFFERPOOL BP0;  
CREATE TABLE TB (C01 CHAR(5) NOT NULL,  
  C02 CHAR(5) NOT NULL,  
  C03 CHAR(5) NOT NULL)  
  IN DB.TS  
  PARTITION BY (C01)  
  (PART 1 VALUES ('00001'),  
  PART 2 VALUES ('00002'),  
  PART 3 VALUES ('00003'),  
  PART 4 VALUES ('00004'));  
CREATE INDEX IX ON TB(C02) CLUSTER;
```

To rebalance the data across the four partitions, use the following REORG TABLESPACE control statement:

```
REORG TABLESPACE DB.TS REBALANCE
```

After the preceding utility job completes, the table space is placed in AREO* status to indicate that a subsequent reorganization is recommended to ensure that the rows are in clustering order. For this subsequent reorganization, use the following REORG TABLESPACE control statement:

```
REORG TABLESPACE DB.TS
```

How partitions can be unloaded and reloaded in parallel

In some situations, the REORG utility attempts to unload and reload partitions in parallel. In other situations, parallel unloading and reloading does not occur.

REORG attempts to unload and reload table space partitions in parallel in the following situations:

- If you specify the NOSYSREC keyword.
- If the NOSYSREC keyword is defaulted like it is for SHRLEVEL CHANGE
- If you specify the UNLDDN keyword with a template name, where the template's data set name pattern includes a partition number.

REORG does not attempt to unload and reload table space partitions in parallel in the following situations:

- If the DATAWKnn DD statements are coded in the JCL.
- If you do not specify the SORTDEVT keyword.
- If the UTPRINT data set is not allocated to SYSOUT.
- If you specify the REBALANCE keyword.
- If rows might move from one partition to another as a result of alter limit keys or partition-by-growth table space.
- If you specify the UNLDDN keyword with a template name and specify UNIT(TAPE) STACK(YES).).

Using inline copy with REORG TABLESPACE

You can create a full image copy data set (SHRLEVEL REFERENCE) during REORG TABLESPACE execution.

The new copy is an inline copy. The advantage to using an inline copy is that the table space is not left in COPY-pending status, regardless of which LOG option is specified for the utility. Thus, data availability is increased. You must take an inline copy when you specify the REBALANCE option.

To create an inline copy, use the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN keywords. You can specify up to two primary copies and two secondary copies. Inline copies are produced during the RELOAD phase of REORG processing.

The SYSCOPY record that is produced by an inline copy contains ICTYPE=F, SHRLEVEL=R. The STYPE column contains an X if the image copy was produced by REORG TABLESPACE LOG(YES), and a W if the image copy was produced by REORG TABLESPACE LOG(NO). The data set that is produced by the inline copy is logically equivalent to a full image copy with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, but the data within the data set differs in some respects:

- Data pages might be out of sequence and some might be repeated. If pages are repeated, the last one is always the correct copy.
- Space map pages are out of sequence and might be repeated

The total number of duplicate pages is small, with a negligible effect on the amount of space that is required for the data set. One exception to this guideline is the case of running REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE, in which the number of duplicate pages varies with the number of records that are applied during the LOG phase.

Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REORG TABLESPACE

As part of REORG TABLESPACE processing, you can use FlashCopy technology to take image copies. This method is potentially faster than the traditional DB2 utility methods for creating inline copies and thus reduces the time that data is unavailable. FlashCopy image copies can also potentially reduce the time that is required for recovery operations.

REORG TABLESPACE can also create one to four additional inline image copies by using the traditional methods. Traditional inline image copies are output to a non-VSAM sequential format data set. For more information about traditional inline copies, see “Using inline copy with REORG TABLESPACE” on page 558.

Restriction: You cannot create FlashCopy image copies if you specify UNLOAD ONLY or UNLOAD EXTERNAL in the REORG TABLESPACE utility control statement.

To create a FlashCopy image copy with REORG TABLESPACE:

Specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT) in the REORG TABLESPACE utility control statement. Alternatively, you can set the FLASHCOPY_REORG_TS subsystem parameter to YES, which specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to use FLASHCOPY(YES) by default. The value that you specify for the FLASHCOPY option in the REORG TABLESPACE statement always overrides the value for the FLASHCOPY_REORG_TS subsystem parameter. Optionally, you can also specify FCCOPYDDN in the REORG TABLESPACE statement. Use this option to specify a template for the FlashCopy image copy. If you do not specify the FCCOPYDDN option in the REORG TABLESPACE statement, the utility uses the value from the FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter.

Restriction: The data sets that you specify for the FlashCopy image copy must be on FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes.

When you specify FLASHCOPY(YES) or FLASHCOPY(CONSISTENT), REORG TABLESPACE uses FlashCopy technology to create a consistent copy of the target objects. If you also requested one or more traditional inline copies in the REORG TABLESPACE statement (by specifying COPYDDN or RECOVERYDDN), the utility also creates those copies. REORG TABLESPACE does not use the FlashCopy image copy to create those traditional inline copies.

Any indexes that are defined with the COPY YES attribute are also copied with FlashCopy technology.

Related objects are copied if one of the following conditions is true:

- You specified REBALANCE in the REORG TABLESPACE statement.
- The partitioning key has changed since the last time the table space was reorganized
- The base table space is a partition-by-growth table space.

Failures occur in the following situations:

- The FlashCopy image copy fails if the FlashCopy Version 2 disk volumes are not available or if any of the other FlashCopy operational restrictions exist. For a list of those operational restrictions, see “FlashCopy image copies” on page 142.
- REORG TABLESPACE terminates if the FlashCopy image copy for the target table space fails, you specified SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, and inline copies were not taken. (If the FlashCopy image copy fails and you specified SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, but inline copies were taken, the utility continues.)

Related concepts

“FlashCopy image copies” on page 142

Related reference

 [DEFAULT TEMPLATE](#) field (FCCOPYDDN subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

 [REORG TABLESPACE](#) field (FLASHCOPY_REORG_TS subsystem parameter) (DB2 Installation Guide)

Improving REORG TABLESPACE performance

You can improve the performance of the REORG TABLESPACE utility by taking certain actions.

Recommendation: Run online REORG during light periods of activity on the table space or index.

To improve REORG TABLESPACE performance:

- Run REORG concurrently on separate partitions of a partitioned table space if no nonpartitioned indexes exist. When you run REORG on partitions of a partitioned table space, the sum of each job's processor usage is greater than for a single REORG job on the entire table space. However, the elapsed time of reorganizing the entire table in parallel can be significantly less than it would be for a single REORG job.
- Use parallel index build for table spaces or partitions that have more than one defined index.
- Specify NOSYSREC on your REORG statement.
- If you are not using NOSYSREC, use an UNLDDN template to enable unload parallelism.
- If you are using 3990 caching, and you have the nonpartitioning indexes on RAMAC, consider specifying YES on the UTILITY CACHE OPTION field of installation panel DSNTIPE.

This option allows DB2 to use sequential prestaging when reading data from RAMAC for the following utilities:

- LOAD PART *integer* RESUME
- REORG TABLESPACE PART

For LOAD PART and REORG TABLESPACE PART utility jobs, prefetch reads remain in the cache longer, which can lead to possible improvements in the performance of subsequent writes.

For REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, use inline statistics only if you can afford the additional cost of collecting statistics inline. Collecting statistics inline makes it unnecessary to run another RUNSTATS job

after the REORG job. However, collecting statistics inline might substantially increase the length of time that the REORG job runs.

- Schedule REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE when the rate of writing is low and transactions are short. Avoid scheduling REORG with SHRLEVEL CHANGE when critical applications are executing.

Under certain circumstances, the log records that REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE uses contain additional information, as if DATA CAPTURE CHANGES were used. Generation of the additional information can slow applications and increase consumption of log space. The additional information is generated for all the tables in the table space if at least one table satisfies all these conditions:

- The table has undergone ALTER TABLE ADD column.
- The table does not use DATA CAPTURE CHANGES.
- One of these conditions is true:
 - The area that is being reorganized uses data compression.
 - The area is a partitioned table space, and at least one partition uses data compression.

- Run REORG with DRAIN_WAIT.

The DRAIN_WAIT option gives you greater control over the time that online REORG is to wait for drains. Also because the DRAIN_WAIT is the aggregate time that online REORG is to wait to perform a drain on a table space and associated indexes, the length of drains is more predictable than if each partition and index has its own individual waiting time limit.

By specifying a short delay time (less than the system timeout value, IRLMRWT), you can reduce the impact on applications by reducing time-outs. You can use the RETRY option to give the online REORG more chances to complete successfully. If you do not want to use RETRY processing, you can still use DRAIN_WAIT to set a specific and more consistent limit on the length of drains.

RETRY allows an online REORG that is unable to drain the objects that it requires so that DB2 can try again after a set period (RETRY_DELAY). During the RETRY_DELAY period, all the objects are available for read-write access in the case of SHRLEVEL CHANGE. For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, the objects remain with the access that existed prior to the attempted drain (that is if the drain fails in the UNLOAD phase the object remains in read-write access; if the drain fails in the SWITCH phase, objects remain in read-only access).

Because application SQL statements can queue behind any unsuccessful drain that the online REORG has tried, define a reasonable delay before you retry to allow this work to complete; the default is 5 minutes.

When you specify DRAIN WRITERS (the default) with SHRLEVEL CHANGE and RETRY, multiple read-only log iterations can occur. Generally, online REORG might need to do more work when RETRY is specified, and this might result in multiple or extended periods of restricted access. Applications that run alongside online REORG need to perform frequent commits. During the interval between retries, the utility is still active, and consequently other utility activity against the table space and indexes is restricted.

Parallel index building for REORG TABLESPACE

Parallel index building reduces the elapsed time for a REORG TABLESPACE job by sorting the index keys and rebuilding multiple indexes in parallel, rather than sequentially. Optimally, a pair of subtasks processes each index; one subtask sorts extracted keys, whereas the other subtask builds the index.

REORG TABLESPACE begins building each index as soon as the corresponding sort emits its first sorted record. The following figure shows the flow of a REORG TABLESPACE job that uses a parallel index build. DB2 starts multiple subtasks to sort index keys and build indexes in parallel. If you specify STATISTICS, additional subtasks collect the sorted keys and update the catalog table in parallel, eliminating the need for a second scan of the index by a separate RUNSTATS job.

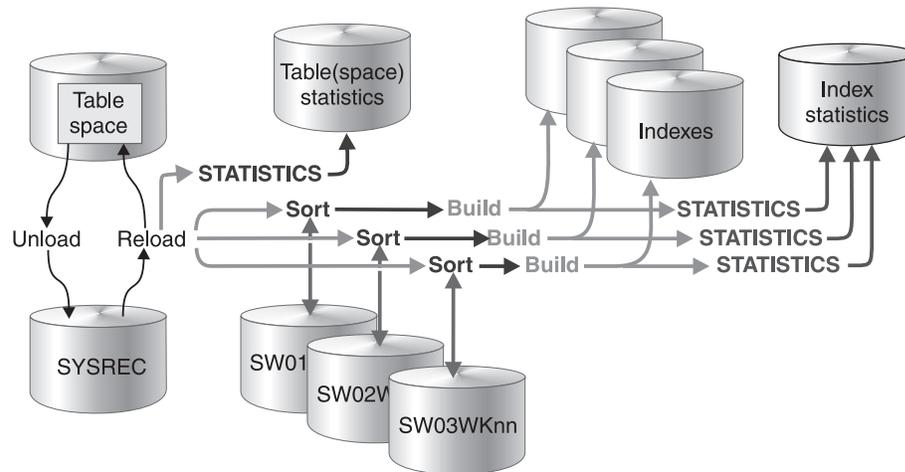


Figure 73. How indexes are built during a parallel index build

REORG TABLESPACE uses parallel index build if more than one index needs to be built (including the mapping index for SHRLEVEL CHANGE). You can either let the utility dynamically allocate the data sets that SORT needs for this parallel index build or provide the necessary data sets yourself.

Select one of the following methods to allocate sort work and message data sets:

Method 1:

REORG TABLESPACE determines the optimal number of sort work data sets and message data sets.

1. Specify the SORTDEVT keyword in the utility statement.
2. Allow dynamic allocation of sort work data sets by not supplying SORTWKnn DD statements in the REORG TABLESPACE utility JCL.
3. Allocate UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

Method 2:

Control allocation of sort work data sets, while REORG TABLESPACE allocates message data sets.

1. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form SWnnWKmm.
2. Allocate UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

Method 3:

Exercise the most control over rebuild processing; specify both sort work data sets and message data sets.

1. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form SWnnWKmm.
2. Provide DD statements with DD names in the form UTPRINnn.

Data sets used

If you select Method 2 or 3 in the preceding information, define the necessary data sets by using the following information.

Each sort subtask must have its own group of sort work data sets and its own print message data set. Possible reasons to allocate data sets in the utility job JCL rather than using dynamic allocation are:

- To control the size and placement of the data sets
- To minimize device contention
- To optimally utilize free disk space
- To limit the number of utility subtasks that are used to build indexes

The DD name *SW_{nn}WK_{mm}* defines the sort work data sets that are used during utility processing. *nn* identifies the subtask pair, and *mm* identifies one or more data sets that are to be used by that subtask pair. For example:

SW01WK01

Is the first sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the first index.

SW01WK02

Is the second sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the first index.

SW02WK01

Is the first sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the second index.

SW02WK02

Is the second sort work data set that is used by the subtask that builds the second index.

The DD name *UTPRIN_{nn}* defines the sort work message data sets that are used by the utility subtask pairs. *nn* identifies the subtask pair.

Every time you invoke REORG TABLESPACE, new *UTPRIN_{nn}* data sets are dynamically allocated. REORG TABLESPACE does not reuse *UTPRIN_{nn}* data sets from previous job steps. This behavior might cause the number of JES2 job queue elements to be consumed more quickly than expected.

Number of sort subtasks

The maximum number of utility subtask pairs that are started for parallel index build is equal to the number of indexes that need to be built.

REORG TABLESPACE determines the number of subtask pairs according to the following guidelines:

- The number of subtask pairs equals the number of allocated sort work data set groups.
- The number of subtask pairs equals the number of allocated message data sets.
- If you allocate both sort work data sets and message data set groups, the number of subtask pairs equals the smallest number of allocated data sets.

Allocation of sort subtasks

REORG TABLESPACE attempts to assign one sort subtask pair for each index that is to be built. If REORG TABLESPACE cannot start enough subtasks to build one index per subtask pair, it allocates any excess indexes across the pairs; therefore one or more subtask pairs might build more than one index.

During parallel index build processing, REORG distributes all indexes among the subtask pairs according to the index creation date, assigning the first created index to the first subtask pair. For SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the mapping index is assigned last.

Estimating the sort work file size

If you choose to provide the data sets, you need to know the size and number of keys that are present in all of the indexes that are being processed by the subtask in order to calculate each sort work file size. After you determine which indexes are assigned to which subtask pairs, use the following formula to calculate the required space:

$$2 * (\textit{longest index key} + c) * (\textit{number of extracted keys})$$

longest key

The length of the longest index key that is to be processed by the subtask. If the index is of varying length, the longest key is the maximum possible length of a key with all varying-length columns that are padded to their maximum length, plus 2 bytes for each varying-length column in the index. For example, if an index with three columns (A, B, and C) has length values of CHAR(8) for A, VARCHAR(128) for B, and VARCHAR(50) for C, the longest key is calculated as follows:

$$8 + 128 + 50 + 2 + 2 = 190$$

For SHRLEVEL CHANGE, the mapping index key length is 21.

c A value as follows:

- 10 if the indexes that are rebuilt are a mix of data-partitioned secondary indexes and nonpartitioned indexes
- 8 if all indexes are partitioned or none of them are data-partitioned secondary indexes.

number of extracted keys

The number of keys from all indexes that need to be sorted and that are to be processed by the subtask.

Do not count keys that belong to partitioning indexes should not be counted in the sort work data set size calculation. The space estimation formula might indicate that 0 bytes are required (because the only index that is processed by a task set is the partitioning index). In this case, if you allocate your own sort work data set groups, you still need to allocate sort work data sets for this task set, but you can use a minimal allocation, such as 1 track.

Related concepts

“Improving performance with LOAD or REORG PREFORMAT” on page 296

How DB2 unloads data

DB2 unloads data by table space scan with sort, table space scan, or clustering index.

DB2 unloads data by one of three methods:

- *Table space scan with sort*: If at least one table space has an index, DB2 uses a table space scan with a sort.
 - *Table space scan*: DB2 uses a table space scan for simple table spaces that contain more than one table, or that contain one table but do not have an index.
 - *Clustering index*: DB2 uses this option for simple table spaces that contain one table and have an index, and for tables in a segmented table space that have an index.
-

Encountering an error in the RELOAD phase

Failure during the RELOAD phase (after the data is unloaded and data sets are deleted, but before the data is reloaded) results in an unusable table space.

If the error is on the table space data:

- If you have defined data sets, you can allocate new data sets.
- If STOGROUP has defined data sets, you can alter the new table space to change the primary and secondary quantities.
- If you allocate new data sets, alter the table space, or add volumes to the storage group, restart the REORG job at the beginning of the phase. Otherwise, you can restart either at the last commit point or at the beginning of the phase.

If the error is on the unloaded data, or if you used the NOSYSREC option, terminate REORG by using the TERM UTILITY command. Then recover the table space, using RECOVER, and run the REORG job again.

Reorganization of partitioned table spaces

If you reorganize a single partition or a range of partitions, all indexes of the table space are affected. Depending on how disorganized the nonpartitioning indexes are, you might want to reorganize them.

Related tasks

“Determining when an index requires reorganization” on page 481

Reorganization of partition-by-growth table spaces

You can reorganize an entire partition-by-growth table space that does not contain LOB columns. In this case, the REORG TABLESPACE online utility condenses the data into the minimum number of required partitions.

Because the REORG TABLESPACE utility cannot reclaim physical space, the excess partition will be empty. If the data needs additional space, the REORG TABLESPACE utility triggers the process to add additional partitions if the maximum number of partitions has not been reached. If the maximum number of partitions has been reached, the REORG TABLESPACE utility fails.

If you specify REORG TABLESPACE PART for a partition-by-growth table space, the utility will fail if the data does not fit back into its partition because of the change in the free space parameter during the REORG. To prevent the utility from failing, run REORG TABLESPACE on the entire table space or modify the free space parameter to fit the data rows into the partition.

To ensure that the REORG utility is able to condense the data into the minimum number of required partitions, parallelism for the REORG utility does not apply to partition-by-growth table spaces.

If the partition-by-growth table space contains LOB columns, the REORG TABLESPACE utility minimizes partitions by eliminating existing holes, but does not move the data from one partition to another.

When you reorganize a partition-by-growth table space at the partition level, the REORG TABLESPACE utility minimizes partitions by eliminating existing holes.

If there is a compression dictionary, the compression dictionary is copied to all partitions even if the partition is empty.

Reorganization of segmented table spaces

The REORG TABLESPACE utility reorganizes segmented table spaces.

If the target table space is segmented, REORG unloads and reloads by table.

If an index exists on a table in a segmented table space, that table is unloaded in clustering sequence. If NO index exists, the table is unloaded in physical row and segment order.

For segmented table spaces, REORG does not normally need to reclaim space from dropped tables. Space that is freed by dropping tables in a segmented table space is immediately available if the table space can be accessed when DROP TABLE is executed. If the table space cannot be accessed when DROP TABLE is executed (for example, the disk device is offline), DB2 removes the table from the catalog, but does not delete all table rows. In this case, the space for the dropped table is not available until REORG reclaims it.

After you run REORG, the segments for each table are contiguous.

Comparison of the numbers of loaded and unloaded records

At the end of the RELOAD phase, REORG compares the number of records that were actually loaded to the number of records that were unloaded.

If the counts do not match, the resulting actions depend on the UNLOAD option that you specified on the original job:

- If you specify UNLOAD PAUSE, REORG sets return code 4 and continues processing the job.
- If you specify UNLOAD CONTINUE, DB2 issues an error message and abnormally terminates the job. The table space or partition remains in RECOVER-pending status.

Reorganization of a LOB table space

Reorganizing a LOB table space is a separate task from reorganizing the base table space.

| For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or SHRLEVEL CHANGE, LOBs are unloaded to a
| shadow data set and physical space is reclaimed. If you specify SHRLEVEL
| REFERENCE, LOG NO and an inline image copy are required and no updates are
| logged during the REORG.

Reorganization of an XML table space

Reorganizing an XML table space is a separate task from reorganizing the base table space.

When you specify the name of the base table space in the REORG statement, DB2 reorganizes only that table space and not any related XML objects. If you want DB2 to reorganize the XML objects, you must specify those object names. When you specify that you want XML table spaces to be reorganized, you must also specify the WORKDDN keyword and provide the specified temporary work file. The default is SYSUT1.

| When you run REORG on an XML table space that supports XML versions,
| REORG discards rows for versions of an XML document that are no longer
| needed.

For XML table spaces and base table spaces with XML columns, you cannot specify the following options in the REORG statement:

- DISCARD
- REBALANCE
- UNLOAD EXTERNAL

In the following example, the REORG statement specifies that DB2 is reorganizing table space BASETS01 and XML table spaces XML1TS01 and XML2TS01. During this reorganization DB2 is to take an inline copy of the base table space and gather statistics for all three table spaces.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='HUHRU252.REORG1',TIME=1440,  
// UTPROC='',  
// SYSTEM='DSN',DB2LEV=DB2A  
//SYSREC DD DSN=HUHRU252.REORG1.STEP1.SYSREC,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),  
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)  
//SYSCOPY1 DD DSN=HUHRU252.REORG1.STEP1.SYSCOPY1,  
// DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,  
// SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)  
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=IUJLU101.REORG.STEP1.SYSUT1,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),  
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)  
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=IUJLU101.REORG.STEP1.SYSUT2,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),  
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)  
  
//SYSIN DD *  
REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.BASETS01  
SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE MAP1  
COPYDDN(SYSCOPY1)  
STATISTICS TABLE(ALL)  
INDEX(ALL)  
REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.XML1TS01  
SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE MAP2  
STATISTICS TABLE(ALL)  
INDEX(ALL)
```

```
WORKDDN(SYSUT1)
REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.XML2TS01
SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE MAP3
STATISTICS TABLE(ALL)
INDEX(ALL)
WORKDDN(SYSUT2)
```

/*

Termination of REORG TABLESPACE

You can terminate the REORG TABLESPACE utility.

If you terminate REORG TABLESPACE with the TERM UTILITY command during the UNLOAD phase, objects have not yet been changed, and you can rerun the job.

If you terminate REORG TABLESPACE with the TERM UTILITY command during the RELOAD phase, the behavior depends on the SHRLEVEL option:

- For SHRLEVEL NONE, the data records are not erased. The table space and indexes remain in RECOVER-pending status. After you recover the table space, rerun the REORG job.
- For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, the data records are reloaded into shadow objects, so the original objects have not been affected by REORG. You can rerun the job.

If you terminate REORG with the TERM UTILITY command during the SORT, BUILD, or LOG phases, the behavior depends on the SHRLEVEL option:

- For SHRLEVEL NONE, the indexes that are not yet built remain in RECOVER-pending status. You can run REORG with the SORTDATA option, or you can run REBUILD INDEX to rebuild those indexes.
- For SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, the records are reloaded into shadow objects, so the original objects have not been affected by REORG. You can rerun the job.

If you terminate a stopped REORG utility with the TERM UTILITY command during the SWITCH phase, the following conditions apply:

- All data sets that were renamed to their shadow counterparts are renamed to their original names, so that the objects remain in their original state, and you can rerun the job.
- If a problem occurs in renaming the data sets to the original names, the objects remain in RECOVER-pending status, and you cannot rerun the job.

If the SWITCH phase does not complete, the image copy that REORG created is not available for use by the RECOVER utility. If you terminate an active REORG utility during the SWITCH phase with the TERM UTILITY command, during the rename process, the renaming occurs, and the SWITCH phase completes. The image copy that REORG created is available for use by the RECOVER utility.

The REORG-pending status is not reset until the UTILTERM execution phase. If the REORG utility abnormally terminates or is terminated, the objects remain in REORG-pending status and RECOVER-pending status, depending on the phase in which the failure occurred.

The following table lists the restrictive states that REORG TABLESPACE sets according to the phase in which the utility terminated.

Table 94. Restrictive states that REORG TABLESPACE sets.

Phase	Effect on restrictive status
UNLOAD	No effect.
RELOAD	SHRLEVEL NONE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Places table space in RECOVER-pending status at the beginning of the phase and resets the status at the end of the phase. Places indexes in RECOVER-pending status. Places the table space in COPY-pending status. If COPYDDN is specified and SORTKEYS is ignored, the COPY-pending status is reset at the end of the phase. SORTKEYS is ignored for several catalog and directory table spaces SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE has no effect.
SORT	No effect.
BUILD	SHRLEVEL NONE resets RECOVER-pending status for indexes and, if the utility job includes both COPYDDN and SORTKEYS, resets COPY-pending status for table spaces at the end of the phase. SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE has no effect.
SORTBLD	No effect during the sort portion of the SORTBLD phase. During the build portion of the SORTBLD phase, the effect is the same as for the BUILD phase.
LOG	No effect.
SWITCH	No effect. Under certain conditions, if TERM UTILITY is issued, it must complete successfully; otherwise, objects might be placed in RECOVER-pending status.

Recovering a failed REORG job

If you terminate REORG SHRLEVEL NONE in the RELOAD phase, all SYSLGRNX records associated with the reorganization are deleted. Use the RECOVER TABLESPACE utility to recover to the current point in time. This action recovers the table space to its state before the failed reorganization.

Related concepts

“Reorganizing the catalog and directory” on page 553

“Termination of an online utility with the TERM UTILITY command” on page 34

Related reference

Appendix C, “Advisory or restrictive states,” on page 1001

Restart of REORG TABLESPACE

You can restart a REORG TABLESPACE utility job.

By default, DB2 uses RESTART(CURRENT) when restarting REORG TABLESPACE jobs, with the following exceptions:

- Jobs that are restarted in the SORT, BUILD, or SWITCH phase use RESTART(PHASE) by default.
- Jobs with the SORTKEYS option that are restarted in the RELOAD, SORT, BUILD, or SORTBLD phase always restart from the beginning of the RELOAD phase.
- Jobs with the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, NOSYSREC, and SORTDATA options use RESTART(PHASE) to restart at the beginning of the UNLOAD phase.

- Jobs with unload parallelism for REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE use RESTART(PHASE) to restart at the beginning of the UNLOAD and RELOAD phases.
- Jobs that reorganize the following catalog or directory table spaces use RESTART(PHASE):
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
 - DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
 - DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
 - DSNDB06.SYSPLAN
 - DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS
 - DSNDB01.DBD01

If you restart a REORG job of one or more of the catalog or directory table spaces in the preceding list, you cannot use RESTART(CURRENT).

If you restart REORG in the UTILINIT phase, it re-executes from the beginning of the phase. If REORG abnormally terminates or system failure occurs while it is in the UTILTERM phase, you must restart the job with RESTART(PHASE).

The following table provides information about restarting REORG TABLESPACE, depending on the phase that REORG was in when the job stopped. For each phase of REORG and for each type of REORG TABLESPACE (with SHRLEVEL NONE, with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, and with SHRLEVEL CHANGE), the following table indicates the types of restarts that are allowed (CURRENT and PHASE). A value of None indicates that no restart is allowed. The “Data Sets Required” column lists the data sets that must exist to perform the specified type of restart in the specified phase.

Table 95. REORG TABLESPACE utility restart information for SHRLEVEL NONE, REFERENCE, and CHANGE

Phase	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL NONE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL CHANGE	Required data sets	Notes
UNLOAD	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE ⁶	None	SYSREC	
RELOAD	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE ⁶	None	SYSREC	1, 2
SORT	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE ⁶	None	None	2, 3
BUILD	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE ⁶	None	None	2, 3, 4
SORTBLD	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE ⁶	None	None	2
LOG	Phase does not occur	Phase does not occur ⁶	None	None	
SWITCH	Phase does not occur	CURRENT, PHASE	CURRENT, PHASE	Originals and shadows	3, 5

Table 95. REORG TABLESPACE utility restart information for SHRLEVEL NONE, REFERENCE, and CHANGE (continued)

Phase	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL NONE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Type of restart allowed for SHRLEVEL CHANGE	Required data sets	Notes
-------	---	--	---	--------------------	-------

Note:

1. For None, if you specify NOSYSREC, restart is not possible, and you must execute the RECOVER TABLESPACE utility for the table space or partition. For REFERENCE, if the REORG job includes both SORTDATA and NOSYSREC, RESTART or RESTART(PHASE) restarts at the beginning of the UNLOAD phase.
2. If you specify SHRLEVEL NONE or SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, and the job includes the SORTKEYS option, use RESTART or RESTART(PHASE) to restart at the beginning of the RELOAD phase.
3. You can restart the utility with RESTART or RESTART(PHASE). However, because this phase does not take checkpoints, RESTART restarts from the beginning of the phase.
4. If you specify the PART option with REORG TABLESPACE, you cannot restart the utility at the beginning of the BUILD phase if any nonpartitioning index is in a page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) status.
5. If you specify REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE PART with one or more nonpartitioned indexes, restart is allowed only in the SWITCH phase.
6. For REORG TABLESPACE with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE and PART, if a nonpartitioned index is defined on the table space, REORG TABLESPACE cannot be restarted before the SWITCH phase.

If you restart a REORG STATISTICS job by using RESTART CURRENT, inline statistics are not collected. To update catalog statistics, run the RUNSTATS utility after the restarted job completes. Restarting a REORG STATISTICS job with RESTART(PHASE) is conditional after executing UNLOAD PAUSE. To determine if catalog table statistics are going to be updated, see the following table. This table shows whether or not statistics are updated for REORG STATISTICS jobs according to the phase in which the job terminated and the restart value that was used.

Table 96. Statistics collection for REORG TABLESPACE utility phase restart

Phase	CURRENT	PHASE
UTILINIT	NO	YES
UNLOAD	NO	YES
RELOAD	NO	YES
SORT	NO	NO
BUILD	NO	YES
SORTBLD	NO	YES

Related tasks

- Chapter 3, “Invoking DB2 online utilities,” on page 11
- “Restarting after the output data set is full” on page 40

Review of REORG TABLESPACE output

The output from the REORG TABLESPACE utility consists of a reorganized table space, partition, or a range of partitions.

The following table summarizes the effect of REORG on a table space partition and on the corresponding index partition.

Table 97. Summary of the results of REORG TABLESPACE according to the type of specification.

Specification	Results
REORG TABLESPACE	All data + entire partitioning index + all nonpartitioning indexes
REORG TABLESPACE PART <i>n</i>	Data for PART <i>n</i> + PART <i>n</i> of the partitioning index + index entries for PART <i>n</i> in all nonpartitioning indexes
REORG TABLESPACE PART <i>n1:n2</i>	Data for PART <i>n1</i> through <i>n2</i> + PART <i>n1</i> through <i>n2</i> of the partitioning index + index entries for those partitions in all nonpartitioning indexes
REORG TABLESPACE SCOPE PENDING	Specified table space or partitions that are in REORG-pending status.
REORG SHRLEVEL CHANGE PART and SHRLEVEL REFERENCE PART	Unloads and builds entire NPIs, so that the NPI is largely reorganized even though only a part of the data is actually reorganized.

When reorganizing a segmented table space, REORG leaves free pages and free space on each page in accordance with the current values of the FREEPAGE and PCTFREE parameters. (You can set those values by using the CREATE TABLESPACE, ALTER TABLESPACE, CREATE INDEX, or ALTER INDEX statements). REORG leaves one free page after reaching the FREEPAGE limit for each table in the table space. When reorganizing a nonsegmented table space, REORG leaves one free page after reaching the FREEPAGE limit, regardless of whether the loaded records belong to the same or different tables.

After running REORG TABLESPACE

Certain activities might be required after you run the REORG TABLESPACE utility, depending on your situation.

After a reorganization is complete, perform the following actions:

- If you have used LOG YES, consider taking an image copy of the reorganized table space or partition to:
 - Provide a full image copy for recovery. This action prevents the need to process the log records that are written during reorganization.
 - Permit making incremental image copies later.

You might not need to take an image copy of a table space for which all the following statements are true:

- The table space is relatively small.
- The table space is used only in read-only applications.
- The table space can be easily loaded again in the event of failure.

In addition, you do not need to take an image copy if you used COPYDDN or FCCOPYDDN to take an inline image copy when you ran REORG.

- Use the RUNSTATS utility on the table space and its indexes if inline statistics were not collected, so that the DB2 catalog statistics take into account the newly reorganized data, and SQL paths can be selected with accurate information. You need to run RUNSTATS on nonpartitioning indexes only if you reorganized a subset of the partitions.
- If you use REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE with a mapping table, you can drop the mapping table and its index.

- If you use SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, and a table space, partition, or index resides in user-managed data sets, you can delete the user-managed shadow data sets.
- If you specify DISCARD on a REORG of a table that is involved in a referential integrity set, you need to run CHECK DATA for any affected referentially related objects that were placed in CHECK-pending status.

Related reference

Chapter 11, “COPY,” on page 119

Effects of running REORG TABLESPACE

Running the REORG TABLESPACE utility can have effects on index version numbers and the version of the data, control intervals, row formats, and NOT LOGGED table spaces.

The effect of REORG TABLESPACE on index version numbers and the version of the data

DB2 stores the range of used version numbers in the OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION columns of one or more of the following catalog tables, depending on the object:

- SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
- SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPART
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES
- SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART

The OLDEST_VERSION column contains the oldest used version number, and the CURRENT_VERSION column contains the current version number.

When you run REORG TABLESPACE, the utility sets all of the rows in the table or partition to the current object version. The utility also updates the range of used version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute. REORG TABLESPACE sets the OLDEST_VERSION column equal to the CURRENT_VERSION column in the appropriate catalog column. These updated values indicate that only one version is active. DB2 can then reuse all of the other version numbers.

Recycling of version numbers is required when all of the version numbers are being used. All version numbers are being used when one of the following situations is true:

- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is one less than the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column.
- The value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is 255 for table spaces or 15 for indexes, and the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column is 0 or 1.

You can also run LOAD REPLACE, REBUILD INDEX, or REORG INDEX to recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY NO attribute. To recycle version numbers for indexes that are defined with the COPY YES attribute or for table spaces, run MODIFY RECOVERY.

The effect of REORG TABLESPACE on the control interval

When you run REORG TABLESPACE without the REUSE option and the data set that contains that data is DB2–managed, DB2 deletes this data set before the

REORG and redefines a new data set with a control interval that matches the page size.

The effect of REORG TABLESPACE on row format

When you run REORG with the ROWFORMAT RRF option on a table space or partition that is in basic row format, REORG converts that table space or partition to reordered row format. If the ROWFORMAT BRF option is specified, existing basic row format table spaces will not be converted to reordered row format. If there is a table in the table space with an EDITPROC or VALIDPROC, the table space or partition remains in basic row format after the REORG. These conversions can only be performed in new function mode.

If you run REORG on a catalog or directory table space, the catalog or directory table space remains in basic row format.

REORG TABLESPACE does not convert table spaces that are defined with COMPRESS YES to reordered row format. For table spaces that are defined with COMPRESS YES and contain some partitions in basic row format and some partitions in reordered row format, REORG TABLESPACE converts the partitions that are in basic row format to reordered row format.

The effect of REORG on NOT LOGGED table spaces

The following table shows the effect of REORG on NOT LOGGED table spaces.

Table 98. REORG parameters

LOAD REORG LOG keyword	Table space logging attribute	Table space type	What is logged	Table space status after utility completes
LOG YES	NOT LOGGED	Non-LOB	LOG YES changes to LOG NO	No pending status or ICOPY-pending ¹
LOG YES	NOT LOGGED	LOB	control information	No pending status
LOG NO	NOT LOGGED	Non-LOB	nothing	No pending status or ICOPY-pending ¹
LOG NO	NOT LOGGED	LOB	nothing	No pending status

Note:

1. The table space is set to ICOPY-pending status if the records are discarded and no pending status is the records are not discarded.

Sample REORG TABLESPACE control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own REORG TABLESPACE control statements.

Example 1: Reorganizing a table space.

The following control statement specifies that the REORG TABLESPACE utility is to reorganize table space DSN8S10D in database DSN8D10A.

```
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D
```

Example 2: Reorganizing a table space and specifying the unload data set

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D. The DD name for the unload data set is UNLD, as specified by the UNLDDN option.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJLU101.REORG',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//UNLD DD DSN=IUJLU101.REORG.STEP1.UNLD,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SORTWK01 DD DSN=IUJLU101.REORG.STEP1.SORTWK01,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SORTWK02 DD DSN=IUJLU101.REORG.STEP1.SORTWK02,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
REORG TABLESPACE (DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D)
UNLDDN (UNLD)
//*
```

Figure 74. Example REORG TABLESPACE control statement with the UNLDDN option

Example 3: Reorganizing a table space partition

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize partition 3 of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E. The SORTDEVT option indicates the device type for the temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program.

```
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
PART 3
SORTDEVT SYSDA
```

Example 4: Reorganizing a table and using parallel index build

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DSNDB04.DSN8S81D and to use a parallel index build to rebuild the indexes. The indexes are built in parallel, because more than one index needs to be built and the job allocates the data sets that the sort program needs. Note that you no longer need to specify SORTKEYS; it is the default.

The job allocates the sort work data sets in two groups, which limits the number of pairs of utility subtasks to two. This example does not require UTPRIN nn DD statements because it uses DSNUPROC to invoke utility processing. DSNUPROC includes a DD statement that allocates UTPRINT to SYSOUT.

LOG NO specifies that records are not to be logged during the RELOAD phase. This option puts the table space in COPY-pending status.

```

//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SAMPJOB.REORG',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSREC DD DSN=SAMPJOB.REORG.STEP1.SYSREC,DISP=(NEW,DELETE,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
/* First group of sort work data sets for parallel index build
//SW01WK01 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW01WK02 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW01WK03 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
/* Second group of sort work data sets for parallel index build
//SW02WK01 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW02WK02 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SW02WK03 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
/* Sort work data sets for use by SORTDATA
//SORTWK01 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTWK02 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTWK03 DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
REORG TABLESPACE DSNDB04.DSN8S10D LOG NO
/*

```

Figure 75. Example REORG TABLESPACE control statement with LOG NO option

Example 5: Reorganizing a table while allowing read-write access

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DSNDB04.DSN8S81E and to use a parallel index build to rebuild the indexes. The sort program dynamically allocates sort work data sets. This example does not require UTPRIN nn DD statements because it uses DSNUPROC to invoke utility processing. DSNUPROC includes a DD statement that allocates UTPRINT to SYSOUT. The SORTDEVT option indicates the device type for the temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program. The SHRLEVEL CHANGE option specifies that while the table is being reorganized, users have read-write access. The name of the mapping table is DSN8MAP. This table is used to map the RIDs of data records in the original copy of the area to the corresponding RIDs in the shadow copy.

```

//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SAMPJOB.REORG',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSCOPY DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(10,20),,,ROUND),
// DSN=SAMPJOB,COPY,DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
//SYSIN DD *
REORG TABLESPACE DSNDB04.DSN8S10E LOG NO SORTDEVT SYSDA SORTNUM 4
SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE DSN8MAP
/*

```

Example 6: Specifying a deadline for the SWITCH phase while reorganizing a table

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S10D. The DEADLINE option indicates that the deadline for start of the SWITCH phase is eight hours from the start of the REORG job. The COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options indicate that the utility is to take an image copy of the table space. DB2 is to write the primary image copy at the local site to a data set that is defined by the MYCOPY1 DD statement and to write the primary image copy at the recovery site to a data set that is defined by the MYCOPY2 DD statement. SHRLEVEL REFERENCE indicates that access is restricted during reorganization.

```

REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D COPYDDN(MYCOPY1)
RECOVERYDDN(MYCOPY2) SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
DEADLINE CURRENT TIMESTAMP + 8 HOURS

```

Example 7: Setting a deadline for a REORG TABLESPACE job

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D. The DEADLINE option indicates that the deadline for the start of the SWITCH phase is eight hours from the start of the REORG job. The name of the mapping table is DSN8810.MAP_TBL. The maximum desired amount of time for the log processing in the read-only (last) iteration of log processing is 240 seconds, as indicated by the MAXRO option. If DB2 is not reading the log quickly enough after the applications write to the log, DB2 drains the write claim class after sending the LONGLOG message to the operator. That draining takes place at least 900 seconds after the LONGLOG message is sent, as indicated by the DELAY option. DB2 is also to take inline image copies for the local site and recovery site, as indicated by the COPYDDN and RECOVERYDDN options.

```
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D COPYDDN(MYCOPY1)
RECOVERYDDN(MYCOPY2) SHRLEVEL CHANGE
DEADLINE CURRENT TIMESTAMP + 8 HOURS
MAPPINGTABLE DSN81010.MAP_TBL MAXRO 240 LONGLOG DRAIN DELAY 900
```

Example 8: Reorganizing a range of table space partitions

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize partitions 3 through 5 of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E. The SORTDEVT option indicates the device type for the temporary data sets that are to be dynamically allocated by the sort program. The SHRLEVEL NONE option indicates that while the data is being unloaded, applications can read but can't write. While the data is being reloaded, applications can have read-write access. SHRLEVEL NONE is the default. The COPYDDN option indicates that the utility is to take an image copy of the table space and to write the primary image copy to the data set that is defined by the SYSCOPY DD statement.

```
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
PART 3:5
SORTDEVT SYSDA
SHRLEVEL NONE
COPYDDN SYSCOPY
```

Example 9: Reorganizing a partition and updating the statistics

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize partition 3 of table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E. The STATISTICS option indicates that the utility is also to update statistics in the catalog for that partition. Note that the STATISTICS option is not valid for LOB table spaces.

```
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
STATISTICS PART 3
```

Example 10: Reorganizing a table space and reporting table space and index statistics

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E. The SORTDATA option indicates that the data is to be unloaded and sorted in clustering order. This option is the default and does not need to be specified. The STATISTICS, TABLE, INDEX, and REPORT YES options indicate that the utility is also to report catalog statistics for all tables in the table space and for all indexes that are defined on those tables. The FREQVAL, NUMCOLS, and COUNT options indicate that DB2 is to collect 10 frequent values on the first key column of the index. UPDATE NONE indicates that the catalog tables are not to be updated. This option requires that REPORT

YES also be specified. Because both STATISTICS and INDEX are specified, the utility also collects statistics on the values in the key columns of indexes.

```
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E SORTDATA STATISTICS
TABLE
INDEX(ALL) FREQVAL NUMCOLS 1
COUNT 10 REPORT YES UPDATE NONE
```

Example 11: Determining whether a table space should be reorganized

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to report if the OFFPOSLIMIT and INDREFLIMIT values for partition 11 of table space DBHR5201.TPHR5201 exceed the specified values (11 for OFFPOSLIMIT and 15 for INDREFLIMIT).

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='HUHRU252.REORG2',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSREC DD DSN=HUHRU252.REORG2.STEP1.SYSREC,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSCOPY DD DSN=HUHRU252.REORG2.STEP1.SYSCOPY,DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//      SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201 PART 11
      NOSYSREC
      REPORTONLY
      SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE ADMF001.MAP1
      COPYDDN (SYSCOPY)
      OFFPOSLIMIT 11 INDREFLIMIT 15

/*
```

Figure 76. Example REORG TABLESPACE statement with REPORTONLY, OFFPOSLIMIT, and INDREFLIMIT options

On successful completion, DB2 returns output that is similar to the output in the following sample output. This sample output shows that the limits have been met.

```
DSNU000I DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = HUHRU252.REORG2
DSNU1044I DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I DSNUGUTC - REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201 PART 11 NOSYSREC REPORTONLY SHRLEVEL CHANGE
MAPPINGTABLE ADMF001.MAP1 COPYDDN(SYSCOPY) OFFPOSLIMIT 11 INDREFLIMIT 15
DSNU286I = DSNURLIM - REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201 OFFPOSLIMIT SYSINDEXPART ROWS
* CREATOR.IXNAME : ADMF001.IPHR5201
  CREATOR.TBNAME : ADMF001.TBHR5201
  PART: 1 CARDF: 6.758E+03 FAROFFPOSF: 2.892E+03 NEAROFFPOSF: 8.18E+02 STATSTIME: 2003-04-11
13.32.06
DSNU287I = DSNURLIM - REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201 INDREFLIMIT SYSTABLEPART ROWS
  DBNAME .TSNAME PART CARD FARINDREF NEARINDREF STATSTIME
  DBHR5201.TPHR5201 1 6758 0 0 2003-04-11-13.32.06

DSNU289I = DSNURLIM - REORG LIMITS HAVE BEEN MET
DSNU010I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 77. Sample output showing that REORG limits have been met

Example 12: Conditionally reorganizing a table space

In the following example, the RUNSTATS utility control statement specifies that the utility is to update space statistics in the catalog for table space DBHR5201.TPHR5201. This RUNSTATS job ensures that the space statistics for this table space are current. The subsequent REORG TABLESPACE control statement specifies that if any of the values for OFFPOSLIMIT or INDREFLIMIT exceed 9,

the utility is to reorganize the table space.

```

//*****
//* COMMENT: UPDATE STATISTICS
//*****
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='HUHRU252.REORG1',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSREC DD DSN=HUHRU252.REORG1.STEP1.SYSREC,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//      SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201
        UPDATE SPACE
/*
//*****
//* COMMENT: REORG THE TABLESPACE
//*****
//STEP2 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='HUHRU252.REORG1',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSREC DD DSN=HUHRU252.REORG1.STEP1.SYSREC,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSCOPY1 DD DSN=HUHRU252.REORG1.STEP1.SYSCOPY1,
//      DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201
        SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE MAP1
        COPYDDN(SYSCOPY1)
        OFFPOSLIMIT 9 INDREFLIMIT 9
/*

```

Figure 78. Example of conditionally reorganizing a table

On successful completion, DB2 returns output for the REORG TABLESPACE job that is similar to the output in the following sample output.

```

DSNU050I  DSNUGUTC - REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201 SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE
MAP1 COPYDDN(SYSCOPY1)
OFFPOSLIMIT 9 INDREFLIMIT 9
DSNU286I  = DSNURLIM - REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201 OFFPOSLIMIT SYSINDEXPART ROWS
* CREATOR.IXNAME : ADMF001.IPHR5201
CREATOR.TBNAME : ADMF001.TBHR5201
PART: 1 CARDF: 3.6E+01 FAROFFPOSF: 0.0E0 NEAROFFPOSF: 1.2E+01
STATSTIME: 2002-05-28-16.22.18
CREATOR.IXNAME : ADMF001.IPHR5201
CREATOR.TBNAME : ADMF001.TBHR5201
PART: 2 CARDF: 5.0E+00 FAROFFPOSF: 0.0E0 NEAROFFPOSF: 0.0E0
STATSTIME: 2002-05-28-16.22.18
...
* CREATOR.IXNAME : ADMF001.IPHR5201
CREATOR.TBNAME : ADMF001.TBHR5201
PART: 11 CARDF: 6.758E+03 FAROFFPOSF: 2.892E+03 NEAROFFPOSF: 8.18E+02
STATSTIME: 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DSNU287I  = DSNURLIM - REORG TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201 INDREFLIMIT SYSTABLEPART ROWS
DBNAME .TSNAME PART CARD FARINDREF NEARINDREF STATSTIME
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 1 36 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 2 5 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 3 54 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 4 30 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 5 21 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 6 5 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 7 4 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 8 35 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 9 25 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DBHR5201.TPHR5201 10 1 0 0 2002-05-28-16.22.18

```

```

DBHR5201.TPHR5201  11          6758          0          0 2002-05-28-16.22.18
DSNU289I = DSNURLIM - REORG LIMITS HAVE BEEN MET
DSNU290I = DSNURLIM - REORG WILL BE PERFORMED
DSNU252I DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=6985 FOR
TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201
DSNU250I DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME=00:00:01
DSNU304I = DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=6985 FOR TABLE
ADMFO01.TBHR5201
DSNU302I DSNURILD - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF INPUT RECORDS PROCESSED=6985
DSNU300I DSNURILD - (RE)LOAD PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME=00:00:29
DSNU042I DSNUGSOR - SORT PHASE STATISTICS -
NUMBER OF RECORDS=34925
ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00

DSNU348I = DSNURBXA - BUILD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=36 FOR INDEX ADMFO01.IPHR5201 PART 1
DSNU348I = DSNURBXA - BUILD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=5 FOR INDEX ADMFO01.IPHR5201 PART 2
...
DSNU349I = DSNURBXA - BUILD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=6985 FOR INDEX ADMFO01.IUHR5210
DSNU258I DSNURBXD - BUILD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF INDEXES=5
DSNU259I DSNURBXD - BUILD PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME=00:00:18
DSNU386I DSNURLGD - LOG PHASE STATISTICS. NUMBER OF ITERATIONS = 1, NUMBER OF LOG
RECORDS = 194
DSNU385I DSNURLGD - LOG PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:01:10
DSNU400I DSNURBID - COPY PROCESSED FOR TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201
NUMBER OF PAGES=1073
AVERAGE PERCENT FREE SPACE PER PAGE = 14.72
PERCENT OF CHANGED PAGES =100.00
ELAPSED TIME=00:01:58
DSNU387I DSNURSWT - SWITCH PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:01:05
DSNU428I DSNURSWT - DB2 IMAGE COPY SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DBHR5201.TPHR5201

```

Figure 79. Sample REORG output for conditional REORG

Example 13: Reorganizing a table space after waiting for SQL statements to complete.

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize the table space in the REORG_TBSP list, which is defined in the preceding LISTDEF utility control statement. Before reorganizing the table space, REORG TABLESPACE is to wait for 30 seconds for SQL statements to finish adding or changing data. This interval is indicated by the DRAIN_WAIT option. If the SQL statements do not finish, the utility is to retry up to four times, as indicated by the RETRY option. The utility is to wait 10 seconds between retries, as indicated by the RETRY_DELAY option.

The TEMPLATE utility control statements define the data set characteristics for the data sets that are to be dynamically allocated during the REORG TABLESPACE job. The OPTIONS utility control statement indicates that the TEMPLATE statements and LISTDEF statement are to run in PREVIEW mode.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='HUHRU257.REORG',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
      OPTIONS PREVIEW
      TEMPLATE CPYTMP UNIT(SYSDA)
                          DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.T&TI..SYSCOPY1)
      TEMPLATE SREC
                          UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
                          DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SREC)
      TEMPLATE SDISC
                          UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
                          DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SDISC)
      TEMPLATE SPUNCH
                          UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
                          DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SPUNCH)
      LISTDEF REORG_TBSP INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
      OPTIONS OFF
      REORG TABLESPACE LIST REORG_TBSP
          DRAIN_WAIT 30      RETRY 4      RETRY_DELAY 10
          STATISTICS
          TABLE (ALL) SAMPLE 60
          INDEX (ALL FREQUAL NUMCOLS 2 COUNT 15)
          SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE MAP5702
          LONGLOG DRAIN MAXRO DEFER DELAY 30
          COPYDDN (CPYTMP)
          SORTDEVT SYSDA SORTNUM 8
          PUNCHDDN SPUNCH
          DISCARDN SDISC
          UNLDDN SREC

```

Figure 80. Example of reorganizing a table space by using DRAIN WAIT, RETRY, and RETRY_DELAY

On successful completion, DB2 returns output similar to the output in the following sample output.

```

DSNU000I 280 14:54:37.27 DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = HUHRU257.REORG
DSNU1044I 280 14:54:37.43 DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.45 DSNUGUTC - OPTIONS PREVIEW
DSNU1000I 280 14:54:37.45 DSNUZODR - PROCESSING CONTROL STATEMENTS IN PREVIEW MODE
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.45 DSNUZODR - OPTIONS STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.45 DSNUGUTC - TEMPLATE CPYTMP UNIT(SYSDA) DSN(HUHRU257.REORG.STEP12.SYSCOPY1)
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.45 DSNUJTDR - TEMPLATE STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUGUTC - TEMPLATE SREC UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW, CATLG, CATLG) DSN(
HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SREC)
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUJTDR - TEMPLATE STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUGUTC - TEMPLATE SDISC UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW, CATLG, CATLG) DSN(
HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SDISC)
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUJTDR - TEMPLATE STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUGUTC - TEMPLATE SPUNCH UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW, CATLG, CATLG) DSN(
HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SPUNCH)
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUJTDR - TEMPLATE STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUGUTC - TEMPLATE SUT1 UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW, DELETE, CATLG) DSN(
HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SUT1)
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUJTDR - TEMPLATE STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUGUTC - TEMPLATE SOUT UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW, DELETE, CATLG) DSN(
HUHRU257.REORG.&ST..SOUT)
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUJTDR - TEMPLATE STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.46 DSNUGUTC - LISTDEF REORG_TBSP INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUIILDR - LISTDEF STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNU1020I @ 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUIILSA - EXPANDING LISTDEF REORG_TBSP
DSNU1021I @ 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUIILSA - PROCESSING INCLUDE CLAUSE TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
DSNU1022I @ 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUIILSA - CLAUSE IDENTIFIES 1 OBJECTS
DSNU1023I @ 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUIILSA - LISTDEF REORG_TBSP CONTAINS 1 OBJECTS
DSNU1010I 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUGPVV - LISTDEF REORG_TBSP EXPANDS TO THE FOLLOWING OBJECTS:
      LISTDEF REORG_TBSP -- 00000001 OBJECTS
      INCLUDE TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUGUTC - OPTIONS OFF
DSNU1035I 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUZODR - OPTIONS STATEMENT PROCESSED SUCCESSFULLY

```

```

DSNU050I 280 14:54:37.47 DSNUGUTC - REORG TABLESPACE LIST REORG TBSP SHRLEVEL CHANGE MAPPINGTABLE MAP5702
LONGLOG DRAIN MAXRO DEFER DELAY 30 DRAIN WAIT 30 RETRY 4 RETRY_DELAY 10 COPYDDN(CPYTMP) SORTKEYS SORTDEVT SYSDA
SORTNUM 8 PUNCHDDN SPUNCH DISCARDN DISC UNLDDN SREC WORKDDN(SUT1, SOUT) STATISTICS TABLE(ALL) SAMPLE 60 INDEX(ALL
KEYCARD FREQVAL NUMCOLS 2 COUNT 15)
DSNU1033I 280 14:54:37.48 DSNUGULM - PROCESSING LIST ITEM: TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
DSNU1038I 280 14:54:42.97 DSNUGDYN - DATASET ALLOCATED. TEMPLATE=CPYTMP
DDNAME=SYS00001
DSN=HUHRU257.REORG.STEP12.SYSCOPY1
DSNU397I 280 14:54:43.01 DSNURPCT - NUMBER OF TASKS CONSTRAINED BY VIRTUAL STORAGE
DSNU397I 280 14:54:43.01 DSNURPCT - NUMBER OF TASKS CONSTRAINED BY CPUS
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 1
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 2
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 3
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 4
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 5
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 6
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 7
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 8
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 9
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=0 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 10
DSNU251I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=2520 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701 PART 11
DSNU252I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS UNLOADED=2520 FOR TABLESPACE
DBHR5701.TPHR5701
DSNU250I 280 14:54:43.40 DSNUGSRT - UNLOAD PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU395I 280 14:54:43.95 DSNURPIB - INDEXES WILL BE BUILT IN PARALLEL, NUMBER OF TASKS = 6
DSNU397I 280 14:54:43.95 DSNURPIB - NUMBER OF TASKS CONSTRAINED BY VIRTUAL STORAGE
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=1
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=2
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=3
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=4
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=5
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=6
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=7
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=8
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701 PART=9
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=0 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701
PART=10
DSNU303I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=2520 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701
PART=11
DSNU304I @ 280 14:55:42.47 DSNURWT - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF RECORDS=2520 FOR TABLE ADMF001.TBHR5701
DSNU302I 280 14:55:42.48 DSNURILD - (RE)LOAD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF INPUT RECORDS PROCESSED=2520
DSNU300I 280 14:55:42.48 DSNURILD - (RE)LOAD PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME=00:00:59
DSNU394I @ 280 14:55:42.69 DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=2520 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5702
DSNU394I @ 280 14:55:42.77 DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=2520 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5704
DSNU394I @ 280 14:55:42.83 DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=2520 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5706
DSNU393I @ 280 14:55:42.63 DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=2520 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IPHR5701 PART
11
DSNU394I @ 280 14:55:42.73 DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=2520 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IUHR5710
DSNU394I @ 280 14:55:42.82 DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=2520 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5703
DSNU394I @ 280 14:55:42.94 DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=2520 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5705
DSNU391I 280 14:55:43.15 DSNURPTB - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS. NUMBER OF INDEXES = 7
DSNU392I 280 14:55:43.15 DSNURPTB - SORTBLD PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:00:00
DSNU386I 280 14:57:33.94 DSNURLGD - LOG PHASE STATISTICS. NUMBER OF ITERATIONS = 23, NUMBER OF LOG RECORDS = 0
DSNU385I 280 14:57:33.94 DSNURLGD - LOG PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:01:50
DSNU400I 280 14:57:33.95 DSNURBID - COPY PROCESSED FOR TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
NUMBER OF PAGES=394
AVERAGE PERCENT FREE SPACE PER PAGE = 13.70
PERCENT OF CHANGED PAGES =100.00
ELAPSED TIME=00:02:50
DSNU387I 280 14:57:35.53 DSNURSWT - SWITCH PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:00:01
DSNU428I 280 14:57:35.54 DSNURSWT - DB2 IMAGE COPY SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:36.78 DSNUSUTP - SYSTABLEPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR DBHR5701.TPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:36.78 DSNUSUPT - SYSTABSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:36.85 DSNUSUPC - SYSCOLSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:36.85 DSNUSUTB - SYSTABLES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:36.92 DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:36.93 DSNUSUTS - SYSTABLESPACE CATALOG UPDATE FOR DBHR5701.TPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.42 DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL

```

```

DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.44 DSNUSUPI - SYSINDEXSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.45 DSNUSUPC - SYSCOLSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.45 DSNUSUPD - SYSCOLDISTSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.46 DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5702 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.46 DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5703 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.47 DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5704 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.47 DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5705 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.48 DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5706 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.48 DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.48 DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.54 DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5702 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.54 DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5702 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.57 DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5703 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.57 DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5703 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.60 DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5704 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.60 DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5704 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.63 DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5705 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.63 DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5705 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.66 DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5706 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.66 DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5706 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.71 DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.71 DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5702 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.72 DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5703 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.72 DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5704 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.73 DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5705 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I @ 280 14:57:37.74 DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5706 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU620I @ 280 14:57:37.74 DSNUSEOF - RUNSTATS CATALOG TIMESTAMP = 2010-10-07-14.54.43.844498
DSNU010I @ 280 14:57:42.23 DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0

DSNU394I = DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=331 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5706
DSNU394I = DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=331 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5705
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5702 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5702 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5702 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5705 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5705 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5705 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU620I = DSNURDRI - RUNSTATS CATALOG TIMESTAMP = 2002-08-05-16.25.21.292235
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5703 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5703 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5703 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5706 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5706 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5706 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU620I = DSNURDRI - RUNSTATS CATALOG TIMESTAMP = 2002-08-05-16.25.22.288665
DSNU393I = DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=331 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IPHR5701 PART 11
DSNU394I = DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=331 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IPHR5701
DSNU394I = DSNURBXA - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS - NUMBER OF KEYS=331 FOR INDEX ADMF001.IXHR5704
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUPI - SYSINDEXSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUPD - SYSCOLDISTSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUPC - SYSCOLSTATS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IPHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5704 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5704 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.TBHR5701 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I = DSNUSUCD - SYSCOLDIST CATALOG UPDATE FOR ADMF001.IXHR5704 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU620I = DSNURDRI - RUNSTATS CATALOG TIMESTAMP = 2002-08-05-16.25.20.886803
DSNU391I DSNURPTB - SORTBLD PHASE STATISTICS. NUMBER OF INDEXES = 7
DSNU392I DSNURPTB - SORTBLD PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:00:04
DSNU377I = DSNURLOG - IN REORG WITH SHRLEVEL CHANGE, THE LOG IS
BECOMING LONG, MEMBER=          , UTILID=HUHRU257.REORG
DSNU377I = DSNURLOG - IN REORG WITH SHRLEVEL CHANGE, THE LOG IS
BECOMING LONG, MEMBER=          , UTILID=HUHRU257.REORG
...
DSNU377I = DSNURLOG - IN REORG WITH SHRLEVEL CHANGE, THE LOG IS
BECOMING LONG, MEMBER=          , UTILID=HUHRU257.REORG
DSNU1122I = DSNURLOG - JOB T3161108 PERFORMING REORG
WITH UTILID HUHRU257.REORG UNABLE TO DRAIN DBHR5701.TPHR5701.
RETRY 1 OF 4 WILL BE ATTEMPTED IN 10 SECONDS
DSNU1122I = DSNURLOG - JOB T3161108 PERFORMING REORG
WITH UTILID HUHRU257.REORG UNABLE TO DRAIN DBHR5701.TPHR5701.
RETRY 2 OF 4 WILL BE ATTEMPTED IN 10 SECONDS

```

```

DSNU386I DSNURLGD - LOG PHASE STATISTICS, NUMBER OF ITERATIONS = 32, NUMBER OF LOG RECORDS = 2288
DSNU385I DSNURLGD - LOG PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:03:43
DSNU400I DSNURBID - COPY PROCESSED FOR TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
          NUMBER OF PAGES=377
          AVERAGE PERCENT FREE SPACE PER PAGE = 5.42
          PERCENT OF CHANGED PAGES =100.00
          ELAPSED TIME=00:04:02
DSNU387I DSNURSWT - SWITCH PHASE COMPLETE, ELAPSED TIME = 00:00:02
DSNU428I DSNURSWT - DB2 IMAGE COPY SUCCESSFUL FOR TABLESPACE DBHR5701.TPHR5701
DSNU010I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0

```

Figure 81. Sample output of REORG TABLESPACE job with DRAIN WAIT, RETRY, and RETRY_DELAY options

Example 14: Using a mapping table

In the following example, a mapping table and mapping table index are created. Then, a REORG TABLESPACE job uses the mapping table, and finally the mapping table is dropped. Some parts of this job use the EXEC SQL utility to execute dynamic SQL statements.

The first EXEC SQL control statement contains the SQL statements that create a mapping table that is named MYMAPPING_TABLE. The second EXEC SQL control statement contains the SQL statements that create mapping index MYMAPPING_INDEX on the table MYMAPPING_TABLE.

The REORG TABLESPACE control statement then specifies that the REORG TABLESPACE utility is to reorganize table space DSN8D81P.DSN8S81C and to use mapping table MYMAPPING_TABLE.

Finally, the third EXEC SQL statement contains the SQL statements that drop MYMAPPING_TABLE.

GUPI

```

EXEC SQL
  CREATE TABLE MYMAPPING_TABLE
    (TYPE          CHAR( 01 ) NOT NULL,
     SOURCE_RID    CHAR( 05 ) NOT NULL,
     TARGET_XRID   CHAR( 09 ) NOT NULL,
     LRSN          CHAR( 06 ) NOT NULL)
  IN DSN8D81P.DSN8S81Q
  CCSID EBCDIC
ENDEXEC
EXEC SQL
  CREATE UNIQUE INDEX MYMAPPING_INDEX
  ON MYMAPPING_TABLE
  (SOURCE_RID ASC,
   TYPE,
   TARGET_XRID,
   LRSN)
  USING STOGROUP DSN8G710
  PRIQTY 120 SECQTY 20
  ERASE NO
  BUFFERPOOL BP0
  CLOSE NO
ENDEXEC
REORG TABLESPACE DSN8D81P.DSN8S81C
COPYDDN(COPYDDN)
SHRLEVEL CHANGE
DEADLINE CURRENT_TIMESTAMP+8 HOURS
MAPPINGTABLE MYMAPPING_TABLE
MAXRO 240 LONGLOG DRAIN DELAY 900

```

```

SORTDEVT SYSDA SORTNUM 4
STATISTICS TABLE(ALL)
          INDEX(ALL)
EXEC SQL
  DROP TABLE MYMAPPING_TABLE
ENDEXEC

```



Example 15: Discarding records from one table while reorganizing a table space

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DSN8D51A.DSN8S51E. During reorganization, records in table DSN8510.EMP are discarded if they have the value D11 in the WORKDEPT field. This discard criteria is specified in the WHEN clause that follows the DISCARD option. Because a SYSDISC DD statement is included in the JCL, any discarded rows are to be written to the data set that is identified by this DD statement.

The COPYDDN option specifies that during the REORG, DB2 is also to take an inline copy of the table space. This image copy is to be written to the data set that is identified by the SYSCOPY DD statement.

```

//REORGDIS EXEC DSNUPROC,TIME=1440,
//          UTPROC='',
//          SYSTEM='DSN',UID='REORGDIS.EMP'
//SYSREC   DD DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          DSN=SYSADM.REORGDIS.SYSREC,
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(15,15))
//SYSDISC  DD DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          DSN=SYSADM.REORGDIS.SYSDISC,
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(15,15))
//SYSPUNCH DD DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          DSN=SYSADM.REORGDIS.SYSPUNCH,
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(15,15))
//SYSCOPY  DD DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(30,30)),
//          DSN=SYSADM.DSN8D51A.DSN8S51E.COPY
//SYSIN    DD *
          REORG TABLESPACE
          DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
          DISCARD
          FROM TABLE DSN8810.EMP
          WHEN (WORKDEPT = 'D11')
          SHRLEVEL NONE COPYDDN SYSCOPY

```

Figure 82. Example REORG statement that specifies discard criteria

Example 16: Discarding records from multiple tables while reorganizing a table space

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize table space DBKC0501.TLKC0501. During reorganization, the following records are discarded:

- Records in table TBKC0501 that have a value in the QT_INV_TRANSACTION column that is less than or equal to 700, and a value in the NO_DEPT column that is equal to X'33303230'.

- Records in table TBKC0502 that have a value in the NO_WORK_CENTER column that is equal to either X'333031303120' or X'333032303620'.

This discard criteria is specified with the DISCARD option. Any discarded rows are to be written to the SYSDISC data set, as specified by the DISCARDDN option.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUKCU105.REORG2',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSDISC DD DSN=IUKCU105.REORG2.STEP1.SYSDISC,
//      DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(2000,(20,20),,,ROUND),
//      DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=2400)
//SYSREC DD DSN=IUKCU105.REORG2.STEP1.SYSREC,
//      DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSCOPY DD DSN=IUKCU105.REORG2.STEP1.SYSCOPY,
//      DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//LOADSTMT DD DSN=IUKCU105.REORG2.STEP1.SYSPUNCH,
//      DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
REORG TABLESPACE DBKC0501.TLKC0501 SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
PUNCHDDN LOADSTMT DISCARDDN SYSDISC
UNLOAD CONTINUE
DISCARD
FROM TABLE TBKC0501
  WHEN (QT_INV_TRANSACTION <= 700 AND
        NO_DEPT = X'33303230')
FROM TABLE TBKC0502
  WHEN (NO_WORK_CENTER = X'333031303120' OR
        NO_WORK_CENTER = X'333032303620')
/*
```

Figure 83. Example REORG statement that specifies discard criteria for several tables

Example 17: Reorganizing only those partitions that are in REORG-pending status

The following control statement specifies that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize only those partitions of table space DBKQAA01.TPKQAA01 that are in the range from 2 to 10 and are in REORG-pending status.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUKQU1AA.REORG6',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSREC DD DSN=JUKQU1AA.REORG6.STEP1.SYSREC,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSCOPY DD DSN=JUKQU1AA.REORG6.STEP1.SYSCOPY,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=JUKQU1AA.REORG6.STEP1.SYSUT1,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SORTOUT DD DSN=JUKQU1AA.REORG6.STEP1.SORTOUT,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),UNIT=SYSDA,
//      SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD *
REORG TABLESPACE DBKQAA01.TPKQAA01 SCOPE PENDING PART 2:10
/*

```

Figure 84. Example REORG TABLESPACE statement with SCOPE PENDING

Example 18: Reorganizing only clone tables

The REORG TABLESPACE control statement indicates that REORG TABLESPACE is to reorganize only clone tables from the specified table spaces.

```
REORG TABLESPACE DBKQBS01.TPKQBS01 CLONE
```

Example 19: Creating a FlashCopy image copy with REORG TABLESPACE

The following REORG TABLESPACE utility control statement reorganizes table space DSN8SA1D and creates a FlashCopy image copy.

```

//SYSADMA JOB (ACCOUNT),'NAME',NOTIFY=&SYSUID
/*
//UTIL EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=VA1A,UID='TEMP',UTPROC=''
//DSNUPROC.SYSREC DD DSN=SYSOPS.DSNAME,
// DISP=(NEW,DELETE),
// SPACE=(CYL,(20,20),RLSE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=SCR03
//DSNUPROC.SYSUT1 DD DSN=SYSOPS.SYSUT1,
// DISP=(NEW,DELETE,DELETE),
// SPACE=(CYL,(9,90),RLSE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,VOL=SER=SCR03
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
LISTDEF COPY_LIST INCLUDE TABLESPACE DSN8DA1A.DSN8SA1D
TEMPLATE SCOPY UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,DELETE)
DSN(DSNT1.&DB..&TS..CPY1.D&TIME.)
TEMPLATE FCOPY UNIT(SYSDA) DISP(NEW,CATLG,DELETE)
DSN(DSNFC.&DB..&TS..P&PA..D&TIME.)
REORG TABLESPACE LIST COPY_LIST SHRLEVEL REFERENCE FLASHCOPY YES
FCCOPYDDN(FCOPY) COPYDDN(SCOPY)

```

Related reference

- [DB2 Sort](#)
- [CREATE INDEX \(DB2 SQL\)](#)
- [CREATE TABLE \(DB2 SQL\)](#)
- [DROP \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

Related information

- [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Chapter 26. REPAIR

The REPAIR online utility repairs data. The data can be your own data or data that you would not normally access, such as space map pages and index entries.

You use REPAIR to replace invalid data with valid data. Be extremely careful when using REPAIR. Improper use can damage the data even further.

You can use the REPAIR utility to:

- Test database definitions (DBDs)
- Repair DBDs
- Reset a pending status on a table space or index
- Verify the contents of data areas in table spaces and indexes
- Replace the contents of data areas in table spaces and indexes
- Delete a single row from a table space
- Produce a hexadecimal dump of an area in a table space or index
- Delete an entire LOB from a LOB table space
- Dump LOB pages
- Rebuild object descriptors (OBDs) for a LOB table space
- Manage version numbers

Output

The output from the REPAIR utility can consist of one or more modified pages in the specified DB2 table space or index and a dump of the contents.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- REPAIR privilege for the database
- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- DATAACCESS authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute REPAIR, but only on a table space in the DSNDB01 or DSNDB06 database.

To execute REPAIR with the DBD option, you must use a privilege set that includes SYSADM, SYSCTRL, or installation SYSOPR authority.

REPAIR should be used only by a person that is knowledgeable in DB2 and your data. Grant REPAIR authorization only to the appropriate people.

Execution phases of REPAIR

The phases for REPAIR are:

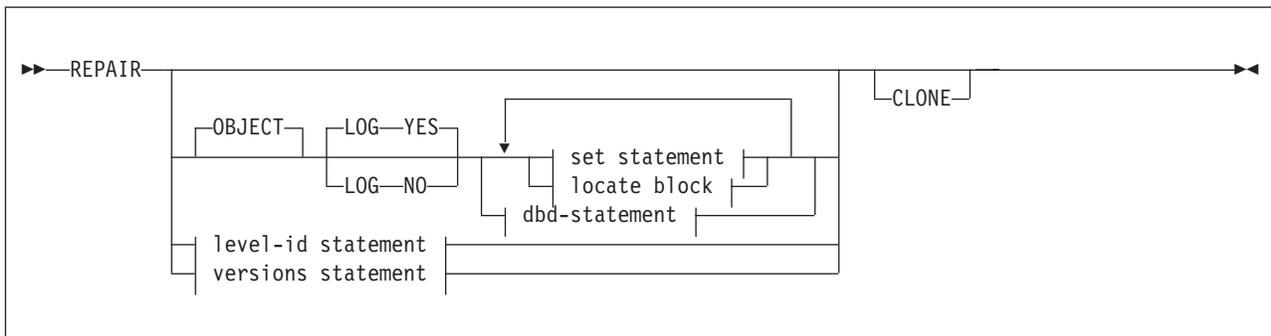
Phase	Description
UTILINIT	Performs initialization
REPAIR	Repairs data
UTILTERM	Performs cleanup

Syntax and options of the REPAIR control statement

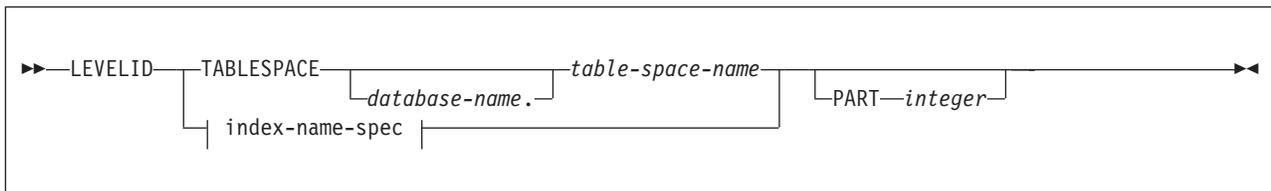
The REPAIR utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

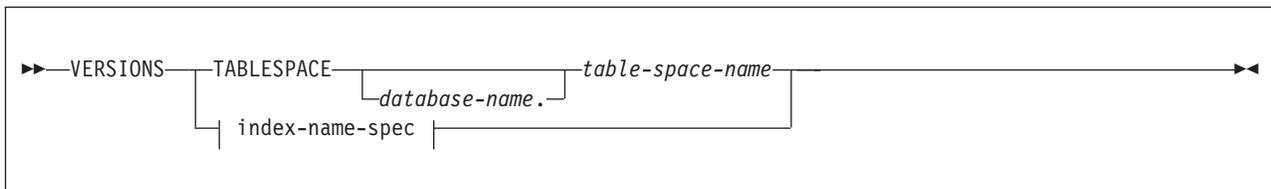
REPAIR syntax diagram



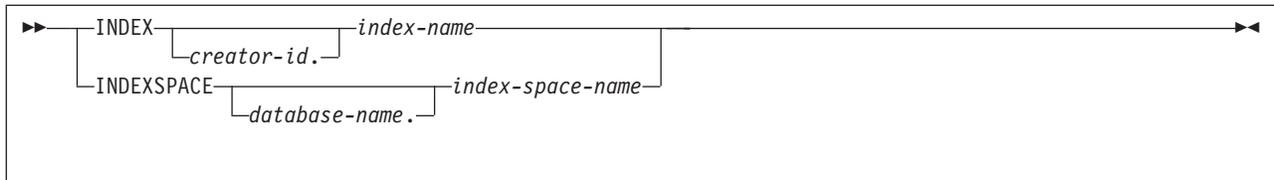
level-id statement:



versions statement:



index-name-spec:



REPAIR option descriptions

OBJECT

Indicates that an object is to be repaired. This keyword is optional.

LOG

Indicates whether the changes that REPAIR makes are to be logged. If the changes are to be logged, they are applied again if the data is recovered.

YES

Indicates that the changes are to be logged.

REPAIR LOG YES cannot override the LOG NO attribute of a table space.

NO

Indicates that the changes are not to be logged. You cannot use this option with a DELETE statement.

REPAIR LOG NO can override the LOG YES attribute of a table space.

LEVELID

Indicates that the level identifier of the named table space, table space partition, index, or index space partition is to be reset to a new identifier. Use LEVELID to accept the use of a down-level data set. You cannot specify multiple LEVELID keywords in the same REPAIR control statement.

You cannot use LEVELID with a table space, table space partition, index, or index space partition that has outstanding indoubt log records or pages in the logical page list (LPL).

Attention: Accepting the use of a down-level data set might cause data inconsistencies. Problems with inconsistent data that result from resetting the level identifier are the responsibility of the user.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) whose level identifier is to be reset (if you specify LEVELID) or whose version identifier is to be updated (if you specify VERSIONS).

database-name

Specifies the name of the database to which the table space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Specifies the name of the table space.

INDEX

Specifies the index whose level identifier is to be reset (if you specify LEVELID) or whose version identifier is to be updated (if you specify VERSIONS).

creator-id.

Specifies the creator of the index. Specifying this qualifier is optional.

index-name

Specifies the name of the index. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

You can specify either INDEX or INDEXSPACE to identify an index. To specify multiple indexes, repeat the keyword.

INDEXSPACE

Specifies the index space for the index whose level identifier is to be reset (if you specify LEVELID) or whose version identifier is to be updated (if you specify VERSIONS). You can obtain the index space name for an index from the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog table. The index space name must be qualified.

database-name.

Specifies the name of the database to which the index space belongs.

index-space-name

Specifies the name of the index space.

You can specify either INDEX or INDEXSPACE to identify an index. To specify multiple indexes, repeat the keyword.

PART

Identifies a partition of the table space or index (including a partition of a data-partitioned secondary index).

integer is the number of the partition and must be in the range from one to the number of partitions that are defined for the object. The maximum is 4096.

VERSIONS

Updates the version information in the catalog and directory for the specified table space or index with the version information from the system pages of the object. Use REPAIR VERSIONS in the following situations:

- When you run the DSN1COPY utility with the OBIDLAT option to move objects from one system to another. .
- Run REPAIR VERSIONS only when moving objects.

CLONE

Indicates that REPAIR is to process only the specified objects that are table spaces that contain clone tables, indexes on clone tables, or index spaces that contain indexes on clone tables. If you specify CLONE, you cannot specify VERSIONS because clone tables do not have versions. Clones cannot be created for tables with active versions.

If you specify SET with CLONE, the status is changed for only the specified table spaces and their indexes. The CLONE keyword applies to all SET statements and LOCATE statements within the same REPAIR utility control statement.

SET statement syntax

The SET TABLESPACE statement resets the COPY-pending, RECOVER-pending, CHECK-pending, auxiliary warning (AUXW), auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP), and advisory REORG-pending (AREO* and AREOR) statuses for a table space or data set. The SET INDEX statement resets the informational COPY-pending (ICOPY), RECOVER-pending, REBUILD-pending, CHECK-pending, and advisory REORG-pending (AREO* and AREOR) statuses for an index.

set statement:

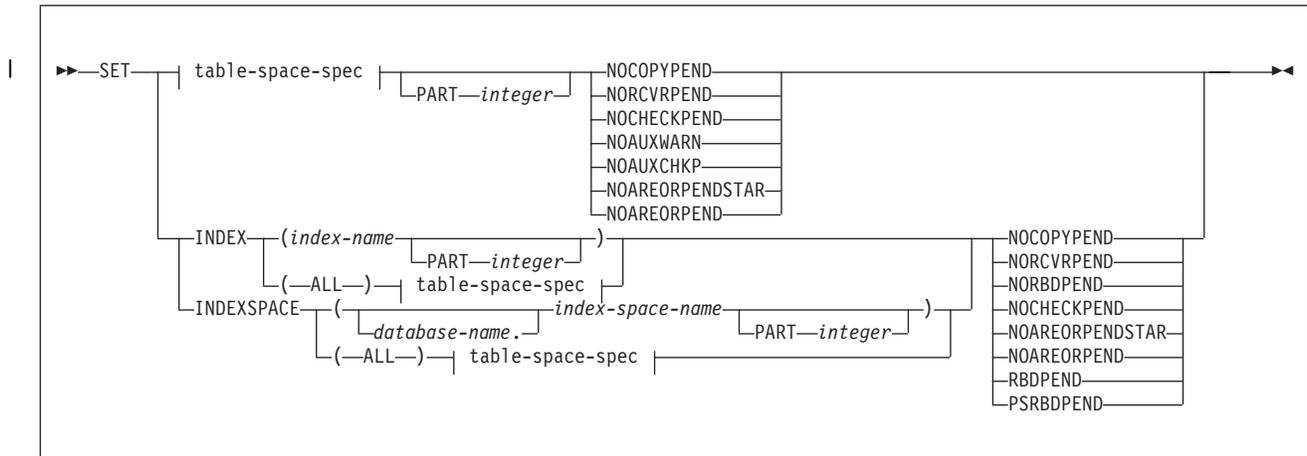
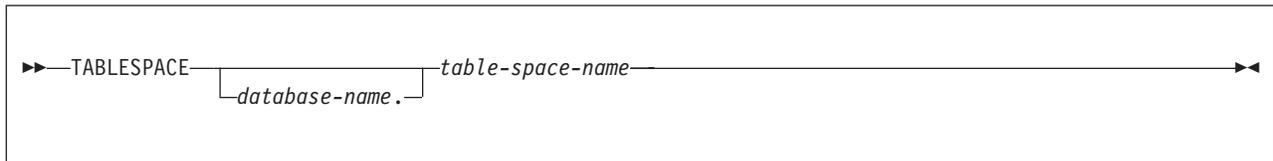


table-space-spec:



SET statement option descriptions

SET TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) whose pending status is to be reset.

database-name

Specifies the name of the database to which the table space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Specifies the name of the table space.

SET INDEX

Specifies the index whose RECOVER-pending, CHECK-pending, REBUILD-pending, or informational COPY-pending status is to be reset.

(index-name)

Specifies the index that is to be processed. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

(ALL)

Specifies that all indexes in the table space will be processed.

You can also repair all indexes by specifying INDEX(ALL) followed by a *table-space-spec*.

SET INDEXSPACE

Specifies the index space for the index whose RECOVER-pending, CHECK-pending, REBUILD-pending, or informational COPY-pending status is to be reset.

(database-name.index-space-name)

Specifies the index space that is to be processed.

(ALL)

Specifies that all indexes in the table space will be processed.

PART *integer*

Specifies a particular partition whose COPY-pending, or RECOVER-pending status is to be reset. If you do not specify PART, REPAIR resets the pending status of the entire table space or index.

integer is the number of the partition and must be in the range from one to the number of partitions that are defined for the

You can specify PART for NOCHECKPEND on a table space, and for NORCVRPEND on indexes.

The PART keyword is not valid for a LOB table space or an index on the auxiliary table.

The PART keyword is not valid when NOAREORPEND is specified because the AREOR state can only be reset for the entire table space or index space.

NOCOPYPEND

Specifies that the COPY-pending status of the specified table space, or the informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) status of the specified index is to be reset.

NORCVRPEND

Specifies that the RECOVER-pending (RECP) status of the specified table space or index is to be reset.

NORBDPEND

Specifies that the REBUILD-pending (RBDP) status, the page set REBUILD-pending status (PSRBDP), or the RBDP* status of the specified index is to be reset.

NOCHECKPEND

Specifies that the CHECK-pending (CHKP) status of the specified table space or index is to be reset.

NOAUXWARN

Specifies that the auxiliary warning (AUXW) status of the specified table space is to be reset. The specified table space must be a base table space or a LOB table space.

NOAUXCHKP

Specifies that the auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status of the specified table space is to be reset. The specified table space must be a base table space.

NOAREORPENDSTAR

Resets the advisory REORG-pending (AREO*) status of the specified table space or index.

NOAREORPEND

Resets the advisory REORG-pending (AREOR) status of the specified table space or index.

RBDPEND

Specifies that the REBUILD-pending (RBDP) status is to be set on the specified index.

PSRBDPEND

Specifies that the PAGE SET REBUILD-pending (PSRBDP) status is to be set on the specified index.

LOCATE block syntax

A LOCATE block is a set of statements, each with its own options, that begins with a LOCATE statement and ends with the next LOCATE or SET statement, or with the end of the job. You can include more than one LOCATE block in a REPAIR utility statement.

In any LOCATE block, you can use VERIFY, REPLACE, or DUMP as often as you like; you can use DELETE only once.

locate block:

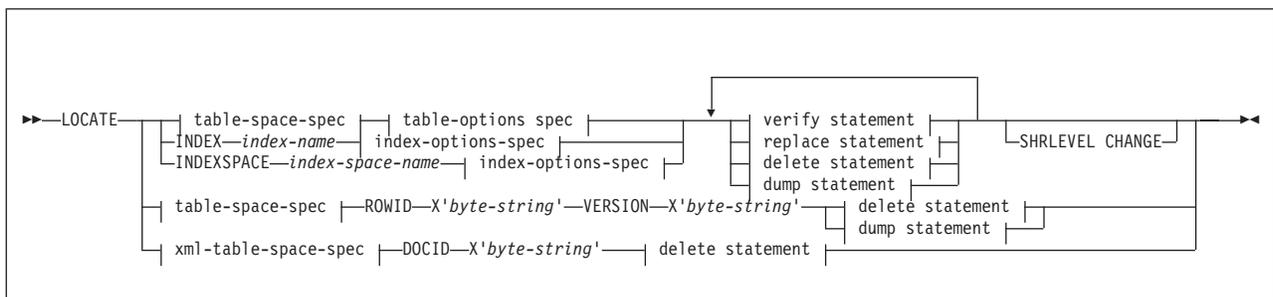
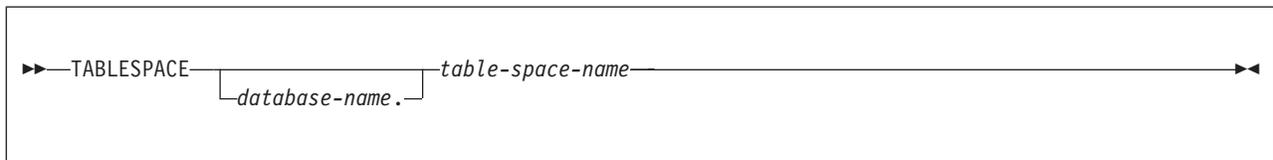


table-space-spec:



xml-table-space-spec:

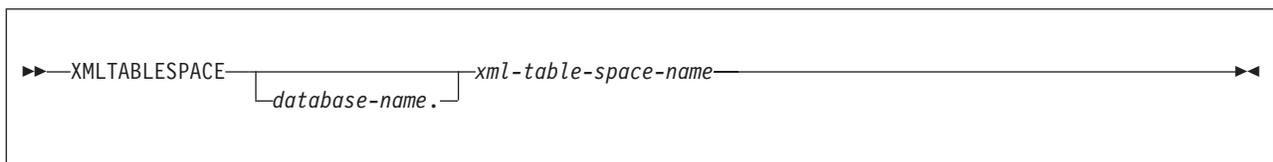
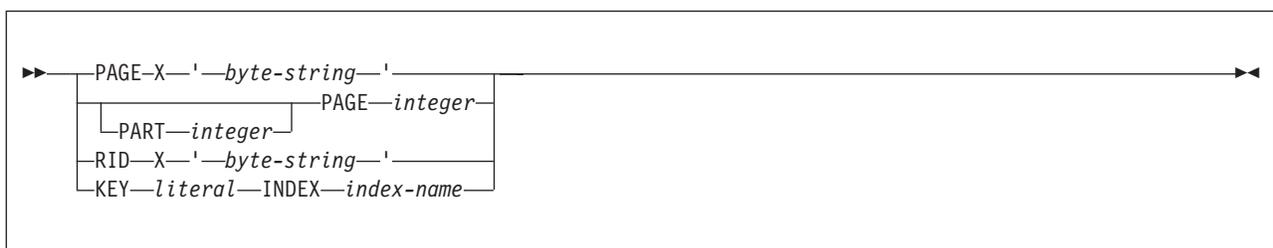
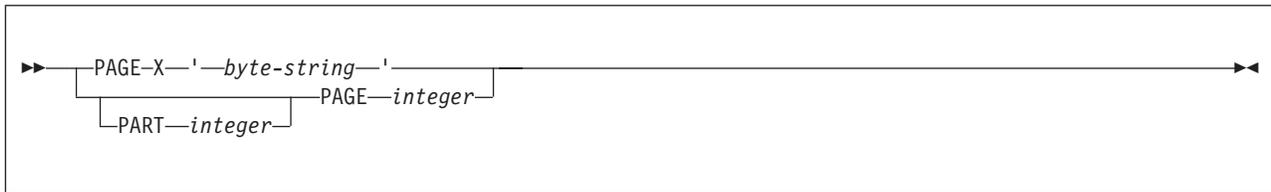


table-options-spec:



index-options-spec:



LOCATE TABLESPACE statement option descriptions

The LOCATE TABLESPACE statement locates data that is to be repaired within a table space.

One LOCATE statement is required for each unit of data that is to be repaired. Several LOCATE statements can appear after each REPAIR statement.

If a REPAIR statement is followed by more than one LOCATE statement, all processing that is caused by VERIFY, REPLACE, and DUMP statements is committed before the next LOCATE statement is processed.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) in which data is to be located for repair.

database-name

Is the name of the database to which the table space belongs and is optional.

The default value is **DSNDB04**.

table-space-name

Is the name of the table space that contains the data that you want to repair.

XMLTABLESPACE

Specifies the XML table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) in which data is to be located for repair.

database-name

Is the name of the database to which the xml table space belongs. This is optional.

xml-table-space-name

Is the name of the table space that contains the data to be repaired.

PAGE

Specifies the relative page number within the table space, partitioned table space, or index that is to be operated on. The first page, in either case, is 0 (zero).

integer

integer is a decimal number from one to six digits in length.

X'byte-string'

Specifies that the data of interest is an entire page. The specified offsets in *byte-string* and in subsequent statements are relative to the beginning of the page. The first byte of the page is at offset 0.

byte-string is a hexadecimal value from one to eight characters in length. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the *byte-string* between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

PART *integer*

Specifies the partition that contains the page that is to be located. Part is valid only for partitioned table spaces.

integer is the number of the partition.

RID X'*byte-string*'

Specifies that the data that is to be located is a single row. The specified offsets in *byte-string* and in subsequent statements are relative to the beginning of the row. The first byte of the stored row prefix is at offset 0.

byte-string can be a hexadecimal value from one to eight characters in length. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with an X.

KEY *literal*

Specifies that the data that is to be located is a single row, identified by *literal*. The specified offsets in subsequent statements are relative to the beginning of the row. The first byte of the stored row prefix is at offset 0.

literal is any SQL constant that can be compared with the key values of the named index.

Character constants that are specified within the LOCATE KEY option cannot be specified as ASCII or Unicode character strings. No conversion of the values is performed. To use this option when the table space is ASCII or Unicode, you should specify the values as hexadecimal constants.

If more than one row has the value *literal* in the key column, REPAIR returns a list of record identifiers (RIDs) for records with that key value, but does **not** perform any other operations (verify, replace, delete, or dump) until the next LOCATE TABLESPACE statement is encountered. To repair the proper data, write a LOCATE TABLESPACE statement that selects the desired row, using the RID option, the PAGE option, or a different KEY and INDEX option. Then execute REPAIR again.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates the type of access that is to be allowed for the index, table space, or partition that is to be repaired during REPAIR processing.

If you do not specify SHRLEVEL and you do specify DUMP or VERIFY, applications can read but not write the area.

If you do not specify SHRLEVEL and you do specify DELETE or REPLACE, applications cannot read or write the area.

CHANGE

Specifies that applications can read and write during the VERIFY, REPLACE, DELETE, and DUMP operation.

ROWID X'*byte-string*'

Specifies that the data that is to be located is a LOB in a LOB table space.

byte-string is the row ID that identifies the LOB column.

Use the ROWID keyword to repair an orphaned LOB row. You can find the ROWID in the output from the CHECK LOB utility. If you specify the ROWID keyword, the specified table space must be a LOB table space.

VERSION *X'byte-string'*

Specifies that the data that is to be located is a LOB in a LOB table space.

byte-string is the version number that identifies the version of the LOB column.

Use the VERSION keyword to repair an orphaned LOB column. You can find the VERSION number in the output of the CHECK LOB utility or an out-of-synch LOB that is reported by the CHECK DATA utility. If you specify the VERSION keyword, the specified table space must be a LOB table space.

LOCATE INDEX statement and LOCATE INDEXSPACE statement option descriptions

The LOCATE INDEX (or INDEXSPACE) statement locates data that is to be repaired within an index. You can specify indexes by either their index name or their index space name.

One LOCATE statement is required for each unit of data that is to be repaired. Multiple LOCATE statements can appear after each REPAIR statement.

If a REPAIR statement is followed by multiple LOCATE statements, all processing that is caused by VERIFY, REPLACE, and DUMP statements is committed before the next LOCATE statement is processed.

INDEX *index-name*

Specifies a particular index that is to be used to find the row that contains the key. When you are locating an index by key, the index that you specify must be a single-column index.

index-name is the qualified or unqualified name of the index. If you omit the qualifier creator ID, the user identifier for the utility job is used. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

INDEXSPACE *index-space-name*

Specifies the index space for a particular index that is to be used to find the row that contains the key. Look in the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog table to find the index space name for an index. When you are locating an index by key, the index that you specify must be a single-column index.

index-space-name is the qualified name of the index space, in the form *database-name.index-space-name*.

PAGE *integer*

Specifies the relative page number within the index space that is to be operated on. The first page is 0 (zero).

integer

integer is a decimal number from one to six digits in length.

X'byte-string'

Specifies that the data of interest is an entire page. The specified offsets in *byte-string* and in subsequent statements are relative to the beginning of the page. The first byte of the page is at offset 0.

byte-string is a hexadecimal value from one to eight characters in length. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the *byte-string* between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

PART *integer*

Specifies the partition number of the partitioning index that contains the page that is to be located. The PART keyword is valid only for indexes of partitioned table spaces.

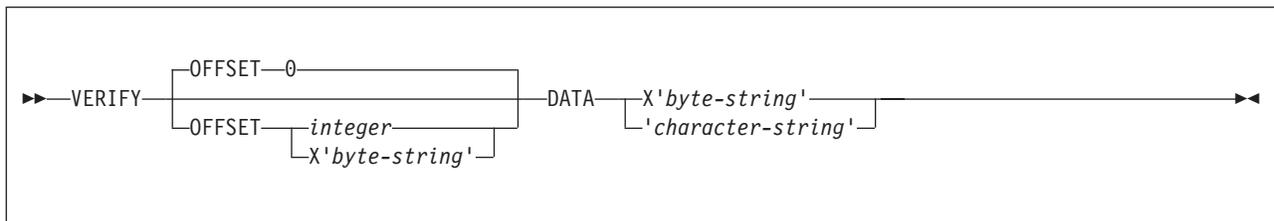
integer is the number of the partitioning index.

VERIFY statement syntax

The VERIFY statement tests whether a particular data area contains a specified value. Depending on the outcome of this test, the REPAIR utility performs the following actions:

- If the data area does contain the value, subsequent operations in the same LOCATE block are allowed to proceed.
- If **any** data area does not contain its specified value, **all** subsequent operations in the same LOCATE block are inhibited.

verify statement:



VERIFY statement option descriptions

OFFSET

Locates the data that is to be tested by a relative byte address (RBA) within the row or page.

integer

Identifies the offset as an integer.

The default value is 0, the first byte of the area that is identified by the previous LOCATE statement.

X'byte-string'

Identifies the offset as one to four hexadecimal characters. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

DATA

Specifies what data must be present at the current location before a change is made.

Character constants that are specified within the VERIFY DATA option cannot be specified as ASCII or Unicode character strings. No conversion of the values is performed. To use this option when the table space is ASCII or Unicode, you should specify the values as hexadecimal constants.

X'byte-string'

Specifies an even number, from 2 to 32, of hexadecimal characters that must be present. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

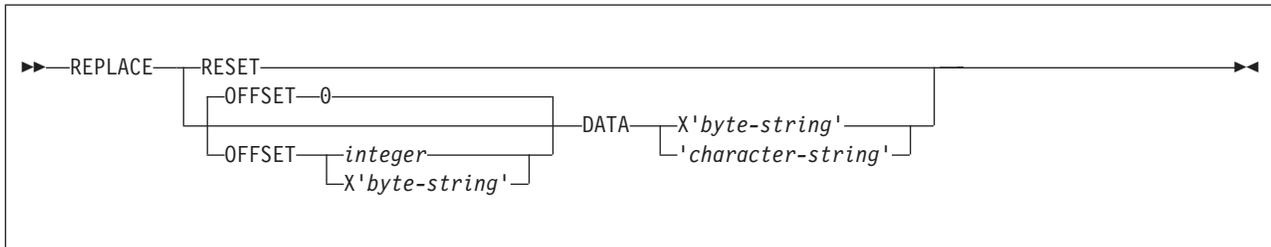
'character-string'

Specifies any character string that must be present.

REPLACE statement syntax

The REPLACE statement replaces data at a particular location. The statement is contained within a LOCATE block. If any VERIFY statement within that block finds a data area that does not contain its specified data, the REPLACE operation is inhibited.

replace statement:



REPLACE statement option descriptions

RESET

Specifies that the inconsistent data indicator is to be reset. A page for which this indicator is on is considered in error, and the indicator must be reset before you can access the page. Numbers of pages with inconsistent data are reported at the time that they are encountered.

The option also resets the PGCOMB flag bit in the first byte of the page to agree with the bit code in the last byte of the page.

OFFSET

Indicates where data is to be replaced by a relative byte address (RBA) within the row or page. Only one OFFSET and one DATA specification are acted on for each REPLACE statement.

integer

Specifies the offset as an integer.

The default value is 0, the first byte of the area that is identified by the previous LOCATE statement.

X'byte-string'

Specifies the offset as one to four hexadecimal characters. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

DATA

Specifies the new data that is to be entered. Only one OFFSET and one DATA specification are acted on for each REPLACE statement.

Character constants that are specified within the VERIFY DATA option cannot be specified as ASCII or Unicode character strings. No conversion of the values is performed. To use this option when the table space is ASCII or Unicode, you should specify the values as hexadecimal constants.

X'byte-string'

Specifies an even number, from two to thirty-two, of hexadecimal

characters that are to replace the current data. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

'character-string'

Specifies any character string that is to replace the current data.

DELETE statement syntax and description

The DELETE statement deletes a single row of data that has been located by a RID or KEY option. The statement is contained within a LOCATE block. If any VERIFY statement within that block finds a data area that does not contain its specified data, the DELETE operation is inhibited.

The DELETE statement operates without regard for referential constraints. If you delete a parent row, its dependent rows remain unchanged in the table space. However, in the DB2 catalog and directory table spaces, where links are used to reference other tables in the catalog, deleting a parent row causes all child rows to be deleted, as well. Moreover, deleting a child row in the DB2 catalog tables also updates its predecessor and successor pointer to reflect the deletion of this row. Therefore, if the child row has incorrect pointers, the DELETE might lead to an unexpected result.

In any LOCATE block, you can include no more than one DELETE option.

If you have coded any of the following options, you cannot use DELETE:

- The LOG NO option on the REPAIR statement
- A LOCATE INDEX statement to begin the LOCATE block
- The PAGE option on the LOCATE TABLESPACE statement in the same LOCATE block
- A REPLACE statement for the same row of data

When you specify LOCATE ROWID for a LOB table space, the LOB that is specified by ROWID is deleted with its index entry. All pages that are occupied by the LOB are converted to free space. The DELETE statement **does not** remove any reference to the deleted LOB from the base table space.

When you specify LOCATE DOCID for an XML table space, the XML document that is specified by DOCID is deleted with its NodeID index entries. All rows that are occupied by the XML document are deleted from the XML table space. The DELETE statement does not remove any reference to the deleted XML document from the base table space. The LOCATE DOCID statement is generated by CHECK DATA SHRLEVEL CHANGE in order to remove corrupted XML documents from the XML table space.

delete statement:

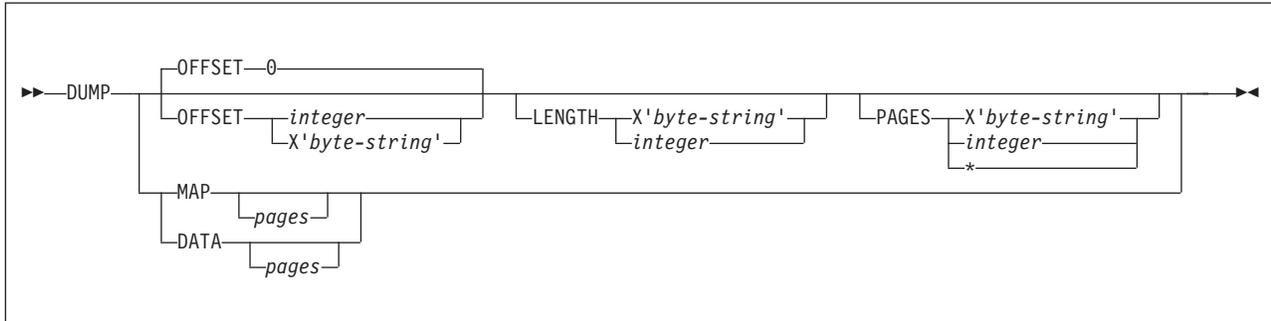
```
▶▶—DELETE—▶▶
```

DUMP statement syntax

The DUMP statement produces a hexadecimal dump of data that is identified by offset and length. DUMP statements have no effect on VERIFY or REPLACE operations.

When you specify LOCATE ROWID for a LOB table space, one or more map or data pages of the LOB are dumped. The DUMP statement dumps all of the LOB column pages if you do not specify either the MAP or DATA keyword.

dump statement:



DUMP statement option descriptions

OFFSET

Optionally, locates the data that is to be dumped by a relative byte address (RBA) within the row or page.

integer

Specifies the offset as an integer.

The default value is 0, the first byte of the row or page.

X'byte-string'

Specifies the offset as one to four hexadecimal characters. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

LENGTH

Optionally, specifies the number of bytes of data that are to be dumped. If you omit both **LENGTH** and **PAGE**, the dump begins at the specified **OFFSET** and continues to the end of the row or page.

If you specify a number of bytes (with **LENGTH**) and a number of pages (with **PAGE**), the dump contains the same relative bytes from each page. That is, from each page you see the same number of bytes, beginning at the same offset.

X'byte-string'

Specifies one to four hexadecimal characters. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

integer

Specifies the length as an integer.

PAGES

Optionally, specifies a number of pages that are to be dumped. You can use this option only if you used PAGE in the preceding LOCATE TABLESPACE control statement.

X'byte-string'

Specifies one to four hexadecimal characters. You do not need to enter leading zeros. Enclose the byte string between apostrophes, and precede it with X.

integer

Specifies the number of pages as an integer.

* Specifies that all pages from the starting point to the end of the table space or partition are to be dumped.

MAP *pages*

Specifies that only the LOB map pages are to be dumped.

pages specifies the number of LOB map pages that are to be dumped. If you do not specify *pages*, all LOB map pages of the LOB that is specified by ROWID and version are dumped.

DATA *pages*

Specifies that only the LOB data pages are to be dumped.

pages specifies the number of LOB data pages that are to be dumped. If you do not specify *pages*, all LOB data pages of the LOB that is specified by ROWID and version are dumped.

DBD statement syntax

The DBD statement allows you to:

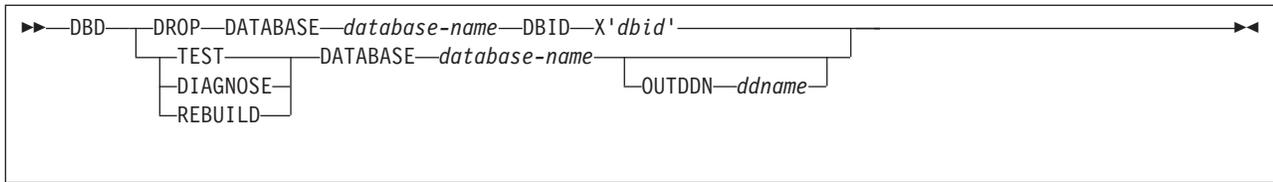
- Compare the database definition (DBD) in the DB2 catalog with its definition in the DB2 directory
- Rebuild a database definition in the directory by using the information including LOB information in the DB2 catalog
- Drop an inconsistent database definition from the DB2 catalog and the DB2 directory

The REPAIR utility assumes that the links in table spaces DSNDB01.DBD01, DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT, and DSNDB06.SYSDBASE are intact. Before executing REPAIR with the DBD statement, run the DSN1CHKR utility on these table spaces to ensure that the links are not broken.

The database on which REPAIR DBD REBUILD is run must be started for access by utilities only. DB2 performs this step automatically.

You can use REPAIR DBD on declared temporary tables, which must be created in a database that is defined with the AS TEMP clause. No other DB2 utilities can be used on a declared temporary table, its indexes, or its table spaces. When REPAIR DBD REBUILD is running, an S-lock is acquired for the appropriate catalog tables. If the S-lock fails, REPAIR DBD fails.

dbd statement:



DBD statement option descriptions

DROP

Specifies that the named database is to be dropped from both the DB2 catalog and the DB2 directory. When you specify this option, DB2 also drops databases that contain tables that have been created with RESTRICT ON DROP. Use this keyword if the SQL DROP DATABASE statement fails because the description of the database is not in both the DB2 catalog and the DB2 directory. If you cannot use the ALTER command to remove the with RESTRICT ON DROP option on tables in a database that is badly damaged and you need to drop the database, you can use this keyword to drop the database.

Attention: Use the DROP option with extreme care. Using DROP can cause additional damage to your data. For more assistance, you can contact IBM Software Support.

DATABASE *database-name*

Specifies the target database.

database-name is the name of the target database, which cannot be DSNDB01 (the DB2 directory) or DSNDB06 (the DB2 catalog).

If you use TEST, DIAGNOSE, or REBUILD, *database-name* cannot be DSNDB07 (the work file database).

If you use DROP, *database-name* cannot be DSNDB04 (the default database).

DBID *X'dbid'*

Specifies the database descriptor identifier for the target database.

dbid is the database descriptor identifier.

TEST

Specifies that a DBD is to be built from information in the DB2 catalog, and is to be compared with the DBD in the DB2 directory. If you specify TEST, DB2 reports significant differences between the two DBDs.

If the condition code is 0, the DBD in the DB2 directory is consistent with the information in the DB2 catalog.

If the condition code is not 0, then the information in the DB2 catalog and the DBD in the DB2 directory might be inconsistent. Run REPAIR DBD with the DIAGNOSE option to gather information that is necessary for resolving any possible inconsistency.

DIAGNOSE

Specifies that information that is necessary for resolving an inconsistent database definition is to be generated. Like the TEST option, DIAGNOSE builds a DBD that is based on the information in the DB2 catalog and compares it with the DBD in the DB2 directory. In addition, DB2 reports any differences between the two DBDs, and produces hexadecimal dumps of the inconsistent DBDs.

If the condition code is 0, the information in the DB2 catalog and the DBD in the DB2 directory is consistent.

If the condition code is 8, the information in the DB2 catalog and the DBD in the DB2 directory might be inconsistent.

For further assistance in resolving any inconsistencies, you can contact IBM Software Support.

REBUILD

Specifies that the DBD that is associated with the specified database is to be rebuilt from the information in the DB2 catalog.

Attention: Use the REBUILD option with extreme care, as you can cause more damage to your data. For more assistance, you can contact IBM Software Support.

OUTDDN *ddname*

Specifies the DD statement for an optional output data set. This data set contains copies of the DB2 catalog records that are used to rebuild the DBD.

ddname is the name of the DD statement.

Related tasks

“Updating version information when moving objects to another subsystem” on page 612

Before running REPAIR

Certain activities might be required before you run the REPAIR utility, depending on your situation.

Attention: Be extremely careful when using the REPAIR utility to replace data. Changing data to invalid values by using REPLACE might produce unpredictable results, particularly when changing page header information. Improper use of REPAIR can result in damaged data, or in some cases, system failure.

Making a copy of the table space

Before starting to use REPAIR to change data, ensure that you have a copy (full image copy or DSN1COPY generated copy) of the affected table space to enable fallback.

Restoring damaged indexes

Because REPAIR can access index data only by referring to a page and an offset within the page, identifying and correcting a problem can be difficult. Use REBUILD INDEX or RECOVER INDEX to restore damaged index data.

Running REPAIR on encrypted data

Do not run REPAIR on encrypted data. REPAIR does not decrypt the data. The utility reads the data in its encrypted form and then manipulates the data without decrypting it.

Data sets that REPAIR uses

The REPAIR utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that REPAIR uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 99. Data sets that REPAIR uses

Data set	Data set	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
Optional output data set	Data set that contains copies of the DB2 catalog records that are used to rebuild the DBD. You define the DD name.	No

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table space or index

Object that is to be repaired.

Calculating output data set size

Use the following formula to estimate the size of the output data set:

$$SPACE = (4096, (n, n))$$

In this formula, *n* = the total number of DB2 catalog records that relate to the database on which REPAIR DBD is being executed.

You can calculate an estimate for *n* by summing the results of SELECT COUNT(*) from all of the catalog tables in the SYSDATABASE table space, where the name of the database that is associated with the record matches the database on which REPAIR DBD is being executed.

Concurrency and compatibility for REPAIR

The REPAIR utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Claims

The following table shows which claim classes REPAIR drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 100. Claim classes of REPAIR operations

Action	Table space or partition	Index or partition
REPAIR LOCATE KEY DUMP or VERIFY	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO
REPAIR LOCATE KEY DELETE or REPLACE	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT
REPAIR LOCATE RID DUMP or VERIFY	DW/UTRO	None

Table 100. Claim classes of REPAIR operations (continued)

Action	Table space or partition	Index or partition
REPAIR LOCATE RID DELETE	DA/UTUT	DA/UTUT
REPAIR LOCATE RID REPLACE	DA/UTUT	None
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE DUMP or VERIFY	DW/UTRO	None
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE REPLACE	DA/UTUT	None
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE DUMP or VERIFY	None	DW/UTRO
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE DELETE	None	DA/UTUT

Legend:

- DA - Drain all claim classes - no concurrent SQL access.
- DW - Drain the write claim class - concurrent access for SQL readers.
- UTUT - Utility restrictive state - exclusive control.
- UTRO - Utility restrictive state - read-only access allowed.
- None - Object is not affected by this utility.

REPAIR does not set a utility restrictive state if the target object is DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.

Compatibility

The following tables show which utilities can run concurrently with REPAIR on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also shown in the table.

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with REPAIR LOCATE by KEY or RID.

Table 101. Utility compatibility with REPAIR, LOCATE by KEY or RID

Utility	DUMP or VERIFY	DELETE or REPLACE
CHECK DATA	No	No
CHECK INDEX	Yes	No
CHECK LOB	Yes	No
COPY INDEXSPACE	Yes	No
COPY TABLESPACE	Yes	No
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes
LOAD	No	No
MEREGECOPY	Yes	Yes
MODIFY	Yes	Yes
QUIESCE	Yes	No
REBUILD INDEX	No	No
RECOVER INDEX ¹	No	No
RECOVER TABLESPACE	No	No
REORG INDEX ²	No	No

Table 101. Utility compatibility with REPAIR, LOCATE by KEY or RID (continued)

Utility	DUMP or VERIFY	DELETE or REPLACE
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	Yes	No
REPAIR DELETE or REPLACE ³	No	No
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY	Yes	No
REPORT	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	Yes	No
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Yes	No
STOSPACE	Yes	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes	No

Notes:

1. REORG INDEX is compatible with LOCATE by RID, DUMP, VERIFY, or REPLACE.
2. RECOVER INDEX is compatible with LOCATE by RID, DUMP, or VERIFY.
3. REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE REPLACE is compatible with LOCATE by RID or REPLACE.

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with REPAIR LOCATE by PAGE.

Table 102. Utility compatibility with REPAIR, LOCATE by PAGE

Utility or action	TABLESPACE DUMP or VERIFY	TABLESPACE REPLACE	INDEX DUMP or VERIFY	INDEX REPLACE
SQL read	Yes	No	Yes	No
SQL write	No	No	No	No
CHECK DATA	No	No	No	No
CHECK INDEX	Yes	No	Yes	No
CHECK LOB	Yes	No	Yes	No
COPY INDEXSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
COPY TABLESPACE	Yes	No	Yes	No
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
LOAD	No	No	No	No
MERGECOPY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
MODIFY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
QUIESCE	Yes	No	Yes	No
REBUILD INDEX	Yes	No	No	N/A
RECOVER INDEX	Yes	No	No	No
RECOVER TABLESPACE (with no option)	No	No	Yes	Yes
RECOVER TABLESPACE ERROR RANGE	No	No	Yes	Yes

Table 102. Utility compatibility with REPAIR, LOCATE by PAGE (continued)

Utility or action	TABLESPACE DUMP or VERIFY	TABLESPACE REPLACE	INDEX DUMP or VERIFY	INDEX REPLACE
RECOVER TABLESPACE TOCOPY or TORBA	No	No	No	No
REORG INDEX	Yes	Yes	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No	No	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
REPAIR DELETE or REPLACE	No	No	No	No
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY ¹	Yes	No	Yes	No
REPORT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

Note:

1. REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE REPLACE is compatible with LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE.

Resetting table space status

In most cases, resetting the COPY-pending restriction by taking a full image copy is preferable to using REPAIR. This is because RECOVER cannot be executed successfully until an image copy has been made.

Resetting the RECOVER-pending status by running RECOVER or LOAD is preferable to using REPAIR. This is because RECOVER uses DB2-controlled recovery information, whereas REPAIR SET TABLESPACE or INDEX resets the RECOVER-pending status without considering the recoverability of the table space. Recoverability issues include the availability of image copies, of rows in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, and of log data sets.

Verifying and possibly correcting referential integrity constraints by running CHECK DATA are recommended. CHECK DATA performs a complete check of all referential integrity constraints of the table space set, whereas with REPAIR, you are responsible for checking all the referential integrity constraints violations.

To reset the CHECK-pending status for a LOB table space:

1. Run the CHECK DATA utility again with the AUXERROR INVALIDATE keywords specified.
2. Update the invalid LOBs.

To reset the auxiliary warning (AUXW) status for a LOB table space:

1. Update or correct the invalid LOB columns, then
2. Run the CHECK LOB utility with the AUXERROR INVALIDATE option if invalid LOB columns were corrected.

Resetting index space status

Running COPY INDEXSPACE to reset the informational COPY-pending status is preferable to using the REPAIR utility to reset the status.

Consider using the REBUILD INDEX or RECOVER INDEX utility on an index that is in REBUILD-pending status, rather than running REPAIR SET INDEX NORBDPEND. RECOVER uses DB2-controlled recovery information, whereas REPAIR SET INDEX resets the REBUILD-pending status without considering the recoverability of the index. Recoverability issues include the availability of image copies, of rows in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY, and of log data sets.

Repairing a damaged page

You can use the REPAIR utility to repair a damaged page.

To repair a damaged page:

1. Execute REPAIR with the LOG YES option and the DUMP control statement, specifying the pages that you suspect are damaged. Verify that the dump you receive contains the desired pages.
2. If you know which page is damaged and you can see how to resolve the error, repair the page and reset the “inconsistent data” indicator. Run REPAIR with the REPLACE RESET DATA control statement. Document your actions in case you need to undo anything later.
3. If you determine that the page is not really damaged, but merely has the “inconsistent data” indicator on, reset the indicator by running REPAIR with the REPLACE RESET control statement.

Using the DBD statement

You can use REPAIR DBD on declared temporary tables, which must be created in a database that is defined with the AS TEMP clause. No other DB2 utilities can be used on a declared temporary table, its indexes, or its table spaces.

When REPAIR DBD REBUILD is running, an S-lock is acquired for the appropriate catalog tables. If the S-lock fails, REPAIR DBD fails.

To use the DBD statement:

1. Run the DSN1CHKR utility on the DSNDB01.DBD01, DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT, and DSNDB06.SYSDBASE table spaces.
2. Run REPAIR DBD with the TEST option to determine if the information in the DB2 catalog is consistent with the DBD in the DB2 directory. REPAIR DBD TEST obtains environment information, such as the character that is used for the decimal point, from the application defaults load module that is used by the subsystem. The application defaults load module is either the default load module DSNHDECP or a user-specified application defaults load module.
3. If inconsistencies exist (condition code is not 0), use the DIAGNOSE option with the OUTDDN keyword to produce diagnostic information. Contact IBM Software Support for assistance in analyzing this information. REPAIR DBD DIAGNOSE obtains environment information, such as the character that is used for the decimal point, from the application defaults load module that is used by the subsystem.
4. If IBM Software Support instructs you to do so, replace the existing DBD with the REBUILD option. **Do not** use this option if you suspect that information in

the catalog is causing the inconsistency. REBUILD uses information in the catalog to rebuild the DBD; if the catalog is incorrect, the rebuilt DBD cannot be correct.

DB2 reads each table space in the database during the REBUILD process to gather information. If the data sets for the table spaces do not exist or are not accessible to DB2, the REBUILD abnormally terminates.

REPAIR DBD REBUILD obtains environment information, such as the character that is used for the decimal point, from the DSNHDECP module for the subsystem.

5. If you suspect an inconsistency in the DBD of the work file database, run REPAIR DBD DROP or DROP DATABASE (SQL), and then recreate it. If you receive errors when you drop the work file database, contact IBM Software Support for assistance.
6. If the database is started for utility-only access, issue the STOP DATABASE (*database-name*) and then issue the START DATABASE (*database-name*) ACCESS(RW) command to allow full access to the database. You need to complete this step if you ran REPAIR DBD REBUILD. DB2 starts the database for utility-only access when you execute this utility.

When you run REPAIR DBD REBUILD on a database, all trigger packages that are associated with tables in the database are invalidated. After you run REPAIR DBD REBUILD, you need to rebind those trigger packages. The DB2 release on which you rebind the trigger packages must be the same as the DB2 release on which you run REPAIR DBD REBUILD.

Locating rows by key

If you use LOCATE TABLESPACE KEY, a number of rows might satisfy the condition. In this case, REPAIR returns only the RIDs of the rows and does not perform any VERIFY, REPLACE, DELETE, or DUMP actions which might be coded in that LOCATE block.

You can use the RID option of LOCATE TABLESPACE to identify a specific row. Examples of the messages that are issued are shown in the following example:

```
DSNU658I - DSNUCBRL - MULTIPLE RECORDS FOUND WITH SPECIFIED KEY
DSNU660I - DSNUCBRL - POSSIBLE RID - X00000100B'
DSNU660I - DSNUCBRL - POSSIBLE RID - X000000C18'
DSNU660I - DSNUCBRL - POSSIBLE RID - X000000916'
DSNU660I - DSNUCBRL - POSSIBLE RID - X000000513'
DSNU650I - DSNUCBRP - DUMP
DSNU012I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION TERMINATED,
                HIGHEST RETURN CODE=8
```

Multiple-column indexes

The KEY option supports only single-column indexes. The following message is issued if you try to locate a row by using a multiple-column index.

```
DSNUCBRK - INDEX USED HAS MULTIPLE-FIELD KEY
```

Using VERIFY with REPLACE and DELETE operations

If any data area does not contain the value that is required by a VERIFY statement, all REPLACE and DELETE operations in the same locate block are inhibited. VERIFY and REPLACE statements that follow the next LOCATE statement are not affected.

Repairing critical catalog table spaces and indexes

An ID with a granted authority receives message DSNT5001 RESOURCE UNAVAILABLE, while trying to repair a table space or index in the catalog or directory if table space DSNDB06.SYSDBASE or DSNDB06.SYSUSER is unavailable.

If you get this message, you must either make these table spaces available or run the REPAIR utility on the catalog or directory by using an authorization ID with the installation SYSADM or installation SYSOPR authority.

Updating version information when moving objects to another subsystem

You can move objects that contain system pages from one subsystem to another subsystem. However, the version information on the target subsystem must match the version information on the source subsystem. If the version information does not match, you cannot access the data on the target subsystem.

To move objects to another subsystem and ensure that the version information matches:

1. Ensure that the object definitions on the source and target subsystems are the same. For a table space, each table must have the same number of columns, and each column must be the same data type.

Recommendation: Use the same ALTER TABLE statement on both the source and target objects.

2. If you are copying indexes that have not been altered in Version 8, check the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog table on both subsystems to ensure that the value in both the CURRENT_VERSION column and the OLDEST_VERSION column is 0.
3. If the object has been altered since its creation and has never been reorganized, run the REORG utility on the object. You can determine if an object has been altered but not reorganized by checking the values of the OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION columns in SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE or SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES. If OLDEST_VERSION is 0 and CURRENT_VERSION is greater than 0, run REORG. If you do not own the REORG utility, ensure that you do can insert after the last ALTER to force the creation of a system page.
4. Ensure that enough version numbers are available. For a table space, the combined active number of versions for the object on both the source and target subsystems must be less than 255. For an index, the combined active number of versions must be less than 16. Use the following guidelines to calculate the active number of versions for the object on both the source and target subsystems:
 - If the value in the CURRENT_VERSION column is less than the value in the OLDEST_VERSION column, add the maximum number of versions (255 for a table space or 16 for an index) to the value in the CURRENT_VERSION column.
 - Use the following formula to calculate the number of active versions:
number of active versions =
 $\text{MAX}(\text{target.CURRENT_VERSION}, \text{source.CURRENT_VERSION})$
 $- \text{MIN}(\text{target.OLDEST_VERSION}, \text{source.OLDEST_VERSION}) + 1$

If the number of active versions is too high, you must reduce the number of active versions by running REORG on both the source and target objects. Then, use the COPY utility to take a copy, and run MODIFY RECOVERY to recycle the version numbers.

5. Run the DSN1COPY utility with the OBIDXLAT option. On the control statement, specify the proper mapping of table database object identifiers (OBIDs) for the table space or index from the source to the target subsystem.
6. Run REPAIR VERSIONS on the object on the target subsystem. For table spaces, the utility updates the following columns:
 - OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION in SYSTABLEPART
 - VERSION in SYSTABLES
 - OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION in SYSTABLESPACE

For indexes, the utility updates OLDEST_VERSION and CURRENT_VERSION in SYSINDEXES. DB2 uses the following formulas to update these columns in both SYSTABLEPART and SYSINDEXES:

```
CURRENT_VERSION = MAX(target.CURRENT_VERSION,source.CURRENT_VERSION)
OLDEST_VERSION = MIN(target.OLDEST_VERSION,source.OLDEST_VERSION)
```

Related concepts

 [Table space versions \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Termination or restart of REPAIR

You can terminate the REPAIR utility, but you cannot restart the REPAIR utility.

You can terminate a REPAIR job with the TERM UTILITY command.

REPAIR cannot be restarted. If you attempt to restart REPAIR, you receive message DSNU191I, which states that the utility cannot be restarted. You must terminate the job with the TERM UTILITY command, and rerun REPAIR from the beginning.

Related reference

 [-TERM UTILITY \(DB2\) \(DB2 Commands\)](#)

Review of REPAIR output

The output from the REPAIR utility can consist of any modified pages in the specified DB2 table space or index. Alternatively, the REPAIR utility can produce a complete dump of the content of the table space.

Error messages

At each LOCATE statement, the last data page and the new page that are being located are checked for a few common errors, and messages are issued.

Data checks

Although REPAIR enables you to manipulate both user and DB2 data by bypassing SQL, it does perform some checking of data. For example, if REPAIR tries to write a page with the wrong page number, DB2 abnormally terminates with a 04E code and reason code C200B0. If the page is broken because the broken page bit is on or the incomplete page flag is set, REPAIR issues the following message:

```
DSNU670I + DSNUCBRP - PAGE X'000004' IS A BROKEN PAGE
```

After running REPAIR

Certain activities might be required after you run the REPAIR utility, depending on your situation.

CHECK-pending status

You are responsible for violations of referential constraints that are a result of running REPAIR. These violations cause the target table space to be placed in the CHECK-pending status.

After running REPAIR DBD REBUILD

Make sure that you rebind any invalidated trigger packages. See “Using the DBD statement” on page 610.

Related reference

Chapter 8, “CHECK DATA,” on page 61

Sample REPAIR control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own REPAIR control statements.

Example 1: Replacing damaged data and verifying replacement

The following control statement specifies that the REPAIR utility is to perform the following actions:

- Repair the specified page of table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D, as indicated by the LOCATE clause.
- Verify that, at the specified offset (50), the damaged data (0A00) is found, as indicated by the VERIFY clause.
- Replace the damaged data with the desired data (0D11), as indicated by the REPLACE clause.
- Initiate a dump beginning at offset 50, for 4 bytes, as indicated by the DUMP clause. You can use the generated dump to verify the replacement.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUIQU1UH',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'  
//SYSIN DD *  
REPAIR OBJECT  
  LOCATE TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10D PAGE X'02'  
  VERIFY OFFSET 50 DATA X'0A00'  
  REPLACE OFFSET 50 DATA X'0D11'  
  DUMP OFFSET 50 LENGTH 4
```

Example 2: Removing a nonindexed row that is found by REORG

When reorganizing table space DSNDB04.TS1, assume that you received the following message:

```
DSNU3401 DSNURBXA - ERROR LOADING INDEX, DUPLICATE KEY  
INDEX = EMPINDEX  
TABLE = EMP  
RID OF INDEXED ROW = X'0000000201'  
RID OF NONINDEXED ROW = X'0000000503'
```

To resolve this error condition, submit the following control statement, which specifies that REPAIR is to delete the nonindexed row and log the change. (The

LOG keyword is not required; the change is logged by default.) The RID option identifies the row that REPAIR is to delete.

```
REPAIR
  LOCATE TABLESPACE DSNDB04.TS1 RID (X'0000000503')
  DELETE
```

Example 3: Reporting whether catalog and directory DBDs differ

The following control statement specifies that REPAIR is to compare the DBD for DSN8D2AP in the catalog with the DBD for DSN8D2AP in the directory.

```
REPAIR DBD TEST DATABASE DSN8D2AP
```

If the condition code is 0, the DBDs are consistent. If the condition code is not 0, the DBDs might be inconsistent. In this case, run REPAIR DBD with the DIAGNOSE option, as shown in example 4, to find out more detailed information about any inconsistencies.

Example 4: Reporting differences between catalog and directory DBDs

The following control statement specifies that the REPAIR utility is to report information about the inconsistencies between the catalog and directory DBDs for DSN8D2AP. Run this job after you run a REPAIR job with the TEST option (as shown in example 3), and the condition code is not 0. In this example, SYSREC is the output data set, as indicated by the OUTDDN option.

```
REPAIR DBD DIAGNOSE DATABASE DSN8D2AP OUTDDN SYSREC
```

Example 5: Repairing a table space with an orphan row

After running DSN1CHKR on table space SYSDBASE, assume that you receive the following message:

```
DSN1812I ORPHAN ID = 20 ID ENTRY = 0190 FOUND IN
      PAGE = 0000000024
```

From a DSN1PRNT of page X'0000000024' and X'0000002541', you identify that RID X'0000002420' has a forward pointer of X'0000002521'.

Repair the table space by taking the following actions:

1. Submit the following control statement, which specifies that REPAIR is to set the orphan's backward pointer to zeros:

```
REPAIR OBJECT LOG YES
  LOCATE TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE RID X'0000002420'
  VERIFY OFFSET X'0A' DATA X'0000002422'
  REPLACE OFFSET X'0A' DATA X'0000000000'
```

Setting the pointer to zeros prevents the next step from updating link pointers while deleting the orphan. Updating the link pointers can cause DB2 to abnormally terminate if the orphan's pointers are incorrect.

2. Submit the following control statement, which deletes the orphan:

```
REPAIR OBJECT LOG YES
  LOCATE TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE RID X'00002420'
  VERIFY OFFSET X'06' DATA X'00002521'
  DELETE
```

Example 6: Resetting restrictive states

The control statement in this example specifies that the REPAIR utility is to reset the following restrictive states for the indicated objects:

- For all indexes on table spaces DBNI1601.TSNI1601 and DBNI1601.TSNI1602, reset RBDP, PSRBDP, or RBDP* status.
- For partition 1 of table space DBNI1601.TSNI1601 and partition 4 of table space DBNI1601.TSNI1602, reset ACHKP status.
- For partitions 1 and 4 of table space DBNI1601.TSNI1601, reset CHKP status.

```
//STEP3 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUNI116.RECV1',
//      UTPROC='',SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN DD *
REPAIR OBJECT
SET INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DBNI1601.TSNI1601 NORBDPEND
SET INDEX (ALL) TABLESPACE DBNI1601.TSNI1602 NORBDPEND
SET TABLESPACE DBNI1601.TSNI1601 PART 1 NOAUXCHKP
SET TABLESPACE DBNI1601.TSNI1602 PART 4 NOAUXCHKP
SET TABLESPACE DBNI1601.TSNI1602 PART 1 NOCHECKPEND
SET TABLESPACE DBNI1601.TSNI1602 PART 4 NOCHECKPEND
/*
```

Figure 85. REPAIR SET example control statement

Example 7: Updating version information

The control statement in this example specifies that REPAIR is to update the version information in the catalog and directory for table spaces TLKQAST1, TSKQAST2, and TPKQAST3.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUKQ3AS.REPAIR',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN DD *
REPAIR VERSIONS TABLESPACE DBKQAST1.TLKQAST1
REPAIR VERSIONS TABLESPACE DBKQAST2.TSKQAST2
REPAIR VERSIONS TABLESPACE DBKQAST3.TPKQAST3
```

Figure 86. REPAIR VERSIONS example control statement

Example 8: Repairing a table space with clones

The control statement specifies that REPAIR is to reset the auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status of the specified table space and process only the specified objects that are table spaces that contain clone tables, indexes on clone tables, or index spaces that contain indexes on clone tables.

```
REPAIR
SET TABLESPACE DBKQDB01.TPKQDB01
NOAUXCHKP CLONE
```

Chapter 27. REPORT

The REPORT online utility provides information about table spaces, tables, and indexes. Use REPORT TABLESPACESET to find the names of all the table spaces and tables in a referential structure, including LOB table spaces. The REPORT utility also provides information about the LOB table spaces that are associated with a base table space.

Use REPORT RECOVERY to find information that is necessary for recovering a table space, index, or a table space and all of its indexes.

Output

The output from REPORT TABLESPACESET consists of the names of all table spaces in the table space set that you specify. It also lists all tables in the table spaces and all tables that are dependent on those tables.

The output from REPORT RECOVERY consists of the recovery history from the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table, log ranges from the SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX directory table, and volume serial numbers where archive log data sets from the BSDS reside. In addition, REPORT RECOVERY output includes information about any indexes on the table space that are in the informational COPY-pending status because this information affects the recoverability of an index.

If the BACKUP SYSTEM utility is used on your system, the output from REPORT RECOVERY also includes information about the system-level backup copies that you can use for recovery. If you use system-level backup copies as the base for object-level recoveries of individual table spaces or index spaces, the utility output also lists the system-level backup copies in the SYSCOPY ROWS AND SYSTEM-LEVEL BACKUPS section of the report.

If REPORT TABLESPACESET or REPORT RECOVERY is specified and the base objects have been cloned, information for both base and clone objects will be displayed in the output.

In a data sharing environment, the REPORT output provides:

- The RBA of when DB2 was migrated to Version 10
- The high and low RBA values of the migrated member
- A list of any SYSLGRNX records from the time before data sharing was enabled that cannot be used to recover to any point in time after data sharing was enabled
- For SYSCOPY, the member from which the image copy was deleted
- Information about system-level backup copies retrieved from the bootstrap data sets of each member in the data sharing group

Authorization required:

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- RECOVERDB privilege for the database

- DBADM or DBCTRL authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- DATAACCESS authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with DBCTRL or DBADM authority over database DSNDB06 can run the REPORT utility on any table space in DSNDB01 (the directory) or DSNDB06 (the catalog), as can any ID with installation SYSOPR, SYSCTRL, or SYSADM authority.

Execution phases of REPORT

The REPORT utility operates in these phases:

Phase Description

UTILINIT

Performs initialization

REPORT

Collects information

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup

Related concepts

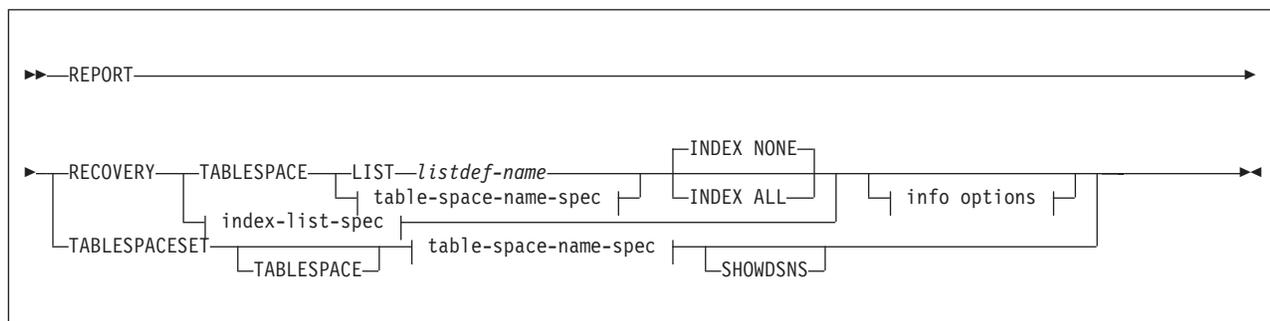
“Preparing for recovery” on page 153

Syntax and options of the REPORT control statement

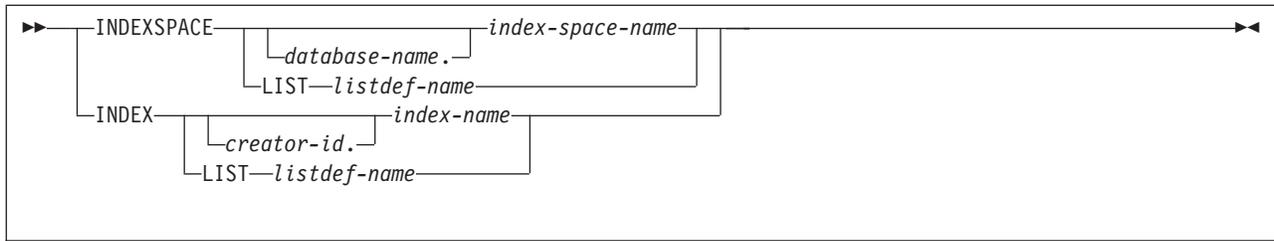
The REPORT utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



index-list-spec:



info options:

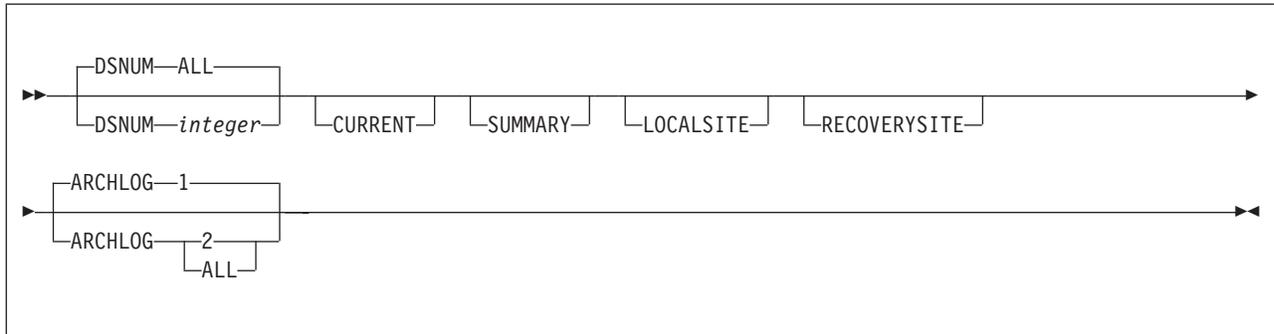
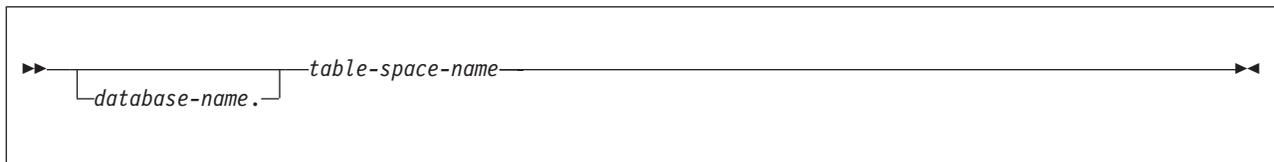


table-space-name-spec:



Option descriptions

RECOVERY

Indicates that recovery information for the specified table space or index is to be reported.

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

For REPORT RECOVERY, specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) that is being reported.

For REPORT TABLESPACESET, specifies a table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) in the table space set.

database-name

Optionally specifies the database to which the table space belongs.

table-space-name

Specifies the table space.

LIST*listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each control statement of REPORT. The list must contain only table spaces. Do not specify LIST with the TABLESPACE...*table-space-name* specification. The TABLESPACE keyword is required in order to validate the contents of the list. REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE is invoked once per item in the list.

SHOWDSNS

Specifies that the VSAM data set names for each table space or index space are to be included in the TABLESPACESET report. Data set names for base objects are shown in the section titled TABLESPACE SET REPORT. Data set names for CLONE objects are shown in the section titled CLONE TABLESPACE SET REPORT. The later report is only prepared if the base objects have been cloned.

INDEXSPACE *database-name.index-space-name*

Specifies the index space that is being reported.

database-name

Optionally specifies the database to which the index space belongs.

index-space-name

Specifies the index space name for the index that is being reported.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each control statement of REPORT. The list must contain only index spaces. Do not specify LIST with the INDEXSPACE *index-space-name* specification. The INDEXSPACE keyword is required in order to validate the contents of the list. REPORT RECOVERY INDEXSPACE is invoked once for each item in the list.

INDEX *creator-id.index-name*

Specifies the index in the index space that is being reported.

creator-id

Optionally specifies the creator of the index.

index-name

Specifies the index name that is to be reported. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. The utility allows one LIST keyword for each control statement of REPORT. The list must contain only index spaces. Do not specify LIST with the INDEX...*index-name* specification. The INDEX keyword is required in order to validate the contents of the list. REPORT RECOVERY INDEX is invoked once for each item in the list.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

The following REPORT keywords are optional:

INDEX NONE

Specifies that recovery information for index spaces that are associated with the specified table space is not to be reported.

INDEX ALL

Specifies that recovery information for index spaces that are associated with the specified table space is to be reported.

DSNUM

Identifies a partition or data set for which information is to be reported. Alternatively, DSNUM specifies that information is to be reported for the entire table space or index space.

ALL

Specifies that information is to be reported for the entire table space or index space.

integer

Is the number of a partition or data set for which information is to be reported. The maximum is 4096.

For a partitioned table space or partitioned index space, the integer is its partition number.

For a nonpartitioned table space, find the integer at the end of the data set name, as cataloged in the VSAM catalog. The data set name has the following format:

catname.DSNDBx.dbname.tsname.y0001.Annn

In this format:

catname

Is the VSAM catalog name or alias.

x

Is C or D.

dbname

Is the database name.

tsname

Is the table space name.

y

Is I or J.

nnn

Is the data set integer.

CURRENT

Specifies that only the SYSCOPY entries that were written after the last recovery point of the table space are to be reported. The last recovery point is the last full image copy, LOAD REPLACE LOG YES image copy, or REORG LOG YES image copy. If you specify DSNUM ALL, the last recovery point is a full image copy that was taken for the entire table space or index space. However, if you specify the CURRENT option, but the last recovery point does not exist on the active log, DB2 prompts you to mount archive tapes until this point is found.

CURRENT also reports only the SYSLGRNX rows and archive log volumes that were created after the last incremental image copy entry. If no incremental image copies were created, only the SYSLGRNX rows and archive log volumes that were created after the last recovery point are reported.

If you do not specify CURRENT or if no last recovery point exists, all SYSCOPY and SYSLGRNX entries for that table space or index space are reported, including those on archive logs. If you do not specify CURRENT, the entries that were written after the last recovery point are marked with an asterisk (*) in the report.

SUMMARY

Specifies that only a summary of volume serial numbers is to be reported. It reports the following volume serial numbers:

- Where the archive log data sets from the BSDS reside
- Where the image copy data sets from SYSCOPY reside

If you do not specify SUMMARY, recovery information is reported, in addition to the summary of volume serial numbers.

LOCALSITE

Specifies that all SYSCOPY records that were copied from a local site system are to be reported.

RECOVERYSITE

Specifies that all SYSCOPY records that were copied from the recovery site system are to be reported.

ARCHLOG

Specifies which archive log data sets are to be reported.

1 Reports archive log data set 1 only.

2 Reports archive log data set 2 only.

ALL

Reports both archive log data sets 1 and 2.

TABLESPACESET

Indicates that the names of all table spaces in the table space set, as well as the names of all indexes on tables in the table space set, are to be reported.

Related reference

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Data sets that REPORT uses

The REPORT utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that REPORT uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 103. Data sets that REPORT uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table space

Object that is to be reported.

Concurrency and compatibility for REPORT

The REPORT utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

REPORT does not set a utility restrictive state on the target table space or partition.

REPORT can run concurrently on the same target object with any utility or SQL operation.

How REPORT recovers information

You can use the REPORT utility when planning for recovery. REPORT provides information that is necessary for recovering a table space.

You can request report information for LOCALSITE, RECOVERYSITE, or both.

REPORT RECOVERY displays:

- Recovery information from the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table, including QUIESCE, COPY, LOAD, REORG, RECOVER TOCOPY, and RECOVER TORBA (or TOLOGPOINT) history. REPORT RECOVERY output also indicates the device type and whether this is the primary or backup copy for LOCALSITE or RECOVERYSITE.
- Information from the bootstrap data set about the system-level backup copies that can be used for recovery and, if your DB2 for z/OS subsystem has been configured to support object-level recoveries from system-level backup copies (the subsystem parameter specifications include SYSTEM_LEVEL_BACKUPS=YES), information about which system-level backup copies can be used to recover each individual table space or index space. Information about which system-level backup copies can be used to recover individual table spaces and index spaces appears in the output in the section with the other recovery information for the table space or index space. Information about all available system-level backup copies appears at the end of the report in a section that begins with the following message: DSNU598I - *csect-name* REPORT RECOVERY SYSTEM-LEVEL BACKUPS
- Log ranges of the table space from the SYSIBM.SYSLGRNX directory.
- Archive log data sets ARCHLOG1, ARCHLOG2, or both from the bootstrap data set.

You can use REPORT TABLESPACESET to find the names of all members of a table space set.

You can also use REPORT to obtain recovery information about the catalog and directory. When doing so, use the CURRENT option to avoid unnecessary mounting of archive tapes.

REPORT uses asterisks to denote any non-COPY entries that it finds in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table. For example, an entry that is added by the QUIESCE utility is marked with asterisks in the REPORT output.

REPORT uses pound signs to denote any changes found in the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table that were created before any alteration was materialized. For the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table entries inserted during the materialization of the pending definition changes, REPORT uses asterisks to denote them as non-COPY entries.

The following delimiters might be present around the ICTYPE value by REPORT:

- ## - SYSCOPY entry that was created before any alteration was materialized
- ** - Non image copy SYSCOPY entry
- < > - Image copy prior to rebalancing of table space partitions
- () - Image copy prior to LOG(NO) event. For image copies of indexes, the LOG(NO) event may have occurred on its underlying table space.

Recommendation: For image copies of partitioned table spaces that are taken with the DSNUM ALL option, run REPORT RECOVERY DSNUM ALL. If you run REPORT RECOVERY DSNUM ALL CURRENT, DB2 reports additional historical information that dates back to the last full image copy that was taken for the entire table space.

The REPORT RECOVERY utility output indicates whether any image copies are unusable; image copies that were taken prior to REORG or LOAD events that reset REORG-pending status are marked as unusable. In the REPORT RECOVERY output, look at the IC TYPE and STYPE fields to help you determine which image copies are unusable.

For example, in the sample REPORT RECOVERY output in the following figure, the value in the first IC TYPE field, *R*, indicates that a LOAD REPLACE LOG YES operation occurred. The value in the second IC TYPE field, <F> indicates that a full image copy was taken.

```

DSNU582I ) 271 15:02:09.92 DSNUPPCP - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DBKQAA01.TPKQAA01 SYSCOPY ROWS
TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-28-15.00.07.773906, IC TYPE = *C*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
          START LRSN =000037940EEC
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = L, FILE SEQ = 0000,
          PIT LRSN = 0000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
          LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = , AUTHID = , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DBKQAA01.TPKQAA01 , MEMBER NAME = ,
          INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-28-15.00.36.940517, IC TYPE = *R*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
          START LRSN =000037A07DAC
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
          PIT LRSN = 0000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
          LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = TJI11004, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DBKQAA01.TPKQAA01 , MEMBER NAME = ,
          INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

```

Figure 87. Sample REPORT RECOVERY output before table space placed in REORG-pending status

After this image copy was taken, assume that an event occurred that put the table space in REORG-pending status. The following figure shows the next several rows of REPORT RECOVERY output for the same table space. The value in the first ICTYPE field, *X* indicates that a REORG LOG YES event occurred. In the same SYSCOPY record, the value in the STYPE field, A, indicates that this REORG job reset the REORG-pending status. Any image copies that are taken before this status was reset are unusable. (Thus, the full image copy in the REPORT output in the previous figure is unusable.) The next record contains an F in the IC TYPE field and an X in the STYPE field, which indicates that a full image copy was taken during the REORG job. This image copy is usable.

```

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-28-15.02.03.978248, IC TYPE = *X*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =000037B8F661
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = A, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0001, HIGH DSNUM = 0026, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = TJI11006, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DBKQAA01.TPKQAA01 , MEMBER NAME = ,
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-28-15.02.09.789597, IC TYPE = F, SHR LVL = R, DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =000037CD653E
DEV TYPE = 3390 , IC BACK = , STYPE = X,, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0001, HIGH DSNUM = 0026, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = TJI11006, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = 1.89E+02
NPAGESF = 1.64E+02 , CPAGESF = 1.64E+02
DSNAME = JUKQUIAA.REORG1.STEP1.SYSCOPY , MEMBER NAME = ,
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M
DS VOLSER = SCR03 ,

```

Figure 88. Sample REPORT RECOVERY output after REORG-pending status is reset

Related reference

[SYSIBM.SYSCOPY table \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

Running REPORT on the catalog and directory

REPORT RECOVERY shows the image copies for those table spaces that are not included in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY: DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, DSNDB01.DBD01, and DSNDB06.SYSCOPY.

When you execute REPORT RECOVERY on DSNDB01.DBD01, DSNDB01.SYSUTILX, or DSNDB06.SYSCOPY, specify the CURRENT option to avoid unnecessarily mounting archive tapes. If you do not specify CURRENT, DB2 searches for and reports all SYSCOPY records in the log, including those on archive tapes. However, if the CURRENT option is specified and the last recovery point does not exist on the active log, DB2 prompts you to mount archive tapes until this point is found.

You can use REPORT TABLESPACESET on the DB2 catalog and directory table spaces.

Termination or restart of REPORT

You can terminate and restart the REPORT utility.

You can terminate a REPORT utility job with the TERM UTILITY command if you have submitted the job or have SYSOPR, SYSCTRL, or SYSADM authority.

You can restart a REPORT utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Review of REPORT output

The output from the REPORT online utility depends on whether the TABLESPACESET or RECOVERY option is specified.

For the TABLESPACESET option, the output consists of the names of all table spaces in the specified table space set. For the RECOVERY option, the output includes information about the image copy data sets and archive log data set that might be required during the recovery.

REPORT TABLESPACESET output

The output from REPORT TABLESPACESET consists of the names of all table spaces in the table space set that you specify. It also identifies all tables in the table spaces, and identifies all tables that are dependent on those tables, including LOB and XML table spaces.

For example, the statement REPORT TABLESPACESET TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81D generates the output that is shown in the following figure. For the purposes of this example, an XML column has been added to the sample table DSN8910.DEPT

```
DSNU000I    270 14:18:14.71 DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = REP94
DSNU1044I   270 14:18:14.91 DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I    270 14:18:14.92 DSNUGUTC - REPORT TABLESPACESET TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91D
DSNU587I   ) 270 14:18:14.94 DSNUPSET - REPORT TABLESPACE SET WITH TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91D
```

TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
TABLESPACE      : DSN8D91A.DSN8S91D
TABLE           : DSN8910.DEPT
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.XDEPT1
INDEX           : DSN8910.XDEPT11
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.XDEPT2
INDEX           : DSN8910.XDEPT22
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.XDEPT3
INDEX           : DSN8910.XDEPT33
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.IRDOCIDD
INDEX           : DSN8910.I_DOCIDDEPT
DEP TABLE      : DSN8910.DEPT
                  DSN8910.EMP
                  DSN8910.PROJ
```

```
TABLESPACE      : DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E
TABLE           : DSN8910.EMP
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.XEMP1
INDEX           : DSN8910.XEMP11
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.XEMP2
INDEX           : DSN8910.XEMP22
DEP TABLE      : DSN8910.DEPT
                  DSN8910.EMPPROJACT
                  DSN8910.PROJ
```

```
TABLESPACE      : DSN8D91A.DSN8S91P
TABLE           : DSN8910.ACT
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.XACT1
INDEX           : DSN8910.XACT11
INDEXSPACE      : DSN8D91A.XACT2
INDEX           : DSN8910.XACT22
DEP TABLE      : DSN8910.PROJACT
```

```

TABLE          : DSN8910.EMPPROJACT
INDEXSPACE    : DSN8D91A.XEMPPROJ
INDEX         : DSN8910.XEMPPROJACT1
INDEXSPACE    : DSN8D91A.XEMP1AQJ
INDEX        : DSN8910.XEMPPROJACT2

```

```

TABLE          : DSN8910.PROJ
INDEXSPACE    : DSN8D91A.XPROJ1
INDEX         : DSN8910.XPROJ11
INDEXSPACE    : DSN8D91A.XPROJ2
INDEX         : DSN8910.XPROJ22
DEP TABLE   : DSN8910.PROJ
              DSN8910.PROJACT

```

```

TABLE          : DSN8910.PROJACT
INDEXSPACE    : DSN8D91A.XPROJAC1
INDEX         : DSN8910.XPROJAC11
DEP TABLE   : DSN8910.EMPPROJACT

```

XML TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```

TABLESPACE          : DSN8D91A.DSN8S91D

BASE TABLE        : DSN8910.DEPT
COLUMN             : XML1
XML TABLESPACE    : DSN8D91A.XDEP0000
XML TABLE         : DSN8910.XDEPT
XML NODEID INDEXSPACE: DSN8D91A.IRNODEID
XML NODEID INDEX   : DSN8910.I_NODEIDXDEPT

```

```

DSNU580I  270 14:18:14.94 DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU010I  270 14:18:14.97 DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0

```

Figure 89. Example of REPORT TABLESPACESET output

REPORT TABLESPACESET output for tables spaces included in versioning relationships

The output from REPORT TABLESPACESET identifies versioning relationships in the system-maintained temporal table space or history table space. The report also includes the related auxiliary LOB and XML table spaces on both the system-maintained temporal table space and history table spaces.

```

TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.TS001L11
TABLE      : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.IRDOCIDT
INDEX      : ADMF001.I_DOCIDTBWSOL11

```

LOB TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```

TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.TS001L11

BASE TABLE        : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
COLUMN             : BLOB1
LOB TABLESPACE    : DBSOL11.TLWB1L11
AUX TABLE         : ADMF001.TBAWLOBB1L11
AUX INDEXSPACE     : DBSOL11.IXDLB1L1
AUX INDEX          : ADMF001.IXDLB1L1

```

```

TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.TS001L11

```

```

| BASE TABLE          : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
| COLUMN              : XML1
| XML TABLESPACE     : DBSOL11.XTBW0000
| XML TABLE         : ADMF001.XTBWSOL11
| XML NODEID INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.IRNODEID
| XML NODEID INDEX    : ADMF001.I_NODEIDXTBWSOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE      : DBSOL11.IXW11SOL
| XML INDEX           : ADMF001.IXW11SOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE      : DBSOL11.IXW12SOL
| XML INDEX           : ADMF001.IXW12SOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE      : DBSOL11.IXW13SOL
| XML INDEX           : ADMF001.IXW13SOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE      : DBSOL11.IXW14SOL
| XML INDEX           : ADMF001.IXW14SOL11
|
| HISTORY TABLESPACE SET REPORT:
|
| BASE TABLE : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
| HISTORY TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTS001L11
| HISTORY TABLE : ADMF001.HTBWSOL11
| HISTORY INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIRDOCIDT
| HISTORY INDEX : ADMF001.HI_DOCIDTBWSOL11
|
| HISTORY LOB TABLESPACE SET REPORT:
|
| HISTORY TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTS001L11
|
| BASE TABLE : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
| COLUMN : BLOB1
| HISTORY LOB TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTLWB1L11
| AUX TABLE : ADMF001.HTBALWOB1L11
| AUX INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIXDLB1L1
| AUX INDEX : ADMF001.HIXDLB1L1
|
| HISTORY XML TABLESPACE SET REPORT:
|
| HISTORY TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTS001L11
|
| BASE TABLE : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
| COLUMN : XML1
| HISTORY XML TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HXTBW0000
| XML TABLE : ADMF001.HXTBWSOL11
| XML NODEID INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIRNODEID
| XML NODEID INDEX : ADMF001.HI_NODEIDXTBWSOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIXW11SOL
| XML INDEX : ADMF001.HIXW11SOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIXW12SOL
| XML INDEX : ADMF001.HIXW12SOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIXW13SOL
| XML INDEX : ADMF001.HIXW13SOL11
| XML INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIXW14SOL
| XML INDEX : ADMF001.HIXW14SOL11

```

Figure 90. Example of REPORT TABLESPACESET output for tables spaces included in versioning relationships

REPORT RECOVERY output

REPORT RECOVERY displays all information about the image copy data sets and archive log data set that might be required during the recovery.

If the DSVOLSER column of SYSIBM.SYSCOPY is blank, REPORT RECOVERY does not display volume serial numbers for image copy data sets.

| DSNU588I) 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

| /DSNU583I) 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPPLR - SYSLGRNX ROWS FROM REPORT RECOVERY
| FOR TABLESPACE DBUV0101.TPUV0101

UCDATE	UCTIME	START RBA	STOP RBA	START LRSN	STOP LRSN	PARTITION	MEMBER ID
100406	11541904	0000374F86EC	00003752195A	BF8110CF0ADF	BF8110D0EB95	0001	0000
100406	11541916	0000374FB0E1	00003752195A	BF8110CF26BE	BF8110D0EC6F	0002	0000
100406	11541929	0000374FDACA	00003752195A	BF8110CF4606	BF8110D0ECEE	0003	0000
100406	11541940	000037500483	00003752195A	BF8110CF6209	BF8110D0ED64	0004	0000
100406	11541952	000037502E23	00003752195A	BF8110CF7F04	BF8110D0EE47	0005	0000
100406	11541964	00003750582E	00003752195A	BF8110CF9AFD	BF8110D0EED8	0006	0000
100406	11541975	0000375081E7	00003752195A	BF8110CFB7D6	BF8110D0EF51	0007	0000
100406	11541987	00003750AB87	00003752195A	BF8110CFD3C4	BF8110D0EFCC	0008	0000
100406	11541998	00003750D540	00003752195A	BF8110CFEFD4	BF8110D0F052	0009	0000
100406	11542010	00003750FEE0	00003752195A	BF8110D0002F	BF8110D0F0D6	0010	0000
100406	11542022	0000375128A2	00003752195A	BF8110D02A7E	BF8110D0F157	0011	0000
100406	11542035	00003751525B	00003752195A	BF8110D04860	BF8110D0F204	0012	0000
100406	11542046	000037517BFB	00003752195A	BF8110D06558	BF8110D0F350	0013	0000
100406	11542059	00003751A674	00003752195A	BF8110D083D9	BF8110D0F413	0014	0000
100406	11542074	00003751D02D	00003752195A	BF8110D0A7D6	BF8110D0F4DF	0015	0000
100406	11542087	00003751FA0B	00003752195A	BF8110D0C759	BF8110D0F567	0016	0000
100406	11542199	00003752B0F9	000037522734	BF8110D1D925	BF8110F9EE17	0001	0000
100406	11542201	00003752B4C1	00003752275E	BF8110D1DDFD	BF8110F9EF2E	0002	0000
100406	11542202	00003752B84D	0000375227D2	BF8110D1E02B	BF8110F9EFC8	0003	0000
100406	11542202	00003752BB09	000037522846	BF8110D1E252	BF8110F9F050	0004	0000
100406	11542203	00003752BF65	0000375228BA	BF8110D1E495	BF8110F9F0DB	0005	0000
100406	11542205	00003752C31E	00003752292E	BF8110D1E75F	BF8110F9F160	0006	0000
100406	11542205	00003752C6AA	0000375229A2	BF8110D1E9C9	BF8110F9F1E2	0007	0000
100406	11542206	00003752CA36	000037522A16	BF8110D1EC01	BF8110F9F27D	0008	0000
100406	11542207	00003752CDC2	000037522A8A	BF8110D1EE6B	BF8110F9F2FF	0009	0000
100406	11542209	00003752D1A4	000037522AFE	BF8110D1F14C	BF8110F9F390	0010	0000
100406	11542210	00003752D530	000037522B72	BF8110D1F3C8	BF8110F9F469	0011	0000
100406	11542211	00003752D8BC	000037522BE6	BF8110D1F65D	BF8110F9F4ED	0012	0000
100406	11542212	00003752DC48	000037522C5A	BF8110D1F8B9	BF8110F9F58E	0013	0000
100406	11542213	00003752E000	000037522CCE	BF8110D1FB35	BF8110F9F64A	0014	0000
100406	11542214	00003752E38C	000037522D42	BF8110D1FE1E	BF8110F9F6DF	0015	0000
100406	11542215	00003752E718	000037522DB6	BF8110D20107	BF8110F9F7A1	0016	0000
100406	11555014	000037641512	000037666079	BF811125EB99	BF8111266663	0001	0000
100406	11555015	0000376434E7	0000376661A7	BF811125EDEB	BF8111266709	0002	0000
100406	11555017	00003764A0F2	000037666303	BF811125F276	BF8111266796	0003	0000
100406	11555022	00003764C7F9	00003766645F	BF811125FD5C	BF811126682C	0004	0000
100406	11555025	00003764E702	0000376665BB	BF8111260503	BF81112668A9	0005	0000
100406	11555027	00003765060B	000037666717	BF81112609DA	BF8111266922	0006	0000
100406	11555028	000037652514	000037666873	BF8111260DA8	BF81112669F5	0007	0000
100406	11555031	00003765441D	0000376669CF	BF8111261384	BF8111266A77	0008	0000
100406	11555032	000037656326	000037666B2B	BF81112616B4	BF8111266B08	0009	0000
100406	11555033	00003765822F	000037666C87	BF81112619C9	BF8111266BA3	0010	0000
100406	11555035	00003765A138	000037666DE3	BF8111261D27	BF8111266C63	0011	0000
100406	11555036	00003765C041	000037666F3F	BF811126207C	BF8111266CE5	0012	0000
100406	11555037	00003765E033	0000376670E8	BF8111262398	BF8111266D5F	0013	0000
100406	11555039	000037660033	000037667244	BF811126281F	BF8111266DD6	0014	0000
100406	11555041	000037662033	0000376673A0	BF8111262BA7	BF8111266E50	0015	0000
100406	11555042	000037664033	0000376674FC	BF8111262F1D	BF8111266F25	0016	0000
100406	11555264	00003767877D	0000376FB01E	BF8111284DEB	BF8111357B9B	0001	0000
100406	11555266	00003767C8C1	0000376FB452	BF8111285307	BF811135809D	0002	0000
100406	11555270	000037682610	0000376FB6C6	BF8111285B65	BF811135868A	0003	0000
100406	11555273	0000376856B9	0000376FB93A	BF8111286213	BF8111358C26	0004	0000
100406	11555276	00003768D63D	0000376FBBAE	BF8111286AB6	BF8111359150	0005	0000
100406	11555279	0000376936AB	0000376FBEE2	BF81112870D0	BF811135970F	0006	0000
100406	11555282	00003769A5DE	0000376FC10C	BF8111287812	BF8111359D87	0007	0000
100406	11555285	00003769F6C1	0000376FC380	BF811128800C	BF811135A49D	0008	0000
100406	11555287	0000376A3819	0000376FC5F4	BF8111288438	BF811135AA33	0009	0000
100406	11555288	0000376A88FC	0000376FC868	BF811128887F	BF811135AF57	0010	0000
100406	11555291	0000376B1487	0000376FCADC	BF8111288E59	BF811135B50D	0011	0000
100406	11560588	0000376BB087	0000376FCD50	BF811134ED6F	BF811135B990	0012	0000
100406	11560591	0000376C2F10	0000376FD000	BF811134F463	BF811135BF2E	0013	0000
100406	11560594	0000376C9EB8	0000376FD274	BF811134FC1B	BF811135C5E9	0014	0000
100406	11560597	0000376D0CE6	0000376FD4E8	BF8111350379	BF811135CB34	0015	0000
100406	11560599	0000376D4ED1	0000376FD75C	BF81113507F8	BF811135CF65	0016	0000

```

DSNU584I ) 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPPBS - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DBUV0101.TPUV0101 ARCHLOG1
          BSDS VOLUMES
DSNU588I ) 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPPBS - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU586I ) 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DBUV0101.TPUV0101 SUMMARY
DSNU588I ) 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED
DSNU589I ) 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DBUV0101.TPUV0101 COMPLETE

DSNU598I @ 134 06:52:53.42 DSNUPPBK - REPORT RECOVERY SYSTEM-LEVEL BACKUPS

          START STCK          DATA COMPLETE  DATA/LOG COMPLETE
          DATA          LOG          RBLP          LRSN          DATE          LTIME          LOCATION NAME
          -----          -----          -----          -----          -----          -----          -----
C42EFEE0E13F45D0 0000000000000000 100000470146 1000004AD112 2009/05/14 06:53:03 STLEC1
TOKEN = E5C1F1C1C42EFEE0E13F45D0100000470146 INCREMENTAL = Y, SUBSYSTEM ID = VA1A, MEMBER NAME = MEM1
Z/OS = 1.11, CAPTURE CATALOG INFO = N, LOG COPY POOL = N
C42D950789A533D3 0000000000000000 1000001DAEB9 100000231F06 2009/05/13 03:54:09 STLEC1
TOKEN = E5C1F1C1C42D950789A533D31000001DAEB9 INCREMENTAL = Y, SUBSYSTEM ID = VA1A, MEMBER NAME = MEM2
Z/OS = 1.11, CAPTURE CATALOG INFO = N, LOG COPY POOL = N

DSNU580I 277 11:56:29.14 DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00

```

Figure 91. Example of REPORT RECOVERY in a data sharing environment

The following figure shows sample output for the statement REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE ARCHLOG. Under message DSNU584I, the archive log entries after the last recovery point are marked with an asterisk (*). If you code the CURRENT option, the output from message DSNU584I would include only the archive logs after the last recovery point and the asterisk (*) would not be included in the report.

```

DSNU000I DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = D7058005.RCVR3
DSNU1044I DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I DSNUGUTC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 ARCHLOG ALL
DSNU581I = DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501
DSNU593I = DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY ENVIRONMENT RECORD:
'
  MINIMUM RBA: 000000000000
  MAXIMUM RBA: FFFFFFFFFF
  MIGRATING RBA: 000000000000
DSNU582I = DSNUPPCP - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 SYSCOPY ROWS
TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.03.16.784238, IC TYPE = *Q*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E58E60D
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = W, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 3648 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = T3951105, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME =
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.03.22.937931, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E5956A3
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = T3951105, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME =
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.03.43.118193, IC TYPE = *Q*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E5A7B9D

```

```

DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = W, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 3648 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = T3951106, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME =
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.03.53.881540, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E5ADC6E

DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = T3951106, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME =
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.04.02.955333, IC TYPE = *Q*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E624A3C

DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = W, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 3648 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = T3951106, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME =
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

DSNU586I = DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 SUMMARY
DSNU588I = DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU583I = DSNUPPLR - SYSLGRNX ROWS FROM REPORT RECOVERY FOR TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501
UCDATE UCTIME START RBA STOP RBA START LRSN STOP LRSN PARTITION MEMBER ID
091702 10025977 00001E4FD319 00001E4FEB91 00001E4FD319 00001E4FEB91 0000 0000 *
091702 10030124 00001E505B93 00001E58BC23 00001E505B93 00001E58BC23 0000 0000 *
091702 10032302 00001E59A637 00001E5A5258 00001E59A637 00001E5A5258 0000 0000 *
091702 10035391 00001E5B26AB 00001E6222F3 00001E5B26AB 00001E6222F3 0000 0000 *

DSNU584I = DSNUPPBS - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 ARCHLOG1 BSDS VOLUMES
START TIME END TIME START RBA END RBA UNIT VOLSER DATA SET NAME
20022601702454 20022601704156 00001E48B000 00001E629FFF SYSDA SCR03 DSNCR10.ARCHLOG1.A0000005 *
DSNU584I = DSNUPPBS - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 ARCHLOG2 BSDS VOLUMES
DSNU588I = DSNUPPBS - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED
DSNU586I = DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 SUMMARY
ARCHLOG1 BSDS VOLSER(S) SCR03 *
DSNU589I = DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 COMPLETE

DSNU580I DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU010I DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
DSNU000I DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = D7058005.RCVR3
DSNU1044I DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I DSNUGUTC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 CURRENT
DSNU581I = DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501
DSNU585I = DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 CURRENT
DSNU593I = DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY ENVIRONMENT RECORD:
' MINIMUM RBA: 000000000000
' MAXIMUM RBA: FFFFFFFFFF
' MIGRATING RBA: 000000000000

DSNU582I = DSNUPPCP - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 SYSCOPY ROWS
TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.03.16.784238, IC TYPE = *Q*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E58E60D

DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = W, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 3648 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =

```

```

JOBNAME = T3951105, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME = ,
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.03.22.937931, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E5956A3
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = T3951105, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME = ,
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M
...

TIMESTAMP = 2002-09-17-10.04.02.955333, IC TYPE = *Q*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00001E624A3C
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = W, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 3648 ,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = T3951106, AUTHID = ADMF001 , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DB580501.TS580501 , MEMBER NAME = ,
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

DSNU586I = DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 SUMMARY
DSNU588I = DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU583I = DSNUPPLR - SYSLGRNX ROWS FROM REPORT RECOVERY FOR TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501
UCDATE UCTIME START RBA STOP RBA START LRSN STOP LRSN PARTITION MEMBER ID
091702 10025977 00001E4FD319 00001E4FEB91 00001E4FD319 00001E4FEB91 0000 0000
091702 10030124 00001E505B93 00001E58BC23 00001E505B93 00001E58BC23 0000 0000
091702 10032302 00001E59A637 00001E5A5258 00001E59A637 00001E5A5258 0000 0000
091702 10035391 00001E5B26AB 00001E6222F3 00001E5B26AB 00001E6222F3 0000 0000

DSNU584I = DSNUPPBS - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 ARCHLOG1 BSDS VOLUMES
START TIME END TIME START RBA END RBA UNIT VOLSER DATA SET NAME
20022601702454 20022601704156 00001E48B000 00001E629FFF SYSDA SCR03 DSNCR810.ARCHLOG1.A0000005

DSNU586I = DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 SUMMARY
ARCHLOG1 BSDS VOLSER(S) SCR03
DSNU589I = DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DB580501.TS580501 COMPLETE
DSNU580I DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00

```

Figure 92. Example of REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE ARCHLOG

Related reference

 SYSIBM.SYSCOPY table (DB2 SQL)

Sample REPORT control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own REPORT control statements.

Example 1: Reporting recovery information for a table space

The following control statement specifies that the REPORT utility is to provide recovery information for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E.

```

//REORG EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=V91A,UID='REP97'
//SYSIN DD *
REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E
/*

```

The preceding statement produces output similar to the following output :

```

DSNU000I 270 13:00:51.35 DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = REP97
DSNU1044I 270 13:00:51.58 DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I 270 13:00:51.60 DSNUGUTC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E
DSNU581I ) 270 13:00:51.60 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E
DSNU593I ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY ENVIRONMENT RECORD:
          MINIMUM RBA: 000000000000
          MAXIMUM RBA: FFFFFFFFFFFF
          MIGRATING RBA: 000000000000
DSNU582I ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPPCP - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E SYSCOPY ROWS
TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.40.56.074739, IC TYPE = *C*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
          START LRSN =00003697A903
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = L, FILE SEQ = 0000,
          PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
          LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = , AUTHID = , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E , MEMBER NAME = ,
          INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.38.341008, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0004,
          START LRSN =000036C8EA3E
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
          PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0001, LOGICAL PART = 0004,
          LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = DSNTJ1 , AUTHID = SYSADM , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E , MEMBER NAME = ,
          INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.38.341008, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0001,
          START LRSN =000036C8EA3E
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
          PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0001, LOGICAL PART = 0001,
          LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = DSNTJ1 , AUTHID = SYSADM , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E , MEMBER NAME = ,
          INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.38.341008, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0002,
          START LRSN =000036C8EA3E
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
          PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0001, LOGICAL PART = 0002,
          LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = DSNTJ1 , AUTHID = SYSADM , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
DSNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E , MEMBER NAME = ,
          INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.38.341008, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0003,
          START LRSN =000036C8EA3E
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
          PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0001, LOGICAL PART = 0003,
          LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = DSNTJ1 , AUTHID = SYSADM , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
NPAGESF = -1.0E+00 , CPAGESF = -1.0E+00

```

```

DSNAME      = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E                , MEMBER NAME =      ,
              INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

. . .

DSNU586I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E SUMMARY
DSNU588I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU583I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPPLR - SYSLGRNX ROWS FROM REPORT RECOVERY FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E
UCDATE     UCTIME      START RBA      STOP RBA      START LRSN     STOP LRSN     PARTITION  MEMBER ID
092706     11405634    00003697B82E  0000369855C3  BF7840C34BF3  BF7840C44D81  0001       0000
092706     11405670    00003697E223  0000369855C3  BF7840C3A2F9  BF7840C44E27  0002       0000
092706     11405707    000036980BC3  0000369855C3  BF7840C3FF60  BF7840C44E92  0003       0000
092706     11405732    000036983674  0000369855C3  BF7840C43C57  BF7840C44F03  0004       0000
092706     11410155    0000369E31B6  000036ADE99C  BF7840C8436A  BF7840D832E3  0001       0000
092706     11410156    0000369E3ABB  000036A03DB6  BF7840C84546  BF7840D83495  0002       0000
092706     11410156    0000369E3E51  000036A0E15C  BF7840C84683  BF7840D8359B  0003       0000
092706     11410159    0000369E4224  000036A5F932  BF7840C84CAA  BF7840D83704  0004       0000
092706     11413835    000036C98000  000036D0B672  BF7840EB5CF9  BF7840EBF7A3  0001       0000
092706     11413845    000036CA937C  000036D0B9B6  BF7840EB7562  BF7840EC0150  0002       0000
092706     11413861    000036CC1F1B  000036D0BC2A  BF7840EB9B43  BF7840EC0983  0004       0000
092706     11422002    000036FC9A0B  000036FCBA50  BF7841131913  BF7841131F84  0003       0000
092706     11422074    000036FCEB37  000036FD2000  BF784113C93E  BF784113E333  0003       0000
092706     11422688    00003701A7B0  000037029A20  BF784119A438  BF78411B9857  0003       0000
092706     11423828    000037091000  0000370930BF  BF784124848C  BF7841248A06  0005       0000
092706     11424418    0000370DC5B7  0000370E625D  BF78412A23C8  BF78412A5DC6  0001       0000
092706     11424419    0000370DE4FC  0000370E63B9  BF78412A2786  BF78412A6101  0002       0000
092706     11424421    0000370E0405  0000370E6515  BF78412A2A82  BF78412A6191  0003       0000
092706     11424427    0000370E230E  0000370E6671  BF78412A39CD  BF78412A6210  0004       0000
092706     11424428    0000370E4254  0000370E74C2  BF78412A3CFD  BF78412A630C  0005       0000
092706     11424782    0000370F3DF8  0000371086F8  BF78412D9C67  BF78412DFDE7  0001       0000
092706     11424787    0000370F41BA  0000371089A8  BF78412DA8F9  BF78412E02FB  0002       0000
092706     11424791    0000370F44E6  000037108C1C  BF78412DB256  BF78412E0B57  0003       0000
092706     11424794    0000370F4812  000037108E90  BF78412DBAC1  BF78412E106B  0004       0000
092706     11424798    0000370F4B3E  00003710919C  BF78412DC398  BF78412E14AE  0005       0000
092706     11424871    000037111E5F  00003711222E  BF78412E7581  BF78412E7A75  0001       0000
092706     11424880    000037112516  00003711287E  BF78412E8CD5  BF78412E910F  0002       0000
092706     11424886    000037112B66  000037112ECE  BF78412E9A46  BF78412E9EF3  0003       0000
092706     11424893    0000371131D0  000037113538  BF78412EAAF6  BF78412EAF6F  0004       0000
092706     11424898    000037113820  000037113B88  BF78412EB8A5  BF78412EC1C4  0005       0000

DSNU584I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPPBS - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E ARCHLOG1 BSDS VOLUMES
DSNU588I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPPBS - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU586I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E SUMMARY
DSNU588I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED
DSNU589I   ) 270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E COMPLETE

DSNU580I   270 13:00:51.61 DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU010I   270 13:00:51.62 DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0

```

Figure 93. Example output for REPORT RECOVERY

Example 2: Reporting table spaces with LOB columns

The following control statement specifies that REPORT is to provide a list of all table spaces related to TABLESPACE DSN8D91L.DSN8S91B which contains a table with three LOB columns. The output includes a separate section titled LOB TABLESPACE SET REPORT showing a list of related LOB table spaces and their tables, indexes, and index spaces. The base table and column to which each LOB object is related is also shown.

```
REPORT TABLESPACESET TABLESPACE DSN8D91L.DSN8S91B
```

The preceding statement produces output similar to the following output:

```
DSNU000I 277 11:19:09.40 DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = REP98
DSNU1044I 277 11:19:09.59 DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I 277 11:19:09.59 DSNUGUTC - REPORT TABLESPACESET TABLESPACE DSN8D91L.DSN8S91B
DSNU587I ) 277 11:19:09.62 DSNUPSET - REPORT TABLESPACE SET WITH TABLESPACE DSN8D91L.DSN8S91B
```

TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
TABLESPACE      : DSN8D91L.DSN8S91B
TABLE           : DSN8910.EMP_PHOTO_RESUME
INDEXSPACE     : DSN8D91L.XEMPRPHO
INDEX          : DSN8910.XEMP_PHOTO_RESUME
```

LOB TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
TABLESPACE      : DSN8D91L.DSN8S91B

BASE TABLE    : DSN8910.EMP_PHOTO_RESUME
COLUMN        : PSEG_PHOTO
LOB TABLESPACE : DSN8D91L.DSN8S91L
AUX TABLE     : DSN8910.AUX_PSEG_PHOTO
AUX INDEXSPACE : DSN8D91L.XAUXRPSE
AUX INDEX      : DSN8910.XAUX_PSEG_PHOTO
COLUMN        : BMP_PHOTO
LOB TABLESPACE : DSN8D91L.DSN8S91M
AUX TABLE     : DSN8910.AUX_BMP_PHOTO
AUX INDEXSPACE : DSN8D91L.XAUXRBMP
AUX INDEX      : DSN8910.XAUX_BMP_PHOTO
COLUMN        : RESUME
LOB TABLESPACE : DSN8D91L.DSN8S91N
AUX TABLE     : DSN8910.AUX_EMP_RESUME
AUX INDEXSPACE : DSN8D91L.XAUXREMP
AUX INDEX      : DSN8910.XAUX_EMP_RESUME
```

```
DSNU580I 277 11:19:09.62 DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU010I 277 11:19:09.62 DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 94. Example output for REPORT TABLESPACESET

Example 3: Reporting recovery information for a partition of a partitioned table space

The following control statement specifies that REPORT is to provide recovery information for partition 4 of table space DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E. The partition number is indicated by the DSNUM option.

```
REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E DSNUM 4
```

The preceding statement produces output similar to the following output:

```
DSNU000I 271 18:15:27.26 DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = REP99
DSNU1044I 271 18:15:27.55 DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I 271 18:15:27.55 DSNUGUTC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E DSNUM 4
DSNU581I ) 271 18:15:27.62 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E
DSNU593I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY ENVIRONMENT RECORD:
          MINIMUM RBA: 000000000000
          MAXIMUM RBA: FFFFFFFFFFFFFF
          MIGRATING RBA: 000000000000
DSNU582I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPPCP - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E SYSCOPY ROWS
TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.40.56.074739, IC TYPE = *C*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00003697A903
DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = L, FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
```

LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
 LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
 JOBNAME = , AUTHID = , COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 NPAGESF = -1.0E+00, CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 DSNNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E, MEMBER NAME = ,
 INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.38.341008, IC TYPE = *Z*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0004,
 START LRSN =000036C8EA3E
 DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
 PIT LRSN = 000000000000
 LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0001, LOGICAL PART = 0004,
 LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
 JOBNAME = DSNTJ1, AUTHID = SYSADM, COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 NPAGESF = -1.0E+00, CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 DSNNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E, MEMBER NAME = ,
 INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.51.120054, IC TYPE = *Q*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
 START LRSN =000036E2BA9E
 DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = W, FILE SEQ = 0000,
 PIT LRSN = 000000000000
 LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0001, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
 LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
 JOBNAME = DSNTJ1, AUTHID = SYSADM, COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 NPAGESF = -1.0E+00, CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 DSNNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E, MEMBER NAME = ,
 INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.53.524797, IC TYPE = *F*, SHR LVL = R, DSNUM = 0000,
 START LRSN =000036E883E4
 DEV TYPE = 3390, IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
 PIT LRSN = 000000000000
 LOW DSNUM = 0001, HIGH DSNUM = 0004, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
 LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
 JOBNAME = DSNTJ1, AUTHID = SYSADM, COPYPAGESF = 5.7E+01
 NPAGESF = 6.7E+01, CPAGESF = 5.7E+01
 DSNNAME = DB2V91A.SYSCOPY.DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E, MEMBER NAME = ,
 INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.41.55.631749, IC TYPE = *Q*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
 START LRSN =000036EA809A
 DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = W, FILE SEQ = 0000,
 PIT LRSN = 000000000000
 LOW DSNUM = 0000, HIGH DSNUM = 0000, OLDEST VERSION = 0001, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
 LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
 JOBNAME = DSNTJ1, AUTHID = SYSADM, COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 NPAGESF = -1.0E+00, CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 DSNNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E, MEMBER NAME = ,
 INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.42.48.167991, IC TYPE = *X*, SHR LVL = , DSNUM = 0000,
 START LRSN =0000370CA39B
 DEV TYPE = , IC BACK = , STYPE = A, FILE SEQ = 0000,
 PIT LRSN = 000000000000
 LOW DSNUM = 0001, HIGH DSNUM = 0005, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
 LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
 JOBNAME = DSNTJ1, AUTHID = SYSADM, COPYPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 NPAGESF = -1.0E+00, CPAGESF = -1.0E+00
 DSNNAME = DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E, MEMBER NAME = ,
 INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-11.42.49.027488, IC TYPE = F, SHR LVL = R, DSNUM = 0000,
 START LRSN =000037113E08
 DEV TYPE = 3390, IC BACK = , STYPE = X, FILE SEQ = 0000,
 PIT LRSN = 000000000000
 LOW DSNUM = 0001, HIGH DSNUM = 0005, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
 LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =

```

JOBNAME = DSNTTEJ1 , AUTHID = SYSADM , COPYPAGESF = 2.0E+01
NPAGESF = 1.6E+01 , CPAGESF = 1.6E+01
DSNAME = DB2V91A.DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E.REORGCPY , MEMBER NAME = ,
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

DSNU586I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E SUMMARY
DSNU588I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU583I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPPLR - SYSLGRNX ROWS FROM REPORT RECOVERY FOR TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E
UCDATE UCTIME START RBA STOP RBA START LRSN STOP LRSN PARTITION MEMBER ID
092706 11405732 000036983674 0000369855C3 BF7840C43C57 BF7840C44F03 0004 0000
092706 11410159 0000369E4224 000036A5F932 BF7840C84CAA BF7840D83704 0004 0000
092706 11413861 000036CC1F1B 000036D0BC2A BF7840EB9B43 BF7840EC0983 0004 0000
092706 11424427 0000370E230E 0000370E6671 BF78412A39CD BF78412A6210 0004 0000
092706 11424794 0000370F4812 000037108E90 BF78412DBAC1 BF78412E106B 0004 0000
092706 11424893 0000371131D0 000037113538 BF78412EAAFB BF78412EAF6F 0004 0000

DSNU584I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPPBS - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E ARCHLOG1 BSDS VOLUMES
DSNU588I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPPBS - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU586I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E SUMMARY
DSNU588I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED
DSNU589I ) 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY TABLESPACE DSN8D91A.DSN8S91E COMPLETE

DSNU580I 271 18:15:27.66 DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU010I 271 18:15:27.67 DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0

```

Figure 95. Example output for REPORT RECOVERY DSNUM

Example 4: Reporting recovery information for an index

The control statement specifies that REPORT is to provide recovery information for index DSN8810.XDEPT1.

```

//REP101 EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=V91A,UID='REP101'
//SYSIN DD *
REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1
/*

```

Figure 96. Example REPORT RECOVERY statement for an index

The preceding statement produces output similar to the following output:

```

DSNU000I 270 13:51:08.82 DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = REP101
DSNU1044I 270 13:51:09.04 DSNUGTIS - PROCESSING SYSIN AS EBCDIC
DSNU050I 270 13:51:09.04 DSNUGUTC - REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1
DSNU581I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1
DSNU593I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY ENVIRONMENT RECORD:
MINIMUM RBA: 000000000000
MAXIMUM RBA: FFFFFFFFFFFF
MIGRATING RBA: 000000000000
DSNU582I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPPCP - REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1 SYSCOPY ROWS
TIMESTAMP = 2006-09-27-13.50.30.627880, IC TYPE = F , SHR LVL = R, DSNUM = 0000,
START LRSN =00003726ADE3
DEV TYPE = 3390 , IC BACK = , STYPE = , FILE SEQ = 0000,
PIT LRSN = 000000000000
LOW DSNUM = 0001, HIGH DSNUM = 0001, OLDEST VERSION = 0000, LOGICAL PART = 0000,
LOGGED = Y, TTYPE =
JOBNAME = REP101 , AUTHID = SYSADM , COPYPAGESF = 5.0E+00
NPAGESF = 5.0E+00 , CPAGESF = 0.0E0
DSNAME = DSN8D91A.XDEPT1.D2006270.T205030 , MEMBER NAME = ,
INSTANCE = 01, RELCREATED = M

DSNU586I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1 SUMMARY

```

```

DSNU588I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU583I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPPLR - SYSLGRNX ROWS FROM REPORT RECOVERY FOR INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1
DSNU588I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPPLR - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU584I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPPBS - REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1 ARCHLOG1 BSDS VOLUMES
DSNU588I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPPBS - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED

DSNU586I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPSUM - REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1 SUMMARY
DSNU588I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPSUM - NO DATA TO BE REPORTED
DSNU589I ) 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPREC - REPORT RECOVERY INDEX DSN8910.XDEPT1 COMPLETE

DSNU580I 270 13:51:09.05 DSNUPORT - REPORT UTILITY COMPLETE - ELAPSED TIME=00:00:00
DSNU010I 270 13:51:09.06 DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0

```

Figure 97. Example output for REPORT RECOVERY INDEX

Example 5: Reporting table space set information with XML columns

Figure 98. Example output for REPORT TABLESPACESET

TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```

TABLESPACE      : DBKQAN01.TPKQAN01
TABLE           : ADMF001.TBKQAN01
INDEXSPACE     : DBKQAN01.IPKQAN11
INDEX          : ADMF001.IPKQAN111
INDEXSPACE     : DBKQAN01.IRDOCIDT
INDEX          : ADMF001.I_DOCIDTBKQAN01
INDEXSPACE     : DBKQAN01.IXKQAN12
INDEX          : ADMF001.IXKQAN122

```

XML TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```

TABLESPACE      : DBKQAN01.TPKQAN01

BASE TABLE    : ADMF001.TBKQAN01
COLUMN         : XML1
XML TABLESPACE : DBKQAN01.XTBK0000
XML TABLE     : ADMF001.XTBKQAN01
XML NODEID INDEXSPACE: DBKQAN01.IRNODEID
XML NODEID INDEX : ADMF001.I_NODEIDXTBKQAN01
XML INDEXSPACE  : DBKQAN01.XVIXLC11
XML INDEX       : ADMF001.XVIXLC11
COLUMN         : XML2
XML TABLESPACE : DBKQAN01.XTBK0001
XML TABLE     : ADMF001.XTBKQAN01000
XML NODEID INDEXSPACE: DBKQAN01.IRNO1MH2
XML NODEID INDEX : ADMF001.I_NODEIDXTBKQAN01000
XML INDEXSPACE  : DBKQAN01.XVIXLC12
XML INDEX       : ADMF001.XVIXLC12

```

Example 6: Reporting recovery information for a table space

The following control statement specifies that the REPORT utility is to provide recovery information for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E.

```
REPORT TABLESPACESET TABLESPACE DBKQBG01.TPKQBG01 SHOWDSNS
```

Example 7: Reporting versioning relationships for system-maintained temporal table spaces

The following control statement specifies that REPORT TABLESPACESET is to show all data base objects related to the base table space. The report shows the data base objects that are involved in versioning relationships. The report also includes related auxiliary LOB and XML table spaces on both the system-maintained temporal table space and the history table spaces.

TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.TS001L11
TABLE      : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.IRDOCIDT
INDEX     : ADMF001.I_DOCIDTBWSOL11
```

LOB TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.TS001L11
BASE TABLE : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
COLUMN      : BLOB1
LOB TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.TLWB1L11
AUX TABLE   : ADMF001.TBAWLOBB1L11
AUX INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.IXDLB1L1
AUX INDEX    : ADMF001.IXDLB1L1
```

XML TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
TABLESPACE      : DBSOL11.TS001L11
BASE TABLE     : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
COLUMN          : XML1
XML TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.XTBW0000
XML TABLE      : ADMF001.XTBWSOL11
XML NODEID INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.IRNODEID
XML NODEID INDEX : ADMF001.I_NODEIDXTBWSOL11
XML INDEXSPACE  : DBSOL11.IXW11SOL
XML INDEX       : ADMF001.IXW11SOL11
XML INDEXSPACE  : DBSOL11.IXW12SOL
XML INDEX       : ADMF001.IXW12SOL11
XML INDEXSPACE  : DBSOL11.IXW13SOL
XML INDEX       : ADMF001.IXW13SOL11
XML INDEXSPACE  : DBSOL11.IXW14SOL
XML INDEX       : ADMF001.IXW14SOL11
```

HISTORY TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
BASE TABLE      : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
HISTORY TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTS001L11
HISTORY TABLE    : ADMF001.HTBWSOL11
HISTORY INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIRDOCIDT
HISTORY INDEX     : ADMF001.HI_DOCIDTBWSOL11
```

HISTORY LOB TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
HISTORY TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTS001L11

BASE TABLE : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
COLUMN      : BLOB1
HISTORY LOB TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTLWB1L11
AUX TABLE   : ADMF001.HTBAWLOBB1L11
AUX INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIXDLB1L1
AUX INDEX    : ADMF001.HIXDLB1L1
```

HISTORY XML TABLESPACE SET REPORT:

```
HISTORY TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HTS001L11
```

```
|
|
|      BASE TABLE : ADMF001.TBWSOL11
|      COLUMN      : XML1
|      HISTORY XML TABLESPACE : DBSOL11.HXTBW0000
|      XML TABLE   : ADMF001.HXTBWSOL11
|      XML NODEID INDEXSPACE : DBSOL11.HIRNODEID
|      XML NODEID INDEX  : ADMF001.HI_NODEIDXTBWSOL11
|      XML INDEXSPACE   : DBSOL11.HIXW11SOL
|      XML INDEX        : ADMF001.HIXW11SOL11
|      XML INDEXSPACE   : DBSOL11.HIXW12SOL
|      XML INDEX        : ADMF001.HIXW12SOL11
|      XML INDEXSPACE   : DBSOL11.HIXW13SOL
|      XML INDEX        : ADMF001.HIXW13SOL11
|      XML INDEXSPACE   : DBSOL11.HIXW14SOL
|      XML INDEX        : ADMF001.HIXW14SOL11
|
```

Chapter 28. RESTORE SYSTEM

The RESTORE SYSTEM online utility invokes z/OS DFSMSHsm to recover a DB2 subsystem or a data sharing group to a previous point in time. To perform the recovery, the utility uses data that is copied by the BACKUP SYSTEM utility.

Requirements:

- All data sets that are recovered with RESTORE SYSTEM must be SMS-managed.
- In general, RESTORE SYSTEM requires z/OS DFSMSHsm Version 1 Release 7 or later.
- RESTORE SYSTEM requires z/OS DFSMSHsm Version 1 Release 8 or later for restoring system-level backups that have been dumped to tape.

The RESTORE SYSTEM utility can be run from any member in a data sharing group, even one that is normally quiesced when any backups are taken. Any member in the data sharing group that is active at or beyond the log truncation point must be restarted, and its logs are truncated to the SYSPITR LRSN point.

You can specify the SYSPITR LRSN point in the CRESTART control statement of the DSNJU003 (Change Log Inventory) utility. Any data sharing group member that is normally quiesced at the time the backups are taken and is not active at or beyond the log truncation point does not need to be restarted.

By default, RESTORE SYSTEM recovers the data from the database copy pool during the RESTORE phase and then applies logs to the point in time at which the existing logs were truncated during the LOGAPPLY phase. The RESTORE utility never restores logs from the log copy pool.

Restriction: RESTORE SYSTEM does not restore logs; the utility only applies the logs. If you specified BACKUP SYSTEM FULL to create copies of both the data and the logs, you can restore the logs by another method.

Output:

Output for RESTORE SYSTEM is the recovered copy of the data volume or volumes.

Authorization required

To run this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes SYSADM authority.

When a system-level backup on tape is the input for the RESTORE SYSTEM utility, the user who submits the job must have the following two RACF authorities:

- Operations authority, as in ATTRIBUTES=OPERATIONS
- DASDVOL authority, which you can set in the following way:

```
SETROPTS GENERIC(DASDVOL)
REDEFINE DASDVOL * UACC(ALTER)
SETROPTS CLASSACT(DASDVOL)
SETROPTS GENERIC(DASDVOL) REFRESH
```

You can restrict this authority to specific user IDs.

This RACF authority is required, because the RESTORE SYSTEM utility invokes DFSMSdss when tape is the input. However, when you restore database copy pools from a FlashCopy on disk, the RESTORE SYSTEM utility invokes DFSMSshm, which does not require Operations or DASDVOL authority.

Execution phases of RESTORE SYSTEM

The RESTORE SYSTEM utility operates in the following phases:

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	Performs initialization and setup
-----------------	-----------------------------------

RESTORE	Locates and restores the volume copies if the LOGONLY option is not specified
----------------	---

LOGAPPLY	Applies the outstanding log changes to the database
-----------------	---

UTILTERM	Performs cleanup
-----------------	------------------

Related concepts

 [Point-in-time recovery with system-level backups \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Related reference

Chapter 5, “BACKUP SYSTEM,” on page 43

Syntax and options of the RESTORE SYSTEM control statement

The RESTORE SYSTEM utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

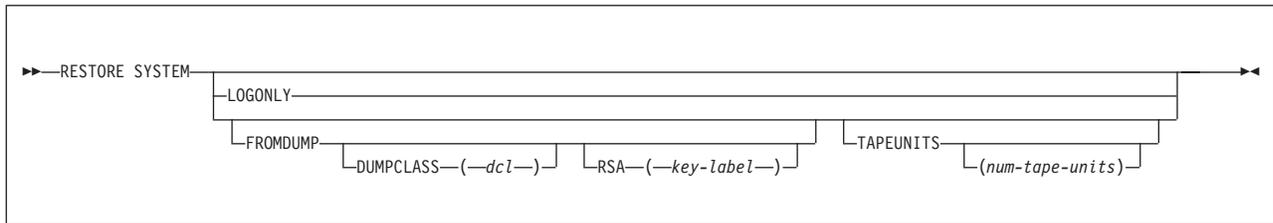
Use the ISPF/PDF edit function to create a control statement and to save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

When you specify RESTORE SYSTEM, you can specify only the following statements in the same step:

- DIAGNOSE
- OPTIONS PREVIEW
- OPTIONS OFF
- OPTIONS KEY
- OPTIONS EVENT WARNING

In addition, RESTORE SYSTEM must be the last statement in SYSIN.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

LOGONLY

Specifies that the database volumes have already been restored, so the RESTORE phase is skipped. Use this option when the database volumes have already been restored outside of DB2. If the subsystem is at a tracker site, you must specify the LOGONLY option.

FROMDUMP

Indicates that you want to dump only the database copy pool to tape during the restore.

DUMPCLASS (*dcl*)

Indicates what DFSMSHsm dump class to use for the restore.

RSA (*key-label*)

Specifies that the key-label in the utility control statement will be passed to DFSMSHsm in order to override the key-label that would normally be used to read dump tapes. The key-label can be up to 64 characters and must start with an alphabetic or national bank character.

The FROMDUMP and DUMPCLASS options that you specify for the RESTORE SYSTEMS utility override the RESTORE/RECOVER FROM DUMP and DUMPCLASS NAME install options that you specify on installation panel DSNTIP6.

TAPEUNITS

Specifies the limit on the number of tape drives that the utility should dynamically allocate during the restore of the database copy pool from dumps on tape.

The default is the option that you specified on the installation panel DSNTIP6. If no default is specified, then the RESTORE SYSTEM utility will try to use all of the tape drives in your system.

(*num-tape-units*)

Specifies the maximum number of tape drives to allocate. If you specify zero, or you do not specify a value, the utility determines the optimal number of tape units to use. RESTORE SYSTEM TAPEUNITS has a max value of 255.

Related tasks

 [Recovering from disasters by using a tracker site \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Before running RESTORE SYSTEM

Certain activities might be required before you run the RESTORE SYSTEM utility, depending on your situation.

Complete the following steps prior to running RESTORE SYSTEM:

1. Stop DB2. If data sharing, stop all DB2 members in the group.
2. Run DSNJU003 (Change Log Inventory) to create a DB2 conditional restart record with the CRESTART SYSPITR option. Specify the log truncation point with the SYSPITR option that corresponds to the point in time to which the system is to be recovered.

For data sharing, specify an LRSN value. For non data sharing, specify an RBA value.

If you restored the log copy pool and the active log data sets are striped or the log copy pool is for a data sharing environment, you must specify the data complete LRSN during the conditional restart in the following scenarios:

- You are cloning a DB2 system by using a system-level backup as the source. In this case, conditionally restart DB2 with an ENDRBA or ENDLRSN that is equal to the data complete LRSN of the system-level backup.
- You are performing a system-level point-in-time recovery. In this case, conditionally restart DB2 with the log truncation point equal to or less than the data complete LRSN of the system-level backup. Use the data complete LRSN as the CRESTART ENDRBA, ENDLRSN, or SYSPITR log truncation point.

You can determine the data complete LRSN from the following places:

- Message DSNU1614I, which is generated when BACKUP SYSTEM completes successfully
 - The report generated by the print log map utility (DSNJU004)
3. Start DB2. When the DB2 restart processing for the conditional restart with the SYSPITR option completes, DB2 enters system RECOVER-pending and access maintenance mode. During system RECOVER-pending mode, you can run only the RESTORE SYSTEM utility.
 4. Ensure that the ICF catalogs for the DB2 data are not active and are not allocated. The ICF catalog for the data must be on a separate volume than the ICF catalog for the logs. The command to unallocate the catalog is "F CATALOG,UNALLOCATE(catalog-name).

How to determine which system-level backups DB2 restores

The RESTORE SYSTEM utility uses the most recent system-level backup of the database copy pool that DB2 took prior to the SYSPITR log truncation point.

To determine whether the system level backup will be restored from disk or from tape:

- If FROMDUMP was not specified and the system-level backup resides on disk, DB2 uses it for the restore.

- If you specify YES in the RESTORE/RECOVER FROM DUMP field on installation panel DSNTIP6 or you specify the FROMDUMP option in the RESTORE utility statement, restore uses only the dumps on tape of the database copy pool.
- If you specify a dump class name on the DUMP CLASS NAME field on installation panel DSNTIP6 or you specify the DUMPCLASS option in the RESTORE utility statement, DB2 restores the database copy pool from the DFSMshsm dump class.
- If you do not specify a dump class name in the DUMP CLASS NAME field on installation panel DSNTIP6 or you do not specify the DUMPCLASS option in the RESTORE utility statement, RESTORE SYSTEM issues the DFSMSHsm LIST COPYPOOL command and uses the first dump class listed in the output.

The RESTORE SYSTEM utility invokes DFSMSdss to restore the database copy pool volumes from a system-level backup on tape.

How to determine if RESTORE SYSTEM uses parallelism when restoring from tapes

Parallelism occurs if the dumps of the volumes in the database copy pool reside on different tape volumes. The degree of parallelism is limited by:

- The TAPEUNITS option, which limits the number of tape units that the utility can allocate.
- The number of distinct tape volumes that the dump resides on.

Determining whether the system-level backups reside on disk or tape

Restoring each volume in the database copy pool from a fast replication copy on the disk occurs virtually instantaneously. Restoring the database copy pool from dumps on tape volumes takes much longer.

To determine whether the system-level backups of the database copy pool reside on the disk or tape:

1. Run the DFSMSHsm LIST COPYPOOL command with the ALLVOLS option.
2. Run the DSNJU004 utility output. For data sharing, run the DSNJU004 utility output on each member.
3. Review the output from the DFSMSHsm LIST COPYPOOL command with the ALLVOLS option.
4. Review the DB2 system-level backup information in the DSNJU004 utility output.

If the system-level backup chosen as the recovery base for the database copy pool no longer resides on DASD and the FROMDUMP option has not been specified, then the RESTORE SYSTEM utility will fail. You can then specify the RESTORE SYSTEM FROMDUMP option, or specify it on install panel DSNTIP6, to direct the utility to use the system-level backup that was dumped to tape.

Data sets that RESTORE SYSTEM uses

The RESTORE SYSTEM utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that RESTORE SYSTEM uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set.

Table 104. Data sets that RESTORE SYSTEM uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	An input data set that contains the utility control statement	Yes
SYSPRINT	An output data set for messages	Yes
auth-id.job-name.HSM	A temporary data set that is automatically allocated by the utility and deleted when the utility completes	Yes

Concurrency and compatibility for RESTORE SYSTEM

The RESTORE SYSTEM utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

While RESTORE SYSTEM is running, no other utilities can run.

Restoring data in a data sharing environment

Ensure that all data sharing members that were active at the SYSPITR log truncation point (or restarted after this point) have been restarted with the same SYSPITR LRSN value. You can stop the other members of the data group (with MODE(QUIESCE)) after the SYSPITR restart.

Using DISPLAY UTILITY with RESTORE SYSTEM

You can use the DISPLAY UTILITY command with RESTORE SYSTEM.

To use the DISPLAY UTILITY command for RESTORE SYSTEM on a data sharing group, you must issue the command from the member on which the RESTORE SYSTEM utility is invoked.

Termination and restart of RESTORE SYSTEM

You can terminate and restart the RESTORE SYSTEM utility.

You cannot terminate RESTORE SYSTEM by using the TERM UTILITY command.

You can restart RESTORE SYSTEM at the beginning of a phase or at the current system checkpoint. A current system checkpoint occurs during the LOGAPPLY phase after log records are processed. By default, RESTORE SYSTEM restarts at the current system checkpoint.

When you restart RESTORE SYSTEM for a data sharing group, the member on which the restart is issued must be the same member on which the original RESTORE SYSTEM was issued.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Effects of running RESTORE SYSTEM

If RESTORE SYSTEM determines that a NOT LOGGED table space was updated after the point at which the system level copy was taken, the table space or partition is marked RECOVER-pending.

After running RESTORE SYSTEM

Certain activities might be required after you run the RESTORE SYSTEM utility, depending on your situation.

Complete the following steps after running RESTORE SYSTEM:

1. Stop and start each DB2 subsystem or member to remove it from access maintenance mode.
2. Use the DISPLAY UTIL command to see if any utilities are running. If other utilities are running, use the TERM UTIL command to end them.
3. Use the RECOVER utility to recover all objects in RECOVER-pending (RECP) or REBUILD-pending (RBDP) status, or use the REBUILD INDEX utility to rebuild objects. If a CREATE TABLESPACE, CREATE INDEX, or data set extension has failed, you can also recover or rebuild any objects in the logical page list (LPL).

Sample RESTORE SYSTEM control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own RESTORE SYSTEM control statements.

RESTORE SYSTEM uses data that is copied by the BACKUP SYSTEM utility.

Example 1: Recovering a backup system

The following control statement specifies that the RESTORE SYSTEM utility is to recover a DB2 subsystem or a data sharing group to a previous point in time by restoring volume copies and applying any outstanding log changes.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,TIME=1440,  
//      UTPROC='',  
//      SYSTEM='DSN'  
//SYSIN DD *  
        RESTORE SYSTEM  
/*
```

Example 2: Recovering a backup system after the database volumes have already been restored

The LOGONLY keyword in the following control statement indicates that RESTORE SYSTEM is to apply any outstanding log changes to the database. The utility is not to restore the volume copies. In this example, the database volumes have already been restored outside of DB2. Note that RESTORE SYSTEM applies log changes; it never restores the log copy pool.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
        RESTORE SYSTEM LOGONLY
/*

```

Example 3: Recovering a dump on tape of the database copy pool

The following control statement specifies that the RESTORE SYSTEM utility is to only consider dumps on tape of the database copy pool for restore. During the restore, the utility will dynamically allocate a maximum of 4 tape units.

```

//SYSOPRB JOB (ACCOUNT),'NAME',CLASS=K
//UTIL EXEC DSNUPROC,SYSTEM=V91A,UID='TEMB',UTPROC=''
//*
//*
//DSNUPROC.SYSUT1 DD DSN=SYSOPR.SYSUT1,
//      DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      SPACE=(16384,(20,20),,,ROUND),
//      UNIT=SYSDA
//DSNUPROC.SYSIN DD *
        RESTORE SYSTEM FROMDUMP TAPEUNITS 4
//

```

Related concepts

 [Point-in-time recovery with system-level backups \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Chapter 29. RUNSTATS

The RUNSTATS online utility gathers summary information about the characteristics of data in table spaces, indexes, and partitions. DB2 records these statistics in the DB2 catalog and uses them to select access paths to data during the bind process.

You can use these statistics to evaluate the database design and determine when table spaces or indexes must be reorganized. To obtain the updated statistics, you can query the catalog tables.

The two formats for the RUNSTATS utility are RUNSTATS TABLESPACE and RUNSTATS INDEX. RUNSTATS TABLESPACE gathers statistics on a table space and, optionally, on tables, indexes or columns; RUNSTATS INDEX gathers statistics only on indexes. RUNSTATS does not collect statistics for clone tables or index spaces.

RUNSTATS can collect statistics on any single column or set of columns. RUNSTATS collects the following two types of distribution statistics:

Frequency

The percentage of rows in the table that contain a value for a column or combination of values for a set of columns.

Cardinality

The number of distinct values in the column or set of columns.

When you run RUNSTATS TABLESPACE, you can use the COLGROUP option to collect frequency and cardinality statistics on any column group. You can also collect frequency and cardinality statistics on any single column. When you run RUNSTATS INDEX, you can collect frequency statistics on the leading column of an index and multi-column frequency and cardinality statistics on the leading concatenated columns of an index.

When you run RUNSTATS TABLESPACE, you can use the HISTOGRAM option, with the COLGROUP option, to indicate that histogram statistics are to be gathered for the specified group of columns. RUNSTATS TABLESPACE does not collect histogram statistics for LOB table spaces or XML table spaces. When you run RUNSTATS INDEX, histogram statistics can only be collected on the prefix columns with the same order. Key columns with a mixed order are not allowed for histogram statistics. RUNSTATS INDEX does not collect histogram statistics for XML node ID indexes or XML indexes.

Output

RUNSTATS updates the DB2 catalog with table space or index space statistics, prints a report, or both.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- STATS privilege for the database

- DBADM, DBCTRL, or DBMAINT authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on the implicitly created database or DSNDB04 is required.
- System DBADM authority
- SQLADM authority
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

An ID with installation SYSOPR authority can also execute the RUNSTATS utility, but only on a table space in the DSNDB06 database.

To use RUNSTATS with the REPORT YES option, you must have the SELECT privilege on the reported tables. RUNSTATS does not report values from tables that the user is not authorized to see.

To gather statistics on a LOB table space, you must have SYSADM or DBADM authority for the LOB table space.

Execution phases of RUNSTATS

The RUNSTATS utility operates in the following phases:

Phase Description

UTILINIT

Performs initialization

RUNSTATS

Scans table space or index and updates catalog.

If you specify COLGROUP, RUNSTATS also performs a subtask that sorts one or more column group's data. If you specify FREQVAL with COLGROUP or are collecting frequency statistics for data-partitioned secondary indexes, RUNSTATS also performs a subtask that sorts the partition-level frequency data.

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup

Related tasks

 Automating statistics maintenance (Managing Performance)

Related reference

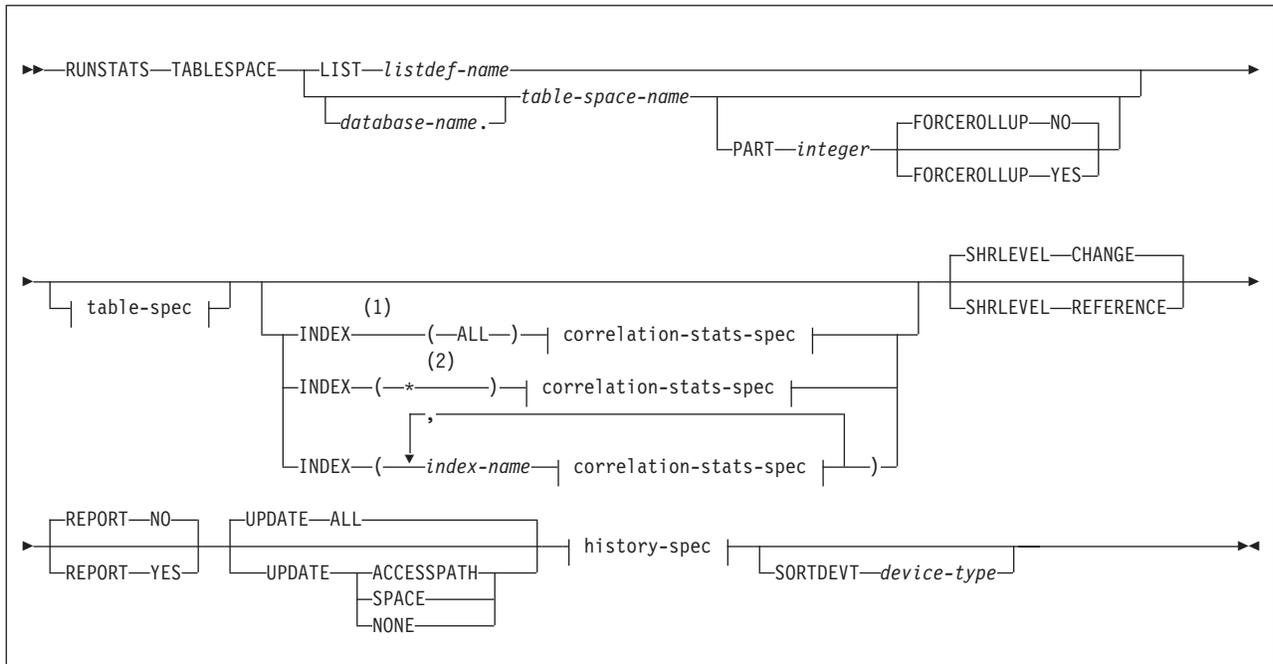
 Case study: Stored procedure that runs RUNSTATS in parallel: Through the CALL and Beyond)

Syntax and options of the RUNSTATS control statement

The RUNSTATS utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

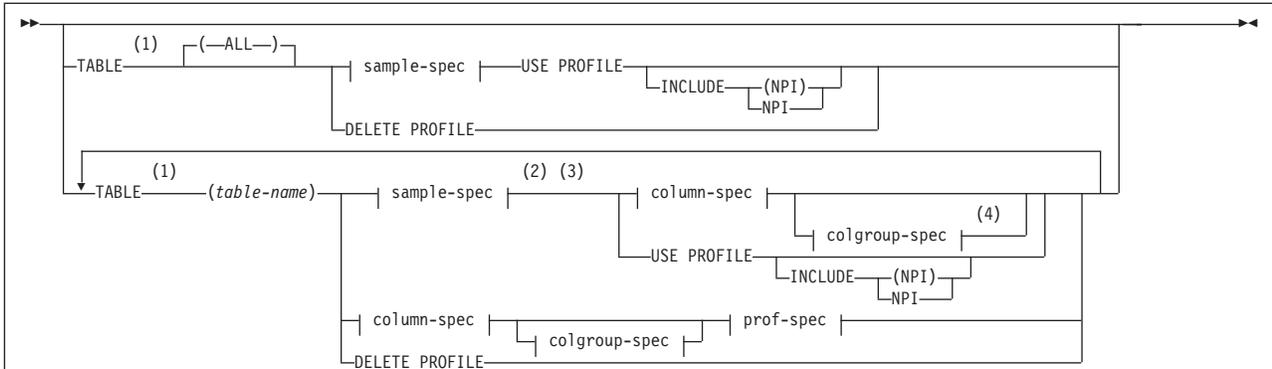
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE syntax diagram



Notes:

- 1 You cannot specify INDEX if either USE PROFILE or DELETE PROFILE option is also specified.
- 2 INDEX(*) is an internal representation of INDEX(ALL) that DB2 uses only in the context of RUNSTATS profiles, and is not valid when specified in any RUNSTATS control statement. When you specify the INDEX(ALL) option in a RUNSTATS control statement that creates a profile, DB2 uses INDEX(*) in the PROFILE_TEXT column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table. However, you must specify INDEX(*) instead of INDEX(ALL) if you modify the profile by updating the value of the PROFILE_TEXT column directly.

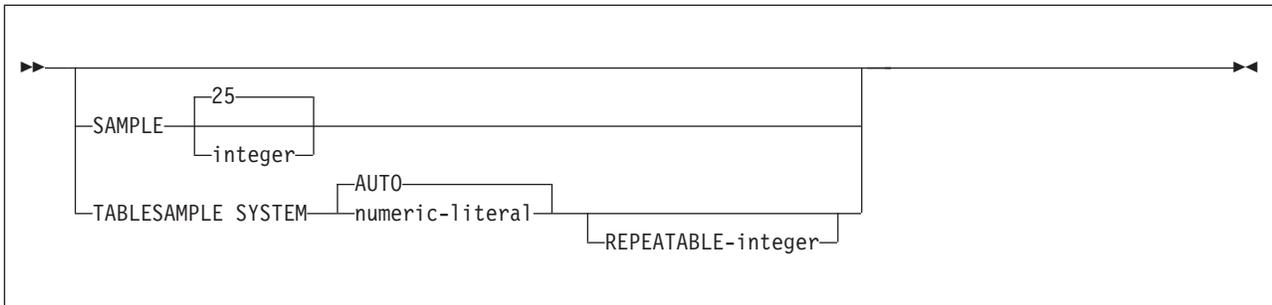
table-spec



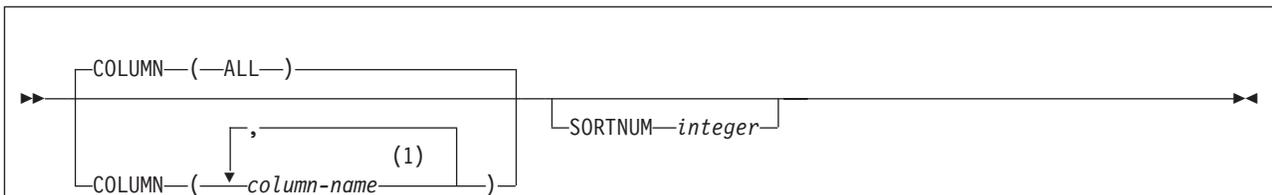
Notes:

- 1 The TABLE keyword is not valid for a LOB table space.
- 2 The TABLESAMPLE keyword is only valid for single-table table spaces. Dropped tables are included in this count until REORG, COPY, and MODIFY RECOVERY are run.
- 3 When using TABLESAMPLE to sample multi-table table spaces or table spaces that are segmented and not partitioned, page sampling is not done and execution continues. The TABLESAMPLE keyword is not valid for a LOB table space.
- 4 If one type of PROFILE function is specified on one TABLE clause the same type of PROFILE function must be specified on all TABLE clauses.

sample-spec



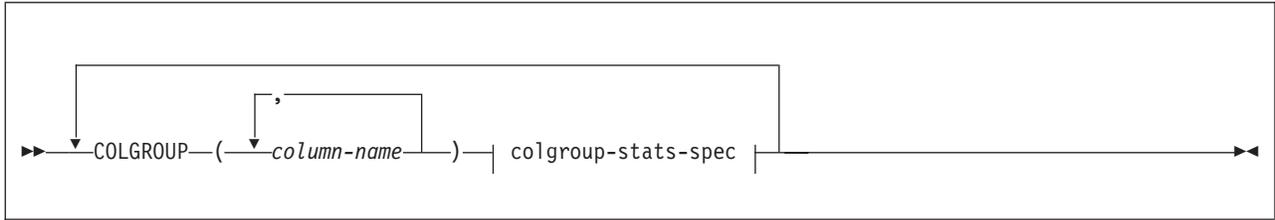
column-spec:



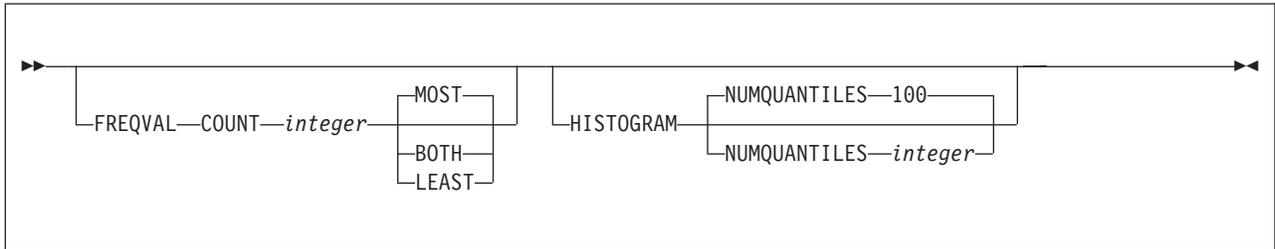
Notes:

- 1 The same column name must not be specified more than once. If all columns are listed in the COLUMN option, RUNSTAT will treat it as is, and will not replace it with the COLUMN(ALL) option. Users have to state explicitly if they want the COLUMN(ALL) option.

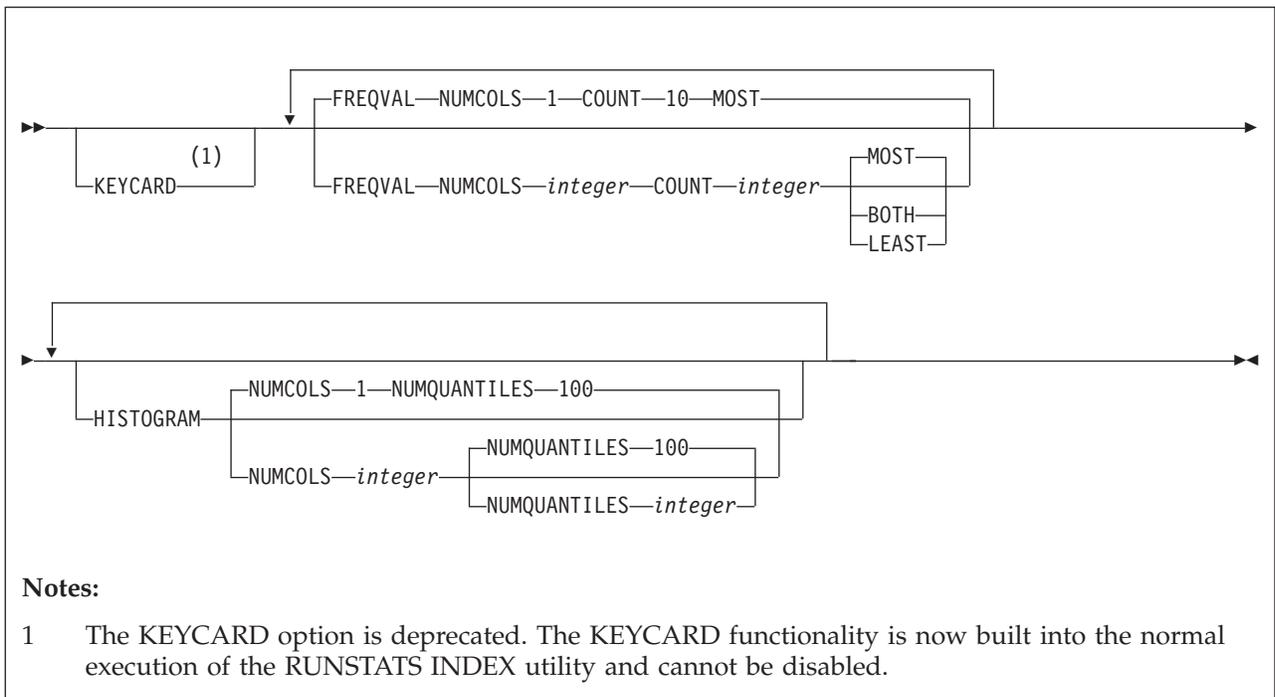
colgroup-spec:



colgroup-stats-spec:



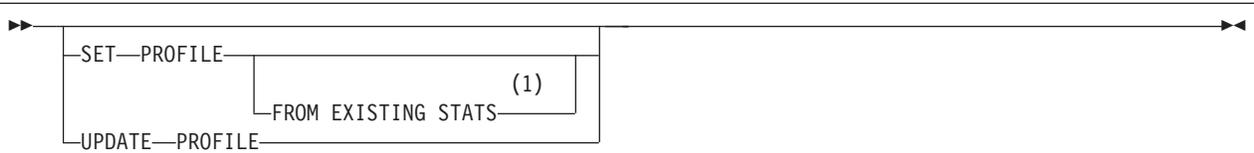
correlation-stats-spec:



Notes:

- 1 The KEYCARD option is deprecated. The KEYCARD functionality is now built into the normal execution of the RUNSTATS INDEX utility and cannot be disabled.

prof-spec



Notes:

- 1 The FROM EXISTING STATS clause is not valid if a column-spec, colgroup-spec, or INDEX keyword has been specified

history-spec



Notes:

- 1 You can change the default HISTORY value by modifying the STATISTICS HISTORY subsystem parameter. By default, this value is NONE.

RUNSTATS TABLESPACE option descriptions

TABLESPACE *database-name.table-space-name*

Specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) on which table space and table statistics are to be gathered. This keyword must not identify a table space in DSNDB01 or DSNDB07.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. You can specify one LIST keyword for each RUNSTATS control statement. When you specify this keyword with RUNSTATS TABLESPACE, the list must contain only table spaces. Do not specify LIST with keywords from the TABLE...(*table-name*) specification. Instead, specify LIST with TABLE (ALL). Likewise, do not specify LIST with keywords from the INDEX...(*index-name*) specification. You cannot specify index names with a list. Use INDEX(ALL) instead.

If you specify LIST, you cannot specify the PART option. Instead, use the PARTLEVEL option on the LISTDEF statement. The TABLESPACE keyword is required in order to validate the contents of the list. RUNSTATS TABLESPACE is invoked once for each item in the list.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

database-name

Identifies the name of the database to which the table space belongs.

The default value is DSNDB04.

table-space-name

Identifies the name of the table space on which statistics are to be gathered.

If the table space that is specified by the TABLESPACE keyword is a LOB table space, you can specify only the following additional keywords: SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE, REPORT YES or NO, and UPDATE ALL or NONE.

PART *integer*

Identifies a table space partition on which statistics are to be collected.

integer is the number of the partition and must be in the range from 1 to the number of partitions that are defined for the table space. The maximum is 4096.

You cannot specify PART with LIST.

TABLE

Specifies the table on which column statistics are to be gathered. All tables must belong to the table space that is specified in the TABLESPACE option. You cannot specify the TABLE option for a LOB table space.

(ALL)

Specifies that column statistics are to be gathered on all columns of all tables in the table space. The parentheses around ALL are optional.

(table-name)

Specifies the tables on which column statistics are to be gathered. If you omit the qualifier, RUNSTATS uses the user identifier for the utility job as the qualifier. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

If you specify more than one table, you must repeat the TABLE option. Multiple TABLE options must be specified entirely before or after any INDEX keyword that may also be specified. For example, the INDEX keyword may not be specified between any two TABLE keywords.

SAMPLE *integer*

Indicates the percentage of rows that RUNSTATS is to sample when collecting statistics on non-indexed columns. You can specify any value from 1 through 100.

The default value is 25.

You cannot specify SAMPLE for LOB table spaces.

USE PROFILE

Specifies a stored statistics profile that is used gather statistics for a table. The statistics profile is created using the SET PROFILE option and is updated using the UPDATE PROFILE option.

The column, column group, and index specifications are not allowed as part of the control statement, but are used when stored in the statistics profile.

INCLUDE NPI or INCLUDE (NPI)

Specifies that statistics are to be collected on the non-partitioned indexes that listed in the profile for the table. The INCLUDE NPI clause is not valid if the PART keyword is not specified at the RUNSTATS TABLESPACE level. You must specify the INCLUDE and NPI keywords together. The parentheses around NPI are optional.

DELETE PROFILE

Specifies an existing RUNSTATS profile to delete from the in the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table.

Column, column group, and index specifications are not allowed as part of the control statement when the DELETE PROFILE option is used. No statistics are collected when you specify this option in the RUNSTATS control statement.

TABLESAMPLE SYSTEM

This option allows RUNSTATS to collect statistics on a sample of the data pages from the table. System sampling considers each page individually, including that page with probability $P/100$ (where P is the value of numeric-literal) and excluding it with probability $1-P/100$. Unless the optional REPEATABLE clause is specified, each execution of RUNSTATS will usually yield a different such sample of the table. The size of the sample is controlled by the integer parameter in parentheses, representing an approximate percentage P of the table to be returned. Only a percentage of the data pages as specified through the numeric-literal parameter will be retrieved and used for the statistics collection. Only valid on single-table table spaces.

The TABLESAMPLE keyword is not valid for a LOB table space.

When TABLESAMPLE is specified, and the target table space is a multi-table table space or a table space that is segmented but not partitioned, DB2 runs RUNSTATS with SAMPLE 25, instead of the TABLESAMPLE option.

numeric-literal

Specifies the size of the sample to be obtained, as a percentage P . This value must be a positive number that is less than or equal to 100 and greater than 0. For example, a value of 0.01 represents one onehundredth of a percent, such that 1 row in 10,000 would be sampled, on average. A value greater than 100, zero, or less than zero will be treated by DB2 as an error. The smallest allowable positive number for this option is 0.01 percent.

Depending on table space size and sampling rate used, it is possible that a partition is not included in the sample. In this case, RUNSTATS does not collect statistics for this partition, and may report warnings or errors for aggregate statistics.

AUTO

When "AUTO" is specified RUNSTATS will determine a sampling rate based on the size of the table when RUNSTATS is executed. The larger the table the smaller the sampling rate. The threshold for sampling is when the table has more than 500,000 rows, otherwise all pages will be read. The same threshold is applicable for TABLESPACE sampling with PART option specified. The number of rows is obtained from the real time statistics report.

REPEATABLE integer

Adding the REPEATABLE clause to the TABLESAMPLE clause ensures that repeated executions of RUNSTATS return the same sample. The integer parameter is a non-negative integer representing the seed to be used in sampling. Passing a negative seed will result in an error (DSNU048I). The sample set might still vary between repeatable RUNSTATS invocations if activity against the table or statistical view resulted in changes to the table or statistical view data since the last time TABLESAMPLE REPEATABLE was run.

SET PROFILE

Specifies that RUNSTATS generates a RUNSTATS profile for the specified table from the options that are specified in the current RUNSTATS invocation, and stores the profile in the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table. For more information about the options that you can specify in a profile, and the syntax for specifying the options, see: “The RUNSTATS profile syntax” on page 669.

FROM EXISTING STATS

Allows RUNSTATS to generate a RUNSTATS profile with options that are based on analysis of the statistics that currently exist for the specified table. This option can be specified only with the SET PROFILE option.

UPDATE PROFILE

Allows RUNSTATS to update an existing statistics profile in the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table with the options specified in the current RUNSTATS invocation. No statistics are collected when you specify this option in the RUNSTATS control statement. If the column or colgroup specification already exists in the profile, the new specification will replace the existing one.

COLUMN

Specifies columns on which column statistics are to be gathered.

You can specify this option only if you specify a particular table on which statistics are to be gathered. (Use the TABLE (*table-name*) option to specify a particular table.) If you specify particular tables and do not specify the COLUMN option, RUNSTATS uses the default, COLUMN(ALL). If you do not specify a particular table when using the TABLE option, you cannot specify the COLUMN option; however, in this case, COLUMN(ALL) is assumed.

(ALL)

Specifies that statistics are to be gathered on all columns in the table.

The COLUMN (ALL) option is not allowed for LOB table spaces.

(*column-name, ...*)

Specifies the columns on which statistics are to be gathered. You can specify a list of column names. If you specify more than one column, separate each name with a comma.

The more columns that you specify, the longer the job takes to complete.

COLGROUP (*column-name, ...*)

Indicates that the specified set of columns are to be treated as a group. This option enables RUNSTATS to collect a cardinality value on the specified column group. RUNSTATS TABLESPACE will ignore COLGROUP when processing XML table spaces and indexes.

When you specify the COLGROUP keyword, RUNSTATS collects correlation statistics for the specified column group. If you want RUNSTATS to also collect distribution statistics, specify the FREQVAL option with COLGROUP.

(*column-name, ...*) specifies the names of the columns that are part of the column group.

To specify more than one column group, repeat the COLGROUP option.

Restriction: The length of the COLGROUP value can not exceed the maximum length of the COLVALUE column in the SYSIBM.SYSCOLDIST catalog table.

FREQVAL

Indicates, when specified with the COLGROUP option, that frequency statistics

are also to be gathered for the specified group of columns. (COLGROUP indicates that cardinality statistics are to be gathered.) One group of statistics is gathered for each column. You must specify COUNT *integer* with COLGROUP FREQVAL. RUNSTATS TABLESPACE will ignore FREQVAL MOST/LEAST/BOTH when processing XML table spaces and indexes.

COUNT *integer*

Indicates the number of frequently occurring values to be collected from the specified column group. For example, COUNT 20 means that DB2 collects 20 frequently occurring values from the column group. You must specify a value for *integer*; no default value is assumed.

Be careful when specifying a high value for COUNT. Specifying a value of 1000 or more can increase the prepare time for some SQL statements.

MOST

Indicates that the utility is to collect the most frequently occurring values for the specified set of columns when COLGROUP is specified.

BOTH

Indicates that the utility is to collect the most and the least frequently occurring values for the specified set of columns when COLGROUP is specified.

LEAST

Indicates that the utility is to collect the least frequently occurring values for the specified set of columns when COLGROUP is specified.

HISTOGRAM

Indicates, when specified with the COLGROUP (see colgroup-stats-spec) option of RUNSTATS TABLESPACE, that histogram statistics are to be gathered for the specified group of columns. RUNSTATS TABLESPACE will ignore HISTOGRAM when processing XML table spaces and indexes.

NUMQUANTILES *integer*

Indicates how many quantiles that the utility is to collect. The *integer* value must be equal to or greater than one. The number of quantiles that you specify should never exceed the total number of distinct values in the column or the column group. The maximum number of quantiles allowed is 100.

When the NUMQUANTILES keyword is omitted, NUMQUANTILES takes a default value of 100. Based on the number of records in the table, the number of quantiles is readjusted down to an optimal number.

INDEX

Specifies indexes on which statistics are to be gathered. RUNSTATS gathers column statistics for the first column of the index, and possibly additional index columns depending on the options that you specify. All the indexes must be associated with the same table space, which must be the table space that is specified in the TABLESPACE option.

INDEX can be used on auxiliary tables to gather statistics on an index.

(ALL)

Specifies that column statistics are to be gathered for all indexes that are defined on tables that are contained in the table space.

(*) Specifies that statistics are to be gathered for all indexes defined on the specified table.

|
|

(index-name, ...)

Specifies the indexes for which statistics are to be gathered. You can specify a list of index names. If you specify more than one index, separate each name with a comma. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

PART *integer*

Identifies an index partition on which statistics are to be collected.

integer is the number of the partition.

KEYCARD

The KEYCARD option is deprecated in the RUNSTATS TABLESPACE control statement and no longer needs to be specified to collect statistics on the values in the key columns of an index if INDEX is specified.

The RUNSTATS utility automatically collects all of the distinct values in all of the 1 to *n* intermediate key column combinations for the specified indexes, where *n* is the number of columns in the index. For example, suppose that you have an index defined on three columns: A, B, and C. RUNSTATS collects cardinality statistics for column A, column set A and B, and column set A, B, and C. With the deprecation of KEYCARD, this functionality cannot be disabled.

The RUNSTATS utility tolerates the specification of the KEYCARD option. The utility does not issue any messages if the control statement includes or excludes the KEYCARD option when INDEX is specified.

FREQVAL

Controls, when specified with the INDEX option, the collection of frequent-value statistics. If you specify FREQVAL with INDEX, this keyword must be followed by the NUMCOLS and COUNT keywords.

NUMCOLS *integer*

Indicates the number of columns in the index for which RUNSTATS is to collect frequently occurring values. *integer* can be a number between 1 and the number of indexed columns. If you specify a number greater than the number of indexed columns, RUNSTATS uses the number of columns in the index.

For example, suppose that you have an index defined on three columns: A, B, and C. If you specify NUMCOLS 1, DB2 collects frequently occurring values for column A. If you specify NUMCOLS 2, DB2 collects frequently occurring values for the column set A and B. If you specify NUMCOLS 3, DB2 collects frequently occurring values for the column set A, B, and C.

The default value is 1, which means that RUNSTATS is to collect frequently occurring values on the first key column of the index.

COUNT *integer*

Indicates the number of frequently occurring values that are to be collected from the specified key columns. For example, specifying 15 means that RUNSTATS is to collect 15 frequently occurring values from the specified key columns.

The default value is 10.

HISTOGRAM

Indicates, when specified with the INDEX option (correlation-stats-spec) for RUNSTATS TABLE SPACE, that histogram statistics are to be gathered for the

specified key columns. Histogram statistics can only be collected on the prefix columns with the same order. Key columns for histogram statistics with a mixed order are not allowed.

When RUNSTATS collects histogram statistics for partition table spaces, it will aggregate them into SYSCOLDIST.

NUMQUANTILES *integer*

Indicates how many quantiles that the utility is to collect. The *integer* value must be equal to or greater than one. The number of quantiles that you specify should never exceed the total number of distinct values in the key columns specified. The maximum number of quantiles allowed is 100.

When the NUMQUANTILES keyword is omitted, NUMQUANTILES takes a default value of 100. Based on the number of keys in the index, the number of quantiles is readjusted down to an optimal number.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates whether other programs that access the table space while RUNSTATS is running must use read-only access or can change the table space.

CHANGE

Allows other programs to change the table space or index. With SHRLEVEL CHANGE, RUNSTATS might collect statistics on uncommitted data.

REFERENCE

Allows only read-only access by other programs.

REPORT

Specifies whether RUNSTATS is to generate a set of messages that report the collected statistics.

NO

Indicates that RUNSTATS is not to generate the set of messages.

YES

Indicates that the set of messages is to be sent as output to SYSPRINT. The messages that RUNSTATS generates are dependent on the combination of keywords in the utility control statement. However, these messages are **not** dependent on the value of the UPDATE option. REPORT YES always generates a report of space and access path statistics.

UPDATE

Indicates which collected statistics are to be inserted into the catalog tables.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that DB2 is to update the catalog with only those statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that DB2 is to update the catalog with only space-related statistics.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog tables are to be updated with the collected statistics.

Executing RUNSTATS always invalidates the dynamic cache; however, when you specify UPDATE NONE REPORT NO, RUNSTATS invalidates

statements in the dynamic statement cache without collecting statistics, updating catalogs tables, or generating reports.

HISTORY

Indicates which statistics are to be recorded in the catalog history tables. The value that you specify for HISTORY does not depend on the value that you specify for UPDATE.

The default is the value of the STATISTICS HISTORY subsystem parameter on the DSN TIPO installation panel. By default, this parameter value is NONE.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog history tables.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that DB2 is to update the catalog history tables with only those statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that DB2 is to update the catalog history tables with only space-related statistics.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog history tables are to be updated with the collected statistics.

SORTDEVT

Specifies the device type that the sort program uses to dynamically allocate the sort work data sets that are required.

device-type

Specifies any device type that is acceptable for the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTIONS option of the external sort program.

If you omit SORTDEVT, a sort is required, and you have not provided the DD statements that the sort program requires for the temporary data sets, SORTDEVT will default to SYSALLDA and the temporary data sets will be dynamically allocated.

If you specify SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program; the sort program uses its own default.

SORTNUM

Specifies the number of required sort work data sets that the sort program is to allocate.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort. The SORTNUM value applies to each sort invocation in the utility. For example, if there are three indexes, SORTKEYS is specified, there are no constraints limiting parallelism, and SORTNUM is specified as 8, then a total of 24 sort work data sets will be allocated for a job.

Each sort work data set consumes both above the line and below the line virtual storage, so if you specify too high a value for SORTNUM, the utility may decrease the degree of parallelism due to virtual storage constraints, and possibly decreasing the degree down to one, meaning no parallelism.

Important: The SORTNUM keyword will not be considered if ZPARM UTSORTAL is set to YES and IGNSORTN is set to YES.

FORCEROLLUP

Specifies whether aggregation or rollup of statistics is to occur even if statistics have not been gathered on some partitions. This option enables the optimizer to select the best access path.

YES

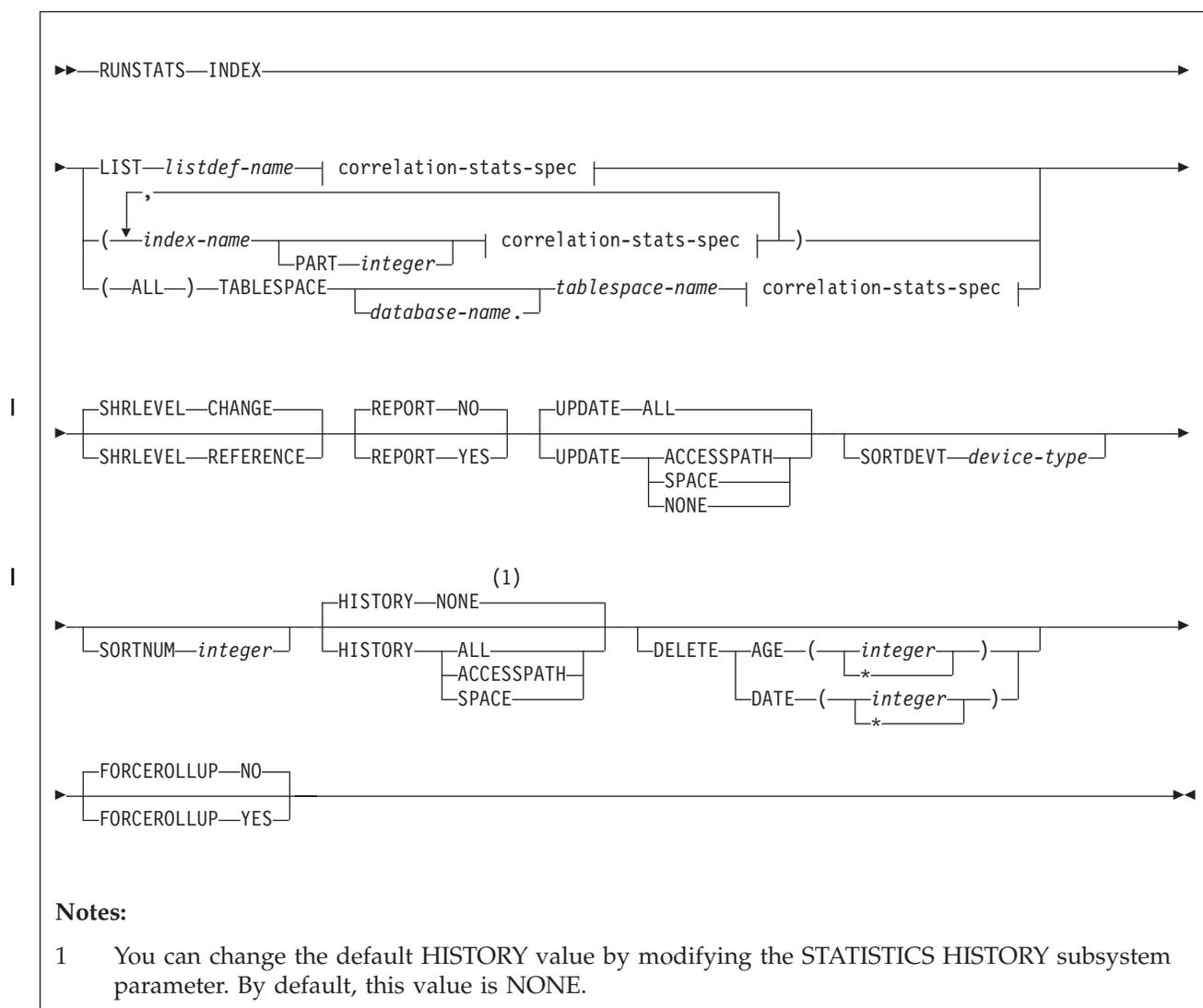
Indicates that forced aggregation or rollup processing is to be done, even though some partitions might not contain data.

NO

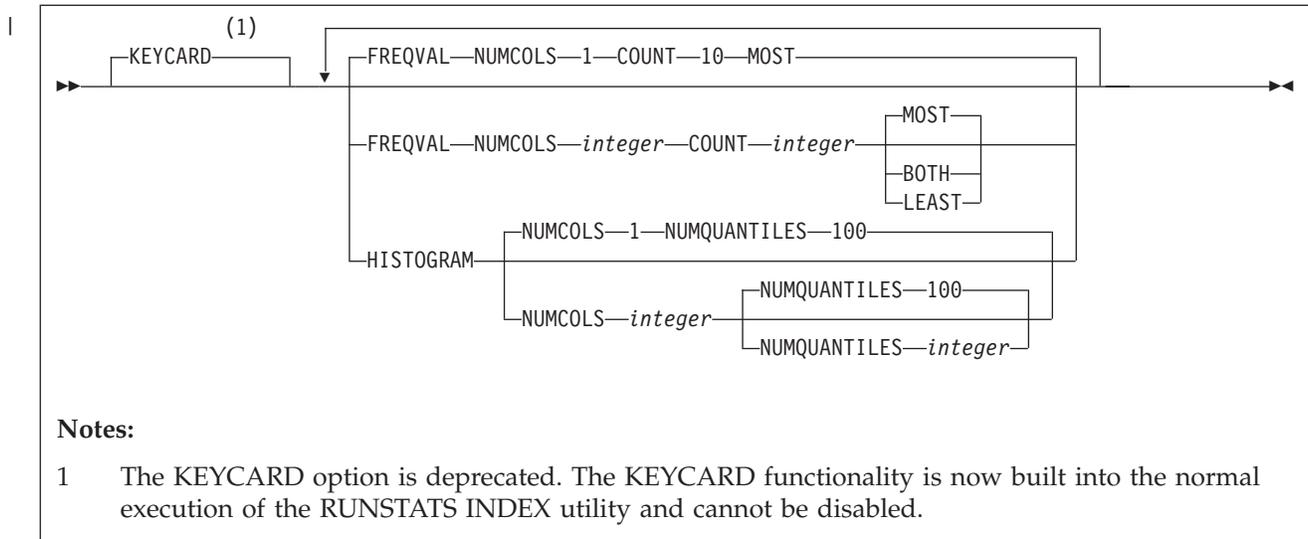
Indicates that aggregation or rollup is to be done only if data is available for all partitions.

If the value for STATISTICS ROLLUP on panel DSNTIPO is NO and data is not available for all partitions, DB2 issues message DSNU623I.

RUNSTATS INDEX syntax diagram



correlation-stats-spec:



RUNSTATS INDEX option descriptions

INDEX

Specifies the indexes on which statistics are to be gathered. Column statistics are gathered on the first column of the index. All of the indexes must be associated with the **same** table space.

LIST *listdef-name*

Specifies the name of a previously defined LISTDEF list name. You can specify one LIST keyword for each RUNSTATS control statement. When you specify LIST with RUNSTATS INDEX, the list must contain only index spaces. Do not specify LIST with keywords from the INDEX...(*index-name*) specification; except for the correlation-stats-spec.

RUNSTATS groups indexes by their related table space. RUNSTATS INDEX is invoked once per table space. The INDEX keyword is required in order to validate the contents of the LIST.

(*index-name, ...*)

Specifies the indexes on which statistics are to be gathered. You can specify a list of index names. If you specify more than one index, separate each name with a comma. Enclose the index name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

PART *integer*

Identifies the index partition on which statistics are to be collected.

integer is the number of the partition.

(ALL)

Specifies that statistics are to be gathered on all indexes that are defined on all tables in the specified table space.

TABLESPACE

Identifies the table space and, optionally, the database to which it belongs, for which index statistics are to be gathered.

database-name

The name of the database to which the table space belongs.

The default value is **DSNDB04**.

tablespace-name

The name of the table space for which index statistics are to be gathered.

KEYCARD

The KEYCARD option is deprecated in the RUNSTATS INDEX control statement and no longer needs to be specified to collect statistics on the values in the key columns of an index.

Except when processing XML NODEID or VALUES indexes, the RUNSTATS utility automatically collects all of the distinct values in all of the 1 to *n* key column combinations for the specified indexes, where *n* is the number of columns in the index. For example, suppose that you have an index defined on three columns: A, B, and C. RUNSTATS collects cardinality statistics for column A, column set A and B, and column set A, B, and C. With the deprecation of KEYCARD, this functionality cannot be disabled.

The RUNSTATS utility tolerates the specification of the KEYCARD option. The utility does not issue any messages if the control statement includes or excludes the KEYCARD option when INDEX is specified.

FREQVAL

Controls, when specified with the INDEX option, the collection of frequent-value statistics. If you specify FREQVAL with INDEX, this keyword must be followed by the NUMCOLS and COUNT keywords. RUNSTATS INDEX will ignore FREQVAL MOST/LEAST/BOTH when processing XML NODEID or VALUES indexes.

NUMCOLS *integer*

Indicates the number of columns in the index for which RUNSTATS is to collect frequently occurring values. *integer* can be a number between 1 and the number of indexed columns. If you specify a number greater than the number of indexed columns, RUNSTATS uses the number of columns in the index.

For example, suppose that you have an index defined on three columns: A, B, and C. If you specify NUMCOLS 1, DB2 collects frequently occurring values for column A. If you specify NUMCOLS 2, DB2 collects frequently occurring values for the column set A and B. If you specify NUMCOLS 3, DB2 collects frequently occurring values for the column set A, B, and C.

The default value is 1, which means that RUNSTATS is to collect frequently occurring values on the first key column of the index.

COUNT *integer*

Indicates the number of frequently occurring values that are to be collected from the specified key columns. For example, specifying 15 means that RUNSTATS is to collect 15 frequently occurring values from the specified key columns.

The **default** is 10.

MOST

Indicates that the utility is to collect the most frequently occurring values for the specified set of key columns when FREQVAL NUMCOLS COUNT MOST keywords are specified.

LEAST

Indicates that the utility is to collect the least frequently occurring values for the specified set of key columns when FREQVAL NUMCOLS COUNT LEAST keywords are specified.

BOTH

Indicates that the utility is to collect the most and the least frequently occurring values for the specified set of key columns when `FREQVAL` `NUMCOLS` `COUNT` `BOTH` keywords are specified.

HISTOGRAM

Indicates, when specified with the `INDEX` option (see `correlation-stats-spec`) for `RUNSTATS INDEX`, that histogram statistics are to be gathered for the specified key columns. Histogram statistics can only be collected on the prefix columns with the same order. Key columns for histogram statistics with a mixed order are not allowed.

When `RUNSTATS` collects histogram statistics for partitioned indexes, it aggregates them into `SYSOLDIST`. `RUNSTATS INDEX` ignores the `HISTOGRAM` keyword when processing `XML NODEID` or `VALUES` indexes.

NUMQUANTILES *integer*

Indicates how many quantiles that the utility is to collect. The *integer* value must be equal to or greater than one. The number of quantiles that you specify should never exceed the total number of distinct values in the specified key columns. The maximum number of quantiles is 100.

When the `NUMQUANTILES` keyword is omitted, `NUMQUANTILES` takes a default value of 100. Based on the number of keys in the index, the number of quantiles is readjusted down to an optimal number.

SHRLEVEL

Indicates whether other programs that access the table space while `RUNSTATS` is running must use read-only access or can change the table space.

CHANGE

Allows other programs to change the table space or index. With `SHRLEVEL CHANGE`, `RUNSTATS` might collect statistics on uncommitted data.

REFERENCE

Allows only read-only access by other programs.

REPORT

Specifies whether `RUNSTATS` is to generate a set of messages that report the collected statistics.

NO

Indicates that `RUNSTATS` is not to generate the set of messages.

YES

Indicates that the set of messages is to be sent as output to `SYSPRINT`. The messages that `RUNSTATS` generates are dependent on the combination of keywords in the utility control statement. However, these messages are **not** dependent on the value of the `UPDATE` option. `REPORT YES` always generates a report of space and access path statistics.

UPDATE

Indicates which collected statistics are to be inserted into the catalog tables.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that `DB2` is to update the catalog with only those statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that DB2 is to update the catalog with only space-related statistics.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog tables are to be updated with the collected statistics.

Executing RUNSTATS always invalidates the dynamic cache; however, when you specify UPDATE NONE REPORT NO, RUNSTATS invalidates statements in the dynamic statement cache without collecting statistics, updating catalogs tables, or generating reports.

SORTDEVT

Specifies the device type that the external sort program uses to dynamically allocate the sort work data sets that are required.

device-type

Specifies any disk device type that is acceptable for the DYNALLOC parameter of the SORT or OPTIONS option of the external sort program.

If you omit SORTDEVT, a sort is required, and you have not provided the DD statements that the sort program requires for the temporary data sets, SORTDEVT will default to SYSALLDA and the temporary data sets will be dynamically allocated.

If you specify SORTDEVT and omit SORTNUM, no value is passed to the sort program; the sort program uses its own default.

SORTNUM

Specifies the number of required sort work data sets that the sort program is to allocate.

integer is the number of temporary data sets that can range from 2 to 255.

You need at least two sort work data sets for each sort. The SORTNUM value applies to each sort invocation in the utility. For example, if there are three indexes, SORTKEYS is specified, there are no constraints limiting parallelism, and SORTNUM is specified as 8, then a total of 24 sort work data sets will be allocated for a job.

Each sort work data set consumes both above the line and below the line virtual storage, so if you specify too high a value for SORTNUM, the utility may decrease the degree of parallelism due to virtual storage constraints, and possibly decreasing the degree down to one, meaning no parallelism.

HISTORY

Indicates which statistics are to be recorded in the catalog history tables. The value that you specify for HISTORY does not depend on the value that you specify for UPDATE.

The default is the value of the STATISTICS HISTORY subsystem parameter on the DSNTIPO installation panel. By default, this parameter value is NONE.

ALL

Indicates that all collected statistics are to be updated in the catalog history tables.

ACCESSPATH

Indicates that DB2 is to update the catalog history tables with only those statistics that are used for access path selection.

SPACE

Indicates that DB2 is to update the catalog history tables with only space-related statistics.

NONE

Indicates that no catalog history tables are to be updated with the collected statistics.

FORCEROLLUP

Specifies whether aggregation or rollup of statistics is to occur even if statistics have not been gathered on some partitions. This option enables the optimizer to select the best access path.

YES

Indicates that forced aggregation or rollup processing is to be done, even though some partitions might not contain data.

NO

Indicates that aggregation or rollup is to be done only if data is available for all partitions.

If the value for STATISTICS ROLLUP on panel DSNTIPO is NO and data is not available for all partitions, DB2 issues message DSNU623I.

Related tasks

 Automating statistics maintenance (Managing Performance)

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

Chapter 15, "LISTDEF," on page 199

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

The RUNSTATS profile syntax

The options of a RUNSTATS profile are stored within the PROFILE_TEXT column of the SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table. These are existing RUNSTATS options and normally have the same meanings as they do when specified directly in a RUNSTATS utility control statement.

You can specify the following statistics collection options in a RUNSTATS profile:

- COLUMN
- COLGROUP
- FREQVAL
- COUNT
- MOST
- BOTH
- LEAST
- INDEX
- KEYCARD
- NUMCOLS
- COUNT
- MOST
- BOTH

- LEAST
- HISTOGRAM
- NUMQUANTILES

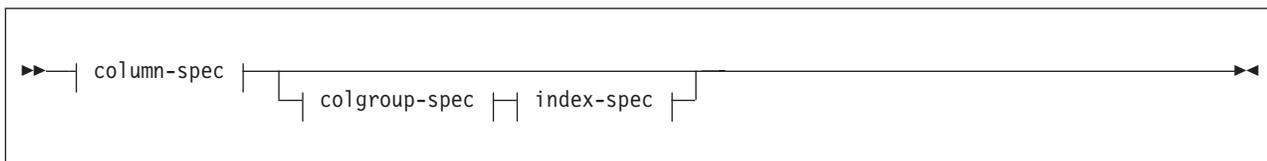
The profile contains the default values for any options that are not specified.

When you update an existing profile that contains a partitioned index, the PART keyword must be specified on all index specifications for that index, or omitted from the index specification for that index. RUNSTATS profile processing enforces this requirement. Any profile modifications done through SQL statements must follow the same restriction, or error messages result when the profile is used.

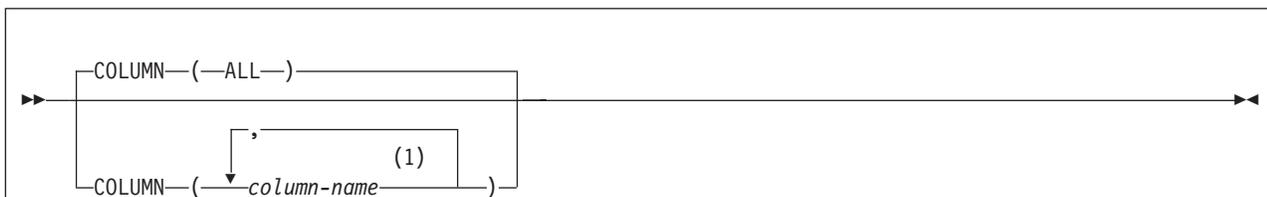
For a given partitioned index:

- Any new index specifications without the PART keyword replace all index specifications in the profile regardless of the PART keyword specification.
- Any new index specification with the PART keyword replaces only the existing index specification with the same PART specified, or a specification without the PART keyword.

The PROFILE functions cannot be executed when there are syntax errors in the statistics profile. Syntax errors can be corrected using RUNSTATS UPDATE PROFILE or SQL UPDATE, or by deleting the profile with RUNSTATS DELETE PROFILE or SQL DELETE.



column-spec:



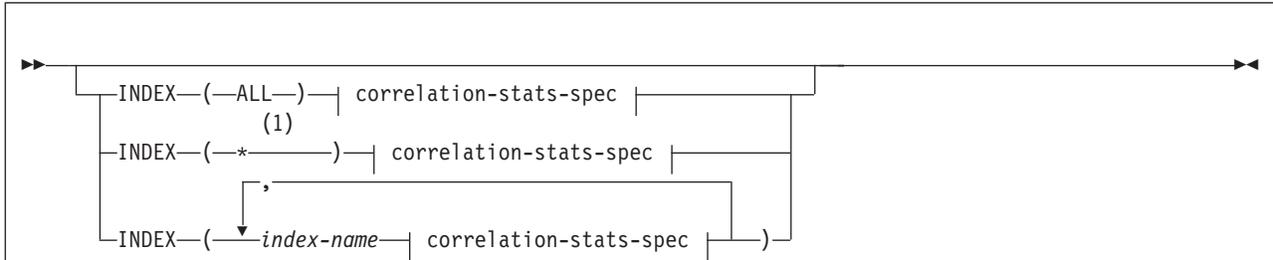
Notes:

- 1 The same column name must not be specified more than once. If all columns are listed in the COLUMN option, RUNSTATS treats it as-is, and does not replace the list with the COLUMN(ALL) option. You must specify the COLUMN(ALL) option explicitly.

colgroup-spec:



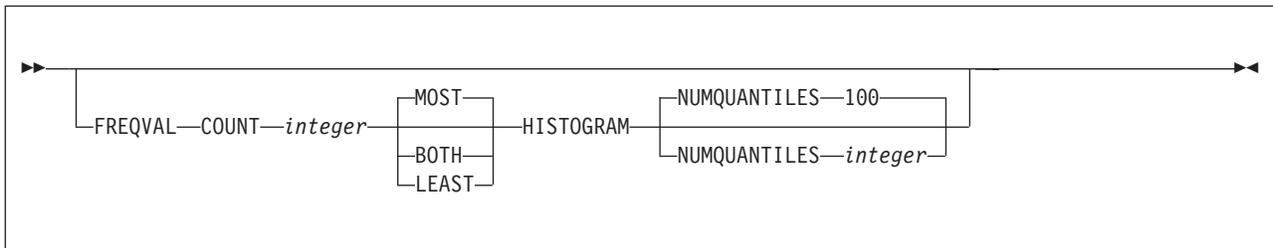
index-spec:



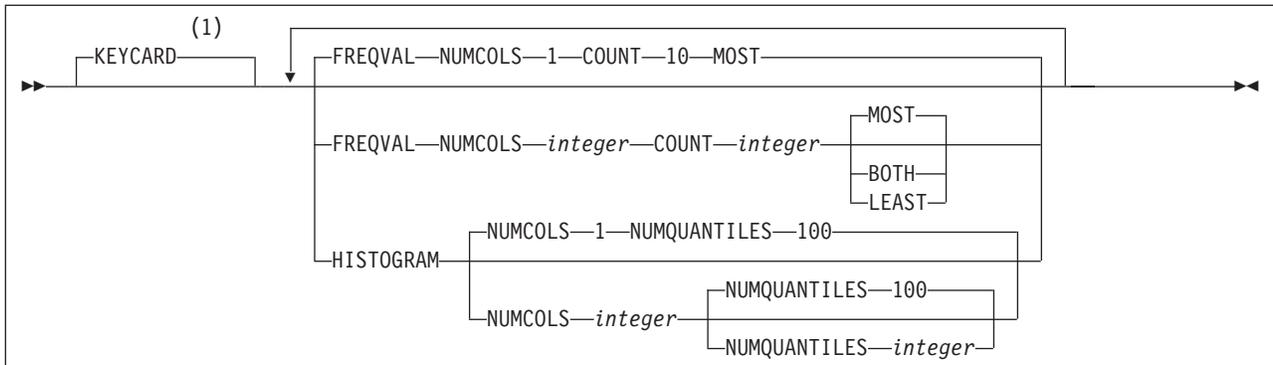
Notes:

- 1 INDEX(*) is an internal representation of INDEX(ALL) that DB2 uses only in the context of RUNSTATS profiles, and is not valid when specified in any RUNSTATS control statement. When you specify the INDEX(ALL) option in a RUNSTATS control statement that creates a profile, DB2 uses INDEX(*) in the PROFILE_TEXT column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table. However, you must specify INDEX(*) instead of INDEX(ALL) if you modify the profile by updating the value of the PROFILE_TEXT column directly.

colgroup-stats-spec:



correlation-stats-spec:



Notes:

- 1 The KEYCARD option is deprecated. The KEYCARD functionality is now built into the normal execution of the RUNSTATS utility and cannot be disabled.

Related tasks

- ➡ Automating statistics maintenance (Managing Performance)
- “Creating RUNSTATS profiles” on page 681
- “Updating RUNSTATS profiles” on page 682

Before running RUNSTATS

Certain activities might be required before you run the RUNSTATS utility, depending on your situation.

You can use SQL to manually update the catalog columns that RUNSTATS updates. Use caution when running RUNSTATS after any user has manually updated the statistic columns in the catalog. RUNSTATS replaces any values that the user changed.

Restriction: RUNSTATS might not provide useful statistics on encrypted data.

Data sets that RUNSTATS uses

The RUNSTATS utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that RUNSTATS uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 105. Data sets that RUNSTATS uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
RNPRIN01	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY). This data set is used when distribution statistics are collected for column groups.	No ¹

Table 105. Data sets that RUNSTATS uses (continued)

Data set	Description	Required?
STPRIN01	A data set that contains messages from the sort program (usually, SYSOUT or DUMMY). This data set is used when frequency statistics are collected on data-partitioned secondary indexes, or when TABLESPACE TABLE COLGROUP FREQVAL is specified.	Yes ^{1,2,5}
Sort work data sets ⁶	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when collecting statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index. This data set is used when the COLGROUP option is specified or the COLGROUP and FREQVAL options are specified. The DD names have the form ST01WK nn .	No ^{3,4}
Sort work data sets ⁶	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when collecting distribution statistics for column groups. The DD names have the form STATWK01.	No ^{1,4}
Sort work data sets ⁶	Temporary data sets for sort input and output when collecting frequency statistics. The DD names have the form SORTWK01 and ST02WK nn .	No ⁴

Note:

1. Required when collecting distribution statistics for column groups.
2. STPRIN01 is required if statistics are being collected on at least one data-partitioned secondary index, but RUNSTATS dynamically allocates the STPRIN01 data set if UTPRINT is allocated to SYSOUT.
3. Required when collecting statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index.
4. If the DYNALLOC parm of the SORT program is not turned on, you need to allocate the data set. Otherwise, the sort program dynamically allocates the temporary data set.
5. Required when the COLGROUP with FREQVAL options are specified.
6. It is recommended that you use dynamic allocation by specifying SORTDEVT in the utility statement because dynamic allocation reduces the maintenance required of the utility job JCL.

The following objects are named in the utility control statement and do not require DD statements in the JCL:

Table space or index

Object that is to be scanned.

Calculating the size of the sort work data sets

Depending on the type of statistics that RUNSTATS collects, the utility uses the ST01WK nn data sets, the SORTWK01 data set, both types of data sets, or neither.

The ST01WK nn data sets are used when collecting statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index. To calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the ST01WK nn data set, use the following formula:

$$2 \times (\text{maximum record length} \times \text{numcols} \times (\text{count} + 2) \times \text{number of indexes})$$

The variables in the preceding formula have the following values:

maximum record length

Maximum record length of the SYSCOLDISTSTATS record that is processed when collecting frequency statistics (You can obtain this value from the RECLENGTH column in SYSTABLES.)

numcols

Number of key columns to concatenate when you collect frequent values from the specified index.

count Number of frequent values that RUNSTATS is to collect.

The SORTWK01 data set is used when collecting distribution statistics. To calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the SORTWK01 data set, use the following formula:

$(\text{longest_record_length} + \text{prefix}) \times \text{sum from 1 to } N (\#colgroups_n \times \#rows - n)$

The variables in the preceding formula have the following values:

N Number of tables for which distribution statistics are collected

#colgroups_n

Number of column groups that are specified for the nth table

#rows Number of rows for the nth table

The ST02WKnn data sets are used when collecting frequency statistics on at least one COLGROUP. To calculate the approximate size (in bytes) of the ST02WKnn data set, use the following formula:

$2 \times (\text{maximum record length} \times (\text{count} + 2) \times \text{number of parts})$

The variables in the preceding formula have the following values:

maximum record length

Maximum record length of the SYSCOLDISTSTATS record that is processed when collecting frequency statistics (You can obtain this value from the RECLENGTH column in SYSTABLES.)

count Number of frequent values that RUNSTATS is to collect.

Sort work data sets cannot span volumes. Smaller volumes require more sort work data sets to sort the same amount of data; therefore, large volume sizes can reduce the number of needed sort work data sets. When you allocate sort work data sets on disk, the recommended amount of space to allow provides at least 1.2 times the amount of data that is to be sorted.

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Concurrency and compatibility for RUNSTATS

The RUNSTATS utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats individual data and index partitions as distinct target objects. Utilities operating on different partitions of the same table space or index space are compatible.

Claims

The following table shows which claim classes RUNSTATS claims and drains and any restrictive state that the utility sets on the target object.

Table 106. Claim classes of RUNSTATS operations

Target	RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE
Table space or partition	DW/UTRO	CR/UTRW ¹	None	None
Index or partition	None	None	DW/UTRO	CR/UTRW

Legend:

- DW - Drain the write claim class - concurrent access for SQL readers.
- CR - Claim the read claim class.
- UTRO - Utility restrictive state - read-only access allowed.
- UTRW - Utility restrictive state - read-write access allowed.
- None - Object is not affected by this utility.

Note:

1. If the target object is a segmented table space, SHRLEVEL CHANGE does not allow you to concurrently execute an SQL searched DELETE without the WHERE clause.

Compatibility

The following table shows which utilities can run concurrently with RUNSTATS on the same target object. The target object can be a table space, an index space, or a partition of a table space or index space. If compatibility depends on particular options of a utility, that information is also shown in the table.

Table 107. Compatibility of RUNSTATS with other utilities

Utility	RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE
CHECK DATA DELETE NO	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
CHECK DATA DELETE YES	No	No	No	No
CHECK INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
CHECK LOB	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPY INDEXSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPY TABLESPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
LOAD	No	No	No	No
LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	Yes	No	Yes
MERGECOPY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
MODIFY RECOVERY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Table 107. Compatibility of RUNSTATS with other utilities (continued)

Utility	RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	RUNSTATS TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE	RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	RUNSTATS INDEX SHRLEVEL CHANGE
QUIESCE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
REBUILD INDEX	Yes	Yes	No	No
RECOVER ERROR RANGE	No	No	Yes	Yes
RECOVER INDEX	Yes	Yes	No	No
RECOVER INDEX TOCOPY or TOLOGPOINT	No	No	No	No
RECOVER TABLESPACE (no options)	No	No	Yes	Yes
RECOVER TABLESPACE TOCOPY or TORBA	No	No	No	No
REORG INDEX	Yes	Yes	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No	No	No	No
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE REPLACE	Yes	Yes	No	No
REPAIR LOCATE KEY or RID DELETE or REPLACE	No	No	No	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE REPLACE	No	No	Yes	Yes
REPORT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
UNLOAD	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

When to use RUNSTATS

DB2 uses the statistics that RUNSTATS generates to determine access paths to data. If no statistics are available, DB2 makes fixed default assumptions.

To ensure the effectiveness of the paths selected, run RUNSTATS at the following times:

- After a table is loaded
- After an index is physically created
- After a table space is reorganized if inline statistics were not collected
- After running extensive updates, deletions, or insertions in a table space
- After running any of the following utilities without collecting inline statistics: RECOVER TABLESPACE, REBUILD INDEX, or REORG INDEX
- Before running REORG with the OFFPOSLIMIT, INDREFLIMIT, or LEAFDISTLIMIT options

- After running the ALTER TABLE ROTATE PARTITION statement run RUNSTATS with REORG .

You should recollect frequency statistics when either of the following situations is true:

- The distribution of the data changes
- The values over which the data is distributed change

Determining when to gather statistics and what statistics to gather depends on a number of factors. The preceding information is only a guideline. You should determine your own statistic collection strategy.

One common situation in which old statistics can affect query performance is when a table has columns that contain data or ranges that are constantly changing (for example, dates and timestamps). These types of columns can result in old values in the HIGH2KEY and LOW2KEY columns in the catalog. You should periodically collect column statistics on these changing columns so that the values in HIGH2KEY and LOW2KEY accurately reflect the true range of data, and range predicates can obtain accurate filter factors.

Assessing table space status

Changes to a table space can also change its space requirements and performance. You can use RUNSTATS to update the table space statistics and then assess the current status of the table space and decide whether to reorganize or redesign the table space.

Collecting distribution statistics for column groups

When RUNSTATS collects distribution statistics for columns groups, the utility invokes a sort program to sort the distribution statistics. This sort requires its own work data set. You can let this data set be dynamically allocated through the sort program, or you can allocate the data set through a DD statement in the job JCL. The DD name is STATWK01.

If you need to control the size or placement of the data sets, use the JCL statements to allocate STATWK01.

To collect distribution statistics for column groups:

- To let the work data set be dynamically allocated, remove the STATWK01 DD statements from the job and allocate the UTPRINT statement to SYSOUT.
- To let the sort program dynamically allocate this data set, specify the SORTDEV option in the RUNSTATS utility control statement.

Related reference

[DB2 Sort](#)

“Data sets that RUNSTATS uses” on page 672

Related information

[DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

Updating statistics for a partitioned table space

You can run RUNSTATS on one or more single partitions of one or more table spaces or indexes (including data-partitioned secondary indexes). When you run the utility on a single partition of an object, RUNSTATS uses the resulting partition-level statistics to update the aggregate statistics for the entire object.

Running RUNSTATS on the DB2 catalog

You can run RUNSTATS on the DB2 catalog to gather index space and table space statistics for various catalog tables. DB2 uses the collected statistics on the catalog to determine the access path for user queries of the catalog.

The following sample shows part of the output from a RUNSTATS job on a catalog table space and its indexes:

```
DSNU000I  DSNUGUTC - OUTPUT START FOR UTILITY, UTILID = DSNTEX
DSNU050I  DSNUGUTC - RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSNDB06.SYSDBASE INDEX(ALL)
DSNU610I # DSNUSUTP - SYSTABLEPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR DSNDB06.SYSDBASE SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUTS - SYSTABLESPACE CATALOG UPDATE FOR DSNDB06.SYSDBASE SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUTB - SYSTABLES CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE SUCCESSFUL

DSNU610I # DSNUSUTB - SYSTABLES CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.SYSSYNONYMS SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSNDSX01 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSNDSX01 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMNS CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSNDSX01 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUFL - SYSFIELDS CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSNDSX01 SUCCESSFUL

DSNU610I # DSNUSUIX - SYSINDEXES CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSN DYX01 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUIP - SYSINDEXPART CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSN DYX01 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUCO - SYSCOLUMN CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSN DYX01 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU610I # DSNUSUFL - SYSFIELDS CATALOG UPDATE FOR SYSIBM.DSN DYX01 SUCCESSFUL
DSNU010I  DSNUGBAC - UTILITY EXECUTION COMPLETE, HIGHEST RETURN CODE=0
```

Figure 99. Example RUNSTATS output from a job on a catalog table space

Improving RUNSTATS performance

Certain activities might improve the performance of the RUNSTATS utility.

You can improve the performance of RUNSTATS on table spaces that are defined with the LARGE option by specifying the SAMPLE option, which reduces the number of rows that are scanned for statistics.

Consider running several RUNSTATS jobs concurrently against different partitions of a partitioned table space or index rather than running a single RUNSTATS job on the entire table space or index. The sum of the processor time for the concurrent jobs is roughly equivalent to the processor time for running the single RUNSTATS job. However, the total elapsed time for the concurrent jobs can be significantly less than when you run RUNSTATS on an entire table space or index.

Run RUNSTATS on only the columns or column groups that might be used as search conditions in a WHERE clause of queries. Use the COLGROUP option to identify the column groups. Collecting additional statistics on groups of columns that are used as predicates improves the accuracy of the filter factor estimate and leads to improved query performance. Collecting statistics on all columns of a table is costly and might not be necessary.

In some cases, you can avoid running RUNSTATS by specifying the STATISTICS keyword in LOAD, REBUILD INDEX, or REORG utility statements. When you specify STATISTICS in one of these utility statements, DB2 updates the catalog with table space or index space statistics for the objects on which the utility is run. However, you cannot collect column group statistics with the STATISTICS keyword. You can collect column group statistics only by running the RUNSTATS utility. If you restart a LOAD or REBUILD INDEX job that uses the STATISTICS keyword, DB2 does not collect inline statistics. For these cases, you need to run the RUNSTATS utility after the restarted utility job completes.

Related concepts

“Restart of REORG TABLESPACE” on page 569

Collecting frequency statistics for data-partitioned secondary indexes

When RUNSTATS collects frequency statistics on at least one data-partitioned secondary index, the utility invokes a sort program to sort the statistics. This sort requires temporary sort work data sets. You can let these data sets be dynamically allocated through the SORT program, or you can allocate the data sets through DD statements in the job JCL. The DD name is ST01WK nn .

If you need to control the size or placement of the data sets, use the JCL statements to allocate ST01WK nn .

To collect frequency statistics for data-partitioned secondary indexes:

- To let the sort work data sets be dynamically allocated, remove the ST01WK nn DD statements from the job and allocate the UTPRINT statement to SYSOUT.
- To let the SORT program dynamically allocate these data sets, specify the SORTDEV option in the RUNSTATS utility control statement to specify the device type for the temporary data sets. Optionally, you can also use the SORTNUM option to specify the number of temporary data sets to use.

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

“Data sets that RUNSTATS uses” on page 672

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

Invalidating statements in the dynamic statement cache

DB2 invalidates statements in the dynamic statement cache when you run the RUNSTATS utility on objects to which those statements refer.

In a data sharing environment, the relevant statements are also invalidated in the cache of other members in the group. DB2 invalidates the cached statements to ensure that the next invocations of those statements are fully prepared and that they use the latest access path changes.

To invalidate statements in the dynamic statement cache without collecting statistics:

Specify the options UPDATE NONE and REPORT NO in the RUNSTATS utility control statement.

Collecting statistics history

You can collect statistics history by using the RUNSTATS utility.

To collect statistics history:

Specify the HISTORY option in the RUNSTATS utility control statement. When you specify HISTORY with a value other than NONE, RUNSTATS updates the catalog history tables with the access path statistics, space statistics, or both, depending on the parameter that you specify with HISTORY. The HISTORY option does not update the main catalog statistics that DB2 uses to select access paths. You can use the HISTORY option to monitor how statistics change over time without updating the main catalog statistics that DB2 uses to select access paths.

Collection of statistics on LOB table spaces

You can specify that RUNSTATS is to collect space statistics on a LOB table space so that you can determine when the LOB table space should be reorganized. No statistics on the LOB table space affect access path selection.

Collection of statistics on XML objects

You can use separate RUNSTATS control statements to collect statistics on XML table spaces, or on their associated base table spaces.

You can specify that RUNSTATS is to collect space statistics on an XML table space. You can use those statistics to determine when the XML table space should be reorganized. Statistics that are collected on the XML table space also affect access path selection.

RUNSTATS ignores the following keywords for XML table spaces:

- COLGROUP
- FREQVAL MOST|LEAST|BOTH
- HISTOGRAM

XML indexes are related to XML tables, and not to the associated base tables. If you specify a base table space and an XML index in the same RUNSTATS control statement, DB2 generates an error. When you run RUNSTATS against a base table, RUNSTATS collects statistics only for indexes on the base table, including the document ID index.

RUNSTATS profiles

A *RUNSTATS profile* is a saved set of options for the RUNSTATS utility that apply for a particular table. DB2 uses RUNSTATS profiles for autonomic statistics maintenance. You can also use RUNSTATS profiles to quickly invoke the RUNSTATS utility with a predefined set of options.

You can specify a complete set of RUNSTATS options in a profile, or specify only a few options, or even only a single option. The options that you specify are stored

in the PROFILE_TEXT column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table. If you do not specify values for the following options when you create the profile, DB2 uses default values, as in any RUNSTATS invocation:

- COLUMN
- COLGROUP
- FREQVAL
- COUNT
- MOST
- BOTH
- LEAST
- INDEX
- KEYCARD
- NUMCOLS
- COUNT
- HISTOGRAM
- NUMQUANTILES

RUNSTATS profiles are saved as a single row in the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table. After you create a profile for a table, you can specify that DB2 uses the same options that were specified in the table when you invoke RUNSTATS again later. When you automate statistics maintenance, DB2 creates or updates the single profile for each table that is not excluded from autonomic maintenance. Because only a single RUNSTATS profile can exist for each table, DB2 uses any options that you have specified in existing profiles for a particular table when the ADMIN_UTL_MONITOR stored procedure first executes for autonomic statistics monitoring.

Regardless of whether profiles exist, or whether autonomic statistics maintenance is enabled, you can always invoke the RUNSTATS utility and specify customized options in the traditional manner, without using the profile.

Related tasks

 Automating statistics maintenance (Managing Performance)

Creating RUNSTATS profiles

You can create and use RUNSTATS profiles to invoke RUNSTATS for particular tables with a consistent set of options, without the need to explicitly specify the options each time. DB2 also uses the RUNSTATS profiles when you implement autonomic statistics maintenance.

DB2 uses RUNSTATS profiles when you enable autonomic statistics maintenance. When you first enable autonomic statistics maintenance, the ADMIN_UTL_MONITOR stored procedure sets a profile for each monitored table based on the existing statistics. However, if a profile already exists for a table, DB2 uses that existing profile.

To set a RUNSTATS profile:

- Issue the following utility control statement to explicitly specify the collection options in the profile:

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE ts-name TABLE table-name runstats-options SET PROFILE
```

DB2 records the values specified by *runstats-options* in the PROFILE_TEXT column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table. DB2 uses the default values for any options that are not specified.

- Issue the following utility control statement to automatically specify options in the profile based on the existing statistics for the specified table:

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE ts-name TABLE table-name SET PROFILE FROM EXISTING STATS
```

No statistics are collected when you invoke the RUNSTATS utility with the SET PROFILE option. If a profile already exists for the specified table, that profile is replaced with the new one and the existing profile is lost because only one profile can exist for a particular table.

Related reference

“The RUNSTATS profile syntax” on page 669

Using RUNSTATS profiles

You can use RUNSTATS profiles to invoke the RUNSTATS utility with a predefined set of statistics collection options. DB2 also uses RUNSTATS profiles when you enable autonomic statistics maintenance.

To invoke RUNSTATS by using a profile:

Issue the following RUNSTATS control statement:

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE ts-name TABLE table-name USE PROFILE
```

DB2 collects statistics for the table specified by *table-name* according to the collection options that are specified in the profile, and issues a message to indicate that the profile was used. If no profile exists for the specified table, DB2 issues an error message.

Updating RUNSTATS profiles

You can modify options to change the statistics that are collected by existing RUNSTATS profiles that you have created, or those that are created for autonomic statistics monitoring by the ADMIN_UTL_MONITOR stored procedure.

To modify an existing RUNSTATS profile:

Issue following RUNSTATS control statement:

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE ts-name TABLE table-name runstats-options UPDATE PROFILE
```

DB2 replaces any existing options that are specified in PROFILE_TEXT column of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_PROFILES catalog table with values options that are specified in *runstats-options* for the table that is specified by *table-name*. Any options that are not specified remain unchanged in the existing profile. If no profile exists for the specified table, DB2 issues an error message.

Related reference

“The RUNSTATS profile syntax” on page 669

Deleting RUNSTATS profiles

You can delete an existing RUNSTATS profile.

To delete existing RUNSTATS profiles:

Issue the following utility control statement:

RUNSTATS TABLESPACE *ts-name* TABLE *options* DELETE PROFILE

Any existing profile for the table or tables specified in *options* is removed. If no profile exists for the specified table or tables DB2 issues an error message. No statistics are collected when you invoke the RUNSTATS utility with the DELETE PROFILE option.

Combining autonomic and manual statistics maintenance

When autonomic statistics maintenance is enabled, you can still invoke the RUNSTATS utility to capture statistics manually.

When autonomic statistics monitoring and maintenance is enabled, DB2 uses RUNSTATS profiles to maintain the statistics for each table that is not excluded from autonomic maintenance. However, you can still explicitly invoke the RUNSTATS utility at any time either in the traditional manner, or by using profiles at any time.

To effectively combine autonomic and manual statics maintenance activities, you might follow the following recommendations:

- Before enabling autonomic statistics maintenance, consider whether to delete all existing RUNSTATS profiles by issuing RUNSTATS control statements and specifying the DELETE PROFILE option. By doing that, you enable DB2 to create new RUNSTATS profiles based on analysis of your existing statistics. However, this step is optional if you prefer that DB2 uses the settings of your existing RUNSTATS profiles for autonomic maintenance.
- When you want to collect statistics with different settings than those that are used for autonomic maintenance, use the traditional method for invoking the RUNSTATS utility and explicitly specify the options that you want to use. Invoking RUNSTATS in that manner has no impact on the options that are specified in the profile, and periodic autonomic maintenance can continue unchanged. However, because the manual invocation of RUNSTATS does not change the RUNSTATS profile, the manually collected might be lost at the next invocation of RUNSTATS that uses the profile. Consequently, you might want to update the profile to use the new options that were specified in the manual invocation.
- When you want to manually invoke the collection of statistics outside of the autonomic maintenance windows, but with the usual settings, you can specify the USE PROFILE option in the RUNSTATS control statement.
- When you want to modify the settings that are used for autonomic maintenance, you can issue a RUNSTATS control statement with the UPDATE PROFILE option and specify that options that you want to change. After you update the profile, DB2 uses the new options for autonomic maintenance activities.

Termination or restart of RUNSTATS

You can terminate and restart the RUNSTATS utility.

You can terminate RUNSTATS with the TERM UTILITY command.

You can restart a RUNSTATS utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Review of RUNSTATS output

The RUNSTATS utility alters tables and columns in the catalog tables. When you specify REPORT YES, the RUNSTATS utility also generates a report of statistics that are gathered during processing.

RUNSTATS sets the following columns to -1 for table spaces that are defined as LARGE:

- CARD in SYSTABLES
- CARD in SYSINDEXPART
- FAROFFPOS in SYSINDEXPART
- NEAROFFPOS in SYSINDEXPART
- FIRSTKEYCARD in SYSINDEXES
- FULLKEYCARD in SYSINDEXES

Index statistics and table space statistics

The following table shows the catalog tables that RUNSTATS updates depending on the value of the UPDATE option, the value of the HISTORY option, and the source of the statistics (table space, partition, index or LOB table space).

Table 108. Catalog tables that RUNSTATS updates

Keyword	UPDATE option	HISTORY option	Catalog table that RUNSTATS updates
TABLESPACE	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSTABLESPACE SYSTABLEPART ¹ SYSTABLEPART_HIST ¹ SYSTABLES ¹ SYSTABLES_HIST ¹ SYSTABSTATS ^{1,2} SYSTABSTATS_HIST ^{1,2} SYSLOBSTATS ³ SYSLOBSTATS_HIST ³
TABLESPACE	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSTABLESPACE SYSTABLES ¹ SYSTABLES_HIST ¹ SYSTABSTATS ^{1,2} SYSTABSTATS_HIST ^{1,2}
TABLESPACE	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY SPACE	SYSTABLEPART ¹ SYSTABLEPART_HIST ¹ SYSLOBSTATS ³ SYSLOBSTATS_HIST ³
TABLESPACE	UPDATE ACCESSPATH ²	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSTABLESPACE SYSTABLES SYSTABLES_HIST SYSTABSTATS ² SYSTABSTATS_HIST ²
TABLESPACE	UPDATE ACCESSPATH ²	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSTABLESPACE SYSTABLES SYSTABLES_HIST SYSTABSTATS ² SYSTABSTATS_HIST ²

Table 108. Catalog tables that RUNSTATS updates (continued)

Keyword	UPDATE option	HISTORY option	Catalog table that RUNSTATS updates
TABLESPACE	UPDATE ACCESSPATH ²	HISTORY SPACE	none
TABLESPACE	UPDATE SPACE ²	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSTABLEPART SYSTABLEPART_HIST SYSLOBSTATS ³ SYSLOBSTATS_HIST ³ SYSTABLES SYSTABLES_HIST
TABLESPACE	UPDATE SPACE ²	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	none
TABLESPACE	UPDATE SPACE ²	HISTORY SPACE	SYSTABLEPART SYSTABLEPART_HIST SYSLOBSTATS ³ SYSLOBSTATS_HIST ³ SYSTABLES SYSTABLES_HIST
TABLE	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLSTATS ²
TABLE	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLSTATS ²
TABLE	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY SPACE	none
TABLE	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLSTATS ²
TABLE	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLSTATS ²
TABLE	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY SPACE	none
INDEX	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLUMNS_HIST SYSCOLDIST SYSCOLDIST_HIST SYSCOLDISTSTATS ² SYSCOLSTATS ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXPART_HIST SYSINDEXSTATS ²
INDEX	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLUMNS_HIST SYSCOLDIST SYSCOLDIST_HIST SYSCOLDISTSTATS ² SYSCOLSTATS ² SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXPART_HIST SYSINDEXSTATS ²
INDEX	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY SPACE	SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST

Table 108. Catalog tables that RUNSTATS updates (continued)

Keyword	UPDATE option	HISTORY option	Catalog table that RUNSTATS updates
INDEX	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLUMNS_HIST SYSCOLDIST SYSCOLDIST_HIST SYSCOLDISTSTATS ² SYSCOLSTATS SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSINDEXSTATS ²
INDEX	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSCOLUMNS SYSCOLUMNS_HIST SYSCOLDIST SYSCOLDIST_HIST SYSCOLDISTSTATS ² SYSCOLSTATS SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSINDEXSTATS ²
INDEX	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY SPACE	SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST
INDEX	UPDATE SPACE	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXPART_HIST SYSINDEXES ⁵ SYSINDEXES_HIST ⁵
INDEX	UPDATE SPACE	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	none
INDEX	UPDATE SPACE	HISTORY SPACE	SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXES ⁵
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSKEYTARGETS SYSKEYTARGETS_HIST SYSKEYTARGETSTATS ² SYSKEYTGTDISTSTATS ² SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXPART_HIST SYSINDEXSTATS ² SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSKEYTGTDIST SYSKEYTGTDIST_HIST
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSKEYTARGETS SYSKEYTARGETS_HIST SYSKEYTARGETSTATS ² SYSKEYTGTDISTSTATS ² SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXSTATS ² SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSKEYTGTDIST SYSKEYTGTDIST_HIST

Table 108. Catalog tables that RUNSTATS updates (continued)

Keyword	UPDATE option	HISTORY option	Catalog table that RUNSTATS updates
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE ALL	HISTORY SPACE	SYSKEYTARGETS SYSKEYTARGETSTATS ² SYSKEYTGTDISTSTATS ² SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXPART_HIST SYSINDEXSTATS ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSKEYTGTDIST
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSKEYTARGETS SYSKEYTARGETS_HIST SYSKEYTARGETSTATS ² SYSKEYTGTDISTSTATS ² SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXSTATS ² SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSKEYTGTDIST SYSKEYTGTDIST_HIST
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSKEYTARGETS SYSKEYTARGETS_HIST SYSKEYTARGETSTATS ² SYSKEYTGTDISTSTATS ² SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXSTATS ² SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSKEYTGTDIST SYSKEYTGTDIST_HIST
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE ACCESSPATH	HISTORY SPACE	SYSKEYTARGETS SYSKEYTARGETSTATS ² SYSKEYTGTDISTSTATS ² SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXPART_HIST SYSINDEXSTATS ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSKEYTGTDIST
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE SPACE	HISTORY ALL ⁴	SYSKEYTARGETS_HIST SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST ² SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST SYSKEYTGTDIST_HIST
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE SPACE	HISTORY ACCESSPATH	SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST
INDEX ⁶	UPDATE SPACE	HISTORY SPACE	SYSINDEXPART SYSINDEXPART_HIST SYSINDEXES SYSINDEXES_HIST

Table 108. Catalog tables that RUNSTATS updates (continued)

Keyword	UPDATE option	HISTORY option	Catalog table that RUNSTATS updates
Note:			
1. Not applicable if the specified table space is a LOB table space.			
2. Only updated for partitioned objects. When you run RUNSTATS against single partitions of an object, RUNSTATS uses the partition-level statistics to update the aggregate statistics for the entire object. These partition-level statistics are contained in the following catalog tables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SYSCOLSTATS • SYSCOLDISTSTATS • SYSTABSTATS • SYSINDEXSTATS 			
3. Applicable only when the specified table space is a LOB table space.			
4. When HISTORY NONE is specified, none of the catalog history tables are updated.			
5. Only the SPACEF and STATSTIME columns are updated.			
6. Applicable only when the target object is an index on expression.			

Related reference

 [Statistics used for access path selection \(Managing Performance\)](#)

After running RUNSTATS

Certain activities might be required after you run the RUNSTATS utility, depending on your situation.

After running RUNSTATS with the UPDATE ACCESSPATH option, the UPDATE SPACE option, or the UPDATE ALL option, rebind any application plans that use the tables or indexes so that they use the new statistics.

Sample RUNSTATS control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own RUNSTATS control statements.

Example 1: Updating catalog statistics for a table space while allowing changes

The following control statement specifies that the RUNSTATS utility is to update the catalog with statistics for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S10E and all of its associated tables and indexes. When updating the table statistics, RUNSTATS is to sample 25% of the rows. Although SHRLEVEL CHANGE is not specified, by default DB2 permits other processes to make changes to the table space while the RUNSTATS utility is executing.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='IUJQU225.RUNSTA',TIME=1440,
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
        TABLE(ALL) SAMPLE 25
        INDEX(ALL)
```

Example 2: Updating index statistics

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the catalog statistics for index DSN8810.XEMPL1.

```
RUNSTATS INDEX (DSN81010.XEMPL1)
```

Example 3: Updating index statistics while prohibiting updates

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the catalog statistics for indexes XEMPL1 and XEMPL2. DB2 does not permit other processes to change the table space that is associated with XEMPL1 and XEMPL2 (table space DSN8S10E) while this utility is executing. This restricted access is the default behavior.

```
RUNSTATS INDEX (DSN81010.XEMPL1,DSN81010.XEMPL2)
```

Example 4: Updating statistics for columns in several tables

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the catalog statistics for the following columns in table space DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C:

- All columns in the TCONA and TOPTVAL tables
- The LINENO and DSPLINE columns in the TDSPTXT table

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE(DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C)
          TABLE (TCONA)
          TABLE (TOPTVAL) COLUMN(ALL)
          TABLE (TDSPTXT) COLUMN(LINENO,DSPLINE)
```

Example 5: Updating all statistics for a table space

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update all catalog statistics (table space, tables, columns, and indexes) for table space DSN8D81P.DSN8S81C.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE(DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C) TABLE INDEX
```

Example 6: Updating statistics that are used for access path selection and generating a report

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the catalog with **only** the statistics that are collected for access path selection. The utility is to report **all** statistics for the table space and route the report to SYSPRINT.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
          REPORT YES
          UPDATE ACCESSPATH
```

Example 7: Updating all statistics and generating a report

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the catalog with **all** statistics (access path and space) for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E. The utility is also to report the collected statistics and route the report to SYSPRINT.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
          REPORT YES
          UPDATE ALL
```

Example 8: Reporting statistics without updating the catalog

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to collect statistics for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E and route the report to SYSPRINT. The utility is not to update the catalog with the collected statistics.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E
      REPORT YES
      UPDATE NONE
```

Example 9: Updating statistics for a partition

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the statistics for the first partition of table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E and the first partition of the DSN8810.XEMP1 index.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S10E PART 1 INDEX(DSN81010.XEMP1 PART 1)
```

Example 10: Updating catalog and history tables and reporting all statistics

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the catalog tables and history catalog tables with all statistics for table space DB0E0101.TL0E0101 (including related indexes and columns). The utility is to report the collected statistics and route the statistics to SYSPRINT.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DB0E0101.TL0E0101
      INDEX
      TABLE
      REPORT YES
      UPDATE ALL
      HISTORY ALL
```

Example 11: Updating statistics on frequently occurring values

Assume that the SYSADM.IXNP1 index is defined on four columns: NP1, NP2, NP3, and NP4. The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update the statistics for index SYSADM.IXNPI.

The RUNSTATS utility collects cardinality statistics for column NP1, column set NP1 and NP2, and column set NP1, NP2, and NP3, and column set NP1, NP2, NP3, and NP4. The FREQVAL option and its associated parameters indicate that RUNSTATS is also to collect the 5 most frequently occurring values on column NP1 (the first key column of the index), and the 10 most frequently occurring values on the column set NP1 and NP2 (the first two key columns of the index). The utility is to report the collected statistics and route the statistics to SYSPRINT.

```
RUNSTATS INDEX (SYSADM.IXNPI)
      FREQVAL NUMCOLS 1 COUNT 5
      FREQVAL NUMCOLS 2 COUNT 10
      REPORT YES
```

Example 12: Updating distribution statistics for a group of specified columns in a table

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update statistics for the columns EMPLEVEL, EMPGRADE, and EMPSALARY in table DSN8810.DEPT (in table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E). The statement uses the COLGROUP keyword to group these columns. RUNSTATS is to collect the cardinality of this column group and store the cardinality in the SYSCOLDIST catalog table.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
TABLE(DSN8810.DEPT)
COLGROUP (EMPLEVEL,EMPGRADE,EMPSALARY)
```

Example 13: Updating distribution statistics for specific columns and retrieving the most frequently occurring values

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update statistics for the columns EMPLEVEL, EMPGRADE, and EMPSALARY in table DSN8810.DEPT. The FREQVAL and COUNT options indicate that RUNSTATS is to collect the 10 most frequently occurring values for each column. The values are to be stored in the SYSCOLDIST and SYSCOLDISTSTATS catalog tables.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
TABLE(DSN8810.DEPT)
COLGROUP(EMPLEVEL,EMPGRADE,EMPSALARY) FREQVAL COUNT 10
```

Example 14: Updating distribution statistics for specific columns in a table and retrieving the least frequently occurring values

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update statistics for the columns EMPLEVEL, EMPGRADE, and EMPSALARY in table DSN8810.DEPT. The FREQVAL and COUNT options indicate that RUNSTATS is to collect the 15 least frequently occurring values for each column. The values are to be stored in the SYSCOLDIST and SYSCOLDISTSTATS catalog tables.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
TABLE(DSN8810.DEPT)
COLGROUP(EMPLEVEL,EMPGRADE,EMPSALARY) FREQVAL COUNT 15 LEAST
```

Example 15: Updating distribution statistics for specific columns in a table space and retrieving the most and least frequently occurring values

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to update statistics for the columns EMPLEVEL, EMPGRADE, and EMPSALARY in table DSN8810.DEPT. The FREQVAL and COUNT options indicate that RUNSTATS is to collect the 10 most frequently occurring values for each column and the 10 least frequently occurring values for each column. The values are to be stored in the SYSCOLDIST and SYSCOLDISTSTATS catalog tables.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
TABLE(DSN8810.DEPT)
COLGROUP(EMPLEVEL,EMPGRADE,EMPSALARY) FREQVAL COUNT 10 BOTH
```

Example 16: Updating statistics for an index and retrieving the most and least frequently occurring values

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to collect the 10 most frequently occurring values and the 10 least frequently occurring values for the first key column of index ADMF001.IXMA0101. By default, the utility collects all the distinct values in all the key column combinations. A set of messages is sent to SYSPRINT and all collected statistics are updated in the catalog.

```
RUNSTATS INDEX(ADMF001.IXMA0101)
FREQVAL NUMCOLS 1 COUNT 10 BOTH
REPORT YES UPDATE ALL
```

Example 17: Invalidating statements in the dynamic statement cache for a table space without generating report statistics.

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to invalidate statements in the dynamic statement cache for table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E. However, RUNSTATS is not to collect or report statistics or update the catalog.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E
REPORT NO
UPDATE NONE
```

Example 18: RUNSTATS HISTOGRAM job statement.

The following control statement specifies that RUNSTATS is to gather histogram statistics for the specified key columns. Histogram statistics can only be collected on the prefix columns with the same order.

```
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE RVTDB01.RVTTS01
INDEX ALL
HISTOGRAM NUMCOLS 2  NUMQUANTILES 5
SHRLEVEL(CHANGE)
UPDATE ALL
REPORT YES
```

Chapter 30. STOSPACE

The STOSPACE online utility updates DB2 catalog columns that indicate how much space is allocated for storage groups and related table spaces and indexes.

For user-defined spaces, STOSPACE does not record any statistics.

Output

The output from STOSPACE consists of updated values in the columns and tables in the following list. In each case, an amount of space is given in kilobytes (KB). If the value is too large to fit in the SPACE column, the SPACEF column is updated.

- SPACE in SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES shows the amount of space that is allocated to indexes. If the index is not defined using STOGROUP, or if STOSPACE has not been executed, the value is zero.
- SPACE in SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE shows the amount of space that is allocated to table spaces. If the table space is not defined using STOGROUP, or if STOSPACE has not been executed, the value is zero.
- SPACE in SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART shows the amount of space that is allocated to index partitions. If the partition is not defined using STOGROUP, or if STOSPACE has not been executed, the value is zero.
- SPACE in SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART shows the amount of space that is allocated to table partitions. If the partition is not defined using STOGROUP, or if STOSPACE has not been executed, the value is zero.
- SPACE in SYSIBM.SYSSTOGROUP shows the amount of space that is allocated to storage groups.
- STATSTIME in SYSIBM.SYSSTOGROUP shows the timestamp for the time at which STOSPACE was last executed.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- STOSPACE privilege
- SYSCTRL or SYSADM authority

Execution phases of STOSPACE

The STOSPACE utility operates in these phases:

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	
-----------------	--

	Performs initialization
--	-------------------------

STOSPACE	
-----------------	--

	Gathers space information and updates catalog
--	---

UTILTERM	
-----------------	--

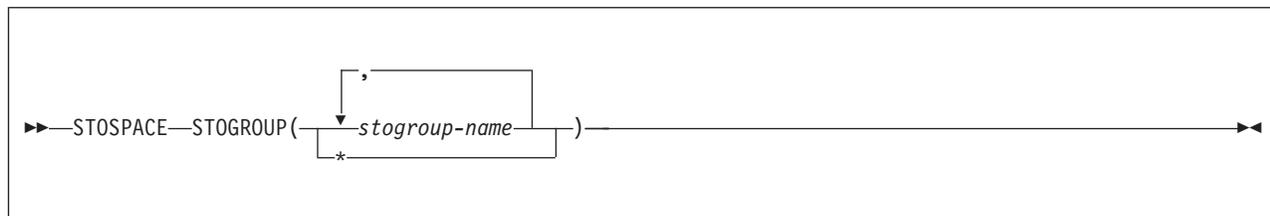
	Performs cleanup
--	------------------

Syntax and options of the STOSPACE control statement

The STOSPACE utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



Option descriptions

STOGROUP

Identifies the storage groups that are to be processed.

(*stogroup-name, ...*)

Specifies the name of a storage group. You can use a list of from one to 255 storage group names. Separate items in the list by commas, and enclose them in parentheses.

* Indicates that all storage groups are to be processed.

Data sets that STOSPACE uses

The STOSPACE utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that STOSPACE uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 109. Data sets that STOSPACE uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Storage group

Object that is to be reported.

Concurrency and compatibility for STOSPACE

The STOSPACE utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

STOSPACE does not set a utility restrictive state on the target object.

STOSPACE can run concurrently with any utility on the same target object. However, because STOSPACE updates the catalog, concurrent STOSPACE utility jobs or other concurrent applications that update the catalog might cause timeouts and deadlocks.

You can use the STOSPACE utility on storage groups that have objects within temporary databases.

How STOSPACE ensures availability of objects it STOSPACE requires

For each specified storage group, STOSPACE looks at the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE and SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog tables to determine which objects belong to that storage group.

For each object, the amount of allocated space is determined from an appropriate VSAM catalog. Hence the table spaces and indexes do not need to be available to DB2 when STOSPACE is running; only the DB2 catalog and appropriate VSAM catalogs are required. However, to gain access to the VSAM catalog, the utility must have available to it the database definition (DBD) for the objects that are involved. This access requires that the appropriate database, table spaces, and index spaces not be in the stopped state.

Obtaining statistical information with STOSPACE

When DB2 storage groups are used in the creation of table spaces and indexes, DB2 defines the data sets for them. The STOSPACE utility permits a site to monitor the disk space that is allocated for the storage group.

The following table lists statistical information that the STOSPACE utility records and that is useful for making space allocation decisions.

GUIP

Table 110. DB2 catalog data that STOSPACE collects

Catalog table	Column name	Column description
SYSTABLESPACE	SPACEF	Number of kilobytes of storage that are allocated to the table space
SYSTABLEPART	SPACEF	Number of kilobytes of storage that are allocated to the table space partition
SYSINDEXES	SPACEF	Number of kilobytes of storage that are allocated to the index
SYSINDEXPART	SPACEF	Number of kilobytes of storage that are allocated to the index partition
SYSSTOGROUP	SPACEF	Number of kilobytes of storage that are allocated to the storage group

Table 110. DB2 catalog data that STOSPACE collects (continued)

Catalog table	Column name	Column description
SYSSTOGROUP	STATSTIME	Time when STOSPACE was last run on a particular storage group

GUPI

STOSPACE does not accumulate information for more than one storage group. If a partitioned table space or index space has partitions in more than one storage group, the information in the catalog about that space comes from only the group for which STOSPACE was run.

When you run the STOSPACE utility, the SPACEF column of the catalog represents the high-allocated RBA of the VSAM linear data set. Use the value in the SPACEF column to project space requirements for table spaces, table space partitions, index spaces, and index space partitions over time. Use the output from the Access Method Services LISTCAT command to determine which table spaces and index spaces have allocated secondary extents. When you find these, increase the primary quantity value for the data set, and run the REORG utility.

- For information about space utilization in the DSN8S10E table space in the DSN8D10A database:
 1. Run the STOSPACE utility
 2. Execute the following SQL statement: **GUPI**

```
EXEC SQL
  SELECT SPACE
  FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
  WHERE NAME = 'DSN8S10E'
  AND DBNAME = 'DSN8D10A'
ENDEXEC
```

GUPI

Alternatively, you can use TSO to look at data set and pack descriptions.

- To update SYSIBM.SYSSTOGROUP for storage group DSN8G100, as well as SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE and SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES, for every table space and index that belongs to DSN8G100, use the following utility control statement:


```
STOSPACE STOGR0UP DSN8G100
```

Analysis of the values in a SPACE or SPACEF column

The value in a SPACE or SPACEF column represents total allocated space, not only the space that is allocated on the current list of volumes in the storage groups. If the value is too large to fit in the SPACE column, the SPACEF column is used.

You can delete volumes from a storage group even though space on those volumes is still allocated to DB2 table spaces or indexes. Deletion of a volume from a storage group prevents future allocations; it does not withdraw a current allocation.

Termination or restart of STOSPACE

You can terminate and restart the STOSPACE utility.

You can terminate a STOSPACE utility job with the TERM UTILITY command if you have submitted the job or have SYSOPR, SYSCTRL, or SYSADM authority.

You can restart a STOSPACE utility job, but it starts from the beginning again.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample STOSPACE control statement

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own STOSPACE control statements.

Example 1: Updating catalog SPACE columns for a particular storage group

The following control statement specifies that the STOSPACE utility is to update the catalog SPACE or SPACEF columns for storage group DSN8G100 and any related table spaces and indexes.

```
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='FUUU330.STOSPCE',
//      UTPROC=' ',
//      SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSIN DD *
STOSPACE STOGROUP DSN8G100
//*
```

Example 2: Specifying a storage group name that contains spaces

If the name of the storage group that you want STOSPACE to process contains spaces, enclose the entire storage group name in single quotation marks. Parentheses are optional. The following statements are correct ways to specify a storage group with the name THIS IS STOGROUP.1.ON.E:

```
STOSPACE STOGROUP('THIS IS STOGROUP.1.ONE')
STOSPACE STOGROUP 'THIS IS STOGROUP.1.ONE'
```

Example 3: Updating catalog SPACE columns for all storage groups

The following control statement specifies that the STOSPACE utility is to update the catalog SPACE or SPACEF columns for all storage groups.

```
STOSPACE STOGROUP *
```

Example 4: Updating catalog SPACE columns for several storage groups

The following control statement specifies that the STOSPACE utility is to update the catalog SPACE or SPACEF columns for storage groups DSN8G100 and DSN8G81U.

```
STOSPACE STOGROUP(DSN8G810, DSN8G81U)
```

Chapter 31. TEMPLATE

The TEMPLATE online utility control statement lets you allocate data sets, without using JCL DD statements, during the processing of a LISTDEF list. The TEMPLATE control statement defines the data set naming convention. TEMPLATE control statements can also be written to contain allocation parameters that define data set size, location, and attributes.

Templates enable you to standardize data set names across the DB2 subsystem and to easily identify the data set type when you use variables in the data set name.

The TEMPLATE control statement uses the z/OS DYNALLOC macro (SVC 99) to perform data set allocation. Therefore, the facility is constrained by the limitations of this macro and by the subset of DYNALLOC that is supported by TEMPLATE. See z/OS MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Guide for more details.

Output

The TEMPLATE control statement generates a dynamic allocation template with an assigned name for later reference.

Authorization required

No privileges are required to execute this control statement. When a TEMPLATE is referenced by a specific utility, privileges are checked at that time.

Execution phases of TEMPLATE

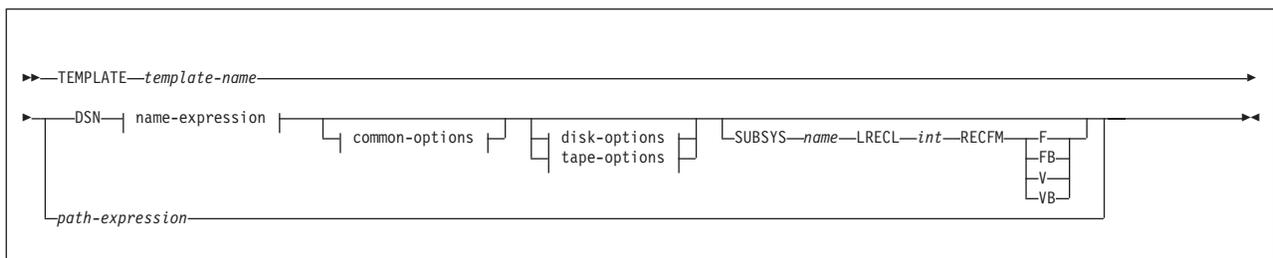
The TEMPLATE control statement executes entirely in the UTILINIT phase, which performs setup for the subsequent utility.

Syntax and options of the TEMPLATE control statement

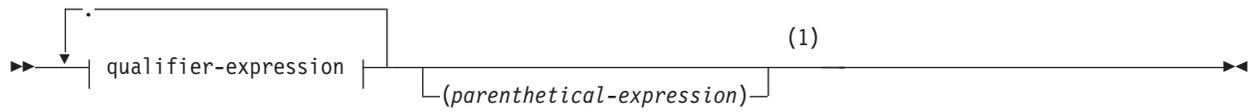
The TEMPLATE utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



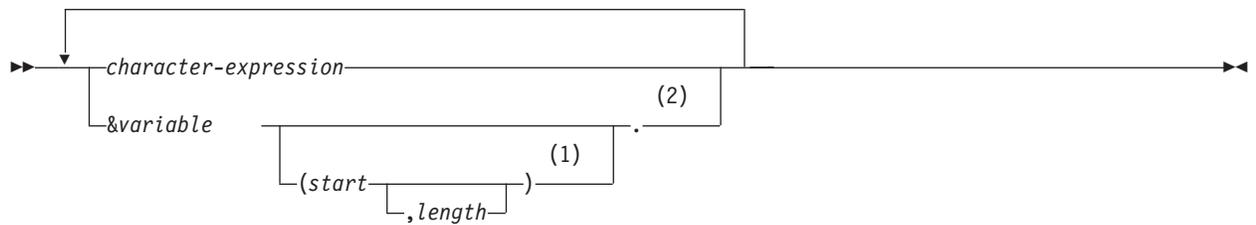
name-expression:



Notes:

- 1 The entire name-expression represents one character string and cannot contain any blanks.

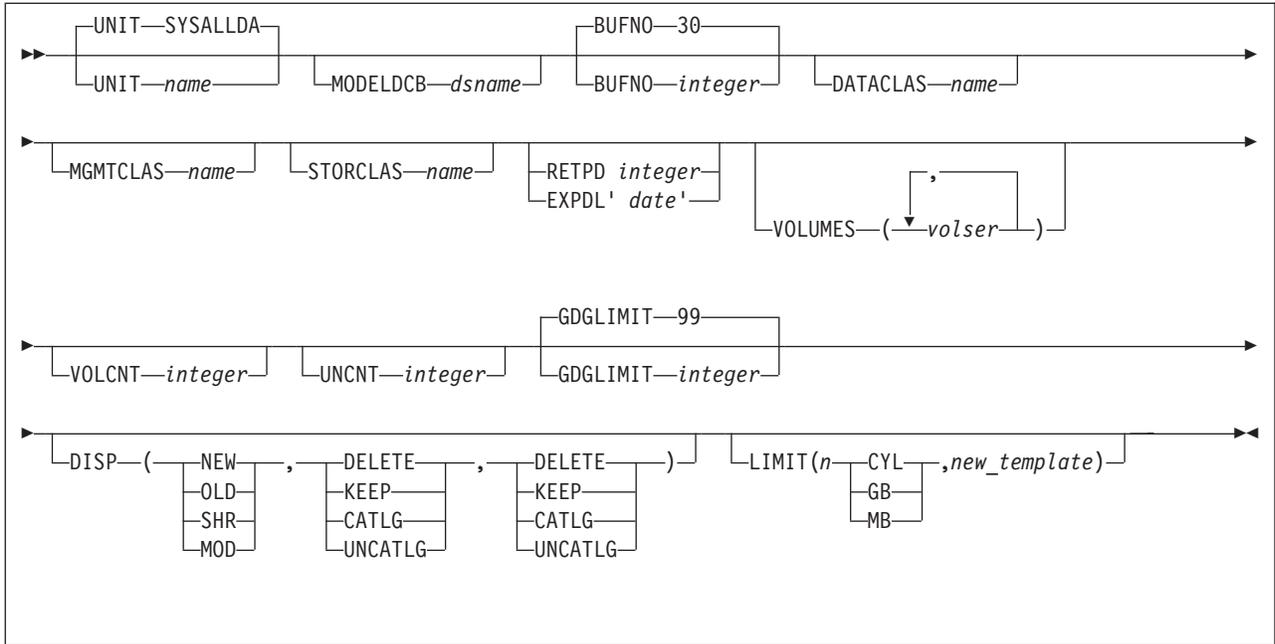
qualifier-expression:



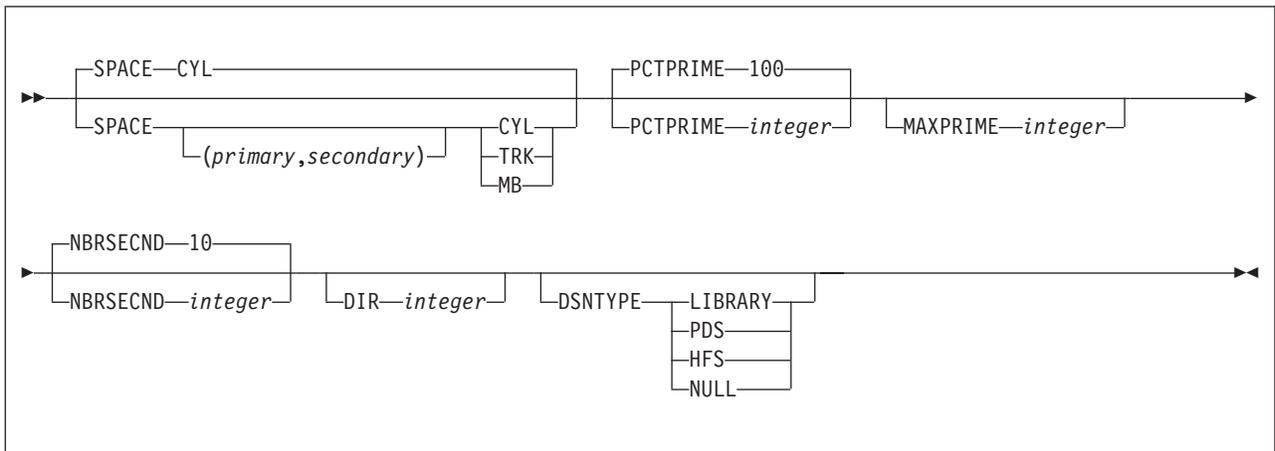
Notes:

- 1 If you use substring notation, the entire DSN operand must be enclosed in single quotation marks. For example, the DSN operand 'P&PA(4,2) .' uses substring notation, so it is enclosed in single quotation marks.
- 2 The &PA. variable cannot be used more than once.

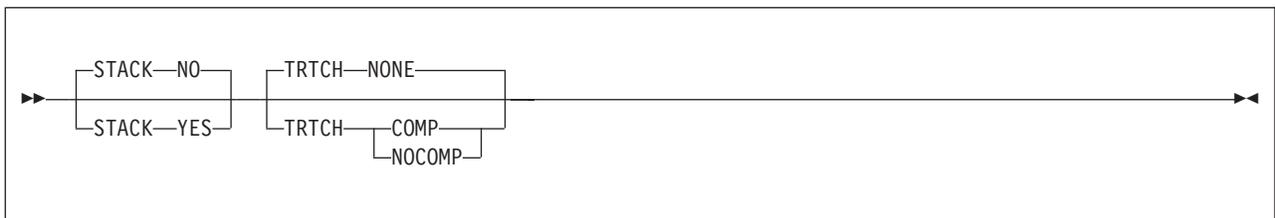
common-options:



disk-options:



tape-options:



path-expression

tape data set is being allocated. All other keywords specified on the TEMPLATE control statement must be consistent with the specified unit type.

DSN *name-expression*

Specifies the template for the z/OS data set name. You can specify the data set name, *name-expression*, by using symbolic variables, non-variable alphanumeric, or national characters, or any combination of these characters. The resulting name must adhere to the z/OS data set naming rules, including those rules about name length, valid characters, name structure and qualifier length. You must specify a DSN expression that is unique for each data set allocated by the utility and to each invocation of the utility.

Data set names consists of a series of qualifiers, *qualifier-expression*, that are separated by a period (.) and an optional parenthetical expression. No imbedded blanks are allowed. A partitioned data set (PDS) cannot be defined by TEMPLATE for use as an input data set.

If the DSN name operand contains any special characters, it must be enclosed in single quotation marks. For example, in the following TEMPLATE statement, the DSN operand contains the parentheses special character, so the entire operand is enclosed in single quotation marks:

```
TEMPLATE X DSN 'A.GDG.VERSION(+1)'
```

Parentheses around the DSN name operand are optional. They are used in the following DSN specification:

```
DSN(&DB..&TS..D&DATE.)
```

character-expression

Specifies the data set name or part of the data set name by using non-variable alphanumeric or national characters.

parenthetical-expression

Specifies part of the data set name by using non-variable alphanumeric or national characters that are enclosed in parentheses. For example, the expressions Q1.Q2.Q3(member) and Q1.Q2.Q3(+1) use valid parenthetical expressions. No variable substitution is performed within the parenthetical expression.

&variable.

Specifies the data set name or part of the data set name by using symbolic variables. See the following tables for a list of variables that can be used.

Each symbolic variable is substituted with its related value at execution time to form a specific data set name. When used in a DSN expression, substitution variables begin with an ampersand sign (&) and end with a period (.), as in the following example:

```
DSN &DB..&TS..D&JDATE..COPY&ICTYPE.
```

Using numeric variables alone generates an invalid data set qualifier for all numeric-type variables (all date or time-type variables, and others, such as &SEQ. or &PART.). These variables must be preceded by character constants to form valid DSN qualifiers. The following examples are valid specifications:

```
P&PART.
```

```
D&DATE.
```

Some substitution variables are invalid if you use TEMPLATE with an incompatible utility. For example, ICTYPE is not meaningful if the TEMPLATE

statement is used with LOAD SYSDISC. Other variables assume default values when their values are not known. For example, &PART. becomes 00000 for non-partitioned objects.

You can also use substring notation for data set name variables. This notation can help you keep the data set name from exceeding the 44 character maximum. If you use substring notation, the entire DSN operand must be enclosed in single quotation marks. To specify a substring, use the form &variable(start). or &variable(start,length).

start

Specifies the substring's starting byte location within the current variable base value at the time of execution. *start* must be an integer from 1 to 128.

length

Specifies the length of the substring. If you specify *start* but do not specify *length*, *length*, by default, is the number of characters from the *start* character to the last character of the variable value at the time of execution. For example, given a five-digit base value, &PART(4) . specifies the fourth and fifth digits of the value. *length* must be an integer that does not cause the substring to extend beyond the end of the base value.

The following table contains a list of JOB variables and their descriptions.

Table 111. JOB variables

Variable	Description
&JOBNAME. or &JO.	The z/OS job name.
&STEPNAME. or &ST.	The z/OS step name. This variable might be needed if data set names from two different job steps conflict.
&USERID. or &US.	The user ID of the person that is running the utility. The value is 1 to 8 characters long.
&UTILID. or &UT.	The utility ID truncated to eight characters and checked for invalid DSN characters.
&SSID. or &SS.	Subsystem ID (non-data sharing), group attachment name, or subgroup attachment name (data sharing).

The following table contains a list of UTILITY variables and their descriptions.

Table 112. UTILITY variables

Variable	Description
&ICTYPE. or &IC.	Single-character image copy type. This variable is valid only for image copy templates. The substitution is governed by whether a full image copy (F), an incremental image copy (I), or a CHANGELIMIT image copy (C) is specified by the user.
&UTILNAME. or &UN.	Special values are assigned to some utilities: CHECKD for CHECK DATA, CHECKI for CHECK INDEX, CHECKL for CHECK LOB, REORGI for REORG INDEX, and REORT for REORG TABLESPACE. Utility names that are longer than eight characters are truncated to eight characters.
&SEQ. or &SQ.	Sequence number of the list item in the list.

Table 112. UTILITY variables (continued)

Variable	Description
&LOCREM. or &LR.	Indicator of whether <i>ddname</i> is for the local site (COPYDDN) or the recovery site (RECOVERYDDN). Single character L is used when the utility defines a COPYDDN <i>ddname</i> . The single character R is used when the utility defines a RECOVERYDDN <i>ddname</i> . You can replicate the SYSCOPY ICBACKUP column information by using both the &LOCREM. and &PRIBAC. variables. This variable is valid only for image copy templates.
&PRIBAC. or &PB.	Indicator of whether <i>ddname</i> is for the primary (<i>ddname1</i>) or backup (<i>ddname2</i>) copy data set. Single character P is used when the utility defines a <i>ddname1</i> . The single character B is used when the utility defines a <i>ddname2</i> . You can replicate the SYSCOPY ICBACKUP column information by using both the &LOCREM. and &PRIBAC. variables. This variable is valid only for image copy templates.

The following table contains a list of OBJECT variables and their descriptions.

Table 113. OBJECT variables

Variable	Description
&LIST. or &LI.	The name of the list that is defined by using the LISTDEF control statement and that is referenced on the same control statement as this TEMPLATE. This variable is used with COPY FILTERDDN templates. All objects in the list are copied to one data set, which makes &TS. and &IS. meaningless.
&DB.	Database name.
&TS. ¹	Table space name.
&IS. ¹	Index space name.
&SN. ¹	Space name (table space or index space).
&PART. ³ or &PA. ²	Five-digit partition number, padded with leading zeros.
&DSNUM ³	Five-digit partition number for partitioned objects, or five-digit piece number for linear objects, padded with leading zeroes.

Note:

1. When you specify the &TS., &IS., or &SN. variables in a template that is used by an UNLOAD statement with BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF, DB2 substitutes the name of the table space that stores the LOB column value, not the base table space name. This substitution enables DB2 to generate unique data set names for each LOB column with partitioned table spaces.
2. Use the &PA. variable when processing LISTDEF lists with the PARTLEVEL keyword or data-partitioned secondary indexes. Otherwise, DB2 could generate duplicate data set names.
3. Templates for FlashCopy image copies can contain either &PART or &DSNUM. If you are copying both partitioned and linear objects, use &DSNUM.

The following table contains a list of DATE and TIME variables. and their descriptions.

Table 114. DATE and TIME variables

Variable	Description
&DATE. or &DT.	YYYYDDD
&TIME. or &TI.	HHMMSS
&JDATE. or &JU.	YYYYDDD
&YEAR. or &YE.	YYYY portion of &DATE.
&MONTH. or &MO.	MM
&DAY. or &DA.	DD
&JDAY. or &JD.	DDD portion of &DATE.
&HOUR. or &HO.	HH portion of &TIME.
&MINUTE. or &MI.	MM portion of &TIME.
&SECOND. or &SC.	SS portion of &TIME.
&UNIQ. or &UQ.	Unique eight characters that DB2 derives from the system clock at the time of allocation. This set of characters begins with an alphabetical character and is followed by seven alphabetical or numeric characters.

Note: All date and time values are set by using the STCK instruction, and they reflect the date and time value in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). With the exception of the &UNIQ. and &UQ. variables, DATE and TIME values are captured in the UTILINIT phase of each utility and remain constant until the utility terminates. &UNIQ. and &UQ. are assigned a unique value for each allocation.

SUBSYS name

Specifies the MVS BATCHPIPES SUBSYSTEM name. The SUBSYS operand must be a valid BATCHPIPES SUBSYSTEM name and must not exceed eight characters in length. When SUBSYS is specified, LRECL and RECFM are required. When SUBSYS is specified, TEMPLATE keywords that are not compatible with SUBSYS (such as UNIT) are ignored.

Restriction: When using BATCHPIPES, TEMPLATE with the SUBSYS keyword, the utility cannot be restarted and the LOAD DISCARDN keyword is not supported.

LRECL int

Specifies the record length of the MVS BATCHPIPES SUBSYSTEM file or z/OS UNIX file. You must specify LRECL if you specify SUBSYS.

LRECL does not have a default value except in the following situation: If you specify TEMPLATE PATH and accept the default value FILEDATA RECORD, the default value for LRECL is 32756.

RECFM

Specifies the record format of the MVS BATCHPIPES SUBSYSTEM file or z/OS UNIX file. You must specify RECFM if you specify SUBSYS.

Valid values for RECFM are F, FB, V, or VB

RECFM does not have a default value except in the following situation: If you specify TEMPLATE PATH and accept the default value FILEDATA RECORD, the default value for RECFM is VB.

UNIT

Specifies the device-number, device-type (generic), or group-name for the data set. All other TEMPLATE keywords are validated based on the specified type of unit (disk or tape).

The default value is SYSALLDA.

MODELDCB *dsname*

Specifies the name of the data set on which the template is based. DCB information is read from this model data set.

BUFNO *integer*

Specifies the number of BSAM buffers. The specified value must be in the range from 0 to 99.

The default value is 30.

DATACLAS *name*

Specifies the SMS data class. The *name* value must be a valid SMS data class and must not exceed eight characters in length.

The data set is cataloged if DATACLAS is specified. If this option is omitted, no DATACLAS is specified to SMS.

MGMTCLAS *name*

Specifies the SMS management class. The *name* value must be a valid SMS management class and must not exceed eight characters in length.

The data set is cataloged if MGMTCLAS is specified. If this option is omitted, no MGMTCLAS is specified to SMS.

STORCLAS *name*

Specifies the SMS storage class. The *name* value must be a valid SMS storage class and must not exceed eight characters in length.

The data set is cataloged if STORCLAS is specified. If this option is omitted, no STORCLAS is specified to SMS.

RETPD *integer*

Specifies the retention period in days for the data set. The integer value must be in the range from 0 to 9999.

If DATACLAS, MGMTCLAS, or STORCLAS is specified, the class definition might control the retention. RETPD cannot be specified with EXPDL.

EXPDL *'date'*

Specifies the expiration date for the data set, in the form YYYYDDD, where YYYY is the four-digit year, and DDD is the three-digit Julian day. The 'date' value must be enclosed by single quotation marks.

If DATACLAS, MGMTCLAS, or STORCLAS is specified, the class definition might control the retention. EXPDL cannot be specified with RETPD.

VOLUMES (*vol1,vol2,...*)

Specifies a list of volume serial numbers for this allocation. If the data set is not cataloged the list is truncated, if necessary, when it is stored in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY. The specified number of volumes cannot exceed the specified or default value of VOLCNT.

The first volume must contain enough space for the primary space allocation.

If an individual volume serial-number contains leading zeros, it must be enclosed in single quotation marks.

VOLCNT (*integer*)

Specifies the maximum number of volumes that an output data set might require. The specified value must be between 0 and 255.

The default value for tape templates is 95. For disk templates, the utility does not set a default value. Operating system defaults apply.

UNCNT *integer*

Specifies the number of devices that are to be allocated. The specified value must in the range from 0 to 59.

If UNIT specifies a specific device number, the value of UNCNT must either be 1 or be omitted.

GDGLIMIT (*integer*)

Specifies the number of entries that are to be created in a GDG base if a GDG DSN is specified and the base does not already exist. If a GDG base does not already exist and you do not want to define one, specify a GDGLIMIT of zero (0).

The default value is 99. The integer value must be in the range from 0 to 255.

DISP *integer*

Specifies the data set disposition by using three positional parameters: status, normal-termination, and abnormal-termination. All three parameters must be specified.

status

Standard z/OS values are allowed: NEW, OLD, SHR, MOD.

normal-termination

Standard z/OS values are allowed: DELETE, KEEP, CATLG, UNCATLG.

abnormal-termination

Standard z/OS values are allowed: DELETE, KEEP, CATLG, UNCATLG.

Default values for DISP vary, depending on the utility and the data set that is being allocated. Defaults for restarted utilities also differ from default values for new utility executions. Default values are shown in the following tables.

The following table shows the data dispositions for dynamically allocated data sets for new utility executions.

Note: It is possible that output from utilities that use piped data would not be dynamically allocated for new utility executions.

Table 115. Data dispositions for dynamically allocated data sets for new utility executions

<i>ddname</i>	CHECK DATA	CHECK INDEX or CHECK LOB	COPY	COPY- TOCOPY	LOAD	MERGE- COPY	REBUILD INDEX	REORG INDEX	REORG TABLE- SPACE	UNLOAD
SYSREC	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	OLD KEEP KEEP	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG
SYSDISC	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSPUNCH	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG
SYSCOPY	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSCOPY2	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSRCPY1	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSRCPY2	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored

Table 115. Data dispositions for dynamically allocated data sets for new utility executions (continued)

<i>ddname</i>	CHECK DATA	CHECK INDEX or CHECK LOB	COPY	COPY-TOCOPY	LOAD	MERGE-COPY	REBUILD INDEX	REORG INDEX	REORG TABLE-SPACE	UNLOAD
SYSUT1	NEW DELETE CATLG	NEW DELETE CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	Ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	NEW DELETE CATLG	NEW DELETE CATLG	Ignored
SORTOUT	NEW DELETE CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	NEW DELETE CATLG	Ignored
SYSMAP	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored
SYSERR	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored
FILTERDDS	Ignored	Ignored	NEW DELETE DELETE	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored

The following table shows data dispositions for dynamically allocated data sets on RESTART.

Table 116. Data dispositions for dynamically allocated data sets on RESTART

<i>ddname</i>	CHECK DATA	CHECK INDEX or CHECK LOB	COPY	COPY-TOCOPY	LOAD	MERGE-COPY	REBUILD INDEX	REORG INDEX	REORG TABLE-SPACE	UNLOAD
SYSREC	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	OLD KEEP KEEP	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG
SYSDISC	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSPUNCH	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG
SYSCOPY	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSCOPY2	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSRCPY1	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSRCPY2	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored
SYSUT1	MOD DELETE CATLG	MOD DELETE CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	Ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	MOD DELETE CATLG	MOD DELETE CATLG	Ignored
SORTOUT	MOD DELETE CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	MOD DELETE CATLG	Ignored
SYSMAP	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored
SYSERR	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored
FILTERDDS	Ignored	Ignored	NEW DELETE DELETE	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored

LIMIT

Specifies template switching.

n Specifies the maximum primary allocation quantity that is permitted using this TEMPLATE.

CYL

Cylinders

GB

Gigabytes

MB

Megabytes

new_template

Specifies a character string that specifies the name of a TEMPLATE to use if the size limit is exceeded.

DB2 supports the LIMIT keyword only on TEMPLATE control statements reference by COPYDDN or RECOVERYDDN keywords on the following utilities:

- COPY FULL YES|NO
- COPY CONCURRENT
- COPYTOCOPY
- MERGECOPY
- LOAD
- REORG

Restriction:

- You cannot switch to a DD card.
- The template control statement that LIMIT references must exist in SYSIN or SYSTEMPL and it cannot refer to itself.
- Switching can only be performed a single time per allocation. Multiple switching cannot take place.
- The utility PREVIEW function ignores the LIMIT keyword, only the original TEMPLATE control statement is previewed. The LIMIT keyword is ignored for new templates.

SPACE (*primary,secondary*)

Specifies the z/OS disk space allocation parameters in the range from 1 to 1677215. If you specify (*primary,secondary*) value, these values are used instead of the DB2-calculated values. When specifying primary and secondary quantities, you must either specify both values or omit both values.

Use the MAXPRIME option to set an upper limit on the *primary* quantity.

CYL

Specifies that allocation quantities, if present, are to be expressed in cylinders and that allocation is to occur in cylinders. If SPACE CYL is specified, without (*primary, secondary*), the DB2-calculated quantities are allocated in cylinders by using 3390 quantities for byte conversion. If TRK and MB are omitted, CYL is the default.

TRK

Specifies that allocation quantities, if present, are to be expressed in tracks and that allocation is to occur in tracks. If SPACE TRK is specified, without (*primary,secondary*), the DB2-calculated quantities are allocated in tracks by using 3390 quantities for byte conversion.

MB

Specifies that allocation quantities, if present, are to be expressed in megabytes, and that allocation is to occur in records. One megabyte is 1 048 576 bytes. If SPACE MB is specified, the (*primary,secondary*) quantities that are specified, or the DB2-calculated quantities, might be allocated in tracks or cylinders. Data sets with a primary or secondary allocation quantity greater than 20 MB are allocated in cylinders. Smaller data sets are allocated in tracks. The 3390 device capacities are used for TRK or CYL conversion.

PCTPRIME *integer*

Specifies the percentage of the estimated required space that is to be obtained as the primary quantity.

The default value is 100.

Use the MAXPRIME option to set the upper limit of this value for large objects.

MAXPRIME *integer*

Specifies the maximum allowable primary space allocation, expressed in cylinders (CYL). This value constrains the *primary* space value and the PCTPRIME calculation, as well as the size of each secondary allocation.

NBRSECND *integer*

Specifies the division of secondary space allocations. After the primary space is allocated, an amount of space equal to the estimated required space is divided into the specified number of secondary allocations. The integer value must be in the range from 1 to 10.

The default value is 10.

DIR *integer*

Specifies the number of 256-byte records that are to be allocated for the directory of a new partitioned data set. You must specify this operand if you are allocating a new partitioned data set.

If the template is being used in a UNLOAD statement with BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF and you specify a DSNTYPE of LIBRARY or PDS, but do not specify DIR, DB2 calculates the number of 256-byte records to allocate by dividing the estimated number of records by 20.

DSNTYPE

Specifies the type of data set to be allocated.

LIBRARY

Specifies that a partitioned data set extended (PDSE) is to be allocated.

PDS

Specifies that a partitioned data set (PDS) is to be allocated.

HFS

Specifies that a hierarchical file system (HFS) file is to be allocated.

NULL

Specifies a null file. Use this value for a template with UNLOAD CLOBF, BLOBF, or DBCLOBF to unload a null LOB value. In this case, the unload data set contains a null file name.

If you omit DSNTYPE, the type of data set is determined by other data set attributes, the data class for the data set, or an installation default.

STACK

Specifies whether output data sets are to be stacked contiguously on the same tape volumes.

NO

Specifies that output data sets are not to be stacked contiguously on tape.

YES

Specifies that similar output data sets are to be stacked as successive files on one logical tape volume, where a logical tape volume can consist of a multi-volume aggregate. Within one utility execution, output data sets are stacked on a logical tape volume of the same usage type. For example, local primary image copies are stacked separately from local backup image copies.

Restriction: Do not use the STACK YES option for concurrent copies (copies that are made by the COPY utility with the CONCURRENT option).

To preserve parallel processing, parallel tasks are written to different tape volumes. The specific volume to which the data set is written can vary, depending on the number of output data sets that are being produced, the number of parallel processes that are requested, and the number of tape units that are available to the job step.

Recommendation: To avoid issues with mounting a tape volume on the wrong drive, when you specify STACK(YES), also specify UNCNT 1.

The data sets and utilities for which the STACK YES option are supported are listed in the following table. "Yes" indicates that the specified utility supports tape stacking for the specified data set. "No" indicates that the specified utility does not support tape stacking for the specified data set. "Ignored" indicates that the specified data set does not apply to the specified utility.

Table 117. Supported data sets for tape stacking

<i>ddname</i>	CHECK DATA	CHECK INDEX or CHECK LOB	COPY	COPY- TOCOPY	LOAD	MERGE- COPY	REBUILD INDEX	REORG INDEX	REORG TABLE- SPACE	UNLOAD
SYSREC	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	No	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Yes
SYSDISC	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	No	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Ignored
SYSPUNCH	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Yes
SYSCOPY	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Ignored
SYSCOPY2	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Ignored
SYSRCPY1	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Ignored
SYSRCPY2	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Ignored	Ignored	Yes	Ignored
SYSUT1	No	No	Ignored	Ignored	No	Ignored	No	No	No	Ignored
SORTOUT	No	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	No	Ignored	Ignored	No	No	Ignored
SYSMAP	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	No	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored
SYSERR	No	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	No	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored
FILTERDDS	Ignored	Ignored	No	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored	Ignored

TRTCH

Specifies the track recording technique for magnetic tape drives that have improved data recording capability.

NONE

Specifies that the TRTCH specification is to be eliminated from dynamic allocation.

COMP

Specifies that data is to be written in compacted format.

NOCOMP

Specifies that data is to be written in standard format.

PATH

Specifies a z/OS UNIX file path name, which can be the name of a Unix System Services (USS) pipe.

Restrictions:

- If you specify PATH for a template, the utility that uses that template cannot be restarted.
- You can use a template with PATH only for input data sets for the LOAD utility (as indicated by the INDDN option) and for output data sets for the UNLOAD utility (as indicated by the UNLDDN option). You cannot use these templates for DISCARDN data sets for the LOAD and REORG utilities.

When you specify PATH, adhere to the following requirements:

- Specify the path name in SBCS EBCDIC format.
- Do not specify a path name that is longer than 255 bytes.
- If the path name contains blanks, enclose it in single quotes.
- If you specify PATH and do not specify FILEDATA(RECORD), specify values for LRECL and RECFM.

FILEDATA

Specifies the content type of the z/OS UNIX file that is specified for the PATH option. Valid values are TEXT, BINARY, and RECORD. RECORD indicates that the file contains both binary and text data.

The default value is RECORD.

PATHOPTS

Specifies the access and status for the z/OS UNIX file that is specified for the PATH option.

You can specify one or more of the following z/OS options for PATHOPTS:

- ORDONLY
- OCREAT
- OWRONLY
- ONONBLOCK

For information about these options, see PATHOPTS Parameter (MVS JCL Reference).

The default for LOAD is ORDONLY. The default for UNLOAD is OCREAT, OWRONLY.

PATHMODE

Specifies the file mode of the HFS file that is specified in the PATH option.

You can specify one or more of the following z/OS options for PATHMODE:

- SIRUSR

- SIWUSR
- SIXUSR
- SIRWXU
- SIRGRP
- SIWGRP
- SIXGRP
- SIRWXG
- SIROTH
- SIWOTH
- SIXOTH
- SIRWXO

For information about these options, see PATHMODE Parameter (MVS JCL Reference).

The default value is SIRUSR.

PATHDISP

Specifies the disposition of the z/OS UNIX file that is specified for the PATH option.

You must specify two parameters for the PATHDISP:

- The first parameter specifies whether the file is to be kept or deleted when the job ends normally.
- The second parameter specifies whether the file is to be kept or deleted when the job ends abnormally.

The valid values for each parameter are KEEP or DELETE.

The default value is KEEP, KEEP.

Related reference

 [DD statement \(MVS JCL Reference\)](#)

Before running TEMPLATE

Some DB2 utilities produce data sets during execution. These data sets are referenced in utility control statements by a set of DD name keywords and are specified in the corresponding JCL. Alternatively, you can use the TEMPLATE utility control statement to dynamically allocate utility data sets.

Options of the TEMPLATE utility allow you to specify the following information:

- The data set naming convention
- DFSMS parameters
- Disk or tape allocation parameters

You can specify a template in the SYSIN data set, immediately preceding the utility control statement that references it, or in one or more TEMPLATE libraries.

A TEMPLATE library is a data set that contains only TEMPLATE utility control statements. You can specify a TEMPLATE data set DD name by using the TEMPLATEDD option of the OPTIONS utility control statement. This specification applies to all subsequent utility control statements until the end of input or until DB2 encounters a new OPTIONS TEMPLATEDD(*ddname*) specification.

Any template that is defined within SYSIN overrides another template definition of the same name in a TEMPLATE data set.

TEMPLATE utility control statements enable you to standardize data set allocation and the utility control statements that reference those data sets, which reduces the need to customize and alter utility job streams.

Concurrency and compatibility for TEMPLATE

The TEMPLATE utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

TEMPLATE is a control statement that is used to set up an environment for another utility to follow. The template is stored until it is referenced by a specific utility. The list is expanded when it is referenced by another utility. At that time, the concurrency and compatibility restrictions of that utility apply, and the catalog tables that are necessary to expand the list must be available for read-only access.

Key TEMPLATE operations

Like both LISTDEF and OPTIONS utility control statements, a TEMPLATE control statement performs a setup operation in preparation for use by another utility. When the control statement is processed, the information is saved under the template name for the duration of the job step. You can reference it as though it were an output data set DD name by substituting the template name for the DD name on most utility control statements.

If a DD name and a TEMPLATE name conflict, the DD statement is used for allocation, and the TEMPLATE is ignored. Minimally, a TEMPLATE statement consists of a name (similar to a DD name) and a data set naming convention. If nothing else is specified, DB2 calculates the required data set size and uses default data set attributes that are appropriate to the data set that is being created. DB2 then allocates a disk data set with these defaults.

The required TEMPLATE statement might look something like the following TEMPLATE statement:

```
TEMPLATE tmp1 DSN(DB2.&TS..D&JDATE..COPY&ICTYPE.&LOCREM.&PRIBAC.)
              VOLUMES(vo11,vo12,vo13)
LISTDEF payro11 INCLUDE TABLESPACE PAYROLL.*
                INCLUDE INDEXSPACE PAYROLL.*IX
                EXCLUDE TABLESPACE PAYROLL.TEMP*
                EXCLUDE INDEXSPACE PAYROLL.TMPIX*
COPY LIST payro11 COPYDDN(tmp1,tmp1) RECOVERYDDN(tmp1,tmp1)
```

Database administrators can check utility control statements without executing them by using the PREVIEW function. In PREVIEW mode, DB2 expands all TEMPLATE data set names in the SYSIN DD, in addition to any data set name from the TEMPLATE DD that are referenced on a utility control statement. DB2 then prints the information to the SYSPRINT data set and halts execution. You can specify PREVIEW in one of two ways, either as a JCL PARM or on the OPTIONS PREVIEW utility control statement.

Creating data set names

The data set naming convention that is specified on the DSN option of each TEMPLATE statement must be appropriate for the data set that is being created and coordinated with the other templates and DD statements in the same job step. The data set name must be both unique and meaningful.

DB2 does not check that the data set names are unique until the execution of the utility that references the template. Ensure that the data set names are unique when you define the data set naming convention on the TEMPLATE control statement.

Follow these guidelines when developing template names:

- Use a combination of static characters, national characters, and the provided variable names to form valid z/OS data set qualifiers. Normal z/OS rules apply. Variables that produce numeric values must be preceded by either a static character or a character variable. All qualifiers must start with an alphabetic character. The qualifiers must consist of a maximum of eight characters and a maximum of 44 characters for the entire data set name. To help comply with this 44 character limit, you can use variable substring notation.
- Use the two-character form of the DSN variables to save space.
- Use two consecutive periods following all variables that precede the last qualifier (one to terminate the variable, followed by a second static period to separate the qualifiers), as in the following example:
`&DB..&TS.`
- Use `&DB.` and `&TS.` to relate the data set to a database object.
- Use `&PART.` when executing PARTLEVEL lists. Precede the variable with a static character or a character variable to form a valid qualifier.
- Use `&JO.` and `&ST.` to eliminate conflicts with other jobs or job steps.
- Use `&SS.`, `&US.`, `&UT.`, and `&UN.` if you have a need to know the subsystem, member, user, utility ID, or name of the utility that produced the data set.
- Use `&DATE.` and `&TIME.` or the shorter substring variations to guarantee uniqueness. Precede the variable with a static character or a character variable to form a valid qualifier.
- Use `&IC.`, `&LR.`, and `&PB.` to identify image copy data sets. For example, the following template name would make a meaningful seven-character data set qualifier:
`COPY&IC.&LR.&PB.`
- Use `&DS` for FlashCopy image copies for uniqueness when copying table spaces or index spaces at the space level.

Related reference

“Syntax and options of the TEMPLATE control statement” on page 699

Controlling data set size

You can also use the TEMPLATE syntax to specify disk space parameters. If you do not specify the SPACE keyword, DB2 estimates the size of the data set based on formulas that vary according to the utility and the data set.

DB2 usually estimates the size of a data set based on the size of other existing data sets; however, if any of the required data sets are on tape, DB2 is unable to estimate the size. When DB2 is able to calculate size, it calculates the maximum

size. This action can result in overly large data sets. DB2 always allocates data set size with the RLSE (release) option so that unused space is released on deallocation. However in some cases, the calculated size of required data sets is too large for the DYNALLOC interface to handle. In this case, DB2 issues error message DSNU1034I, you must allocate the data set by a DD statement. If the object is part of a LISTDEF list, you might need to remove it from the list and process it individually.

Database administrators can check utility control statements without executing them by using the PREVIEW function. In PREVIEW mode, DB2 expands all TEMPLATE data set names in the SYSIN DD, in addition to any data set name from the TEMPLATE DD that are referenced on a utility control statement. DB2 then prints the information to the SYSPRINT data set and halts execution. You can specify PREVIEW in one of two ways, either as a JCL PARM or on the OPTIONS PREVIEW utility control statement.

Default space calculations

PCTPRIME, MAXPRIME, and NBRSECND options are provided to let you manage how DB2 allocates the required space for the data set.

You can use these three keywords, in combination, to constrain and quantify the allocation extents.

PCTPRIME

100% of the required space estimated by DB2 is allocated as a PRIMARY quantity. If this amount of space is typically not available on a single volume, decrease PCTPRIME.

MAXPRIME

If you want an upper limit based on size, not on percentage, use MAXPRIME.

NBRSECND

After the restrictions on the PRIMARY quantity have been applied, a SECONDARY quantity equal to the estimated required space is divided into the specified number of secondary extents.

If you omit the SPACE option quantities, current data set space estimation formulas that are shown in the “Data sets that *utility* uses” topics for each online utility are implemented as default values for disk data sets.

Recommendation: Run the RUNSTATS utility with the UPDATE SPACE or UPDATE ALL option before you run any of the following utilities to improve the accuracy of the default space estimation:

- CHECK DATA
- CHECK INDEX
- CHECK LOB
- REBUILD INDEX
- REORG INDEX
- REORG TABLESPACE

Working with TAPE

The STACK keyword supports tape processing in two forms. The first form, STACK NO, supports traditional, single-file processing. The data set is written, and the tape is rewound and repositioned or even remounted. The second form, STACK YES, lets successive files be written on a single logical tape without repositioning or remounting.

Important considerations for STACK YES processing include:

- You can stack only like files on the same tape. For example, one tape might contain local primary image copies whereas another tape might contain remote primary image copies. The file types cannot be mixed.
- DB2 stacks files only within a single utility invocation. When that utility ends, the stack is terminated (meaning that the tape is rewound and unloaded). To allow stacking, use a LISTDEF list to force multiple objects to be processed under a single utility invocation.
- Parallel processing can complicate stacking. To prevent conflicts between parallel processes, use a single process to write a file to a given stack.
- To avoid issues with mounting a tape volume on the wrong drive, specify UNCNT 1.

Working with GDGs

TEMPLATE DSN operands support both GDG absolute version references and relative references. DB2 detects the absence of a GDG base and creates it, with a limit of 99 entries, by default.

Use the keyword GDGLIMIT to alter this value or prohibit this action. If you use the PREVIEW function on the OPTIONS utility control statement, DB2 displays the GDG relative version references. GDG names are restricted to 35 characters.

A model data set, as defined in the MODELDCB option, might be required to allocate GDG data sets in your environment.

Template switching

Template switching is most commonly used to direct small data sets to disk and large data sets to tape, but it can also be used to switch to templates that differ in DSNs or in HSN classes. The decision to switch is made based on the estimated output data set size, which may differ from the actual final size of the output data set. This difference is particularly true for incremental image copies that are estimated at 10% of the space required for a full image copy.

Termination or restart of TEMPLATE

You can terminate and restart a TEMPLATE utility job.

You can terminate a TEMPLATE utility job by using the TERM UTILITY command if you submitted the job or have SYSOPR, SYSCTRL, or SYSADM authority.

You can restart a TEMPLATE utility job, but it starts from the beginning again. If you are restarting this utility as part of a larger job in which TEMPLATE completed successfully, but a later utility failed, do not change the TEMPLATE utility control statement, if possible. If you must change the TEMPLATE utility control statement, use caution; any changes can cause the restart processing to fail.

For example, if you change the template name of a temporary work data set that was opened in an earlier phase and closed but is to be used later, the job fails.

Restriction: When a TEMPLATE utility control statement includes the PATH keyword, the utility that uses that template cannot be restarted.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample TEMPLATE control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own TEMPLATE control statements.

Example 1: Specifying a basic template for an image copy on disk

The following TEMPLATE utility control statement defines a basic template that can be used to allocate an image copy data set. The name of the template is COPYDS. Any subsequent COPY jobs that specify this template for dynamically allocated data sets use the data set naming convention that is defined by the DSN option.

```
TEMPLATE COPYDS DSN &DB..&TS..COPY&IC.&LR.&PB..D&DATE..T&TIME.
```

Example 2: Using variable substring notation to specify data set names

The following control statement defines template CP2. Variable substring notation is used in the DSN option to define the data set naming convention.

Assume that in the year 2003 you make a full image copy of partition 00004 of table space DSN8S81D. Assume that you specify the template CP2 for the data set for the local primary copy. DB2 gives the following name to the image copy data set: DH173001.DSN8S81D.Y03.COPYLP.P004

Notice that every variable in the DSN option begins with an ampersand (&) and ends with a period (.). These ampersands and periods are not included in the data set name. Only periods that do not signal the end of a variable are included in the data set name.

```
TEMPLATE CP2 DSN 'DH173001.&SN..Y&YEAR(3)..COPY&LR.&PB..P&PART(3,3).'
```

```
UNIT(SYSDA)
```

Example 3: Using COPY with TEMPLATE with variable substring notation

The following TEMPLATE utility control statement defines template SYSCOPY. Variable substring notation is used in the DSN option to define the data set naming convention. The subsequent COPY utility control statement specifies that DB2 is to make a local primary copy of the first partition of table space DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E. COPY is to write this image copy to a data set that is dynamically allocated according to the SYSCOPY template. In this case, the resulting data set name is DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E.P001

```
TEMPLATE SYSCOPY DSN '&DB..&TS..P&PA(3).'
```

```
COPY TABLESPACE DSN8D81A.DSN8S81E DSNUM 1 COPYDDN(SYSCOPY)
```

Notice that you can change the part variable in the DSN operand from P&PA(3). to P&PA(3,3). The resulting data set name is the same, because the length value of 3 is implied in the first specification.

Example 4: Specifying a template for tape data sets with an expiration date

The following control statement defines the TAPEDS template. Any data sets that are defined with this template are to be allocated on device number 3590-1, as indicated by the UNIT option, and are to expire on 1 January 2100, as indicated by the EXPDL option. The DSN option indicates that these data set names are to have the following three parts: database name, table space name, and date.

```
TEMPLATE TAPEDS DSN(&DB..&TS..D&DATE.)
      UNIT 3590-1 EXPDL '2100001'
```

Example 5: Specifying a disk template that gives space allocation parameters.

The following control statement defines the DISK template. Any data sets that are defined with this template are to have 100 cylinders of primary disk space and 10 cylinders of secondary disk space, as indicated by the SPACE and CYL options. The DSN option indicates that the data set names are to have the following three parts: database name, table space name, and time.

```
TEMPLATE DISK DSN &DB..&TS..T&TIME.
      SPACE(100,10) CYL
```

Example 6: Specifying a disk template that uses a default size with constraints

The following control statement defines the DISK template. Because the SPACE option does not specify quantities for primary and secondary space allocation, DB2 calculates these values with the following constraint: the maximum allowable primary space allocation is 1000 cylinders. This constraint is indicated by the MAXPRIME option. The DSN option indicates that the data set names are to have the following three parts: database name, table space name, and time.

```
TEMPLATE DISK DSN(&DB..&TS..T&TIME.)
      SPACE CYL MAXPRIME 1000
```

Example 7: Using TEMPLATE with LISTDEF and COPY

In the following example, the LISTDEF utility control statement defines the CPY1 list. The TEMPLATE control statement then defines the TMP1 template. The COPY utility control statement then specifies that DB2 is to make local copies of the objects in the CPY1 list. DB2 is to write these copies to data sets that are dynamically allocated according to the characteristics that are defined in the TMP1 template.

```
LISTDEF CPY1 INCLUDE TABLESPACES TABLESPACE DBA906*.T*A906*
      INCLUDE INDEXSPACES COPY YES INDEXSPACE ADMF001.I?A906*
TEMPLATE TMP1 UNIT SYSDA
      DSN (DH109006.&STEPNAME..&SN..T&TIME.)
      DISP (MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
COPY LIST CPY1 COPYDDN (TMP1) PARALLEL (2) SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
```

Parentheses for the DSN name-expression are optional.

Example 8: Use TEMPLATE to create a GDG data set

In this example, the TEMPLATE control statement defines the COPYTEMP template. The COPY utility control statement specifies that DB2 is to write a local image copy of the table space DBLT2501.TPLT2501 to a data set that is dynamically allocated according to the characteristics that are defined in the COPYTEMP template. According to the COPYTEMP template, this data set is to be named JULTU225.GDG(+1) (as indicated by the DSN option) and is to have six entries created in the GDG base (as indicated by the GDGLIMIT option). The control block information is to be the same as that in the JULTU225.MODEL data set, as indicated by the MODELDCB option.

```

//*****
/* COMMENT:  Define a model data set.                               *
//*****
//STEP1  EXEC  PGM=IEFBR14
//SYSCOPX DD DSN=JULTU225.MODEL,DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//        UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20)),VOL=SER=SCR03,
//        DCB=(RECFM=FB,BLKSIZE=4000,LRECL=100)
//*****
/* COMMENT:  GDGLIMIT(6)
//*****
//STEP2  EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU225.GDG',
//        UTPROC='',
//        SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN  DD *
        TEMPLATE COPYTEMP
            UNIT SYSDA
            DSN 'JULTU225.GDG(+1)'
            MODELDCB JULTU225.MODEL
            GDGLIMIT(6)
        COPY TABLESPACE DBLT2501.TPLT2501
            FULL YES
            COPYDDN (COPYTEMP)
            SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
/*

```

Figure 100. Example TEMPLATE and COPY statements for writing a local copy to a data set that is dynamically allocated according to the characteristics of the template.

Example 9: Using a template to copy a GDG data set to tape

In this example, the OPTIONS utility control statement causes the subsequent TEMPLATE statement to run in PREVIEW mode. In this mode, DB2 checks the syntax of the TEMPLATE statement. If DB2 determines that the syntax is valid, it expands the data set names. The OPTIONS OFF statement ends PREVIEW mode processing. The subsequent COPY utility control statement executes normally. The COPY statement specifies that DB2 is to write a local image copy of the table space DBLT4301.TPLT4301 to a data set that is dynamically allocated according to the characteristics that are defined in the COPYTEMP template. According to the COPYTEMP template, this data set is to be named JULTU243.GDG(+1) (as indicated by the DSN option) and is to be stacked on the tape volume 99543 (as indicated by the UNIT, STACK, and VOLUMES options). The data set dispositions are specified by the DISP option. The GDGLIMIT option specifies that 50 entries are to be created in a GDG base.

```

/*
//*****
//* COMMENT: COPY GDG DATA SET TO TAPE
//*****
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JULTU243.GDG',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//SYSIN DD *
      OPTIONS PREVIEW
      TEMPLATE COPYTEMP
            UNIT TAPE
            DSN 'JULTU243.GDG(+1)'
            VOLUMES (99543)
            GDGLIMIT(50)
            DISP(NEW,CATLG,CATLG)
            STACK YES
      OPTIONS OFF
      COPY TABLESPACE DBLT4301.TPLT4301
            FULL YES
            COPYDDN (COPYTEMP)
            SHRLEVEL REFERENCE
/*

```

Figure 101. Example job that uses *OPTIONS*, *TEMPLATE*, and *COPY* statements to copy a GDG data set to tape.

Example 10: Creating a template that can be used for unloading LOB objects

The *TEMPLATE* control statement in this example defines a template called *LOBFRV*. The subsequent *UNLOAD* statement specifies that each CLOB in the *RESUME* column is to be unloaded to files that are dynamically allocated according to the characteristics defined for the *LOBFRV* template. In this case, those files are to be partitioned data sets, as specified by the *DSNTYPE* option. Each data set is to have the name *UNLODTEST.database-name.LOB-table-space-name.RESUME*, as specified by the *DSN* option. The names of each CLOB PDS is written to the unload data set. By default, the unload data set is defined by the *SYSREC DD* statement or template.

```

TEMPLATE LOBFRV DSN 'UNLDTEST.&DB..&TS..RESUME'
            DSNTYPE(PDS) UNIT(SYSDA)

UNLOAD DATA
FROM TABLE DSN8910.EMP_PHOTO_RESUME
(EMPNO CHAR(6),
RESUME VARCHAR(255) CLOBF LOBFRV)
SHRLEVEL CHANGE

```

Figure 102. Example job that creates a template that can be used for unloading LOB objects.

Example 11: Using template switching.

The following *TEMPLATE* control statement assumes that table space *SMALL.TS* occupies 10 cylinders and table space *LARGE.TS* occupies 100 cylinders. Both *COPY* statements use the *SMALLTP* template which specifies a limit of 20 cylinders. Table space *SMALL.TS* is smaller than this limit so no switching is performed. The output data set for table space *SMALL.TS* will be allocated on *UNIT=SYSALLDA*. Table space *LARGE.TS* is larger than this limit so the template is switched to the *LARGETP* template. The output data set for table space *LARGE.TS* will be allocated on *UNIT=TAPE*.

```
TEMPLATE LARGETP DSN &DB..&TS..D&DA..T&TI. UNIT=TAPE
TEMPLATE SMALLTP DSN &DB..&TS..D&DA..T&TI. UNIT=SYSALLDA LIMIT( 20 CYL, LARGETP )
COPY TABLESPACE SMALL.TS COPYDDN( SMALLTP )
COPY TABLESPACE LARGE.TS COPYDDN( SMALLTP )
```

Chapter 32. UNLOAD

The UNLOAD online utility unloads data from one or more source objects to one or more BSAM sequential data sets in external formats. The source can be DB2 table spaces or DB2 image copy data sets. The source cannot be a concurrent copy or a FlashCopy image copy.

UNLOAD is an enhancement of the REORG UNLOAD EXTERNAL function. With UNLOAD, you can unload rows from an entire table space or select specific partitions or tables to unload. You can also select columns by using the field specification list. If a table space is partitioned, you can unload all of the selected partitions into a single data set, or you can unload each partition in parallel into physically distinct data sets.

UNLOAD must be run on the system where the definitions of the table space and the table exist.

The output records that the UNLOAD utility writes are compatible as input to the LOAD utility; as a result, you can reload the original table or different tables.

Output

UNLOAD generates an unloaded table space or partition.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, you must use a privilege set that includes one of the following authorities:

- Ownership of the tables
- SELECT privilege on the tables
- DBADM authority for the database. If the object on which the utility operates is in an implicitly created database, DBADM authority on DSNDB04 or the implicitly created database is sufficient.
- DATAACCESS authority
- SYSADM authority
- SYSCTRL authority (catalog tables only)

If you use RACF access control with multilevel security and UNLOAD is to process a table space that contains a table that has multilevel security with row-level granularity, you must be identified to RACF and have an accessible valid security label. Each row is unloaded only if your security label dominates the data security label. If your security label does not dominate the data security label, the row is not unloaded, but DB2 does not issue an error message.

Execution phases of UNLOAD

The UNLOAD utility operates in these phases:

Phase	Description
-------	-------------

UTILINIT	
----------	--

	Performs initialization.
--	--------------------------

UNLOAD

Unloads records to sequential data sets. One pass through the input data set is made. If UNLOAD is processing a table space or partition, DB2 takes internal commits. These commits provide commit points at which the utility can be restarted in case operation should halt in this phase.

UTILTERM

Performs cleanup.

Related concepts

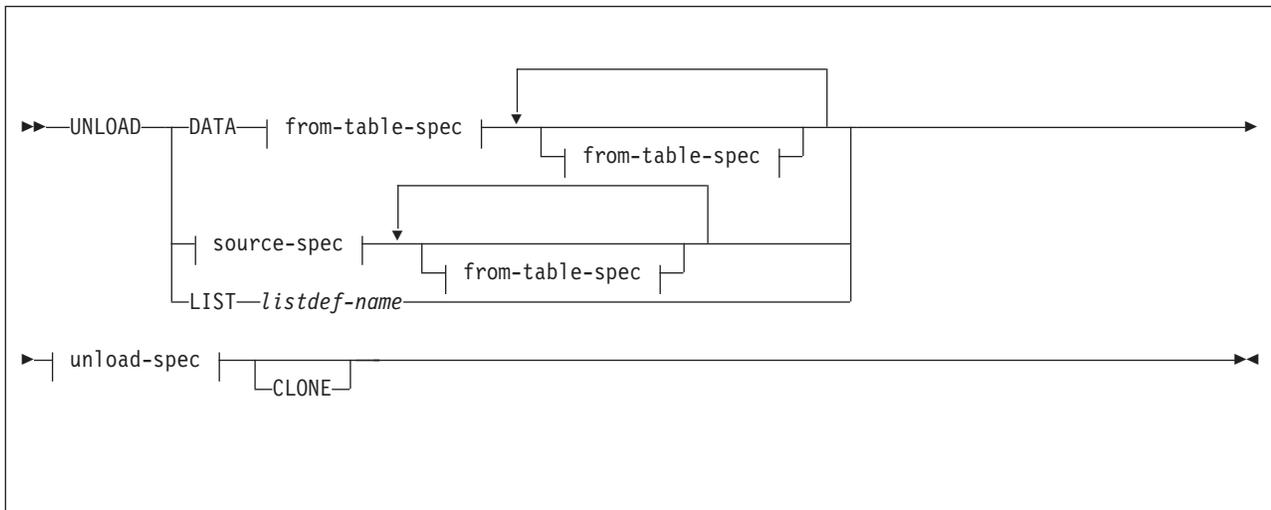
[☞ Multilevel security \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Syntax and options of the UNLOAD control statement

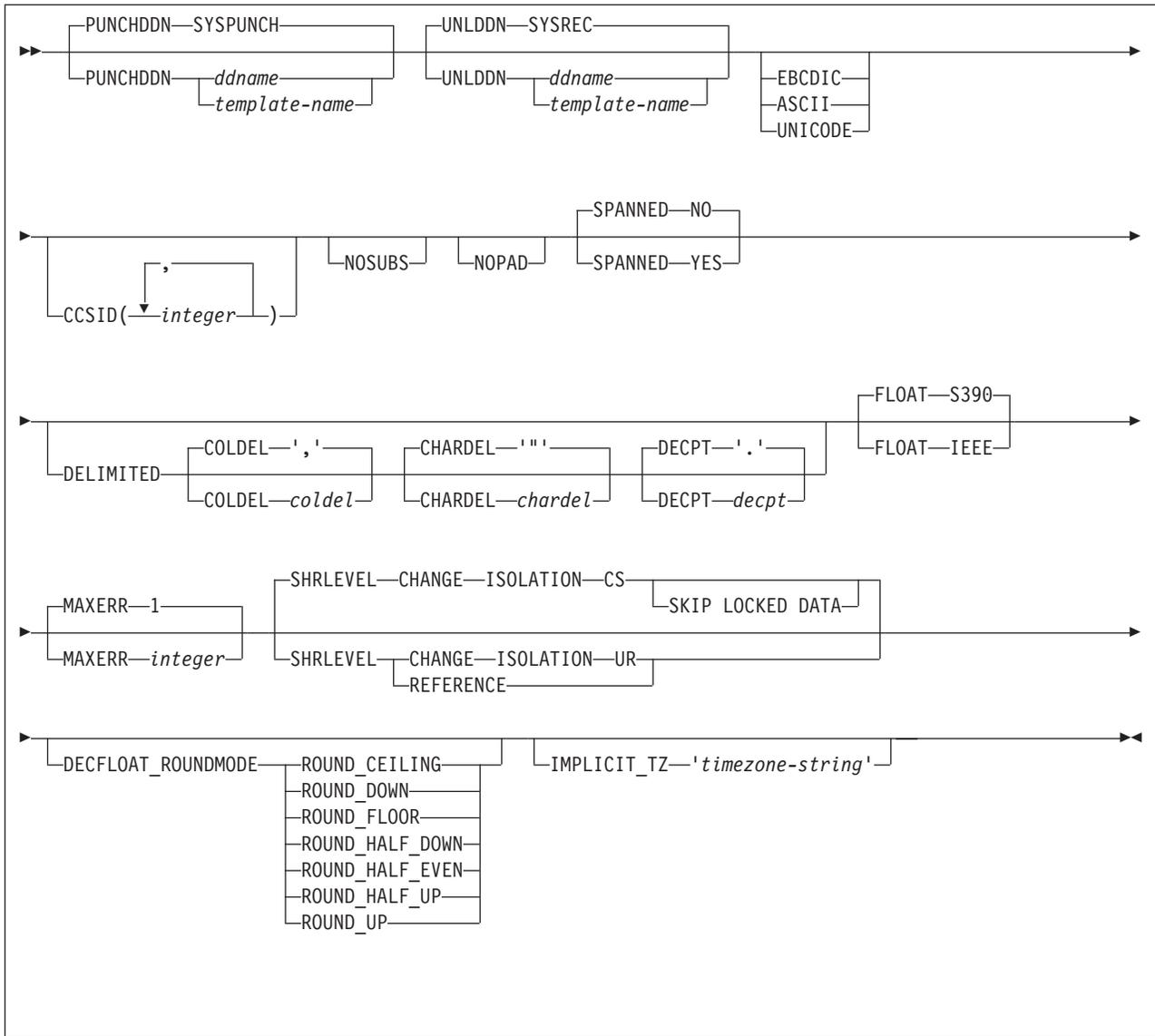
The UNLOAD utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

You can create a control statement with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After creating it, save it in a sequential or partitioned data set. When you create the JCL for running the job, use the SYSIN DD statement to specify the name of the data set that contains the utility control statement.

Syntax diagram



source-spec:



FROM-TABLE-spec:

The syntax diagram and option descriptions for the FROM-TABLE-spec are presented in the section “FROM-TABLE-spec syntax diagram and option descriptions” on page 737.

Option descriptions

DATA

Identifies the data that is to be selected for unloading with *table-name* in the from-table-spec. The DATA keyword is mutually exclusive with TABLESPACE, PART, and LIST keywords.

When you specify the DATA keyword, or you omit either the TABLESPACE or the LIST keyword, you must also specify at least one FROM TABLE clause.

TABLESPACE

Specifies the table space (and, optionally, the database to which it belongs) from which the data is to be unloaded.

database-name

The name of the database to which the table space belongs. The name cannot be DSNDB01 or DSNDB07.

The default value is DSNDB04.

tablespace-name

The name of the table space from which the data is to be unloaded. The specified table space must not be a LOB or XML table space.

PART

Identifies a partition or a range of partitions from which the data is to be unloaded. This keyword applies only if the specified table space is partitioned. You cannot specify PART with LIST. The maximum is 4096.

integer

Designates a single partition. *integer* must identify an existing partition number within the table space.

int1:int2

Designates a range of partitions from *int1* to *int2*. *int1* must be a positive integer that is less than the highest partition number within the table space. *int2* must be an integer that is greater than *int1* and less than or equal to the highest partition number.

If no PART keyword is specified in an UNLOAD control statement, the data from the entire table space is unloaded into a single unload data set.

FROMCOPY *data-set-name*

Indicates that data is to be unloaded from an image copy data set. When you specify FROMCOPY, the UNLOAD utility processes only the specified image copy data set. Alternatively, you can use the FROMCOPYDDN keyword where multiple image copy data sets can be concatenated under a single DD name.

You cannot unload LOB data or XML data from copies.

data-set-name

Specifies the name of a single image copy data set.

The image copy data set that you specify on the FROMCOPY keyword must be created by one of the following utilities:

- COPY
- COPYTOCOPY
- LOAD inline image copy
- MERGECOPY
- REORG TABLESPACE inline image copy
- DSN1COPY

If the specified image copy data set is a full image copy, either compressed or uncompressed records can be unloaded.

If the default of SYSTEMPAGES was used for the incremental image copy, either compressed or uncompressed records can be unloaded.

If the specified image copy data set is an incremental image copy or a copy of a partition or partitions, you can unload compressed records only when the same data set contains the dictionary pages for decompression. If an image copy data set contains a compressed row and a dictionary is not available, DB2 issues an error message.

When you specify FROMCOPY or FROMCOPYDDN, you can also specify selection criteria with either PART, FROM TABLE, or both, to qualify tables and rows that are to be unloaded.

Data cannot be unloaded from a VSAM FlashCopy . You can use COPY or COPYTOCOPY to create a sequential image copy from a VSAM FlashCopy . You can then unload data from the sequential image copy.

FROMVOLUME

Identifies the volume where the image copy data set resides.

CATALOG

Indicates that the data set is cataloged. Use this option only for an image copy that was created as a cataloged data set (which means that its volume serial is not recorded in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY).

vol-ser

Identifies the data set by an alphanumeric volume serial identifier of its first volume. Use this option only for an image copy that was created as a non-cataloged data set. To specify a data set that is stored on multiple tape volumes, identify the first *vol-ser* in the SYSCOPY record.

FROMSEQNO *n*

Identifies the image copy data set by its file sequence number. The FROMSEQNO option is required if you are unloading an image copy from a tape data set that is not cataloged.

n Specifies the file sequence number.

FROMCOPYDDN *ddname*

Indicates that data is to be unloaded from one or more image copy data sets that are associated with the specified *ddname*. Multiple image copy data sets (primarily for the copy of pieces) can be concatenated under a single DD name.

ddname

Identifies a DD name with which one or more image copy data sets are associated.

LIST *listdef-name*

Identifies the name of a list of objects that are defined by a LISTDEF utility control statement. The list can include table spaces, index spaces, databases, a tables, an index, and partitions. The list cannot include index spaces, LOB table spaces, and directory objects. You cannot use the LIST option to specify image copy data sets.

When you specify the LIST option, the referenced LISTDEF identifies:

- The table spaces from which the data is to be unloaded. You can use the pattern-matching feature of LISTDEF.
- The partitions (if a table space is partitioned) from which the data is to be unloaded (defined by the INCLUDE, EXCLUDE, and PARTLEVEL keywords in the LISTDEF statement).

The UNLOAD utility associates a single table space with one output data set, except when partition-parallelism is activated. When you use the LIST option with a LISTDEF that represents multiple table spaces, you must also define a data set TEMPLATE that corresponds to all of the table spaces and specify the *template-name* in the UNLDDN option.

If you want to generate the LOAD statements, you must define another TEMPLATE for the PUNCHDDN data set that is similar to UNLDDN. DB2 then generates a LOAD statement for each table space. This utility will only

process clone data if the CLONE keyword is specified. The use of CLONED YES on the LISTDEF statement is not sufficient.

The partitions or partition ranges can be specified in a list.

PUNCHDDN

Specifies the DD name for a data set or a template name that defines one or more data set names that are to receive the LOAD utility control statements that the UNLOAD utility generates.

ddname

Specifies the DD name.

The default value is **SYSPUNCH**.

template-name

Identifies the name of a data set template that is defined by a TEMPLATE utility control statement.

If the specified name is defined both as a DD name (in the JCL) and as a template name (in a TEMPLATE statement), it is treated as the DD name.

When you run the UNLOAD utility for multiple table spaces and you want to generate corresponding LOAD statements, you must have multiple output data sets that correspond to the table spaces so that DB2 retains all of the generated LOAD statements. In this case, you must specify an appropriate template name to PUNCHDDN. If you omit the PUNCHDDN specification, the LOAD statements are not generated.

If the partition variable (&PART. or &PA.) is included in a TEMPLATE for PUNCHDDN, DB2 replaces the &PART. or &PA variable with the lowest partition number in the list of partitions to be unloaded. The partition number is in the form *nnnnn*.

UNLDDN

Specifies the DD name for a data set or a template name that defines one or more data set names into which the data is to be unloaded.

ddname

Specifies the DD name.

The default value is **SYSREC**.

template-name

Identifies the name of a data set template that is defined by a TEMPLATE utility control statement.

If the specified name is defined both as a DD name (in the JCL) and as a template name (in a TEMPLATE statement), it is treated as the DD name.

When you run the UNLOAD utility for a partitioned table space, the selected partitions are unloaded in parallel if the following conditions are true:

1. You specify a template name for UNLDDN.
2. The template data set name contains the partition as a variable (&PART. or &PA.) without substring notation. This template name is expanded into multiple data sets that correspond to the selected partitions.
3. The TEMPLATE control statement does not contain all of the following options:
 - STACK(YES)
 - UNIT(TAPE)
 - An UNCNT value that is less than or equal to one.

If conditions 1 and 2 are true, but condition 3 is false, partition parallelism is not activated and all output data sets are stacked on one tape.

Similarly, when you run the UNLOAD utility for multiple table spaces, the output records are placed in data sets that correspond to the respective table spaces. Therefore the output data sets must be physically distinctive, and you must specify an appropriate template name to UNLDDN. If you omit the UNLDDN specification, the SYSREC DD name is not used, and an error occurs.

If the partition variable (&PART. or &PA.) is included in the TEMPLATE DSN statement when partition parallelism is not applicable (when the source is a non-partitioned table space or an image copy), the variable is replaced by '00000' in the actual data set name. In this case, warning message DSNU1252I is issued, and the UNLOAD utility issues return code 4.

EBCDIC

Specifies that all output data of the character type is to be in EBCDIC. If a different encoding scheme is used for the source data, the data (except for bit strings) is converted into EBCDIC.

If you do not specify EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID, the encoding scheme of the source data is preserved.

See the description of the CCSID option for this utility.

ASCII

Specifies that all output data of the character type is to be in ASCII. If a different encoding scheme is used for the source data, the data (except for bit strings) is converted into ASCII.

If you do not specify EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID, the encoding scheme of the source data is preserved.

See the description of the CCSID option for this utility.

UNICODE

Specifies that all output data of the character type (except for bit strings) is to be in Unicode. If a different encoding scheme is used for the source data, the data is converted into Unicode.

If you do not specify EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID, the encoding scheme of the source data is preserved.

See the description of the CCSID option of this utility.

CCSID(*integer1,integer2,integer3*)

Specifies up to three coded character set identifiers (CCSIDs) that are to be used for the data of character type in the output records, including data that is unloaded in the external character formats.

integer1 specifies the CCSID for SBCS data. *integer2* specifies the CCSID for mixed data. *integer3* specifies the CCSID for DBCS data. This option is not applied to data with a subtype of BIT.

If you specify both FORMAT DELIMITED and UNICODE, all output data is in CCSID 1208, UTF-8; any other specified CCSID is ignored.

The following specifications are also valid:

CCSID(*integer1*)

Indicates that only an SBCS CCSID is specified.

CCSID(*integer1,integer2*)

Indicates that an SBCS CCSID and a mixed CCSID are specified.

integer

Specifies either a valid CCSID or 0.

If you specify a value of 0 for one of the arguments or omit a value, the encoding scheme that is specified by EBCDIC, ASCII, or UNICODE is assumed for the corresponding data type (SBCS, MIXED, or DBCS).

If you do not specify EBCDIC, ASCII, or UNICODE:

- If the source data is of character type, the original encoding scheme is preserved.
- For character strings that are converted from numeric, date, time, or timestamp data, the default encoding scheme of the table is used. For more information, see the CCSID option of the CREATE TABLE statement in

If you specify EBCDIC, ASCII, or UNICODE, the CCSIDs specified for SBCS, DBCS, and MIXED must be valid CCSIDs for the specified encoding scheme, or 0.

When a CCSID conversion is requested, CCSID character substitutions can occur in the output string. Use the NOSUBS option to prevent possible character substitutions during CCSID conversion.

NOSUBS

Specifies that CCSID code substitution is not to be performed during unload processing.

When a string is converted from one CCSID to another (including EBCDIC, ASCII, and Unicode), a substitution character is sometimes placed in the output string. For example, this substitution occurs when a character (referred to as a code point) that exists in the source CCSID does not exist in the target CCSID. You can use the NOSUBS keyword to prevent the UNLOAD utility from allowing this substitution.

If you specify the NOSUBS keyword and character substitution is attempted while data is being unloaded, this action is treated as a conversion error. The record with the error is not unloaded, and the process continues until the total error count reaches the number that is specified by MAXERR.

NOPAD

Specifies that the variable-length columns in the unloaded records are to occupy the actual data length without additional padding. As a result, the unloaded or discarded records might have varying lengths. If XML columns are unloaded without the use of file reference variables, NOPAD is the default.

When you do not specify NOPAD:

- Default UNLOAD processing pads variable-length columns in the unloaded records to their maximum length, and the unloaded records have the same length for each table.
- The padded data fields are preceded by the length fields that indicate the size of the actual data without the padding.
- When the output records are reloaded with the LOAD utility, padded data fields are treated as varying-length data.

If you specify DELIMITED, the NOPAD option is the default for variable-length columns. For fixed-length columns, the normal padding rules apply.

Although LOAD processes records with variable-length columns that are unloaded or discarded by using the NOPAD option, these records cannot be processed by applications that process only fields in fixed positions. For example, the LOAD statement that is generated for the EMP sample table would look similar to the LOAD statement in Figure 72 on page 517.

SPANNED

Indicates whether records are to be unloaded into a VBS data set in spanned record format. For more information about spanned record format, see “Unloading data in spanned record format” on page 768.

YES

Indicates that the UNLOAD utility is to unload records in spanned record format.

For this function to work, you must specify in the field specification list that all LOB and XML data are to be at the end of the record. In that field specification list, do not specify length and POSITION for LOB and XML columns.

Specifying SPANNED YES also has the following effects:

- The UNLOAD utility ignores the RECFM attribute of the data set.
- The UNLOAD utility uses the NOPAD option.
- The TRUNCATE option has no effect.

If you specify SPANNED YES and DELIMITED, the SPANNED YES option is ignored.

If you specify SPANNED YES and PUNCHDDN, the generated LOAD statement lists the LOB and XML data in a field specification list in the corresponding order.

NO

Indicates that the UNLOAD utility is not to unload records in spanned record format.

DELIMITED

Specifies that the output data file is in a delimited format. When data is in a delimited format, all fields in the output data set are character strings or external numeric values. In addition, each column in a delimited file is separated from the next column by a column delimiter character.

For each of the delimiter types that you can specify, you must ensure that the delimiter character is specified in the code page of the target data. The delimiter character can be specified as either a character or hex constant. For example, to specify # as the delimiter, you can specify either COLDEL '#' or COLDEL X'23'. If the utility statement is coded in a character type that is different from the output file, such as a utility statement that is coded in EBCDIC and output data that is in Unicode, specify the delimiter character in the utility statement as a hex constant, or the result is unpredictable.

You cannot specify the same character for more than one type of delimiter (COLDEL, CHARDEL, and DECPT).

If you specify the FORMAT DELIMITED option, you cannot specify HEADER CONST or use any of the multiple FROM TABLE statements. Also, UNLOAD ignores any specified POSITION statements within the UNLOAD utility control statement.

For delimited output, UNLOAD does not add trailing padded blanks to variable-length columns, even if you do not specify the NOPAD option. For

fixed-length columns, the normal padding rules apply. For example, if a VARCHAR(10) field contains ABC, UNLOAD DELIMITED unloads the field as "ABC". However, for a CHAR(10) field that contains ABC, UNLOAD DELIMITED unloads it as "ABC ". For information about using delimited output and delimiter restrictions, see "Unloading delimited files" on page 777. For more information about delimited files see Appendix G, "Delimited file format," on page 1045.

COLDEL

Specifies the column delimiter that is used in the output file. The default is a comma (.). For ASCII and UTF-8 data this is X'2C', and for EBCDIC data it is a X'6B'.

CHAR DEL

Specifies the character string delimiter that is used in the output file. The default is a double quotation mark ("). For ASCII and UTF-8 data this is X'22', and for EBCDIC data it is X'7F'.

The UNLOAD utility adds the CHARDEL character before and after every character string. To delimit character strings that contain the character string delimiter, the UNLOAD utility repeats the character string delimiter where it used in the character string. The LOAD utility then interprets any pair of character delimiters that are found between the enclosing character delimiters as a single character. For example, the phrase what a "nice warm" day is unloaded as "what a ""nice warm"" day", and LOAD interprets it as what a "nice warm" day. The UNLOAD utility recognizes these character pairs for only CHAR, VARCHAR, and CLOB fields.

DECPT

Specifies the decimal point character that is used in the output file. The default is a period (.).

The default decimal point character is a period in a delimited file, X'2E' in an ASCII data file, and X'4B' in an EBCDIC data file.

FLOAT

Specifies the output format of the numeric floating-point data. This option applies to the binary output format only.

S390

Indicates that the binary floating point data is written to the output records in the S/390[®] internal format (also known as the hexadecimal floating point, or HFP).

IEEE

Indicates that the binary floating-point data is written to the output records in the IEEE format (also known as the binary floating point, or BFP).

MAXERR *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of records in error that are to be allowed; the unloading process terminates when this value is reached.

integer

Specifies the number of records in error that are allowed. When the error count reaches this number, the UNLOAD utility issues message DSNU1219 and terminates with return code 8.

The default value is 1, which indicates that UNLOAD stops when the first error is encountered. If you specify 0 or any negative number, execution continues regardless of the number of records that are in error.

If multiple table spaces are being processed, the number of records in error is counted for each table space. If the LIST option is used, you can add OPTION utility control statement (EVENT option with ITEMERROR) before the UNLOAD statement to specify that the table space in error is to be skipped and the subsequent table spaces are to be processed.

SHRLEVEL

Specifies whether other processes can access or update the table space or partitions while the data is being unloaded.

UNLOAD ignores the SHRLEVEL specification when the source object is an image copy data set.

The default value is SHRLEVEL CHANGE ISOLATION CS.

CHANGE

Specifies that rows can be read, inserted, updated, and deleted from the table space or partition while the data is being unloaded.

ISOLATION

Specifies the isolation level with SHRLEVEL CHANGE.

CS

Indicates that the UNLOAD utility is to read rows in cursor stability mode. With CS, the UNLOAD utility assumes CURRENTDATA(NO).

UR

Indicates that uncommitted rows, if they exist, are to be unloaded. The unload operation is performed with minimal interference from the other DB2 operations that are applied to the objects from which the data is being unloaded.

SKIP LOCKED DATA

Specifies that the UNLOAD utility is to skip rows on which incompatible locks are held by other transactions. This option applies to row level or page level lock.

REFERENCE

Specifies that during the unload operation, rows of the tables can be read, but cannot be inserted, updated, nor deleted by other DB2 threads.

When you specify SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, the UNLOAD utility drains writers on the table space from which the data is to be unloaded. When data is unloaded from multiple partitions, the drain lock is obtained for all of the selected partitions in the UTILINIT phase.

DECFLOAT_ROUNDMODE

Specifies the rounding mode to be used when DECFLOATs are manipulated. The following rounding modes are supported:

ROUND_CEILING

Round toward +infinity. The discarded digits are removed if they are all zero or if the sign is negative. Otherwise, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

ROUND_DOWN

Round toward 0 (truncation). The discarded digits are ignored.

ROUND_FLOOR

Round toward -infinity. The discarded digits are removed if they are all zero or positive. Otherwise, the sign is negative and the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

ROUND_HALF_DOWN

Round to the nearest number. If equidistant, round down. If the discarded digits are greater than 0.5, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up). The discarded digits are ignored if they are 0.5 or less.

ROUND_HALF_EVEN

Round to the nearest number. If equidistant, round so that the final digit is even. If the discarded digits are greater than .05, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up). The discarded digits are ignored if they are less than 0.5. If the result coefficient is .05 and the rightmost digit is even, the result coefficient is not altered. If the result coefficient is .05 and the rightmost digit is odd, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

ROUND_HALF_UP

Round to nearest. If equidistant, round up. If the discarded digits are greater than or equal to 0.5, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up). Otherwise the discarded digits are ignored.

ROUND_UP

Round away from 0. If all of the discarded digits are 0, the result is unchanged. Otherwise, the result coefficient should be incremented by 1 (rounded up).

If the user does not specify `DECFLOAT_ROUNDMODE`, the default value of the `DECFLOAT_ROUNDMODE` option is `DECFLOAT ROUNDING MODE` from the `DECP`.

IMPLICIT_TZ

Specifies the implicit time zone to use when timestamp values are being unloaded from a `TIMESTAMP` column with no time zone, and the field specification for the column is `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE EXTERNAL`.

'timezone-string'

Specifies the implicit time zone value. The time zone is the difference (in hours and minutes) between local time and UTC. The range of the hour component is -12 to 14, and the minute component is 00 to 59. The time zone is specified in the form `±th:tm`, with values ranging from -12:59 to +14:00.

`IMPLICIT_TZ` is a required keyword when the unload timestamp without time zone column to a timestamp with time zone column is used.

CLONE

Indicates that `UNLOAD` is to unload data from only clone tables in the specified table spaces. This utility will only process clone data if the `CLONE` keyword is specified. The use of `CLONED YES` on the `LISTDEF` statement is not sufficient. If you specify the name of the clone table in the `FROM TABLE` clause, you do not need to specify the `CLONE` keyword.

FROM-TABLE-spec syntax diagram and option descriptions

More than one table or partition for each table space can be unloaded with a single invocation of the `UNLOAD` utility. One `FROM TABLE` statement for each table that is to be unloaded is required to identify:

- A table name from which the rows are to be unloaded
- A field to identify the table that is associated with the rows that are to be unloaded from the table by using the `HEADER` option
- Sampling options for the table rows

- A list of field specifications for the table that is to be used to select columns that are to be unloaded
- Selection conditions, specified in the WHEN clause, that are to be used to qualify rows that are to be unloaded from the table

All tables that are specified by FROM TABLE statements must belong to the same table space. If rows from specific tables are to be unloaded, a FROM TABLE clause must be specified for each source table. If you do not specify a FROM TABLE clause for a table space, all the rows of the table space are unloaded.

Use a list of field specifications to specify the following characteristics:

- Column selection. Specifies the column names of a table that is to be unloaded. If a list of field specifications is given, only the listed columns are unloaded.
- Column ordering. Specifies the order of fields that are to be placed in the output records. If a list of field specifications is given, data of the listed columns is unloaded in the order of listed column names.
- Output field attributes and format. Specifies the data type, length, and format of the data in the output records.

If you omit a list of field specifications, all columns of the source table are unloaded in the defined column order for the table. The default output field types that correspond to the data types of the columns are used.

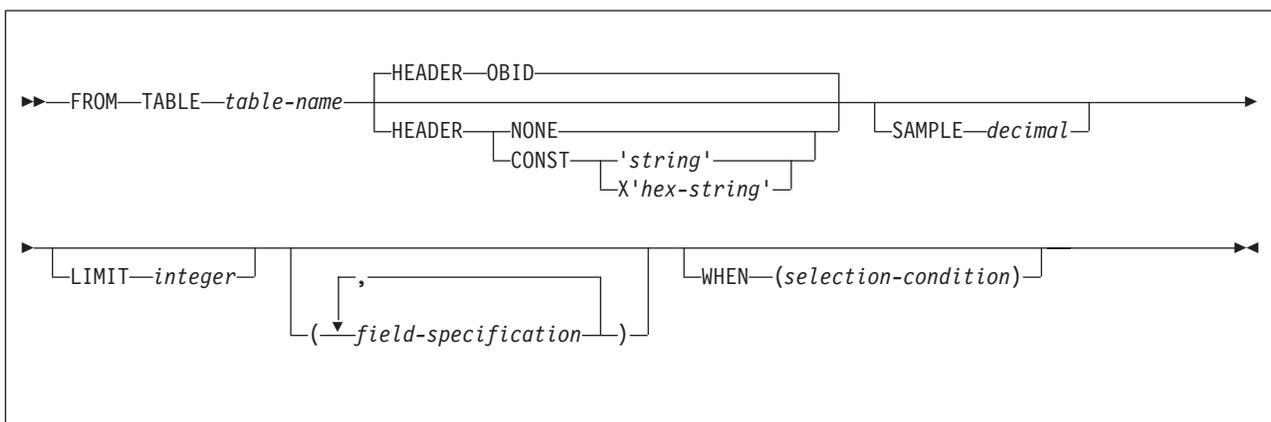
When unloading XML or LOB columns to a VBS data set, the LOB and XML values are written at the end of the record in their column definition order, as specified by the required field specification list. This order is the same order that the LOAD utility uses when reading XML and LOB values from a VBS data set.

In a FROM TABLE clause, you can use parentheses in only two situations: to enclose the entire field selection list, and in a WHEN selection clause. This usage avoids potential conflict between the keywords and field-names that are used in the field selection list. A valid sample of a FROM TABLE clause specification follows:

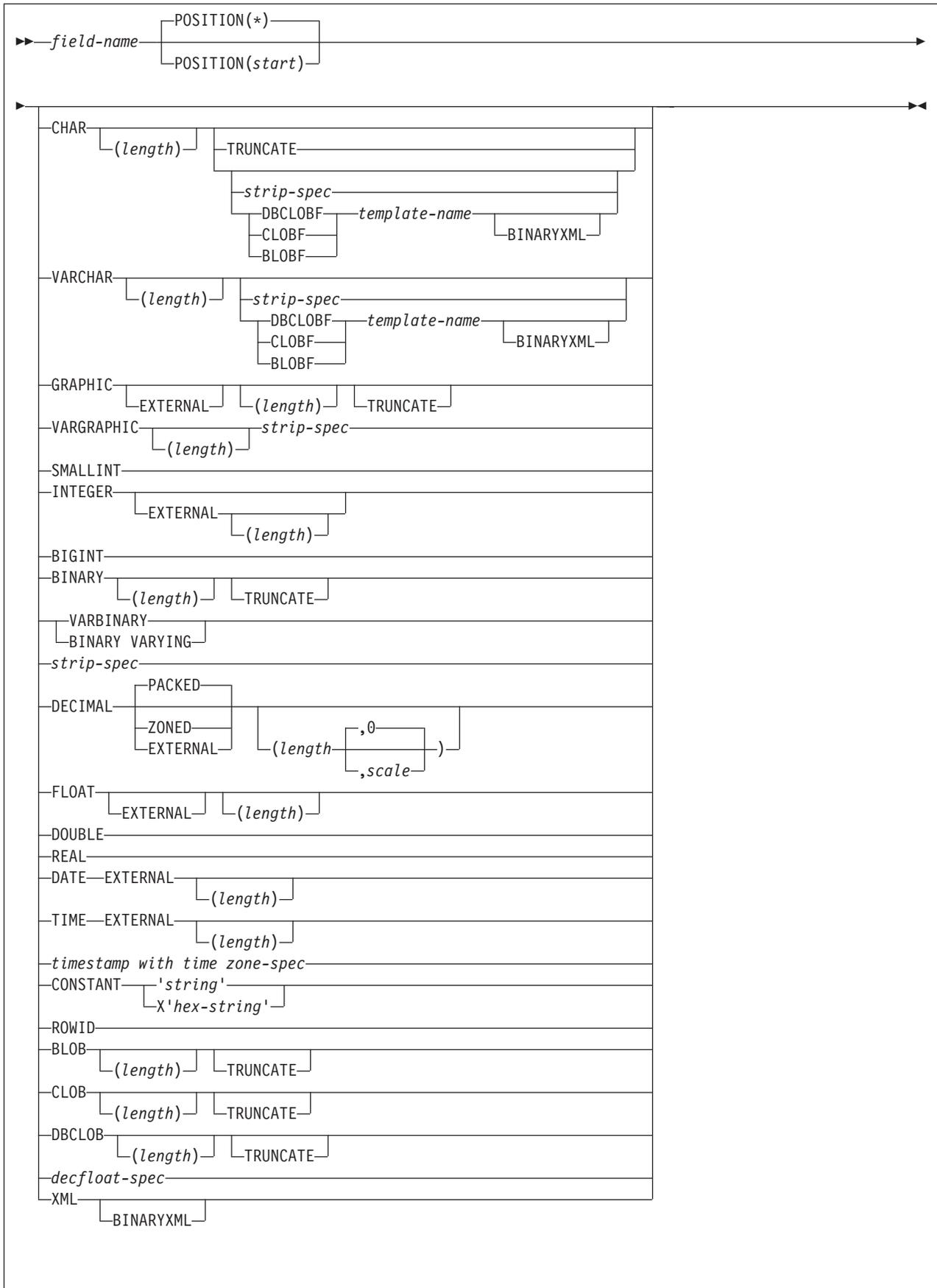
```
UNLOAD ...
  FROM TABLE tablename SAMPLE x (c1,c2) WHEN (c3>0)
```

You cannot specify FROM TABLE if the LIST option is already specified.

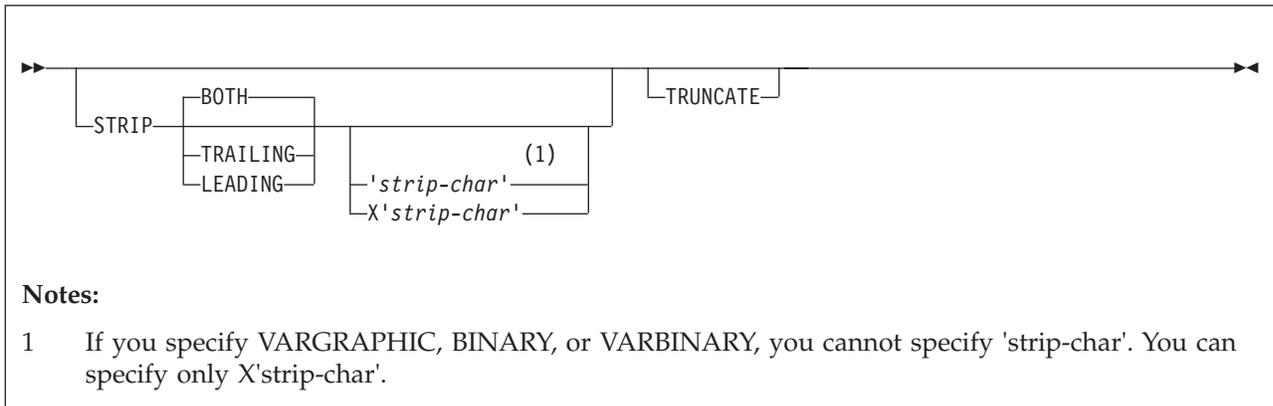
FROM-TABLE-spec



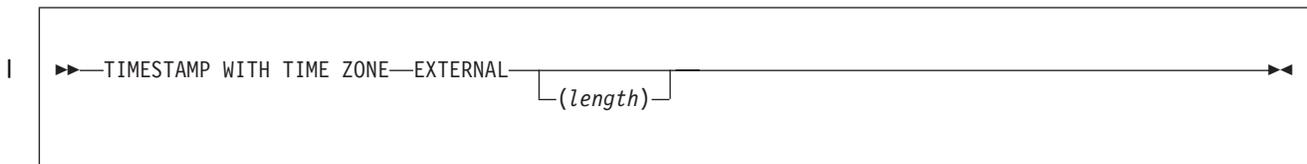
field-specification:



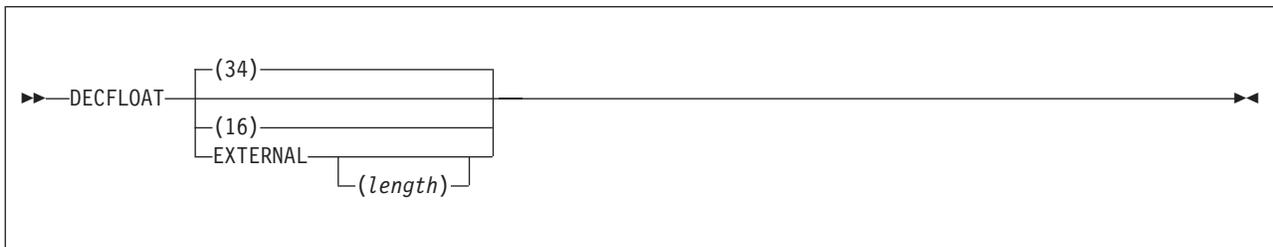
strip spec:



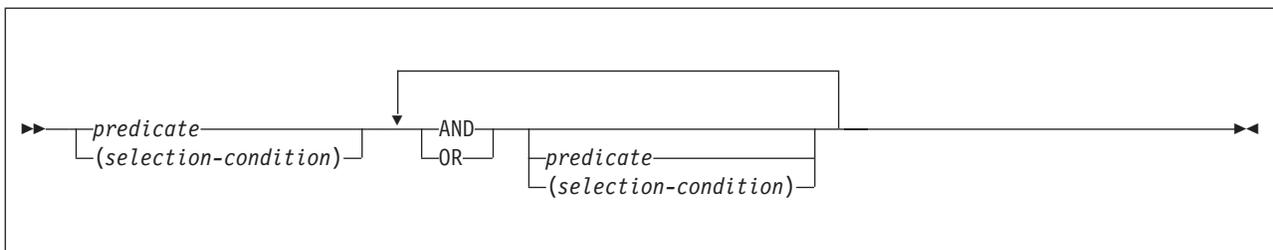
timestamp with time zone spec:



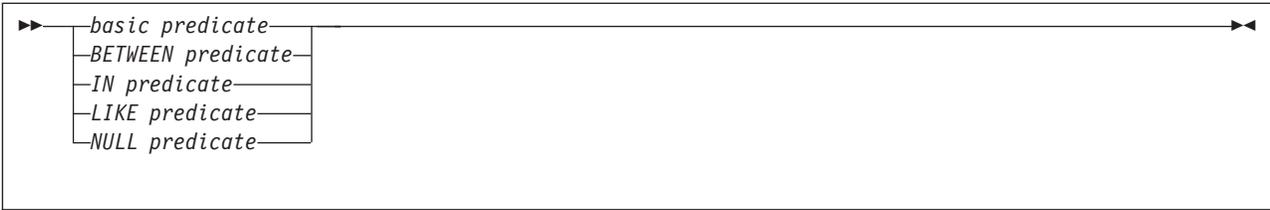
decfloat spec:



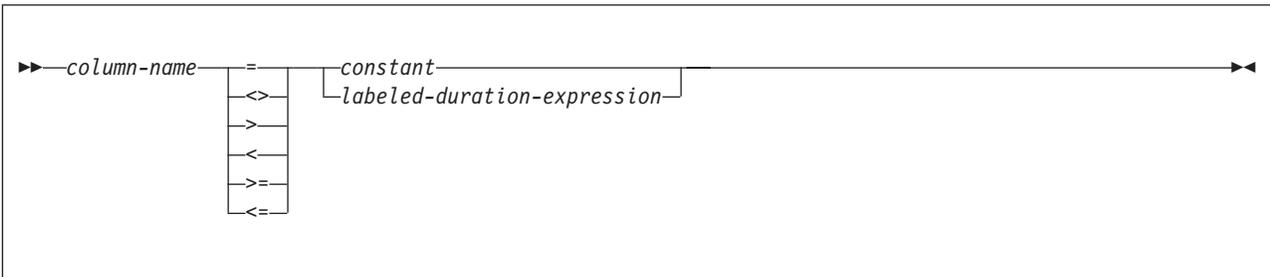
selection condition:



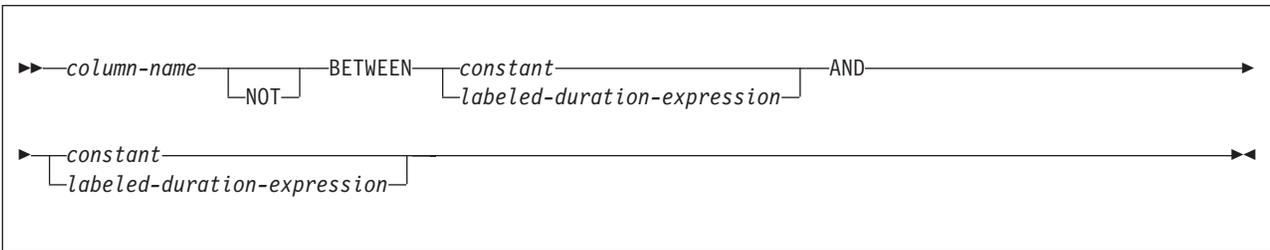
predicate:



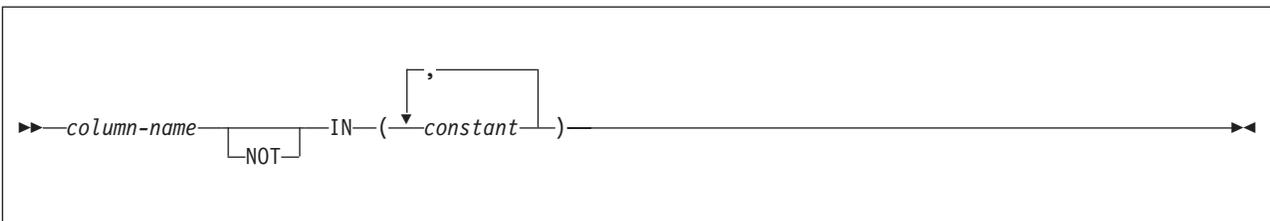
basic predicate:



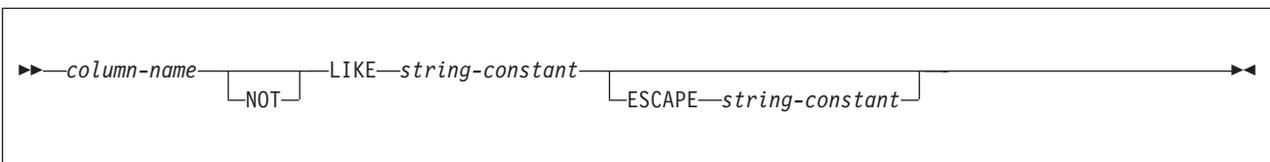
BETWEEN predicate:



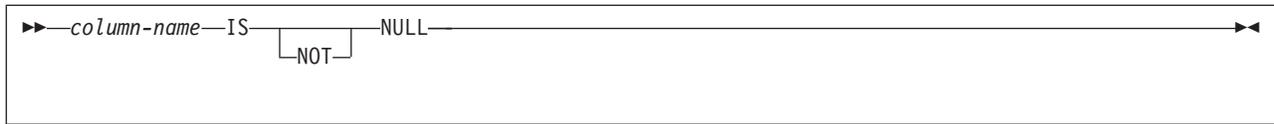
IN predicate:



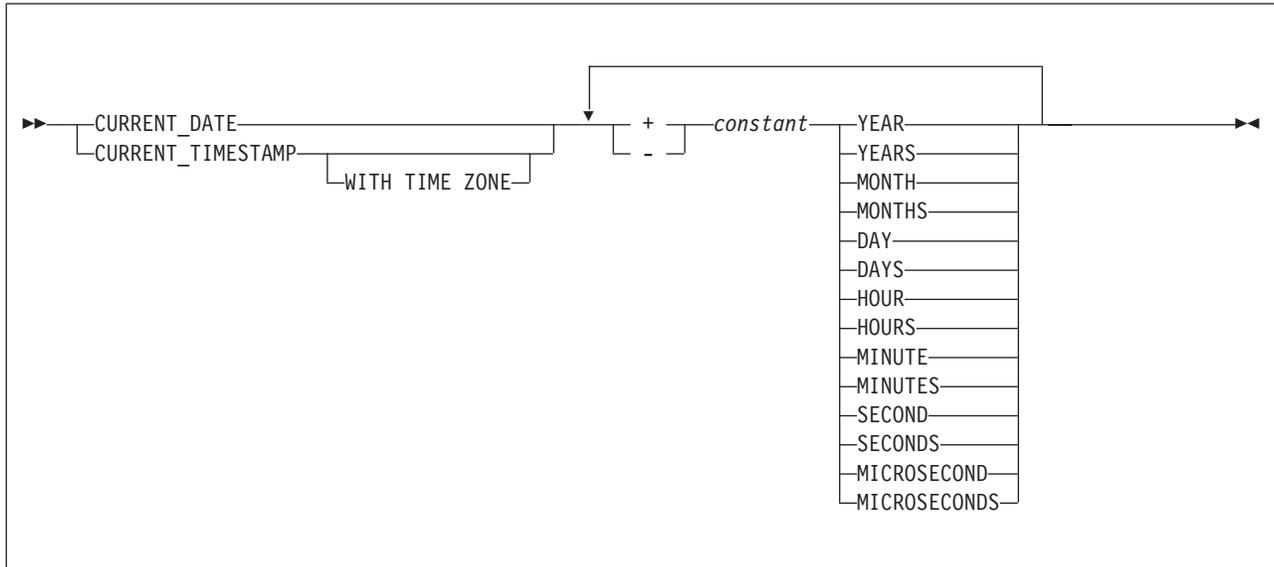
LIKE predicate:



NULL predicate:



labeled-duration-expression:



Option descriptions for FROM TABLE

table-name

Identifies a DB2 table from which the rows are to be unloaded and to which the options in the FROM TABLE clause are to be applied.

If the table name is not qualified by a schema name, the authorization ID of the invoker of the utility job step is used as the schema qualifier of the table name. Enclose the table name in quotation marks if the name contains a blank.

The table cannot be an accelerated query table.

HEADER

Specifies a constant header field, at the beginning of the output records, that can be used to associate an output record with the table from which it was unloaded.

If you specify a header field, it is used as the field selection criterion of the WHEN clause (a part of the INTO-TABLE specification) in the LOAD statement that is generated.

OBID

Specifies that the object identifier (OBID) for the table (a 2-byte binary value) is to be placed in the first 2 bytes of the output records that are unloaded from the table.

If you omit the HEADER option, **HEADER OBID** is the default, except for delimited files.

With HEADER OBID, the first 2 bytes of the output record cannot be used by the unloaded data. For example, consider the following UNLOAD statement:

```
UNLOAD ...
  FROM TABLE table-name HEADER OBID ...
```

The preceding UNLOAD statement generates a LOAD statement that is similar to the following example:

```
LOAD ...
  INTO TABLE table-name WHEN (1:2)=X'hh' ...
```

In this example, X'hh' is the hexadecimal notation of the OBID of table *table-name*.

NONE

Indicates that no record header field is to be created. HEADER NONE is the default value for a delimited file.

If HEADER NONE is specified in a FROM TABLE clause, the corresponding INTO TABLE clause in the generated LOAD statement does not have a WHEN specification. Therefore, if rows from multiple tables are unloaded and HEADER NONE is specified in one or more FROM TABLE clauses, rows that are unloaded from those tables are not able to be reloaded until you edit the generated LOAD statement. If you use the generated statement directly with the LOAD utility, the results might be unpredictable.

CONST

Specifies that a constant string is to be used as the record header. The given string operand determines the length of the header field. The string value must be enclosed by a pair of single quote characters.

For example, consider the following UNLOAD statement:

```
UNLOAD ...
  FROM TABLE table-name HEADER CONST 'abc' ...
```

The preceding UNLOAD statement generates a LOAD statement that is similar to the following example:

```
LOAD ...
  INTO TABLE table-name WHEN (1:3)='abc' ...
```

In this example, the given string is assumed to be in SBCS EBCDIC format. The output string of the HEADER field is in the specified or the default encoding scheme. If the encoding scheme that is used for output is not EBCDIC, the SBCS CCSID conversion is applied to the given string before it is placed in the output records. If the output SBCS encoding scheme is not EBCDIC, the WHEN condition in the generated LOAD statement contains a hexadecimal string.

You can also use the hexadecimal form, X'*hex-string*', to represent a string constant. If you want to specify a CONST string value in an encoding scheme other than SBCS EBCDIC, use the hexadecimal form. No CCSID conversion is performed if the hexadecimal form is used.

SAMPLE *decimal*

Indicates that only sampled rows of the table are to be unloaded. If selection conditions are specified by a WHEN clause within the same FROM TABLE clause, sampling is applied to the rows that are qualified by the WHEN selection conditions.

decimal

Specifies the percentage of the rows that are to be sampled in the decimal format. The precision is *ddd.dddd*, and the valid range is $0 \leq \textit{decimal} \leq 100$.

If the number of rows to which the sampling is to be applied is *N*:

- $\textit{decimal} \times N / 100$ rows are unloaded. (The fraction might be rounded to the nearest whole number.)
- If $\textit{decimal} > 0$ and $N > 0$, at least one row is unloaded.
- If $\textit{decimal} = 100$, all rows from the table are unloaded.
- If the given $\textit{decimal} = 0$ or $N = 0$, no row is unloaded from the table.

The sampling is applied for each individual table. If the rows from multiple tables are unloaded with sampling enabled, the referential integrity between the tables might be lost.

LIMIT *integer*

Specifies the maximum number of rows that are to be unloaded from a table. If the number of unloaded rows reaches the specified limit, message DSNU1201 is issued for the table, and no more rows are unloaded from the table. The process continues to unload qualified rows from the other tables.

When partition parallelism is activated, the LIMIT option is applied to each partition instead of to the entire table.

integer

Indicates the maximum number of rows that are to be unloaded from a table. If the specified number is less than or equal to zero, no row is unloaded from the table.

Like the SAMPLE option, if multiple tables are unloaded with the LIMIT option, the referential integrity between the tables might be lost.

field-name

Identifies a column name that must exist in the source table.

POSITION(*start*)

Specifies the field position in the output record. You can specify the position parameter as follows:

- * An asterisk, indicating that the field starts at the first byte after the last position of the previous field.

start A positive integer that indicates the start column of the data field.

The default value is **POSITION(*)**.

The first column (byte position) of an output record corresponds to POSITION(1). If you specify HEADER NONE in the FROM TABLE clause, the item that is specified by the HEADER option is placed at the beginning of all the records that are unloaded from the table. You must account for the space for the record header:

- HEADER OBID (the default case): 2 bytes from position 1.
- HEADER CONST 'string' or X'hex-string' case: The length of the given string from position 1.

If the source table column can be null, the utility places a NULL indicator byte at the beginning of the data field in the output record. For BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF columns, null values are indicated by a byte at the beginning of the file name. The *start* parameter (or *) points to the position of the NULL

indicator byte. In the generated LOAD statement, *start* is shifted by 1 byte to the right (as *start+1*) so that, in the LOAD statement, the start parameter of the POSITION option points to the next byte past the NULL indicator byte.

For a varying-length field, a length field precedes the actual data field (after the NULL indicator byte, if applicable). For BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF columns, the length of the file name is indicated by two bytes at the beginning of the file name. If the value cannot be null, the *start* parameter (or *) points to the first byte of the length field. The size of the length field is either 4 bytes (BLOB, CLOB, or DBCLOB) or 2 bytes (VARCHAR or VARGRAPHIC).

When you explicitly specify the output field positions by using *start* parameters (or using the * format) of the POSITION option, you must consider the following items as a part of the output field:

- For a field whose value can be null, a space for the NULL indicator byte
- For varying-length data, a space for the length field (either 2 bytes or 4 bytes)

“Layout of output fields” on page 775 illustrates the field layout in conjunction with the POSITION option, NULL indicator byte, the length field for a varying-length field, the *length* parameter, and the actual data length.

The POSITION option is useful when the output fields must be placed at desired positions in the output records. The use of the POSITION parameters, however, can restrict the size of the output data fields. Use care when explicitly specifying *start* parameters for nullable and varying-length fields. The TRUNCATE option might be required, if applicable, to fit a data item in a shorter space in an output record.

If you omit the POSITION option for the first field, the field starts from position 1 if HEADER NONE is specified. Otherwise, the field starts from the next byte position past the record header field. If POSITION is omitted for a subsequent field, the field is placed next to the last position of the previous field without any gap.

If NOPAD is specified and POSITION parameters are given for certain fields, the effect of the NOPAD option might be lost because the fields with *start* parameters (other than the default *) always start at the fixed positions in the output records.

The POSITION option is ignored for delimited output files.

CHAR

Indicates that the output field is a character type with fixed length. You can use CHARACTER in place of CHAR. If the source table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed at the beginning of the output field for a non-delimited output file.

If you specify the EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID options, the output data that corresponds to the specified option, is encoded in the CCSID, depending on the subtype of the source data (SBCS or MIXED). If the subtype is BIT, no conversion is applied.

(*length*)

Specifies the size of the output data in bytes.

If followed by BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF, the length specifies the size of the expanded template name in bytes.

If the *length* parameter is omitted, the default is the maximum length that is defined on the source table column or the length in bytes of the

expanded template name if BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF follows the CHAR keyword. When the *length* parameter is specified:

- If the *length* is less than the size of the table column, the data is truncated to the length if the TRUNCATE keyword is present; otherwise, a conversion error occurs.
- For the case where BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF immediately follows, an error will occur if the *length* is less than the size of the expanded template name.
- If the *length* is larger than the size of the table column, the output field is padded by the default pad characters to the specified length.

BLOBF

Specifies that the output field is to contain the name of the file to which the BLOB or XML is to be unloaded without CCSID conversion.

BINARYXML Specifies that the XML document is to be unloaded using file reference variables in Extensible Dynamic Binary XML DB2 Client/Server Binary XML Format (binary XML) format. This option is only supported when unloading an XML column.

CLOBF

Specifies that the output field is to contain the name of the file to which the CLOB or XML is to be unloaded with any required CCSID conversion.

DBCLOBF

Specifies that the output field is to contain the name of the file to which the DBCLOBF or XML is to be unloaded with any required CCSID conversion.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a character string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output record. Truncation occurs at the character boundary. See “Specifying TRUNCATE and STRIP options for output data” on page 780 for the truncation rules that are used in the UNLOAD utility. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

VARCHAR

Specifies that the output field type is character of varying length. A 2-byte binary field indicating the length of data in bytes is prepended to the data field. If the table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed before this length field for a non-delimited output file.

If you specify the EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID options, the output data is encoded in the CCSID corresponding to the specified option, depending on the subtype of the source data (SBCS or MIXED). If the subtype is BIT, no conversion is applied.

(length)

Specifies the maximum length of the actual data field in bytes. If you also specify NOPAD, it indicates the maximum allowable space for the data in the output records; otherwise, the space of the specified length is reserved for the data.

If followed by BLOBF, CLOBF, or DBCLOBF, length specifies the size of the expanded template name in bytes. If the length is less than the size of the expanded template name an error will occur.

If the length parameter is omitted, the default is the smaller of 255 and the maximum length that is defined on the source table column.

BLOBF

Specifies that the output field is to contain the name of the file to which the BLOB or XML is to be unloaded without CCSID conversion.

BINARYXML Specifies that the XML document is to be unloaded using file reference variables in binary XML format. This option is only supported when unloading an XML column.

CLOBF

Specifies that the output field is to contain the name of the file to which the CLOB or XML is to be unloaded with any required CCSID conversion.

DBCLOBF

Specifies that the output field is to contain the name of the file to which the DBCLOBF or XML is to be unloaded with any required CCSID conversion.

STRIP

Specifies that UNLOAD is to remove binary zeroes (the default) or the specified string from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data. UNLOAD adjusts the VARCHAR length field (for the output field) to the length of the stripped data.

The STRIP option is applicable if the subtype of the source data is BIT. In this case, no CCSID conversion is performed on the specified strip character (even if it is given in the form '*strip-char*').

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data. The default is **BOTH**.

TRAILING

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

'strip-char'

Specifies a single-byte character that is to be stripped. Specify this character value in EBCDIC. Depending on the output encoding scheme, UNLOAD applies SBCS CCSID conversion to the *strip-char* value before it is used in the strip operation. If you want to specify a *strip-char* value in an encoding scheme other than EBCDIC, use the hexadecimal form. UNLOAD does not perform CCSID conversion if the hexadecimal form is used.

X'strip-char'

Specifies a single-byte character that is to be stripped. It can be specified in the hexadecimal form, *X'hex-string'*, where *hex-string* is two hexadecimal characters that represent a single SBCS character. If the *strip-char* operand is omitted, the default is the blank character, which is coded as follows:

- X'40', for the EBCDIC-encoded output case

- X'20' for the ASCII-encoded output case
- X'20' the Unicode-encoded output case

The strip operation is applied after the character code conversion, if the output character encoding scheme is different from the one that is defined on the source data. Therefore, if a strip character is specified in the hexadecimal format, you must specify the character in the encoding scheme that is used for output.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a character string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output records. Truncation occurs at a character boundary. See “Specifying TRUNCATE and STRIP options for output data” on page 780 for the truncation rules that are used in the UNLOAD utility. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

GRAPHIC

Specifies that the output field is of the fixed-length graphic type. If the table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed before the actual data field for any non-delimited output file.

If the output is in EBCDIC, the shift-in and shift-out characters are not included at the beginning and at the end of the data.

(length)

Specifies the number of DBCS characters (the size of the output data in bytes is twice the given length). If the given *length* is larger than the source data length, the output field is padded with the default pad character.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a graphic character string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output records. Truncation occurs at a character (DBCS) boundary. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

GRAPHIC EXTERNAL

Specifies that the data is to be written in the output records as a fixed-length field of the graphic type with the external format; that is, the shift-out (SO) character is placed at the starting position, and the shift-in (SI) character is placed at the ending position. The byte count of the output field is always an even number.

GRAPHIC EXTERNAL is supported only in the EBCDIC output mode (by default or when the EBCDIC keyword is specified).

If the *start* parameter of the POSITION option is used to specify the output column position, it points to the (inserted) shift-out character at the beginning of the field. The shift-in character is placed at the next byte position past the last double-byte character of the data.

(length)

Specifies a number of DBCS characters, excluding the shift characters (as in the graphic type column definition that is used in a CREATE TABLE statement) nor the NULL indicator byte if the source column can be null. If the length parameter is omitted, the default output field size is the length that is defined on the corresponding table column, plus two bytes (shift-out and shift-in characters).

If the specified *length* is larger than the size of the data, the field is padded on the right with the default DBCS padding character.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a graphic character string is to be truncated from the right by the DBCS characters, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output records. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data. An error can also occur with the TRUNCATE option if the available space is less than 4 bytes (4 bytes is the minimum size for a GRAPHIC EXTERNAL field; shift-out character, one DBCS, and shift-in character); or fewer than 5 bytes if the field is can be null (the 4 bytes plus the NULL indicator byte).

VARGRAPHIC

Specifies that the output field is to be of the varying-length graphic type. A 2-byte binary length field is prepended to the actual data field. If the table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed before this length field for any non-delimited output file.

(length)

Specifies the maximum length of the actual data field in the number of DBCS characters. If you also specify NOPAD, it indicates the maximum allowable space for the data in the output records; otherwise, the space of the specified length is reserved for the data.

If the length parameter is omitted, the default is the smaller of 127 and the maximum defined length of the source table column.

STRIP

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove binary zeroes (the default) or the specified string from the unloaded data. UNLOAD adjusts the VARGRAPHIC length field (for the output field) to the length of the stripped data (the number of DBCS characters).

The effect of the STRIP option is the same as the SQL STRIP scalar function.

BOTH

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data. The default is **BOTH**.

TRAILING

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of blank or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

X'strip-char'

Specifies a DBCS character that is to be stripped in the hexadecimal format, *X'hhhh'*, where *hhhh* is four hexadecimal characters that represent a DBCS character. If this operand is omitted, the default is a DBCS blank in the output encoding scheme (for example, *X'4040'* for the EBCDIC-encoded output or *X'8140'* for CCSID 301).

The strip operation is applied after the character code conversion, if the output character encoding scheme is different from the one that is defined on the source data. Therefore, if you specify a strip character, it must be in the encoding scheme that is used for the output.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a graphic character string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output records. Truncation occurs at a DBCS character boundary. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

SMALLINT

Specifies that the output field is a 2-byte binary integer (a negative number is in two's complement notation). To use the external format, specify **INTEGER EXTERNAL**.

If the source data type is INTEGER, DECIMAL, FLOAT, BIGINT, or DECFLOAT (either 4-byte or 8-byte format), an error occurs when the data is greater than 32 767 or less than -32 768.

A SMALLINT output field requires 2 bytes, and the *length* option is not available.

INTEGER

Specifies that the output field is a 4-byte binary integer (a negative number is in two's complement notation).

If the original data type is DECIMAL, FLOAT, BIGINT, or DECFLOAT (either 4-byte or 8-byte format), an error occurs when the original data is greater than 2 147 483 647 or less than -2 147 483 648.

An INTEGER output field requires 4 bytes, and the *length* option is not available.

INTEGER EXTERNAL

Specifies that the output field is to contain a character string that represents an integer number.

(length)

Indicates the size of the output data in bytes, including a space for the sign character. When the *length* is given and the character notation does not fit in the space, an error occurs. The default is 20 characters (including a space for the sign).

If the value is negative, a minus sign precedes the numeric digits. If the output field size is larger than the length of the data, the output data is left justified and blanks are padded on the right.

If the source data type is DECIMAL, FLOAT (either 4-byte or 8-byte format), or DECFLOAT (either 8-byte or 16-byte format), an error occurs when the original data is greater than 9 223 372 036 854 775 807 or less than -9 223 372 036 854 775 808.

BIGINT

Specifies that the output field is an 8-byte binary integer (a negative number is in two's complement notation). To use the external format, specify **INTEGER EXTERNAL**.

If the original data type is DECIMAL, FLOAT, or DECFLOAT (either 4-byte or 8-byte format), an error occurs when the original data is greater than 9 223 372 036 854 775 807 or less than -9 223 372 036 854 775 808.

BINARY(*length*)

Indicates that the output field is a binary string type with a fixed length. If the source table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed at the

beginning of the output field for a nondelimited output file. No data conversion is applied to the field. The default for *X'strip-char* is hexadecimal zero (X'00').

TRUNCATE

Indicates that the output binary string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output records. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

VARBINARY

Indicates that the output field is a binary string type with varying length. A 2-byte binary field indicating the length of data in bytes is prepended to the data field. If the table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed before the length field for a non-delimited output file. No data conversion is applied to the field. The default for *X'strip-char* is hexadecimal zero (X'00').

STRIP

Specifies that UNLOAD is to remove binary zeroes (the default) or the specified string from the beginning, the end, or both ends of the data. UNLOAD adjusts the VARBINARY length field (for the output field) to the length of the stripped data.

BOTH

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of binary zeroes or the specified strip character from the beginning and end of the data. The default is **BOTH**.

TRAILING

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of binary zeroes or the specified strip character from the end of the data.

LEADING

Indicates that UNLOAD is to remove occurrences of binary zeroes or the specified strip character from the beginning of the data.

X'strip-char

Specifies a single-byte character that is to be stripped. It can be specified only in the hexadecimal form, *X'hex-string'*, where *hex-string* is two hexadecimal characters that represent a single SBCS character.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a binary string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output records. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

DECIMAL

Specifies that the output data is a number that is represented by the indicated decimal format (either PACKED, ZONED, or EXTERNAL). If you specify the keyword DECIMAL by itself, packed-decimal format is assumed.

PACKED

Specifies that the output data is a number that is represented by the packed-decimal format. You can use **DEC** or **DEC PACKED** as an abbreviated form of the keyword.

The packed-decimal representation of a number is of the form *ddd...ds*, where *d* is a decimal digit that is represented by 4 bits, and *s* is a 4-bit sign character (hexadecimal A, C, E, or F for a positive number, and hexadecimal B or D for a negative number).

length

Specifies the number of digits (not including the sign digit) that are to be placed in the output field. The length must be between 1 and 31. If the length is odd, the size of the output data field is $(length+1) / 2$ bytes; if even, $(length / 2)+1$ byte.

If the source data type is DECIMAL and the *length* parameter is omitted, the default length is determined by the column attribute defined on the table. Otherwise, the default length is 31 digits (16 bytes).

scale

Specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal point. (Note that, in this case, a decimal point is not included in the output field.) The number must be an integer that is greater than or equal to zero and less than or equal to the length.

The default depends on the column attribute that is defined on the table. If the source data type is DECIMAL, the defined *scale* value is the default value; otherwise, the default value is 0.

If you specify the output field size as less than the length of the data, an error occurs. If the specified field size is greater than the length of data, X'0' is padded on the left.

ZONED

Specifies that the output data is a number that is represented by the zoned-decimal format. You can use DEC ZONED as an abbreviated form of the keyword.

The zoned-decimal representation of a number is of the form $znznzn\dots z/sn$, where n denotes a 4 bit decimal digit (called the numeric bits); z is the digit's zone (left 4 bits of a byte); s is the right-most operand that can be a zone (z) or can be a sign value (hexadecimal A, C, E, or F for a positive number, and hexadecimal B or D for a negative number).

length

Specifies the number of bytes (that is the number of decimal digits) that are placed in the output field. The length must be between 1 and 31.

If the source data type is DECIMAL and the *length* parameter is omitted, the default length is determined by the column attribute that is defined on the table. Otherwise, the default length is 31 bytes.

scale

Specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal point. (Note that, in this case, a decimal point is not included in the output field.) The number must be an integer greater than or equal to zero and less than or equal to the length.

The default depends on the column attribute that is defined on the table. If the source data type is DECIMAL, the defined *scale* value is the default value; otherwise, the default value is 0.

If you specify the output field size as less than the length of the data, an error occurs. If the specified field size is greater than the length of data, X'F0' is padded on the left.

EXTERNAL

Specifies that the output data is a character string that represents a number in the form of $\pm dd\dots d.ddd\dots d$, where d is a numeric character 0-9. (The plus sign for a positive value is omitted.)

length

Specifies the overall length of the output data (the number of characters including a sign, and a decimal point if *scale* is specified).

If the source data type is DECIMAL and the *length* parameter is omitted, the default length is determined by the column attribute that is defined on the table. Otherwise, the default length is 33 (31 numeric digits, plus a sign and a decimal point). The minimum value of *length* is 3 to accommodate the sign, one digit, and the decimal point.

scale

Specifies the number of digits to the right of the decimal point. The number must be an integer that is greater than or equal to zero and less than or equal to $length - 2$ (to allow for the sign character and the decimal point).

If the source data type is DECIMAL and the *length* parameter is omitted, the default scale is determined by the column attribute that is defined on the table. Otherwise, the default value is 0.

An error occurs if the character representation of a value does not fit in the given or default field size (precision). If the source data type is floating point and a data item is too small for the precision that is defined by *scale*, the value of zero (not an error) is returned.

FLOAT(*length*)

Specifies that the output data is a binary floating-point number (32-bit or single-precision FLOAT if the *length* is between one and 21 inclusive; 64-bit or double-precision FLOAT if the *length* is between 22 and 53 inclusive). If the *length* parameter is omitted, the 64-bit format is assumed (output field size is 8 bytes). Note that the *length* parameter for the FLOAT type does not represent the field size in bytes.

The format of the binary floating-point output is controlled by the global FLOAT option. The default is S/390 format (Hexadecimal Floating Point or HFP). If you specify FLOAT(IEEE), all the binary floating-point output is in IEEE format (Binary Floating Point or BFP). When you specify FLOAT(IEEE) and the source data type DOUBLE is unloaded as REAL, an error occurs if the source data cannot be expressed by the IEEE (BFP) 32-bit notation.

EXTERNAL(*length*)

Specifies that the output data is a number that is represented by a character string in floating-point notation, $\pm d.ddd\dots dddE\pm nn$, where d is a numeric character (0-9) for the significant digits; nn after the character E , and the sign consists of two numeric characters for the exponent.

(*length*)

Specifies the total field length in bytes, including the first sign character, the decimal point, the E character, the second sign character, and the two-digit exponent. If the number of characters in the result is less than the specified or the default length, the result is padded to the right with blanks. The length, if specified, must be greater than or equal to 8.

The default output field size is 14 if the source data type is the 32-bit FLOAT; otherwise, the default is 24.

A FLOAT EXTERNAL output field requires a space of at least seven characters in the output record to accommodate the minimal floating point notation. Otherwise, an error occurs.

DOUBLE

Specifies that the output data is in 64-bit floating point notation. If DOUBLE is used, the *length* parameter must not be specified.

REAL

Specifies that the output data is in 32-bit floating point notation. If REAL is used, the *length* parameter must not be specified.

DATE EXTERNAL

Specifies that the output field is for a character string representation of a date. The output format of date depends on the DB2 installation.

(length)

Specifies the size of the data field in bytes in the output record. A DATE EXTERNAL field requires a space of at least 10 characters. If the space is not available, an error occurs. If the specified *length* is larger than the size of the data, blanks are padded on the right.

TIME EXTERNAL

Specifies that the output field is for a character string representation of a time. The output format of time depends on the DB2 installation.

(length)

Specifies the size of the data field in bytes in the output record. A TIME EXTERNAL field requires a space of at least eight characters. If the space is not available, a conversion error occurs. If the specified *length* is larger than the size of the data, blanks are padded on the right.

TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL

Specifies that the output field is for a character string representation of a timestamp.

(length)

Specifies the size of the data field in bytes in the output record. A TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL field requires a space of at least 19 characters. If the space is not available, an error occurs. The *length* parameter, if specified, determines the output format of the TIMESTAMP. If the specified *length* is larger than the size of the data, the field is padded on the right with the default padding character.

TIMESTAMP WITH TIMEZONE EXTERNAL

Specifies that the output field is for a character string representation of a timestamp.

(length)

Specifies the size of the data field in bytes in the output record. A TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE EXTERNAL field requires a space of at least 26 characters. If the space is not available, an error occurs. The *length* parameter, if specified, determines the output format of the TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE. If the specified *length* is larger than the size of the data, the field is padded on the right with the default padding character.

CONSTANT

Specifies that the output records are to have an extra field containing a constant value. The field name that is associated with the CONSTANT keyword must not coincide with a table column name (the field name is for

clarification purposes only). A CONSTANT field always has a fixed length that is equal to the length of the given string.

'string'

Specifies the character string that is to be inserted in the output records at the specified or default position. A string is the required operand of the CONSTANT option. If the given string is in the form *'string'*, it is assumed to be an EBCDIC SBCS string. However, the output string for a CONSTANT field is in the specified or default encoding scheme. (That is, if the encoding scheme used for output is not EBCDIC, the SBCS CCSID conversion is applied to the given string before it is placed in output records.)

X'hex-string'

Specifies the character string in hexadecimal form, *X'hex-string'*, that is to be inserted in the output records at the specified or default position. If you want to specify a CONSTANT string value in an encoding scheme other than SBCS EBCDIC, use the hexadecimal form. No CCSID conversion is performed if the hexadecimal form is used.

For a CONSTANT field, no other field selection list options should be specified.

If a CONSTANT field is inserted, it will not be included in the generated LOAD statement (the LOAD statement is generated so that the CONSTANT field is skipped).

If you specify both FORMAT DELIMITED and CONSTANT, the generated LOAD statement is not usable.

ROWID

Specifies that the output data is of type ROWID. The field type ROWID can be specified if and only if the column that is to be unloaded is of type ROWID. The keyword is provided for consistency purposes.

ROWID fields have varying length and a 2-byte binary length field is prepended to the actual data field.

For the ROWID type, no data conversion nor truncation is applied. If the output field size is too small to unload ROWID data, an error occurs.

If the source is an image copy and a ROWID column is selected, and if the page set header page is missing in the specified data set, the UNLOAD utility terminates with the error message DSNU1228I. This situation can occur when the source is an image copy data set of DSNUM that is greater than one for a nonpartitioned table space that is defined on multiple data sets.

BLOB

Indicates that the column is to be unloaded as a binary large object (BLOB). No data conversion is applied to the field.

When you specify the BLOB field type, a 4-byte binary length field is placed in the output record prior to the actual data field. If the source table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed before the length field.

(length)

Specifies the maximum length of the actual data field in bytes. If you specify NOPAD, it indicates the maximum allowable space for the data in the output records; otherwise, the space of the specified length is reserved for the data.

The default is the maximum length that is defined on the source table column.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a BLOB string is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output record. For BLOB data, truncation occurs at a byte boundary. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

CLOB

Indicates that the column is to be unloaded as a character large object (CLOB).

When you specify the CLOB field type, a 4-byte binary length field is placed in the output record prior to the actual data field. If the source table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed before the length field.

If you specify the EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID options, the output data is encoded in the CCSID corresponding to the specified option, depending on the subtype of the source data (SBCS or MIXED). No conversion is applied if the subtype is BIT.

(length)

Specifies the maximum length of the actual data field in bytes. If you specify NOPAD, it indicates the maximum allowable space for the data in the output records; otherwise, the space of the specified length is reserved for the data.

The default is the maximum length that is defined on the source table column.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a CLOB string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output record. For CLOB data, truncation occurs at a character boundary. See "Specifying TRUNCATE and STRIP options for output data" on page 780 for the truncation rules that are used in the UNLOAD utility. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

DBCLOB

Indicates that the column is to be unloaded as a double-byte character large object (DBCLOB).

If you specify the DBCLOB field type, a 4-byte binary length field is placed in the output record prior to the actual data field. If the source table column can be null, a NULL indicator byte is placed before the length field.

If you specify the EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID options, the output data is encoded in the CCSID corresponding to the specified option; DBCS CCSID is used.

(length)

Specifies the maximum length of the actual data field in the number of DBCS characters. If you specify NOPAD, it indicates the maximum allowable space for the data in the output records; otherwise, the space of the specified length is reserved for the data.

The default is the maximum length that is defined on the source table column.

TRUNCATE

Indicates that a DBCS string (encoded for output) is to be truncated from

the right, if the data does not fit in the available space for the field in the output record. For a DBCLOB data, truncation occurs at a character (DBCS) boundary. See “Specifying TRUNCATE and STRIP options for output data” on page 780 for the truncation rules that are used in the UNLOAD utility. Without TRUNCATE, an error occurs when the output field size is too small for the data.

DECFLOAT (*length*)

Specifies either a 128-bit decimal floating-point number or a 64-bit decimal floating-point number. The value of the length must be either 16 or 34. If the length is 16, the number is in 64 bit decimal floating-point number format. If the length is 34, the number is in 128 bit decimal floating-point format. The default length is determined by the column attribute defined on the table. Otherwise, the default length is 34 (16 bytes).

DECFLOAT EXTERNAL

Specifies a string of characters that represent a number. The format is an SQL numeric constant.

(*length*)

Specifies the total field length in bytes. This length includes the first sign character, the decimal point, the E character, the second sign character, and the exponent if in the string. If the number of characters in the result is less than the specified or the default length, the result is padded to the right with blanks. The character representation of a value must fit in the given or default field size.

The default output field size is 23 if the source data type is the DECFLOAT(16). Otherwise, the default is 42.

XML

Specifies that an XML column is being unloaded directly to the output record.

BINARYXML Specifies that the XML document is to be unloaded in binary XML format.

WHEN

Indicates which records in the table space are to be unloaded. If no WHEN clause is specified for a table in the table space, all of the records are unloaded.

The option following WHEN describes the conditions for unloading records from a table.

Data in the table can be in EBCDIC, ASCII, or Unicode. If the target table is in Unicode and the character constants are specified in the utility control statement as EBCDIC, the UNLOAD utility converts these constants to Unicode. To use a constant when the target table is ASCII, specify the hexadecimal form of the constant (instead of the character string form) in the condition for the WHEN clause.

selection condition

Specifies a condition that is true, false, or unknown about a given row. When the condition is true, the row qualifies for UNLOAD. When the condition is false or unknown, the row does not qualify.

The result of a selection condition is derived by application of the specified *logical operators* (AND and OR) to the result of each specified predicate. If logical operators are not specified, the result of the selection condition is the result of the specified predicate.

Selection conditions within parentheses are evaluated first. If the order of evaluation is not specified by parentheses, AND is applied before OR.

If the control statement is in the same encoding scheme as the input data, you can code character constants in the control statement. Otherwise, if the control statement is not in the same encoding scheme as the input data, you must code the condition with hexadecimal constants. For example, if the table space is in EBCDIC and the control statement is in UTF-8, use (1:1) = X'31' in the condition rather than (1:1) = '1'.

Restriction: UNLOAD cannot filter rows that contain encrypted data.

predicate

Specifies a condition that is true, false, or unknown about a row.

A DECFLOAT column or DECFLOAT constant cannot be specified in the predicate.

Column names in the predicate are case-sensitive. For example, if a column in the source table is named SALARY, SALARY=20000 is a valid predicate, but salary=20000 is not a valid predicate.

basic predicate

Specifies the comparison of a column with a constant. If the value of the column is null, the result of the predicate is unknown. Otherwise, the result of the predicate is true or false.

column = constant

The column is equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

column < > constant

The column is not equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

column > constant

The column is greater than the constant or labeled duration expression.

column < constant

The column is less than the constant or labeled duration expression.

column > = constant

The column is greater than or equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

column < = constant

The column is less than or equal to the constant or labeled duration expression.

Note: The following alternative comparison operators are available:

!= or ¬= for not equal.

!> or ¬> for not greater than.

!< or ¬< for not less than.

The symbol ¬ representing “not” is supported for compatibility purposes. Use ! where possible.

BETWEEN predicate

Indicates whether a given value lies between two other given values that are specified in ascending order. The values can be constants or labeled duration expressions. Each of the predicate's two forms (BETWEEN and NOT BETWEEN) has an equivalent search condition, as shown in the following table. When relevant, the table also shows any equivalent predicates.

Table 118. BETWEEN predicates and their equivalent search conditions

Predicate	Equivalent predicate	Equivalent search condition
<i>column</i> BETWEEN <i>value1</i> AND <i>value2</i>	None	(<i>column</i> >= <i>value1</i> AND <i>column</i> <= <i>value2</i>)
<i>column</i> NOT BETWEEN <i>value1</i> AND <i>value2</i>	NOT(<i>column</i> BETWEEN <i>value1</i> AND <i>value2</i>)	(<i>column</i> < <i>value1</i> OR <i>column</i> > <i>value2</i>)

Note: The values can be constants or labeled duration expressions.

For example, the following predicate is true for any row when salary is greater than or equal 10000 and less than or equal to 20000:

SALARY BETWEEN 10000 AND 20000

IN predicate

Specifies that a value is to be compared with a set of values. In the IN predicate, the second operand is a set of one or more values that are specified by constants. Each of the predicate's two forms (IN and NOT IN) has an equivalent search condition, as shown in the following table.

Table 119. IN predicates and their equivalent search conditions

Predicate	Equivalent search condition
<i>value1</i> IN (<i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> ,..., <i>valuen</i>)	(<i>value1</i> = <i>value2</i> OR ... OR <i>value1</i> = <i>valuen</i>)
<i>value1</i> NOT IN (<i>value1</i> , <i>value2</i> ,..., <i>valuen</i>)	<i>value1</i> \neq <i>value2</i> AND ... AND <i>value1</i> \neq <i>valuen</i>)

Note: The values can be constants.

For example, the following predicate is true for any row whose employee is in department D11, B01, or C01:

WORKDEPT IN ('D11', 'B01', 'C01')

LIKE predicate

Specifies the qualification of strings that have a certain pattern.

Within the pattern, a percent sign or underscore can have a special meaning, or it can represent the literal occurrence of a percent sign or underscore. To have its literal meaning, it must be preceded by an *escape character*. If it is not preceded by an escape character, it has its special meaning. The underscore character (`_`) represents a single, arbitrary character. The percent sign (`%`) represents a string of zero or more arbitrary characters.

The ESCAPE clause designates a single character. That character, and only that character, can be used multiple times within the pattern as an escape character. When the ESCAPE clause is omitted, no character serves as an escape character, so that percent signs and underscores in the pattern always have their special meanings.

The following rules apply to the use of the ESCAPE clause:

- The ESCAPE clause cannot be used if *x* is mixed data.
- If *x* is a character string, the data type of the string constant must be character string. If *x* is a graphic string, the data type of the string constant must be graphic string. In both cases, the length of the string constant must be 1.

- The pattern must not contain the escape character except when followed by the escape character, '%' or '_'. For example, if '+' is the escape character, any occurrence of '+' other than '++', '+_', or '+%' in the pattern is an error.

When the pattern does not include escape characters, a simple description of its meaning is:

- The underscore sign () represents a single arbitrary character.
- The percent sign (%) represents a string of zero or more arbitrary characters.
- Any other character represents a single occurrence of itself.

Let x denote the column that is to be tested and y the pattern in the string constant. The following rules apply to predicates of the form "x LIKE y...". If NOT is specified, the result is reversed.

- When x and y are both neither empty nor null, the result of the predicate is true if x matches the pattern in y and false if x does not match the pattern in y .
- When x or y is null, the result of the predicate is unknown.
- When y is empty and x is not empty, the result of the predicate is false.
- When x is empty and y is not empty, the result of the predicate is false unless y consists only of one or more percent signs.
- When x and y are both empty, the result of the predicate is true.

The pattern string and the string that is to be tested must be of the same type. That is, both x and y must be character strings, or both x and y must be graphic strings. When x and y are graphic strings, a character is a DBCS character. When x and y are character strings and x is not mixed data, a character is an SBCS character and y is interpreted as SBCS data regardless of its subtype.

Strings and patterns

The string y is interpreted as a sequence of the minimum number of substring specifiers such that each character of y is part of exactly one substring specifier. A substring specifier is an underscore, a percent sign, or any non-empty sequence of characters other than an underscore or percent sign.

The string x matches the pattern y if a partitioning of x into substrings exists, such that:

- A substring of x is a sequence of zero or more contiguous characters, and each character of x is part of exactly one substring.
- If the n th substring specifier is an underscore, the n th substring of x is any single character.
- If the n th substring specifier is a percent sign, the n th substring of x is any sequence of zero or more characters.
- If the n th substring specifier is neither an underscore nor a percent sign, the n th substring of x is equal to that substring specifier and has the same length as that substring specifier.
- The number of substrings of x is the same as the number of substring specifiers.

When escape characters are present in the pattern string, an underscore, percent sign, or escape character represents a single occurrence of itself if and only if it is preceded by an odd number of successive escape characters.

Mixed data patterns: If x is mixed data, the pattern is assumed to be mixed data, and its special characters are interpreted as follows:

- A single-byte underscore refers to one single-byte character; a double-byte underscore refers to one double-byte character.
- A percent sign, either single-byte or double-byte, refers to any number of characters of any type, either single-byte or double-byte.
- Redundant shift bytes in x or y are ignored.

NULL predicate

Specifies a test for null values.

If the value of the column is null, the result is true. If the value is not null, the result is false. If NOT is specified, the result is reversed. (That is, if the value is null, the result is false, and if the value is not null, the result is true.)

labeled duration expression

Specifies an expression that begins with special register CURRENT DATE or special register CURRENT TIMESTAMP (the forms CURRENT_DATE and CURRENT_TIMESTAMP are also acceptable). For CURRENT_TIMESTAMP, if the comparison is with a timestamp column, the timestamp precision of the special register will be the same as the column timestamp precision. Otherwise default timestamp precision will be used. This special register can be followed by arithmetic operations of addition or subtraction. These operations are expressed by using numbers that are followed by one of the seven duration keywords: YEARS, MONTHS, DAYS, HOURS, MINUTES, SECONDS, or MICROSECONDS. (The singular form of these keywords is also acceptable: YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND, and MICROSECOND.)

Utilities always evaluate a *labeled duration expression* as a timestamp and implicitly convert to a date if the comparison is with a date column.

Incrementing and decrementing CURRENT DATE: The result of adding a duration to a date, or of subtracting a duration from a date, is itself a date. (For the purposes of this operation, a month denotes the equivalent of a calendar page. Adding months to a date, then, is like turning the pages of a calendar, starting with the page on which the date appears.) The result must fall between the dates January 1, 0001 and December 31, 9999 inclusive. If a duration of years is added or subtracted, only the year portion of the date is affected. The month is unchanged, as is the day, unless the result would be February 29 of a non-leap-year. In this situation, the day portion of the result is set to 28.

Similarly, if a duration of months is added or subtracted, only months and, if necessary, years are affected. The day portion of the date is unchanged unless the result would be invalid (September 31, for example). In this case the day is set to the last day of the month.

Adding or subtracting a duration of days affects the day portion of the date, and potentially the month and year.

Date durations, whether positive or negative, can also be added to and subtracted from dates. As with labeled durations, the result is a valid date.

When a positive date duration is added to a date, or a negative date duration is subtracted from a date, the date is incremented by the specified number of years, months, and days.

When a positive date duration is subtracted from a date, or a negative date duration is added to a date, the date is decremented by the specified number of days, months, and years.

Adding a month to a date gives the same day one month later, unless that day does not exist in the later month. In that case, the day in the result is set to the last day of the later month. For example, January 28 plus one month gives February 28; one month added to January 29, 30, or 31 results in either February 28 or, for a leap year, February 29. If one or more months is added to a given date and then the same number of months is subtracted from the result, the final date is not necessarily the same as the original date.

The order in which labeled date durations are added to and subtracted from dates can affect the results. When you add labeled date durations to a date, specify them in the order of YEARS + MONTHS + DAYS. When you subtract labeled date durations from a date, specify them in the order of DAYS - MONTHS - YEARS. For example, to add one year and one day to a date, specify the following code:

When the labeled duration expression begins with special register CURRENT TIMESTAMP, the CURRENT TIMESTAMP is compared with the time zone column. The timestamp precision of the special register will be the same as the column timestamp precision. Otherwise the default timestamp precision will be used. The time zone of CURRENT TIMESTAMP is the value of special register CURRENT TIMEZONE. The comparison is done by comparing the UTC portion.

```
CURRENT DATE + 1 YEAR + 1 DAY
```

To subtract one year, one month, and one day from a date, specify the following code:

```
CURRENT DATE - 1 DAY - 1 MONTH - 1 YEAR
```

Incrementing and decrementing timestamps: The result of adding a duration to a timestamp, or of subtracting a duration from a timestamp, is itself a timestamp. Date and time arithmetic is performed as previously defined, except that an overflow or underflow of hours is carried into the date part of the result, which must be within the range of valid dates.

Related reference

 CREATE TABLE (DB2 SQL)

Before running UNLOAD

Certain activities might be required before you run the UNLOAD utility, depending on your situation.

If you plan to run UNLOAD on encrypted data, do not use the WHEN statement to filter encrypted fields; UNLOAD cannot filter rows that contain encrypted data

Loading data into a table with an index that has a VARBINARY column

If the table into which you are loading data has an index with these characteristics, LOAD fails:

- The index was created on a VARBINARY column or a column with a distinct type that is based on a VARBINARY data type.
- The index column has the DESC attribute.

To fix the problem, drop the index, or alter the column data type to BINARY, and then rebuild the index.

Data sets that UNLOAD uses

The UNLOAD utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

The following table lists the data sets that UNLOAD uses. The table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set, a description of the data set, and an indication of whether it is required. Include statements in your JCL for each required data set and any optional data sets that you want to use.

Table 120. Data sets that UNLOAD uses

Data set	Description	Required?
SYSIN	Input data set that contains the utility control statement.	Yes
SYSPRINT	Output data set for messages.	Yes
SYSPUNCH	One or more work data sets that contain the generated LOAD statements for subsequently reloading the data. The default DD name is PUNCHDDN.	No ¹
Unload data set	One or more work data sets that contain the unloaded table rows. The default DD name is SYSREC.	Yes

Note:

1. Required if you request that UNLOAD generate LOAD statements by specifying PUNCHDDN in the utility control statement.

The following object is named in the utility control statement and does not require a DD statement in the JCL:

Table space

Table space that is to be unloaded. (If you want to unload only one partition of a table space, you must specify the PART option in the control statement.)

Concurrency and compatibility for UNLOAD

The UNLOAD utility has certain concurrency and compatibility characteristics associated with it.

DB2 treats Individual data partitions as distinct source objects. Utilities that operate on different partitions of the same table space are compatible.

Claims and drains:

The following table shows which claim classes UNLOAD drains and the restrictive states that the utility sets.

Table 121. Claim classes of UNLOAD operations

Target	UNLOAD	UNLOAD PART
Table space or physical partition of a table space with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	DW/UTRO	DW/UTRO
Table space or physical partition of a table space with SHRLEVEL CHANGE	CR/UTRW	CR/UTRW
Image copy*	CR/UTRW	CR/UTRW

Legend:

- DW: Drain the write claim class, concurrent access for SQL readers
- UTRO: Utility restrictive state, read-only access allowed
- CR: Claim read, concurrent access for SQL writers and readers
- UTRW: Utility restrictive state; read-write access allowed

Note: * If the target object is an image copy, the UNLOAD utility applies CR/UTRW to the corresponding table space or physical partitions to prevent the table space from being dropped while data is being unloaded from the image copy, even though the UNLOAD utility does not access the data in the table space.

Compatibility

The compatibility of the UNLOAD utility and the other utilities on the same target objects are shown in the following table. If the SHRLEVEL REFERENCE option is specified, only SQL read operations are allowed on the same target objects; otherwise SQL INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE are also allowed. If the target object is an image copy, INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE are always allowed on the corresponding table space. In any case, DROP or ALTER cannot be applied to the target object while the UNLOAD utility is running.

Table 122. Compatibility of UNLOAD with other utilities

Action	UNLOAD SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	UNLOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE	FROM IMAGE COPY
CHECK DATA DELETE NO	Yes	Yes	Yes
CHECK DATA DELETE YES	No	No	Yes
CHECK INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes
CHECK LOB	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPY INDEXSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPY TABLESPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes*
DIAGNOSE	Yes	Yes	Yes
LOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE	No	Yes	Yes
LOAD SHRLEVEL NONE	No	No	Yes
MERGECOPY	Yes	Yes	No
MODIFY RECOVERY	Yes	Yes	No

Table 122. Compatibility of UNLOAD with other utilities (continued)

Action	UNLOAD SHRLEVEL REFERENCE	UNLOAD SHRLEVEL CHANGE	FROM IMAGE COPY
MODIFY STATISTICS	Yes	Yes	Yes
QUIESCE	Yes	Yes	Yes
REBUILD INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes
RECOVER (no options)	No	No	Yes
RECOVER ERROR RANGE	No	No	Yes
RECOVER TOCOPY or TORBA	No	No	Yes
REORG INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD CONTINUE or PAUSE	No	No	Yes
REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY or EXTERNAL	Yes	Yes	Yes
REPAIR DUMP or VERIFY	Yes	Yes	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE INDEX PAGE REPLACE	Yes	Yes	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE KEY or RID DELETE or REPLACE	No	No	Yes
REPAIR LOCATE TABLESPACE PAGE REPLACE	No	No	Yes
REPORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS INDEX	Yes	Yes	Yes
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes
STOSPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes

Note: If the same data set is used as the output from the COPY utility and as the input data set of the UNLOAD utility, unexpected results can occur.

Unloading partitions

You can unload partitions in one of two ways.

If the source table space is partitioned, use one of the following mutually exclusive methods to select the partitions to unload:

- Use the LIST keyword with a LISTDEF that contains PARTLEVEL specifications. Partitions can be either included or excluded by the use of the INCLUDE and the EXCLUDE features of LISTDEF.
- Specify the PART keyword to select a single partition or a range of partitions.

With either method, the unloaded data can be stored in a single data set for all selected partitions or in one data set for each selected partition. If you want to unload to a single output data set, specify a DD name to UNLDDN. If you want to unload into multiple output data sets, specify a template name that is associated with the partitions. You can process multiple partitions in parallel if the TEMPLATE definition contains the partition as a variable, for example &PA.

You cannot specify multiple output data sets with the FROMCOPY or the FROMCOPYDDN option.

Unloading XML data

You can unload XML data in one of two ways.

XML columns can be unloaded with either of the following methods:

- The XML column can be unloaded to the output records. XML column value can be placed in the OUTPUT record with or without any other unloading column values. The output record can be in delimited or non-delimited format. For a non-delimited format, the XML column is handled like a variable character with a 2-byte length preceding the XML value. For a delimited format there are no length bytes present. If the total output record length is more than 32 KB, unload the record in spanned record format by specifying the SPANNED YES option.
- The XML column can be unloaded to a separate file whether the XML column length is less than 32K or not.

To unload XML data directly to output record:

Specify XML as the output field type. If the output is a non-delimited format, a 2-byte length will precede the value of the XML. For delimited output, no length field is present. XML is the only acceptable field type when unloading the XML directly to the output record. No data type conversion applies and you cannot specify FROMCOPY.

If the input data is in Extensible Dynamic Binary XML DB2 Client/Server Binary XML Format (binary XML format), you need to specify BLOBF BINARYXML.

To unload XML data to a separate file:

- In the UNLOAD utility control statement, specify BLOBF, CLOBF or DBCLOBF. These keywords indicate that the output column contains the name of a file to which the XML value is to be unloaded. Also specify either CHAR or VARCHAR instead of XML. Do not specify FROMCOPY.

Example: The following UNLOAD statement specifies that the data from the XML column ORDER_CREATE_XML1 is to be unloaded to the file that is defined by template BLOBFC1.

```
UNLOAD DATA FROM TABLE SCQA0000.TB_ORDER_PBR
  (ORDER_CREATE_XML1 POSITION(*) VARCHAR BLOBF BLOBFC1
  ,ORDER_ALL_LOCAL POSITION(*) INTEGER
  )
```

- Use the template control statement to create the XML output file and filename. If data sets are not created and the DSN type is not specified on the template, UNLOAD will use PDS as the data set type. PDS has a limit of single volume. The output file uses multiple volumes, so you must specify HFS as the DSN type. See “Data sets that UNLOAD uses” on page 764.

Unloading LOB data

You can unload LOB data in one of two ways.

LOB columns can be unloaded with either of the following methods:

- The LOB column can be unloaded to the output records. The LOB column value can be placed in the OUTPUT record with or without any other unloading column values. The output record can be in delimited or non-delimited format. For a non-delimited format, the LOB column is handled like a variable character with a 2-byte length preceding the LOB value. For a delimited format there are no length bytes present. If the total output record length is more than 32 KB, unload the record in spanned record format by specifying the SPANNED YES option.
- The LOB column can be unloaded to a separate file whether the LOB column length is less than 32K or not.

To unload LOB data, use one of the following methods:

- To unload LOB data directly to output record:

Specify LOB as the output field type. If the output is a non-delimited format, a 2-byte length will precede the value of the LOB. For delimited output, no length field is present. LOB is the only acceptable field type when unloading the LOB data directly to the output record. No data type conversion applies and you cannot specify FROMCOPY.
- To unload LOB data to a separate file:
 - Create an UNLOAD utility control statement. Specify BLOBF, CLOBF or DBCLOBF to indicate that the output column contains a filename which the LOB value is to be unloaded. You cannot specify FROMCOPY.
 - Use the template control statement to create the LOB output file and filename. If data sets are not created and the DSN type is not specified on the template, UNLOAD will use PDS as the data set type. PDS has a limit of single volume. The output file uses multiple volumes, so you must specify HFS as the DSN type. See “Data sets that UNLOAD uses” on page 764.

If you unload data to a separate file, and the LOB column from which you unload is empty, the data set that is specified by UNLDDN contains one of the following items:

- A blank file name if the source column is specified as CHAR CLOBF, CHAR BLOBF, or CHAR DBCLOBF
- A file name with length 0 if the source column is specified as VARCHAR CLOBF, VARCHAR BLOBF, or VARCHAR DBCLOBF

The UNLOAD utility does not create a data set or file for the empty LOB.

Unloading data in spanned record format

If you want to unload data from a table that has large LOB or XML fields, consider unloading the data in spanned record format to improve performance of read-write operations.

When you unload data in spanned record format, all LOB and XML data for a given table space or table space partition can be written to an individual sequential file. This file can reside on DASD and can span multiple volumes. Having such a single sequential file can improve the performance of read-write operations.

To unload data in spanned record format:

Specify the SPANNED YES option. Specify in the field specification list that all LOB and XML data are to be at the end of the record.

Example: The following UNLOAD statement specifies that the data from table TB1 is to be unloaded in spanned record format. Notice that in the field specification list, the CLOB columns are listed at the end and POSITION is not specified.

```
UNLOAD TABLESPACE TESTDB1.CLOBBASE SPANNED YES
      FROM TABLE TB1
      (ID
       ,C1 INTEGER
       ,C2 INTEGER
       ,C3 CHAR(100)
       ,C4 CHAR(100)
       ,C5 INTEGER
       ,C6 CHAR(100)
       ,C7 CHAR(100)
       ,C8 CHAR(100)
       ,CLOB1 CLOB
       ,CLOB2 CLOB
       ,CLOB3 CLOB)
```

Example of spanned record format: The following figure shows a conceptual example of a spanned record that has been unloaded.

Column 1	Column 2	Start of LOB 1
The rest of LOB 1		Start of LOB 2
more of LOB 2		
the rest of LOB 2		
The next row.....		

When you run LOAD on data that was unloaded in spanned record format, you need to use the LOAD statements that are in the SYSPUNCH data sets after UNLOAD runs. Those LOAD statements include SORTKEYS parameters with accurate values. During LOAD, DB2 cannot estimate the size of the sort work data sets by checking the contents of the SYSREC data sets that are produced during UNLOAD with SPANNED YES.

Selecting tables and rows to unload

If a table space contains multiple tables, you can select specific tables to unload by using the FROM TABLE specification clauses.

If you specify one or more FROM TABLE clauses for a table space, only the qualified rows from the specified tables are unloaded. You can specify a maximum of one FROM TABLE clause per table. If you do not specify at least one FROM TABLE clause, the rows from all the tables in the table space are unloaded.

Within a FROM TABLE clause, you can specify one or more of the following criteria:

- Row and column selection criteria by using the field specification list
- Row selection conditions by using the WHEN specification clause
- Row sampling specifications

Attention: When an incremental image copy is taken of a table space, rows might be updated or moved if the SHRLEVEL CHANGE option is specified. As a result, data that is unloaded from such a copy might contain duplicates of these rows.

Selecting and ordering columns to unload

Use a field specification list in a FROM TABLE clause to unload specified columns in the listed order. If you omit a field specification list, all the columns in the row are unloaded in the order of the columns that are defined on the table.

You can specify a format conversion option for each field in the field specification list.

If you select a LOB column in a list of field specifications or select a LOB column by default (by omitting a list of field specifications), LOB data is materialized in the output. However, you cannot select LOB columns from image copy data sets.

Unloading data from image copy data sets

In addition to unloading data from table spaces and partitions, you can also unload data from one or more image copy data sets.

If you use the SYSTEMPAGES YES option on the COPY utility, you can use UNLOAD to process rows of compressed data or image copies from different versions.

Unload rows from a single image copy data set by specifying the FROMCOPY option in the UNLOAD control statement. Specify the FROMCOPYDDN option to unload data from one or more image copy data sets that are associated with the specified DD name. Use an image copy that contains the page set header page when you are unloading a ROWID column; otherwise the unload fails.

The source image copy data set must have been created by one of the following utilities:

- COPY
- COPYTOCOPY
- LOAD inline image copy
- MERGECOPY
- REORG TABLESPACE inline image copy
- DSN1COPY

UNLOAD accepts full image copies, incremental image copies, and a copy of pieces as valid input sources.

UNLOAD does not accept FlashCopy image copies as input. To use a FlashCopy image copy as the source for the UNLOAD utility, use the COPYTOCOPY utility to create a sequential format image copy from the FlashCopy image copy and then use the sequential format image copy as input for UNLOAD.

The UNLOAD utility supports image copy data sets for a single table space. The table space name must be specified in the TABLESPACE option. The specified table space must exist when you run the UNLOAD utility. (That is, the table space cannot have been dropped since the image copy was taken.)

Use the FROMCOPYDDN option to concatenate the copy of table space partitions under a DD name to form a single input data set image. When you use the FROMCOPYDDN option, concatenate the data sets in the order of the data set number; the first data set must be concatenated first. If the data sets are concatenated in the wrong order or if different generations of image copies are concatenated, the results might be unpredictable. For example, if the most recent image copy data sets and older image copies are intermixed, the results might be unpredictable.

You can use the FROMCOPYDDN option to concatenate a full image copy and incremental image copies for a table space, a partition, or a piece, but duplicate rows are also unloaded in this situation. Instead, consider using MERGECOPY to generate an updated full image copy as the input to the UNLOAD utility.

You can select specific rows and columns to unload just as you would for a table space. However, you can unload only rows that contain LOB columns when the LOB columns are not included in a field specification list. If you use an image copy that does not contain the page set header page when unloading a ROWID column, the unload fails.

If you use the FROMCOPY or the FROMCOPYDDN option, you can specify only one output data set.

If an image copy is created by an inline copy operation (LOAD or REORG TABLESPACE), the image copy can contain duplicate pages. If duplicate pages exist, the UNLOAD utility issues a warning message, and all the qualified rows in duplicate pages are unloaded into the output data set.

If you specify a dropped table on the FROM TABLE option, the UNLOAD utility terminates with return code 4. If you do not specify a FROM TABLE option and if an image copy contains rows from dropped tables, UNLOAD ignores these rows. When you specify either a full or incremental copy of partitions of a segmented table space that consists of multiple data sets in the FROMCOPY option, be careful when applying a mass delete to a table in the table space before you create the copy. If a mass delete of a table occurs, the utility unloads deleted rows if the space map pages that indicate the mass delete are not included in the data set that corresponds to the specified copy. Where possible, use the FROMCOPYDDN option to concatenate the copy of table space partitions.

If an image copy contains a table to which ALTER ADD COLUMN was applied after the image copy was taken, the UNLOAD utility sets the system or user-specified default value for the added column when the data is unloaded from such an image copy.

Related reference

Chapter 11, "COPY," on page 119

Converting data with the UNLOAD utility

You can convert one data type to another compatible data type by using the UNLOAD utility. The source type is used for user-defined distinct types.

For example, you can convert columns of a numeric type (SMALLINT, INTEGER, FLOAT, DOUBLE, REAL, and DECIMAL) from the DB2 internal format to the S/390 or an external format.

When you unload a floating-point type column, you can specify the binary form of the output to either the S/390 format (hexadecimal floating point, or HFP), or the IEEE format (binary floating point, or BFP).

You can also convert a varying-length column to a fixed-length output field, with or without padding characters. In either case, unless you explicitly specify a fixed-length data type for the field, the data itself is treated as a varying-length data, and a length field is appended to the data.

For certain data types, you can unload data into fields with a smaller length by using the TRUNCATE or STRIP options. In this situation, if a character code conversion is applied, the length of the data in bytes might change due to the code conversion. The truncation operation is applied after the code conversion.

You can perform character code conversion on a character type field, including converting numeric columns to the external format and the CLOB type. Be aware that when you apply a character code conversion for mixed-data fields, the length of the result string in bytes can be shorter or longer than the length of the source string. Character type data is always converted if you specify any of the character code conversion options (EBCDIC, ASCII, UNICODE, or CCSID).

DATE, TIME, or TIMESTAMP column types are always converted into the external formats based on the DATE, TIME, and TIMESTAMP formats of your installation.

Output field types

An output field can have a different data type from the one that is defined on a source table column if the data types are compatible. The UNLOAD utility follows the general DB2 rules and conventions for the data type attributes and the compatibility among the data types.

If you specify a data type in the UNLOAD control statement, the field type information is included in the generated LOAD utility statement. For specific data type compatibility information, refer to the following table. These tables show the compatibility of the data type of the source column (input data type) with the data type of the output field (output data type). A Y indicates that the input data type can be converted to the output data type.

The following table shows the compatibility of converting numeric data types.

Table 123. Compatibility of converting numeric data types

Input data types	Output data types						
	SMALLINT	INTEGER (external)	BIGINT	DECIMAL (external)	FLOAT (external)	DOUBLE or REAL	FLOAT/REAL
SMALLINT	Y	Y ¹	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
INTEGER	Y ²	Y ¹	Y	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
BIGINT	Y ²	Y ²	Y ²	Y	Y	N	Y
DECIMAL	Y ²	Y ^{1,2}	Y ²	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y	Y
FLOAT, DOUBLE, or REAL	Y ²	Y ^{1,2}	Y ²	Y ^{1,2}	Y ¹	Y	Y
DECFLOAT	Y ²	Y ^{1,2}	Y ²	Y ^{1,2}	Y ^{1,2}	N ²	Y ³

Table 123. Compatibility of converting numeric data types (continued)

Input data types	Output data types						
	SMALLINT	INTEGER (external)	BIGINT	DECIMAL (external)	FLOAT (external)	DOUBLE or REAL	FLOAT/REAL
Note:							
1. Subject to the CCSID conversion, if specified (EXTERNAL case).							
2. Potential overflow (conversion error).							
3. When converting from DECFLOAT(34) to DECFLOAT(16), you might encounter overflow, underflow, subnormal number, or inexact. However, there will be no conversion error.							

The following table shows the compatibility of converting character data types.

Table 124. Compatibility of converting character data types

Input data types	Output data types									
	BLOB	CHAR	VAR-CHAR	CLOB	GRAPHIC	GRAPHIC EXTER-NAL	VAR-GRAPHIC	DB-CLOB	BINARY	VAR-BINARY
BLOB	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
CLOB	N	Y ^{1,2}	Y ^{1,2}	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
DBCLOB	N	N	N	N	Y ^{1,2}	Y ^{1,2,3}	Y ^{1,2}	Y ¹	N	N
CHAR	N	Y ¹	Y ¹	Y ^{1,4}	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
VARCHAR or LONG VARCHAR	N	Y ^{1,2}	Y ¹	Y ^{1,4}	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
GRAPHIC	N	N	N	N	Y ¹	Y ^{1,3}	Y ¹	Y ¹	N	N
VAR-GRAPHIC or LONG VAR-GRAPHIC	N	N	N	N	Y ^{1,2}	Y ^{1,2,3}	Y ¹	Y ¹	N	N
BINARY	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
VARBINARY	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
Note:										
1. Subject to the CCSID conversion, if specified.										
2. Results in an error if the field length is too small for the data unless you specify the TRUNCATE option. Note that a LOB has a 4-byte length field; any other varying-length type has a 2-byte length field.										
3. Only in the EBCDIC output mode.										
4. Not applicable to BIT subtype data.										

The following table shows the compatibility of converting time data types.

Table 125. Compatibility of converting time data types

Input data types	Output data types			
	DATE EXTERNAL	TIME EXTERNAL	TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE EXTERNAL
DATE	Y ¹	N	Y ^{1,2}	Y ^{1,2}
TIME	N	Y ¹	N	N
TIMESTAMP	Y ^{1,3}	Y ^{1,3}	Y ¹	Y ^{1,2}
TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	Y ^{1,4}	Y ^{1,4}	Y ^{1,4}	Y ¹

Table 125. Compatibility of converting time data types (continued)

Input data types	Output data types			
	DATE EXTERNAL	TIME EXTERNAL	TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE EXTERNAL

Note:

1. Subject to the CCSID conversion, if specified.
2. Zeros in the time portion. IMPLICIT_TZ in time zone portion if the output data type is TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE.
3. DATE or TIME portion of the timestamp.
4. DATE, TIME or TIMESTAMP portion of the timestamp with time zone.

Related concepts

 Data types (DB2 SQL)

Related reference

“Syntax and options of the UNLOAD control statement” on page 726

Output field positioning and size

By default, output data is always placed in an output record in the order of the defined columns over the selected tables. You can choose to specify the order of the output fields by using a list of field specifications.

Use the POSITION option to specify field position in the output records. You can also specify the size of the output data field by using the *length* parameter for a particular data type. The *length* parameter must indicate the size of the actual data field. The *start* parameter of the POSITION option indicates the starting position of a field, including the NULL indicator byte (if the field can be null) and the length field (if the field is varying length).

Using the POSITION parameter, the length parameter, or both can restrict the size of the data field in the output records. Use care when specifying the POSITION and length parameters, especially for nullable fields and varying length fields. If a conflict exists between the *length* parameter and the size of the field in the output record that is specified by the POSITION parameters, DB2 issues an error message, and the UNLOAD utility terminates. If an error occurs, the count of the number of records in error is incremented. See the description of the MAXERR option of UNLOAD for more information.

If you specify a length parameter for a varying-length field and you also specify the NOPAD option, *length* indicates the maximum length of data that is to be unloaded. Without the NOPAD option, UNLOAD reserves a space of the given *length* instead of the maximum data size.

If you explicitly specify start parameters for certain fields, they must be listed in ascending order in the field selection list. Unless you specify HEADER NONE for the table, a fixed-length record header is placed at the beginning of each record for the table, and the start parameter must not overlap the record header area.

The TRUNCATE option is available for certain output field types. For the output field types where the TRUNCATE option is not applicable, enough space must be provided in the output record for each field.

Related concepts

“Field specification errors” on page 782

“Layout of output fields”

“Specifying TRUNCATE and STRIP options for output data” on page 780

Related reference

“Syntax and options of the UNLOAD control statement” on page 726

Layout of output fields

Output fields have various layouts: fixed-length, nullable fixed-length, varying-length field, varying-length field without the NOPAD option, nullable varying-length field with the NOPAD option, and nullable varying-length field without the NOPAD option

The following figure shows the layout of a fixed-length field that cannot be null. This diagram shows that the data field begins at a specified position, or at the next byte position past the end of the previous data field. The data field then continues for the specified length or the length of the column in the table definition. For GRAPHIC EXTERNAL data, shift-in and shift-out characters are inserted before and after the data.

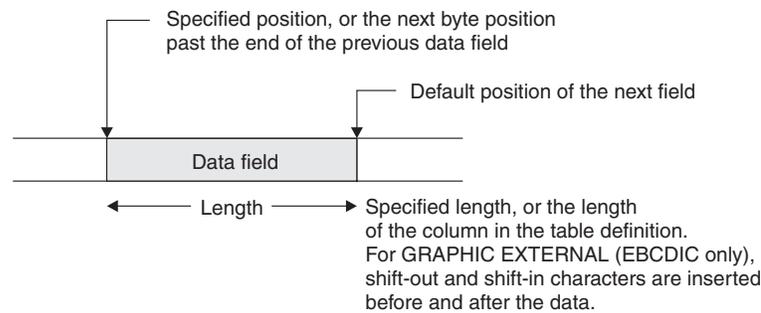


Figure 103. Layout of a fixed-length field (NOT NULL)

The following figure shows the layout of a fixed-length field that can be null. This diagram shows that a null indicator byte is stored before the data field, which begins at the specified position or at the next byte position past the end of the previous data field.

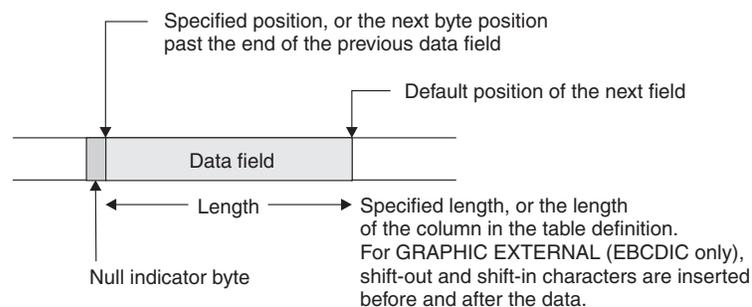


Figure 104. Layout of a nullable fixed-length field

If you are running UNLOAD with the NOPAD option and need to determine the layout of a varying-length field that cannot be null, see the layout diagram in the following figure. The length field begins at the specified position or at the next

byte position past the end of the previous data field.

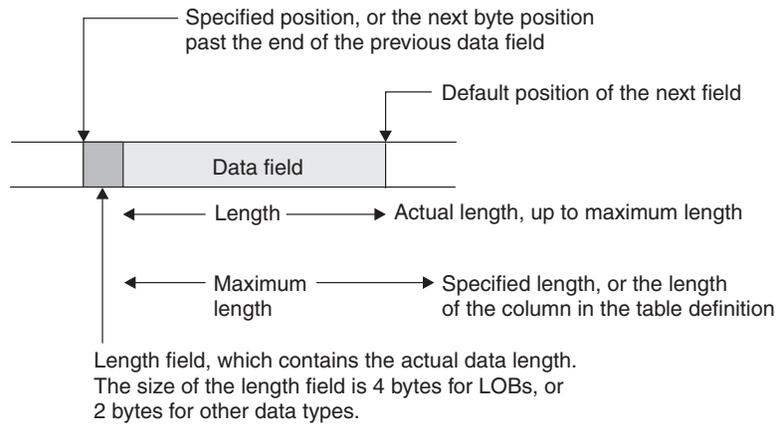


Figure 105. Layout of a varying-length field (NOT NULL) with the NOPAD option

For UNLOAD without the NOPAD option, the layout of a varying-length field that cannot be null is depicted in the following figure.

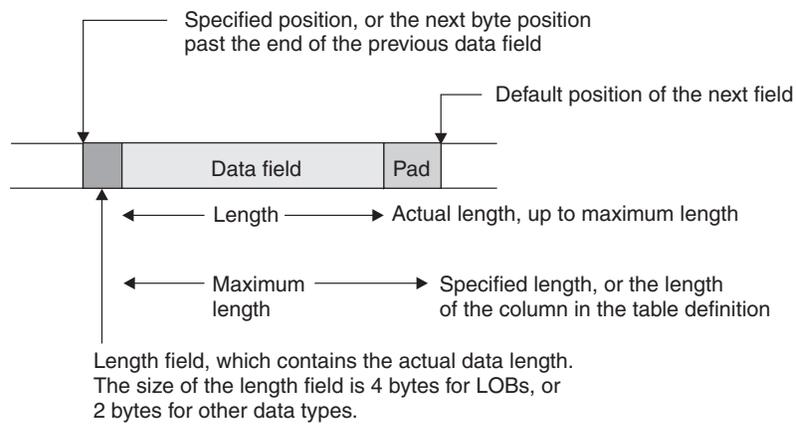


Figure 106. Layout of a varying-length field (NOT NULL) without the NOPAD option

For UNLOAD with the NOPAD option, the layout of a varying-length field that can be null is depicted in the following figure. The length field begins at the specified position or at the next byte position past the end of the previous data field.

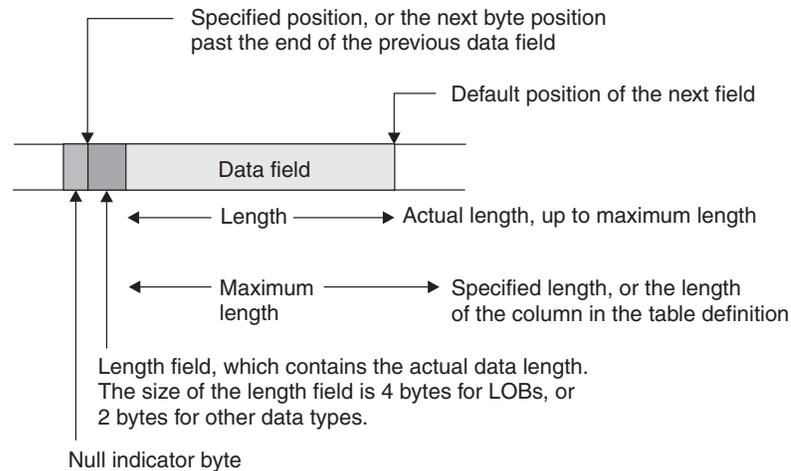


Figure 107. Layout of a nullable varying-length field with the NOPAD option

For UNLOAD without the NOPAD option, the layout of a varying-length field that can be null is depicted in the following figure. The length field begins at the specified position or at the next byte position past the end of the previous data field.

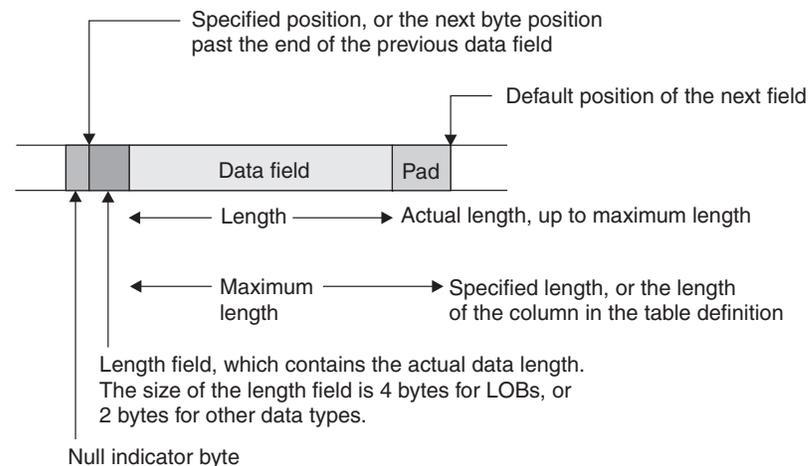


Figure 108. Layout of a nullable varying-length field without the NOPAD option

Unloading delimited files

You can use the DELIMITED option to specify that UNLOAD is to produce an output file in delimited format. All fields in the output data set are either in character string or numeric external format. Each column is separated from the next by a column delimiter, and character strings are marked by character string delimiters.

Recommendation: If a delimited file is to be transferred to or from a platform other than z/OS or between DB2 for z/OS systems that use different EBCDIC or ASCII CCSIDs, use Unicode as the encoding scheme for the delimited file. Using Unicode avoids possible CCSID translation problems.

You are responsible for ensuring that the chosen delimiters are not part of the data in the file. If the delimiters are part of the file's data, unexpected errors can occur.

Restrictions: The following general restrictions apply to the use of delimiters:

- You cannot specify the same character for more than one type of delimiter (COLDEL, CHARDEL, and DECPT).
- You can specify a character constant for a delimiter if the utility control statement is coded in the same encoding scheme as the output file. For example, the utility control statement is coded in Unicode and the output data is also coded in Unicode.
- Use the hex representation for non-default delimiters if the utility control statement is coded in a different encoding scheme than the output file. For example, the utility control statement is coded in Unicode and the output file is coded in EBCDIC. In this case, if you do not use the hex representation for the non-default delimiters, the results can be unpredictable.
- You cannot specify HEADER OBID and ROWID for output fields in delimited output format. Because a header is not allowed, output must be from a single table.
- When you specify the DELIMITED option, the utility ignores the POSITION keyword. The utility overrides field data type specifications according to the specifications of the delimited format. (For example, length values for CHAR, VARCHAR, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, CLOB, DBCLOB, and BLOB data are the delimited lengths of each field in the output data set, and the utility unloads all numeric types in external format.)
- You cannot specify a binary 0 (zero) for any delimiter.
- No null byte is present for a delimited output file. A null value is indicated by the absence of a cell value where one would normally occur. For example, two successive column delimiters or a missing column at the end of a record indicate a null value.
- You cannot use the default decimal point as a character string delimiter (CHARDEL) or a column string delimiter (COLDEL).
- Shift-in and shift-out characters cannot be specified as EBCDIC MBCS delimiters.
- In the DBCS environment, the pipe character (|) is not supported.
- If the output is coded in ASCII or Unicode, you cannot specify any of the following values for any delimiter: X'0A', X'0D', X'2E'.
- If the output is coded in EBCDIC, you cannot specify any of the following values for any delimiter: X'15', X'0D', X'25'.
- If the output is coded in EBCDIC DBCS or MBCS, you cannot specify any of the following values for character string delimiters: X'0D', X'15', X'25', X'4B'.

The following table lists by encoding scheme the default hex values for the delimiter characters.

Table 126. Default delimiter values for different encoding schemes

Character	EBCDIC SBCS	EBCDIC DBCS/MBCS	ASCII/Unicode SBCS	ASCII/Unicode MBCS
Character string delimiter	X'7F'	X'7F'	X'22'	X'22'
Decimal point character	X'4B'	X'4B'	X'2E'	X'2E'
Column delimiter	X'6B'	X'6B'	X'2C'	X'2C'

In most EBCDIC code pages, the hex values in the previous table represent a double quotation mark(") for the character string delimiter, a period(.) for the decimal point character, and a comma(,) for the column delimiter.

The following table lists by encoding scheme the maximum allowable hex values for any delimiter character.

Table 127. Maximum delimiter values for different encoding schemes

Encoding scheme	Maximum allowable value
EBCDIC SBCS	None
EBCDIC DBCS/MBCS	X'3F'
ASCII/Unicode SBCS	None
ASCII/Unicode MBCS	X'7F'

The following table identifies the acceptable data type forms for the delimited file format that the LOAD and UNLOAD utilities use.

Table 128. Acceptable data type forms for delimited files

Data type	Acceptable form for loading a delimited file	Form that is created by unloading a delimited file
CHAR, VARCHAR	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. For VARCHAR, length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
GRAPHIC (any type)	A delimited or non-delimited character stream	Data that is unloaded as a delimited character string. For VARGRAPHIC, length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
INTEGER (any type)	A stream of characters that represents a number in EXTERNAL format	Numeric data in external format.
Decimal (any type)	A character stream that represents a number in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a number.
FLOAT	Representation of a number in the range $-7.2E + 75$ to $7.2E + 75$ in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a number in floating-point notation.
BLOB, CLOB	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. Length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
DBCLOB	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. Length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
DATE	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a date value in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a date.
TIME	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a time value in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a time.
TIMESTAMP	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a timestamp value in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a timestamp.

Table 128. Acceptable data type forms for delimited files (continued)

Data type	Acceptable form for loading a delimited file	Form that is created by unloading a delimited file
XML	A delimited or non-delimited XML character string	A string of characters that represents an XML document.

Related concepts

“Loading delimited files” on page 283

Related reference

Appendix G, “Delimited file format,” on page 1045

Specifying TRUNCATE and STRIP options for output data

You can unload certain types of data into output fields that are shorter than the length of the output data. This data truncation occurs only when you explicitly specify the TRUNCATE option. Any CCSID conversion is applied first, and then truncation is applied to encoded data for output.

For bit strings, truncation occurs at a byte boundary. For character type data, truncation occurs at a character boundary (a multi-byte character is not split). If a mixed-character type data is truncated in an output field of fixed size, the truncated string can be shorter than the specified field size. In this case, blanks in the output CCSID are padded to the right. If the output data is in EBCDIC for a mixed-character type field, truncation preserves the SO (shift-out) and the SI (shift-in) characters around a DBCS substring.

The TRUNCATE option of the UNLOAD utility truncates string data, and it has a different purpose than the SQL TRUNCATE scalar function.

For VARCHAR and VARGRAPHIC, and VARBINARY output fields, in addition to the TRUNCATE option, the STRIP option is provided to remove the specified characters, or the leading blanks, the trailing blanks, or both. The strip operation is applied on the encoded data for output. If both the TRUNCATE and STRIP options are specified, the truncation operation is applied first, and then strip is applied. For example, the output for an UNLOAD job in which you specify both the TRUNCATE and STRIP options for a VARCHAR(5) output field is shown in the following table. In this table, an underscore represents a character that is to be stripped. In all cases, the source string is first truncated to ' _ABC_ ' (a five-character string to fit in the VARCHAR(5) field), and then the strip operation is applied.

Table 129. Results of specifying both the TRUNCATE and STRIP options for UNLOAD

Specified STRIP option	Source string	Truncated string	Output string	Specified length
STRIP BOTH	' _ABC_DEF '	' _ABC_ '	'ABC'	3
STRIP LEADING	' _ABC_DEF '	' _ABC_ '	'ABC_ '	4
STRIP TRAILING	' _ABC_DEF '	' _ABC_ '	'_ABC'	4

The following control statement shows an example of using the STRIP option.

In the example, STRIP TRAILING '_' is included in the field specification for the TEXT column. The TEXT column contains variable character data with a maximum length of 8 characters, as specified by VARCHAR(8). When the UNLOAD utility

unloads the table, all occurrences of the '_' (underscore) character at the end of the data from the TEXT column are stripped from the data.

```
UNLOAD TABLESPACE DB.TS
      PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH
      UNLDDN UNLDD2
      FROM TABLE TB
      (EMPNO    POSITION(*)  CHAR(6),
       TEXT     POSITION(*)  VARCHAR(8) STRIP TRAILING '_',
       DEPTNO   POSITION(*)  CLOB(4),
       ROWID    POSITION(*)  ROWID,
       LAST_UPDATE POSITION(*) TIME EXTERNAL)
```

The following table further illustrates the STRIP option.

Table 130. Example of the results of specifying the STRIP option for UNLOAD

Original data	STRIP specification	Data after stripping	Final length
'_ABC_'	STRIP LEADING '_'	'ABC_'	4
'_ABC_'	STRIP TRAILING '_'	'_ABC'	4
'_ABC_'	STRIP BOTH '_'	'ABC'	3

Generating LOAD statements

To enable reloading the unloaded data into either the original table or different tables, a LOAD utility statement is generated and written to the SYSPUNCH DD name or to the DD name that is specified by PUNCHDDN.

The generated LOAD statement includes WHEN and INTO TABLE specifications that identify the table where the rows are to be reloaded, unless the HEADER NONE option was specified in the UNLOAD control statement. You need to edit the generated LOAD statement if you intend to load the UNLOAD output data into different tables than the original ones.

If multiple table spaces are to be unloaded and you want UNLOAD to generate LOAD statements, you must specify a physically distinct data set for each table space to PUNCHDDN by using a template that contains the table space as a variable (&TS).

If PUNCHDDN is not specified and the SYSPUNCH DD name does not exist, the LOAD statement is not generated.

Unloading compressed data

You can unload compressed rows from an image copy data set only when the dictionary for decompression has been retrieved. If a row is compressed and the dictionary the dictionary pages have not been read when the row is encountered, the UNLOAD utility ignores this row, issues a warning message, and increments the error count.

If the error count reaches the limit that is specified by the MAXERR option, UNLOAD terminates with an error message.

If the image copy data set is an incremental copy or a copy of pieces that does not contain a dictionary, the FROMCOPYDDN option can be used for a DD name to

concatenate the data set with the corresponding full image copy that contains the dictionary. If SYSEMPAGES YES is used, a dictionary will always be available in the incremental copies or pieces.

Field specification errors

If the UNLOAD utility detects any inconsistency relating to the field specification, DB2 issues an error message. For example, the UNLOAD utility might detect a data conversion problem or an encoding problem that occurs during the unloading of a row.

If the MAXERR option specifies a number that is greater than zero, the UNLOAD utility continues processing until the total number of the records in error reaches the specified MAXERR number. DB2 issues one message for each record in error and does not unload the record.

Termination or restart of UNLOAD

You can terminate and restart an UNLOAD utility job.

If you terminate UNLOAD by using the TERM UTILITY command during the unload phase, the output records are not erased. The output data set remains incomplete until you either delete it or restart the utility job.

When the source is one or more table spaces, you can restart the UNLOAD job at the partition level or at the table space level when data is unloaded from multiple table spaces by using the LIST option. When you restart a terminated UNLOAD job, processing begins with the table spaces or partitions that had not yet been completed. For a table space or partitions that were being processed at termination, UNLOAD resets the output data sets and processes those table space or partitions again.

When the source is one or more image copy data sets (when FROMCOPY or FROMCOPYDDN is specified), UNLOAD always starts processing from the beginning.

Related concepts

“Restart of an online utility” on page 36

Sample UNLOAD control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own UNLOAD control statements.

Example 1: Unloading all columns of specified rows

The control statement specifies that all columns of rows that meet the following criteria are to be unloaded from table DSN8810.EMP in table space DSN8D10A.DSN8S71E:

- The value in the WORKDEPT column is D11.
- The value in the SALARY column is greater than 25 000.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SMPLUNLD',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSREC DD DSN=USERID.SMPLUNLD.SYSREC,
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(2,1))
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=USERID.SMPLUNLD.SYSPUNCH,
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(1,1))
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
UNLOAD TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S81E
FROM TABLE DSN81010.EMP
WHEN (WORKDEPT = 'D11' AND SALARY > 25000)

```

Figure 109. Example of unloading all columns of specified rows

Example 2: Unloading specific columns by using a field specification list

The following control statement specifies that columns EMPNO, LASTNAME, and SALARY are to be unloaded, in that order, for all rows that meet the specified conditions. These conditions are specified in the WHEN clause and are the same as those conditions in example 1. The SALARY column is to be unloaded as type DECIMAL EXTERNAL. The NOPAD option indicates that variable-length fields are to be unloaded without any padding.

```

UNLOAD TABLESPACE DSN8D10A.DSN8S81E NOPAD
FROM TABLE DSN81010.EMP
(EMPNO, LASTNAME, SALARY DECIMAL EXTERNAL)
WHEN (WORKDEPT = 'D11' AND SALARY > 25000)

```

The output from this example might look similar to the following output:

```

000060@@STERN# 32250.00
000150@@ADAMSON# 25280.00
000200@@BROWN# 27740.00
000220@@LUTZ# 29840.00
200220@@JOHN# 29840.00

```

In this output:

- '@@' before the last name represents the 2-byte binary field that contains the length of the VARCHAR field LASTNAME (for example, X'0005' for STERN).
- '#' represents the NULL indicator byte for the nullable SALARY field.
- Because the SALARY column is declared as DECIMAL (9,2) on the table, the default output length of the SALARY field is 11 (9 digits + sign + decimal point), not including the NULL indicator byte.
- LASTNAME is unloaded as a variable-length field because the NOPAD option is specified.

Example 3: Unloading data from an image copy

The FROMCOPY option in the following control statement specifies that data is to be unloaded from a single image copy data set, JUKWU111.FCOPY1.STEP1.FCOPY1.

PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH specifies that the UNLOAD utility is to generate LOAD utility control statements and write them to the data set that is defined by the SYSPUNCH DD statement; SYSPUNCH is the default. UNLDDN SYSREC specifies that the data is to be unloaded to the data set that is defined by the SYSREC DD statement; SYSREC is the default.

```
UNLOAD TABLESPACE DBKW1101.TPKW1101
      FROMCOPY JUKWU111.FCOPY1.STEP1.FCOPY1
      PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH UNLDDN SYSREC
```

Example 4: Unloading a sample of rows and specifying a header.

The following control statement specifies that a sample of rows is to be unloaded from table ADMF001.TBKW1605. Unloading a sample of rows is useful for building a test system. The SAMPLE option indicates that 75% of the rows are to be sampled. The HEADER option indicates that the string 'sample' is to be used as the header field in the output file. The PUNCHDDN option indicates that UNLOAD is to generate LOAD utility control statements and write them to the SYSPUNCH data set, which is the default. UNLOAD specifies the header field as a criterion in the WHEN clause of these LOAD statements.

```
UNLOAD TABLESPACE DBKW1603.TPKW1603
      PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH UNLDDN SYSREC
      FROM TABLE ADMF001.TBKW1605
      HEADER CONST 'sample'
      SAMPLE 75
```

Example 5: Unloading data from two tables in a segmented table space

The following control statement specifies that data from table ADMF001.TBKW1504 and table ADMF001.TBKW1505 is to be unloaded from the segmented table space DBKW1502.TSKW1502. The PUNCHDDN option indicates that UNLOAD is to generate LOAD utility control statements and write them to the SYSPUNCH data set, which is the default. The UNLDDN option specifies that the data is to be unloaded to the data set that is defined by the SYSREC DD statement, which is also the default.

```
UNLOAD TABLESPACE DBKW1502.TSKW1502
      PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH UNLDDN SYSREC
      FROM TABLE ADMF001.TBKW1504
      FROM TABLE ADMF001.TBKW1505
```

Example 6: Unloading data in parallel from a partitioned table space

The UNLOAD control statement specifies that data from table TCRT.TTBL is to be unloaded to data sets that are defined by the UNLDDS template. These data sets are to be dynamically allocated and named according to the naming convention that is defined by the DSN option of the TEMPLATE utility control statement. This naming convention indicates that a data set is to be allocated for each table space partition.

Assume that table space TDB1.TSP1, which contains table TCRT.TTBL, has three partitions. Because the table space is partitioned and each partition is associated with an output data set that is defined by the UNLDDS template, the UNLOAD job runs in parallel in a multi-processor environment. The number of parallel tasks are determined by the number of available processors.

```

//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SMPLUNLD',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=USERID.SMPLUNLD.SYSPUNCH,
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(1,1))
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
TEMPLATE UNLDDS DSN &USERID..SMPLUNLD.&TS..P&PART.
          UNIT SYSDA DISP (NEW,CATLG,CATLG) SPACE (2,1) CYL
UNLOAD TABLESPACE TDB1.TSP1
UNLDDN UNLDDS
FROM TABLE TCRT.TTBL

```

Figure 110. Example of unloading data in parallel from a partitioned table space

Assume that the user ID is USERID. This UNLOAD job creates the following three data sets to store the unloaded data:

- USERID.SMPLUNLD.TSP1.P00001 ... contains rows from partition 1.
- USERID.SMPLUNLD.TSP1.P00002 ... contains rows from partition 2.
- USERID.SMPLUNLD.TSP1.P00003 ... contains rows from partition 3.

Example 7: Using a LISTDEF utility statement to specify partitions to unload

The UNLOAD control statement specifies that data that is included in the UNLDLIST list is to be unloaded. UNLDLIST is defined in the LISTDEF utility control statement and contains partitions one and three of table space TDB1.TSP1. The LIST option of the UNLOAD statement specifies that the UNLOAD utility is to use this list.

The data is to be unloaded to data sets that are defined by the UNLDDS template.

```

//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SMPLUNLD',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=USERID.SMPLUNLD.SYSPUNCH,
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(1,1))
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
LISTDEF UNLDLIST
INCLUDE TABLESPACE TDB1.TSP1 PARTLEVEL(1)
INCLUDE TABLESPACE TDB1.TSP1 PARTLEVEL(3)
TEMPLATE UNLDDS DSN &USERID..SMPLUNLD.&TS..P&PART.
          UNIT SYSDA DISP (NEW,CATLG,CATLG) SPACE (2,1) CYL
UNLOAD LIST UNLDLIST -- LIST name
UNLDDN UNLDDS -- TEMPLATE name

```

Figure 111. Example of using a LISTDEF utility statement to specify partitions to unload

Assume that the user ID is USERID. This UNLOAD job creates the following two data sets to store the unloaded data:

- USERID.SMPLUNLD.TSP1.P00001 ... contains rows from partition 1.
- USERID.SMPLUNLD.TSP1.P00003 ... contains rows from partition 3.

Example 8: Unloading multiple table spaces by using LISTDEF

The UNLOAD control statement specifies that data from multiple table spaces is to be unloaded. These table spaces are specified in the LISTDEF utility control statement. Assume that the database TDB1 contains two table spaces that can be expressed by the pattern-matching string 'TSP*', (for example, TSP1 and TSP2). These table spaces are both included in the list named UNLDLIST, which is

defined in the LISTDEF statement. The LIST option of the UNLOAD statement specifies that the UNLOAD utility is to use this list.

The UNLDDN option specifies that the data is to be unloaded to data sets that are defined by the UNLDDS template. The PUNCHDDN option specifies that UNLOAD is to generate LOAD utility control statements and write them to the data sets that are defined by the PUNCHDS template.

```
//SAMPJOB JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='SMPLUNLD',UTPROC='',SYSTEM='DSN'
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
LISTDEF UNLDLIST
INCLUDE TABLESPACE TDB1.TSP*
TEMPLATE UNLDDS DSN &USERID..SMPLUNLD.&TS.
UNIT SYSDA DISP (NEW,CATLG,CATLG) SPACE (2,1) CYL
TEMPLATE PUNCHDS DSN &USERID..SMPLPUNC.&TS.
UNIT SYSDA DISP (NEW,CATLG,CATLG) SPACE (1,1) CYL
UNLOAD LIST UNLDLIST
PUNCHDDN PUNCHDS -- TEMPLATE name
UNLDDN UNLDDS -- TEMPLATE name
```

Figure 112. Example of unloading multiple table spaces

Assume that the user ID is USERID. This UNLOAD job creates the following two data sets to store the unloaded data:

- USERID.SMPLUNLD.TSP1 ... contains rows from table space TDB1.TSP1.
- USERID.SMPLUNLD.TSP2 ... contains rows from table space TDB1.TSP2.

Example 9: Unloading data into a delimited file.

The control statement specifies that data from the specified columns (RECID, CHAR7SBCS, CHAR7BIT, VCHAR20, VCHAR20SBCS, VCHAR20BIT) in table TBQB0501 is to be unloaded into a delimited file. This output format is indicated by the DELIMITED option. The POSITION(*) option indicates that each field in the output file is to start at the first byte after the last position of the previous field.

The column delimiter is specified by the COLDEL option as a semicolon (;), the character string delimiter is specified by the CHARDEL option as a pound sign (#), and the decimal point character is specified by the DECPT option as an exclamation point (!).

PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH specifies that UNLOAD is to generate LOAD utility control statements and store them in the SYSPUNCH data set, which is the default. UNLDDN SYSREC indicates that the data is to be unloaded to the SYSREC data set, which is the default.

The EBCDIC option indicates that all output character data is to be in EBCDIC.

```

/*
//STEP3 EXEC DSNUPROC,UID='JUQBU105.UNLD1',
//      UTPROC='',
//      SYSTEM='SSTR'
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSREC DD DSN=JUQBU105.UNLD1.STEP3.TBQB0501,DISP=(MOD,DELETE,CATLG),
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=JUQBU105.UNLD1.STEP3.SYSPUNCH
//      DISP=(MOD,CATLG,CATLG)
//      UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
//SYSIN DD*
        UNLOAD TABLESPACE DBQB0501.TSQB0501
        DELIMITED CHARDEL '#' COLDEL ';' DECPT '!'
        PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH
        UNLDDN SYSREC EBCDIC
        FROM TABLE ADMF001.TBQB0501
        (RECID      POSITION(*) CHAR,
         CHAR7SBCS  POSITION(*) CHAR,
         CHAR7SBIT  POSITION(*) CHAR(7),
         VCHAR20    POSITION(*) VARCHAR,
         VCHAR20SBCS POSITION(*) VARCHAR,
         VCHAR20BIT  POSITION(*) VARCHAR)
/*

```

Figure 113. Example of unloading data into a delimited file.

Example 10: Converting character data

For this example, assume that table DSN8810.DEMO_UNICODE contains character data in Unicode. The UNLOAD control statement specifies that the utility is to unload the data in this table as EBCDIC data.

```

UNLOAD
  EBCDIC
  TABLESPACE DSN8D81E.DSN8S81U
  FROM TABLE DSN8810.DEMO_UNICODE

```

Figure 114. Example of unloading Unicode table data into EBCDIC

Example 11: Unloading LOB data to a file

The UNLOAD control statement specifies that the utility is to unload data from table DSN8910.EMP_PHOTO_RESUME into the data set that is identified by the SYSREC DD statement. Data in the EMPNO field is six bytes of character data, as indicated by the CHAR(6) option, and is unloaded directly into the SYSREC data set. Data in the RESUME column is CLOB data as indicated by the CLOBF option. This CLOB data is to be unloaded to the files identified by the LOBFRV template, which is defined in the preceding TEMPLATE statement. If these files do not already exist, DB2 creates them. The names of these files are stored in the SYSREC data set. The length of the file name to be stored in this data set can be up to 255 bytes as specified by the VARCHAR option.

```

TEMPLATE LOBFRV DSN 'UNLDTEST.&DB..&TS..RESUME'
           DSNTYPE(PDS) UNIT(SYSDA)

UNLOAD DATA
  FROM TABLE DSN8910.EMP_PHOTO_RESUME
  (EMPNO CHAR(6),
   RESUME VARCHAR(255) CLOBF LOBFRV)
  SHRLEVEL CHANGE

```

Figure 115. Example of unloading LOB data into a file

Example 12: Unloading data from clone tables

The UNLOAD control statement specifies that the utility is to unload data from only clone tables in the specified table spaces. The PUNCHDDN option specifies that the SYSPUNCH data set is to receive the LOAD utility control statements that the UNLOAD utility generates.

```
UNLOAD TABLESPACE DBKQRE01.TPKQRE01
      FROM TABLE ADMF001.TBKQRE01_CLONE
      PUNCHDDN SYSPUNCH UNLDDN SYSREC
      CLONE
```

Part 3. DB2 stand-alone utilities

The stand-alone utilities run as batch jobs that are independent of DB2. The only way to run these utilities is to use JCL.

Chapter 33. Invoking stand-alone utilities

You can create utility control statements and EXEC PARM parameters for invoking the stand-alone utilities.

Utility control statements and parameters define the function that a utility job performs. Some stand-alone utilities read the control statements from an input stream, and others obtain the function definitions from JCL EXEC PARM parameters.

Creating utility control statements

Create the utility control statements with the ISPF/PDF edit function. After you create the control statements, save them in a sequential or partitioned data set.

The following utilities read control statements from the input stream file of the specified DD name:

Utility DD name

DSNJU003 (change log inventory)
SYSIN

DSNJU004 (print log map)
SYSIN (optional)

DSN1LOGP
SYSIN

DSN1SDMP
SDMPIN

Utility control statements are read from the DD name input stream. The statements in that stream must conform to the following rules:

- The logical record length (LRECL) must be 80 characters. Columns 73 through 80 are ignored.
- The records are concatenated into a single stream before they are parsed. No concatenation character is necessary.
- The SYSIN stream can contain multiple utility control statements.

Specifying options by using the JCL EXEC PARM parameter

Use the EXEC PARM parameter to specify function options for the following stand-alone utilities: DSN1CHKR, DSN1COMP, DSN1COPY, and DSN1PRNT.

Ensure that the parameters that you specify obey the following JCL EXEC PARM parameter specification rules:

- Enclose multiple subparameters in single quotation marks or parentheses and separate the subparameters with commas, as in the following example:

```
//name EXEC PARM='ABC,...,XYZ'
```

- Do not let the total length exceed 100 characters.
- Do not use blanks within the parameter specification.

To specify the parameter across multiple lines:

1. Enclose it in parentheses.
2. End the first line with a subparameter, followed by a comma.
3. Continue the subparameters on the next line, beginning before column 17.

The following example shows a parameter that spans multiple lines:

```
//stepname EXEC PARM=(ABC,...LMN,  
                    OPQ,...,XYZ)
```

Effects of invoking stand-alone utilities on tables that have multilevel security with row-level granularity

If you use RACF access control with multilevel security, you do not need any additional authorizations to run stand-alone utilities. When processing tables that have multilevel security with row-level granularity, stand-alone utilities ignore row-level granularity. They check only for authorization to operate on the table space; they do not check row-level authorizations.

Related concepts

 [Multilevel security \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Chapter 34. DSNJCNVB

The DSNJCNVB stand-alone conversion utility converts the bootstrap data set (BSDS) so that it can support up to 10,000 archive log volumes and 93 active log data sets per log copy.

Running DSNJCNVB is mandatory when migrating from Version 8. DB2 10 for z/OS will not start if the BSDS is in the old format. DSNJCNVB can be run any time after a Version 8 system has migrated to new function mode. Prior to converting the BSDS to the new format, it can manage only 1 000 archive log volumes and 31 active log data sets per log copy. Converting the BSDS is optional up until the migration to DB2 10 for z/OS. DB2 must be stopped when running DSNJCNVB..

Environment

Execute the DSNJCNVB utility as a batch job only when DB2 is not running.

Your DB2 subsystem must be in new-function mode to convert the BSDS.

Authorization required

The authorization ID of the DSNJCNVB job must have the requisite RACF authorization.

Prerequisite actions

If you have migrated to a new version of DB2, you need to create a larger BSDS before converting it. For a new installation, you do not need to create a larger BSDS. DB2 provides a larger BSDS definition in installation job DSNTIJJN; however, if you want to convert the BSDS, you must still run DSNJCNVB.

Required and optional data sets

DSNJCNVB recognizes DD statements with the following DD names:

SYSUT1

Specifies the BSDS copy 1 data set that DSNJCNVB is to use as input. This statement is required.

SYSUT2

Specifies the BSDS copy 2 data set that DSNJCNVB is to use as input. This statement is optional.

Specify this statement if you are using dual BSDSs and you want to convert both with a single execution of DSNJCNVB. You can run DSNJCNVB separately for each copy if desired.

SYSPRINT

Specifies a data set or print spool class for print output. This statement is required. The logical record length (LRECL) is 125.

Running DSNJCNVB

Use the following EXEC statement to execute this utility:

```
//EXEC PGM=DSNJCNVB
```

Sample DSNJCNVB control statement

The following statements specify that DSNJCNVB is to convert the BSDS so that it can manage up to 10 000 archive log volumes and 93 active log data sets per log copy. The SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 statements identify the bootstrap data sets. Only the SYSUT1 statement is required. The SYSUT2 statement is optional. Specify SYSUT2 only if you are using dual BSDSs and you want to convert both with a single execution of DSNJCNVB.

```
//DSNJCNVB EXEC PGM=DSNJCNVB
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DSNC810.SDSNEXIT
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DSNC810.SDSNLOAD
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNC810.BSDS01
//SYSUT2 DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNC810.BSDS02
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
```

DSNJCNVB output

The following example shows sample DSNJCNVB output:

```
CONVERSION OF BSDS DATA SET - COPY 1, DSN=DSNC810.BSDS01
      SYSTEM TIMESTAMP - DATE=2003.199 LTIME= 9:40:58.74
      UTILITY TIMESTAMP - DATE=2003.216 LTIME=14:26:02.21
      PREVIOUS HIKEY - 04000053
      NEW HIKEY - 040002F0
      RECORDS ADDED - 669
DSNJ260I DSNJCNVB BSDS CONVERSION FOR DDNAME=SYSUT1 COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNJ200I DSNJCNVB CONVERT BSDS UTILITY PROCESSING COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY
```

Related tasks

 [Add a second BSDS \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)

Chapter 35. DSNJLOGF (preformat active log)

When writing to an active log data set for the first time, DB2 must preformat a VSAM control area before writing the log records. The DSNJLOGF stand-alone utility avoids this delay by preformatting the active log data sets before bringing them online to DB2.

The following EXEC statement is used to invoke DSNJLOGF:

```
//stepname EXEC PGM=DSNJLOGF
```

Environment

Run DSNJLOGF as a z/OS job.

Required data sets

DSNJLOGF recognizes DD statements with the following DD names.

SYSUT1

Defines the newly defined active log data set that is to be preformatted. The data set must be an empty VSAM linear data set and less than four gigabytes in size.

SYSPRINT

Defines the print spool class or data set for print output. The logical record length (LRECL) is 132.

Sample DSNJLOGF control statement

The control statements in the following figure specify that DSNJLOGF is to preformat the four active log data sets that are identified by the four SYSUT1 DD statements.

```
//JOB LIB DD DSN=DSNA10.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSNJLOGF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC100.LOGCOPY1.DS01,DISP=SHR
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=DSNJLOGF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC100.LOGCOPY1.DS02,DISP=SHR
//STEP3 EXEC PGM=DSNJLOGF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC100.LOGCOPY2.DS01,DISP=SHR
//STEP4 EXEC PGM=DSNJLOGF
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC100.LOGCOPY2.DS02,DISP=SHR
```

Figure 116. Sample DSNJLOGF control statement

DSNJLOGF output

The following sample shows the DSNJLOGF output for the first data set in the previous sample control statement shown above.

```
DSNJ991I DSNJLOGF START OF LOG DATASET PREFORMAT FOR JOB LOGFRMT  STEP1
DSNJ992I DSNJLOGF LOG DATA SET NAME = DSNC100.LOGCOPY1.DS01
DSNJ996I DSNJLOGF LOG PREFORMAT COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY, 00015000
          RECORDS FORMATTED
```

Chapter 36. DSNJU003 (change log inventory)

The DSNJU003 stand-alone utility changes the bootstrap data sets (BSDSs).

You can use the utility to:

- Add or delete active or archive log data sets
- Add or delete checkpoint records
- Create a conditional restart control record to control the next start of the DB2 subsystem
- Change the VSAM catalog name entry in the BSDS
- Modify the communication record in the BSDS
- Modify the value for the highest-written log RBA value (relative byte address within the log) or the highest-offloaded RBA value

Environment

Execute the change log inventory utility only as a batch job when DB2 is not running. Changing a BSDS for a data-sharing member by using DSNJU003 might cause a log read request from another data-sharing member to fail. The failure occurs only if the second member tries to access the changed BSDS before the first member is started.

Authorization required

The authorization ID of the DSNJU003 job must have the requisite RACF authorization.

Required and optional data sets

DSNJU003 recognizes DD statements with the following DD names:

SYSUT1

Specifies and allocates the bootstrap data set. This statement is required.

SYSUT2

Specifies and allocates a second copy of the bootstrap data set. This statement is required if you use dual BSDSs.

Dual BSDSs and DSNJU003: With each execution of DSNJU003, the BSDS timestamp field is updated with the current system time. If you run DSNJU003 separately for each copy of a dual copy BSDS, the timestamp fields are not synchronized, and DB2 fails at startup. If you change the contents of the BSDS copy by running DSNJU003, DB2 issues error message DSNJ122I. Therefore, if you use DSNJU003 to update dual copy BSDSs, update both BSDSs within a single execution of DSNJU003.

SYSPRINT

Specifies a data set for print output. This statement is required. The logical record length (LRECL) is 125.

SYSIN

Specifies the input data set for statements. This statement is required. The logical record length (LRECL) is 80.

Running DSNJU003

Execute the utility with the following statement, which can be included only in a batch job:

```
//EXEC PGM=DSNJU003
```

Syntax and options of the DSNJU003 control statement

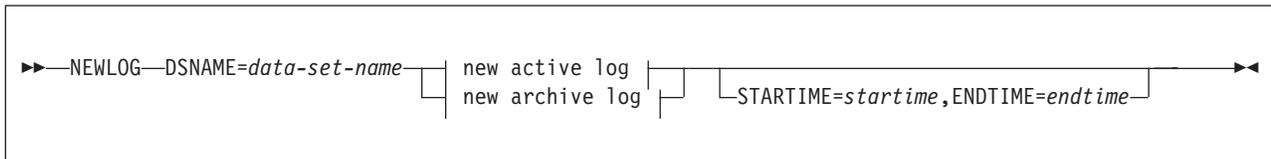
The DSNJU003 utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

DSNJU003 uses multiple statements that you submit in separate jobs. The statements are:

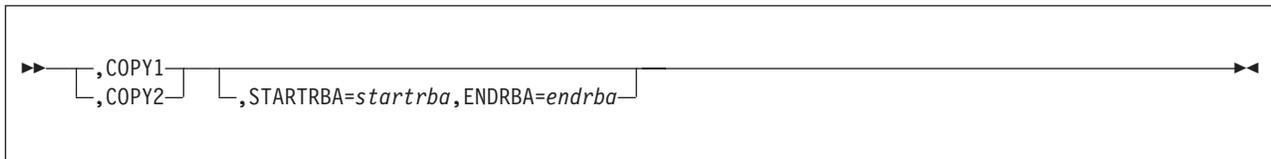
- NEWLOG
- DELETE
- CRESTART
- NEWCAT
- DDF
- CHECKPT
- HIGHRBA

DSNJU003 (change log inventory) syntax diagram

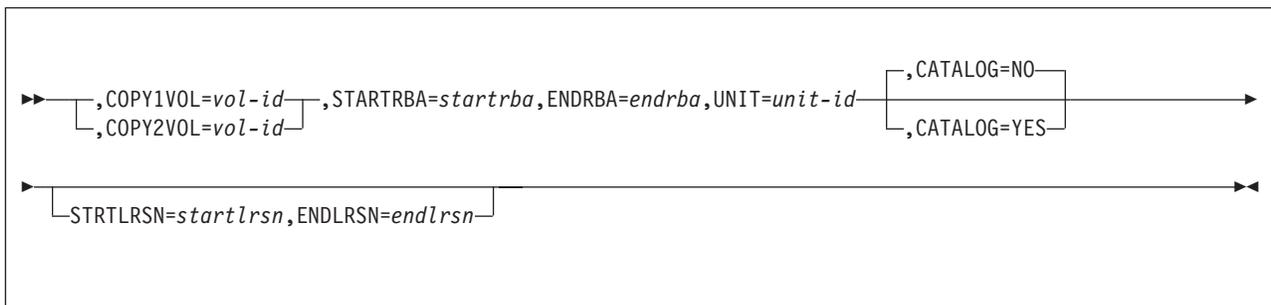
NEWLOG statement



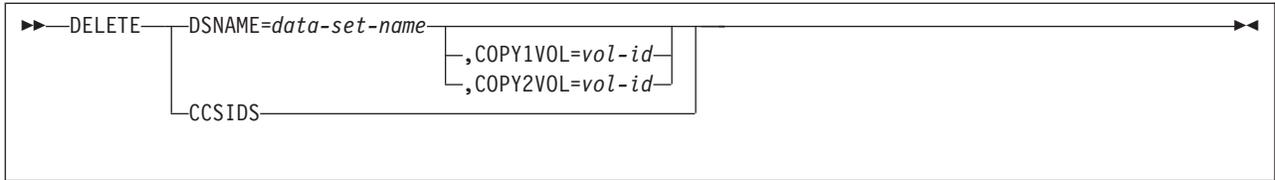
new active log:



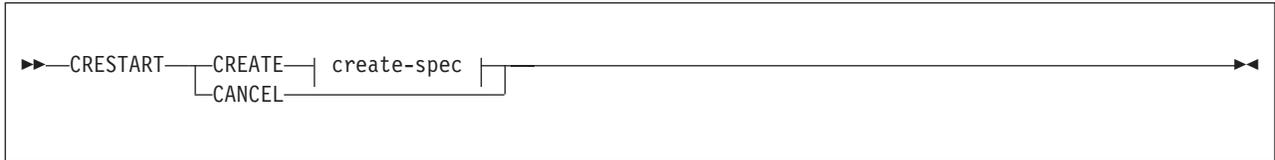
new archive log:



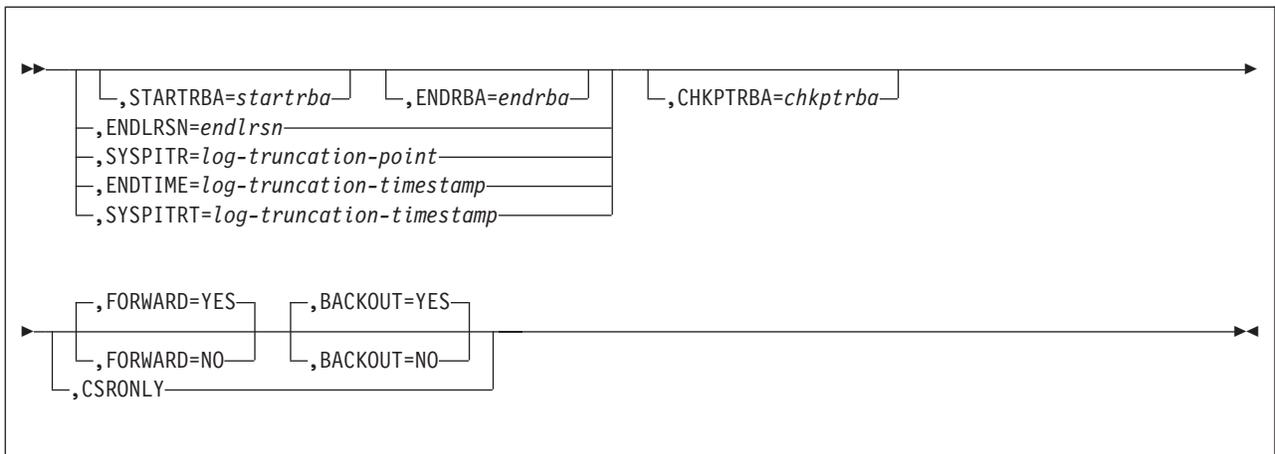
DELETE statement



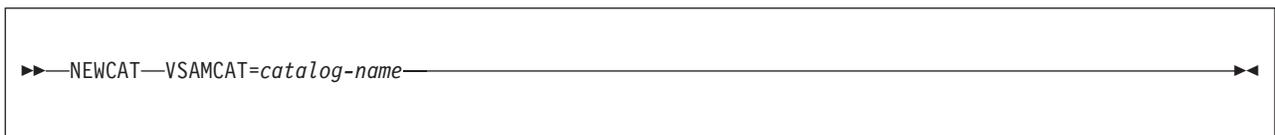
CRESTART statement



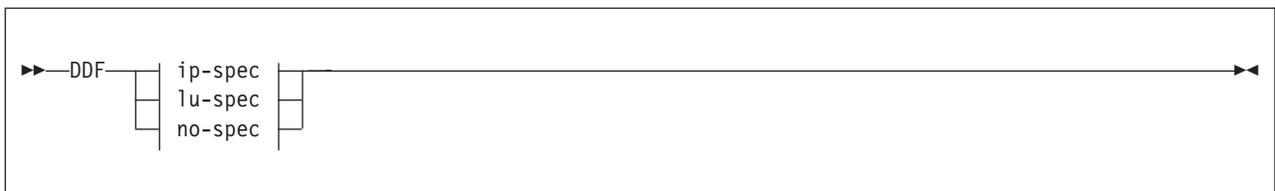
create-spec:



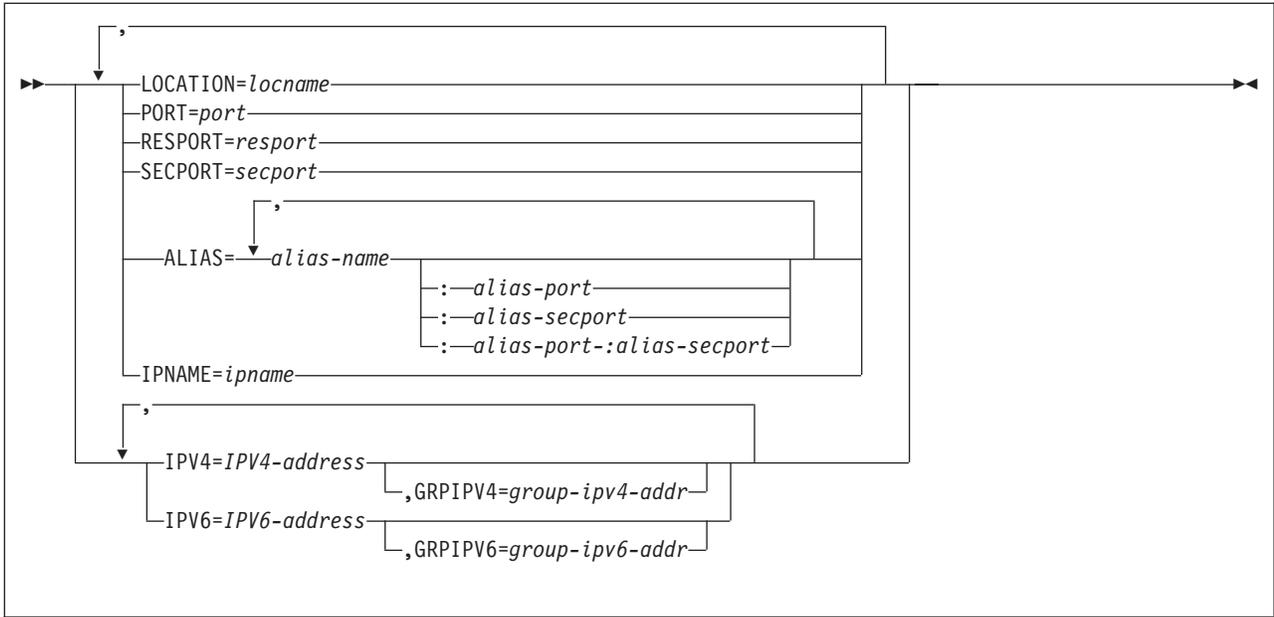
NEWCAT statement



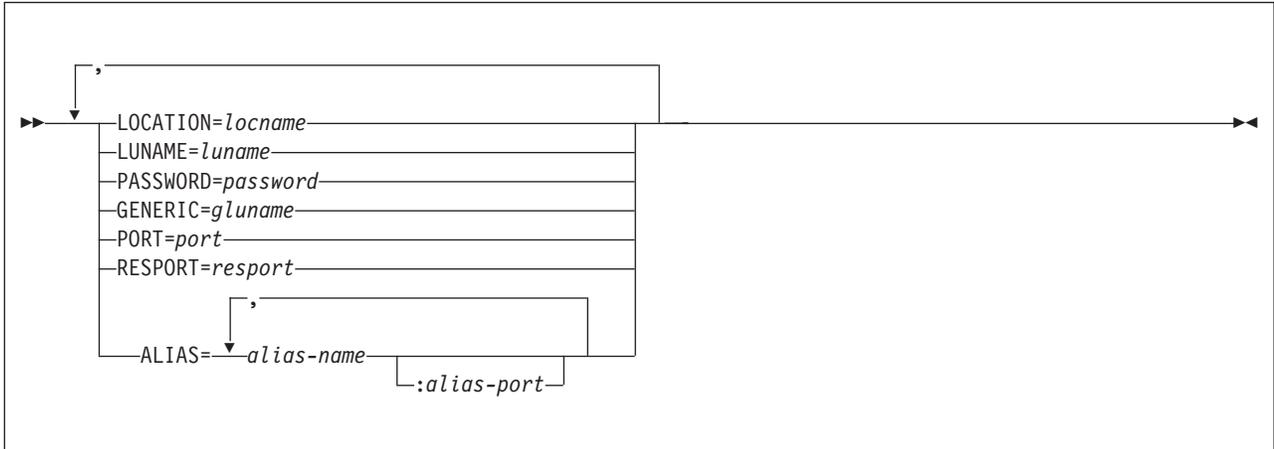
DDF statement



ip-spec:



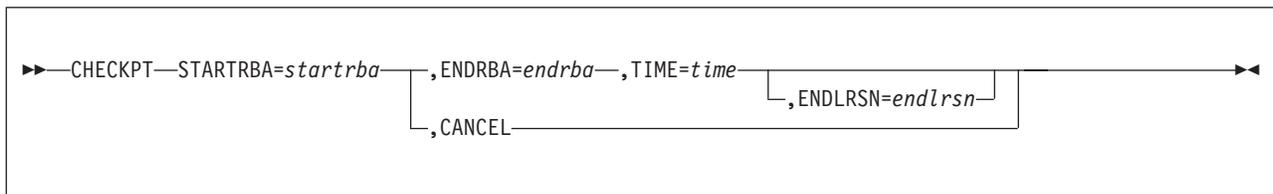
lu-spec:



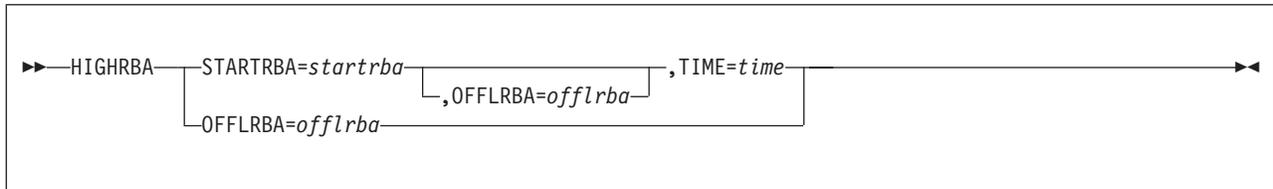
no-spec:



CHECKPT statement



HIGHRBA statement



Option descriptions

NEWLOG

Declares one of the following data sets:

- A VSAM data set that is available for use as an active log data set.
Use only the keywords DSNAME=, COPY1, and COPY2.
- An active log data set that is replacing one that encountered an I/O error.
Use only the keywords DSNAME=, COPY1, COPY2, STARTRBA=, and ENDRBA=.
- An archive log data set volume.
Use only the keywords DSNAME=, COPY1VOL=, COPY2VOL=, STARTRBA=, ENDRBA=, UNIT=, CATALOG=, STRTLRSN=, and ENDLRSN=.

If you create an archive log data set and add it to the BSDS with this utility, you can specify a name that DB2 might also generate. DB2 generates archive log data set names of the form DSNCAT.ARCHLOG x .Annnnnnnn where:

- DSNCAT and ARCHLOG are parts of the data set prefix that you specified on installation panels DSNTIPA2 and DSNTIPH.
- x is 1 for the first copy of the logs, and 2 is for the second copy.
- Annnnnnnn represents the series of low-level qualifiers that DB2 generates for archive log data set names, beginning with A0000001, and incrementing to A0000002, A0000003, and so forth.

For data sharing, the naming convention is DSNCAT.ARCHLOG1 or DSNCAT.DSN1.ARCLG1.

If you do specify a name by using the same naming convention as DB2, you receive a dynamic allocation error when DB2 generates that name. The error message, DSNJ103I, is issued once. DB2 then increments the low-level qualifier to generate the next data set name in the series and offloads to it the next time DB2 archives. (The active log that previously was not offloaded is offloaded to this data set.)

The newly defined active logs cannot specify a start and end LRSN. When DB2 starts, it reads the new active log data sets with an RBA range to determine the LRSN range, and updates the start and end LRSN in the BSDS for the new log data sets. The start and end LRSN for new active logs

that contain active log data are read at DB2 start-up time from the new active log data sets that are specified in the change log inventory NEWLOG statements. For new archive logs that are defined with change log inventory, the user must specify the start and end RBAs. For data sharing, the user must also specify the start and end LRSNs. DB2 startup does not attempt to find these values from the new archive log data sets.

DSNAME= *data-set-name*

Specifies a log data set.

data-set-name can be up to 44 characters long.

COPY1

Makes the data set an active log copy-1 data set.

COPY2

Makes the data set an active log copy-2 data set.

STARTRBA= *startrba*

Identifies a hexadecimal number of up to 12 characters. If you use fewer than 12 characters, leading zeros are added. *startrba* must end with '000'; otherwise DB2 returns a DSNJ4381 error message. You can obtain the RBA from messages or by printing the log map.

On the NEWLOG statement, *startrba* gives the log RBA of the beginning of the replacement active log data set or the archive log data set volume that is specified by DSNAME.

On the CRESTART statement, *startrba* is the earliest RBA of the log that is to be used during restart. If you omit STARTRBA, DB2 determines the beginning of the log range.

On the CHECKPT statement, *startrba* indicates the start checkpoint log record. STARTRBA is required when STARTIME is specified.

On the HIGHRBA statement, *startrba* denotes the log RBA of the highest-written log record in the active log data sets.

ENDRBA= *endrba*

endrba is a hexadecimal number of up to 12 characters. If you use fewer than 12 characters, leading zeros are added. *endrba* must end with '000' or DB2 returns a DSNJ4381 error message.

On the NEWLOG statement, *endrba* gives the log RBA (relative byte address within the log) of the end of the replacement active log data set or the archive log data set volume that is specified by DSNAME.

On the CRESTART statement, *endrba* is the last RBA of the log that is to be used during restart, and it is also the starting RBA of the next active log that is written after restart. Any log information in the bootstrap data set, the active logs, and the archive logs with an RBA that is greater than *endrba* is discarded. If you omit ENDRBA, DB2 determines the end of the log range.

The value of ENDRBA must be a multiple of 4096. (The hexadecimal value must end in 000.) Also, the value must be greater than or equal to the value of STARTRBA. If STARTRBA and ENDRBA are equal, the next restart is a cold start; that is, no log records are processed during restart. The specified RBA becomes the beginning RBA of the new log.

On the CHECKPT statement, *endrba* indicates the end checkpoint log record that corresponds to the start checkpoint log record.

COPY1VOL= *vol-id*

vol-id is the volume serial of the copy-1 archive log data set that is specified after DSNNAME.

COPY2VOL= *vol-id*

vol-id is the volume serial of the copy-2 archive log data set that is specified after DSNNAME.

UNIT=*unit-id*

unit-id is the device type of the archive log data set that is named after DSNNAME.

CATALOG

Indicates whether the archive log data set is to be cataloged.

NO

Indicates that the archive log data set is not to be cataloged. All subsequent allocations of the data set are made using the unit and volume information that is specified on the statement.

YES

Indicates that the archive log data set is to be cataloged. All subsequent allocations of the data set are made using the catalog.

DB2 requires that all archive log data sets on disk be cataloged. Select CATALOG=YES if the archive log data set is on disk.

STRTLRSN= *startlrsn*

On the NEWLOG statement, *startlrsn* identifies the LRSN in the log record header of the first complete log record on the new archive data set. *startlrsn* is a hexadecimal number of up to 12 characters. If you use fewer than 12 characters, leading zeros are added. In a data sharing environment, run the print log map utility to find an archive log data set and start and end RBAs and LRSNs.

ENDLRSN=*endlrsn*

endlrsn is a hexadecimal number of up to 12 characters. If you use fewer than 12 characters, leading zeros are added. In a data sharing environment, run the print log map utility to find an archive log data set and start and end RBAs and LRSNs.

For the NEWLOG and CHECKPT statements, the ENDLRSN option is valid only in a data sharing environment. For the CRESTART statement, the ENDLRSN option is valid in both data sharing and non-data sharing environments. This option cannot be specified with STARTRBA or ENDRBA.

On the NEWLOG statement, *endlrsn* is the LRSN in the log record header of the last log record on the new archive data set.

On the CRESTART statement, in a data sharing environment, *endlrsn* is an LRSN value that is to be used as the log truncation point. A valid log truncation point is any LRSN value for which there exists a log record with an LRSN that is greater than or equal to the specified LRSN value. Any log information in the bootstrap data set, the active logs, and the archive logs with an LRSN greater than *endlrsn* is discarded. If you omit ENDLRSN, DB2 determines the end of the log range.

In a non-data sharing environment, *endlrsn* is the RBA value that matches the start of the last log record that is to be used during restart. Any log information in the bootstrap data set, the active logs, and the archive logs with an RBA that is greater than *endlrsn* is discarded. If the *endlrsn* RBA value does

not match the start of a log record, DB2 restart fails. If you omit ENDLRSN, DB2 determines the end of the log range.

On the CHECKPT statement, *endlrsn* is the LRSN of the end checkpoint log record.

STARTIME=*starttime*

Enables you to record the start time of the RBA in the BSDS. This field is optional.

starttime specifies the start time in the following timestamp format:

yyydddhhmssst

In this format:

yyyy Indicates the year (1989-2099).

ddd Indicates the day of the year (0-365; 366 in leap years).

hh Indicates the hour (0-23).

mm Indicates the minutes (0-59).

ss Indicates the seconds (0-59).

t Indicates tenths of a second.

If fewer than 14 digits are specified for the STARTIME or ENDTIME parameter, trailing zeros are added.

If STARTIME is specified, the ENDTIME, STARTRBA, and ENDRBA options must also be specified.

ENDTIME=*endtime*

Enables you to record the end time of the RBA in the BSDS. This field is optional.

endtime specifies the end time in the same timestamp format as the STARTIME option. The ENDTIME value must be greater than or equal to the value of STARTIME.

DELETE

Deletes either CCSID information or log data set information from the bootstrap data sets. To delete CCSID information, specify the CCSIDS option. To delete all information for a specified log data set or volume, specify the DSNNAME option.

CCSIDS

Deletes CCSID information from the BSDS. CCSID information is stored in the BSDS to ensure that you do not accidentally change the CCSID values.

Use this option under the direction of IBM Software Support when the CCSID information in the BSDS is incorrect. After you run a DSNJU003 job with the DELETE CCSIDS option, the CCSID values from the application defaults load module are recorded in the BSDS the next time DB2 is started.

CRESTART

Controls the next restart of DB2, either by creating a new conditional restart control record or by canceling the one that is currently active.

CREATE

Creates a new conditional restart control record. When the new record is created, the previous control record becomes inactive.

SYSPITR=*log-truncation-point*

Specifies the log RBA (non-data sharing system) or the log LRSN (data sharing system) that represents the log truncation point for the point-in-time for system recovery. Before you run the RESTORE SYSTEM utility to recover system data,

you must use the SYSPITR option of DSNJU003. This option enables you to create a conditional restart control record to truncate the logs for system point-in-time recovery. You can also specify a value of FFFFFFFFFF to cause a point-in-time recovery to occur without log truncation.

log-truncation-point specifies the log RBA, log LRSN, or log FFFFFFFFFF. In a non-data sharing environment, *log-truncation point* is the RBA value that matches the start of the last log record that is to be used during restart. If the RBA value does not match the start of a log record, DB2 restart fails. In a data sharing environment, *log-truncation point* is an LRSN value that is a valid log truncation point. A valid log truncation point is any LRSN value for which there exists a log record with an LRSN that is greater than or equal to the specified LRSN value. Use the same LRSN value for all members of the data sharing group that require log truncation.

You cannot specify any other option with CREATE, SYSPITR. You can run this option of the utility only after new-function mode is enabled.

ENDTIME= *log-truncation-timestamp*

Specifies an end time value that is to be used as the log truncation point. A valid truncation point is any GMT timestamp for which there exists a log record with a timestamp that is greater than or equal to the specified timestamp value. Any log information in the bootstrap data set, the active logs, and the archive logs with a timestamp greater than the ENDTIME is discarded. If you do not specify ENDTIME, DB2 determines the end of the log range.

You cannot specify any other option with CREATE, ENDTIME. You can run this option of the utility only after new-function mode is enabled.

SYSPITRT= *log-truncation-timestamp*

Specifies the timestamp value that represents the point-in-time log truncation point for system recovery. Before you run the RESTORE SYSTEM utility to recover system data, you must use the SYSPITR or SYSPITRT option of DSNJU003. The options enable you to create a conditional restart control record to truncate the logs for system point-in-time recovery.

Log-truncation-timestamp specifies a timestamp value that is to be used as the log truncation point. A valid log truncation point is any GMT timestamp for which there exists a log record with a timestamp that is greater than or equal to the specified timestamp value. Any log information in the bootstrap data set, the active logs, and the archive logs with a timestamp greater than SYSPITRT is discarded. If you omit SYSPITRT, DB2 determined the end of the log range. Use the same timestamp value for all members of the data sharing group that require log truncation.

You cannot specify any other option with CREATE, SYSPITRT. You can run this option of the utility only after new-function mode is enabled.

Note: The starttime keyword specifies the start time in the yyyydddhhmmsst timestamp format. See the STARTIME option for details about the timestamp.

CANCEL

On the CRESTART statement, deactivates the currently active conditional restart control record. The record remains in the BSDS as historical information.

No other keyword can be used with CANCEL on the CRESTART statement.

On the CHECKPT statement, deletes the checkpoint queue entry that contains a starting RBA that matches the parameter that is specified by the STARTRBA keyword.

Attention: This statement can override DB2's efforts to maintain data in a consistent state. Do not use this statement without understanding the conditional restart process.

CHKPTRBA= *chkptrba*

Identifies the log RBA of the start of the checkpoint record that is to be used during restart.

If you use STARTRBA or ENDRBA, and you do not use CHKPTRBA, the DSNJU003 utility selects the RBA of an appropriate checkpoint record. If you do use CHKPTRBA, you override the value that is selected by the utility.

chkptrba must be in the range that is determined by *startrba* and *endrba* or their default values.

If possible, do not use CHKPTRBA; let the utility determine the RBA of the checkpoint record.

CHKPTRBA=0 overrides any selection by the utility; at restart, DB2 attempts to use the most recent checkpoint record.

FORWARD=

Indicates whether to use the forward-log-recovery phase of DB2 restart, which reads the log in a forward direction to recover any units of recovery that were in one of the following two states when DB2 was last stopped:

- Indoubt (the units of recovery had finished the first phase of commit, but had not started the second phase)
- In-commit (had started but had not finished the second phase of commit)

YES

Allows forward-log recovery.

If you specify a cold start (by using the same value for STARTRBA and ENDRBA), no recovery processing is performed.

NO

Terminates forward-log recovery before log records are processed. When you specify, FORWARD=NO, DB2 does not go back in the log to the beginning of any indoubt or in-commit units of recovery to complete forward recovery for these units. Choose this option if a very old indoubt unit of recovery exists to avoid a lengthy restart. The in-commit and indoubt units of recovery are marked as bypassed and complete in the log. However, any database writes that are pending at the end of the log, including updates from other units of recovery, are still written out during the forward phase of restart. Any updates that must be rolled-back, such as for an inflight or in-abort unit of recovery, are done during the backout phase of restart.

BACKOUT=

Indicates whether to use the backward-log-recovery phase of DB2 restart, which rolls back any units of recovery that were in one of the following two states when DB2 was last stopped:

- Inflight (did not complete the first phase of commit)
- In-abort (had started but not finished an abort)

YES

Allows backward-log recovery.

If you specify a cold start (by using the same value for STARTRBA and ENDRBA), no recovery processing is performed.

NO

Terminates backward-log recovery before log records are processed.

CSRONLY

Performs only the first and second phases of restart processing (log initialization and current-status rebuild). After these phases, the system status is displayed, and restart terminates. Some parts of the log initialization are not performed, including any updating of the log and display of STARTRBA and ENDRBA information.

When DB2 is restarted with this option in effect, the conditional restart control record is not deactivated. To prevent the control record from remaining active, use the DSNJU003 utility again with CRESTART CANCEL, or with CRESTART CREATE to create a new active control record.

NEWCAT

Changes the VSAM catalog name in the BSDS.

VSAMCAT= *catalog-name*

Changes the VSAM catalog name entry in the BSDS.

catalog-name can be up to eight characters long. The first character must be alphabetic, and the remaining characters can be alphanumeric.

DDF

Updates the LOCATION, LUNAME, and other DDF related information values in the BSDS. If you use this statement to insert new values into the BSDS, you must include at least the LOCATION and LUNAME in the DDF statement. To update an existing set of values, you need to include only those values that you want to change. The DDF record cannot be deleted from the BSDS after it has been added; it can only be modified.

LOCATION= *location-name*

Changes the LOCATION value in the BSDS.

location-name specifies the name of your local DB2 site.

PORT

Identifies the TCP/IP port number that is used by DDF to accept incoming connection requests. This value must be a decimal number between 0 and 65535, including 65535; zero indicates that DDF's TCP/IP support is to be deactivated.

If DB2 is part of a data sharing group, all the members of the DB2 data sharing group must have the same value for PORT.

RESPORT

Identifies the TCP/IP port number that is used by DDF to accept incoming DRDA two-phase commit resynchronization requests. This value must be a decimal number between 0 and 65535, including 65535; zero indicates that DDF's TCP/IP support is to be deactivated. If RESPORT is non-zero, RESPORT must not be the same as the value that is supplied on PORT.

For data sharing DB2 systems, RESPORT must be uniquely assigned to each DB2 member, so that no two DB2 members use the same TCP/IP port for two-phase commit resynchronization.

SECPORT

Identifies the TCP/IP port number that is used by DDF to accept inbound secure DRDA connection requests. This value must be a decimal number between 0 and 65535, including 65535; zero indicates that DDF's secure connection support for TCP/IP is deactivated.

ALIAS= *alias-name* *:alias-port* *:alias-secport*

Specifies one or more alias names for the location. An alias name is a name besides the location name that connect processing can accept. Specifying an alias name does not change the location identifier for a database object.

Important: ALIAS applies to DRDA connections only.

alias-name specifies from 1 to 16 characters for the location name. *alias-name* cannot be one of the valid DSNJU003 keywords.

:alias-port specifies a TCP/IP port number for the alias that can be used by DDF to accept distributed requests. This value must be a decimal number between 1 and 65535, including 65535, and must be different than the values for the PORT and RESPORT options. Specify a value for *alias-port* when you want to identify a subset of data sharing members to which a distributed request can go.

:alias-secport specifies a secure TCP/IP port number for the alias that can be used by DDF to accept secure distributed requests using SSL. This value must be a decimal number between 1 and 65535, including 65535, and must be different than the values for the SECPORT, PORT, and RESPORT options. Specify a value for *alias-secport* when you want to identify a subset of data sharing members to which a secure distributed request can go. When you specify a value for *alias-secport*, the *:alias-port* value is optional.

You can add or replace aliases by respecifying the ALIAS option. The new list of names replaces the existing list.

IPNAME= *ipname*

Changed the IPNAME values in the BSDS.

ipname specifies the IPNAME value. The value can be up to 8-bytes in length and must be an alphanumeric character beginning with an alphabetic character. When you specify this option, the DDF will activate only its TCP/IP communications support, regardless of whether or not there is a value for LUNAME. Only inbound and outbound DRDA protocol communications over TCP/IP is allowed and there is no attempt to activate SNA/APPC communications support.

The value specified must be either unique to this DB2 subsystem with an enterprise, or if the DB2 subsystem is configured to be a member of a data sharing group, unique to the data sharing group for which this DB2 subsystem is a member. All members of a data sharing group must be defined with the same IPNAME value if all the members are to activate only their TCP/IP communications support. If some members of a data sharing group activate their SNA/APPC (as well as TCP/IP communications support), then the IPNAME value chosen for the TCP/IP only members must match the GENERIC value specified for the members which activate their SNA/APPC as well as their TCP/IP communications support.

The value given to IPNAME will be used by DB2 as the network-id portion of a unit-of-work identifier. A unit-of-work identifier has traditionally been made up of a network-id, a LU name, a 6-byte unique identifier created from a timestamp, and a 2-byte current commit count value. When running with an IPNAME value, the LU name portion of the unit-of-work identifier will be created from a 4-byte character representation of the hexadecimal notation of the value specified for the TCP/IP resync port (RESPORT). This support for activating only TCP/IP communications will occur only if the DB2 is running in V9 New Function Mode.

Do not confuse IPNAME with a TCP/IP external such as hostname or domain name. The value you give IPNAME is only used internally by DB2 or in a DRDA exchange with another DRDA server. It cannot be referenced by any TCP/IP external, such as ping. Also, the hostname of the system upon which the DB2 is running is a poor choice for IPNAME because more than one DB2 could run on the same system, and the IPNAME value given to any DB2 or DB2 data sharing group must be unique within an enterprise.

IPV4= *ipv4-address*

Identifies and associates a constant IPv4 IP address with DDF to accept incoming connection requests to this specific subsystem only. This address must be entered in dotted decimal form. If an IP address is not specified, DB2 will automatically determine the IP address from TCP/IP.

When DB2 is a member of a data sharing group, it is strongly recommended that you refer to a dynamic virtual IP address (DVIP). A group IP address, GRPIPV4, should also be specified.

IPV6= *ipv6-address*

Identifies and associates a constant IPv6 IP address with DDF to accept incoming connection requests to this specific subsystem only. This address must be entered in colon hexadecimal form. If an IP address is not specified, DB2 will automatically determine the IP address from TCP/IP.

When DB2 is a member of a data sharing group, it is strongly recommended that you refer to a dynamic virtual IP address (DVIP). A group IP address, GRPIPV6, should also be specified.

GRPIPV4

Identifies and associates a constant IPv4 IP address with the data sharing group for which this DDF is a member. The IP address is used to accept incoming connection requests that can be serviced by any member of the data sharing group. This address must be entered in dotted decimal form. An associated IPv4 subsystem/member address must also be specified in order to identify the IP address associated with this specific member of the group. If an IP address is not specified, DB2 will automatically determine the IP address from TCP/IP.

It is strongly recommended that you refer to a sysplex distributor owned distributing dynamic virtual IP address (DVIPA).

GRPIPV6

Identifies and associates a constant IPv6 IP address with the data sharing group for which this DDF is a member. The IP address is used to accept incoming connection requests that can be serviced by any member of the data sharing group. This address must be entered in colon hexadecimal form. An associated IPv6 subsystem/member address must also be specified in order to identify the IP address associated to this specific member of the group. If an IP address is not specified, DB2 will automatically determine the IP address from TCP/IP.

It is strongly recommended that you refer to a sysplex distributor owned distributing dynamic virtual IP address (DVIPA).

LUNAME= *luname*

Changes the LUNAME value in the BSDS.

luname specifies the LUNAME value. The LUNAME in the BSDS must always contain the value that identifies your local DB2 subsystem to the VTAM® network.

PASSWORD=

The DDF password follows VTAM convention, but DB2 restricts it to one to eight alphanumeric characters. The first character must be either a capital letter or an alphabetic extender. The remaining characters can consist of alphanumeric characters and alphabetic extenders.

password

Optionally assigns a password to the distributed data facility communication record that establishes communications for a distributed data environment. The PRTCT=*password* option on the APPL definition statement is used to define DB2 to VTAM.

GENERIC= *gluname*

Replaces the value of the DB2 GENERIC LUNAME subsystem parameter in the BSDS.

gluname specifies the GENERIC LUNAME value.

NOPASSWD

Removes the archive password protection for all archives that are created after this operation. It also removes a previously existing password from the DDF record. No other keyword can be used with NOPASSWD.

NGENERIC

Changes the DB2 GENERIC LUNAME to binary zeros in the BSDS, indicating that no VTAM generic LU name support is requested.

NOALIAS

Indicates that no alias names exist for the specified location. Any alias names that were specified in a previous DSNJU003 utility job are removed.

NOIPV4

Removes the constant IPv4 address from the BSDS. The NGRPIPV4 keyword must also be specified to ensure that the associated group address, if any, is also removed.

NOIPV6

Removes the constant IPv6 address from the BSDS. The NGRPIPV6 keyword must also be specified to ensure that the associated group address, if any, is also removed.

NGRPIPV4

Removes the constant data sharing group IPv4 address from the BSDS.

NGRPIPV6

Removes the constant data sharing group IPv6 address from the BSDS.

NOIPNAME

Removes the IPNAME value from the DDF record. No other keyword can be used with NOIPNAME.

NOLUNAME

Removes the LUNAME value from the DDF record. No other keyword can be used with NOLUNAME.

CHECKPT

Allows updating of the checkpoint queue with the start checkpoint and end checkpoint log records.

Attention: This statement can override DB2's efforts to maintain data in a consistent state. Do not use the statement without understanding the conditional restart and checkpoint processing processes.

TIME= *time*

On the CHECKPT statement, specifies the time that the start checkpoint record was written.

On the HIGHRBA statement, TIME specifies when the log record with the highest RBA was written to the log.

time specifies the time value. For timestamp format, see the STARTIME option description.

HIGHRBA

Updates the highest-written log RBA in either the active or archive log data sets.

Attention: This statement can override DB2's efforts to maintain data in a consistent state. Do not use the statement without understanding the conditional restart process.

OFFLRBA= *offlrba*

Specifies the highest-offloaded RBA in the archive log.

offlrba is a hexadecimal number of up to 12 characters. If you use fewer than 12 characters, leading zeros are added. The value must end with hexadecimal 'FFF'.

Related concepts

- [➞ Phase 3: Forward log recovery \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)
- [➞ Member-specific access \(DB2 Data Sharing Planning and Administration\)](#)
- [➞ Timestamp \(DB2 SQL\)](#)

Related tasks

- [➞ Performing conditional restart \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Related information

- [➞ PRTCT \(VTAM Resource Definition Reference\)](#)

Making changes for active logs

You can add, delete, record, and enlarge active logs.

Adding: If an active log is in stopped status, it is not reused for output logging; however, it continues to be used for reading. To add a new active log:

1. Use the Access Method Services DEFINE command to define new active log data sets.
2. Use DSNJLOGF to preformat the new active log data sets.

Restriction: If you do not preformat these logs with the DSNJLOGF utility, DB2 needs to preformat them the first time they are used. Otherwise, performance might be impacted. This restriction applies to empty data sets and data sets with residual data.

3. Use DSNJU003 to register the new data sets in the BSDS.

For example, specify the following statements:

```
NEWLOG DSN=DSNC100.LOGCOPY1.DS04,COPY1
NEWLOG DSN=DSNC100.LOGCOPY2.DS04,COPY2
```

To copy the contents of an old active log data set to the new one, you can also give the RBA range and the starting and ending timestamp on the NEWLOG statement.

To archive to disk when the size of your active logs has increased, you might find it necessary to increase the size of your archive data set primary and secondary space quantities in DSNZPARM.

Deleting: To delete information about an active log data set from the BSDS, you might specify the following statements:

```
DELETE DSNNAME=DSNC100.LOGCOPY1.DS01
DELETE DSNNAME=DSNC100.LOGCOPY2.DS01
```

Recording: To record information about an existing active log data set in the BSDS, you might specify the following statement:

```
NEWLOG DSNNAME=DSNC100.LOGCOPY2.DS05,COPY2,STARTIME=19910212205198,
      ENDTIME=19910412205200,STARTRBA=43F8000,ENDRBA=65F3FFF
```

You can insert a record of that information into the BSDS for any of these reasons:

- The data set has been deleted and is needed again.
- You are copying the contents of one active log data set to another data set (copy 1 to copy 2).
- You are recovering the BSDS from a backup copy.

Enlarging: When DB2 is inactive (down), use one of the following procedures.

If you can use the Access Method Services REPRO command, follow these steps:

1. Stop DB2. This step is required because DB2 allocates all active log data sets when it is active.
2. Use the Access Method Services ALTER command with the NEWNAME option to rename your active log data sets.
3. Use the Access Method Services DEFINE command to define larger active log data sets. Refer to installation job DSNTIJIN to see the definitions that create the original active log data sets.
By reusing the old data set names, you don't need to run the change log inventory utility to establish new names in the BSDSs. The old data set names and the correct RBA ranges are already in the BSDSs.
4. Use the Access Method Services REPRO command to copy the old (renamed) data sets into their respective new data sets.
5. Start DB2.

If you cannot use the Access Method Services REPRO command, follow this procedure:

1. Ensure that all active log data sets except the current active log data sets have been archived. Active log data sets that have been archived are marked REUSABLE in print log map utility (DSNJU004) output.
2. Stop DB2.
3. Rename or delete the reusable active logs. Allocate new, larger active log data sets with the same names as the old active log data sets.
4. Run the DSNJLOGF utility to preformat the new log data sets.
5. Run the change log inventory utility (DSNJU003) with the DELETE statement to delete all active logs except the current active logs from the BSDS.

6. Run the change log inventory utility with the NEWLOG statement to add to the BSDS the active logs that you just deleted. So that the logs are added as empty, do not specify an RBA range.
7. Start DB2.
8. Issue the ARCHIVE LOG command to cause DB2 to truncate the current active logs and switch to one of the new sets of active logs.
9. Repeat steps 2 on page 812 through 7 to enlarge the active logs that were just archived.

Although all log data sets do not need to be the same size, from an operational standpoint using the same size is more consistent and efficient. If the log data sets are not the same size, tracking your system's logs can be more difficult. Space can be wasted if you are using dual data sets of different sizes because they fill only to the size of the smallest, not using the remaining space on the larger one.

If you are archiving to disk and the size of your active logs has increased, you might need to increase the size of your archive log data sets. However, because of DFSMS disk management limits, you must specify less than 64 000 tracks for the primary space quantity. See the PRIMARY QUANTITY and SECONDARY QTY fields on installation panel DSNTIPA to modify the primary and secondary allocation space quantities.

Making changes for archive logs

You can add and delete archive logs.

Adding: When the recovery of an object depends on reading an existing archive log data set, the BSDS must contain information about that data set, so that the recovery job can find it. To register information about an existing archive log data set in the BSDS, you might specify the following statement:

```
NEWLOG DSN=DSNC100.ARCHLOG1.D89021.T2205197.A0000015,COPY1VOL=DSNV04,
UNIT=TAPE,STARTRBA=3A190000,ENDRBA=3A1F0FFF,CATALOG=NO
```

Deleting: To delete an entire archive log data set from one or more volumes, you might specify the following statement:

```
DELETE DSN=DSNC100.ARCHLOG1.D89021.T2205197.A0000015,COPY1VOL=DSNV04
```

Creating a conditional restart control record

You can create a conditional restart control record in the BSDS.

To create a new conditional restart control record in the BSDS, you must execute the change log inventory utility and use the CRESTART control statement. For example, to truncate the log, to specify the earliest log RBA, and to bypass backup, use a statement similar to the following statement:

```
CRESTART CREATE,STARTRBA=28000,ENDRBA=58000,BACKOUT=NO
```

To specify a cold start, make the values of STARTRBA and ENDRBA equal with a statement similar to the following statement:

```
CRESTART CREATE,STARTRBA=4A000,ENDRBA=4A000
```

In most cases when doing a cold start, you should make sure that the STARTRBA and ENDRBA are set to an RBA value that is greater than the highest used RBA.

To truncate the DB2 logs via conditional restart by specifying a timestamp rather than an RBA value, use a statement similar to the following statement:

```
CRESTART CREATE,ENDTIME=20051402030068
```

An existing conditional restart control record governs any START DB2 operation until one of these events occurs:

- A restart operation completes.
- A CRESTART CANCEL statement is issued.
- A new conditional restart control record is created.

Deleting log data sets with errors

You can delete log data sets with errors.

If an active log data set has encountered an I/O error, perform the following steps:

1. If you use dual active log data sets, check if the data from the bad active log data set is saved in the other active log. If it is, you can use the other active log.
2. If you cannot use the other active log or if the active log is in the STOPPED status, you must fix the problem manually.
 - a. Check to see if the data set has been offloaded. For example, check the list of archive log data sets to see if one has the same RBA range as the active log data set. This list can be created by using the DSNJU004 (print log map) utility.
 - b. If the data set has not been offloaded, copy the data to a new VSAM data set. If the data set has been offloaded, create a new VSAM data set that is to be used as an active log data set.
 - c. Specify DELETE to remove information about the bad data set from the BSDS.
 - d. Specify NEWLOG to identify the new data set as the new active log. The DELETE and NEWLOG operations can be performed by the same job step. (The DELETE statement precedes the NEWLOG statement in the SYSIN input data set.)
3. Delete the bad data set, using VSAM Access Method Services.

Use the print log map utility before and after running the change log inventory utility to ensure correct execution and to document changes.

When using dual active logs, choose a naming convention that distinguishes primary and secondary active log data set. The naming convention should also identify the log data sets within the series of primary or secondary active log data sets. For example, the default naming convention that is established at DB2 installation time is:

```
prefix.LOGCOPYn.DSmm
```

In this convention, $n=1$ for all primary log data sets, $n=2$ for all secondary log data sets, and mm is the data set number within each series.

If a naming convention such as the default convention is used, pairs of data sets with equal mm values are usually used together. For example, DSN120.LOGCOPY1.DS02 and DSN120.LOGCOPY2.DS02 are used together.

However, after you run the change log inventory utility with the DELETE and NEWLOG statements, the primary and secondary series can become

unsynchronized, even if the NEWLOG data set name that you specify is the same as the old data set name. To avoid this situation, always do maintenance on both data sets of a pair in the same change log inventory execution:

- Delete both data sets together.
- Define both data sets together with NEWLOG statements.

The data sets themselves do not require deletion and redefinition.

To ensure consistent results, execute the change log inventory utility on the same z/OS system on which the DB2 online subsystem executes.

If misused, the change log inventory utility can compromise the viability and integrity of the DB2 subsystem. Only highly skilled people, such as the DB2 system administrator, should use this utility, and then only after careful consideration.

Before initiating a conditional restart or cold restart, you should consider making backup copies of all disk volumes that contain any DB2 data sets. This enables a possible fallback. The backup data sets must be generated when DB2 is not active.

Altering references to NEWLOG and DELETE data sets

You can alter references to NEWLOG and DELETE data sets.

Use the NEWLOG and DELETE statements to add and delete references to data sets in the BSDS. The log data sets are not changed in any way. If DELETE and NEWLOG are used for a reference in the BSDS to an active log data set, the referenced log data set itself does not require alteration.

Defining the high-level qualifier for catalog and directory objects

You can define the high-level qualifier for catalog and directory objects.

Use the NEWCAT statement to define the high-level qualifier that is to be used for the following objects:

- Catalog table spaces and index spaces
- Directory table spaces and index spaces

At startup, the DB2 system checks that the name that is recorded with NEWCAT in the BSDS is the high-level qualifier of the DB2 system table spaces that are defined in the load module for subsystem parameters.

NEWCAT is normally used only at installation time.

When you change the high-level qualifier by using the NEWCAT statement, you might specify the following statements:

```
//S2 EXEC PGM=DSNJU003
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC120.BSDS01,DISP=OLD
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=DSNC120.BSDS02,DISP=OLD
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
NEWCAT VSAMCAT=DBP1
```

After you run the change log inventory utility with the NEWCAT statement, the utility generates output similar to the following output:

```
NEWCAT VSAMCAT=DBP1
DSNJ210I OLD VASAM CATALOG NAME=DSNC120, NEW CATALOG NAME=DBP1
DSNJ225I NEWCAT OPERATION COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY
DSNJ200I DSNJU003 CHANGE LOG INVENTORY UTILITY
          PROCESSING COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY
```

Related tasks

“Renaming DB2 system data sets”

Renaming DB2 system data sets

Occasionally, you might want to rename the DB2 system table spaces

To rename DB2 system data sets:

1. Stop DB2 in a consistent state.
2. Create a full system backup so that you can recover from operational errors.
3. Execute the change log inventory utility with NEWCAT.
4. Rename the BSDS and all DB2 directory and catalog table spaces and index spaces with IDCAMS.
5. Reassemble DSNZPARM to redefine the high-level qualifier for the system table spaces.
6. Update the BSDS name in the DB2 startup procedure.
7. Start DB2.
8. Drop and re-create the work file database.
9. Optionally use the ALTER command for table spaces in DSNDB04 and user databases.

Renaming DB2 active log data sets

When you rename system data sets, you might also want to rename the log data sets.

To rename DB2 active log data sets:

1. Stop DB2 in a consistent state.
2. Create a full system backup so that you can recover from operational errors.
3. Delete the reusable active log data sets with IDCAMS, but keep the current active log.
4. Define a new set of active log data sets with IDCAMS.
5. Execute the change log inventory utility to remove names of deleted active log data sets and to define the new active log data set names in the BSDS.
6. Start and use DB2 normally.

When the current active log is archived and becomes reusable, you can delete it.

Renaming DB2 archive log data sets

You do not need to rename archive log data sets because old archive logs are replaced as a part of the normal maintenance cycle and the RECOVER utility works with archive logs that contain different high-level qualifiers.

To modify the high-level qualifier for archive log data sets, you need to reassemble DSNZPARM.

Sample DSNJU003 control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSNJU003 control statements.

Example 1: Adding a new archive log data set

The following control statement specifies that the DSNJU003 utility is to add the data set DSNREPAL.A0001187 to the BSDS. The volume serial number for the data set is DSNV04, as indicated by the COPY1VOL option. The device type is SYSDA, and the data set is not to be cataloged. The RBA of the beginning of the archive log data set volume is 3A190000, and the end RBA is 3A1F0FFF.

```
//STEP5 EXEC PGM=DSNJU003,COND=EVEN
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.BSDS01,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=DSNCAT.BSDS02,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSIN DD *
NEWLOG DSNAME=DSNREPAL.A0001187,COPY1VOL=DSNV04,UNIT=SYSDA,
STARTRBA=3A190000,ENDRBA=3A1F0FFF,CATALOG=NO
/*
```

Example 2: Deleting a data set

The following control statement specifies that DSNJU003 is to delete data set DSNREPAL.A0001187 from the BSDS. The volume serial number for the data set is DSNV04, as indicated by the COPY1VOL option.

```
DELETE DSNAME=DSNREPAL.A0001187,COPY1VOL=DSNV04
```

Example 3: Creating a new conditional restart control record

The following statement specifies that DSNJU003 is to create a new conditional restart control record, which controls the next restart of DB2. BACKOUT=NO indicates that DB2 is not to execute the backward-log-recovery phase when it restarts. The ENDRBA option indicates that 000000010000 is the last RBA of the log that is to be used during restart. Any log information in the bootstrap data set, the active logs, and the archive logs with an RBA that is greater than this RBA is discarded.

```
CRESTART CREATE,BACKOUT=NO,ENDRBA=000000010000
```

Example 4: Adding a communication record to the BSDS

The following control statement specifies that DSNJU003 is to add a new communication record to the BSDS. The location, LU name, and password values are all provided.

```
DDF LOCATION=USIBMSTODB22,LUNAME=STL#M08,PASSWORD=$STL@290
```

Example 5: Updating a communication record with a secure TCP/IP port number in the BSDS

The following control statement specifies that DSNJU003 is to update the communication record in the BSDS to specify a secure TCP/IP port.

```
DDF LOCATION=XYZ,SECPOR=448
```

Example 6: Adding a communication record with an alias to the BSDS

The following control statement specifies that DSNJU003 is to add a communication record to the BSDS. The location, alias, LU name, and password values are all provided.

```
DDF LOCATION=USIBMSTODB22,ALIAS=STL715A1,STL715A2,LUNAME=STL#M08,PASSWORD=$STL@290
```

Note: The alias is an SQL identifier and should follow the rules of SQL identifiers. The identifier can not include special characters when you are naming a location alias.

Example 7: Adding multiple aliases and alias ports to the BSDS

The following control statement specifies five alias names for the communication record in the BSDS (MYALIAS1, MYALIAS2, MYALIAS3, MYALIAS4, and MYALIAS5). Only MYALIAS2 and MYALIAS5 support subsets of a data sharing group. Any alias names that were specified in a previous DSNJU003 utility job are removed.

```
DDF ALIAS=MYALIAS1,MYALIAS2:8002,MYALIAS3,MYALIAS4,MYALIAS5:10001
```

Example 8: Specifying a point in time for system recovery

The following control statement specifies that DSNJU003 is to create a new conditional restart control record. The SYSPITR option specifies an end RBA value as the point in time for system recovery for a non-data sharing system. For a data sharing system, use an end LRSN value instead of an end RBA value. This point in time is used by the RESTORE SYSTEM utility.

```
//JOB LIB DD DSN=USER.TESTLIB,DISP=SHR
// DD DSN=DSN910.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//STEP01 EXEC PGM=DSNJU003
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC910.BSDS01,DISP=OLD
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=DSNC910.BSDS02,DISP=OLD
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
CRESTART CREATE,SYSPITR=04891665D000
/*
```

To indicate that a SYSPITR restart is to be done without log truncation, specify a SYSPITR value of all 'FFs in the DSNJU003 job with the CRESTART parameter.

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSNJU003
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC910.BSDS01,DISP=OLD
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=DSNC910.BSDS02,DISP=OLD
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=
//SYSIN DD
CRESTART CREATE,SYSPITR=FFFFFFFFFFFF
/*
```

During the subsequent restart, the user will be asked to confirm the conditional restart with the following:

```
DSNJ256I ) DSNJW6 CONDITIONAL RESTART RECORD INDICATES SYSPITR
RESTART WITH NO LOG TRUNCATION
DSNJ11I ) CONDITIONAL RESTART RECORD 1 CREATED AT 7.214 7:56
WAS FOUND. REPLY Y TO USE, N TO CANCEL
```

Example 9: Removing aliases from a communication record

The following control statement specifies that no alias names apply. Any alias names that were specified in a previous DSNJU003 utility job are removed.

```
DDF NOALIAS
```

Chapter 37. DSNJU004 (print log map)

The DSNJU004 (print log map) stand-alone utility generates a variety of information that can be useful in backup and recovery situations.

The print log map (DSNJU004) utility lists the following information:

- Log data set name, log RBA association, and log LRSN for both copy 1 and copy 2 of all active and archive log data sets
- Active log data sets that are available for new log data
- Status of all conditional restart control records in the bootstrap data set
- Contents of the queue of checkpoint records in the bootstrap data set
- The communication record of the BSDS, if one exists
- Contents of the quiesce history record
- System and utility timestamps
- Contents of the checkpoint queue
- Archive log command history
- BACKUP SYSTEM utility history
- System CCSID information
- System-level backup information

In a data sharing environment, the DSNJU004 utility can list information from any or all BSDSs of a data sharing group.

Environment

The DSNJU004 program runs as a batch job.

This utility can be executed either when DB2 is running and when it is not running. However, to ensure consistent results from the utility job, the utility and the DB2 online subsystem must both be executing under the control of the same operating system.

Authorization required

The user ID of the DSNJU004 job must have requisite RACF authorization.

Required and optional data sets

DSNJU004 recognizes DD statements with the following DD names:

SYSUT1

Specifies and allocates the bootstrap data set. This statement is required. It allocates the BSDS. If the BSDS must be shared with a concurrently executing DB2 online subsystem, use DISP=SHR on the DD statement.

SYSPRINT

Specifies a data set or print spool class for print output. This statement is required. The logical record length (LRECL) is 125.

SYSIN (optional)

Contains the control statement. If you do not specify the SYSIN DD statement, BSDS information is printed only from the BSDS data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement.

GROUP

Names a single BSDS. DB2 can use this BSDS to find the names of all BSDSs in the group. Ensure that the BSDS name that you specify is not the BSDS of a member that has been quiesced since before new members joined the group. This statement is required if the control statement specifies either of these options:

- MEMBER *
- MEMBER(member-name)

MnnBSDS

Names the BSDS data set of a group member whose information is to be listed. You must specify one such DD statement for each member. The statements are required if the control statement specifies MEMBER DDNAME. *nn* represents a two-digit number. You must use consecutive two-digit numbers from 01 to the total number of required members. If a break occurs in the sequence of numbers, any number after the break is ignored.

Running the DSNJU004 utility

Use the following EXEC statement to execute this utility:

```
// EXEC PGM=DSNJU004
```

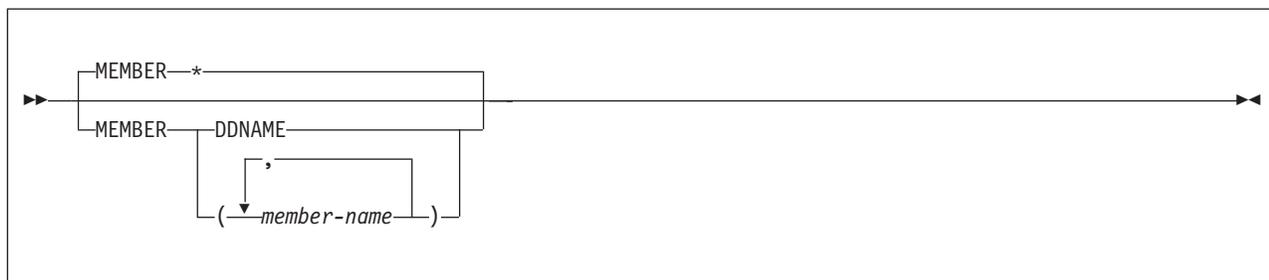
Recommendations

- For dual BSDSs, execute the print log map utility twice, once for each BSDS, to compare their contents.
- To ensure consistent results for this utility, execute the utility job on the same z/OS system on which the DB2 online subsystem executes.
- Execute the print log map utility regularly, possibly daily, to keep a record of recovery log data set usage.
- Use the print log map utility to document changes that are made by the change log inventory utility.

Syntax and options of the DSNJU004 control statement

Using the SYSIN data set allows you to list information from any or all BSDSs of a data sharing group.

DSNJU004 (print log map) syntax diagram



Option descriptions

The following keywords can be used in an optional control statement on the SYSIN data set:

MEMBER

Specifies which member's BSDS information to print.

- * Prints the information from the BSDS of each member in the data sharing group.

DDNAME

Prints information from only those BSDSs that are pointed to by the MxxBSDS DD statements.

(*member-name*)

Prints information for only the named group members.

Sample DSNJU004 control statement

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSNJU004 control statements.

The following statement specifies that DSNJU004 is to print information from the BSDS for each member in the data sharing group:

```
//PLM      EXEC PGM=DSNJU004
//GROUP    DD DSN=DBD1.BSDS01,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN    DD *
           MEMBER *
```

DSNJU004 (print log map) output

The output of DSNJU004 (print log map) utility lists a variety of information.

The following figures show example output from the print log map utility. This output includes the following information:

- The data set name (DSN) of the BSDS.
- The system date and time (SYSTEM TIMESTAMP), which is set at the time that the subsystem stops.
- The date and time that the BSDS was last changed by the change log inventory utility (listed as the UTILITY TIMESTAMP).
- The integrated catalog facility catalog name that is associated with the BSDS.
- The highest-written RBA. The value is updated each time the log buffers are physically written to disk.
- The highest RBA that was offloaded.
- Log RBA ranges (STARTRBA and ENDRBA) and data set information for active and archive log data sets. The last active log data set shown is the current active log.
- Information about each active log data set. This information includes the starting and ending RBAs within the data set, the date and time the data set was created, and the data set's name (DSN), and status. You might see consecutive active or archive log data sets with an end LRSN value that is the same as the beginning LRSN value of the next data set.
- Information about each archive log data set. This information includes the starting and ending RBAs within the data set, the date and time the data set was created, and the data set's name (DSN), unit and volume of storage, and status. You might see consecutive active or archive log data sets with an end LRSN value that is the same as the beginning LRSN value of the next data set.

- Conditional restart control records. For a description of these records and the format of this part of the output from the print log map utility, see “DSNJU004 (print log map) output” on page 823.
- The contents of the checkpoint description queue. For a description of this output, see Figure 121 on page 831.
- Archive log command history. For a description of this output, see Figure 120 on page 831.
- The distributed data facility (DDF) communication record. This record contains the DB2-defined location name, any alias names for the location name, and the VTAM-defined LU name. DB2 uses this information to establish the distributed database environment.
- The tokens for all BACKUP SYSTEM utility records. The token identifies each backup version that has been created.
- The RBA or LRSN when the subsystem was converted to enabling-new-function mode.

The sample print log map utility output in the following figure is for a non-data-sharing subsystem.

```

*****
*
* LOG MAP OF THE BSDS DATA SET BELONGING TO MEMBER 'NO NAME ' OF GROUP 'NO NAME '. *
*
*****
DSNJCNVB CONVERSION PROGRAM HAS RUN DDNAME=SYSUT1
LOG MAP OF BSDS DATA SET COPY 1, DSN=DSNC910.BSDS01
LTIME INDICATES LOCAL TIME, ALL OTHER TIMES ARE GMT.
DATA SHARING MODE IS OFF
SYSTEM TIMESTAMP - DATE=2007.011 LTIME=18:58:19.11
UTILITY TIMESTAMP - DATE=2007.008 LTIME= 0:19:33.53
VSAM CATALOG NAME=DSNC910
HIGHEST RBA WRITTEN 0000384B7A15 2007.011 06:27:04.4
HIGHEST RBA OFFLOADED 000000000000
RBA WHEN CONVERTED TO V4 000000000000
THIS BSDS HAS MEMBER RECORDS FOR THE FOLLOWING MEMBERS:
HOST MEMBER NAME: .....
MEMBER ID: 0
GROUP NAME: .....
BSDS COPY 1 DATA SET NAME: .....
BSDS COPY 2 DATA SET NAME: .....
ENFM START RBA/LRSN: 000000000000
**** DISTRIBUTED DATA FACILITY ****
COMMUNICATION RECORD
04:44:04 JANUARY 12, 2007
LOCATION=STLEC1 IPNAME=(NULL) PORT=446 SPORT=NULL RPORT=5001
ALIAS=(NULL)
IPV4=NULL IPV6=NULL
GRPIP4=NULL GRPIP6=NULL
LUNAME=SYEC1DB2 PASSWORD=DB2PW1 GENERICLU=(NULL)
ACTIVE LOG COPY 1 DATA SETS
START RBA/TIME END RBA/TIME DATE LTIME DATA SET INFORMATION
-----
000036C18000 0000375EFFFF 2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY1.DS03
2007.008 21:51:30.7 2007.008 22:07:30.7 PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
0000375F0000 000037FC7FFF 2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY1.DS01
2007.008 22:07:30.7 2007.008 22:13:15.5 PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
000037FC8000 00003899FFFF 2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY1.DS02
2007.008 22:13:15.5 ..... PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE ARCHIVE LOG COPY 1 DATA SETS
NO ARCHIVE DATA SETS DEFINED FOR THIS COPY
ACTIVE LOG COPY 2 DATA SETS
START RBA/TIME END RBA/TIME DATE LTIME DATA SET INFORMATION
-----

```

```

000036C18000      0000375EFFFF      2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY2.DS03
2007.008 21:51:30.7 2007.008 22:07:30.7 PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
0000375F0000      000037FC7FFF      2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY2.DS01
2007.008 22:07:30.7 2007.008 22:13:15.5 PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
000037FC8000      00003899FFFF      2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY2.DS02
2007.008 22:13:15.5 ..... PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE

```

ARCHIVE LOG COPY 2 DATA SETS

NO ARCHIVE DATA SETS DEFINED FOR THIS COPY

DSNJ401I DSNRJPCR RESTART CONTROL RECORD NOT FOUND

CHECKPOINT QUEUE

```

04:44:05 JANUARY 12, 2007
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      02:58:33 JANUARY 12, 2007
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      0000384B8090
END CHECKPOINT RBA      0000384BA4C0
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BFFDF5B0AE7C
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      06:26:54 JANUARY 11, 2007
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      0000384B3F31
END CHECKPOINT RBA      0000384B7A15
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BFFCE26E2478
SHUTDOWN CHECKPOINT
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      04:06:56 JANUARY 11, 2007
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      0000384AB000
END CHECKPOINT RBA      0000384AD7BE
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BFFCC31B6815
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      20:07:35 JANUARY 10, 2007
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000038484198
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00003848761A
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BFFC57F6EC70
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      20:06:49 JANUARY 10, 2007
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000038449F2E
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00003844D3C0
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BFFC57CB6CFD
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      19:54:11 JANUARY 10, 2007
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      0000384098E4
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00003840C0B8
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BFFC54F80848

```

...

```

BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000035CBA4FD
END CHECKPOINT RBA      000035CBE608
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BF2025C5621E
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      16:51:36 JULY 19, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000035C3FDAF
END CHECKPOINT RBA      000035C43EC4
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BF2025C50CEA
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      16:51:36 JULY 19, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000035C0D767
END CHECKPOINT RBA      000035C11760
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BF2025C4E1F8
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      16:51:36 JULY 19, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000035BE8240
END CHECKPOINT RBA      000035BEC302
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BF2025C4C7D5
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      16:51:35 JULY 19, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000035BB82AB
END CHECKPOINT RBA      000035BCBB6A
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BF2025C4B137
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      16:48:56 JULY 19, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      000035B5EA64
END CHECKPOINT RBA      000035B61BC4
END CHECKPOINT STCK      BF20252C3DE4

```

DSNJ401I DSNJU104 ARCHIVE LOG COMMAND HISTORY RECORD NOT FOUND

DSNJ401I DSNUPBHR BACKUP SYSTEM UTILITY HISTORY RECORD NOT FOUND

SYSTEM CCSIDS

04:44:05 JANUARY 12, 2007

SYSTEM CCSIDS

ASCIIB SBCS = 1252

```

ASCII MIXED = 65534
ASCII DBCS = 65534
EBCDIC SBCS = 37
EBCDIC MBCS = 65534
EBCDIC DBCS = 65534
UNICODE SBCS = 367
UNICODE MBCS = 1208
UNICODE DBCS = 1200
DSNJ200I DSNJU004 PRINT LOG UTILITY PROCESSING COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY

```

...

Figure 117. Sample print log map utility output for a non-dating-sharing subsystem

The sample print log map utility output in the following figure is for a member of a data sharing group.

```

*****
* LOG MAP OF THE BSDS DATA SET BELONGING TO MEMBER 'V91A ' OF GROUP 'DSNCAT '. *
*
*****
DSNJCNVB CONVERSION PROGRAM HAS RUN DDNAME=SYSUT1
LOG MAP OF BSDS DATA SET COPY 1, DSN=DSNC910.BSDS01
LTIME INDICATES LOCAL TIME, ALL OTHER TIMES ARE GMT.
DATA SHARING MODE IS ON
SYSTEM TIMESTAMP - DATE=2006.299 LTIME= 8:58:20.49
UTILITY TIMESTAMP - DATE=2007.012 LTIME=10:00:20.82
VSAM CATALOG NAME=DSNC910
HIGHEST RBA WRITTEN 00002B7458B4 2006.299 15:58:04.9
HIGHEST RBA OFFLOADED 000000000000
RBA WHEN CONVERTED TO V4 00000CF0F0A6
MAX RBA FOR TORBA 00000CF0F0A6
MIN RBA FOR TORBA 000000000000
STCK TO LRSN DELTA 000000000000
THIS BSDS HAS MEMBER RECORDS FOR THE FOLLOWING MEMBERS:
HOST MEMBER NAME: V91A
MEMBER ID: 1
GROUP NAME: DSNCAT
BSDS COPY 1 DATA SET NAME: DSNC910.BSDS01
BSDS COPY 2 DATA SET NAME: DSNC910.BSDS02
ENFM START RBA/LRSN: 000000000000
MEMBER NAME: V91B
MEMBER ID: 2
GROUP NAME: DSNCAT
BSDS COPY 1 DATA SET NAME: DSNC918.BSDS01
BSDS COPY 2 DATA SET NAME: DSNC918.BSDS02
**** DISTRIBUTED DATA FACILITY ****
COMMUNICATION RECORD
18:05:25 JANUARY 12, 2007
LOCATION=STLEC1 IPNAME=(NULL) PORT=446 SPORT=NULL RPORT=5001
ALIAS=(NULL)
IPV4=NULL IPV6=NULL
GRPIP4=NULL GRPIP6=NULL
LUNAME=SYEC1DB2 PASSWORD=DB2PW1 GENERICLU=SYEC1GLU

ACTIVE LOG COPY 1 DATA SETS
START RBA/LRSN/TIME END RBA/LRSN/TIME DATE LTIME DATA SET INFORMATION
-----
000029DB8000 00002A78FFFF 2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY1.DS01
BF215D6C20F3 BF215E3D8600 PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
2006.201 16:05:55.0 2006.201 16:09:34.6
00002A790000 00002B167FFF 2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY1.DS02
BF215E3D8600 BF2168CB4F59 PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
2006.201 16:09:34.6 2006.201 16:56:47.6

```

```

00002B168000      00002BB3FFFF      2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY1.DS03
  BF2168CB4F59      .....      PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
2006.201 16:56:47.6 .....
ARCHIVE LOG COPY 1 DATA SETS
NO ARCHIVE DATA SETS DEFINED FOR THIS COPY

```

```

ACTIVE LOG COPY 2 DATA SETS
START RBA/LRSN/TIME  END RBA/LRSN/TIME  DATE  LTIME  DATA SET INFORMATION
-----
000029DB8000      00002A78FFFF      2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY2.DS01
  BF215D6C20F3      BF215E3D8600      PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
2006.201 16:05:55.0 2006.201 16:09:34.6
00002A790000      00002B167FFF      2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY2.DS02
  BF215E3D8600      BF2168CB4F59      PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
2006.201 16:09:34.6 2006.201 16:56:47.6
00002B168000      00002BB3FFFF      2005.263 17:36 DSN=DSNC910.LOGCOPY2.DS03
  BF2168CB4F59      .....      PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=REUSABLE
2006.201 16:56:47.6 .....

```

```

ARCHIVE LOG COPY 2 DATA SETS
NO ARCHIVE DATA SETS DEFINED FOR THIS COPY
DSNJ401I DSNRJPCR RESTART CONTROL RECORD NOT FOUND
CHECKPOINT QUEUE

```

```

18:05:25 JANUARY 12, 2007
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      15:57:53 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B742232
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B7458B4
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C9272E481
SHUTDOWN CHECKPOINT
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      15:38:07 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B73BEDE
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B73E458
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C8DFC9AE2
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C8DFC9AE2
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      14:45:29 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B72F57E
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B731ABA
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C8238F7F6
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      13:52:34 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B722C78
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B725152
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C7664E895
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      12:59:07 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B716C2B
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B719402
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C6A7355D2
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      12:05:55 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B708488
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B70A9B8
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C5E8E6C30
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      11:13:16 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6FBB22
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6FE0A6
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C52CA437D
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      10:20:21 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6EF344
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6F180A
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C46F69881
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      09:26:54 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6E3344
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6E5ABA
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C3B03EEA6
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      08:34:36 OCTOBER 26, 2006
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6D6662
END CHECKPOINT RBA      00002B6D8DC0
END CHECKPOINT LRSN      BF9C2F539652
TIME OF CHECKPOINT      07:40:44 OCTOBER 26, 2006

```

```

        BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA          00002B6CA000
        END CHECKPOINT RBA          00002B6CC55A
        END CHECKPOINT LRSN        BF9C23487986
. . .
        TIME OF CHECKPOINT          23:40:10 JULY 19, 2006
        BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA        000029CB7E8B
        END CHECKPOINT RBA        000029CBA65C
        END CHECKPOINT LRSN        BF208117E71F
DSNJ401I DSNJU104 ARCHIVE LOG COMMAND HISTORY RECORD NOT FOUND
DSNJ401I DSNUPBHR BACKUP SYSTEM UTILITY HISTORY RECORD NOT FOUND
        SYSTEM CCSIDS
                18:05:25 JANUARY 12, 2007
SYSTEM CCSIDS
-----
ASCII SBCS   = 1252
ASCII MIXED  = 65534
ASCII DBCS   = 65534
EBCDIC SBCS  = 37
EBCDIC MBCS  = 65534
EBCDIC DBCS  = 65534
UNICODE SBCS = 367
UNICODE MBCS = 1208
UNICODE DBCS = 1200
. . .

```

Figure 118. Sample print log map utility output for a member of a data sharing group

Timestamps in the BSDS

The output of the print log map utility reveals that many timestamps are recorded in the BSDS. Those timestamps record the date and time of various system events.

Timestamps in the output column LTIME are in local time. All other timestamps are in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

Figure 117 on page 826 and Figure 118 show example output from the print log map utility. The following timestamps are included in the header section of the reports:

System timestamp

Reflects the date and time that the BSDS was last updated. The BSDS can be updated by several events:

- DB2 startup.
- During log write activities, whenever the write threshold is reached. Depending on the number of output buffers that you have specified and the system activity rate, the BSDS might be updated several times a second, or it might not be updated for several seconds, minutes, or even hours.
- Due to an error, DB2 might drop into single-BSDS mode from its normal dual BSDS mode. This action might occur when a request to get, insert, point to, update, or delete a BSDS record is unsuccessful. When this error occurs, DB2 updates the timestamp in the remaining BSDS to force a timestamp mismatch with the disabled BSDS.

Utility timestamp

The date and time that the contents of the BSDS were altered by the change log inventory utility (DSNJU003).

The following timestamps are included in the active and archive log data sets portion of the reports:

Active log date

The date on which the active log data set was originally allocated on the DB2 subsystem.

Active log time

The time at which the active log data set was originally allocated on the DB2 subsystem.

Archive log date

The date of creation (not allocation) of the archive log data set.

Archive log time

The time of creation (not allocation) of the archive log data set.

The following timestamps are included in the conditional restart control record portion of the report that is shown in Figure 122 on page 832:

Conditional restart control record

The current time and date. This data is reported for information only and is not kept in the BSDS.

CRCR created

The time and date of creation of the CRCR by the CRESTART option in the change log inventory utility.

Begin restart

The time and date that the conditional restart was attempted.

End restart

The time and date that the conditional restart ended.

STARTRBA (timestamp)

The time at which the control interval was written.

ENDRBA (timestamp)

The time at which the last control interval was written.

Time of checkpoint

The time and date that are associated with the checkpoint record that was used during the conditional restart process.

The following timestamps are included in the checkpoint queue and the DDF communication record sections of the report that is shown in Figure 121 on page 831:

Checkpoint queue

The current time and date. This data is reported for information only and is not kept in the BSDS.

Time of checkpoint

The time and date that the checkpoint was taken.

DDF communication record (heading)

The current time and date. This data is reported for information only, and is not kept in the BSDS.

Active log data set status

The BSDS records the status of an active log data set as one of the status values that are listed in the following table. This table lists each status value and its meaning.

Table 131. Statuses of active log data sets

Status	Meaning
NEW	The data set has been defined but never used by DB2, or the log is truncated at a point before the data set was created. In either case, the data set starting and ending RBA values are reset to zero.
REUSABLE	Either the data set is new and has no records, or the data set has been offloaded. In the print log map output, the start RBA value for the last REUSABLE data set is equal to the start RBA value of the last archive log data set.
NOT REUSABLE	The data set contains records that have not been offloaded.
STOPPED	The offload processor encountered an error while reading a record, and that record could not be obtained from the other copy of the active log. Alternatively, an error occurred during truncation of the data set following a write I/O error.
TRUNCATED	One of these conditions exists: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An I/O error occurred, and DB2 has stopped writing to this data set. The active log data set is offloaded, beginning with the starting RBA and continuing up to the last valid record segment in the truncated active log data set. (The RBA of the last valid record segment is less than the ending RBA of the active log data set.) Logging is switched to the next available active log data set and continues uninterrupted. The log was truncated by a conditional restart at a point within the data set RBA range. The DB2 ARCHIVE LOG command was issued while this data set was the current active log data set.

The status value for each active log data set is displayed in the print log map utility output. The sample print log map output in the following figure shows how the status is displayed.

```

ACTIVE LOG COPY 1 DATA SETS
  START RBA/TIME      END RBA/TIME      DATE  LTIME DATA SET INFORMATION
-----
  00000316C000      0000031ABFFF      2001.045  14:39 DSN=DSNC810.LOGCOPY1.DS02
2003.346 16:20:49.6  2003.346 16:21:23.7  PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=TRUNCATED, REUSABLE
  0000031AC000      0000031B1FFF      2001.045  14:39 DSN=DSNC810.LOGCOPY1.DS03
2003.346 16:21:23.7  2003.346 16:21:23.8  PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=TRUNCATED, REUSABLE
  0000031B2000      000003535FFF      2001.045  14:39 DSN=DSNC810.LOGCOPY1.DS01
2003.346 16:21:23.8  .....          .....          PASSWORD=(NULL) STATUS=NOTREUSABLE

```

Figure 119. Portion of print log map utility output that shows active log data set status

Archive log command history

The print log map utility output also displays the archive log command history, as shown in the following figure.

```

ARCHIVE LOG COMMAND HISTORY
                                16:36:54 DECEMBER 12, 2003
  DATE          TIME          RBA          MODE    WAIT    TIME
  -----
DEC 12, 2003  16:35:47.8  000004FC89E5  QUIESCE  YES    999
DEC 12, 2003  16:31:49.5  00000453F379
DEC 12, 2003  16:21:23.8  0000031B1388
DEC 12, 2003  16:21:23.7  0000031AB392
DEC 12, 2003  16:20:49.6  00000316B000
DEC 12, 2003  16:20:49.5  000003167000

```

Figure 120. Portion of print log map utility output that shows archive log command history

The values in the TIME column of the ARCHIVE LOG COMMAND HISTORY section of the report in the previous figure represent the time that the ARCHIVE LOG command was issued. This time value is saved in the BSDS and is converted to printable format at the time that the print log map utility is run. Therefore this value, when printed, can differ from other time values that were recorded concurrently. Some time values are converted to printable format when they are recorded, and then they are saved in the BSDS. These printed values remain the same when the printed report is run.

Reading conditional restart control records

In addition to listing information about log records, the print log map utility lists information about each conditional restart control record and each checkpoint. A sample description of a checkpoint record in the queue is shown in the following figure.

```

                                CHECKPOINT QUEUE
                                15:54:57 FEBRUARY 04, 2003
TIME OF CHECKPOINT              15:54:37 FEBRUARY 04, 2003
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA            0000400000EC
END CHECKPOINT RBA              00004000229A
TIME OF CHECKPOINT              15:53:44 FEBRUARY 04, 2003
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA            00000B39E1EC
END CHECKPOINT RBA              00000B3A80A6
SHUTDOWN CHECKPOINT
TIME OF CHECKPOINT              15:49:40 FEBRUARY 04, 2003
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA            00000B2E33E5
END CHECKPOINT RBA              00000B2E9C88
...
TIME OF CHECKPOINT              21:06:01 FEBRUARY 03, 2003
BEGIN CHECKPOINT RBA            00000A7AA19C
END CHECKPOINT RBA              00000A82C998

```

Figure 121. Sample print log map description of checkpoints

A sample description of a conditional restart control record is shown in the following figure.

BACKUP SYSTEM UTILITY HISTORY

SUBSYSTEM ID DJ1G

18:30:01 SEPTEMBER 24, 2006

DATA	START STCK	LOG	RBLP	DATA COMPLETE	LRSN
BA11432778C9156E	0000000000000000		BA1142E6B5BA	BA1142E6B5BA	
	TOKEN = C4D1F1C7BA11432778C9156EBA1142E6B5BA				
	Z/OS 1.11 CAT=YES				
BA11359200B23C4E	0000000000000000		BA1133661984	BA113392C3CE	
	TOKEN = C4D1F1C7BA11432778C9156EBA1142E6B5BA				TYPE=I
	Z/OS 1.11 CAT=YES				

Figure 124. System-level backup information as an incremental copy

Chapter 38. DSN1CHKR

The DSN1CHKR stand-alone utility verifies the integrity of DB2 directory and catalog table spaces.

DSN1CHKR scans the specified table space for broken links, broken hash chains, and records that are not part of any link or chain.

Use DSN1CHKR on a regular basis to promptly detect any damage to the catalog and directory.

DSN1CHKR is a diagnosis tool; it executes outside the control of DB2. You should have detailed knowledge of DB2 data structures to make proper use of this service aid.

DSN1CHKR is not needed once linked table spaces are removed. DSN1CHKR will continue to work in conversion mode (CM) on linked table spaces or in enable new function mode (ENFM) on the linked table spaces that are not yet converted and removed. A special REORG option CONVERTV10 is included in the DSNTIJEN job to indicate it is the special ENFM REORG. CATMAINT and CATENFM are used to process catalog changes instead of DSN1CHKR.

Environment

Run the DSN1CHKR program as a z/OS job.

Do not run DSN1CHKR on a table space while it is active under DB2. While DSN1CHKR runs, do not run other database operations for the database and table space that are to be checked. Use the STOP DATABASE command for the database and table space that are to be checked.

Authorization required

This utility does not require authorization. However, if RACF protects any of the data sets, the authorization ID must also have the necessary RACF authority.

Required data sets

DSN1CHKR uses two data definition (DD) statements. Specify the data set for the utility's output with the SYSPRINT DD statement. Specify the first data set piece of the table space that is to be checked with the SYSUT1 DD statement.

SYSPRINT

Defines the data set that contains output messages from the DSN1CHKR program and all hexadecimal dump output.

SYSUT1

Defines the input data set. This data set can be a DB2 data set or a copy that is created by the DSN1COPY utility. Specify disposition of this data set as DISP=OLD to ensure that it is not in use by DB2. Set the data set's disposition as DISP=SHR only when the STOP DATABASE command has stopped the table space you want to check.

Restrictions of running DSN1COPY before DSN1CHKR

DSN1CHKR requires a VSAM data set as input; it cannot check a physical sequential data set.

DSN1CHKR does not use full image copies that are created with the COPY utility. If you create a full image copy with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, you can copy it into a VSAM data set with DSN1COPY and check it with DSN1CHKR.

DSN1CHKR cannot use full image copies that are created with DFSMSdss concurrent copy. The DFSMSdss data set does not copy to a VSAM data set because of incompatible formats.

Recommendation: First copy the stopped table space to a temporary data set by using DSN1COPY. Use the DB2 naming convention for the copied data set. Run DSN1CHKR on the copy, which frees the actual table space for restart to DB2.

When you run DSN1COPY, use the CHECK option to examine the table space for page integrity errors. Although DSN1CHKR does check for these errors, running DSN1COPY with CHECK prevents an unnecessary invocation of DSN1CHKR.

Restrictions of running DSN1CHKR on a valid table space

Run DSN1CHKR only on the following valid table spaces:

- DSNDB01.DBD01
- DSNDB06.SYSDBASE
- DSNDB06.SYSDBAUT
- DSNDB06.SYSGROUP
- DSNDB06.SYSPLAN
- DSNDB06.SYSVIEWS

DSN1CHKR output

One intended use of this utility is to aid in determining and correcting system problems. When diagnosing DB2, you might need to refer to licensed documentation to interpret output from this utility.

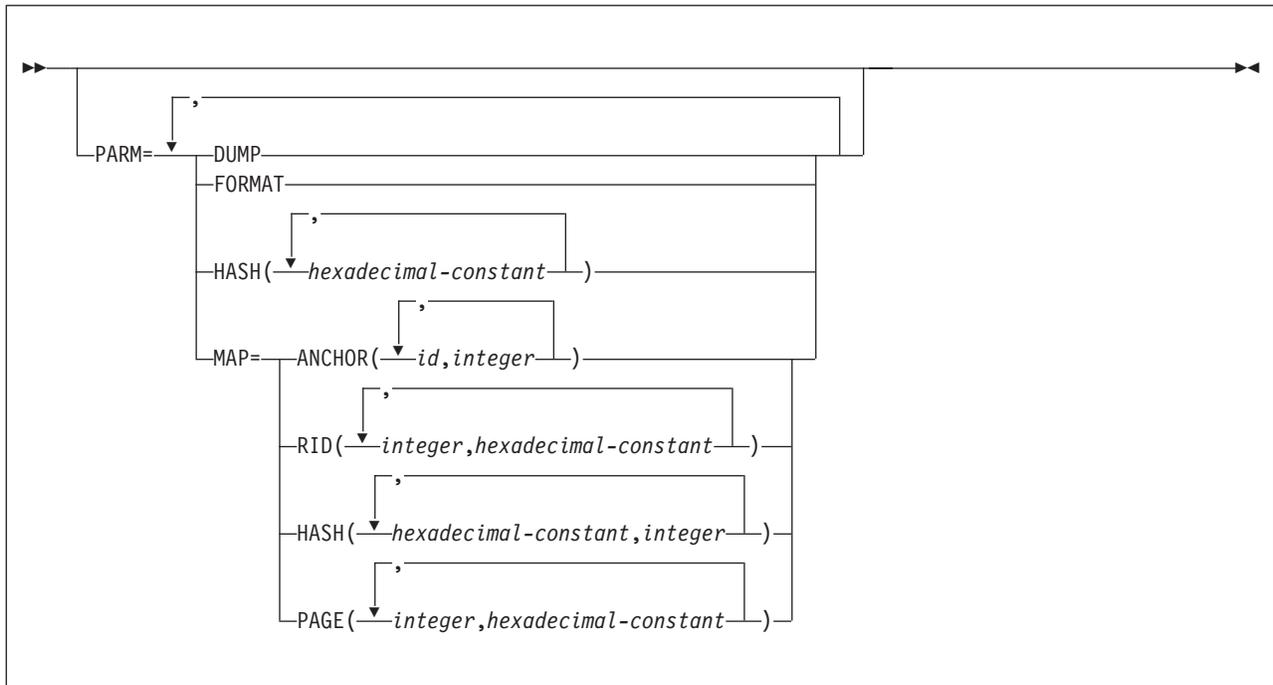
Related information

 [DB2 Diagnosis Guide and Reference](#)

Syntax and options of the DSN1CHKR control statement

The DSN1CHKR utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

DSN1CHKR syntax diagram



Option descriptions

The following parameters are optional. Specify parameters on the EXEC statement in any order after the required JCL parameter PARM=. If you specify more than one parameter, separate them with commas but no blanks. If you do not specify any parameters, DSN1CHKR scans all table space pages for broken links and for records that are not part of any link or chain, and prints the appropriate diagnostic messages.

DUMP

Specifies that printed table space pages, if any, are to be in dump format. If you specify DUMP, you cannot specify the FORMAT parameter.

FORMAT

Specifies that printed table space pages, if any, are to be formatted on output. If you specify FORMAT, you cannot specify the DUMP parameter.

HASH(*hexadecimal-constant*, ...)

Specifies a hash value for a hexadecimal database identifier (DBID) in table space DBD01. DSN1CHKR returns hash values for each DBID in page form and in anchor point offset form.

hexadecimal-constant is the hash value for a DBID. The maximum number of DBIDs is 10.

MAP=

Identifies a record whose pointer is to be followed. DSN1CHKR prints each record as it follows the pointer. Use this parameter only after you have determined which chain is broken. You can determine if a chain is broken by running DSN1CHKR without any parameters, or with only FORMAT or DUMP.

The options for this parameter help DSN1CHKR locate the record whose pointer it follows. Each option must point to the beginning of the 6-byte prefix

area of a valid record or to the beginning of the hash anchor. If the value that you specify does not point to one of these, DSN1CHKR issues an error message and continues with the next pair of values.

ANCHOR(*id,integer*)

Specifies the anchor point that DSN1CHKR is to map.

id identifies the starting page and anchor point in the form *ppppppaa*, where *pppppp* is the page number, and *aa* is the anchor point number.

integer determines which pointer to follow while mapping. 0 specifies the forward pointer; 4 specifies the backward pointer.

The maximum number of pairs is five.

RID(*integer,hexadecimal-constant,...*)

Identifies the record or hash anchor from which DSN1CHKR is to start mapping.

integer is the page and record, in the form *pppppprr*, where *pppppp* is the page number, and *rr* is the record number. These values are in hexadecimal format.

hexadecimal-constant specifies the hexadecimal displacement from the beginning of the record to the pointer in the record from which mapping starts.

The maximum number of pairs is five.

HASH(*hexadecimal-constant,integer,...*)

Specifies the value that DSN1CHKR is to hash and map for table space DBD01.

hexadecimal constant is the database identifier in table space DBD01.

integer determines which pointer to follow while mapping. 0 specifies the forward pointer; 4 specifies the backward pointer.

The maximum number of pairs is five.

PAGE(*integer,hexadecimal-constant,...*)

integer specifies the page number on which the record or hash anchor is to be located.

hexadecimal-constant specifies the offset to the pointer from the beginning of the page.

When you use the PAGE option, DSN1CHKR follows the forward pointer while mapping. If a forward pointer does not exist, DSN1CHKR stops mapping after the first record.

The maximum number of pairs is five.

Sample DSN1CHKR control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSN1CHKR control statements.

Example 1: Running DSN1CHKR on a temporary data set

In this sample JCL, STEP1 allocates a temporary data set. The fifth qualifier in the data set name can be either I0001 or J0001. This example uses I0001. STEP2 stops database DSNDB06 with the STOP DATABASE command. STEP3 copies the target table space into the temporary data set

(TESTCAT.DSNDBC.TEMPDB.TMPDBASE.I0001.A001) with DSN1COPY. This step also uses the CHECK option to check the table space for page integrity errors. After DSN1COPY with the CHECK option ensures that no errors exist, STEP4 restarts the table space for access to DB2. STEP5 runs DSN1CHKR on the temporary data set.

DSN1CHKR prints the chains, beginning with the pointers on the RID option in the MAP (maintenance analysis procedure) parameter. In this example, the first pointer is on page 000002, at an offset of 6 bytes from record 1. The second pointer is on page 00000B, at an offset of 6 bytes from record 1.

The RIDs in STEP5 are for instruction only.

```
//YOUR JOBCARD
//*
//JOB CAT DD DSN=DSNCAT1.USER.CATALOG,DISP=SHR
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IDCAMS
//*****
//* ALLOCATE A TEMPORARY DATA SET FOR SYSDBASE *
//*****
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSIN DD *
DELETE -
      (TESTCAT.DSNDBC.TEMPDB.TMPDBASE.I0001.A001) -
      CATALOG(DSNCAT)
DEFINE CLUSTER -
      ( NAME(TESTCAT.DSNDBC.TEMPDB.TMPDBASE.I0001.A001) -
        NONINDEXED -
        REUSE -
        CONTROLINTERVALSIZE(4096) -
        VOLUMES(XTRA02) -
        RECORDS(783 783) -
        RECORDSIZE(4089 4089) -
        SHAREOPTIONS(3 3) ) -
DATA -
      ( NAME(TESTCAT.DSNDBC.TEMPDB.TMPDBASE.I0001.A001)) -
      CATALOG(DSNCAT)
/*
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//*****
//* STOP DSNDB06.SYSDBASE *
//*****
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
      -STOP DB(DSNDB06) SPACENAM(SYSDBASE)
END
/*
//STEP3 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,PARM=(CHECK)
//*****
//* CHECK SYSDBASE AND RUN DSN1COPY *
//*****
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBC.DSNDB06.SYSDBASE.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=TESTCAT.DSNDBC.TEMPDB.TMPDBASE.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
/*
//STEP4 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//*****
//* START DSNDB06.SYSDBASE *
//*****
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
```

```

//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSTSIN DD *
  DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
    -START DB(DSNDB06) SPACENAM(SYSDBASE)
  END
/*//STEP5 EXEC PGM=DSN1CHKR,PARM='MAP=RID(00000201,06,00000B01,06)',
// COND=(4,LT)
//*****
//* CHECK LINKS OF SYSDBASE *
//*****
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=TESTCAT.DSNDBC.TEMPDB.TMPDBASE.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
/*

```

Figure 125. Sample JCL for running DSN1CHKR on a temporary data set

Example 2: Running DSN1CHKR on a table space

In this sample JCL, STEP1 stops database DSNDB06 with the STOP DATABASE command. STEP2 runs DSN1CHKR on the target table space; the output from this utility job is identical to the output in Example 1. STEP3 restarts the database with the START DATABASE command.

```

//YOUR JOBCARD
//*
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//*****
//* EXAMPLE 2 *
//* *
//* STOP DSNDB06.SYSDBASE *
//*****
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSTSIN DD *
  DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
    -STOP DB(DSNDB06) SPACENAM(SYSDBASE)
  END
/*
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=DSN1CHKR,PARM='MAP=RID(00000201,06,00000B01,06)',
// COND=(4,LT)
//*****
//* CHECK LINKS OF SYSDBASE *
//*****
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.DSNDB06.SYSDBASE.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
/*
//STEP3 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//*****
//* RESTART DSNDB06.SYSDBASE *
//*****
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSTSIN DD *
  DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
    -START DB(DSNDB06) SPACENAM(SYSDBASE)
  END
/*

```

Figure 126. Sample JCL for running DSN1CHKR on a stopped table space.

Chapter 39. DSN1COMP

The DSN1COMP stand-alone utility estimates space savings that are to be achieved by DB2 data compression in table spaces and indexes.

You can run this utility on the following types of data sets that contain uncompressed data:

- DB2 full image copy data sets
- VSAM data sets that contain DB2 table spaces
- Sequential data sets that contain DB2 table spaces (for example, DSN1COPY output)

You cannot run DSN1COMP on concurrent copies.

DSN1COMP does not estimate savings for data sets that contain LOB table spaces.

Environment

Run DSN1COMP as a z/OS job.

You can run DSN1COMP even when the DB2 subsystem is not operational. Before you use DSN1COMP when the DB2 subsystem is operational, issue the DB2 STOP DATABASE command. Issuing the STOP DATABASE command ensures that DB2 has not allocated the DB2 data sets.

Do not run DSN1COMP on table spaces in DSNDB01, DSNDB06, or DSNDB07.

Authorization required

DSN1COMP does not require authorization. However, if any of the data sets is RACF-protected, the authorization ID of the job must have RACF authority.

Required data sets

DSN1COMP uses the following data definition (DD) statements:

SYSPRINT

Defines the data set that contains output messages from DSN1COMP and all hexadecimal dump output.

SYSUT1

Defines the input data set, which can be a sequential data set or a VSAM data set.

Specify the disposition for this data set as OLD (DISP=OLD) to ensure that it is not in use by DB2. Specify the disposition for this data set as SHR (DISP=SHR) only in circumstances where the DB2 STOP DATABASE command does not work.

The requested operation takes place only for the specified data set. In the following situations, you must specify the correct data set.

- The input data set belongs to a linear table space.
- The index space is larger than 2 GB.
- The table space or index space is a partitioned space.

If you are running the online REORG utility with FASTSWITCH behavior, verify the data set name before running the DSN1COMP utility. The fifth-level qualifier in the data set name alternates between 'I0001' and 'J0001' when using FASTSWITCH. If the table space has cloning, the fifth-level qualifier can be 'n0002.' You cannot specify FASTSWITCH YES if the table space has cloning; however, a FASTSWITCH YES REORG might have been done before the clone was created so you might still have a mixture of 'I' and 'J' data sets. Specify the correct fifth-level qualifier in the data set name to successfully execute the DSN1COMP utility. To determine the correct fifth-level qualifier, query the IPREFIX column of SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART for each data partition or the IPREFIX column of SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART for each index partition. If the object is not partitioned, use zero as the value for the PARTITION column in your query.

DSN1DICT

DSN1DICT is required only if you specify the EXTNDICT parameter, to create an external copy of the compression dictionary that DSN1COMP produces.

DSN1DICT defines the output data set to which the external copy of the compression dictionary is written. This data set must:

- Be a sequential data set or a member of a partitioned data set
- Have fixed record format with a record length of 80

The data set or data set member that is produced is an object module that can be link-edited into a program.

Recommendation

Before using DSN1COMP, be sure that you know the page size and data set size (DSSIZE) for the table space. Use the following query on the DB2 catalog to get the information you need, in this example for table 'DEPT':

```
SELECT T.CREATOR,T.NAME,S.NAME AS TABLESPACE,S.PARTITIONS,S.PGFSIZE,
CASE S.DSSIZE
WHEN 0 THEN
CASE WHEN S.TYPE = 'G' THEN 4194304
WHEN S.TYPE = 'O' THEN 4194304
WHEN S.TYPE = 'P' THEN 4194304
WHEN S.TYPE = 'R' THEN 4194304
ELSE
CASE WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 254 THEN
CASE WHEN S.PGFSIZE = 4 THEN 4194304
WHEN S.PGFSIZE = 8 THEN 8388608
WHEN S.PGFSIZE = 16 THEN 16777216
WHEN S.PGFSIZE = 32 THEN 33554432
ELSE NULL
END
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 64 THEN 4194304
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 32 THEN 1048576
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 16 THEN 2097152
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 0 THEN 4194304
ELSE 2097152
END
END
ELSE S.DSSIZE
END
AS DSSIZE
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLES T,
```

```

SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE S
WHERE
  T.NAME = 'DEPT' AND
  T.TSNAME = S.NAME;

```

Related concepts

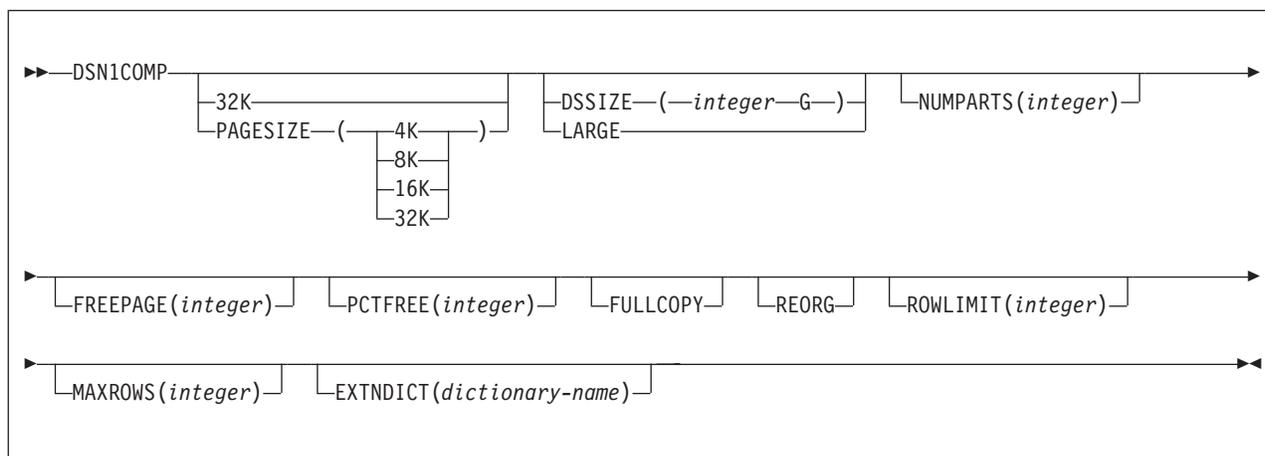
 Contents of the log (DB2 Administration Guide)

Syntax and options of the DSN1COMP control statement

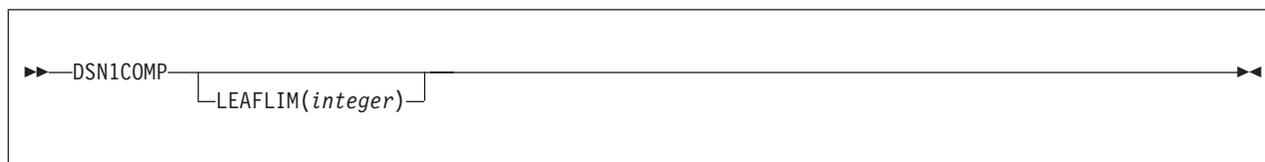
The DSN1COMP utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

DSN1COMP syntax diagram

For table spaces:



For indexes:



Option descriptions

To run DSN1COMP, specify one or more of the following parameters on the EXEC statement to run DSN1COMP. If you specify more than one parameter, separate each parameter by a comma. You can specify parameters in any order.

32K

Specifies that the input data set, SYSUT1, has a 32-KB page size. If you specify this option and the SYSUT1 data set does not have a 32-KB page size, DSN1COMP might produce unpredictable results.

The recommended option for performance is **PAGESIZE(32K)**.

PAGESIZE

Specifies the page size of the input data set that is defined by SYSUT1.

Available page size values are 4K, 8K, 16K, or 32K. If you specify an incorrect page size, DSN1COMP might produce unpredictable results.

If you omit PAGESIZE, DSN1COMP tries to determine the page size from the input data set. DB2 issues an error message if DSN1COMP cannot determine the input page size. This might happen if the header page is not in the input data set, or if the page size field in the header page contains an invalid page size.

If information on this value is available in the input data set header page, the header page information is the default.

DSSIZE(integer G)

Specifies the data set size, in gigabytes, for the input data set. If you omit DSSIZE, DB2 assumes that the input data set size is 2 GB.

integer must match the DSSIZE value that was specified when the table space was defined.

If you omit DSSIZE and the data set is not the assumed default size, the results from DSN1COMP are unpredictable.

For input data sets that were created in DB2 Version 9 or later, the default is obtained from the data set header page. For input data sets that were created before DB2 Version 9 are listed in the following table.

Table 132. Default input data set sizes

Object	Default input data set size (in GB)
Linear/Segmented Tablespace	2 GB
LOB Space	4 GB
Partitioned Tablespace created prior to V9	No default DSSIZE

LARGE

Specifies that the input data set is a table space that was defined with the LARGE option. If you specify LARGE, DB2 assumes that the data set has a 4-GB boundary.

The recommended method of specifying a table space defined with LARGE is **DSSIZE(4G)**.

If you omit the LARGE or DSSIZE(4G) option when it is needed, or if you specify LARGE for a table space that was not defined with the LARGE option, the results from DSN1COMP are unpredictable.

If information on this value is available in the input data set header page, the header page information is the default.

NUMPARTS(integer)

This parameter is not used if the target table space is a universal table space.

FREEPAGE(integer)

Specifies how often to leave a page of free space when calculating the percentage of saved pages. You must specify an integer in the range 0 to 255. If you specify 0, no pages are included as free space when DSN1COMP reports the percentage of pages saved. Otherwise, one free page is included after every *n* pages, where *n* is the specified integer.

The default value is 0.

Specify the same value that you specify for the FREEPAGE option of the SQL statement CREATE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE.

PCTFREE(*integer*)

Indicates what percentage of each page to leave as free space when calculating the percentage of pages saved. You must specify an integer in the range 0 to 99. When calculating the savings, DSN1COMP allows for at least *n* percent of free space for each page, where *n* is the specified integer.

The default value is 5.

Specify the same value that you specify for the PCTFREE option of the SQL statement CREATE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE.

FULLCOPY

Specifies that a DB2 full image copy (not a DFSMSdss concurrent copy) of your data is to be used as input. Omitting this parameter when the input is a full image copy can cause error messages or unpredictable results. If this data is partitioned, also specify the Numparts parameter to identify the number of partitions.

REORG

Provides an estimate of compression savings that are comparable to the savings that the REORG utility would achieve. If this keyword is not specified, the results are similar to the compression savings that the LOAD utility would achieve.

ROWLIMIT(*integer*)

Specifies the maximum number of rows to evaluate in order to provide the compression estimate. This option prevents DSN1COMP from examining every row in the input data set. Valid specifications range from 1 to 99000000.

Use this option to limit the elapsed time and processor time that DSN1COMP requires. An analysis of the first 5 to 10 MB of a table space provides a fairly representative sample of the table space for estimating compression savings. Therefore, specify a ROWLIMIT value that restricts DSN1COMP to the first 5 to 10 MB of the table space. For example, if the row length of the table space is 200 bytes, specifying ROWLIMIT(50000) causes DSN1COMP to analyze approximately 10 MB of the table space.

MAXROWS(*integer*)

Specifies the maximum number of rows that DSN1COMP is to consider when calculating the percentage of pages saved. You must specify an integer in the range 1 to 255.

The default value is 255.

Specify the same value that you specify for the MAXROWS option of the SQL statement CREATE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE.

EXTNDICT(*dictionary-name*)

Specifies the name of an external copy of the compression dictionary that DSN1COMP produces. *dictionary-name* must:

- Be eight or fewer bytes
- Contain only uppercase alphanumeric characters
- Begin with an alphabetic character

The external copy of the compression dictionary is primarily for use by the IBM Data Encryption for IMS and DB2 tool.

When EXTNDICT is specified, a DSN1DICT DD statement must be included in the JCL for running DSN1COMP.

LEAFLIM(*integer*)

Specifies how many index leaf pages should be evaluated to determine the

compression estimate. This option prevents DSN1COMP from processing all index leaf pages in the input data set. Valid specifications range from 1 to 99000000.

If the LEAFLIM parameter is not specified, the entire index will be scanned and all leaf pages will be examined.

In a compressed index, only leaf pages are compressed. All other page types remain uncompressed.

Related reference

 Data Encryption for IMS and DB2 Databases

Before running DSN1COMP

Certain activities might be required before you run the DSN1COMP utility, depending on your situation.

If you run DSN1COMP on a segmented table space, you must first query the SYSTABLEPART catalog table to determine the current instance qualifier, which is stored in the IPREFIX column. You can then use the current instance qualifier to code the data set name in the JCL. The following sample shows an example of such a query.

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, PARTITION, IPREFIX
      FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
      WHERE DBNAME = 'DBMC0731' AND TSNAME = 'TPMC0731'
      ORDER BY TSNAME, PARTITION;
```

The preceding query produces the following result:

	DBNAME	TSNAME	PARTITION	IPREFIX
1	DBMC0731	TPMC0731	1	J
2	DBMC0731	TPMC0731	2	J
3	DBMC0731	TPMC0731	3	J
4	DBMC0731	TPMC0731	4	J
5	DBMC0731	TPMC0731	5	J

Figure 127. Result from query on the SYSTABLEPART catalog table to determine the value in the IPREFIX column

The preceding output provides the current instance qualifier (J), which can be used to code the data set name in the DSN1COMP JCL as follows.

```
//STEP1          EXEC PGM=DSN1COMP
//SYSUT1         DD DSN=vcatname.DSNDBC.DBMC0731.J0001.A001,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT      DD AYAOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP      DD AYAOUT=*
```

Estimating compression savings achieved with option REORG

If you run DSN1COMP with the REORG option on small data sets, the resulting estimates might vary greatly from the estimates that are produced without the default REORG option. Alternatively, if you run DSN1COMP and specify a small number (*n*) for ROWLIMIT, the estimates might vary greatly from the estimates that are produced without REORG.

DSN1COMP does not try to convert data to the latest version before it compresses rows and derives a savings estimate.

Without the REORG option, DSN1COMP uses the first n rows to fill the compression dictionary. DSN1COMP processes the remaining rows to provide the compression estimate. If the number of rows that are used to build the dictionary is a significant percentage of the data set rows, little savings result. With the REORG option, DSN1COMP processes all the rows, including those that are used to build the dictionary, which results in greater compression.

The DSN1COMP utility determines possible saving estimates at the data set level for a unique partition only. Therefore, if DSN1COMP is run against an image copy data set that contains several partitions or against a single partition of partition-by-growth table spaces (PBGs), the results will be different from what the REORG utility would produce.

Free space in compression calculations on table space

The DSN1COMP utility makes compression estimates, which take into account the PCTFREE and FREEPAGE options.

If you use different PCTFREE or FREEPAGE values than those that were created with the input table space, you get a different value for **noncmppages**. DSN1COMP reports this value in message DSN1940I, as shown in the example output in the following figure.

```

DSN1999I START OF DSN1COMP FOR JOB TST512A STEP1
DSN1998I INPUT DSNAME = FUF0U237.TSP32K           , SEQ
DSN1944I DSN1COMP INPUT PARAMETERS
          512 DICTIONARY SIZE USED
           30 FREEPAGE VALUE USED
           45 PCTFREE VALUE USED
          NO ROWLIMIT WAS REQUESTED
          ESTIMATE BASED ON DB2 LOAD METHOD

DSN1940I DSN1COMP COMPRESSION REPORT
          1,289 KB WITHOUT COMPRESSION
           717 KB WITH COMPRESSION
           44 PERCENT OF THE BYTES WOULD BE SAVED

          176 ROWS SCANNED TO BUILD DICTIONARY
        20,000 ROWS SCANNED TO PROVIDE COMPRESSION ESTIMATE
           512 DICTIONARY ENTRIES

           1 DICTIONARY PAGES REQUIRED
          147 PAGES REQUIRED WITHOUT COMPRESSION
          148 PAGES REQUIRED WITH COMPRESSION
           0 PERCENT OF THE DB2 DATA PAGES WOULD BE SAVED

*** DETAIL REPORT OF FREQUENCIES AND AVERAGES ***

          1 CHILD CHARACTER WAS COMPARED           566,764 TIMES
          2 CHILD CHARACTERS WERE COMPARED         182,026 TIMES
          3 CHILD CHARACTERS WERE COMPARED           10,300 TIMES
          5 CHILD CHARACTERS WERE COMPARED           1,129 TIMES
          TOTAL ALPHABET NODE COMPARISONS          528,139 TIMES

          967,361 CHILD COMPARISONS IN THE SIBLING LISTS
          760,219 SEARCHES IN THE SIBLING LISTS
              1.2 AVERAGE NUMBER OF COMPARISONS PER SEARCH
          60 BYTES FOR AVERAGE UNCOMPRESSED ROW LENGTH
          39 BYTES FOR AVERAGE COMPRESSED ROW LENGTH

        263 IS THE DATABASE ID (DBID)
           2 IS THE PAGESET ID (PSID)

```

Figure 128. Example DSN1COMP output

The effect of running DSN1COMP on a table space with identical rows

If you run DSN1COMP on a table space in which the data is the same for all rows, message DSN1941I is issued. In this case, DSN1COMP does not compute any statistics.

Sample DSN1COMP control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSN1COMP control statements.

Example 1: Estimating space savings from data compression for a full image copy

The following statement specifies that the DSN1COMP utility is to report the estimated space savings that are to be achieved by compressing the full image copy that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement. In this statement, the DSN option specifies the data set name of the image copy that is to be used as input. The fifth qualifier in the data set name can be either I0001 or J0001. This example uses I0001. Note that because the input is a full image copy, the FULLCOPY option must be specified.

```
//jobname JOB acct information
//COMPEST EXEC PGM=DSN1COMP,PARM='FULLCOPY'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBC.DB254A.TS254A.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
```

Example 2: Providing intended free space when estimating space savings

In the following sample statement, STEP1 specifies that DSN1COMP is to report the estimated space savings that are to be achieved by compressing the data in the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement, DSNC810.DSNDBD.DB254SP4.TS254SP4.I0001.A00. When calculating these estimates, DSN1COMP considers the values passed by the PCTFREE and FREEPAGE options. The PCTFREE value indicates that 20% of each page is to be left as free space. The FREEPAGE value indicates that every fifth page is to be left as free space. This value must be the same value that you specified for the FREEPAGE option of the SQL statement CREATE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE.

STEP2 specifies that DSN1COMP is to report the estimated space savings that are to be achieved by compressing the data in the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement, DSNC810.DSNDBD.DB254SP4.TS254SP4.I0001.A0001. When providing the compression estimate, DSN1COMP is to evaluate no more than 20 000 rows, as indicated by the ROWLIMIT option. Specifying the maximum number of rows to evaluate limits the elapsed time and processor time that DSN1COMP requires.

```

//DSN1COMP JOB MSGLEVEL=(1,1),CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=A,REGION=3000K,
//          USER=SYSADM,PASSWORD=SYSADM
/*ROUTE PRINT STLXXXX.USERID
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1COMP,PARM='PCTFREE(20),FREEPAGE(5)'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC100.DSNDBD.DB254SP4.TS254SP4.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
/*
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=DSN1COMP,PARM='ROWLIMIT(20000)'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC100.DSNDBD.DB254SP4.TS254SP4.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
/*
//

```

Figure 129. Example DSN1COMP statements with PCTFREE, FREEPAGE, and ROWLIMIT options

Example 3: Estimating space savings that are comparable to what the REORG utility would achieve.

The following statement specifies that DSN1COMP is to report the estimated space savings that are to be achieved by compressing the data in the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement, DSNCAT.DSNDBD.DBJT0201.TPJT0201.I0001.A254. This input data set is a table space that was defined with the LARGE option and has 254 partitions, as indicated by the DSN1COMP options LARGE and Numparts.

The REORG option indicates that DSN1COMP is to provide an estimate of compression savings that is comparable to the savings that the REORG utility would achieve, rather than what the LOAD utility would achieve.

When calculating these estimates, DSN1COMP considers the values passed by the PCTFREE and FREEPAGE options. The PCTFREE value indicates that 30% of each page is to be left as free space. The FREEPAGE value indicates that every thirtieth page is to be left as free space. This value must be the same value that you specified for the FREEPAGE option of the SQL statement CREATE TABLESPACE or ALTER TABLESPACE. DSN1COMP is to evaluate no more than 20 000 rows, as indicated by the ROWLIMIT option.

```

//STEP2 EXEC PGM=DSN1COMP,
//          PARM='LARGE,PCTFREE(30),FREEPAGE(30),NUMPARTS(
//          254),REORG,ROWLIMIT(1000)'
//STEPLIB DD DSN='USER.TESTLIB',DISP=SHR
//          DD DSN='DB2A.SDSNLOAD',DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.DBJT0201.TPJT0201.I0001.A254,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT2 DD SYSOUT=A
/*

```

Figure 130. Example DSN1COMP statement with the LARGE, PCTFREE, FREEPAGE, Numparts, REORG, and ROWLIMIT options.

DSN1COMP output

The output of the DSN1COMP utility lists a variety of information.

Message DSN1941

If you receive this message, use a data set with more rows as input, or specify a larger ROWLIMIT.

Sample DSN1COMP report

The following figure shows a sample of the output that DSN1COMP generates.

```
DSN1940I DSN1COMP COMPRESSION REPORT
          301 KB WITHOUT COMPRESSION
          224 KB WITH COMPRESSION
          25 PERCENT OF THE BYTES WOULD BE SAVED

          1,975 ROWS SCANNED TO BUILD DICTIONARY
          4,665 ROWS SCANNED TO PROVIDE COMPRESSION ESTIMATE
          4,096 DICTIONARY ENTRIES

          81 BYTES FOR AVERAGE UNCOMPRESSED ROW LENGTH
          52 BYTES FOR AVERAGE COMPRESSED ROW LENGTH

          16 DICTIONARY PAGES REQUIRED
          110 PAGES REQUIRED WITHOUT COMPRESSION
          99 PAGES REQUIRED WITH COMPRESSION
          10 PERCENT OF THE DB2 DATA PAGES WOULD BE SAVED
```

Figure 131. Sample DSN1COMP report

Example of DSN1COMP on an index

The following figure shows an example of the output that DSN1COMP on an index generates.

```
DSN1999I START OF DSN1COMP FOR JOB DSN1COMP STEP2
DSN1998I INPUT DSNAME = TESTCAT.DSNDBD.DB1COMPR.I1.I0001.A001      , VSAM

DSN1944I DSN1COMP INPUT PARAMETERS
          PROCESSING PARMS FOR INDEX DATASET:
          NO LEAFLIM WAS REQUESTED

DSN1940I DSN1COMP COMPRESSION REPORT

          38 Index Leaf Pages Processed
          3,000 Keys Processed
          3,000 Rids Processed
          401 KB of Key Data Processed
          106 KB of Compressed Keys Produced
```

EVALUATION OF COMPRESSION WITH DIFFERENT INDEX PAGE SIZES:

```
-----
8 K Page Buffer Size yields a
51 % Reduction in Index Leaf Page Space
The Resulting Index would have approximately
49 % of the original index's Leaf Page Space
No Bufferpool Space would be unused
-----
```

```
-----
16 K Page Buffer Size yields a
74 % Reduction in Index Leaf Page Space
The Resulting Index would have approximately
26 % of the original index's Leaf Page Space
3 % of Bufferpool Space would be unused to
```

ensure keys fit into compressed buffers

DSN1994I DSN1COMP COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY,

38 PAGES PROCESSED

Figure 132. Sample DSN1COMP output

Chapter 40. DSN1COPY

The DSN1COPY stand-alone utility allows you to copy DB2 VSAM data sets.

With the DSN1COPY stand-alone utility, you can copy:

- DB2 VSAM data sets to sequential data sets
- DSN1COPY sequential data sets to DB2 VSAM data sets
- DB2 image copy data sets to DB2 VSAM data sets
- DB2 VSAM data sets to other DB2 VSAM data sets
- DSN1COPY sequential data sets to other sequential data sets

A DB2 VSAM data set is a single piece of a nonpartitioned table space or index, a single partition of a partitioned table space or index, or a FlashCopy image copy data set. The input must be a single z/OS sequential or VSAM data set. Concatenation of input data sets is not supported.

Using DSN1COPY, you can also print hexadecimal dumps of DB2 data sets and databases, check the validity of data or index pages (including dictionary pages for compressed data), translate database object identifiers (OBIDs) to enable moving data sets between different systems, and reset to 0 the log RBA that is recorded in each index page or data page.

You cannot run DSN1COPY on concurrent copies.

DSN1COPY can operate on both base and clone objects.

You can use the DSN1COPY utility on LOB table spaces by specifying the LOB keyword and omitting the SEGMENT and INLCOPY keywords.

DB2 managed data sets can be moved from HDD to SSD using DSN1COPY.

Output

One intended use of this utility is to aid in determining and correcting system problems. When diagnosing DB2, you might need to refer to licensed documentation to interpret output from this utility.

Environment

Execute DSN1COPY as a z/OS job when the DB2 subsystem is either active or not active.

If you execute DSN1COPY when DB2 is active, use the following procedure:

1. Start the table space as read-only by using START DATABASE.
2. Run the QUIESCE utility with the WRITE (YES) option to externalize all data pages and index pages.
3. Run DSN1COPY with DISP=SHR on the data definition (DD) statement.
4. Start the table space as read-write by using START DATABASE to return to normal operations.

Authorization required

DSN1COPY does not require authorization. However, if any of the data sets is RACF-protected, the authorization ID of the job must have RACF authority.

Restrictions

DSN1COPY does not alter data set structure. For example, DSN1COPY does not copy a partitioned or segmented table space into a simple table space. The output data set is a page-for-page copy of the input data set. If the intended use of DSN1COPY is to move or restore data, ensure that definitions for the source and target table spaces, tables, and indexes are identical. Otherwise, unpredictable results can occur.

DSN1COPY cannot copy DB2 recovery log data sets. The format of a DB2 log page is different from that of a table or index page. If you try to use DSN1COPY to recover log data sets, DSN1COPY will abnormally terminate.

For a compressed table space, DSN1COPY does not reset the dictionary version for an inline image copy, or for an incremental image copy that was created with the `SYSTEMPAGES=YES COPY` utility option. To reset the dictionary version for an inline image copy, use the inline image copy as input to DSN1COPY with a VSAM intermediate data set as output. This intermediate data set can then be used as input to DSN1COPY `RESET` to copy the intermediate data set to the real target data set.

For Partition-by-growth table spaces, DSN1COPY can only be used if the number of active partitions of the source and the target table space are the same, otherwise you should use the `UNLOAD` utility to unload the data from the source table space and the `LOAD` utility to reload the data into the target table space.

All the target data sets must exist. You can use Access Method Services to define them.

DSN1COPY will issue an error and terminate if it can be clearly verified that the `LOB` option is specified, but the data set is not a `LOB` data set, or that the `LOB` option is omitted for a data set that is a `LOB` data set. To avoid problems, always specify the `LOB` option if the input data set `SYSUT1` is a `LOB` table space, and make sure that the `LOB` option is not specified for non `LOB` table spaces.

DSN1COPY cannot copy a source object of 4 GB or greater in size when it is full unless the target object is EA-enabled. For example, the source is full when it is not the last piece of a multi-piece non-partitioned object with a `DSSIZE` of 4 GB or greater. To avoid VSAM errors and limit each piece to 2 GB so that the target object has more pieces than the original source:

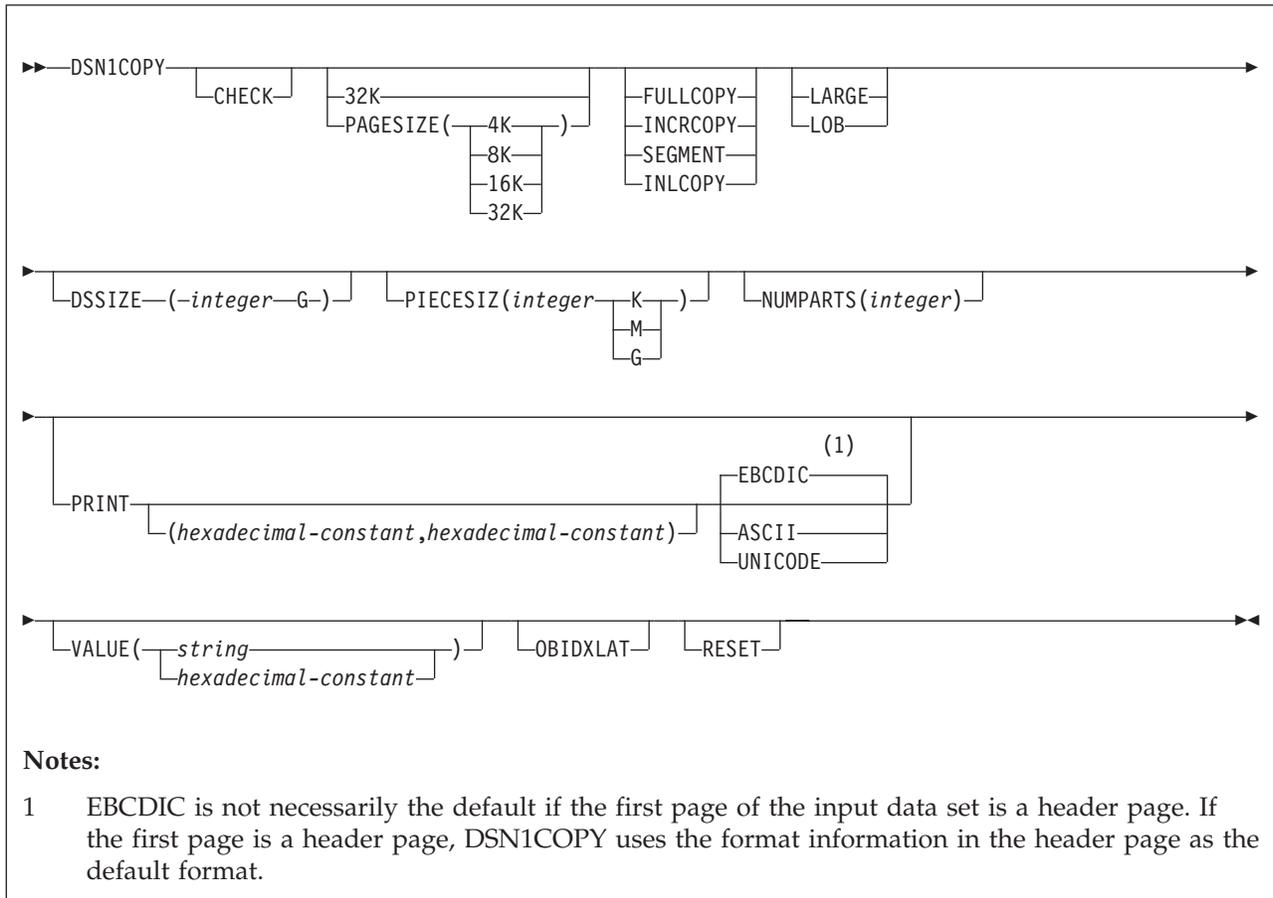
- Define the target data set as EA-enabled and DSN1COPY can be used, one piece at a time, to copy the data from the source that is not EA-enabled to the target.
- If it is not possible to define the target data set as EA-enabled:
 1. Take a full image copy of the entire source object by running the `COPY` utility and specifying `DSNUM ALL`.
 2. Create the target object by specifying `DSSIZE 2GB` for table spaces and `PIECESIZE 2GB` for indexes. See “Copying tables from one subsystem to another” on page 872 for more information.
 3. Define the partition number data sets (2 GB each) with the `IDCAMS` command. Define enough pieces to hold the entire source.

- Run the DSN1COPY utility with the image copy as the source (SYSUT1), the target object as SYSUT2, and specify DSSIZE 2G.

Syntax and options of the DSN1COPY control statement

The DSN1COPY utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

DSN1COPY syntax diagram



Option descriptions

To run DSN1COPY with invocation parameters, specify one or more of the following parameters on the EXEC statement. If you specify more than one parameter, separate each parameter by a comma. You can specify parameters in any order.

| Default settings for DSN1COPY options are taken from the input data set header page. This default processing is recommended when running DSN1COPY because incorrect parameter settings can result in unpredictable results.

| When non-default user values are specified, DSN1COPY compares the input data set header page settings against user-specified values whenever possible. If a mismatch is detected, message DSN1930I is issued. The processing is performed with the user-specified values

CHECK

Checks each page from the SYSUT1 data set for validity. The validity checking operates on one page at a time and does not include any cross-page checking. If an error is found, a message is issued describing the type of error, and a dump of the page is sent to the SYSPRINT data set. If an unexpected page number is encountered, validity checking continues to the end and a report will be printed of all unexpected page numbers. If you do not receive any messages, no errors were found. If more than one error exists in a given page, the check identifies only the first of the errors. However, the entire page is dumped. DSN1COPY does not check system pages for validity.

An index with BUSINESS_TIME period columns appended to the key for BUSINESS TIME WITHOUT OVERLAPS bypasses checking for orderly keys.

32K

Specifies that the SYSUT1 data set has a 32-KB page size. If you specify this option and the SYSUT1 data set does not have a 32-KB page size, DSN1COPY might produce unpredictable results.

PAGESIZE

Specifies the page size of the input data set that is defined by SYSUT1. Available page size values are 4K, 8K, 16K, or 32K. If you specify an incorrect page size, DSN1COPY might produce unpredictable results.

If you do not specify the page size, DSN1COPY tries to determine the page size from the input data set if the first page of the input data set is a header page. DB2 issues an error message if DSN1COPY cannot determine the input page size. This might happen if the header page is not in the input data set, or if the page size field in the header page contains an invalid page size.

FULLCOPY

Specifies that a DB2 full image copy (not a DFSMSdss concurrent copy) of your data is to be used as input. If this data is partitioned, specify NUMPARTS to identify the total number of partitions. If you specify FULLCOPY without NUMPARTS, DSN1COPY determines the NUMPARTS value from the header page if possible; otherwise, DSN1COPY assumes that your input file is not partitioned.

Specify FULLCOPY when using a full image copy as input. Omitting the parameter can cause error messages or unpredictable results.

Do not specify FULLCOPY if you are using a FlashCopy image copy data set as input.

The FULLCOPY parameter requires SYSUT2 (output data set) to be either a DB2 VSAM data set or a DUMMY data set.

INRCOPY

Specifies that an incremental image copy of the data is to be used as input. DSN1COPY with the INRCOPY parameter updates existing data sets; do not redefine the existing data sets. INRCOPY requires that the output data set (SYSUT2) be a DB2 VSAM data set.

Before you apply an incremental image copy to your data set, you must first apply a full image copy to the data set by using the FULLCOPY parameter. Make sure that you apply the full image copy in a separate execution step because you receive an error message if you specify both the FULLCOPY and the INRCOPY parameters in the same step. Then, apply each incremental image copy in a separate step, starting with the oldest incremental image copy.

Specifying neither FULLCOPY nor INRCOPY implies that the input is not an image copy data set. Therefore, only a single output data set is used.

SEGMENT

Specifies that you want to use a segmented table space as input to DSN1COPY. Pages with all zeros in the table space are copied, but no error messages are issued. You cannot specify FULLCOPY or INRCOPY if you specify SEGMENT.

If you are using DSN1COPY with the OBIDXLAT to copy a DB2 data set to another DB2 data set, the source and target table spaces must have the same SEGSIZE attribute.

You cannot specify the SEGMENT option with the LOB parameter.

INLCOPY

Specifies that the input data is an inline copy data set. The INLCOPY parameter requires SYSUT2 (output data set) to be either a VSAM data set or a DUMMY data set.

You cannot specify the INLCOPY option with the LOB parameter.

DSSIZE(*integer G*)

Specifies the data set size, in gigabytes. This value has to match with the DSSIZE of the source table space. If you omit DSSIZE, DB2 assumes that the input data set size is 2 GB.

integer must match the DSSIZE value that was specified when the table space was defined.

If you omit DSSIZE and the data set is not the assumed default size, the results from DSN1COMP are unpredictable.

For input data sets that were created in DB2 Version 9 or later, the default is obtained from the data set header page. For input data sets that were created before DB2 Version 9, the default values are listed in the following table.

Table 133. Default input data set sizes

Object	Default input data set size (in GB)
Linear/Segmented Tablespace	2 GB
LOB Space	4 GB
Partitioned Tablespace created prior to V9	No default DSSIZE

LARGE

Specifies that the input data set is a table space that was defined with the LARGE option, or an index on such a table space. If you specify the LARGE keyword, DB2 assumes that the data set has a 4-GB boundary. The recommended method of specifying a table space that was defined with the LARGE option is DSSIZE(4G).

If you omit the LARGE or DSSIZE(4G) option when it is needed, or if you specify LARGE for a table space that was not defined with the LARGE option, the results from DSN1COPY are unpredictable.

If you specify LARGE, you cannot specify LOB or DSSIZE.

LOB

Specifies that SYSUT1 data set is a LOB table space. Empty pages in the table space are copied, but no error messages are issued. You cannot specify the SEGMENT and INLCOPY options with the LOB parameter.

DSN1COPY attempts to determine if the input data set is a LOB data set. If it can be clearly verified that the LOB option is specified, but the data set is not a LOB data set, or that the LOB option is omitted for a data set that is a LOB data set, DSN1COPY issues an error message and terminates. Otherwise, if the LOB option isn't specified or omitted correctly the results of DSN1COPY are unpredictable.

If you specify LOB, you cannot specify LARGE.

| **NUMPARTS**(*integer*)

| This parameter is not used if the target table space is a universal table space.
| DSSIZE is used instead.

| **PRINT**(*hexadecimal-constant,hexadecimal-constant*)

| Causes the SYSUT1 data set to be printed in hexadecimal format on the
| SYSPRINT data set. You can specify the PRINT parameter with or without the
| page range specifications (*hexadecimal-constant,hexadecimal-constant*). If you do
| not specify a range, all pages of the SYSUT1 are printed. If you want to limit
| the range of pages that are printed, indicate the beginning and ending page. If
| you want to print a single page, supply only that page number. In either case,
| your range specifications must be from one to eight hexadecimal characters in
| length.

The following example shows how you code the PRINT parameter if you want to begin printing at page X'2F0' and stop at page X'35C':

```
PRINT(2F0,35C)
```

Because the CHECK and RESET options and the copy function run independently of the PRINT range, these options apply to the entire input file, regardless of whether a range of pages is being printed.

You can indicate the format of the row data in the PRINT output by specifying EBCDIC, ASCII, or UNICODE.

EBCDIC

Indicates that the row data in the PRINT output is to be displayed in EBCDIC. The default value is **EBCDIC** if the first page of the input data set is not a header page.

If the first page is a header page, DSN1COPY uses the format information in the header page as the default format. However, if you specify EBCDIC, ASCII, or UNICODE, that format overrides the format information in the header page. The unformatted header page dump is always displayed in EBCDIC, because most of the fields are in EBCDIC.

ASCII

Indicates that the row data in the PRINT output is to be displayed in ASCII. Specify ASCII when printing table spaces that contain ASCII data.

UNICODE

Indicates that the row data in the PRINT output is to be displayed in Unicode. Specify UNICODE when printing table spaces that contain Unicode data.

| **PIECESIZ**(*integer*)

| Specifies the maximum piece size (data set size) for nonpartitioned indexes.
| The value that you specify must match the value that was specified when the
| nonpartitioning index was created or altered. The defaults for PIECESIZ are 2G
| (2 GB) for indexes that are backed by non-large table spaces and 4G (4 GB) for
| indexes that are backed by table spaces that were defined with the LARGE
| option. This option is required if the piece size is not one of the default values.

If PIECESIZ is omitted and the index is backed by a table space that was defined with the LARGE option, the LARGE option is required for DSN1COPY.

The subsequent keyword K, M, or G indicates the unit of the value that is specified in *integer*.

- K** Indicates that the *integer* value is to be multiplied by 1 KB to specify the maximum piece size in bytes. *integer* must be either 256 or 512.
- M** Indicates that the *integer* value is to be multiplied by 1 MB to specify the maximum piece size in bytes. *integer* must be a power of two, between 1 and 512.
- G** Indicates that the *integer* value is to be multiplied by 1 GB to specify the maximum piece size in bytes. *integer* must be 1, 2, or 4.

Valid values for piece size are:

- 1 MB or 1 GB
- 2 MB or 2 GB
- 4 MB or 4 GB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 32 MB
- 64 MB
- 128 MB
- 256 KB or 256 MB
- 512 KB or 512 MB

VALUE

Causes each page of the SYSUT1 input data set to be scanned for the character string that you specify in parentheses following the VALUE parameter. Each page that contains that character string is printed in the SYSPRINT data set. You can specify the VALUE parameter in conjunction with any of the other DSN1COPY parameters.

string can consist of 1 to 20 alphanumeric characters.

hexadecimal-constant can consist of 2 to 40 hexadecimal characters. Specify two apostrophe characters before and after the hexadecimal character string.

If you want to search your input file for the string '12345', your JCL should look similar to the following JCL:

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,PARM='VALUE(12345)'
```

Alternatively, you might want to search for the equivalent hexadecimal character string. If you are processing Unicode or ASCII input files, you must specify the string in hexadecimal. Your JCL should look similar to the following JCL:

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,PARM='VALUE(''3132333435'')
```

OBIDLAT

Specifies that OBID translation must be done before the DB2 data set is copied. This parameter requires additional input from the SYSXLAT file by using the DD statements. DSN1COPY can translate only up to 10000 record OBIDs. If you specify OBIDLAT, CHECK processing is performed, regardless of whether you specify the CHECK option.

RESET

Causes the log RBAs in each index page or data page and the high-formatted

page number in the header page to be reset to 0. If you specify this option, CHECK processing is performed, regardless of whether you specify the CHECK option.

Use RESET when the output file is used to build a DB2 table space that is to be processed on a DB2 subsystem with a different recovery log than the source subsystem. Failure to specify RESET in such a case can result in an abend during subsequent update activity. The abend reason code of 00C200C1 indicates that the specified RBA value is outside the valid range of the recovery log. A condition code of 0 indicates successful completion.

For a compressed table space, DSN1COPY does not reset the dictionary version for an inline image copy, or for an incremental image copy that was created with the SYSEMPAGES=YES COPY utility option.

If you do not specify RESET when copying a table space from one DB2 system to another, a down-level ID check might result in abend reason code 00C2010D when the table space is accessed.

Related information

 [Recovering from a down-level page set problem \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Before running DSN1COPY

Certain activities might be required before you run the DSN1COPY utility, depending on your situation.

Attention: Do not use DSN1COPY in place of COPY for both backup and recovery. Improper use of DSN1COPY can result in unrecoverable damage and loss of data.

Recommendations

Printing with DSN1PRNT instead of DSN1COPY

If you require only a printed hexadecimal dump of a data set, use DSN1PRNT rather than DSN1COPY.

Copying a table space with DSN1COPY with row formats

When you use a DSN1COPY of a table space to populate another table space, the row formats of the two table spaces must match. If the row formats do not match, the results are unpredictable and could cause integrity problems.

To determine the source table space and target table space row format, run the following query against your DB2 catalog:

```
SELECT DBNAME, TSNAME, PARTITION, FORMAT
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART
WHERE (DBNAME = 'source-database-name'
AND TSNAME='source-table-space-name')
OR (DBNAME = 'target-database-name'
AND TSNAME='target-table-space-name')
```

If the FORMAT column has a value of 'R', then the table space or partition is in RRF (reordered row format). If the FORMAT column has a blank value, then the table space or partition is in BRF (basic row format).

Determining page size and DSSIZE

Before using DSN1COPY, ensure that you know the page size and data set size (DSSIZE) for the page set. Use the following query on the DB2 catalog

to get the information you need in this example for table 'DEPT':

```
SELECT T.CREATOR,T.NAME,S.NAME AS TABLESPACE,S.PARTITIONS,S.PGSIZE,
CASE S.DSSIZE
WHEN 0 THEN
CASE WHEN S.TYPE = 'G' THEN 4194304
WHEN S.TYPE = 'O' THEN 4194304
WHEN S.TYPE = 'P' THEN 4194304
WHEN S.TYPE = 'R' THEN 4194304
ELSE
CASE WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 254 THEN
CASE WHEN S.PGSIZE = 4 THEN 4194304
WHEN S.PGSIZE = 8 THEN 8388608
WHEN S.PGSIZE = 16 THEN 16777216
WHEN S.PGSIZE = 32 THEN 33554432
ELSE NULL
END
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 64 THEN 4194304
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 32 THEN 1048576
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 16 THEN 2097152
WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 0 THEN 4194304
ELSE 2097152
END
END
ELSE S.DSSIZE
END
AS DSSIZE
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLES T,
SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE S
WHERE
T.NAME = 'DEPT' AND
T.TSNAME = S.NAME;
```

Figure 133. Example catalog query that returns the page set size and data set size for the page set.

Using the OBIDLAT option with DSN1COPY

When you use DSN1COPY with the OBIDLAT option to move objects from one system to another system, ensure that the version information on the target system matches the version information on the source version.

Copying a partition-by-range or partition-by-growth table space

When you use DSN1COPY on a partition-by-range or partition-by-growth table space, use the SEGMENT and NUMPARTS options to process the table space. For partition-by-growth table spaces, the NUMPART value specified should be the MAXPARTITIONS value that the table space was created with.

Copying when pending alterations are involved

Run the REORG TABLESPACE utility to materialize pending alterations before using the DSN1COPY utility. If the pending definition changes were on the index level only, the REORG INDEX and REBUILD INDEX utilities can be used.

Related concepts

 [Table space versions \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Related tasks

“Updating version information when moving objects to another subsystem” on page 612

Data sets that DSN1COPY uses

The DSN1COPY utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

Required data sets

DSN1COPY uses the following data sets:

Input data set

Input to DSN1COPY. The DD name is SYSUT1.

Output data set

Output from DSN1COPY. The DD name is SYSUT2. Optional.

Message data set

Data set for output messages. The DD name is SYSPRINT.

OBIDLAT data set

Data set that defines the OBID translation values. The DD name is SYSXLAT.

DSN1COPY uses the following DD statements:

SYSPRINT

Defines the data set that contains output messages from the DSN1COPY program and all hexadecimal dump output.

SYSUT1

Defines the input data set. This data set can be a sequential data set that is created by the DSN1COPY or COPY utilities, or a VSAM data set, including a FlashCopy image copy data set.

Specify the data set's disposition as DISP=OLD to ensure that it is not in use by DB2. Specify the data set's disposition as DISP=SHR only when the DB2 STOP DATABASE command does not work.

The requested operation takes place only for the specified data set. If the input data set is a partitioned table space or index, ensure that you specify the NUMPARTS parameter and the correct data set. For example, to print a page range in the second partition of a four-partition table space, specify NUMPARTS(4) and the data set name of the second data set. This second data set is in the group of VSAM data sets, and the VSAM data set name is DSNCAT.DSNDDBD.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A002. The last qualifier (A002) represents the partition number 2.

If running the online REORG utility with the FASTSWITCH option, verify the data set name before running the DSN1COPY utility. The fifth-level qualifier in the data set name alternates between I0001 and J0001 when using FASTSWITCH. If the table space has cloning or ever had cloning, the fifth-level qualifier can be I0002 or J0002. You cannot specify FASTSWITCH YES if the table space has cloning; however, a FASTSWITCH YES REORG might have been done before the clone was created so you might still have a mixture of 'I' and 'J' data sets. Specify the correct fifth-level qualifier in

the data set name to successfully execute the DSN1COPY utility. To determine the correct fifth-level qualifier, query the IPREFIX column of SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART for each data partition or the IPREFIX column of SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART for each index partition. If the object is not partitioned, use zero as the value for the PARTITION column in your query.

To determine the instance number to use for a fifth-level qualifier, query the INSTANCE column of SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE. The returned value is the instance number that represents the current base objects. The clone objects would be represented by the other instance number. If a query of SYSTABLESPACE.INSTANCE returns a value of 2, then the base objects are represented by instance number 2 data sets and the clone objects by instance number 1 data sets. This process can be used to determine the instance number even if there is no active cloning.

SYSUT2

Defines the output data set. This data set can be a sequential data set, a VSAM data set, or a DUMMY data set.

If SYSUT1 is an image copy of an entire partitioned table space or an image copy of all data sets of a multi-piece object and the data should be copied to a DB2 table space or DB2 index space, SYSUT2 should be the name of its first data set (of the first partition or of the first piece). DSN1COPY identifies the appropriate output data set by the page number and allocates the appropriate data sets. All target data sets must be defined. To define the data sets for a multi-piece object, create first the table space or index with DEFINE YES and specify appropriate primary and secondary quantities. If -1 is specified for primary and/or secondary quantity DSN1COPY may run out of extents because DB2 defines the first data set with small primary and/or secondary extents in this case. DB2 then defines the first data set. The subsequent data sets can be defined by using Access Method Services. See "Copying tables from one subsystem to another" on page 872 for more information.

DSN1COPY assumes that the output data sets are empty (that is, the program adds the blocks) except when you specify INCRCOPY. Before you run DSN1COPY, define your VSAM output data sets as REUSE. If you have not defined the data sets, you must redefine all VSAM output data sets you are restoring by using Access Method Services. Ensure that these data sets are empty before you run DSN1COPY.

You might want to specify a DUMMY SYSUT2 DD statement if you are dumping or checking pages.

To enable DB2 to obtain necessary information from the integrated catalog facility catalog when using VSAM data sets, do not code the unit-serial parameter and volume-serial parameter.

If running the online REORG utility with the FASTSWITCH option, verify the data set name before running the DSN1COPY utility. The fifth-level qualifier in the data set name alternates between I0001 and J0001 when using FASTSWITCH. Specify the correct fifth-level qualifier in the data set name to successfully execute the DSN1COPY utility.

SYSXLAT

Defines for translation the DBIDs, OBIDs, data page set identifiers (PSIDs), or index page set identifiers (ISOBIDs).

If you have dropped a table without a subsequent REORG of the table space, you must reorganize the source table space before running DSN1COPY with the OBIDLAT option. This action removes any previously dropped records from the table space.

A non-numeric character must separate each record in the SYSXLAT file, and each record must contain a pair of decimal integers. The first integer of each record pertains to the source, and the second integer pertains to the target. The first record in the SYSXLAT file contains the source DBIDs and the target DBIDs; the values can range from -32767 to 65535. The second record contains the source and target PSIDs or ISOBIDs; the values can range from 0 to 32767. All subsequent records in the SYSXLAT data set are for table OBIDs. For an index, the SYSXLAT data set must contain the index fan set OBID, in addition to the DBID and ISOBID. Sample data in a SYSXLAT file follows (with an indication of how each record translates shown in parentheses):

```
260,280 (source DBID 260 translates to target DBID 280)
2,10    (source PSID 2 translates to target PSID 10)
3,55    (source table OBID 3 translates to target table OBID 55)
6,56    (source table OBID 6 translates to target table OBID 57)
7,57    (source table OBID 7 translates to target table OBID 57)
```

To obtain the names, DBIDs, PSIDs, ISOBIDs, and OBIDs, run the DSNTEP2 sample application on both the source and target systems. The following SQL statements yield the preceding information.

The example for indexes yields output that is similar to the preceding example, but with an additional column of data.

PSPI For table spaces use the following statements:

```
SELECT DBID, PSID FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
  WHERE NAME='tablespace_name'
         AND DBNAME='database_name';
SELECT NAME, OBID FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLES
  WHERE TSNAME='tablespace_name'
         AND CREATOR='creator_name';
```

For index spaces use the following statement:

```
SELECT DBID, ISOBID, OBID FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES
  WHERE NAME='index_name'
         AND CREATOR='creator_name';
```

PSPI

Several examples of using DSN1COPY follow:

- Create a backup copy of a DB2 data set:
 - SYSUT1: DB2-VSAM
 - SYSUT2: Sequential data set
- Restore a backup copy of a DB2 data set:
 - SYSUT1: DSN1COPY sequential data set
 - SYSUT2: DB2-VSAM
- Move a DB2 data set to another DB2 data set:
 - SYSUT1: DB2-VSAM
 - SYSUT2: DB2-VSAM
 - Parameters: OBIDLAT, RESET
- Perform validity checking on a DB2 data set:
 - SYSUT1: DB2-VSAM

- SYSUT2: DUMMY
- Parameter: CHECK
- Perform validity checking on and print a DB2 data set:
 - SYSUT1: DB2-VSAM
 - SYSUT2: DUMMY
 - Parameters: CHECK, PRINT
- Restore a table space from a nonpartitioned image copy data set or page set:
 - SYSUT1: DB2 full image copy
 - SYSUT2: DB2-VSAM
 - Parameter: FULLCOPY
- Restore a table space from a partitioned image copy data or page set:
 - SYSUT1: DB2 full image copy
 - SYSUT2: DB2-VSAM
 - Parameters: FULLCOPY, NUMPARTS(*nn*)
- Perform RBA RESET on a DB2 data set:
 - SYSUT1: DB2-VSAM or DSN1COPY sequential data set
 - SYSUT2: DB2-VSAM
 - Parameter: RESET

Defining the input data set

The SYSUT1 data set can be any of the following types:

- A DB2 table space data set
- A DB2 index space data set
- A sequential full image copy
- An incremental image copy
- An inline image copy
- A sequential data set that was previously created by DSN1COPY
- A FlashCopy image copy data set

Define SYSUT1 with DISP=OLD to ensure that DSN1COPY uses it exclusively. If SYSUT1 is a table space or index space, use the following procedure before using DSN1COPY:

GUIP

1. Issue the following command to determine if the object is stopped:


```
-DISPLAY DATABASE (database_name) SPACENAM(space_name) RESTRICT
```
2. If DB2 has not stopped the object, issue the following command to stop the object:


```
-STOP DATABASE (database_name) SPACENAME(space_name)
```

GUIP

DB2 allows input of only one DSN1COPY data set. DB2 does not permit the input of concatenated data sets. For a table space that consists of multiple data sets, ensure that you specify the correct data set. For example, if you specify the CHECK option to validate pages of a partitioned table space's second partition, code the second data set of the table space for SYSUT1.

Defining the output data set

The SYSUT2 data set can be any of the following types:

- A sequential data set

- A DB2 table space data set
- A DB2 index space data set
- A DUMMY data set

Specify a DUMMY SYSUT2 DD statement if you are using DSN1COPY to check or dump a page. The table spaces and index spaces must either be empty or defined with VSAM REUSE. STOGROUP-defined table spaces and index spaces have the REUSE attribute, except when you are applying the INRCOPY option

Naming the output data set

For your output data set to be useful, ensure that it has the same name as the data set that you are resetting.

- Method 1:
 1. Use DSN1COPY to copy your existing data set to a sequential data set. Specify this target data set as SYSUT1 in step 3.
 2. If you defined your existing data set without the REUSE parameter, delete and redefine the data set. Specify your existing data set as SYSUT2 in step 3.
 3. Run DSN1COPY and specify option RESET.
- Method 2:
 1. Use your existing DB2 data set as the SYSUT1 specification, creating a new VSAM data set for SYSUT2.
 2. After completion of the reset operation, delete the data set that you specified as SYSUT1, and rename the SYSUT2 data set. Give SYSUT2 the name of the data set that you just deleted.

Adding additional volumes for SYSUT2

When you create a table space or index space by using STOGROUP, the ICF catalog entry has only one volume in the volume list. If the SYSUT2 data set that DSN1COPY restores requires more than one volume, use the IDCAMS command, ALTER ADDVOLUMES, to add additional volume IDs to the integrated catalog entry. The extension to new volumes uses the primary size on each new volume. This is the normal VSAM extension process. If you want the data set to use the secondary size on the candidate volumes, follow these steps:

1. Run DSN1COPY.
2. Run REORG, or make a full image copy and recover the table space.

Performing these steps resets the data set and causes normal extensions through DB2.

The effect of altering a table before running DSN1COPY

When you use ALTER TABLE ADD COLUMN, the table does not change; only the description of the table changes. You must run REORG on the table space (so that the data matches its description) before you can run DSN1COPY on the table space.

Checking for inconsistent data

When critical data is involved, use the CHECK option to prevent the undetected copying of inconsistent data to the output data set. The CHECK option of DSN1COPY performs validity checking on one page at a time.

You must run a CHECK utility job on the table space that is involved to ensure that no inconsistencies exist between data and indexes on that data:

- Before using DSN1COPY to save critical data that is indexed
- After using DSN1COPY to restore critical data that is indexed

The CHECK utility performs validity checking between pages.

The effects of not specifying the OBIDXLAT option

If you use DSN1COPY to load data into a table space or index without specifying the OBIDXLAT option, be careful not to invalidate embedded DB2 internal identifiers.

Those OBIDs can become invalid in the following circumstances:

- When you drop and re-create tables after the input data set to DSN1COPY was created.
- When a difference exists among the following attributes between the target subsystem and the source subsystem:
 - Table space attributes of BUFFERPOOL or NUMPARTS
 - Table attributes other than table name, table space name, and database name
 - The order of the table spaces, indexes, and tables that the user defined or dropped in the source and target databases

To protect against invalidating the OBIDs, specify the OBIDXLAT parameter for DSN1COPY. The OBIDXLAT parameter translates OBID, DBID, PSID, or ISOBID before DSN1COPY copies the data.

Requirements for using an image copy as input to DSN1COPY

To use image copies (full sequential or incremental) as input to DSN1COPY, you must use the COPY utility with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE to produce those image copies.

Using the FULLCOPY parameter ensures that the data that is contained in your image copies is consistent. DSN1COPY accepts an index image copy as input when you specify the FULLCOPY option. If you want to use inline image copies as input to DSN1COPY, you must produce those image copies by using the REORG utility or LOAD utility.

If you want to use a FlashCopy image copy data set as input, do not specify the FULLCOPY option.

Resetting page log RBAs

Use the RESET option to reset the log RBAs that are recorded in a table space or index space and the high-formatted page number in the header page to 0. DSN1COPY performs CHECK processing, regardless of whether you explicitly requested CHECK.

Do not specify the RESET parameter for page sets that are in group buffer pool RECOVER-pending (GRECP) status.

Copying from an image copy

You can use DSN1COPY to copy data from an image copy of the data sets of a table space to the data sets of the table space.

To copy from a specific image copy data set, specify the following SYSUT2 data sets:

- **If SYSUT1 is an image copy of a single partition**, ensure that the SYSUT2 DD statement refers to the first data set of the table space. DSN1COPY determines the correct target data set. Code the NUMPARTS(*nn*) parameter, where *nn* is the number of partitions in the entire table space. However, if the partitioned table space is defined with more than one VCAT name (for example, a unique VCAT for different partitions), use SYSUT2 as the name of the data set for that partition.
- **If SYSUT1 is an image copy of an entire partitioned table space**, ensure that the SYSUT2 DD statement refers to the first data set of the table space. In this case, DSN1COPY allocates all of the target data sets. However, you must have previously defined the target data sets either by creating the partitioned table space with DEFINE YES or by using Access Method Services. Code the NUMPARTS parameter as described in the first bullet when the table space is partitioned. When multiple VCAT names are used for different partitions of a partitioned table space, DSN1COPY cannot restore the entire table space by using as input a single full image copy of the table space. In this case, when you use DSN1COPY, you must restore individual copies of each partition by using the name of the data sets for that partition. Code the NUMPARTS(*nn*) parameter, where *nn* is the number of partitions in the entire table space.
- **If SYSUT1 is an image copy of a single data set of a multiple data set linear table space**, ensure that the SYSUT2 DD statement refers to the actual (not the first) output data set of the table space. Do not specify NUMPARTS because this parameter is only for partitioned table spaces.
- **If SYSUT1 is an image copy of an entire multiple data set linear table space**, ensure that the SYSUT2 DD statement refers to the first data set of the table space. DSN1COPY allocates all target data sets. However, you must have previously defined the target data sets by using Access Method Services. If the source data sets are less than the target data sets it is recommended to either delete all rows from the target table space or to do a LOAD REPLACE with DD DUMMY on the target table space first, before running DSN1COPY.
- **If SYSUT1 is an image copy of a single data set of a multiple data set LOB table space**, ensure that the SYSUT2 DD statement refers to the actual (not the first) data set of the table space. Do not specify NUMPARTS because this parameter is only for partitioned table spaces.
- **If SYSUT1 is an image copy of an entire multiple data set LOB table space**, ensure that the SYSUT2 DD statement refers to the first data set of the table space. DSN1COPY allocates all target data sets. However, you must have previously defined the target data sets by using Access Method Services.

Restoring indexes with DSN1COPY

When a table space is restored using either the TOCOPY option of RECOVER or the DSN1COPY utility, restore the indexes.

To restore indexes with DSN1COPY, use one of the following ways:

- Use the RECOVER utility, if you have a full image copy available, and the index was defined with the COPY YES option.

- Use DSN1COPY on the indexes, if a copy is available. If you specified the OBIDXLAT option for the data, you must also specify the OBIDXLAT option for the indexes. Also, the indexes must all have been copied at the same time as the data; otherwise, inconsistencies might exist.
- If you do not have an image copy of the index, use the REBUILD INDEX utility, which reconstructs the indexes from the data.

Related reference

Chapter 22, “REBUILD INDEX,” on page 379

Restoring table spaces with DSN1COPY

You can use the DSN1COPY utility to restore table spaces.

You cannot use RECOVER TOCOPY for an image-copy data set that is not referenced by SYSIBM.SYSCOPY for that table space or data set. An attempt to do so results in the message "TOCOPY DATASET NOT FOUND".

The MODIFY utility might have removed the row in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY. If the row has been removed, and if the image copy is a full image copy with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE, use DSN1COPY to restore the table space or data set.

DSN1COPY can restore the object to an incremental image copy, but it must first restore the previous full image copy and any intermediate incremental image copies. These actions ensure data integrity. You are responsible for providing the correct sequence of image copies. DB2 cannot help ensure the proper sequence.

You can use the DSN1COPY utility to restore a partition or an entire table space for a partition-by-growth table space. The total number of partitions in a DSN1COPY might not be consistent with the number of partitions defined on the current table space. To avoid residual data, delete data in the excess partitions from the table space before you apply the DSN1COPY utility.

If DSN1COPY is used to restore a table space, make sure that the associated indexes are rebuilt or restored also. This includes all user defined indexes and all indexes generated by DB2 such as the document ID index of a table with XML columns or the overflow index of a hash access table space.

If the table space is organized by hash, ensure that the following values are the same in the source and target tables spaces:

- SYSTABLESPACE.HASHDATAPAGES (IF PBG)
- SYSTABLEPART.HASHDATAPAGES (IF PBR-UTS)

If you use DSN1COPY for point-in-time recovery, the table space is not recoverable with the RECOVER utility. Because DSN1COPY executed outside of DB2's control, DB2 is not aware that you recovered to a point in time. Use DSN1COPY to recover the affected table space after point-in-time recovery. Then perform the following steps:

1. Remove old image copies by using MODIFY AGE.
2. Create one or more full image copies by using SHRLEVEL REFERENCE.

Printing with DSN1COPY

If you want to print one or more pages without invoking the utility's copy function, use DSN1PRNT to avoid unnecessary reading of the input file.

When you use DSN1COPY for printing, you must specify the PRINT parameter. The requested operation takes place only for the specified data set. If the input data set belongs to a linear table space or index space that is larger than 2 GB, specify the correct data set. Alternatively, if it is a partitioned table space or partitioned index, specify the correct data set. For example, DSN1COPY prints a page range in the second partition of a four-partition table space. DSN1COPY does this by specifying NUMPARTS(4) and the data set name of the second data set in the VSAM group (DSN=...A002).

To print a full image copy data set (rather than recovering a table space), specify a DUMMY SYSUT2 DD statement, and specify the FULLCOPY parameter.

Copying tables from one subsystem to another

You can copy tables from one subsystem to another. When you copy tables from one subsystem to another, you must ensure that the version information on the target subsystem matches the version information on the source subsystem.

Recommendation: Do not use DSN1COPY to copy XML table spaces from one subsystem to another. Documents in XML table spaces have dependencies on DB2 catalog tables and on tables in the XML schema repository database (DSNXSR). In particular, XML documents in XML table spaces have unique strings IDs that must match values in catalog table SYSIBM.SYSXMLSTRINGS. Documents might also have XSR object IDs that must match values in XML schema repository table SYSIBM.XSROBJECTS. If you copy XML table spaces to from one subsystem to another, the string IDs and XSR object IDs in the XML documents will not match the values in SYSIBM.SYSXMLSTRINGS or SYSIBM.XSROBJECTS on the target subsystem.

Be careful when you copy a table that contains an identity column from one DB2 subsystem to another:

To copy tables from one subsystem to another:

1. Stop the table space on the source subsystem.
2. Issue a SELECT statement to query the SYSIBM.SYSSEQUENCES entry that corresponds to the identity column for this table on the source subsystem. Add the INCREMENT value to the MAXASSIGNEDVAL to determine the next value (*nv*) for the identity column.
3. Create the table on the target subsystem. On the identity column specification, specify *nv* for the START WITH value, and ensure that all of the other identity column attributes are the same as for the source table.
4. Stop the table space on the target subsystem.
5. Copy the data by using DSN1COPY.
6. Start the table space on the source subsystem for read-write access.
7. Start the table space on the target subsystem for read-write access.

Define output data sets for multi-piece linear table spaces.

The following statements specify that DSN1COPY is to copy data into all pieces of a segmented table space by using a full image copy of another segmented table space as input.

1. Create the target segmented table space by specifying appropriate primary and secondary quantities.

2. Define data sets for all subsequent pieces, e.g. the data set for the second piece ('DSNCAT.DSNDBC.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A002'). Use the MODEL option, which causes the new data set to be created like the first data set.

```
//ALCVSAM EXEC PGM=IDCAMS
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
DEFINE CLUSTER +
  (NAME('DSNCAT.DSNDBC.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A002') +
  MODEL('DSNCAT.DSNDBC.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A001')) +
DATA +
  (NAME('DSNCAT.DSNDBD.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A002') +
  MODEL('DSNCAT.DSNDBD.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A001'))
/*
```

3. Run DSN1COPY.

```
//DSN1COPY EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,
// PARM='FULLCOPY'
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=PROD.IMAGE.COPY.DSNUMALL
//SYSUT2 DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A001
```

Related tasks

"Updating version information when moving objects to another subsystem" on page 612

Sample DSN1COPY control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSN1COPY control statements.

If you run online REORG with FASTSWITCH behavior, the fifth-level qualifier in the data set name can be either I0001 or J0001. For clone tables, the data set can also be I0002 or J0002. These examples use I0001.

Example 1: Checking input data set before copying

The following statement specifies that the DSN1COPY utility is to copy the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement to the data set that is identified by the SYSUT2 DD statement. Before DSN1COPY copies this data, the utility is to check the validity of the input data set.

```
//RUNCOPY EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,PARM='CHECK'
/* COPY VSAM TO SEQUENTIAL AND CHECK PAGES
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS CONTAINING DSN1COPY
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBC.DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.I0001.A001,DISP=OLD
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=TAPE.DS,UNIT=TAPE,DISP=(NEW,KEEP),VOL=SER=UTLBAK
```

Example 2: Translating the DB2 internal identifiers

The statement in this example specifies that DSN1COPY is to copy the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement to the data set that is identified by the SYSUT2 DD statement. The OBIDXLAT option specifies that DSN1COPY is to translate the OBIDs before the data set is copied. The OBIDs are provided as input on the SYSXLAT DD statement. Because the OBIDXLAT option is specified, DSN1COPY also checks the validity of the input data set, even though the CHECK option is not specified.

```

//EXECUTE EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,PARM='OBIDLAT'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS CONTAINING DSN1COPY
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNC100.DSNDBC.DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C.I0001.A001,
// DISP=OLD
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=DSNC910.DSNDBC.DSN8D10P.DSN8S10C.I0001.A001,
// DISP=OLD
//SYSXLAT DD *
260,280
2,10
3,55
6,56
7,57
/*

```

Figure 134. Example DSN1COPY statement with the OBIDLAT option.

Example 3: Printing a single page of a partitioned table space

The following statement specifies that DSN1COPY is to print page 2002A1 of the table space in the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement. This table space has eight partitions, as indicated by the NUMPARTS option.

```

//PRINT EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,PARM='PRINT(2002A1),NUMPARTS(8)'
/* PRINT A PAGE IN THE THIRD PARTITION OF A TABLE SPACE CONSISTING
/* OF 8 PARTITIONS.
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2 DD DUMMY
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.MMRDB.PARTEMP1.I0001.A003,DISP=OLD

```

Example 4: Printing 16 pages of a nonpartitioning index

The following statement specifies that DSN1COPY is to print 16 pages of a nonpartitioning index in the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement. The pages range from page F0000 to page F000F, as indicated by the PRINT option. The maximum data set size is 64 MB, as indicated by the PIECESIZ option.

```

//PRINT2 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,PARM=(PRINT(F0000,F000F),PIECESIZ(64M))
/* PRINT THE FIRST 16 PAGES IN THE 61ST PIECE OF AN NPI WITH PIECE SIZE OF 64M
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2 DD DUMMY
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNCAT.DSTDBD.MMRDB.NPI1.I0001.A061

```

Example 5: Copying individual partitions of a partitioned table space

In the example in the following figure, the two job steps specify that DSN1COPY is to copy partitions 1501 and partition 1502 from image copy data sets into a partitioned table space. In the two SYSUT2 DD statements, the fifth-level qualifier in the data set names can differ, because each job step lists an individual partition. The FULLCOPY option is used in both steps to indicate that the input data set is a full image copy. The NUMPARTS option indicates that the input data set has 1600 partitions. The RESET option resets to 0 the high-formatted page number in the header page. Because this option is specified, DSN1COPY checks the validity of the input data, even though the CHECK option is not specified.

```

//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,
//      PARM='NUMPARTS(1600),RESET,FULLCOPY'
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=PROD.IMAGE.COPY.PART1501
//SYSUT2 DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.B501
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,
//      PARM='NUMPARTS(1600),RESET,FULLCOPY'
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=PROD.IMAGE.COPY.PART1502
//SYSUT2 DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.TESTDB.TS01.J0001.B502

```

Figure 135. Example DSN1COPY job for partitions

Example 6: Copying all partitions of a partitioned table space

The following statement specifies that DSN1COPY is to copy data into all partitions of a partitioned table space by using a full image copy of the table space as input. The input image copy has 16 partitions, as indicated by the NUMPARTS option. You must ensure that the fifth-level qualifier in the data set name is the same, either I0001 or J0001, for all partitions of the output table space before running this type of job stream.

```

//DSN1COPY EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,
//      PARM='NUMPARTS(16),RESET,FULLCOPY'
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=PROD.IMAGE.COPY.DSNUMALL
//SYSUT2 DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.TESTDB.TS01.I0001.A001

```

Example 7: Using DSN1COPY with UTS table spaces

The following statements specify that DSN1COPY is to copy a UTS table space vsam data set to a sequential data set.

```

//*****
//* COMMENT: RUN DSN1COPY FOR THE TABLESPACE Part 1
//*****
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,
// PARM='SEGMENT,RESET'
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.DBKQBG01.TPKQBG01.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=JUKQU2BG.DSN1COPY.D1P1,DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03,UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(55,1))
/*
//*****
//* COMMENT: RUN DSN1COPY FOR THE TABLESPACE Part 2
//*****
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,
// PARM='SEGMENT,RESET'
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.DBKQBG01.TPKQBG01.I0001.A002,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=JUKQU2BG.DSN1COPY.D1P2,DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03,UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(TRK,(55,1))
/*

```

Example 8: Specifying Unicode output for DSN1COPY

When you specify the UNICODE option for DSN1COPY, you are not going to see non-Latin Unicode characters, such as Japanese characters, in your output. When you specify the UNICODE option, DSN1COPY takes the hexadecimal data and formats it as ASCII instead of the default EBCDIC.

A problem might arise when the data that you want DSN1COPY to handle is in UTF-16. In the case of UTF-16 data, DSN1COPY takes only the second byte of the data and formats that part of the data as ASCII. Thus, the output might not be correct. For example, the UTF-16 hexadecimal values X'0030' and X'1130' are both output as 0, because the first byte of each ("00" and "11" respectively) is ignored. The remaining part ("30") is interpreted as an ASCII 0. In UTF-16, X'0030' is the hexadecimal value for 0, but X'1130' is the hexadecimal value for a Hangul character. For more information about UTF-16 format, see UTFs (DB2 Internationalization Guide).

In the following DSN1COPY example, notice the three bold hexadecimal values: X'0041', X'0141', and X'0241'. The output for all three of these values is A.A.A, even though they each correspond to different characters in UTF-16. (X'0041' is A, X'0141' is △, and X'0241' is the Latin capital character for glottal stop.)

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1COPY,
// PARM='CHECK,PRINT(002),UNICODE'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=DB2A.DSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=TESTCAT.DSNDBC.DBED2101.TPED2101.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=DUMMY
/*

DSN1999I START OF DSN1COPY FOR JOB RUNCPYI1 RUNCPYI1
DSN1989I DSN1COPY IS PROCESSED WITH THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS:
CHECK/ PRINT/ 4K/NO IMAGECOPY/NON-SEGMENT/NUMPARTS= 0/NO OBIDXLAT/NO VALUE/NO RESET/ / / /
DSSIZE= /PIECESIZ= /UNICODE/
DSN1998I INPUT DSNAME = TESTCAT.DSNDBC.DBED2101.TPED2101.I0001.A001 , VSAM
DSN1997I OUTPUT DSNAME = NULLFILE , SEQ
```

Contents of the input data set in hexadecimal:

```
0000 10000075 8C945500 00000200 0FC90033 00000101 02001F00 03018000 00010000
0020 41014102 41002000 20002000 20002000 20002000 00000000 00000000 00000000
.... LINES ARE ALL ZERO.
0FE0 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 001400D5
```

Contents of the input data set in ASCII:

```
*...u..U.....3.....*
*A.A.A. . . . . . *
.... LINES ARE ALL ZERO.
*.....*
```

Chapter 41. DSN1LOGP

The DSN1LOGP stand-alone utility formats the contents of the recovery log for display.

The two recovery log report formats are:

- A detail report of individual log records. This information helps IBM Software Support personnel analyze the log in detail. (This information does not include a full description of the detail report.)
- A summary report, which helps you:
 - Perform a conditional restart
 - Resolve indoubt threads with a remote site
 - Detect problems with data propagation

You can specify the range of the log to process and select criteria within the range to limit the records in the detail report. For example, you can specify:

- One or more units of recovery that are identified by URID
- A single database

By specifying a URID and a database, you can display recovery log records that correspond to the use of one database by a single unit of recovery.

DSN1LOGP can print the log records for both base and clone table objects.

DSN1LOGP cannot read logs that have been compressed by DFSMS. (This compression requires extended format data sets.)

Environment

DSN1LOGP runs as a batch z/OS job.

DSN1LOGP runs on archive data sets, but not active data sets, when DB2 is running.

Authorization required

DSN1LOGP does not require authorization. However, if any of the data sets is RACF-protected, the authorization ID of the job must have RACF authority.

Required data sets

When you execute DSN1LOGP, provide the following data definition (DD) statements:

SYSPRINT

DSN1LOGP writes all error messages, exception conditions, and the detail report to the SYSPRINT file. The logical record length (LRECL) is 131.

SYSIN

DSN1LOGP specifies keywords in this file. The LRECL must be 80. Keywords and values must appear in characters 1 through 72. DSN1LOGP allows specification of as many as 50 control statements for a given job. DSN1LOGP concatenates all records into a single string.

SYSSUMRY

DSN1LOGP writes the formatted output of a summary report to the SYSSUMRY file. The LRECL is 131.

DSN1LOGP identifies the recovery log by DD statements that are described in the stand-alone log services.

Identifying log data sets

You must identify to DSN1LOGP the log data sets that are to be processed by including at least one of the following DD statements.

BSDS The BSDS identifies and provides information about all active log data sets and archive log data sets that exist in your DB2 subsystem. When you identify the BSDS to DSN1LOGP, you must provide the beginning and ending RBAs for the range of the recovery log that you want displayed. DSN1LOGP then associates the beginning RBA specifications and the ending RBA specifications with the appropriate data set names.

ACTIVE n

If the BSDS is not available, and if the active log data sets that are involved have been copied and sent to you, you can specify the set of active log data sets that are to be processed by DSN1LOGP by specifying one or more ACTIVE DD statements. If you used the REPRO command of Access Method Services for copying the active log, you must identify this data set in an ARCHIVE DD statement.

Each DD statement that you include identifies another active log data set. If you identify more than one active log data set, you must list the ACTIVE n DD statements in ascending log RBA sequence. For example, ACTIVE1 must identify a portion of the log that is less than ACTIVE2, and ACTIVE2 must identify a portion of the log that is less than ACTIVE3. If you do not specify this correctly, errors that DSN1LOGP does not detect can occur.

When you identify active log data sets, you do not need to use the RBASTART and RBAEND keywords (as you do when you identify the BSDS). DSN1LOGP scans all active log data sets that the job indicates only when the data sets are in the correct log RBA sequence.

ARCHIVE

If the BSDS is not available (as previously described under ACTIVE n), you can specify which archive log data sets are to be processed by specifying one ARCHIVE DD statement, concatenated with one or more DD statements.

Each DD statement that you include identifies another archive log data set. If you identify more than one archive log data set, you must list the DD statements that correspond to the multiple archive log data sets in ascending log RBA sequence. If you do not specify this correctly, errors that DSN1LOGP does not detect can occur.

When you identify archive log data sets, you do not need to use the RBASTART and RBAEND keywords. DSN1LOGP scans all archive log data sets that are indicated by the job only when the data sets are in the correct log RBA sequence.

Data sharing requirements

When selecting log records from more than one DB2 subsystem, you must use all or one of the following DD statements to locate the log data sets:

GROUP
MxxBSDS
MxxARCHV
MxxACTn

If you use GROUP or MxxBSDSs to locate the log data sets, you must use LRSNSTART to define the selection range.

Related tasks

[➤](#) Reading log records with OPEN, GET, and CLOSE (DB2 Administration Guide)

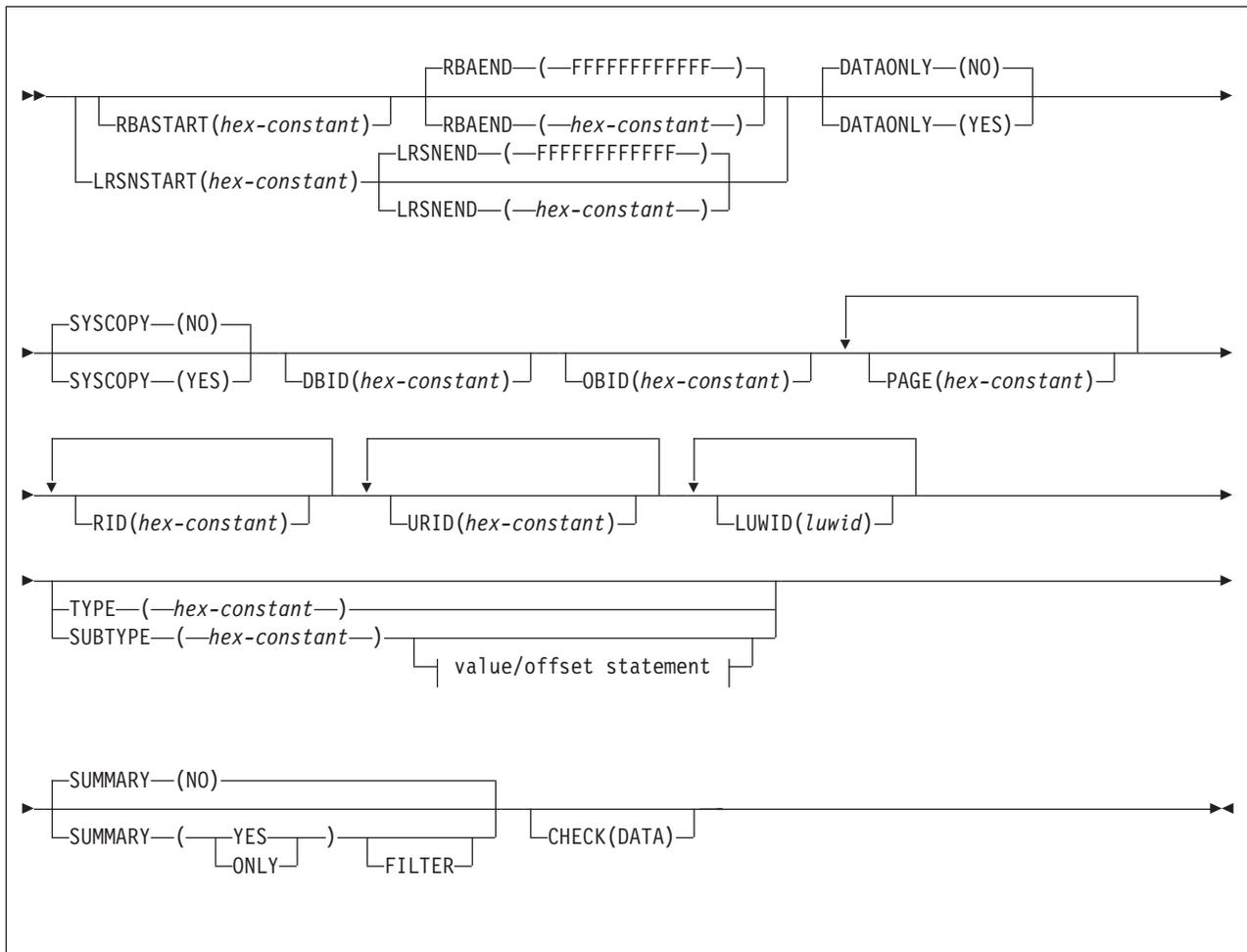
Related information

[➤](#) DB2 Diagnosis Guide and Reference

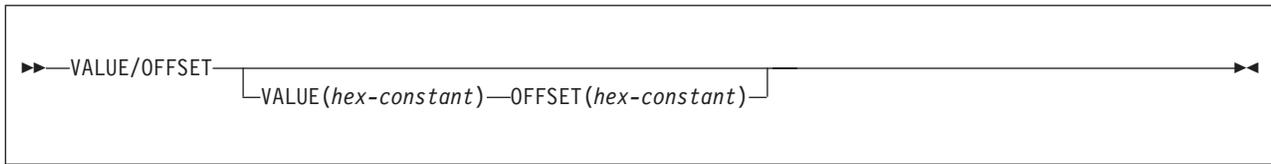
Syntax and options of the DSN1LOGP control statement

The DSN1LOGP utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

DSN1LOGP syntax diagram



value/offset statement:



Option descriptions

To execute DSN1LOGP, construct a batch job. The utility name, DSN1LOGP, should appear on the EXEC statement.

Specify keywords in up to 50 control statements in the SYSIN file. Each control statement can have up to 72 characters. To specify no keywords, either use a SYSIN file with no keywords following it, or omit the SYSIN file from the job JCL.

If you specify more than one keyword, separate them by commas. You can specify the keywords in any order. You can include blanks between keywords, and also between the keywords and the corresponding values.

RBASTART(*hex-constant*)

Specifies the hexadecimal log RBA from which to begin reading. If the value does not match the beginning RBA of one of the log records, DSN1LOGP begins reading at the beginning RBA of the next record. For any given job, specify this keyword only once. Alternative spellings: STARTRBA, ST.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of 1 to 12 characters (6 bytes); leading zeros are not required.

The default value is 0.

DB2 issues a warning if the value is not within the range of log records that is covered by the input log record information.

RBAEND(*hex-constant*)

Specifies the last valid hexadecimal log RBA to extract. If the specified RBA is in the middle of a log record, DSN1LOGP continues reading the log in an attempt to return a complete log record.

To read to the last valid RBA in the log, specify RBAEND(FFFFFFFFFFFF). For any given job, specify this keyword only once. Alternative spellings: ENDRBA, EN.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of 1 to 12 characters (6 bytes); leading zeros are not required.

The default value is FFFFFFFFFFFF.

DB2 issues a warning if the value is not within the range of log records that is covered by the input log record information.

RBAEND can be specified only if RBASTART is specified.

LRSNSTART(*hex-constant*)

Specifies the log record sequence number (LRSN) from which to begin the log scan. DSN1LOGP starts its processing on the first log record that contains an LRSN value that is greater than or equal to the LRSN value that is specified on LRSNSTART. The default LRSN is the LRSN at the beginning of the data set. Alternative spellings: STARTLRSN, STRTLRSN, and LRSNSTRT.

For any given job, specify this keyword only once.

You must specify this keyword to search the member BSDSs and to locate the log data sets from more than one DB2 subsystem. You can specify either the LRSNSTART keyword or the RBASTART keyword to search the BSDS of a single DB2 subsystem and to locate the log data sets.

DB2 issues a warning if the value is not within the range of log records that is covered by the input log record information.

LRSNEND(*hex-constant*)

Specifies the LRSN value of the last log record that is to be scanned. When LRSNSTART is specified, the default is X'FFFFFFFFFFFF'. Otherwise, it is the end of the data set. Alternative spelling: ENDLRSN.

For any given job, specify this keyword only once.

DB2 issues a warning if the value is not within the range of log records that is covered by the input log record information.

DATAONLY

Limits the log records in the detail report to those that represent data changes (insert, page repair, update space map, and so on).

The default value is **DATAONLY**(NO).

(YES)

Extracts log records for data changes only. For example, DATAONLY(YES), together with a DBID and OBID, reads only the log records that modified data for that DBID and OBID.

(NO)

Extracts all record types.

SYSCOPY

Limits the detail report to SYSCOPY log records.

The default value is **SYSCOPY**(NO).

(YES)

Includes only SYSCOPY log records in the detail report.

(NO)

Does not limit records to SYSCOPY records only.

DBID(*hex-constant*)

Specifies a hexadecimal database identifier (DBID). DSN1LOGP extracts only the records that are associated with that DBID. For any given job, specify this keyword only once.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of one to four characters. Leading zeros are not required.

You can find the DBID in any of the following ways:

- The DBID is displayed in many DB2 messages.
- You can find the DBID in the DB2 catalog for a specific object (for example, in the column named DBID of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table).
- When you select a DBID from a catalog table, the value is displayed in decimal format. Use the SQL HEX function in a SELECT statement to convert a DBID to hexadecimal format. The following SQL statements show this use of the HEX function:

```
SELECT NAME, DBNAME, HEX(DBID), HEX(PSID)
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE
WHERE NAME = 'table space name'
```

```
SELECT NAME, DBNAME, HEX(DBID), HEX(ISOBID)
FROM SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES
WHERE NAME = 'index name'
```

- You can use the DSN1PRNT utility to format the data sets for tables or indexes, and find the DBID in first two bytes of HPGOBID.

OBID(*hex-constant*)

Specifies a hexadecimal database object identifier, either a data page set identifier (PSID) or an index page set identifier (ISOBID). DSN1LOGP extracts only the records that are associated with that identifier.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of one to four characters. Leading zeros are not required.

Whenever DB2 makes a change to data, the log record that describes the change identifies the database by DBID and the table space by page set ID (PSID). You can find the PSID column in the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table.

You can also find a column named OBID in the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table. That column actually contains the OBID of a file descriptor; do not confuse this with the PSID, which is the information that you must include when you execute DSN1LOGP.

Whenever DB2 makes a change to an index, the log record that describes the change identifies the database (by DBID) and the index space (by index space OBID or ISOBID). You can find the ISOBID for an index space in the column named ISOBID in the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog table.

You can also find a column named OBID in the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog table. This column actually contains the identifier of a fan set descriptor; do not confuse this with the ISOBID, which is the information that you must include when you execute DSN1LOGP.

When you select either the PSID or the ISOBID from a catalog table, the value is displayed in decimal format. Use the SQL HEX function in your select statement to convert them to hexadecimal.

Alternatively, you can use the DSN1PRNT utility to format the data sets for tables or indexes, and find the PSID or ISOBID in the last two bytes of HPGOBID.

For any given DSN1LOGP job, use this keyword only once. If you specify OBID, you must also specify DBID.

PAGE(*hex-constant*)

Specifies a hexadecimal page number. When data or an index is changed, a recovery log record is written to the log, identifying the object identifier and the page number of the changed data page or index page. Specifying a page number limits the search to a single page; otherwise, all pages for a given combination of DBID and OBID are extracted. The log output also contains page set control log records for the specified DBID and OBID, and system event log records, unless DATAONLY(YES) is also specified.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of a maximum of eight characters.

You can specify a maximum of 100 PAGE keywords in any given DSN1LOGP job. You must also specify the DBID and OBID keywords that correspond to those pages.

The PAGE and RID keywords are mutually exclusive.

RID(*hex-constant*)

Specifies a record identifier, which is a hexadecimal value consisting of 10 characters, with the first eight characters representing the page number and the last two characters representing the page ID map entry number. The option limits the log records that are extracted to those that are associated with that particular record. The log records that are extracted include not only those that are directly associated with the RID, such as insert and delete, but also the control records that are associated with the DBID and OBID specifications, such as page set open, page set close, set write, reset write, page set write, data set open, and data set close.

You can specify a maximum of 40 RID keywords in any given DSN1LOGP job. You must also specify the DBID and OBID keywords that correspond to the specified records.

The PAGE and RID keywords are mutually exclusive.

URID(*hex-constant*)

Specifies a hexadecimal unit of recovery identifier (URID). Changes to data and indexes occur in the context of a DB2 unit of recovery, which is identified on the log by a BEGIN UR record. In the summary DSN1LOGP report, the URID is listed in the STARTRBA field in message DSN1162I. In the detail DSN1LOGP report, look for the subtype of BEGIN UR; the URID is listed in the URID field. Using the log RBA of that record as the URID value limits the extraction of information from the DB2 log to that unit of recovery.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of 1 to 12 characters (6 bytes). Leading zeros are not required.

You can specify a maximum of 10 URID keywords in any given DSN1LOGP job.

LUWID(*luwid*)

Specifies up to 10 LUWIDs that DSN1LOGP is to include information about in the summary report.

luwid consists of three parts: an LU network name, an LUW instance number, and a commit sequence number. If you supply the first two parts, the summary report includes an entry for each commit that is performed in the logical unit of work (within the search range). If you supply all three parts, the summary report includes an entry for only that LUWID.

The LU network name consists of a one- to eight-character network ID, a period, and a one- to eight-character network LU name. The LUW instance number consists of a period, followed by 12 hexadecimal characters. The last element of the LUWID is the commit sequence number of 4 hexadecimal characters, preceded by a period.

TYPE(*hex-constant*)

Limits the log records that are extracted to records of a specified type. The TYPE and SUBTYPE options are mutually exclusive.

hex-constant indicates the type, as follows:

Constant	Description
-----------------	--------------------

2	Page set control record
4	SYSCOPY utility record
10	System event record
20	UR control record
100	Checkpoint record
200	UR-UNDO record
400	UR-REDO record
800	Archive quiesce record
1000 to 8000	Assigned by the resource manager

SUBTYPE(*hex-constant*)

Restricts formatting to a particular subtype of unit of recovery undo and redo log records (types 200 and 400). The TYPE and SUBTYPE options are mutually exclusive.

hex-constant indicates the subtype, as follows:

Constant

	Description
1	Update data page
2	Format page or update space map
3	Update space map bits
4	Update to index space map
5	Update to index page
6	DBA table update log record
7	Checkpoint DBA table log record
9	DBD virtual memory copy
A	Exclusive lock on page set partition or DBD
B	Format file page set
C	Format index page set
F	Update by repair (first half if 32 KB)
10	Update by repair (second half if 32 KB)
11	Allocate or deallocate a segment entry
12	Undo/redo log record for modified page or redo log record for formatted page
14	Savepoint
15	Other DB2 component log records that are written for RMID 14
17	Checkpoint record of modified page set
19	Type 2 index update
1A	Type 2 index undo/redo or redo log record
1B	Type 2 index change notification log record

- 1C Type 2 index space map update
- 1D DBET log record with exception data
- 1E DBET log record with LPL/GRECP data
- 65 Change Data Capture diagnostic log
- 81 Index dummy compensation log record
- 82 START DATABASE ACCESS (FORCE) log record

The VALUE and OFFSET options must be used together. You can specify a maximum of 10 VALUE-OFFSET pairs. The SUBTYPE parameter is required when using the VALUE and OFFSET options.

VALUE(*hex-constant*)

Specifies a value that must appear in a log record that is to be extracted.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of a maximum of 64 characters and must be an even number of characters.

The SUBTYPE keyword must be specified before the VALUE option.

OFFSET(*hex-constant*)

Specifies an offset from the log record header at which the value that is specified in the VALUE option must appear.

hex-constant is a hexadecimal value consisting of a maximum of eight characters.

The SUBTYPE keyword must be specified before specifying the OFFSET option.

SUMMARY

Summarizes all recovery information within the RBASTART and RBAEND specifications. You can use summary information to determine what work is incomplete when DB2 starts. You cannot limit the output of the summary report with any of the other options, except by using the FILTER option with a URID or LUWID specification.

The default value is **SUMMARY(**NO**)**.

(YES)

Generates both a detail and summary report.

(NO**)**

Generates only a detail report.

(ONLY)

Generates only a summary report.

FILTER

Restricts the summary report to include messages for only the specified URIDs and LUWIDs. Specify this option only once.

The SUMMARY keyword must be specified before FILTER.

CHECK(DATA)

Specifies that DSN1LOGP is to check the specified range of data pages for page regression. Any page regression errors are displayed in the detail and summary reports.

Related concepts

“DSN1LOGP output” on page 890

Related reference

“Sample DSN1LOGP control statements” on page 887

Determining the PSID for base and clone objects

You can determine the PSID for base and clone objects by querying the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table. You can specify the PSID on the DBID and OBID keywords of the DSN1LOGP utility control statement.

To determine the PSID to specify for base or clone objects:

1. Determine the PSID by querying the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table. The value is displayed in decimal format. Use the SQL HEX function in your select statement to convert the value to hexadecimal.
2. Determine the instance number of the clone or base object. You can determine the instance number in two ways:
 - Look at the TYPE column in the DISPLAY DATABASE command output. The output indicates the base and clone objects with a 'B' or a 'C' character respectively along with the data set instance number.
 - Look at the DB2 catalog. The SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table INSTANCE column indicates the current instance number of the base table.
3. Determine whether to alter the PSID value or leave the PSID value the same. For example, if the PSID value of the base or clone is '0009'X and the instance number is 1, specify a PSID value of '0009'X to DSN1LOGP. If the PSID of the base or clone is '0009'X and the instance number is 2, specify a PSID value of '8009'X to DSN1LOGP.

Archive log data sets on tape

If you store your archive logs on tape, DSN1LOGP constructs two files on tape during the archiving process. The first file is the BSDS, and the second file is a dump of the active log that DSN1LOGP is currently archiving.

If a failure occurs during the time DSN1LOGP is archiving the BSDS, DB2 might omit the BSDS. In this case, the first file contains the active log.

If you perform archiving on tape, the first letter of the lowest-level qualifier varies for both the first and second data sets. The first letter of the first data set is B (for BSDS), and the first letter of the second data set is A (for archive). Hence, the archive log data set names all end in *Axxxxxxx*, and the DD statement identifies each of them as the second data set on the corresponding tape:

```
LABEL=(2,SL)
```

When reading archive log data sets on tape (or copies of active log data sets on tape), add one or more of the following Job Entry Subsystem (JES) statements:

For the JES3 environment:

JES3 environment JCL

Description

```
//*MAIN SETUP=JOB
```

Alert the z/OS operator to mount the initial volumes before the job executes.

/*MAIN HOLD=YES

Place the job in HOLD status until the operator is ready to release the job.

TYPRUN=HOLD

Perform the same function as /*MAIN HOLD=YES. The system places the JCL on the JOB statement.

For the JES2 environment:

JES2 environment JCL**Description****/*SETUP**

Alert the z/OS operator to prepare to mount a specified list of tapes.

/*HOLD

Place the job in HOLD status until the operator has located the tapes and is ready to release the job.

TYPRUN=HOLD

Perform the same function as /*HOLD. The system places the JCL on the JOB statement.

Alternatively, submit the job to a z/OS initiator that your operations center has established for exclusive use by jobs that require tape mounts. Specify the initiator class by using the CLASS parameter on the JOB statement, in both JES2 and JES3 environments.

Related reference

 [MVS JCL Reference](#)

Sample DSN1LOGP control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSN1LOGP control statements.

Example 1: Extracting information from the recovery log with an available BSDS

The following example shows how to extract information from the recovery log when you have the BSDS available. The extraction starts at the log RBA of X'AF000' and ends at the log RBA of X'B3000'. The DSN1LOGP utility identifies the table or index space by the DBID of X'10A' (266 decimal) and the OBID of X'1F' (31 decimal).

```

//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1LOGP
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS containing DSN1LOGP
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//BSDS DD DSN=DSNCAT.BSDS01,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
        RBASTART (AF000) RBAEND (B3000)
        DBID (10A) OBID(1F)
/*

```

You can think of the DB2 recovery log as a large sequential file. When recovery log records are written, they are written to the end of the log. A log RBA is the address of a byte on the log. Because the recovery log is larger than a single data set, the recovery log is physically stored on many data sets. DB2 records the RBA ranges and their corresponding data sets in the BSDS. To determine which data set contains a specific RBA, read the information about the DSNJU004 utility. During

normal DB2 operation, messages are issued that include information about log RBAs.

Example 2: Extracting information from the active log when the BSDS is not available

The following example shows how to extract the information from the active log when the BSDS is not available. The extraction includes log records that apply to the table space or index space that is identified by the DBID of X'10A' and the OBID of X'1F'. The only information that is extracted is information that relates to page numbers X'3B' and X'8C', as identified by the PAGE options. You can omit beginning and ending RBA values for ACTIVE n or ARCHIVE DD statements because the DSN1LOGP search includes all specified ACTIVE n DD statements. The DD statements ACTIVE1, ACTIVE2, and ACTIVE3 specify the log data sets in ascending log RBA range. Use the DSNJU004 utility to determine what the log RBA range is for each active log data set. If the BSDS is not available and you cannot determine the ascending log RBA order of the data sets, you must run each log data set individually.

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1LOGP
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS containing DSN1LOGP
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//ACTIVE1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.LOGCOPY1.DS02,DISP=SHR RBA X'A000' - X'BFFF'
//ACTIVE2 DD DSN=DSNCAT.LOGCOPY1.DS03,DISP=SHR RBA X'C000' - X'FFFF'
//ACTIVE3 DD DSN=DSNCAT.LOGCOPY1.DS01,DISP=SHR RBA X'F000' - X'12FFF'
//SYSIN DD *
        DBID (10A) OBID(1F) PAGE(3B) PAGE(8C)
/*
```

Example 3: Extracting information from the archive log when the BSDS is not available

The example in the following figure shows how to extract the information from archive logs when the BSDS is not available. The extraction includes log records that apply to a single unit of recovery (whose URID is X'61F321'). Because the BEGIN UR is the first record for the unit of recovery and is at X'61F321', the beginning RBA is specified to indicate that it is the first RBA in the range from which to extract recovery log records. Also, because no ending RBA value is specified, all specified archive logs are scanned for qualifying log records. The specification of DBID(4) limits the scan to changes that the specified unit of recovery made to all table spaces and index spaces in the database whose DBID is X'4'.

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1LOGP
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS containing DSN1LOGP
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//ARCHIVE DD DSN=DSNCAT.ARCHLOG1.A0000037,UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=T10067,
//          DISP=(OLD,KEEP),LABEL=(2,SL)
//          DD DSN=DSNCAT.ARCHLOG1.A0000039,UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=T30897,
//          DISP=(OLD,KEEP),LABEL=(2,SL)
//          DD DSN=DSNCAT.ARCHLOG1.A0000041,UNIT=TAPE,VOL=SER=T06573,
//          DISP=(OLD,KEEP),LABEL=(2,SL)
//SYSIN DD *
        RBASTART (61F321)
        URID (61F321) DBID(4)
/*
```

Figure 136. Example DSN1LOGP statement with RBASTART and URID options

Example 4: Use DSN1LOGP with the SUMMARY option

The DSN1LOGP SUMMARY option allows you to scan the recovery log to determine what work is incomplete at restart time. You can specify this option either by itself or when you use DSN1LOGP to produce a detail report of log data. Summary log results appear in SYSSUMRY; therefore, you must include a SYSSUMRY DD statement as part of the JCL with which you execute DSN1LOGP.

The following example produces both a detail and a summary report that uses the BSDS to identify the log data sets. The summary report summarizes all recovery log information within the RBASTART and RBAEND specifications. You cannot limit the output of the summary report with any of the other options, except by using the FILTER option with a URID or LUWID specification. RBASTART and RBAEND specification use depends on whether a BSDS is used.

This example is similar to Example 1, in that it shows how to extract the information from the recovery log when you have the BSDS available. However, this example also shows you how to specify a summary report of all logged information between the log RBA of X'AF000' and the log RBA of X'B3000'. This summary is generated with a detail report, but it is printed to SYSSUMRY separately.

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1LOGP
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS containing DSN1LOGP
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSSUMRY DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//BSDS DD DSN=DSNCAT.BSDS01,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
    RBASTART (AF000) RBAEND (B3000)
    DBID (10A) OBID(1F) SUMMARY(YES)
/*
```

Example 5: Use DSN1LOGP on all members of a data sharing group

The following example shows how to extract log information that pertains to the table space that is identified by DBID X'112' and OBID X'1D' from all members of a data sharing group.

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1LOGP
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS containing DSN1LOGP
//SYSPRINT SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND SYSOUT=A
//GROUP DD DSN=DSNDB0G.BSDS01,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
    DATAONLY (YES)
    LRSNSTART (A7951A001AD5) LRSNEND (A7951A003B6A)
    DBID (112) OBID(1D)
/*
```

Example 6: Use DSN1LOGP on a single member of a data sharing group

The following example shows how to extract log information that pertains to the table space that is identified by DBID X'112' and OBID X'1D' from a single member of a data sharing group.

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1LOGP
//STEPLIB DD DSN=PDS containing DSN1LOGP
//SYSPRINT SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND SYSOUT=A
```

```
//M01BSDS DD DSN=DSNDB0G.DB1G.BSDS01,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD *
  DATAONLY (YES)
  LRSNSTART (A7951A001AD5) LRSNEND (A7951A003B6A)
  DBID (112) OBID(1D)
/*
```

Related tasks

 [Resetting the log RBA \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Related reference

Chapter 37, “DSNJU004 (print log map),” on page 821

DSN1LOGP output

One intended use of this utility is to aid in determining and correcting system problems. When diagnosing DB2 problems, you might need to refer to licensed documentation to interpret output from this utility.

Reviewing DSN1LOGP output

With the SUMMARY option, you can produce a summary report, a detail report, or both. You can also use the CHECK(DATA) option to produce a summary and detail report of page regression errors.

For data sharing, you might see multiple log records with the same LRSN value on a single DB2 data sharing member.

Description of the summary report

The summary report in the following figure contains a summary of completed events, consisting of an entry for each completed unit of work. Each entry shows, among other information, the start time, user, and all page sets that were modified. When possible, the report shows whether an object is LOGGED or NOT LOGGED.

The summary report is divided into two distinct sections:

- The first section is headed by the following message:
DSN1150I SUMMARY OF COMPLETED EVENTS
- The second section is headed by the following message:
DSN1157I RESTART SUMMARY

The first section lists all completed units of recovery (URs) and checkpoints within the range of the log that is scanned. Events are listed chronologically, with URs listed according to when they were completed and checkpoints listed according to when the end of the checkpoint was processed. The page sets that are changed by each completed UR are listed. If a log record that is associated with a UR is unavailable, the attribute INFO=PARTIAL is displayed for the UR. Otherwise, the UR is marked INFO=COMPLETE. A log record that is associated with a UR is unavailable if the range of the scanned log is not large enough to contain all records for a given UR.

The DISP attribute can be one of the following values: COMMITTED, ABORTED, INFLIGHT, IN-COMMIT, IN-ABORT, POSTPONED ABORT, or INDOUBT. The DISP attributes COMMITTED and ABORTED are used in the first section; the remaining attributes are used in the second section.

The list in the second section shows the work that is required of DB2 at restart as it is recorded in the log that you specified. If the log is available, the checkpoint that is to be used is identified, as is each outstanding UR, together with the page sets it changed. Each page set with pending writes is also identified, as is the earliest log record that is required to complete those writes. If a log record that is associated with a UR is unavailable, the attribute INFO=PARTIAL is displayed, and the identification of modified page sets is incomplete for that UR.

```

DSN1212I DSN1LGRD FIRST LOG LRSN ENCOUNTERED AA526968220D

=====
DSN1150I SUMMARY OF COMPLETED EVENTS

DSN1151I DSN1LPRT MEMBER=VA1B UR CONNID=VA1B CORRID=021.OPNLGR00 AUTHID=SYSOPR PLAN=SYSTEM
START DATE=94.347 TIME=11:15:22 DISP=COMMITTED INFO=COMPLETE
STARTRBA=0000000E570 ENDRBA=0000000EB64 STARTLRSN=AA52696B1269 ENDLRSN=AA526999D14D NID=*
LUWID=USIBMSY.SYEC1B.AA52696825CE.0001 COORDINATOR=*
PARTICIPANTS=*
DATA MODIFIED:
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=00CF=SYSLGRNX
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=0087=DSNLLX01
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=0086=DSNLLX02

DSN1151I DSN1LPRT MEMBER=VA1B UR CONNID=VA1B CORRID=021.OPNLGR00 AUTHID=SYSOPR PLAN=SYSTEM
START DATE=94.347 TIME=11:16:14 DISP=COMMITTED INFO=COMPLETE
STARTRBA=0000000ECFC ENDRBA=0000000F20A STARTLRSN=AA52699C97A9 ENDLRSN=AA52699CAD5 NID=*
LUWID=USIBMSY.SYEC1B.AA52699C9508.0001 COORDINATOR=*
PARTICIPANTS=*
DATA MODIFIED:
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=00CF=SYSLGRNX
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=0087=DSNLLX01
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=0086=DSNLLX02

....

DSN1213I DSN1LGRD LAST LOG LRSN ENCOUNTERED AA527C9B8392

DSN1214I NUMBER OF LOG RECORDS READ 000000000004991

=====
DSN1157I RESTART SUMMARY

DSN1153I DSN1LSIT CHECKPOINT MEMBER=VA1B
STARTRBA=000000068CD3 ENDRBA=00000006CAED STARTLRSN=AA527AA809DF ENDLRSN=AA527AA829F4
DATE=94.347 TIME=12:32:29

DSN1162I DSN1LPRT MEMBER=VA1C UR CONNID=BATCH CORRID=S5529927 AUTHID=ADMFO01 PLAN=PLNFW543
START DATE=94.347 TIME=12:41:04 DISP=INFLIGHT INFO=COMPLETE
STARTRBA=000000016000 STARTLRSN=AA527C9278DF NID=*
LUWID=USIBMSY.SYEC1C.AA527C22E283.0001 COORDINATOR=*
PARTICIPANTS=*
DATA MODIFIED:
    DATABASE=0113=DBFW5401 PAGE SET=0002=TPFW5401
    DATABASE=0113=DBFW5401 PAGE SET=0005=IPFW5401

DSN1162I DSN1LPRT MEMBER=VA1A UR CONNID=BATCH CORRID=S5529925 AUTHID=ADMFO01 PLAN=PLNFW541
START DATE=94.347 TIME=12:41:04 DISP=INFLIGHT INFO=COMPLETE
STARTRBA=000001F9A3C1 STARTLRSN=AA527C92E419 NID=*
LUWID=USIBMSY.SYEC1DB2.AA527C1D674B.0001 COORDINATOR=*
PARTICIPANTS=*
DATA MODIFIED:
    DATABASE=0113=DBFW5401 PAGE SET=0002=TPFW5401

...
DSN1160I DATABASE WRITES PENDING:
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=0046=DSNLUX02 START=000000068CD3
    DATABASE=0001=DSNDB01 PAGE SET=0044=DSNLUX01 START=000000068CD3

...
    DATABASE=0006=DSNDB06 PAGE SET=0076=DSNUCX01 START=000000068CD3
    DATABASE=0006=DSNDB06 PAGE SET=0072=DSNUCH01 START=000000068CD3

...

```

Figure 137. Sample DSN1LOGP summary report

Description of the detail report

The detail report in the following figure includes the following records:

- Redo and undo log records
- System events log records, including begin and end checkpoint records, begin current status rebuild records, and begin forward and backward recovery records
- Page set control log records, including open and close page set log records, open and close data set log records, set write, reset write, and page set write log records
- UR control log records for the complete or incomplete unit of recovery

You can reduce the volume of the detail log records by specifying one or more of the optional keywords in the DSN1LOGP utility control statement.

```
DSN1212I DSN1LGRD FIRST LOG RBA ENCOUNTERED 0000335916E

0000033591D4 MEMBER(M01 ) LRSN(AB62536BE583) DBID(0006) OBID(00B2)
TYPE(PAGE SET CONTROL) SUBTYPE(PAGE SET STATUS RECORD)
*LRH* 00660066 00020009 0E800000 00000000 00000335 916E0126 00000335 916EAB62
536BE583 0001
0000 000600B2 C4E2D5C4 C2F0F640 C4E2D5E3 D5E7F0F1 00010000 92018000 00000334
0020 EC3AAB62 5260AB0B 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000

0000000109E2 MEMBER(M02 ) LRSN(AB6253746CE3) DBID(0113) OBID(0008)
TYPE(PAGE SET CONTROL) SUBTYPE(PAGE SET OPEN)
*LRH* 00A0006E 00020001 0E800000 00000000 00000000 00000126 00000000 0000AB62
53746CE3 0002
0000 01130008 6C010100 00000005 0040C4C2 C6E6F0F0 F1F1C9C3 C6E6F0F0 F0F10001
0020 00060000 10009201 00130020 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
0040 00000000 00000010 00010000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
0060 00AB624B 192CEEAB 624B4783 F8000000 0000C4E2 D5C3F4F1 F040

000000010A82 MEMBER(M02 ) URID(000000010A82) LRSN(AB6253747801)
TYPE(UR CONTROL) SUBTYPE(BEGIN UR)
*LRH* 009000A0 00200001 03800000 00010A82 00000000 00000126 00000000 0000AB62
53747801 0002
0000 00010000 0000D000 00000000 00000700 0000D4F0 F0F0F1F0 F2F54040 4040D7C6
0020 E5E3F0F0 F340AB62 537477FC B803C4E2 D5E3C5D7 F340C2C1 E3C3C840 4040C2C1
0040 E3C3C840 40400000 00000000 0000001A 0001E4E2 C9C2D4E2 E840E2E8 C5C3F1C4
0060 4040AB62 5362554A 0001

000000010B12 MEMBER(M02 ) URID(000000010A82) LRSN(AB6253747807)
TYPE( UNDO ) SUBTYPE(SAVEPOINT)
*LRH* 002F0090 22000014 0E800000 00010A82 00000001 0A820126 00000001 0A82AB62
53747807 0002
0000 00E7D9E4 C9000000 02

000000010B42 MEMBER(M02 ) URID(000000010A82) LRSN(AB625374780E) DBID(0113) OBID(0008)
PAGE(00000003)
TYPE( UNDO REDO ) SUBTYPE(TYPE 2 INDEX UPDATE) CLR(NO) PROCNAME(DSNKDLE )
*LRH* 0053002F 06000019 0E800000 00010A82 00000001 0B120126 00000001 0B12AB62
5374780E 0002
*LG** 84011300 08000003 63000000 00000000 0000
0000 001B3000 00B40001 00000201 000A0000 02C5C5F0 F6C1C1D4 F3F1C1

000000010B94 MEMBER(M02 ) URID(000000010A82) LRSN(AB6253747CEF) DBID(0113) OBID(0008)
PAGE(00000003)
TYPE( UNDO REDO ) SUBTYPE(TYPE 2 INDEX UPDATE) CLR(NO) PROCNAME(DSNKINSL)
*LRH* 00530053 06000019 0E800000 00010A82 00000001 0B420126 00000001 0B42AB62
53747CEF 0002
*LG** 04011300 08000003 64000000 00000000 0000
0000 001B1000 00B30001 00000201 000A2000 00C5C5F0 F6C1C1D7 D7D3F4

.....
00000001138E MEMBER(M02 ) URID(0000000110A0) LRSN(AB62537B4931)
TYPE(UR CONTROL) SUBTYPE(BEGIN COMMIT1)
*LRH* 005C0053 00200002 03800000 000110A0 00000001 133B0126 00000001 133BAB62
537B4931 0002
0000 00020000 00004000 00000000 00000700 0000F0F2 F14BD6D7 D5D3C7D9 F0F04040
0020 40404040 40400000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 0000

0000000113EA MEMBER(M02 ) URID(0000000110A0) LRSN(AB62537B4940)
TYPE(UR CONTROL) SUBTYPE(PHASE 1 TO 2)
```

```

*LRH* 0034005C 0020000C 03800000 000110A0 00000001 138E0126 00000001 138EAB62
537B4940 0002
0000 00020000 00004000 00000000 0000
0000033685DE MEMBER(M01 ) LRSN(AB6254D9A231) DBID(0001) OBID(001F)
TYPE(CHECKPOINT) SUBTYPE(DBE TABLE WITH EXCEPTION DATA)
*LRH* 0061003E 2100001D 0E800000 00000000 00000336 85A00126 00000336 85A0AB62
54D9A231 0001
0000 00000000 C4E2D5C4 C2F0F140 C4C2C4F0 F1404040 0001001F 00000000 00000000
0020 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
00000336863F MEMBER(M01 ) LRSN(AB6254D9A237) DBID(0001) OBID(001F)
TYPE(CHECKPOINT) SUBTYPE(DBE TABLE WITH PIECE DATA)
*LRH* 01F60061 2100001E 0E800000 00000000 00000336 85DE0126 00000336 85DEAB62
54D9A237 0001
0000 00000100 1FC4E2D5 C4C2F0F1 40C4C2C4 F0F14040 40000000 0020FFFF FFFFFFFF
0020 00000000 00000000 0000006C 00000090 FFFFFFFF 00000000 00000000 00FFFFFF
0040 FF000000 00000000 0000FFFF FFFF0000 00000000 000000FF FFFFFFF0 00000000
0060 00000000 FFFFFFFF 00000000 00000000 00FFFFFF FF000000 00000000 0000FFFF
0080 FFFF0000 00000000 000000FF FFFFFFF0 00000000 00000000 FFFFFFFF 00000000
00A0 00000000 00FFFFFF FF000000 00000000 0000FFFF FFFF0000 00000000 000000FF
00C0 FFFFFFF0 00000000 00000000 FFFFFFFF 00000000 00000000 00FFFFFF FF000000
00E0 00000000 0000FFFF FFFF0000 00000000 000000FF FFFFFFF0 00000000 00000000
0100 FFFFFFFF 00000000 00000000 00FFFFFF FF000000 00000000 0000FFFF FFFF0000
0120 00000000 000000FF FFFFFFF0 00000000 00000000 FFFFFFFF 00000000 00000000
0140 00FFFFFF FF000000 00000000 0000FFFF FFFF0000 00000000 000000FF FFFFFFF0
0160 00000000 00000000 FFFFFFFF 00000000 00000000 00FFFFFF FF000000 00000000
0180 0000FFFF FFFF0000 00000000 000000FF FFFFFFF0 00000000 00000000 FFFFFFFF
01A0 00000000 00000000 00FFFFFF FF000000 00000000 0000FFFF FFFF0000 00000000
01C0 000000FF FFFFFFF0 00000000 00000000
...
000000057EA2 MEMBER(M02 ) LRSN(AB62564FF606) DBID(0113) OBID(000A)
TYPE(PAGE SET CONTROL) SUBTYPE(PAGE SET WRITE)
*LRH* 009C002A 00020007 0E800000 00000000 00000005 7E780126 00000005 7E78AB62
564FF606 0002
0000 0000F5D7 C3D60113 000AC4C2 C6E6F0F0 F1F1C9E4 C6E6F0F0 F0F20000 00000000
0020 00000000 0004D98E 00000004 D98E0000 00000000 11040000 00000000 03000003
0040 AB62553F 98780000 00000000 04000004 AB62553F 930C0000 00000000 05000005
0060 AB62553F 95C30000 00000000 06000006 AB62553F 9855
000000057F3E MEMBER(M02 ) LRSN(AB62564FF6BA) DBID(0113) OBID(000A)
TYPE(PAGE SET CONTROL) SUBTYPE(PAGE SET CLOSE)
*LRH* 002A009C 00020003 0E800000 00000000 00000005 7EA20126 00000005 7EA2AB62
564FF6BA 0002
0000 0113000A

```

```
DSN1213I DSN1LGRD LAST LOG RBA ENCOUNTERED 00000337A000
```

```
DSN1214I NUMBER OF LOG RECORDS READ 0000000000004661
```

Figure 138. Sample DSN1LOGP detail report

Description of data propagation information in the summary report

The sample output in the following figure shows information from the DSN1LOGP summary report about log records of changes to DB2 tables that were defined with DATA CAPTURE CHANGES.

The fields show the following information:

- START RBA and END RBA show the first and last RBAs that are captured for the unit of recovery that was not retrieved. The range that the start and end RBA encompass can include one or all of the SQL statements within the scope of the unit of recovery.
- TABLE LIST OVERFLOW indicates whether more than 10 distinct data capture table IDs were updated by this unit of recovery. This example indicates that no overflow occurred.

- LR WRITTEN shows the number of written log records that represented changes to tables that were defined for data capture and were available to the DB2CDCEX routine. Recursive SQL changes from DB2CDCEX and changes from other attachments that are not associated with DB2CDCEX are not included. If you receive a value of 2147483647, an overflow occurred and the count is not valid.
- LR RETRIEVED is the number of captured RBAs that were retrieved by DB2CDCEX. If you receive a value of 2147483647, an overflow occurred and the count is not valid.
- LR NOT RETRIEVED is the difference between the number of written log records (LR WRITTEN) and the number of retrieved log records (LR RETRIEVED). The following example output shows that four log records were written, and none were retrieved.

```

DATA PROPAGATION INFORMATION:
START RBA=000004A107F4      END RBA=000004A10A5C      TABLE LIST OVERFLOW=NO
LR WRITTEN=00000000000000004  LR RETRIEVED=00000000000000000  LR NOT RETRIEVED=00000000000000004
DATABASE=0112=DBCS1701      PAGESET=0002=TSCS1701      TABLE OBID=0005

```

Figure 139. Sample data propagation information from the summary report

Description of the report on page regression errors

DSN1LOGP reports page regression errors when you specify the CHECK(DATA) option. The value of the SUMMARY option determines whether the utility creates a detail report, a summary report, or both.

A detail report contains the following information for each page regression error:

- DBID
- OBID
- Page number
- Current LRSN or RBA
- Member name
- Previous level
- Previous update
- Date
- Time

A summary report contains the total number of page regressions that the utility found as well as the following information for each table space in which it found page regression errors:

- Database name
- Table space name
- DBID
- OBID

If no page regression errors are found, DSN1LOGP outputs a single message that no page regression errors were found.

The sample output in the following figure shows detail and summary reports when page regression errors are found.

```

DSN1212I DSN1LGRD FIRST LOG RBA ENCOUNTERED 5182C4758000
DSN1212I DSN1LGRD FIRST LOG LRSN ENCOUNTERED B7A829006D13
DSN1191I:
-----
                DETAIL REPORT OF PAGE REGRESSION ERRORS
-----
DBID OBID  PAGE#   CURRENT   MEMBER  PREV-LEVEL  PREV-UPDATE  DATE  TIME
-----
0001 00CF 0000132F B7A83F071892 0002    84A83BBEE81F B7A83C6042DF 02.140 15:29:20
0001 00CF 000086C2 B7A84BD4C3E5 0003    04A83BC42C58 B7A83C61D53E 02.140 18:01:13
0006 0009 00009DBF B7A8502A39F4 0002    04A83BC593B6 B7A83C669743 02.140 18:20:37

DSN1213I DSN1LGRD LAST LOG RBA ENCOUNTERED 51830AC57F47

DSN1213I DSN1LGRD LAST LOG LRSN ENCOUNTERED B7A8568367E6

DSN1214I NUMBER OF LOG RECORDS READ 0000000007816406
DSN1194I:
-----
                SUMMARY REPORT OF PAGE REGRESSION ERRORS
-----
                DATABASE SPACENAM DBID OBID #PG REGRESSIONS
-----
                DSNDB01 SYSLGRNX 0001 00CF 00000002
                DSNDB06 SYSDBASE 0006 0009 00000001
-----
DSN1197I TOTAL PAGES CHECKED FOR REGRESSION = 00312927
:
:

```

Figure 140. Sample DSN1LOGP detail and summary reports for page regression errors.

Command text in DSN1LOGP output

Command text is logged automatically. When you run DSN1LOGP with TYPE(0010), the output includes records for commands. Command record output has TYPE(SYSTEM EVENT) and SUBTYPE(TRACE RECORD). The data is in the form of an IFCID 0090 trace record. For example, the following output from DSN1LOGP shows a -STOP DB2 command:

```

00006BFBE999 LRSN(C6CD403EB3AF) TYPE(SYSTEM EVENT)
              SUBTYPE(TRACE RECORD)

*LRH* 01400034 00100041 10800000 00000000 00000000 00000726 00000000 00000000 0000C6CD *
      403EB3AF 0000 *
0000 011A0000 00000028 00F20001 00000014 00130001 000B60E2 E3D6D740 E3D6D740 C4C2F216 *          2          -STOP DB2
0020 81AB2000 00000040 00560117 005A02A1 16180930 C4E2D5C1 C6CD403E C6CD403E B392DDEE *a          !          DSNAF k
0040 00000006 00000006 00000000 E2E3D3C5 C3F14040 40404040 40404040 40404040 C4E2D5C1 *          STLEC1          DSNK
0060 40404040 E2E8C5C3 F1C4C2F2 C6CD403E B3770001 00000000 0000F3F0 0000F3F0 F9F0009C * SYEC1DB2F          3090
0080 0200E2E8 E2D6D7D9 4040F0F2 F34BC7C3 E2C3D5F6 F0F2E5C1 F1C14040 F1C14040 40404040 * SYSOPR 023.GCSCN602VA1A
00A0 40404040 4040E2E8 E2D6D7D9 40400000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 *          SYSOPR
00C0 00000000 00000000 00004040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 *
00E0 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040 *
0100 40404040 40404040 40404040 00000000 00000000 00000000 0000

```

Interpreting error codes

When an error occurs, DSN1LOGP formats a reason code from the DB2 stand-alone log service in the SYSPRINT output.

DSN1LOGP can abnormally terminate with a user abend code of X'099'. DSN1LOGP finds the corresponding abend reason code in register 15 (at the time of error). If the specified RBA or LRSN range was not found in the input data sets DSN1LOGP will terminate with return code 4.

Related reference

 [Registers and return codes \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Chapter 42. DSN1PRNT

With the DSN1PRNT stand-alone utility, you can print DB2 VSAM data sets. These data sets can contain table spaces or index spaces, image copy data sets, and sequential data sets that contain DB2 table spaces or index spaces.

A DB2 VSAM data set is a single piece of a nonpartitioned table space or index, a single partition of a partitioned table space or index, or a FlashCopy image copy data set. The input must be a single z/OS sequential or VSAM data set. Concatenation of input data sets is not supported.

Using DSN1PRNT, you can print hexadecimal dumps of DB2 data sets and databases. If you specify the FORMAT option, DSN1PRNT formats the data and indexes for any page that does not contain an error that would prevent formatting. If DSN1PRNT detects such an error, it prints an error message just before the page and dumps the page without formatting. Formatting resumes with the next page.

Compressed records (including the compressed data of dictionary pages) are printed in compressed format.

DSN1PRNT is especially useful when you want to identify the contents of a table space or index. You can run DSN1PRNT on image copy data sets and on table spaces and indexes. DSN1PRNT accepts an index image copy as input when you specify the FULLCOPY option.

You cannot run DSN1PRNT on concurrent copies.

DSN1PRNT is compatible with LOB table spaces, when you specify the LOB keyword and omit the INLCOPY keyword.

DSN1PRNT does not decrypt any encrypted data; the utility displays the data as is.

Output

One intended use of this utility is to aid in determining and correcting system problems. When diagnosing DB2, you might need to refer to licensed documentation to interpret output from this utility.

Environment

Run DSN1PRNT as a z/OS job.

You can run DSN1PRNT even when the DB2 subsystem is not operational. If you choose to use DSN1PRNT when the DB2 subsystem is operational, ensure that the DB2 data sets that are to be printed are not currently allocated to DB2.

To make sure that a data set is not currently allocated to DB2, issue the DB2 STOP DATABASE command, specifying the table spaces and indexes that you want to print.

Authorization required

No special authorization is required. However, if any of the data sets is RACF protected, the authorization ID of the job must have RACF authority.

Required data sets

DSN1PRNT uses the following DD statements:

SYSPRINT

Defines the data set that contains output messages from DSN1PRNT and all hexadecimal dump output.

SYSUT1

Defines the input data set. That data set can be a sequential data set or a VSAM data set.

Disposition for this data set must be specified as OLD (DISP=OLD) to ensure that it is not in use by DB2. Specify the disposition for this data set as SHR (DISP=SHR) only in circumstances where the DB2 STOP DATABASE command does not work.

The requested operation takes place only for the specified data set. If the input data set belongs to a linear table space or index space that is larger than 2 GB, or if it is a partitioned table space or index space, you must ensure the correct data set is specified. For example, to print a page range in the second partition of a four-partition table space, specify NUMPARTS(4) and the data set name of the data set in the group of VSAM data sets comprising the table space. The following code shows the data set name:

```
DSN=...A002
```

If you run the online REORG utility with FASTSWITCH behavior, verify the data set name before running the DSN1PRNT utility. The fifth-level qualifier in the data set name alternates between I0001 and J0001 when using FASTSWITCH. If the table space has cloning, the fifth-level qualifier can be I0002 or J0002. Specify the correct fifth-level qualifier in the data set name to successfully execute the DSN1PRNT utility. To determine the correct fifth-level qualifier, query the IPREFIX column of SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART for each data partition or the IPREFIX column of SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART for each index partition. If the object is not partitioned, use zero as the value for the PARTITION column in your query.

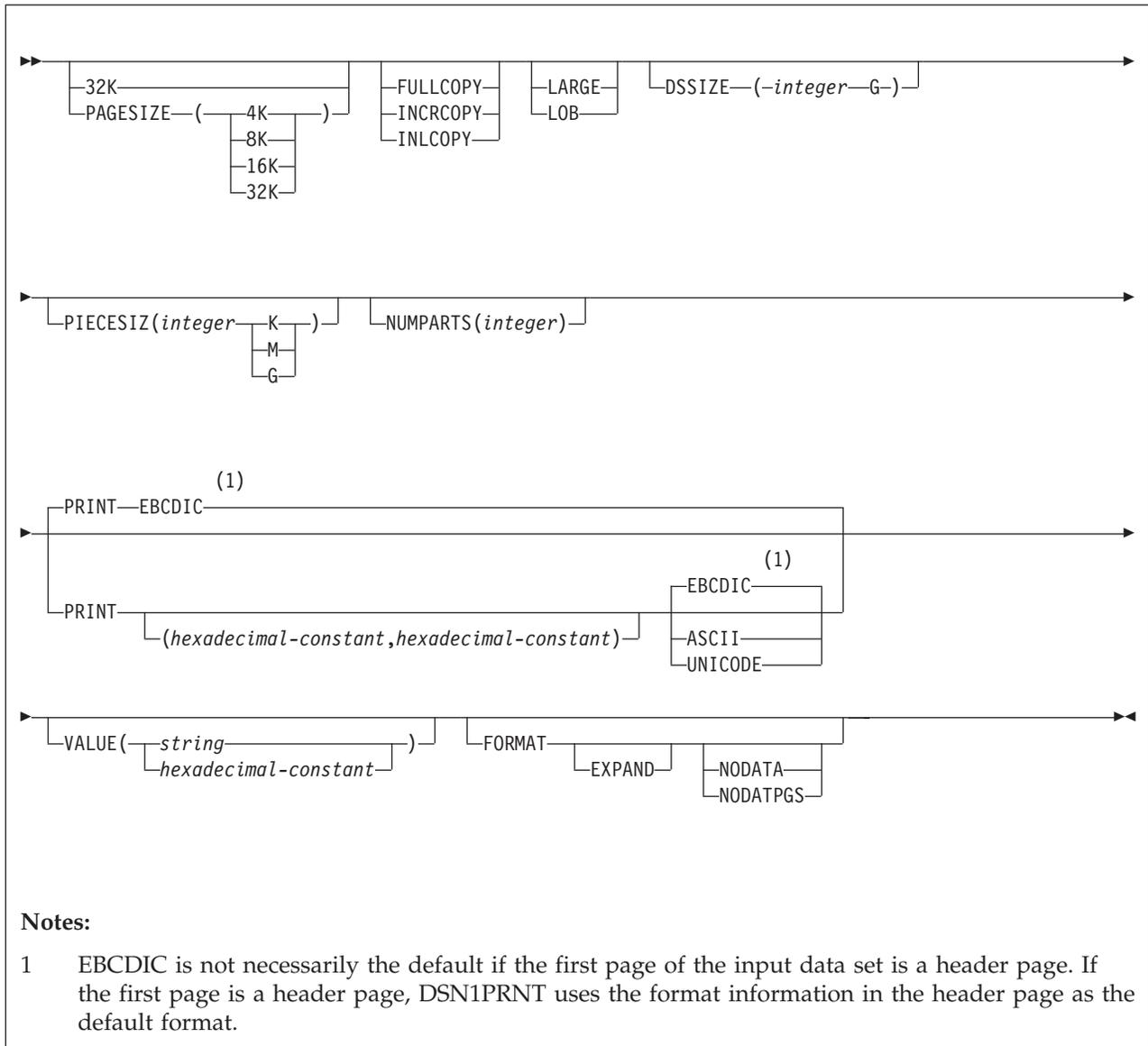
Related information

 [DB2 Diagnosis Guide and Reference](#)

Syntax and options of the DSN1PRNT control statement

The DSN1PRNT utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

DSN1PRNT syntax diagram



Option descriptions

If you have the need to run DSN1PRNT with invocation parameters specify one or more of the following options on the EXEC statement.

Important: If you specify more than one parameter:

- Separate them by commas (no blanks).
- Specify them in any order.

Default settings for DSN1PRNT options are taken from the input data set header page. This default processing is recommended when running DSN1PRNT because incorrect parameter settings can result in unpredictable results.

When non-default user values are specified, DSN1PRNT compares the input data set header page settings against the user-specified values whenever possible. If a mismatch is detected, message DSN1930I is issued. The processing is performed with the user-specified values

32K

Specifies that the SYSUT1 data set has a 32-KB page size. If you specify this option and the SYSUT1 data set does not have a 32-KB page size, DSN1COPY might produce unpredictable results.

PAGESIZE

Specifies the page size of the input data set that is defined by SYSUT1. Available page size values are 4K, 8K, 16K, or 32K. If you specify an incorrect page size, DSN1PRNT might produce unpredictable results.

If you do not specify the page size, DSN1PRNT tries to determine the page size from the input data set if the first page of the input data set is a header page. DB2 issues an error message if DSN1PRNT cannot determine the input page size. This might happen if the header page is not in the input data set, or if the page size field in the header page contains an invalid page size.

FULLCOPY

Specifies that a DB2 full image copy (not a DFSMSdss concurrent copy) of your data is to be used as input. If this data is partitioned, you also need to specify the NUMPARTS parameter to identify the number and length of the partitions. If you specify FULLCOPY without including a NUMPARTS specification, DSN1PRNT assumes that the input file is not partitioned.

The FULLCOPY parameter must be specified when you use an image copy as input to DSN1PRNT. Omitting the parameter can cause error messages or unpredictable results.

Do not specify FULLCOPY if the input image copy is a FlashCopy image copy data set.

INRCOPY

Specifies that an incremental image copy of the data is to be used as input. If the data is partitioned, also specify NUMPARTS to identify the number and length of the partitions. If you specify INRCOPY without NUMPARTS, DSN1PRNT assumes that the input file is not partitioned.

The INRCOPY parameter must be specified when you use an incremental image copy as input to DSN1PRNT. Omitting the parameter can cause error messages or unpredictable results.

INLCOPY

Specifies that the input data is to be an inline copy data set.

When DSN1PRNT is used to print a page or a page range from an inline copy that is produced by LOAD or REORG, DSN1PRNT prints all instances of the pages. The last instance of the printed page or pages is the last one that is created by the utility.

The INLCOPY parameter must be specified when an inline image copy is used as input to DSN1PRNT. Omitting the INLCOPY parameter can cause error messages or unpredictable results.

LARGE

Specifies that the input data set is a table space that was defined with the LARGE option, or an index on such a table space. If you specify LARGE, DB2

assumes that the data set has a 4-GB boundary. The recommended method of specifying a table space that was defined with the LARGE option is **DSSIZE(4G)**.

If you omit the LARGE or DSSIZE(4G) option when it is needed, or if you specify LARGE for a table space that was not defined with the LARGE option, the results from DSN1PRNT are unpredictable.

If you specify LARGE, you cannot specify LOB or DSSIZE.

LOB

Specifies that the SYSUT1 data set is a LOB table space. You cannot specify the INLCOPY option with the LOB parameter.

DB2 attempts to determine if the input data set is a LOB data set. If you specify the LOB option but the data set is not a LOB data set, or if you omit the LOB option but the data set is a LOB data set, DB2 issues an error message and DSN1PRNT terminates.

If you specify LOB, you cannot specify LARGE.

DSSIZE(*integer* G)

Specifies the data set size, in gigabytes, for the input data set. If you omit DSSIZE, DB2 assumes that the input data set size is 2 GB.

integer must match the DSSIZE value that was specified when the table space was defined.

If you omit DSSIZE and the data set is not the assumed default size, the results from DSN1PRNT are unpredictable.

For input data sets that were created in DB2 Version 9 or later, the default is obtained from the data set header page. For input data sets that were created before DB2 Version 9 are listed in the following table.

Table 134. Default input data set sizes

Object	Default input data set size (in GB)
Linear/Segmented Tablespace	2 GB
LOB Space	4 GB
Partitioned Tablespace created prior to V9	No default DSSIZE

PIECESIZ(*integer*)

Specifies the maximum piece size (data set size) for nonpartitioned indexes. The value that you specify must match the value that is specified when the secondary index was created or altered.

The defaults for PIECESIZ are 2G (2 GB) for indexes that are backed by non-large table spaces and 4G (4 GB) for indexes that are backed by table spaces that were defined with the LARGE option. This option is required if a print range is specified and the piece size is not one of the default values. If PIECESIZ is omitted and the index is backed by a table space that was defined with the LARGE option, the LARGE keyword is required for DSN1PRNT.

The subsequent keyword K, M, or G, indicates the units of the value that is specified in *integer*.

K Indicates that the *integer* value is to be multiplied by 1 KB to specify the maximum piece size in bytes. *integer* must be either 256 or 512.

- M** Indicates that the *integer* value is to be multiplied by 1 MB to specify the maximum piece size in bytes. *integer* must be a power of 2, between 1 and 512.
- G** Indicates that the *integer* value is to be multiplied by 1 GB to specify the maximum piece size in bytes. *integer* must be 1, 2, or 4.

Valid values for piece size are:

- 1 MB or 1 GB
- 2 MB or 2 GB
- 4 MB or 4 GB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB
- 32 MB
- 64 MB
- 128 MB
- 256 KB or 256 MB
- 512 KB or 512 MB

NUMPARTS(*integer*)

This parameter is not used if the target table space is a universal table space. DSSIZE is used instead.

PRINT(*hexadecimal-constant,hexadecimal-constant*)

Causes the SYSUT1 data set to be printed in hexadecimal format on the SYSPRINT data set. This option is the default for DSN1PRNT.

You can specify the PRINT parameter with or without page range specifications. If you do not specify a range, all pages of the SYSUT1 are printed. If you want to limit the range of pages that are printed, you can do so by indicating the beginning and ending page numbers with the PRINT parameter or, if you want to print a single page, by indicating only the beginning page. In either case, your range specifications must be from one to eight hexadecimal characters in length.

The following example shows how to code the PRINT parameter if you want to begin printing at page X'2F0' and to stop at page X'35C':

```
PRINT(2F0,35C)
```

Note that the actual size of a 4-GB DB2 data set that is full is 4G - 256 x 4KB. This size also applies to data sets that are created with a DFSMS data class that has extended addressability. When calculating the print range of pages in a non-first data set of a multiple data set linear table space or index with 4G DSSIZE or PIECESIZ, use the actual data set size.

The relationship between the page size and the number of pages in a 4-GB data set is shown in the following table.

Table 135. Relationship between page size and the number of pages in a 4-GB data set

Page size	Number of pages
4 KB	X'FFF00'
8 KB	X'7FF80'
16 KB	X'3FFC0'
32 KB	X'1FFE0'

For example, if PAGESIZE is 4 KB, the page number of the first page of the third data set is 2*FFF00 = 1FFE00.

To print only the header page for a nonpartitioned table space, specify PRINT(0).

You can indicate the format of the row data in the PRINT output by specifying EBCDIC, ASCII, or UNICODE. The part of the output that is affected by these options is in bold in the following figure.

```
RECORD: XOFFSET='0014'X PGSFLAGS='00'X PGSLTH=65 PGSLTH='0041'X PGSOBD='0003'X PGSBID='01'X
C5C5F0F6 C1404040 40404040 F1F34040 40C1E2D6 F1F3F5E7 40404040 40404040 EE06A 13 AS0135X
C1C6F3F1 C587C6F0 01800000 14199002 01174522 00000080 00000000 AF31E.F0.....

RECORD: XOFFSET='0055'X PGSFLAGS='00'X PGSLTH=65 PGSLTH='0041'X PGSOBD='0003'X PGSBID='02'X
C5C5F0F6 C1404040 40404040 F1F34040 40C1E2D6 F1F3F5E7 40404040 40404040 EE06A 13 AS0135X
C1C6F5F2 D487C5F0 09800000 78199002 01174522 00000080 00000000 AF52M.E0.....
```

Figure 141. The part of the DSN1PRNT FORMAT output that is affected by the EBCDIC, ASCII, and UNICODE options

EBCDIC

Indicates that the row data in the PRINT output is to be displayed in EBCDIC.

The default value is EBCDIC if the first page of the input data set is not a header page.

If the first page is a header page, DSN1PRNT uses the format information in the header page as the default format. However, if you specify EBCDIC, ASCII, or UNICODE, that format overrides the format information in the header page. The unformatted header page dump is always displayed in EBCDIC, because most of the fields are in EBCDIC.

ASCII

Indicates that the row data in the PRINT output is to be displayed in ASCII. Specify ASCII when printing table spaces that contain ASCII data.

UNICODE

Indicates that the row data in the PRINT output is to be displayed in Unicode. Specify UNICODE when printing table spaces that contain Unicode data.

VALUE

Causes each page of the input data set SYSUT1 to be scanned for the character string that you specify in parentheses following the VALUE parameter. Each page that contains that character string is then printed in SYSPRINT. You can specify the VALUE parameter in conjunction with any of the other DSN1PRNT parameters.

(string)

Can consist of from 1 to 20 alphanumeric EBCDIC characters. For non-EBCDIC characters, use hexadecimal characters.

(hexadecimal-constant)

Consists of from 2 to 40 hexadecimal characters. You must specify two apostrophe characters before and after the hexadecimal character string.

If, for example, you want to search your input file for the string '12345', your JCL should look like the following JCL:

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,PARM='VALUE(12345)'
```

Alternatively, you might want to search for the equivalent hexadecimal character string. If you are processing Unicode or ASCII input files, you must specify the string in hexadecimal. Your JCL should look like the following JCL:

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,PARM='VALUE(''3132333435'')
```

FORMAT

Causes the printed output to be formatted. Page control fields are identified, and individual records are printed. Empty fields are not displayed.

EXPAND

Specifies that the data is compressed and causes DSN1PRNT to expand it before formatting. This option is intended to be used only under the direction of IBM Software Support.

When DSN1PRNT is run with the FORMAT EXPAND option, and the input data sets constitute a full image copy, the input data sets need to contain all pages of the original table space, including all dictionary pages.

FORMAT EXPAND cannot be specified if the INRCOPY or INLCOPY options are specified.

NODATA

Suppresses printing of table row data. The row headers are formatted and printed. Specify NODATA to reduce the volume of the output when the contents of the rows are not important.

NODATPGS

Suppresses all data pages of a table space. Specify NODATPGS to format and print only non-data pages to reduce the volume of the output when only certain page types are of interest (for example, LOB space map pages). Alternatively, you can specify NODHDR.

DSN1PRNT cannot format a leaf or nonleaf page for an index page set that contains keys with altered columns. When it encounters this situation, DSN1PRNT generates the following message:

```
*KEY WITH ALTERED COLUMN HAS BEEN DETECTED-UNABLE TO FORMAT PAGE*
```

DSN1PRNT generates unformatted output for the page.

FORMAT attempts to format a broken page and dumps the unformatted version of the page following the formatted version.

Related concepts

“Using VERIFY with REPLACE and DELETE operations” on page 611

Printing with DSN1PRNT instead of DSN1COPY

If you want to print information about a data set, use the DSN1PRNT utility rather than the DSN1COPY utility. DSN1COPY scans the entire SYSUT1 data set, but DSN1PRNT might be able to stop scanning before the end of the data set. Also, the DSN1PRNT utility can write a formatted dump.

Determining page size and DSSIZE

You can determine page size and DSSIZE by running a query against the DB2 catalog.

Before using DSN1PRNT, determine the page size and data set size (DSSIZE) for the page set. Use the query in the following figure on the DB2 catalog to get the information that you need, in this example for table 'DEPT':

```
SELECT T.CREATOR,T.NAME,S.NAME AS TABLESPACE,S.PARTITIONS,S.PGSIZE,  
CASE S.DSSIZE  
WHEN 0 THEN
```

```

CASE WHEN S.TYPE = 'G' THEN 4194304
      WHEN S.TYPE = 'L' THEN 4194304
      WHEN S.TYPE = 'O' THEN 4194304
      WHEN S.TYPE = 'P' THEN 4194304
      WHEN S.TYPE = 'R' THEN 4194304
ELSE
  CASE WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 254 THEN
    CASE WHEN S.PGSIZE = 4 THEN 4194304
          WHEN S.PGSIZE = 8 THEN 8388608
          WHEN S.PGSIZE = 16 THEN 16777216
          WHEN S.PGSIZE = 32 THEN 33554432
        ELSE NULL
      END
    WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 64 THEN 4194304
    WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 32 THEN 1048576
    WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 16 THEN 2097152
    WHEN S.PARTITIONS > 0 THEN 4194304
  ELSE 2097152
END
END
ELSE S.DSSIZE
END
AS DSSIZE
FROM SYSIBM.SYSTABLES T,
     SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE S
WHERE
  T.NAME = 'DEPT' AND
  T.TSNAME = S.NAME;

```

Figure 142. Example SQL query that returns the page size and data set size for the page set.

Related reference

“Data sets that REORG INDEX uses” on page 476

Sample DSN1PRNT control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSN1PRNT control statements.

Example 1: Printing a data set and formatting the output

The following example specifies that the DSN1PRNT utility is to print the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement and the output is to be formatted. This data set is to be printed on the data set that is identified by the SYSPRINT DD statement. The fifth-level qualifier in the data set name can be either I0001 or J0001. This example uses I0001.

```

//jobname JOB acct info
//RUNPRNT EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,PARM='PRINT,FORMAT'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBC.DSNDB01.SYSUTILX.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR

```

Example 2: Printing a nonpartitioning index with a 64-MB piece size

The following example specifies that DSN1PRNT is to print the first 16 pages of the 61st piece of a nonpartitioned index with a piece size of 64 MB. The pages that are to be printed are identified by the PRINT option. These page values are

determined as follows: A data set of size 64 MB contains X'4000' 4-KB pages. Decimal 61 is X'3D'. The page number of the first page of the 61st piece is $4000*(3D-1) = 4000*3C = F0000$. To print the last 16 pages of the 61st piece, specify `PARM=(PRINT(F3FF0,F3FFF), ...)`.

The fifth-level qualifier in the data set name can be either I0001 or J0001. This example uses I0001.

```
//PRINT2 EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,
//          PARM=(PRINT(F0000,F000F),FORMAT,PIECESIZ(64M))
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1   DD DISP=OLD,DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBD.MMRDB.NP11.I0001.A061
```

Example 3: Printing a single page of an image copy

The following example specifies that DSN1PRNT is to print one page of an image copy. The image copy is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement. The PRINT option specifies that the only page to be printed is X'1'.

```
//STEP2   EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,
//          PARM='PRINT(1),FORMAT,INLCOPY'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=DB2A.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1  DD DSN=HUHYU205.L1.STEP1.DD2,DISP=SHR
```

Example 4: Printing a partitioned data set

The following example specifies that DSN1PRNT is to print the data set that is identified by the SYSUT1 DD statement. Because this data set is a table space that was defined with the LARGE option, the DSSIZE(4G) option is specified in the parameter list for DSN1PRNT. You could specify the LARGE option in this list instead, but specifying DSSIZE(4G) is recommended. This input table space has 260 partitions, as indicated by the NUMPARTS option.

```
//RUNPRNT1 EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,
//          PARM='DSSIZE(4G),PRINT,NUMPARTS(260),FORMAT'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=DB2A.SDSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1  DD DSN=DSNCAT.DSNDBC.DBOM0301.TPOM0301.I0001.A259,DISP=SHR
/*
```

Example 5: Printing a page range of a specific partition

It is difficult to determine page numbers for a specific partition of a partitioned table space.

This example describes a simple way of using DSN1PRNT without needing to calculate page numbers.

1. Run DSN1PRNT on the partition you want to process without specifying a PRINT range. Set the FORMAT option to NODATPGS. Data pages are not printed reducing the use of spool space.

```
// EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,
// PARM='FORMAT,NODATPGS,NUMPARTS(8)'
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNT6USR.DSNDBC.V9DS306.XV9D0000.I0001.A008,DISP=SHR
```

The printout includes page numbers. Use these page numbers to setup another DSN1PRNT job using the appropriate page numbers.

2. Run DSN1PRNT on partition 8 specifying your PRINT range

```
// EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,
// PARM='PRINT(XX000000,XX000020),FORMAT,NUMPARTS(8)'
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=DSNT6USR.DSNDBC.V9DS306.XV9D0000.I0001.A008,DISP=SHR
```

The page range must be specified in hexadecimal format.

Example 6: Specifying Unicode output for DSN1PRNT

When you specify the UNICODE option for DSN1PRNT, you are not going to see non-Latin Unicode characters, such as Japanese characters, in your output. When you specify the UNICODE option, DSN1PRNT takes the hexadecimal data and formats it as ASCII instead of the default EBCDIC.

A problem might arise when the data that you want DSN1PRNT to handle is in UTF-16. In the case of UTF-16 data, DSN1PRNT takes only the second byte of the data and formats that part of the data as ASCII. Thus, the output might not be correct. For example, the UTF-16 hexadecimal values X'0030' and X'1130' are both output as 0, because the first byte of each ("00" and "11" respectively) is ignored. The remaining part ("30") is interpreted as an ASCII 0. In UTF-16, X'0030' is the hexadecimal value for 0, but X'1130' is the hexadecimal value for a Hangul character. For more information about UTF-16 format, see UTFs (DB2 Internationalization Guide).

In the following DSN1PRNT example, notice the three bold hexadecimal values: X'0041', X'0141', and X'0241'. The output for all three of these values is A.A.A, even though they each correspond to different characters in UTF-16. (X'0041' is A, X'0141' is △, and X'0241' is the Latin capital character for glottal stop.)

```
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=DSN1PRNT,
// PARM='FORMAT,PRINT(002),UNICODE'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=DB2A.DSNLOAD,DISP=SHR
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT1 DD DSN=TESTCAT.DSNDBC.DBED2101.TPED2101.I0001.A001,DISP=SHR
/*

DSN1999I START OF DSN1PRNT FOR JOB DSN1PRNT RUNPRNT9
DSN1989I DSN1PRNT IS PROCESSED WITH THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS:
4K/NO IMAGECOPY/NUMPARTS = 0/ FORMAT/NO EXPAND/ PRINT/NO VALUE/ / /
DSSIZE= /PIECESIZ= /UNICODE/
DSN1998I INPUT DSNNAME = TESTCAT.DSNDBC.DBED2101.TPED2101.I0001.A001 , VSAM

PAGE: # 00000002 -----
DATA PAGE: PGCOMB='10'X PGLGRBA='0000758C9455'X PGNUM='00000002'X PGFLAGS='00'X PGFREE=4041
PGFREE='0FC9'X PGFREEP=51 PGFREEP='0033'X PGHOLE1='0000'X PGMAXID='01'X PGNANCH=1
PGTAIL: PGIDFREE='00'X PGEND='N'

ID-MAP FOLLOWS:
01 0014
RECORD: XOFFSET='0014'X PGSFLAGS='02'X PGSLTH=31 PGSLTH='001F'X PGSOBD='0003'X PGSBID='01'X
80000001 00004101 41024100 20002000 20002000 20002000 20
.....A.A.A. . . . . .

DSN1994I DSN1PRNT COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY, 00000001 PAGES PROCESSED
```

Chapter 43. DSN1SDMP

IBM Software Support might advise you to use the IFS selective dump (DSN1SDMP) stand-alone utility. DSN1SDMP enables you to force dumps when selected DB2 trace events occur, write DB2 trace records to user-defined z/OS data sets, or start another DB2 trace.

To ensure that you do not take action on an IFCID 4 or IFCID 5 start or stop trace record, it is good practice to add

```
P4,00  
DR,04,X'hhhh'
```

to your control statement, where hhhh is the hex representation of the IFCID that you are trying to trigger on.

Output

One intended use of this utility is to aid in determining and correcting system problems. When diagnosing DB2, you might need to refer to licensed documentation to interpret output from this utility.

Environment

Run DSN1SDMP as a z/OS job, and execute it with the DSN TSO command processor. To execute DSN1SDMP, the DB2 subsystem must be running.

The z/OS job completes only under one of the following conditions:

- The TRACE and any additional selection criteria that are started by DSN1SDMP meet the criteria specified in the FOR parameter.
- The TRACE that is started by DSN1SDMP is stopped by using the STOP TRACE command.
- The job is canceled by the operator.

If you must stop DSN1SDMP, use the STOP TRACE command.

Authorization required

To execute this utility, the privilege set of the process must include one of the following privileges or authorities:

- TRACE system privilege
- SYSOPR authority
- SYSADM authority
- MONITOR1 or MONITOR2 privileges (if you are using user-defined data sets)
- SQLADM authority

The user who executes DSN1SDMP must have EXECUTE authority on the plan that is specified in the *trace-parameters* of the START TRACE keyword.

Required data sets

DSN1SDMP uses the following DD statements:

SDMPIN

Defines the control data set that specifies the input parameters to DSN1SDMP. This DD statement is required. The LRECL is 80. Only the first 72 columns are checked by DSN1SDMP.

SDMPPRNT

Defines the sequential message data set that is used for DSN1SDMP messages. If the SDMPPRNT DD statement is omitted, no messages are written. The LRECL is 131.

SYSABEND

Defines the data set that is to contain an ABEND dump in case DSN1SDMP abends. This DD statement is optional.

SDMPTRAC

Defines the sequential DB2 trace record data set that DB2 returns to DSN1SDMP. The DD statement is required only if trace data is written to an OPX trace destination. If the destination is anything other than an OPX buffer, SDMPTRAC is ignored.

Trace records that DB2 writes to SDMPTRAC are of the same format as SMF or GTF records except that the SDMPTRAC trace record headers contain the monitor header (that is mapped by DSNDQWIW). The DCB parameters are VB, BLKSIZE=32760, LRECL=32756.

SYSTSIN

Defines the DSN commands to connect to DB2 and to execute an IFC selective dump:

```
DSN SYSTEM(subsystem name)
RUN PROG(DSN1SDMP) LIB('prefix.SDSNLOAD') PLAN(DSNEDCL)
```

The DB2 subsystem name must be filled in by the user. The DSN RUN command must specify a plan for which the user has execute authority. DSN1SDMP dump does not execute the specified plan; the plan is used only to connect to DB2.

When no plan name is specified on the DSN RUN command, the default plan name is the program name. When DSN1SDMP is executed without a plan, DSN generates an error if no DSN1SDMP plan exists for which the user has execute authority.

Related reference

 [Trace data record format \(Managing Performance\)](#)

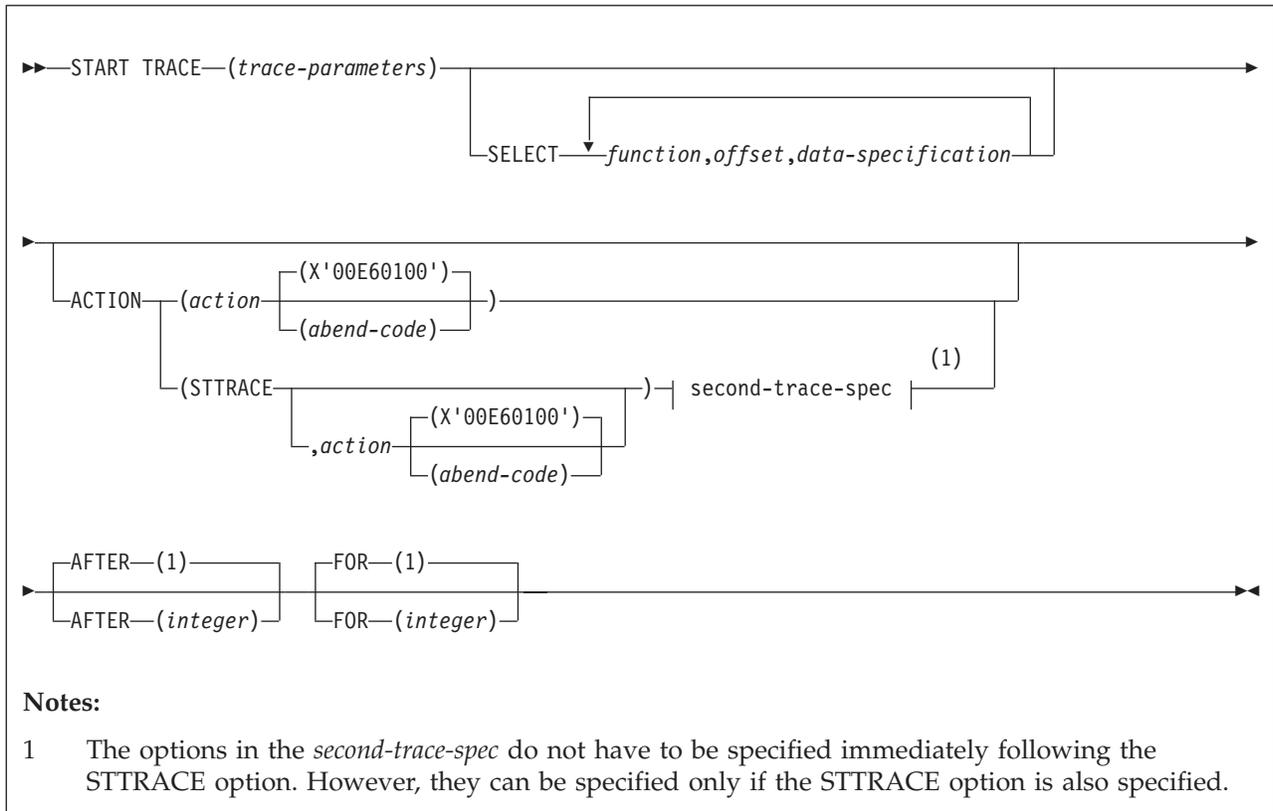
Related information

 [DB2 Diagnosis Guide and Reference](#)

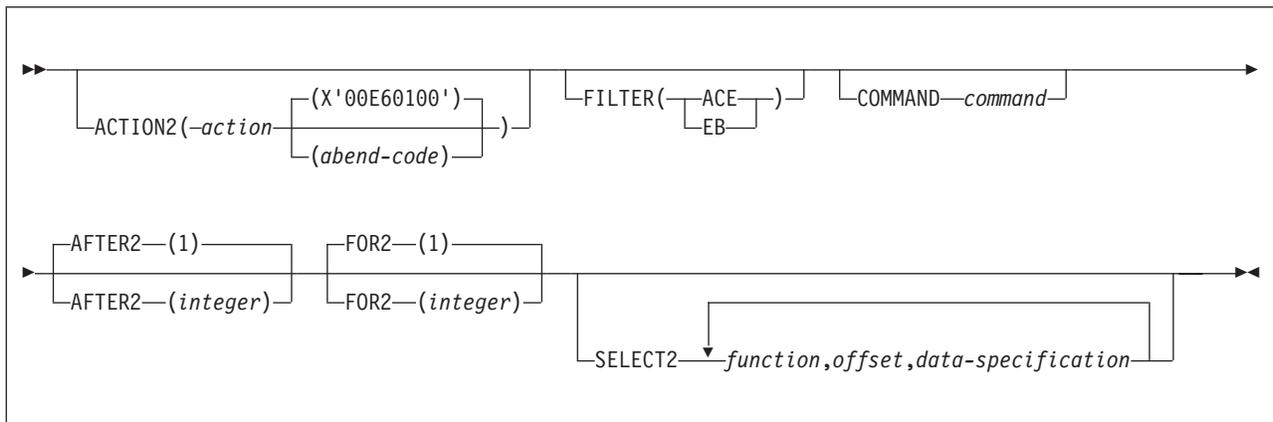
Syntax and options of the DSN1SDMP control statement

The DSN1SDMP utility control statement, with its multiple options, defines the function that the utility job performs.

DSN1SDMP syntax diagram



second-trace-spec:



Option descriptions

START TRACE (*trace-parameters*)

Indicates the start of a DSN1SDMP job. `START TRACE` is a required keyword and must be the first keyword that is specified in the SDMPIN input stream.

If the `START TRACE` command in the SDMPIN input stream is not valid, or if the user is not properly authorized, the IFI (instrumentation facility interface) returns an error code and `START TRACE` does not take effect. DSN1SDMP writes the error message to the SDMPPRNT data set.

Trace Destination: If DB2 trace data is to be written to the SDMPTRAC data set, the trace destination must be an IFI online performance (OP) buffer. OP buffer destinations are specified in the DEST keyword of START TRACE. Eight OP buffer destinations exist, OP1 to OP8. The OPX trace destination assigns the next available OP buffer. Any record destined for the exclusive internal trace table (RES) is not eligible to be evaluated. For example, if you start IFCID(0) DEST(RES), this will not execute DSN1SDMP logic and cannot be acted upon.

The DB2 output text from the START TRACE command is written to SDMPPRNT.

START TRACE and its associated keywords must be specified first. Specify the remaining selective dump keywords in any order following the START TRACE command.

SELECT *function,offset,data-specification*

Specifies selection criteria in addition to those that are specified on the START TRACE command. SELECT expands the data that is available for selection in a trace record and allows more specific selection of data in the trace record than using START TRACE alone. You can specify a maximum of eight SELECT criteria.

The selection criteria use the concept of the current-record pointer. DB2 initializes the current-record pointer to zero, that is, at the beginning of the trace record. For this instance of the DSN1SDMP trace, the trace record begins with the self-defining section. The current-record pointer can be modified by Px and LN functions, which are described in the list of functions below.

You can specify the selection criteria with the following parameters:

function

Specifies the type of search that is to be performed on the trace record. The specified value must be two characters. The possible values are:

DR

Specifies a direct comparison of data from the specified offset. The offset is always calculated from the current-record pointer.

GE

Specifies a comparison of data that is greater than or equal to the value of the specified offset. The offset is always calculated from the current-record pointer. The test succeeds if the data from the specified offset is greater than or equal to *data-specification*, which you can specify on the SELECT option.

LE Specifies a comparison of data that is less than or equal to the value of the specified offset. The offset is always calculated from the current-record pointer. The test succeeds if the data from the specified offset is less than or equal to *data-specification*, which you specify on the SELECT option.

P1, P2, or P4

Selects the 1-, 2-, or 4-byte field that is located *offset* bytes past the start of the record. The function then moves the current-record pointer that number of bytes into the record. P1, P2, and P4 always start from the beginning of the record (plus the offset that you specify).

This offset is saved as the current-record pointer that is to be used on subsequent DR, LE, GR, and LN requests.

For example, suppose that the user knows that the offset to the standard header is 4 bytes long and is located in the first 4 bytes of the record. P4,00 reads that offset and moves the current-record pointer to the start of the standard header.

LN

Advances the current-record pointer by the number of bytes that are indicated in the 2-byte field that is located *offset* bytes from the previous current-record pointer.

This offset is saved as the current-record pointer that is to be used on subsequent DR, LE, GR, and LN requests.

offset

Specifies the number (in decimal) of bytes into the trace record where the comparison with the *data-specification* field begins. The offset starts from the beginning of the trace record after a P1, P2, or P4, and from the current-record pointer after a GE, LE, LN, or DR.

The format of the DB2 trace record at *data-specification* comparison time is shown in the following figure.



Figure 143. Format of the DB2 trace record at data specification comparison time

- The format of the self-defining section depends on the trace type.
- The format and content of the data sections depend on the IFCID that is being recorded. Each record can have one or more data sections. Each data section can have multiple repeating groups.
- The format and content of the trace header section depends on the trace type.

data-specification

Specifies that the data can be hexadecimal (for example, X'9FECBA10') or character (C'FIELD').

ACTION

Specifies the action to perform when a trace record passes the selection criteria of the START TRACE and SELECT keywords.

Attention: The purpose of the ACTION keyword is to facilitate problem analysis. You should use it with extreme caution because you might damage existing data. Not all abends are recoverable, even if the ABENDRET parameter is specified. Some abends might force the DB2 subsystem to terminate, particularly those abends that occur during end-of-task or end-of-memory processing due to the agent having experienced a previous abend.

action(abend-code)

Specifies a particular action to perform. Possible values for *action* are:

ABENDRET

ABEND and retry the agent.

ABENDTER

ABEND and terminate the agent.

An abend reason code can also be specified on this parameter. The codes must be in the range X'00E60100' to X'00E60199'. The default value is X'00E60100'.

STTRACE

Specifies that a second trace is to be started when a trace record passes the selection criteria.

If you do not specify *action* or *STTRACE*, the record is written and no action is performed.

AFTER(integer)

Specifies that the ACTION is to be performed after the trace point is reached *integer* times.

integer must be between 1 and 32767.

The default value is **AFTER(1)**.

FOR(integer)

Specifies the number of times that the ACTION is to take place when the specified trace point is reached. After *integer* times, the trace is stopped, and DSN1SDMP terminates.

integer must be between 1 and 32767 and includes the first action. If no SELECT criteria are specified, use an integer greater than 1; the START TRACE command automatically causes the action to take place one time.

The default value is **FOR(1)**.

ACTION2

Specifies the action to perform when a trace record passes the selection criteria of the START TRACE, SELECT, and SELECT2 keywords.

Attention: The ACTION2 keyword, like the ACTION keyword, should be used with extreme caution, because you might damage existing data. Not all abends are recoverable, even if the ABENDRET parameter is specified. Some abends might force the DB2 subsystem to terminate, particularly those that occur during end-of-task or end-of-memory processing due to the agent having experienced a previous abend.

action(abend-code)

Specifies a particular action to perform. Possible values for *action* are:

ABENDRET

ABEND and retry the agent.

ABENDTER

ABEND and terminate the agent.

An abend reason code can also be specified on this parameter. The codes must be in the range X'00E60100-00E60199'. If no abend code is specified, X'00E60100' is used.

If you do not specify *action*, the record is written and no action is performed.

FILTER

Specifies that DSN1SDMP is to filter the output of the second trace based on either an ACE or an EB.

(ACE)

Specifies that DSN1SDMP is to include trace records only for the agent

control element (ACE) that is associated with the agent when the first action is triggered and the second trace is started.

(EB)

Specifies that DSN1SDMP is to include trace records only for the execution block (EB) that is associated with the agent when the first action is triggered and the second trace is started.

COMMAND

Indicates that the specified command is to be issued when a trace record passes the selection criteria for the first trace and a second trace is started. You can start a second trace by specifying the STTRACE option.

command

Specifies a specific command to be issued.

FOR2(*integer*)

Specifies the number of times that the ACTION2 is to take place when the specified second trace point is reached. After *integer* times, the second trace is stopped, and DSN1SDMP terminates.

integer must be between 1 and 32767 and includes the first action. If no SELECT2 criteria are specified, use an integer greater than 1; the STTRACE option automatically causes the action to take place one time.

The default value is **FOR2(1)**.

AFTER2(*integer*)

Specifies that the ACTION2 is to be performed after the second trace point is reached *integer* times.

integer must be between 1 and 32767.

The default value is **AFTER2(1)**.

SELECT2 *function,offset,data-specification*

Specifies selection criteria for the second trace. This option functions like the SELECT option, except that it pertains to the second trace only. You can start a second trace by specifying the STTRACE option.

Related reference

 -START TRACE (DB2) (DB2 Commands)

 Trace field descriptions (Managing Performance)

Assigning buffers

You must specify the OPX destination for all traces that are being recorded to an OP*n* buffer for the DSN1SDMP utility to use. By specifying the OPX destination, you avoid the possibility of starting a trace to a buffer that is already assigned.

If a trace is started to an OP*n* buffer that has already been assigned, DSN1SDMP waits indefinitely until the trace is manually stopped. The default for MONITOR-type traces is the OPX destination (the next available OP buffer). Other trace types must be explicitly directed to OP destinations via the DEST keyword of the START TRACE command. DSN1SDMP interrogates the IFCAOPN field after the START TRACE COMMAND call to determine if the trace was started to an OP buffer.

Trace Destination: If DB2 trace data is to be written to the SDMPTRAC data set, the trace destination must be an IFI online performance (OP) buffer. OP buffer

destinations are specified in the DEST keyword of START TRACE. Eight OP buffer destinations exist, OP1 to OP8. The OPX trace destination assigns the next available OP buffer. Any record destined for the exclusive internal trace table (RES) is not eligible to be evaluated. For example, if you start IFCID(0) DEST(RES), this will not execute DSN1SDMP logic and cannot be acted upon.

Trace records are written to the SDMPTRAC data set when the trace destination is an OP buffer. The instrumentation facilities component (IFC) writes trace records to the buffer and posts DSN1SDMP to read the buffer when it fills to half of the buffer size.

You can specify the buffer size on the BUFSIZE keyword of the START TRACE command. All returned records are written to SDMPTRAC.

If the number of generated trace records requires a larger buffer size than was specified, you can lose some trace records. If this happens, error message DSN2724I is issued.

Conditions for generating a dump

DSN1SDMP generates a DB2 dump when certain events occur.

DSN1SDMP generates a DB2 dump when all of the following events occur:

- DB2 produces a trace record that satisfies all of the selection criteria.
- You specify an abend action (ABENDRET or ABENDTER).
- The AFTER and FOR conditions for the trace are satisfied.

If all three events occur, an 00E601xx abend occurs. xx is an integer between 1 and 99 that DB2 obtains from the user-specified value on the ACTION keyword.

Stopping or modifying DSN1SDMP traces

You can stop and modify DSN1SDMP traces.

If you must stop DSN1SDMP, use the STOP TRACE command.

If DSN1SDMP does not finish execution, you can stop the utility by issuing the STOP TRACE command, as in the following example:

```
-STOP TRACE=P CLASS(32)
```

DSN1SDMP executes as a stand-alone batch utility without requiring external intervention from the console operator or other programs. During execution, DSN1SDMP issues an IFI READA request to obtain the data from the OP n buffer and a STOP TRACE command to terminate the original trace that is started by DSN1SDMP.

A STOP TRACE or MODIFY TRACE command that is entered from a console for the trace that is started by DSN1SDMP causes immediate abnormal termination of DSN1SDMP processing. The IFI READA function terminates with an appropriate IFI termination message and reason code. Additional error messages and reason codes that are associated with the DSN1SDMP STOP TRACE command vary depending on the specific trace command that is entered by the console operator.

If the console operator terminates the original trace by using the STOP TRACE command, the subsequent STOP TRACE command that is issued by DSN1SDMP fails.

If the console operator enters a MODIFY TRACE command and processing of this command completes before the STOP TRACE command is issued by DSN1SDMP, the modified trace is also terminated.

Sample DSN1SDMP control statements

Use the sample control statements as models for developing your own DSN1SDMP control statements.

Example 1: Creating the JCL for DSN1SDMP

This example shows the skeleton JCL for a DSN1SDMP job.

```
//DSN1J018 JOB 'IFC SD',CLASS=A,
//          MSGLEVEL=(1,1),USER=SYSADM,PASSWORD=SYSADM,REGION=1024K
//*****
//*
//*      THIS IS A SKELETON OF THE JCL USED TO RUN DSN1SDMP.
//*      YOU MUST INSERT SDMPIN DD.
//*
//*****
//IFCSD   EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMBR=20,COND=(4,LT)
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=prefix.SDSNLOAD
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SDMPPRNT DD SYSOUT=*
//SDMPTRAC DD DISP=(NEW,CATLG,CATLG),DSN=IFCSD.TRACE,
//          UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(8192,(100,100)),DCB=(DSORG=PS,
//          LRECL=32756,RECFM=VB,BLKSIZE=32760)
//SDMPIN  DD *
//*****
//*
//*      INSERT SDMPIN DD HERE.  IT MUST BEGIN WITH A VALID
//*      START TRACE COMMAND (WITHOUT THE SUBSYSTEM RECOGNITION CHAR)
//*
//*****

          (VALID SDMPIN GOES HERE)

/*
//*****
//SYSDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
          DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
          RUN PROG(DSN1SDMP) PLAN(DSNEDCL)
          END
//*
```

Figure 144. Skeleton JCL for DSN1SDMP

Example 2: Abending and retrying agent on -904 SQL CODE

This example specifies that DB2 is to start a performance trace (which is indicated by the letter A) and activate IFCID 53, 58. To start only those IFCIDs that are specified in the IFCID option, use trace classes 30-32. In this example, trace class 32 is specified. The IFCID 53 and 58 are started and inspected to see if they match the SELECT criteria.

The SELECT option indicates additional criteria for data in the trace record. In this example, the P4,00 positions the current record pointer to the product section. The GE, 04,X'0005' insures that the IFCID being traced is either an IFCID 53 or 58 and

is not an IFCID4 which is automatically generated via the START TRACE command. The P4,08 positions the current record pointer to data section 1 of the IFCID 53 or 58. A direct comparison is then made at decimal offset 74 for SQL code X'FFFFFFC78".

When a trace record passes the selection criteria of the START TRACE command and SELECT keywords, DSN1SDMP is to perform the action that is specified by the ACTION keyword. In this example, the job is to abend and retry with reason code 00E60188. This action is to take place only once, as indicated by the FOR option. FOR(1) is the default, and is therefore not required to be explicitly specified.

```
//SDMPIN DD *
START TRACE=A CLASS(32) IFCID(53,58) DEST(OPX)
FOR(1)
AFTER(1)
ACTION(ABENDRET(00E60188))
SELECT
* Position to the product section
P4,00
* Insure QWHSIID = 58 or 53 (not IFCID 4)
GE,04,X'0005'
* Position to the data section 1
P4,08
* Compare SQLCODE in QW0058SQ or QW0053SQ
DR,74,X'FFFFFFC78'
/*
```

Figure 145. Example job that abends and terminates agent on -904 SQL code

Example 3: Abending and retrying on RMID 20

This example specifies that DB2 is to start a performance trace (which is indicated by the letter P) and activate all IFCIDs in classes 3 and 8. The trace output is to be recorded in a generic destination that uses the first free OP*n* slot, as indicated by the DEST option. The TDATA (TRA) option specifies that a CPU header is to be placed into the product section of each trace record.

The SELECT option indicates additional criteria for data in the trace record. In this example, the SELECT option first specifies that the current-record pointer is to be placed at the 4-byte field that is located at the start of the record. The current record pointer is then to be advanced the number of bytes that are indicated in the 2-byte field that is located at the current record pointer. The utility is then to directly compare the data that is 4 bytes from the current-record pointer with the value X'0025'.

When a trace record passes the selection criteria of the START TRACE command and SELECT keywords, DSN1SDMP is to perform the action that is specified by the ACTION keyword. In this example, the job is to abend and retry the agent.

```

/**      ABEND AND RETRY AN AGENT WHEN EVENT ID X'0025'
/**      (AGENT ALLOCATION) IS RECORDED BY RMID 20 (SERVICE
/**      CONTROLLER).
/**
//SDMPIN DD *
* ENSURE ONLY THE TRACE HEADER IS APPENDED WITH THE STANDARD HEADER
* VIA THE TDATA KEYWORD ON START TRACE
  START TRACE=P CLASS(3,8) RMID(20) DEST(OPX) TDATA(TRA)
* ABEND AND RETRY THE AGENT WITH THE DEFAULT ABEND CODE (00E60100)
  ACTION(ABENDRET)
* SPECIFY THE SELECT CRITERIA FOR RMID.EID
  SELECT
* OFFSET TO THE STANDARD HEADER
  P4,00
* ADD LENGTH OF STANDARD HEADER TO GET TO TRACE HEADER
  LN,00
* LOOK FOR EID 37 AT OFFSET 4 IN THE TRACE HEADER
  DR,04,X'0025'
/**

```

Figure 146. Example job that abends and retries on RMID 20

Example 4: Generating a dump on SQLCODE -811 RMID16 IFCID 5

This example specifies that DB2 is to start a performance trace (which is indicated by the letter P) and activate all IFCIDs in class 3. The trace output is to be recorded in the system management facility (SMF). The TDATA (COR,TRA) option specifies that a trace header and a CPU header are to be placed into the product section of each trace record.

The SELECT option indicates additional criteria for data in the trace record. In this example, the SELECT option first specifies that the current-record pointer is to be placed at the 4-byte field that is located at the start of the record. The utility is then to directly compare the data that is 2 bytes from the current-record pointer with the value X'0116003A'. The current record pointer is then to be moved to the 4-byte field that is located 8 bytes past the start of the current record. The utility is then to directly compare the data that is 74 bytes from the current-record pointer with the value X'FFFFFFCD5'.

When a trace record passes the selection criteria of the START TRACE command and SELECT keywords, DSN1SDMP is to perform the action that is specified by the ACTION keyword. In this example, the job is to abend with reason code 00E60188 and retry the agent. This action is to take place only once, as indicated by the FOR option. FOR(1) is the default, and is therefore not required to be explicitly specified. AFTER(1) indicates that this action is to be performed the first time the trace point is reached. AFTER(1) is also the default.

```

//SDMPIN DD *
START TRACE=P CLASS(3) RMID(22) DEST(SMF) TDATA(COR,TRA)
AFTER(1)
FOR(1)
SELECT
* POSITION TO HEADERS (QWHS IS ALWAYS FIRST)
P4,00
* CHECK QWHS 01, FOR RMID 16, IFCID 58
DR,02,X'0116003A'
* POSITION TO SECOND SECTION (1ST DATA SECTION)
P4,08
* COMPARE SQLCODE FOR 811
DR,74,X'FFFFFFD5'
ACTION(ABENDRET(00E60188))
/*

```

Figure 147. Example job that generates a dump on SQL code -811 RMID16 IFCID

Example 5: Starting a second trace

This example job starts a trace on IFC 196 records. An IFC 196 record is written when a lock timeout occurs. In this example, when a lock timeout occurs, DSN1SDMP is to start a second trace, as indicated by the ACTION(STTRACE) option. This second trace is to be an accounting trace, as indicated by the COMMAND START TRACE(ACCTG) option. This trace is to include records only for the ACE that is associated with the agent that timed out, as indicated by the FILTER(ACE) option. When the qualifying accounting record is found, DSN1SDMP generates a dump.

```

//SDMPIN DD *
* START ONLY IFCID 196, TIMEOUT
START TRACE=P CLASS(32) IFCID(196) DEST(SMF)
AFTER(1)
* ACTION = START ACCOUNTING TRACE
ACTION(STTRACE)
* FILTER ON JUST 196 RECORDS...
SELECT
P4,00
DR,04,X'00C4'
* WHEN ACCOUNTING IS CUT, ABEND
ACTION2(ABENDRET(00E60188))
* START THE ACCOUNTING TRACE FILTER ON THE ACE OF THE AGENT
* THAT TIMED OUT
COMMAND
START TRACE(ACCTG) CLASS(32) IFCID(3) DEST(SMF)
* Filter can be for ACE or EB
FILTER(ACE)
/*

```

Figure 148. Example job that starts a second trace.

Related reference

 [-STOP TRACE \(DB2\) \(DB2 Commands\)](#)

Part 4. Appendixes

Appendix A. Limits in DB2 for z/OS

DB2 for z/OS has system limits, object and SQL limits, length limits for identifiers and strings, and limits for certain data type values.

System storage limits might preclude the limits specified in this section. The limit for items not that are not specified below is limited by system storage.

The following table shows the length limits for identifiers.

Table 136. Identifier length limits. The term *byte(s)* in this table means the number of bytes for the UTF-8 representation unless noted otherwise.

Item	Limit
External-java-routine-name	1305 bytes
Name of an alias ¹ , auxiliary table, collection, clone table, constraint, correlation, cursor (except for DECLARE CURSOR WITH RETURN or the EXEC SQL utility), distinct type (both parts of two-part name), function (both parts of two-part name), host identifier, index, JARs, parameter, procedure, role, schema, sequence, specific, statement, storage group, savepoint, SQL condition, SQL label, SQL parameter, SQL variable, synonym, table, trigger, view, XML attribute name, XML element name	128 bytes
Name of an authorization ID or name of a security label.	8 bytes
Routine version identifier	64 EBCDIC bytes, and the UTF-8 representation of the name must not exceed 122 bytes.
Name of a column	30 bytes ¹
Name of cursor that is created with DECLARE CURSOR WITH RETURN	30 bytes
Name of cursor that is created with the EXEC SQL utility	8 bytes
Name of a location	16 bytes
Name of buffer pool name, catalog, database, plan, program, table space	8 bytes
Name of package	8 bytes (Only 8 EBCDIC characters are used for packages that are created with the BIND PACKAGE command. 128 bytes can be used for packages that are created as a result of the CREATE FUNCTION (SQL scalar) statement, the CREATE PROCEDURE (SQL - native) statement, or the CREATE TRIGGER statement.)
Name of a profile that is created with CREATE TRUSTED CONTEXT or ALTER TRUSTED CONTEXT	127 bytes
Notes:	
1. If the column name length or the distinct type schema or name length is greater than 30 Unicode bytes, truncation occurs in the sqlname field of the SQLDA when those objects are described in an application.	

Table 137 on page 924 shows the minimum and maximum limits for numeric values.

Table 138. String length limits (continued)

Item	Limit
Maximum length ¹ of VARCHAR	4046 bytes for 4 KB pages 8128 bytes for 8 KB pages 16320 bytes for 16 KB pages 32704 bytes for 32 KB pages
Maximum length of VARCHAR that can be indexed by an XML index	1000 bytes after conversion to UTF-8
Maximum length ¹ of VARGRAPHIC	2023 double-byte characters for 4 KB pages 4064 double-byte characters for 8 KB pages 8160 double-byte characters for 16 KB pages 16352 double-byte characters for 32 KB pages
Maximum length of VARBINARY	32704 bytes
Maximum length of CLOB	2 147 483 647 bytes (2 GB - 1 byte)
Maximum length of DBCLOB	1 073 741 823 double-byte characters
Maximum length of BLOB	2 147 483 647 bytes (2 GB - 1 byte)
Maximum length of a character constant	32704 UTF-8 bytes
Maximum length of a hexadecimal character constant	32704 hexadecimal digits
Maximum length of a graphic string constant	16352 double-byte characters (32704 bytes when expressed in UTF-8)
Maximum length of a hexadecimal graphic string constant	32704 hexadecimal digits
Maximum length of a text string used for a scalar expression	4000 UTF-8 bytes
Maximum length of a concatenated character string	2 147 483 647 bytes (2 GB - 1 byte)
Maximum length of a concatenated graphic string	1 073 741 824 double-byte characters
Maximum length of a concatenated binary string	2 147 483 647 bytes (2 GB - 1 byte)
Maximum length of XML pattern text	4000 bytes after conversion to UTF-8
Maximum length of an XML element or attribute name in an XML document	1000 bytes
Maximum length of a namespace uri	1000 bytes
maximum length of a namespace prefix	998 bytes
largest depth of an internal XML tree	128 levels

Note:

1. The maximum length can be achieved only if the column is the only column in the table. Otherwise, the maximum length depends on the amount of space remaining on a page.

The following table shows the minimum and maximum limits for datetime values.

Table 139. Datetime limits

Item	Limit
Smallest DATE value (shown in ISO format)	0001-01-01
Largest DATE value (shown in ISO format)	9999-12-31
Smallest TIME value (shown in ISO format)	00.00.00
Largest TIME value (shown in ISO format)	24.00.00
Smallest TIMESTAMP value	0001-01-01-00.00.00.000000000000

Table 139. Datetime limits (continued)

Item	Limit
Largest TIMESTAMP value	9999-12-31-24.00.00.000000000000
TIMESTAMP precision range	0 to 12
TIME ZONE hour range	-12 to 14
TIME ZONE minute range	0 to 59

The following table shows the DB2 limits on SQL statements.

Table 140. DB2 limits on SQL statements

Item	Limit
Maximum number of columns that are in a table or view (the value depends on the complexity of the CREATE VIEW statement) or columns returned by a table function.	750 or fewer (including hidden columns) 749 if the table is a dependent
Maximum number of base tables in a view, SELECT, UPDATE, INSERT, MERGE, or DELETE	225
Maximum number of rows that can be inserted with a single INSERT or MERGE statement	32767
Maximum row and record sizes for a table	See the description of CREATE TABLE in <i>DB2 SQL Reference</i> .
Maximum number of volume IDs in a storage group	133
Maximum number of partitions in a partitioned table space or partitioned index	64 for table spaces that are not defined with LARGE or a DSSIZE greater than 2 GB. 4096, depending on what is specified for DSSIZE or LARGE and the page size.
Maximum sum of the lengths of limit key values of a partition boundary	765 UTF-8 bytes
Maximum size of a partition (table space or index)	For table spaces that are not defined with LARGE or a DSSIZE greater than 2 GB: 4 GB, for 1 to 16 partitions 2 GB, for 17 to 32 partitions 1 GB, for 33 to 64 partitions For table spaces that are defined with LARGE: 4 GB, for 1 to 4096 partitions For table spaces that are defined with a DSSIZE greater than 2 GB: 64 GB, depending on the page size (for 1 to 256 partitions for 4 KB pages, for 1 to 512 partitions for 8 KB pages, for 1 to 1024 partitions for 16 KB pages, and 1 to 2048 partitions for 32 KB pages)
Maximum length of an index key	Partitioning index: 255- <i>n</i> Nonpartitioning index that is padded: 2000- <i>n</i> Nonpartitioning index that is not padded: 2000- <i>n</i> -2 <i>m</i> Where <i>n</i> is the number of columns in the key that allow nulls and <i>m</i> is the number of varying-length columns in the key

Table 140. DB2 limits on SQL statements (continued)

Item	Limit
Maximum number of bytes used in the partitioning of a partitioned index	255 (This maximum limit is subject to additional limitations, depending on the number of partitions in the table space. The number of partitions * (106 + limit key size) must be less than 65394.)
Maximum number of columns in an index key	64
Maximum number of expressions in an index key	64
Maximum number of tables in a FROM clause	225 or fewer, depending on the complexity of the statement
Maximum number of subqueries in a statement	224
Maximum total length of host and indicator variables pointed to in an SQLDA	32767 bytes 2 147 483 647 bytes (2 GB - 1 byte) for a LOB, subject to the limitations that are imposed by the application environment and host language
Longest host variable used for insert or update operation	32704 bytes for a non-LOB 2 147 483 647 bytes (2 GB - 1 byte) for a LOB, subject to the limitations that are imposed by the application environment and host language
Longest SQL statement	2 097 152 bytes
Maximum number of elements in a select list	750 or fewer, depending on whether the select list is for the result table of static scrollable cursor ¹
Maximum number of predicates in a WHERE or HAVING clause	Limited by storage
Maximum total length of columns of a query operation requiring a sort key (SELECT DISTINCT, ORDER BY, GROUP BY, UNION, EXCEPT, and INTERSECT, without the ALL keyword, and the DISTINCT keyword for aggregate functions)	4000 bytes
Maximum total length of columns of a query operation requiring sort and evaluating column functions (MULTIPLE DISTINCT and GROUP BY)	32600 bytes
Maximum length of a sort key	16000 bytes
Maximum length of a check constraint	3800 bytes
Maximum number of bytes that can be passed in a single parameter of an SQL CALL statement	32765 bytes for a non-LOB 2 147 483 647 bytes (2 GB - 1 byte) for a LOB, subject to the limitations imposed by the application environment and host language
Maximum number of stored procedures, triggers, and user-defined functions that an SQL statement can implicitly or explicitly reference	16 nesting levels
Maximum length of the SQL path	2048 bytes
Maximum length of a WLM environment name in a CREATE PROCEDURE, CREATE FUNCTION, ALTER PROCEDURE, or ALTER FUNCTION statement.	32 bytes
Maximum number of XPath level in the XMLPATTERN clause of the CREATE INDEX statement.	50 nesting levels

Table 140. DB2 limits on SQL statements (continued)

Item	Limit
Note:	
1. If the scrollable cursor is read-only, the maximum number is 749 less the number of columns in the ORDER BY that are not in the select list. If the scrollable cursor is not read-only, the maximum number is 747.	

The following table shows the DB2 system limits.

Table 141. DB2 system limits

Item	Limit
Maximum number of concurrent DB2 or application agents	Limited by the EDM pool size, buffer pool size, and the amount of storage that is used by each DB2 or application agent
Largest non-LOB table or table space	128 terabytes (TB)
Largest simple or segmented table space	64 GB
Largest log space	2 ⁴⁸ bytes
Largest active log data set	4 GB -1 byte
Largest archive log data set	4 GB -1 byte
Maximum number of active log copies	2
Maximum number of archive log copies	2
Maximum number of active log data sets (each copy)	93
Maximum number of archive log volumes (each copy)	10000
Maximum number of databases accessible to an application or end user	Limited by system storage and EDM pool size
Maximum number of databases	65271
Maximum number of implicitly created databases	10000
Maximum number of indexes on declared global temporary tables	10000
Largest EDM pool	The installation parameter maximum depends on available space
Maximum number of rows per page	255 for all table spaces except catalog and directory tables spaces, which have a maximum of 127
Maximum simple or segmented data set size	2 GB
Maximum partitioned data set size	See item "maximum size of a partition" in Table 140 on page 926
Maximum LOB data set size	64 GB
Maximum number of table spaces that can be defined in a work file database	500
Maximum number of tables and triggers that can be defined in a work file database	11767

Appendix B. DB2-supplied stored procedures

DB2 provides some stored procedures that you can call in your application programs to perform a number of utility and application programming functions. Typically, these procedures are created during installation or migration.

The following table lists all of the DB2-supplied stored procedures.

Table 142. DB2-supplied stored procedures

Stored procedure name	Description
ADMIN_COMMAND_DB2	The ADMIN_COMMAND_DB2 stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It executes one or more DB2 commands on a connected DB2 subsystem or on a DB2 data sharing group member and returns the command output messages.
ADMIN_COMMAND_DSN	The ADMIN_COMMAND_DSN stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It executes a BIND, REBIND, or FREE DSN subcommand and then returns the output from the subcommand.
ADMIN_COMMAND_UNIX	The ADMIN_COMMAND_UNIX stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It executes a USS command and returns the output from the command.
ADMIN_DS_BROWSE	The ADMIN_DS_BROWSE stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It returns either text or binary records from one of the following entities: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• a physical sequential (PS) data set• a generation data set (GDS)• a partitioned data set (PDS)• a partitioned data set extended (PDSE) member. This stored procedure supports only data sets with LRECL=80 and RECFM=FB.
ADMIN_DS_DELETE	The ADMIN_DS_DELETE stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It deletes one of the following entities: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• a physical sequential (PS) data set• a partitioned data set (PDS)• a partitioned data set extended (PDSE)• a generation data set (GDS)• a member of a PDS or PDSE
ADMIN_DS_LIST	The ADMIN_DS_LIST stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It returns a list of one of the following items: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• data set names• generation data groups (GDG)• partitioned data set (PDS) members• partitioned data set extended (PDSE) members• generation data sets of a GDG

Table 142. DB2-supplied stored procedures (continued)

Stored procedure name	Description
ADMIN_DS_RENAME	<p>The ADMIN_DS_RENAME stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It renames one of the following entities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a physical sequential (PS) data set • a partitioned data set (PDS) • a partitioned data set extended (PDSE) • a member of a PDS or PDSE
ADMIN_DS_SEARCH	<p>The ADMIN_DS_SEARCH stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It determines if one of the following items is cataloged:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a physical sequential (PS) data set • a partitioned data set (PDS) • a partitioned data set extended (PDSE) • a generation data group (GDG) • a generation data set (GDS) <p>Alternatively, ADMIN_DS_SEARCH determines if a library member of a cataloged PDS or PDSE exists.</p>
ADMIN_DS_WRIT	<p>The ADMIN_DS_WRITE stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It writes either text or binary records that are passed in a global temporary table to one of the following entities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a physical sequential (PS) data set • partitioned data set (PDS) member • partitioned data set extended (PDSE) member • generation data set (GDS) <p>ADMIN_DS_WRITE can either append or replace an existing PS data set, PDS member, PDSE member, or GDS. ADMIN_DS_WRITE can create one of the following entities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a PS data set • PDS data set or member • PDSE data set or member • GDS for an existing generation data group (GDG) as needed <p>This stored procedure supports only data sets with LRECL=80 and RECFM=FB.</p>
ADMIN_INFO_HOST	<p>The ADMIN_INFO_HOST stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It returns the host name of a connected DB2 subsystem or the host name of every member of a data sharing group.</p>
ADMIN_INFO_SSID	<p>The ADMIN_INFO_SSID stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It returns the subsystem ID of the connected DB2 subsystem.</p>
ADMIN_JOB_CANCEL	<p>The ADMIN_JOB_CANCEL stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It purges or cancels a job.</p>
ADMIN_JOB_FETCH	<p>The ADMIN_JOB_FETCH stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It retrieves the output from the JES spool.</p>
ADMIN_JOB_QUERY	<p>The ADMIN_JOB_QUERY stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It displays the status and completion information of a job.</p>
ADMIN_JOB_SUBMIT	<p>The ADMIN_JOB_SUBMIT stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It submits a job to a JES2 or JES3 system.</p>

Table 142. DB2-supplied stored procedures (continued)

Stored procedure name	Description
ADMIN_TASK_ADD	The ADMIN_TASK_ADD stored procedure is an administrative task scheduler routine. It adds a task to the task list of the administrative task scheduler.
ADMIN_TASK_REMOVE	The ADMIN_TASK_REMOVE stored procedure is an administrative task scheduler routine. It removes a task from the task list of the administrative task scheduler.
ADMIN_UTL_SCHEDULE	The ADMIN_UTL_SCHEDULE stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It executes utilities in parallel.
ADMIN_UTL_SORT	The ADMIN_UTL_SORT stored procedure is an administrative enablement routine. It sorts database objects for parallel utility execution using JCL or the ADMIN_UTL_SCHEDULE stored procedure.
DSNACCOR	The real-time statistics stored procedure, DSNACCOR, queries the DB2 real-time statistics tables. This information helps you determine when you should run COPY, REORG, or RUNSTATS utility jobs, or enlarge your DB2 data sets.
DSNACCOX	The enhanced DB2 real-time statistics stored procedure, DSNACCOX, makes recommendations to help you maintain your DB2 databases. The DSNACCOX stored procedure replaces the previous DSNACCOR stored procedure, beginning in Version 9.
DSNACICS	The CICS transaction invocation stored procedure, DSNACICS, invokes CICS transactions from a remote workstation.
DSNAEXP	The DB2 EXPLAIN stored procedure, DSN8EXP, invokes the EXPLAIN function on an SQL statement without requiring you to have the authorization to execute that SQL statement. The DSNAEXP stored procedure replaces the previous DSN8EXP stored procedure, beginning in Version 8. DSN8EXP handles SQL statements of up to 32,700 bytes in length. DSNAEXP can handle longer statements.
DSNAHVPM	The DSNAHVPM stored procedure is used by Optimization Service Center for DB2 for z/OS to convert host variables in a static SQL statement to typed parameter markers.
DSNAIMS	The IMS transactions stored procedure, DSNAIMS, invokes IMS transactions and commands, without requiring a DB2 subsystem to maintain its own connection to IMS.
DSNAIMS2	The IMS transactions stored procedure 2, DSNAIMS2, performs the same function as DSNAIMS, except that DSNAIMS2 also includes multi-segment input support for IMS transactions.
DSNLEUSR	The SYSIBM.USERNAMES encryption stored procedure, DSNLEUSR, stores encrypted values in the NEWAUTHID and PASSWORD fields of the SYSIBM.USERNAMES catalog table.
DSNTBIND	The DSNTBIND stored procedure binds Java stored procedures.
DSNTPSMP	The DB2 for z/OS SQL procedure processor, DSNTPSMP, is a REXX stored procedure that prepares external SQL procedures for execution.
DSNUTILS	The utilities stored procedure for EBCDIC input, DSNUTILS, invokes DB2 utilities from a local or remote client program. This stored procedure accepts utility control statements that are encoded in EBCDIC.

Table 142. DB2-supplied stored procedures (continued)

Stored procedure name	Description
DSNUTILU	The utilities stored procedure for Unicode input, DSNUTILU, invokes DB2 utilities from a local or remote client program. This stored procedure accepts utility control statements that are encoded in Unicode.
DSNWSPM	The DSNWSPM stored procedure formats IFCID 148 records.
DSNWZP	The subsystem parameter stored procedure, DSNWZP, is used by the DB2-supplied stored procedure WLM_REFRESH.
GET_CONFIG	<p>The GET_CONFIG stored procedure is a common SQL API stored procedure. It returns information about the data server configuration, including information about the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the data sharing group • the DB2 subsystem parameters • the DDF status and configuration • the connected DB2 subsystem • the RLF tables • the active log data sets • the last DB2 restart <p>This stored procedure is used primarily by DB2 tools.</p>
GET_MESSAGE	The GET_MESSAGE stored procedure is a common SQL API stored procedure. It returns the short message text for an SQL code. This stored procedure is used primarily by DB2 tools.
GET_SYSTEM_INFO	<p>The GET_SYSTEM_INFO stored procedure is a common SQL API stored procedure. It returns system information, including information about the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • operating system • product information • PTF level of each DB2 module • the SMP/E APPLY status of the requested SYSMOD • WLM classification rules that apply to the DB2 workload for subsystem types DB2 and DDF <p>This stored procedure is used primarily by DB2 tools</p>
SQLJ.ALTER_JAVA_PATH	The SQLJ.ALTER_JAVA_PATH stored procedure specifies the class resolution path that the JVM searches to resolve class references. This action is needed if a JAR that you have installed refers to classes in other installed JARs.
SQLJ.DB2_INSTALL_JAR	The SQLJ.DB2_INSTALL_JAR stored procedure installs a set of Java classes into a local or remote catalog.
SQLJ.DB2_REMOVE_JAR	The SQLJ.DB2_REMOVE_JAR stored procedure removes a Java JAR file and its classes from a local or remote catalog.
SQLJ.DB2_REPLACE_JAR	The SQLJ.DB2_REPLACE_JAR stored procedure replaces a previously installed JAR file in a local or remote catalog.
SQLJ.DB2_UPDATEJARINFO	The SQLJ.DB2_UPDATEJARINFO stored procedure inserts class, class source, and associated options for a previously installed JAR file in a local or remote catalog.
SQLJ.INSTALL_JAR	The SQLJ.INSTALL_JAR stored procedure installs a set of Java classes into the current SQL catalog and schema.
SQLJ.REMOVE_JAR	The SQLJ.REMOVE_JAR stored procedure removes a Java JAR file and its classes from a specified, local catalog.

Table 142. DB2-supplied stored procedures (continued)

Stored procedure name	Description
SQLJ.REPLACE_JAR	The SQLJ.REPLACE_JAR stored procedure replaces a previously installed JAR file in a local catalog.
WLM_REFRESH	The WLM environment refresh stored procedure, WLM_REFRESH, refreshes a WLM environment from a remote workstation.
WLM_SET_CLIENT_INFO	The WLM_SET_CLIENT_INFO stored procedure sets client information that is associated with the current connection at the DB2 server.
XSR_ADDSCHEMADOC	The add XML schema document stored procedure, XSR_ADDSCHEMADOC, adds every XML schema other than the primary XML schema document to the XSR.
XSR_COMPLETE	The XML schema registration completion stored procedure, XSR_COMPLETE, is the final stored procedure to be called as part of the XML schema registration process. The XML schema registration process registers XML schemas with the XSR.
XSR_REGISTER	The XML schema registration stored procedure, XSR_REGISTER, is the first stored procedure to be called as part of the XML schema registration process. The XML schema registration process registers XML schemas with the XSR.
XSR_REMOVE	The XML schema removal stored procedure, XSR_REMOVE, removes all components of an XML schema.

Related reference

- [➤ Source code for activating DB2-supplied stored procedures \(DB2 9 for z/OS Stored Procedures: Through the CALL and Beyond\)](#)
- [➤ DSNACCOR stored procedure \(Managing Performance\)](#)
- [➤ DSNACCOX stored procedure \(Managing Performance\)](#)

Deprecated: DSNUTILS stored procedure

The DSNUTILS stored procedure enables you use the SQL CALL statement to execute DB2 utilities from a DB2 application program that specifies EBCDIC input.

Restriction: DSNUTILS has been deprecated in favor of DSNUTILU.

Recommendation: Convert existing callers of SYSIBM.SYSUTILS to use the SYSIBM.SYSUTILU.

When called, DSNUTILS performs the following actions:

- Dynamically allocates the specified data sets
- Creates the utility input (SYSIN) stream
- Invokes DB2 utilities (program DSNUTILB)
- Deletes all the rows that are currently in the created temporary table (SYSIBM.SYSPRINT)
- Captures the utility output stream (SYSPRINT) into a created temporary table (SYSIBM.SYSPRINT)
- Declares a cursor to select from SYSPRINT:

```
DECLARE SYSPRINT CURSOR WITH RETURN FOR
SELECT SEQNO, TEXT FROM SYSPRINT
ORDER BY SEQNO;
```

- Opens the SYSPRINT cursor and returns.

The calling program then fetches from the returned result set to obtain the captured utility output.

Environment for DSNUTILS

DSNUTILS **must** run in a WLM environment. The DSNWLM_UTILS environment is created for DB2 utilities stored procedures. Stored procedures require special DD allocations.

Table 143. DSNWLM_UTILS environment

Property	Description
NUMTCB	1
APF authorized	Yes
Special DDs	<p>These DDs are required:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SYSIN Allocates a work file for temporarily storing utility input statements. • SYSPRINT Allocates a work file for temporarily storing utility output messages. • RNPRIN01 Allocates a data set for messages from the sort program. Required only if you plan to invoke RUNSTATS and collect distribution statistics. • UTPRINT Allocates a data set for messages from the sort program. • DSSPRINT Allocates a data set for messages when making concurrent copies. <p>Example:</p> <pre>//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=* //RNPRIN01 DD SYSOUT=* //DSSPRINT DD SYSOUT=* //SYSIN DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND) //SYSPRINT DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)</pre>
Other considerations	The STEPLIB needs to include DSN=prefix.SDSNEXIT or other library where the authorization exit modules (DSN3@ATH and DSN3@SGN) reside.

Installation job DSNTIJMV creates an address space proc called DSNWLMU for DSNWLM_UTILS. When the installation CLIST is customized, the name and library name of this proc are changed according to the DB2 subsystem name you specified on panel DSNTIPM in the field SUBSYSTEM NAME. For example, if you specified a subsystem name of VA1A then this proc will be named VA1AWLMU.

Authorization required for DSNUTILS

To execute the CALL statement, the owner of the package or plan that contains the CALL statement must have one or more of the following privileges on each package that the stored procedure uses:

- The EXECUTE privilege on the package for DSNUTILS
- Ownership of the package
- PACKADM authority for the package collection
- SYSADM authority

Then, to execute the utility, you must use a privilege set that includes the authorization to run the specified utility.

Control statement for DSNUTILS

DSNUTILS dynamically allocates the specified data sets. Any utility that requires a sort must include the SORTDEVT keyword in the utility control statement, and optionally, the SORTNUM keyword.

If the DSNUTILS stored procedure invokes a new utility, refer to Table 144 for information about the default data dispositions that are specified for dynamically allocated data sets. This table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set and the default dispositions for the data set by utility.

Table 144. Data dispositions for dynamically allocated data sets

DD name	CHECK DATA	CHECK INDEX or CHECK LOB	COPY	COPY-TOCOPY	LOAD	MERGE-COPY	REBUILD INDEX	REORG INDEX	REORG TABLE-SPACE	UNLOAD
SYSREC	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	OLD KEEP KEEP	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG
SYSDISC	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSPUNCH	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG
SYSCOPY	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSCOPY2	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSRCPY1	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSRCPY2	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSUT1	NEW DELETE CATLG	NEW DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	NEW CATLG CATLG	NEW DELETE CATLG	ignored
SORTOUT	NEW DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	ignored
SYSMAP	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored
SYSERR	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	NEW CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored
FILTER	ignored	ignored	NEW DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored

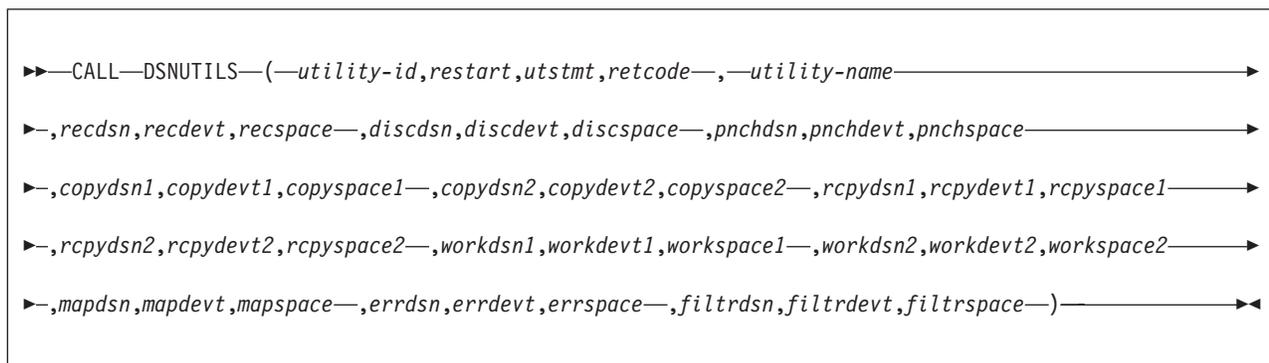
If the DSNUTILS stored procedure restarts a current utility, refer to Table 145 on page 936 for information about the default data dispositions that are specified for dynamically-allocated data sets on RESTART. This table lists the DD name that is used to identify the data set and the default dispositions for the data set by utility.

Table 145. Data dispositions for dynamically allocated data sets on RESTART

DD name	CHECK DATA	CHECK INDEX or CHECK LOB	COPY	COPY-TOCOPY	LOAD	MERGE-COPY	REBUILD INDEX	REORG INDEX	REORG TABLE-SPACE	UNLOAD
SYSREC	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	OLD KEEP KEEP	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG
SYSDISC	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSPUNCH	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG
SYSCOPY	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSCOPY2	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSRCPY1	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSRCPY2	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored
SYSUT1	MOD DELETE CATLG	MOD DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	MOD CATLG CATLG	MOD DELETE CATLG	ignored
SORTOUT	MOD DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	ignored
SYSMAP	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored
SYSERR	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	MOD CATLG CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored
FILTER	ignored	ignored	MOD DELETE CATLG	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored	ignored

DSNUTILS stored procedure syntax diagram

The following syntax diagram shows the SQL CALL statement for invoking utilities as a stored procedure. Because the linkage convention for DSNUTILS is GENERAL, you cannot pass null values for input parameters. For character parameters that you are not using, specify an empty string (").



DSNUTILS option descriptions

utility-id

Specifies a unique identifier for this utility within DB2.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(16) in EBCDIC.

restart

Specifies whether DB2 is to restart a current utility, and, if so, at what point the utility is to be restarted.

restart is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(8) in Unicode UTF-8, which must be translatable to allowable EBCDIC characters. Specify one of the following values for this parameter:

NO or null

Indicates that the utility job is new, not a restart. No other utility with the same utility identifier (UID) can exist.

The **default** is **null**.

CURRENT

Restarts the utility at the last commit point.

PHASE

Restarts the utility at the beginning of the currently stopped phase. Use the DISPLAY UTILITY to determine the currently stopped phase.

PREVIEW

Executes in PREVIEW mode the utility control statements that follow. While in PREVIEW mode, DB2 parses all utility control statements for syntax errors, but normal utility execution does not take place. If the syntax is valid, DB2 expands all LISTDEF lists and TEMPLATE data set name expressions that appear in SYSIN and prints the results to the SYSPRINT data set. DB2 evaluates and expands all LISTDEF definitions into an actual list of table spaces or index spaces. DB2 also evaluates TEMPLATE data set name expressions into actual data set names through variable substitution. DB2 also expands lists from the SYSLISTD DD and TEMPLATE data set name expressions from the SYSTEMPL DD that is referenced by a utility invocation.

Absence of the PREVIEW keyword turns off preview processing with one exception. The absence of this keyword does not override the PREVIEW JCL parameter which, if specified, remains in effect for the entire job step.

This option is identical to the PREVIEW JCL parameter.

utstmt

Specifies the utility control statements.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(32704) in EBCDIC.

retcode

Specifies the utility highest return code.

This is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

utility-name

Specifies the utility that you want to invoke.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(20) in EBCDIC.

Because DSNUTILS allows only a single utility here, dynamic support of data set allocation is limited. Specify only a single utility that requires data set allocation in the *utstmt* parameter.

Select the utility name from the following list:

ANY¹
CHECK DATA
CHECK INDEX
CHECK LOB
COPY
COPYTOCOPY
DIAGNOSE
LOAD
MERGECOPY
MODIFY RECOVERY
MODIFY STATISTICS
QUIESCE
REBUILD INDEX
RECOVER
REORG INDEX
REORG LOB
REORG TABLESPACE
REPAIR
REPORT RECOVERY
REPORT TABLESPACESET
RUNSTATS INDEX
RUNSTATS TABLESPACE
STOSPACE
UNLOAD

Recommendation: Invoke DSNUTILS with a *utility-name* of ANY and omit all of the *xxdsn*, *xxdevt*, and *xxspace* parameters. Use TEMPLATE statements to allocate the data sets.

When you use TEMPLATE, utilities attempt to close and deallocate data sets when the utilities complete. However, under some circumstances, utilities cannot deallocate data sets. Under those circumstances, take one of the following sets of actions:

- If you want to terminate a utility after a failure:
 1. Use the TERM UTIL command to terminate the failing utility.
 2. Refresh the WLM environment in one of the following ways:
 - Submit the VARY command:
VARY WLM,APPLENV=xxx,REFRESH
 - Call the WLM_REFRESH stored procedure.

When you terminate the utility, DB2 deletes the data sets that are needed by the utility.

- If you want to restart a utility after a failure:

1. Use ANY to indicate that TEMPLATE dynamic allocation is to be used. This value suppresses the dynamic allocation that is normally performed by DSNUTILS.

1. Specify DISP (NEW,CATLG,CATLG) in your template for data sets that are needed by the utility.
2. When the utility fails, refresh the WLM environment, but do not terminate the utility.

You need to delete the allocated data sets manually after the utility completes.

recdsn

Specifies the cataloged data set name that is required by LOAD for input, or by REORG TABLESPACE as the unload data set. *recdsn* is required for LOAD. It is also required for REORG TABLESPACE unless you also specified NOSYSREC or SHRLEVEL CHANGE. If you specify *recdsn*, the data set is allocated to the SYSREC DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specified the INDDN parameter for LOAD, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SYSREC.

If you specify the UNLDDN parameter for REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SYSREC.

recdevt

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *recdsn* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

recspace

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *recdsn* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

discdsn

Specifies the cataloged data set name that is used by LOAD as a discard data set to hold records not loaded, and by REORG TABLESPACE as a discard data set to hold records that are not reloaded. If you specify *discdsn*, the data set is allocated to the SYSDISC DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the DISCARDN parameter for LOAD or REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SYSDISC.

discdevt

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *discdsn* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

discspace

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *discdsn* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

pnchdsn

Specifies the cataloged data set name that REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD EXTERNAL or REORG TABLESPACE DISCARD uses to hold the generated

LOAD utility control statements. If you specify a value for *pnchdsn*, the data set is allocated to the SYSPUNCH DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the PUNCHDDN parameter for REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SYSPUNCH.

pnchdevt

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *pnchdsn* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

pnchspace

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *pnchdsn* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

copydsn1

Specifies the name of the required target (output) data set, which is needed when you specify the COPY, COPYTOCOPY, or MERGECOPY utilities. It is optional for LOAD and REORG TABLESPACE. If you specify *copydsn1*, the data set is allocated to the SYSCOPY DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the COPYDDN parameter for COPY, COPYTOCOPY, MERGECOPY, LOAD, or REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname1* value **must** be SYSCOPY.

copydevt1

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *copydsn1* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

copyspace1

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *copydsn1* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

copydsn2

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is used as a target (output) data set for the backup copy. It is optional for COPY, COPYTOCOPY, MERGECOPY, LOAD, and REORG TABLESPACE. If you specify *copydsn2*, the data set is allocated to the SYSCOPY2 DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the COPYDDN parameter for COPY, COPYTOCOPY, MERGECOPY, LOAD, or REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname2* value **must** be SYSCOPY2.

copydevt2

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *copydsn2* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

copyspace2

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *copydsn2* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

rcpydsn1

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is required as a target (output) data set for the remote site primary copy. It is optional for COPY, COPYTOCOPY, LOAD, and REORG TABLESPACE. If you specify *rcpydsn1*, the data set is allocated to the SYSRCPY1 DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specified the RECOVERYDDN parameter for COPY, COPYTOCOPY, MERGECOPY, LOAD, or REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname1* value **must** be SYSRCPY1.

rcpydevt1

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *rcpydsn1* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

rcpyspace1

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *rcpydsn1* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

rcpydsn2

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is required as a target (output) data set for the remote site backup copy. It is optional for COPY, COPYTOCOPY, LOAD, and REORG TABLESPACE. If you specify *rcpydsn2*, the data set is allocated to the **SYSRCPY2** DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the RECOVERYDDN parameter for COPY, COPYTOCOPY, MERGECOPY, LOAD, or REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname2* value **must** be SYSRCPY2.

rcpydevt2

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *rcpydsn2* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

rcpyspace2

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *rcpydsn2* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

workdsn1

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is required as a work data set for sort input and output. It is required for CHECK DATA, CHECK INDEX and REORG INDEX. It is also required for LOAD and REORG TABLESPACE unless you also specify the SORTKEYS keyword. It is optional for REBUILD INDEX. If you specify *workdsn1*, the data set is allocated to the SYSUT1 DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the WORKDDN parameter for CHECK DATA, CHECK INDEX, LOAD, REORG INDEX, REORG TABLESPACE, or REBUILD INDEX, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SYSUT1.

workdevt1

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *workdsn1* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

workspace1

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *workdsn1* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

workdsn2

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is required as a work data set for sort input and output. It is required for CHECK DATA. It is also required if you use REORG INDEX to reorganize non-unique type 1 indexes. It is required for LOAD or REORG TABLESPACE unless you also specify the SORTKEYS keyword. If you specify *workdsn2*, the data set is allocated to the SORTOUT DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the WORKDDN parameter for CHECK DATA, LOAD, REORG INDEX, or REORG TABLESPACE, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SORTOUT.

workdevt2

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *workdsn2* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

workspace2

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *workdsn2* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

mapdsn

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is required as a work data set for error processing during LOAD with ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS. It is optional for LOAD. If you specify *mapdsn*, the data set is allocated to the SYSMAP DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the MAPDDN parameter for LOAD, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SYSMAP.

mapdevt

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *mapdsn* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8).

mapspace

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *mapdsn* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

errdsn

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is required as a work data set for error processing. It is required for CHECK DATA, and it is optional for LOAD. If you specify *errdsn*, the data set is allocated to the SYSERR DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the ERRDDN parameter for CHECK DATA or LOAD, the specified *ddname* value **must** be SYSERR.

errdevt

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *errdsn* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

errspace

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *errdsn* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

filtrdsn

Specifies the name of the cataloged data set that is required as a work data set for error processing. It is optional for COPY CONCURRENT. If you specify *filtrdsn*, the data set is allocated to the FILTER DD name.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(54) in EBCDIC.

If you specify the FILTERDDN parameter for COPY, the specified *ddname* value **must** be FILTER.

filtrdevt

Specifies a unit address, a generic device type, or a user-assigned group name for a device on which the *filtrdsn* data set resides.

This is an input parameter of type CHAR(8) in EBCDIC.

filtrspace

Specifies the number of cylinders to use as the primary space allocation for the *filtrdsn* data set. The secondary space allocation is 10% of the primary space allocation.

This is an input parameter of type SMALLINT.

Modifying the WLM-established address space for DSNUTILS

Add DSSPRINT, SYSIN, and SYSPRINT to the JCL procedure for starting the WLM-established address space in which DSNUTILS runs.

Requirement: You must allocate SYSIN and SYSPRINT in the procedure to temporarily store utility input statements and utility output messages. If you plan to invoke RUNSTATS and collect distribution statistics, you also need to allocate RNPRIN01.

Use JCL similar to the following sample PROC:

```
/******  
/* JCL FOR RUNNING THE WLM-ESTABLISHED STORED PROCEDURES  
/* ADDRESS SPACE  
/* RGN -- THE MVS REGION SIZE FOR THE ADDRESS SPACE.  
/* DB2SSN -- THE DB2 SUBSYSTEM NAME.  
/* APPLENV -- THE MVS WLM APPLICATION ENVIRONMENT  
/* SUPPORTED BY THIS JCL PROCEDURE.  
/*  
/* IMPORTANT: You must use the value 1 in this EXEC card:  
/* IEFPROC EXEC PGM=DSNX9WLM,REGION=&RGN,TIME=NOLIMIT,  
/* PARM='&DB2SSN,1,&APPLENV'  
/*  
/******  
//DSNWLM PROC RGN=0K,APPLENV=WLMENV1,DB2SSN=DSN  
//IEFPROC EXEC PGM=DSNX9WLM,REGION=&RGN,TIME=NOLIMIT,  
// PARM='&DB2SSN,1,&APPLENV'  
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=CEE.V!R!M!.SCEERUN  
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DSN!!0.SDSNLOAD  
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//RNPRI01 DD SYSOUT=*  
//DSSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSIN DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)  
//SYSPRINT DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,ROUND)
```

Sample program for calling DSNUTILS

Three example programs calling DSNUTILS are shipped in SDSNSAMP.

- DSNTEJ6U: A DSNUTILS caller that uses PL/I. Job DSNTEJ6U compiles, link-edits, binds, and runs sample PL/I program DSN8EPU, which invokes the DSNUTILS stored procedure to execute an utility.
- DSNTEJ6V: A DSNUTILS caller that uses C++. Job DSNTEJ6V compiles, link-edits, binds, and runs sample C++ program DSN8EE1, which invokes the DSNUTILS stored procedure to execute an utility.
- DSNTEJ80: A DSNUTILS caller that uses C and ODBC. You can use this sample to compile, pre-link, link-edit, and execute the sample application DSN8OIVP, which you can use to verify that your DB2 ODBC installation is correct.

DSNUTILS output

DB2 creates the result set according to the DECLARE statement that is shown under Example of declaring a cursor to select from SYSPRINT.

Output from a successful execution of the DSNTEJ6U sample job or an equivalent job lists the specified parameters followed by the messages that are generated by the DB2 DIAGNOSE DISPLAY MEPL utility.

If DSNUTILB abends, the abend codes are returned as DSNUTILS return codes.

Related reference

 DB2 Sort

Related information

 DFSORT Application Programming Guide

DSNUTILU stored procedure

The DSNUTILU stored procedure enables you to provide control statements in Unicode UTF-8 characters instead of EBCDIC characters to execute DB2 utilities from a DB2 application program.

To use the stored procedure DSNUTILU, input data sets for the utility control statements can begin with the following Unicode characters:

- A Unicode UTF-8 blank (X'20')
- A Unicode UTF-8 dash (X'2D')
- Upper case Unicode UTF-8 "A" through "Z" (X'41' through X'5A')

When called, DSNUTILU performs the following actions:

- Translates the values that are specified for *utility-id* and *restart* to EBCDIC
- Creates the utility input (SYSIN) stream for control statements that use Unicode characters
- Invokes DB2 utilities (Program DSNUTILB)
- Deletes all the rows that are currently in the created temporary table (SYSIBM.SYSPRINT)
- Captures the utility output stream (SYSPRINT) into a created temporary table (SYSIBM.SYSPRINT)
- Declares a cursor to select from SYSPRINT:

```
DECLARE SYSPRINT CURSOR WITH RETURN FOR
  SELECT SEQNO, TEXT FROM SYSPRINT
  ORDER BY SEQNO;
```
- Opens the SYSPRINT cursor and returns

The calling program then performs fetches from the returned result set to obtain the captured utility output.

The BIND PACKAGE statement for the DSNUTILU stored procedure determines the character set of the resulting utility SYSPRINT output that is placed in the SYSIBM.SYSPRINT table. If ENCODING(EBCDIC) is specified, the SYSPRINT contents are in EBCDIC. If ENCODING(UNICODE) is specified, the SYSPRINT contents are in Unicode. The default install job, DSNTIJRT, is shipped with ENCODING(EBCDIC).

Environment for DSNUTILU

DSNUTILU **must** run in a WLM environment. The DSNWLM_UTILS environment is created for DB2 utilities stored procedures. Stored procedures require special DD allocations.

Table 146. DSNWLM_UTILS environment

Property	Description
NUMTCB	1

Table 146. DSNWLM_UTILS environment (continued)

APF authorized	Yes
Special DDs	<p>These DDs are required:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SYSIN Allocates a work file for temporarily storing utility input statements. • SYSPRINT Allocates a work file for temporarily storing utility output messages. • RNPRIN01 Allocates a data set for messages from the sort program. Required only if you plan to invoke RUNSTATS and collect distribution statistics. • UTPRINT Allocates a data set for messages from the sort program. • DSSPRINT Allocates a data set for messages when making concurrent copies. <p>Example:</p> <pre>//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=* //RNPRIN01 DD SYSOUT=* //DSSPRINT DD SYSOUT=* //SYSIN DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND) //SYSPRINT DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)</pre>
Other considerations	The STEPLIB needs to include DSN=prefix.SDSNEXIT or other library where the authorization exit modules (DSN3@ATH and DSN3@SGN) reside.

Installation job DSNTIJMV creates an address space proc called DSNWLMU for DSNWLM_UTILS. When the installation CLIST is customized, the name and library name of this proc are changed according to the DB2 subsystem name you specified on panel DSNTIPM in the field SUBSYSTEM NAME. For example, if you specified a subsystem name of VA1A then this proc will be named VA1AWLMU.

Authorization required for DSNUTILU

To execute the CALL statement, the owner of the package or plan that contains the CALL statement must have one or more of the following privileges on each package that the stored procedure uses:

- The EXECUTE privilege on the package for DSNUTILU
- Ownership of the package
- PACKADM authority for the package collection
- SYSADM authority

Then, to execute the utility, you must use a privilege set that includes the authorization to run the specified utility.

Control statement for DSNUTILU

DSNUTILU does not dynamically allocate data sets. The TEMPLATE utility control statement must be used to dynamically allocate data sets. Any utility that requires a sort must include the SORTDEVT keyword in the utility control statement. Use of the SORTNUM keyword is optional.

DSNUTILU stored procedure syntax diagram

The following syntax diagram shows the SQL CALL statement for invoking utilities as a stored procedure.

```
▶▶—CALL—DSNUTILU—(—utility-id,restart,utstmt,retcode—)————▶▶
```

DSNUTILU option descriptions

utility-id

Specifies a unique identifier for this utility within DB2.

This is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(16) in Unicode UTF-8, which must be translatable to the following allowable EBCDIC characters:

- A - Z (upper and lower case)
- 0 - 9
- #, \$, @, ¢, !, ^, or period (.)

restart

Specifies whether DB2 is to restart a current utility, and, if so, at what point the utility is to be restarted.

restart is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(8) in Unicode UTF-8, which must be translatable to allowable EBCDIC characters. Specify one of the following values for this parameter:

NO or null

Indicates that the utility job is new, not a restart. No other utility with the same utility identifier (UID) can exist.

The **default** is **null**.

CURRENT

Restarts the utility at the last commit point.

PHASE

Restarts the utility at the beginning of the currently stopped phase. Use the DISPLAY UTILITY to determine the currently stopped phase.

PREVIEW

Executes in PREVIEW mode the utility control statements that follow. While in PREVIEW mode, DB2 parses all utility control statements for syntax errors, but normal utility execution does not take place. If the syntax is valid, DB2 expands all LISTDEF lists and TEMPLATE data set name expressions that appear in SYSIN and prints the results to the SYSPRINT data set. DB2 evaluates and expands all LISTDEFs into an actual list of table spaces or index spaces. DB2 also evaluates TEMPLATE data set name expressions into actual data set names through variable substitution. DB2 also expands lists from the SYSLISTD DD and TEMPLATE data set name expressions from the SYSTEMPL DD that is referenced by a utility invocation.

Absence of the PREVIEW keyword turns off preview processing with one exception. The absence of this keyword does not override the PREVIEW JCL parameter which, if specified, remains in effect for the entire job step.

This option is identical to the PREVIEW JCL parameter.

utstmt

Specifies the utility control statements.

utstmt is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(32704) in UNICODE UTF-8.

retcode

Specifies the utility highest return code.

retcode is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

Modifying the WLM-established address space for DSNUTILU

Add DSSPRINT, SYSIN, and SYSPRINT to the JCL procedure for starting the WLM-established address space, in which DSNUTILU runs. You must allocate SYSIN and SYSPRINT in the procedure to temporarily store utility input statements and utility output messages. If you plan to invoke RUNSTATS and collect distribution statistics, you also need to allocate RNPRIN01.

Use JCL similar to the following sample PROC .

```
/******  
/* JCL FOR RUNNING THE WLM-ESTABLISHED STORED PROCEDURES  
/* ADDRESS SPACE  
/* RGN -- THE MVS REGION SIZE FOR THE ADDRESS SPACE.  
/* DB2SSN -- THE DB2 SUBSYSTEM NAME.  
/* APPLENV -- THE MVS WLM APPLICATION ENVIRONMENT  
/* SUPPORTED BY THIS JCL PROCEDURE.  
/*  
/******  
//DSNWLM PROC RGN=0K,APPLENV=WLMENV1,DB2SSN=DSN  
//IEFPROC EXEC PGM=DSNX9WLM,REGION=&RGN,TIME=NOLIMIT,  
// PARM='&DB2SSN,1,&APPLENV'  
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=CEE.V!R!M!.SCEERUN  
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=DSN! !0.SDSNLOAD  
//UTPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//RNPRIN01 DD SYSOUT=*
```

```
//DSSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSIN DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)  
//SYSPRINT DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(4000,(20,20),,,ROUND)
```

Terminating or restarting a utility with DSNUTILU

If you do not want to restart a utility after a failure:

1. Use the TERM UTIL command to terminate the failing utility.
2. Refresh the WLM environment in one of the following ways:
 - Submit the VARY command:
VARY WLM,APPLENV=xxx,REFRESH
 - Call the WLM_REFRESH stored procedure.

When you terminate the utility, DB2 deletes the data sets that are needed by the utility.

If you want to restart a utility after a failure:

1. Use a TEMPLATE utility control statement, and specify DISP (NEW,CATLG,CATLG) in your template for data sets that are needed by the utility.
2. When the utility fails, refresh the WLM environment, but do not terminate the utility.

You need to delete the allocated data sets manually after the utility completes.

Sample program for calling DSNUTILU

The following sample program calls DSNUTILU and is shipped in SDSNSAMP:

DSNTEJ6R - A DSNUTILU caller using PL/I. Job DSNTEJ6R compiles, link-edits, binds, and runs sample C-language caller program DSN8ED8, which invokes the DSNUTILU stored procedure to execute a utility.

DSNUTILU output

DB2 creates the result set according to the DECLARE statement shown on Example of declaring a cursor to select from SYSPRINT

Output from a successful execution of the DSNTEJ6R sample job or an equivalent job lists the specified parameters, followed by the messages that are generated by the DB2 DIAGNOSE DISPLAY MEPL utility.

Related reference

 [DB2 Sort](#)

Related information

 [DFSORT Application Programming Guide](#)

DSNACCOR stored procedure

The DB2 real-time statistics stored procedure (DSNACCOR) is a sample stored procedure that makes recommendations to help you maintain your DB2 databases. The DSNACCOX stored procedure replaces the DSNACCOR stored procedure, which is deprecated, and provides improved recommendations. You can continue to use the DSNACCOR stored procedure. However, DSNACCOR is not enhanced with new fields, improved formulas, and other enhancements in found in the DSNACCOX stored procedure, including the option to select the formula that is used for making recommendations.

PSPI

In particular, DSNACCOR performs the following actions:

- Recommends when you should reorganize, image copy, or update statistics for table spaces or index spaces
- Indicates when a data set has exceeded a specified threshold for the number of extents that it occupies.
- Indicates whether objects are in a restricted state

DSNACCOR uses data from the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACESTATS and SYSIBM.SYSSYSINDEXSPACESTATS real-time statistics tables to make its recommendations. DSNACCOR provides its recommendations in a result set.

DSNACCOR uses the set of criteria that are shown in “DSNACCOR formulas for recommending actions” on page 959 to evaluate table spaces and index spaces. By default, DSNACCOR evaluates **all** table spaces and index spaces in the subsystem that have entries in the real-time statistics tables. However, you can override this default through input parameters.

Important information about DSNACCOR recommendations:

- DSNACCOR makes recommendations based on general formulas that require input from the user about the maintenance policies for a subsystem. These recommendations might not be accurate for every installation.
- If the real-time statistics tables contain information for only a small percentage of your DB2 subsystem, the recommendations that DSNACCOR makes might not be accurate for the entire subsystem.
- Before you perform any action that DSNACCOR recommends, ensure that the object for which DSNACCOR makes the recommendation is available, and that the recommended action can be performed on that object. For example, before you can perform an image copy on an index, the index must have the COPY YES attribute.

Environment

DSNACCOR must run in a WLM-established stored procedure address space. The DSNWLM_GENERAL core WLM environment is a suitable environment for this stored procedure.

DSNACCOR is installed and configured by installation job DSNTIJRT, which binds the package for DSNACCOR with isolation UR to avoid lock contention.

Authorization required

To execute the CALL DSNACCOR statement, the owner of the package or plan that contains the CALL statement must have one or more of the following privileges on each package that the stored procedure uses:

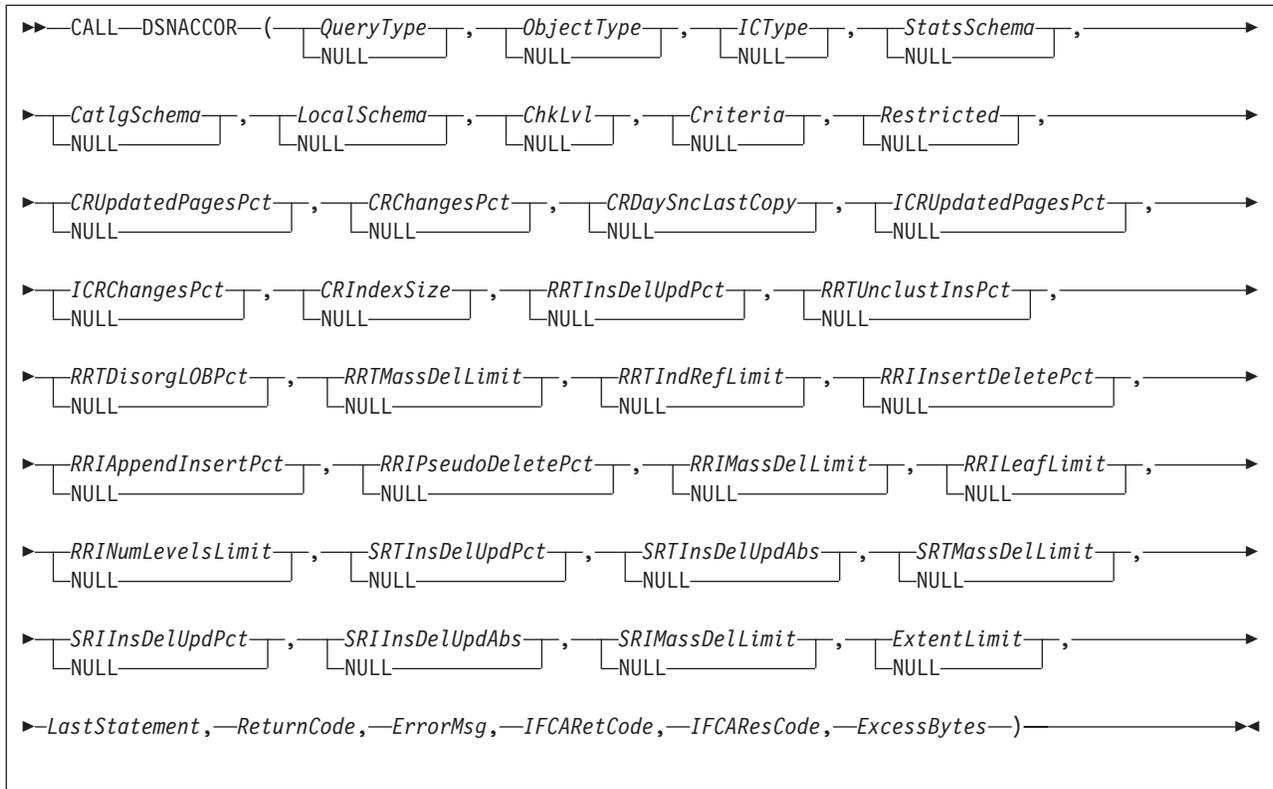
- The EXECUTE privilege on the package for DSNACCOR
- Ownership of the package
- PACKADM authority for the package collection
- SYSADM authority

The owner of the package or plan that contains the CALL statement must also have:

- SELECT authority on the real-time statistics tables
- Select authority on catalog tables
- The DISPLAY system privilege

Syntax diagram

The following syntax diagram shows the CALL statement for invoking DSNACCOR. Because the linkage convention for DSNACCOR is GENERAL WITH NULLS, if you pass parameters in host variables, you need to include a null indicator with every host variable. Null indicators for input host variables must be initialized before you execute the CALL statement.



Option descriptions

In the following option descriptions, the default value for an input parameter is the value that DSNACCOR uses if you specify a null value.

QueryType

Specifies the types of actions that DSNACCOR recommends. This field contains one or more of the following values. Each value is enclosed in single quotation marks and separated from other values by a space.

ALL Makes recommendations for all of the following actions.

COPY Makes a recommendation on whether to perform an image copy.

RUNSTATS

Makes a recommendation on whether to perform RUNSTATS.

REORG

Makes a recommendation on whether to perform REORG. Choosing this value causes DSNACCOR to process the EXTENTS value also.

EXTENTS

Indicates when data sets have exceeded a user-specified extents limit.

RESTRICT

Indicates which objects are in a restricted state.

QueryType is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(40). The default is ALL.

ObjectType

Specifies the types of objects for which DSNACCOR recommends actions:

ALL Table spaces and index spaces.

TS Table spaces only.

IX Index spaces only.

ObjectType is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(3). The default is **ALL**.

ICType

Specifies the types of image copies for which DSNACCOR is to make recommendations:

F Full image copy.

I Incremental image copy. This value is valid for table spaces only.

B Full image copy or incremental image copy.

ICType is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(1). The default is **B**.

StatsSchema

Specifies the qualifier for the real-time statistics table names. *StatsSchema* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(128). The default is **SYSIBM**.

CatlgSchema

Specifies the qualifier for DB2 catalog table names. *CatlgSchema* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(128). The default is **SYSIBM**.

LocalSchema

Specifies the qualifier for the names of tables that DSNACCOR creates. *LocalSchema* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(128). The default is **DSNACC**.

ChkLvl

Specifies the types of checking that DSNACCOR performs, and indicates whether to include objects that fail those checks in the DSNACCOR recommendations result set. This value is the sum of any combination of the following values:

0 DSNACCOR performs none of the following actions.

1 For objects that are listed in the recommendations result set, check the SYSTABLESPACE or SYSINDEXES catalog tables to ensure that those objects have not been deleted. If value 16 is **not** also chosen, exclude rows for the deleted objects from the recommendations result set.

DSNACCOR excludes objects from the recommendations result set if those objects are not in the SYSTABLESPACE or SYSINDEXES catalog tables.

When this setting is specified, DSNACCOR does not use EXTENTS>*ExtentLimit* to determine whether a LOB table space should be reorganized.

2 For index spaces that are listed in the recommendations result set, check the SYSTABLES, SYSTABLESPACE, and SYSINDEXES catalog tables to determine the name of the table space that is associated with each index space.

Choosing this value causes DSNACCOR to also check for rows in the recommendations result set for objects that have been deleted but have entries in the real-time statistics tables (value 1). This means that if value 16 is **not** also chosen, rows for deleted objects are excluded from the recommendations result set.

4 Check whether rows that are in the DSNACCOR recommendations result set refer to objects that are in the exception table. For recommendations result set rows that have corresponding exception

table rows, copy the contents of the QUERYTYPE column of the exception table to the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set.

- 8 Check whether objects that have rows in the recommendations result set are restricted. Indicate the restricted status in the OBJECTSTATUS column of the result set.
- 16 For objects that are listed in the recommendations result set, check the SYSTABLESPACE or SYSINDEXES catalog tables to ensure that those objects have not been deleted (value 1). In result set rows for deleted objects, specify the word ORPHANED in the OBJECTSTATUS column.
- 32 Exclude rows from the DSNACCOR recommendations result set for index spaces for which the related table spaces have been recommended for REORG. Choosing this value causes DSNACCOR to perform the actions for values 1 and 2.
- 64 For index spaces that are listed in the DSNACCOR recommendations result set, check whether the related table spaces are listed in the exception table. For recommendations result set rows that have corresponding exception table rows, copy the contents of the QUERYTYPE column of the exception table to the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set.

ChkLvl is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 7 (values 1+2+4).

Criteria

Narrows the set of objects for which DSNACCOR makes recommendations. This value is the search condition of an SQL WHERE clause. *Criteria* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(4096). The default is that DSNACCOR makes recommendations for all table spaces and index spaces in the subsystem. The search condition can use any column in the result set and wildcards are allowed.

Restricted

A parameter that is reserved for future use. Specify the null value for this parameter. *Restricted* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(80).

CRUpdatedPagesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending a full image copy on a table space or index space. If the following condition is true for a table space, DSNACCOR recommends an image copy:

The total number of distinct updated pages, divided by the total number of preformatted pages (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesPct*.

See item 2 in Figure 149 on page 959. If both of the following conditions are true for an index space, DSNACCOR recommends an image copy:

- The total number of distinct updated pages, divided by the total number of preformatted pages (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesPct*.
- The number of active pages in the index space or partition is greater than *CRIndexSize*. See items 2 and 3 in Figure 150 on page 960.

CRUpdatedPagesPct is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 20.

CRChangesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending a full image copy on a table space or index space. If the following condition is true for a table space, DSNACCOR recommends an image copy:

The total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last image copy, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in a table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRChangesPct*.

See item 3 in Figure 149 on page 959. If both of the following conditions are true for an index table space, DSNACCOR recommends an image copy:

- The total number of insert and delete operations since the last image copy, divided by the total number of entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRChangesPct*.
- The number of active pages in the index space or partition is greater than *CRIndexSize*.

See items 2 and 4 in Figure 150 on page 960. *CRChangesPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 10.

CRDaySncLastCopy

Specifies a criterion for recommending a full image copy on a table space or index space. If the number of days since the last image copy is greater than this value, DSNACCOR recommends an image copy. (See item 1 in Figure 149 on page 959 and item 1 in Figure 150 on page 960.) *CRDaySncLastCopy* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 7.

ICRUpdatedPagesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending an incremental image copy on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOR recommends an incremental image copy:

The number of distinct pages that were updated since the last image copy, divided by the total number of active pages in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *ICRUpdatedPagesPct*.

(See item 1 in Figure 151 on page 960.) *ICRUpdatedPagesPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 1.

ICRChangesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending an incremental image copy on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOR recommends an incremental image copy:

The ratio of the number of insert, update, or delete operations since the last image copy, to the total number of rows or LOBs in a table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *ICRChangesPct*.

(See item 2 in Figure 151 on page 960.) *ICRChangesPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 1.

CRIndexSize

Specifies, when combined with *ICRUpdatedPagesPct* or *CRChangesPct*, a criterion for recommending a full image copy on an index space. (See items 2, 3, and 4 in Figure 150 on page 960.) *CRIndexSize* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 50.

RRTInsDelUpdPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The sum of insert, update, and delete operations since the last REORG, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTInsDelUpdPct*

(See item 1 in Figure 152 on page 960.) *RRTInsDelUpdPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 20.

RRTUnclustInsPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The number of unclustered insert operations, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTUnclustInsPct*.

(See item 2 in Figure 152 on page 960.) *RRTUnclustInsPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 10.

RRTDisorgLOBPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The number of imperfectly chunked LOBs, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTDisorgLOBPct*.

(See item 3 in Figure 152 on page 960.) *RRTDisorgLOBPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 10.

RRTMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If one of the following values is greater than *RRTMassDelLimit*, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

- The number of mass deletes from a segmented or LOB table space since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE
- The number of dropped tables from a nonsegmented table space since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE

(See item 5 in Figure 152 on page 960.) *RRTMassDelLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

RRTIndRefLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If the following value is greater than *RRTIndRefLimit*, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The total number of overflow records that were created since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

(See item 4 in Figure 152 on page 960.) *RRTIndRefLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 10.

RRIInsertDeletePct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIInsertDeletePct*, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted and deleted since the last REORG, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

(See item 1 in Figure 153 on page 961.) This is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 20.

RRIAppendInsertPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIAppendInsertPct*, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE with a key value greater than the maximum key value in the index space or partition, divided by the number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

(See item 2 in Figure 153 on page 961.) *RRIInsertDeletePct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 10.

RRIPseudoDeletePct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIPseudoDeletePct*, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The number of index entries that were pseudo-deleted since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE, divided by the number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

(See item 3 in Figure 153 on page 961.) *RRIPseudoDeletePct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 10.

RRIMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the number of mass deletes from an index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD, or LOAD REPLACE is greater than this value, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG.

(See item 4 in Figure 153 on page 961.) *RRIMassDelLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

RRILeafLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRILeafLimit*, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The number of index page splits that occurred since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE that resulted in a large separation between the parts of the original page, divided by the total number of active pages in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

(See item 5 in Figure 153 on page 961.) *RRILeafLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 10.

RRINumLevelsLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRINumLevelsLimit*, DSNACCOR recommends running REORG:

The number of levels in the index tree that were added or removed since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE

(See item 6 in Figure 153 on page 961.) *RRINumLevelsLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

SRTInsDelUpdPct

Specifies, when combined with *SRTInsDelUpdAbs*, a criterion for

recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOR recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of insert, update, or delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdPct*.
- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdAbs*.

(See items 1 and 2 in Figure 154 on page 961.) *SRTInsDelUpdPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 20.

SRTInsDelUpdAbs

Specifies, when combined with *SRTInsDelUpdPct*, a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOR recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdPct*.
- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdAbs*.

(See items 1 and 2 in Figure 154 on page 961.) *SRTInsDelUpdAbs* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

SRTMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOR recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of mass deletes from a table space or partition since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE is greater than *SRTMassDelLimit*.

(See item 3 in Figure 154 on page 961.) *SRTMassDelLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

SRIInsDelUpdPct

Specifies, when combined with *SRIInsDelUpdAbs*, a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on an index space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOR recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *SRIInsDelUpdPct*.
- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRIInsDelUpdAbs*.

(See items 1 and 2 in Figure 155 on page 961.) *SRIInsDelUpdPct* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 20.

SRIInsDelUpdAbs

Specifies, when combined with *SRIInsDelUpdPct*, a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on an index space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOR recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *SRIInsDelUpdPct*.
- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRIInsDelUpdAbs*, (See items 1 and 2 in Figure 155 on page 961.) *SRIInsDelUpdAbs* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

SRIMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on an index space. If the number of mass deletes from an index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE is greater than this value, DSNACCOR recommends running RUNSTATS.

(See item 3 in Figure 155 on page 961.) *SRIMassDelLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The **default** is 0.

ExtentLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space or index space. Also specifies that DSNACCOR is to warn the user that the table space or index space has used too many extents. DSNACCOR recommends running REORG, and altering data set allocations if the following condition is true:

- The number of physical extents in the index space, table space, or partition is greater than *ExtentLimit*.

(See Figure 156 on page 961.) *ExtentLimit* is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 50.

LastStatement

When DSNACCOR returns a severe error (return code 12), this field contains the SQL statement that was executing when the error occurred. *LastStatement* is an output parameter of type VARCHAR(8012).

ReturnCode

The return code from DSNACCOR execution. Possible values are:

- | | |
|----|--|
| 0 | DSNACCOR executed successfully. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains the approximate percentage of the total number of objects in the subsystem that have information in the real-time statistics tables. |
| 4 | DSNACCOR completed, but one or more input parameters might be incompatible. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains the input parameters that might be incompatible. |
| 8 | DSNACCOR terminated with errors. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains a message that describes the error. |
| 12 | DSNACCOR terminated with severe errors. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains a message that describes the error. The <i>LastStatement</i> parameter contains the SQL statement that was executing when the error occurred. |
| 14 | DSNACCOR terminated because it could not access one or more of the real-time statistics tables. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains the names of the tables that DSNACCOR could not access. |
| 15 | DSNACCOR terminated because it encountered a problem with one of the declared temporary tables that it defines and uses. |

16 DSNACCOR terminated because it could not define a declared temporary table. No table spaces were defined in the TEMP database.

NULL DSNACCOR terminated but could not set a return code.

ReturnCode is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

ErrorMsg

Contains information about DSNACCOR execution. If DSNACCOR runs successfully (*ReturnCode*=0), this field contains the approximate percentage of objects in the subsystem that are in the real-time statistics tables. Otherwise, this field contains error messages. *ErrorMsg* is an output parameter of type VARCHAR(1331).

IFCARetCode

Contains the return code from an IFI COMMAND call. DSNACCOR issues commands through the IFI interface to determine the status of objects. *IFCARetCode* is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

IFCAResCode

Contains the reason code from an IFI COMMAND call. *IFCAResCode* is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

ExcessBytes

Contains the number of bytes of information that did not fit in the IFI return area after an IFI COMMAND call. *ExcessBytes* is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

DSNACCOR formulas for recommending actions

The following formulas specify the criteria that DSNACCOR uses for its recommendations and warnings. The variables in italics are DSNACCOR input parameters. The capitalized variables are columns of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACESTATS or SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSPACESTATS tables. The numbers to the right of selected items are reference numbers for the option descriptions in “Option descriptions” on page 951.

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to recommend a full image copy on a table space.

```
((QueryType='COPY' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
ICType='F') AND
(COPLYLASTTIME IS NULL OR
REORGLASTTIME>COPLYLASTTIME OR
LOADRLASTTIME>COPLYLASTTIME OR
(CURRENT DATE-COPLYLASTTIME)>CRDaySncLastCopy OR 1
(COPYUPDATEDPAGES*100)/NACTIVE>CRUpdatedPagesPct OR 2
(COPYCHANGES*100)/TOTALROWS>CRChangesPct) 3
```

Figure 149. DSNACCOR formula for recommending a full image copy on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to recommend a full image copy on an index space.

```

((QueryType='COPY' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
(ICType='F' OR ICType='B')) AND
(COPYLASTTIME IS NULL OR
REORGLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
LOADRLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
REBUILDLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
(CURRENT DATE-COPYLASTTIME)>CRDaySncLastCopy OR
(NACTIVE>CRIndexSize AND
((COPYUPDATEDPAGES*100)/NACTIVE>CRUpdatedPagesPct OR
(COPYCHANGES*100)/TOTALENTRIES>CRChangesPct))

```

Figure 150. DSNACCOR formula for recommending a full image copy on an index space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to recommend an incremental image copy on a table space.

```

((QueryType='COPY' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
ICType='I' AND
COPYLASTTIME IS NOT NULL) AND
(LOADRLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
REORGLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
(COPYUPDATEDPAGES*100)/NACTIVE>ICRUpdatedPagesPct OR
(COPYCHANGES*100)/TOTALROWS>ICRChangesPct)

```

Figure 151. DSNACCOR formula for recommending an incremental image copy on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to recommend a REORG on a table space. If the table space is a LOB table space, and CHCKLVL=1, the formula does not include EXTENTS>ExtentLimit.

```

((QueryType='REORG' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL')) AND
(REORGLASTTIME IS NULL OR
((REORGINSERTS+REORGDELETES+REORGUPDATES)*100)/TOTALROWS>RRTInsDelUpdPct OR
(REORGUNCLUSTINS*100)/TOTALROWS>RRTUnclustInsPct OR
(REORGDISORGL*100)/TOTALROWS>RRTDisorgLOBPct OR
((REORGNearIndRef+REORGFarIndRef)*100)/TOTALROWS>RRTIndRefLimit OR
REORGMASDELETE>RRTMassDelLimit OR
EXTENTS>ExtentLimit)

```

Figure 152. DSNACCOR formula for recommending a REORG on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to recommend a REORG on an index space.

```

((QueryType='REORG' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL')) AND
(REORGLASTTIME IS NULL OR
((REORGINSERTS+REORGDELETES)*100)/TOTALENTRIES>RRIInsertDeletePct OR
(REORGAPPENDINSERT*100)/TOTALENTRIES>RRIAppendInsertPct OR
(REORGPSEUDODELETES*100)/TOTALENTRIES>RRIPseudoDeletePct OR
REORGMASDELETE>RRIMassDeleteLimit OR
(REORGLEAFFAR*100)/NACTIVE>RRILeafLimit OR
REORGNUMLEVELS>RRINumLevelsLimit OR
EXTENTS>ExtentLimit)

```

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

Figure 153. DSNACCOR formula for recommending a REORG on an index space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to recommend RUNSTATS on a table space.

```

((QueryType='RUNSTATS' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL')) AND
(STATSLASTTIME IS NULL OR
(((STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES+STATSUPDATES)*100)/TOTALROWS>SRTInsDelUpdPct AND
(STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES+STATSUPDATES)>SRTInsDelUpdAbs) OR
STATSMASDELETE>SRTMassDeleteLimit)

```

1
2
3

Figure 154. DSNACCOR formula for recommending RUNSTATS on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to recommend RUNSTATS on an index space.

```

((QueryType='RUNSTATS' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL')) AND
(STATSLASTTIME IS NULL OR
(((STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES)*100)/TOTALENTRIES>SRIInsDelUpdPct AND
(STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES)>SRIInsDelUpdPct) OR
STATSMASDELETE>SRIInsDelUpdAbs)

```

1
2
3

Figure 155. DSNACCOR formula for recommending RUNSTATS on an index space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOR uses to that too many index space or table space extents have been used.

```

EXTENTS>ExtentLimit

```

Figure 156. DSNACCOR formula for warning that too many data set extents for a table space or index space are used

Using an exception table

An exception table is an optional, user-created DB2 table that you can use to place information in the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set. You can put any information in the INEXCEPTTABLE column, but the most common use of this column is to filter the recommendations result set. Each row in the exception table represents an object for which you want to provide information for the recommendations result set.

To create the exception table, execute a CREATE TABLE statement similar to the following one. You can include other columns in the exception table, but you must include at least the columns that are shown.

```
CREATE TABLE DSNACC.EXCEPT_TBL
  (DBNAME CHAR(8) NOT NULL,
   NAME CHAR(8) NOT NULL,
   QUERYTYPE CHAR(40))
CCSID EBCDIC;
```

The meanings of the columns are:

DBNAME

The database name for an object in the exception table.

NAME

The table space name or index space name for an object in the exception table.

QUERYTYPE

The information that you want to place in the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set.

If you put a null value in this column, DSNACCOR puts the value YES in the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set row for the object that matches the DBNAME and NAME values.

Recommendation: If you plan to put many rows in the exception table, create a nonunique index on DBNAME, NAME, and QUERYTYPE.

After you create the exception table, insert a row for each object for which you want to include information in the INEXCEPTTABLE column.

Example: Suppose that you want the INEXCEPTTABLE column to contain the string 'IRRELEVANT' for table space STAFF in database DSNDB04. You also want the INEXCEPTTABLE column to contain 'CURRENT' for table space DSN8S10D in database DSN8D10A. Execute these INSERT statements:

```
INSERT INTO DSNACC.EXCEPT_TBL VALUES('DSNDB04 ', 'STAFF ', 'IRRELEVANT');
INSERT INTO DSNACC.EXCEPT_TBL VALUES('DSN8D10A', 'DSN8S10D', 'CURRENT');
```

To use the contents of INEXCEPTTABLE for filtering, include a condition that involves the INEXCEPTTABLE column in the search condition that you specify in your *Criteria* input parameter.

Example: Suppose that you want to include all rows for database DSNDB04 in the recommendations result set, except for those rows that contain the string 'IRRELEVANT' in the INEXCEPTTABLE column. You might include the following search condition in your *Criteria* input parameter:

```
DBNAME='DSNDB04' AND INEXCEPTTABLE<>'IRRELEVANT'
```

Example

The following COBOL example that shows variable declarations and an SQL CALL for obtaining recommendations for objects in databases DSN8D10A and DSN8D10L. This example also outlines the steps that you need to perform to retrieve the two result sets that DSNACCOR returns.

```
WORKING-STORAGE SECTION.
:
*****
* DSNACCOR PARAMETERS *
*****
```

```

01 QUERYTYPE.
   49 QUERYTYPE-LN          PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 40.
   49 QUERYTYPE-DTA        PICTURE X(40)  VALUE 'ALL'.
01 OBJECTTYPE.
   49 OBJECTTYPE-LN         PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 3.
   49 OBJECTTYPE-DTA        PICTURE X(3)   VALUE 'ALL'.
01 ICTYPE.
   49 ICTYPE-LN             PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 1.
   49 ICTYPE-DTA            PICTURE X(1)   VALUE 'B'.
01 STATSSHEMA.
   49 STATSSHEMA-LN         PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 128.
   49 STATSSHEMA-DTA        PICTURE X(128)  VALUE 'SYSIBM'.
01 CATLGSHEMA.
   49 CATLGSHEMA-LN         PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 128.
   49 CATLGSHEMA-DTA        PICTURE X(128)  VALUE 'SYSIBM'.
01 LOCALSCHEMA.
   49 LOCALSCHEMA-LN        PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 128.
   49 LOCALSCHEMA-DTA       PICTURE X(128)  VALUE 'DSNACC'.
01 CHKLVL
01 CRITERIA.
   49 CRITERIA-LN           PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 4096.
   49 CRITERIA-DTA         PICTURE X(4096)  VALUE SPACES.
01 RESTRICTED.
   49 RESTRICTED-LN         PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 80.
   49 RESTRICTED-DTA        PICTURE X(80)   VALUE SPACES.
01 CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT
01 CRCHANGESPCT
01 CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY
01 ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT
01 ICRCHANGESPCT
01 CRINDEXSIZE
01 RRTINSDELUPDPCT
01 RRTUNCLUSTINSPCT
01 RRTDISORGL0BPCT
01 RRTMASSDELLIMIT
01 RRTINDREFLIMIT
01 RRIINSERTDELETEPCT
01 RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT
01 RRIPEUDODELETEPCT
01 RRIMASSDELLIMIT
01 RRILEAFLIMIT
01 RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT
01 SRTINSDELUPDPCT
01 SRTINSDELUPDABS
01 SRTMASSDELLIMIT
01 SRIINSDELUPDPCT
01 SRIINSDELUPDABS
01 SRIMASSDELLIMIT
01 EXTENTLIMIT
01 LASTSTATEMENT.
   49 LASTSTATEMENT-LN      PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 8012.
   49 LASTSTATEMENT-DTA     PICTURE X(8012)  VALUE SPACES.
01 RETURNCODE
01 ERRORMSG.
   49 ERRORMSG-LN           PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 1331.
   49 ERRORMSG-DTA          PICTURE X(1331)  VALUE SPACES.
01 IFCARETCODE
01 IFCARESCODE
01 EXCESSBYTES

*****
* INDICATOR VARIABLES.          *
* INITIALIZE ALL NON-ESSENTIAL INPUT *
* VARIABLES TO -1, TO INDICATE THAT THE *
* INPUT VALUE IS NULL.          *
*****
01 QUERYTYPE-IND          PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 OBJECTTYPE-IND         PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.

```

```

01 ICTYPE-IND          PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 STATSSHEMA-IND     PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CATLGSCHEMA-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 LOCALSCHEMA-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CHKLVL-IND        PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRITERIA-IND       PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RESTRICTED-IND     PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRCHANGESPCT-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 ICRCHANGESPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRINDEXSIZE-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTDISORGLPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTMASSDELLIMIT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTINDREFLIMIT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIINSERTDELETEPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIPEUDODELETEPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIASSDELLIMIT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRILEAFLIMIT-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRTINSDELUPDABS-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRTMASSDELLIMIT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRIINSDELUPDPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRIINSDELUPDABS-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRIMASSDELLIMIT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 EXTENTLIMIT-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 LASTSTATEMENT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 RETURNCODE-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 ERRORMSG-IND      PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 IFCARETCODE-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 IFCARESCODE-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 EXCESSBYTES-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.

```

PROCEDURE DIVISION.

:

```

*****
* SET VALUES FOR DSNACCOR INPUT PARAMETERS: *
* - USE THE CHKLVL PARAMETER TO CAUSE DSNACCOR TO CHECK *
* FOR ORPHANED OBJECTS AND INDEX SPACES WITHOUT *
* TABLE SPACES, BUT INCLUDE THOSE OBJECTS IN THE *
* RECOMMENDATIONS RESULT SET (CHKLVL=1+2+16=19) *
* - USE THE CRITERIA PARAMETER TO CAUSE DSNACCOR TO *
* MAKE RECOMMENDATIONS ONLY FOR OBJECTS IN DATABASES *
* DSN8D10A AND DSN8D10L. *
* - FOR THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS, SET THESE VALUES, *
* WHICH ARE LOWER THAN THE DEFAULTS: *
* CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT 4 *
* CRCHANGESPCT 2 *
* RRTINSDELUPDPCT 2 *
* RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT 5 *
* RRTDISORGLPCT 5 *
* RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT 5 *
* SRTINSDELUPDPCT 5 *
* SRIINSDELUPDPCT 5 *
* EXTENTLIMIT 3 *
*****

```

```

MOVE 19 TO CHKLVL.
MOVE SPACES TO CRITERIA-DTA.
MOVE 'DBNAME = 'DSN8D10A'' OR DBNAME = 'DSN8D10L''
TO CRITERIA-DTA.
MOVE 46 TO CRITERIA-LN.
MOVE 4 TO CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT.

```

```

MOVE 2 TO CRCHANGESPCT.
MOVE 2 TO RRTINSDELUPDPCT.
MOVE 5 TO RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT.
MOVE 5 TO RRTDISORGLBPCT.
MOVE 5 TO RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT.
MOVE 5 TO SRTINSDELUPDPCT.
MOVE 5 TO SRIINSDELUPDPCT.
MOVE 3 TO EXTENTLIMIT.
*****
* INITIALIZE OUTPUT PARAMETERS *
*****
MOVE SPACES TO LASTSTATEMENT-DTA.
MOVE 1 TO LASTSTATEMENT-LN.
MOVE 0 TO RETURNCODE-02.
MOVE SPACES TO ERRORMSG-DTA.
MOVE 1 TO ERRORMSG-LN.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARETCODE.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARESCODE.
MOVE 0 TO EXCESSBYTES.
*****
* SET THE INDICATOR VARIABLES TO 0 FOR NON-NULL INPUT *
* PARAMETERS (PARAMETERS FOR WHICH YOU DO NOT WANT *
* DSNACCOR TO USE DEFAULT VALUES) AND FOR OUTPUT *
* PARAMETERS. *
*****
MOVE 0 TO CHKLVL-IND.
MOVE 0 TO CRITERIA-IND.
MOVE 0 TO CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO CRCHANGESPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRTDISORGLBPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO SRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO SRIINSDELUPDPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO EXTENTLIMIT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO LASTSTATEMENT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RETURNCODE-IND.
MOVE 0 TO ERRORMSG-IND.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARETCODE-IND.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARESCODE-IND.
MOVE 0 TO EXCESSBYTES-IND.
:
:
*****
* CALL DSNACCOR *
*****
EXEC SQL
CALL SYSPROC.DSNACCOR
(:QUERYTYPE           :QUERYTYPE-IND,
:OBJECTTYPE           :OBJECTTYPE-IND,
:ICTYPE               :ICTYPE-IND,
:STATSSHEMA          :STATSSHEMA-IND,
:CATLGSHEMA          :CATLGSHEMA-IND,
:LOCALSCHEMA         :LOCALSCHEMA-IND,
:CHKLVL              :CHKLVL-IND,
:CRITERIA            :CRITERIA-IND,
:RESTRICTED          :RESTRICTED-IND,
:CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT  :CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND,
:CRCHANGESPCT       :CRCHANGESPCT-IND,
:CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY   :CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY-IND,
:ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT :ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND,
:ICRCHANGESPCT      :ICRCHANGESPCT-IND,
:CRINDEXSIZE         :CRINDEXSIZE-IND,
:RRTINSDELUPDPCT    :RRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND,
:RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT  :RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT-IND,
:RRTDISORGLBPCT     :RRTDISORGLBPCT-IND,
:RRTMASSEDELLIMIT   :RRTMASSEDELLIMIT-IND,

```

```

:RRTINDREFLIMIT      :RRTINDREFLIMIT-IND,
:RRIINSERTDELETEPCT :RRIINSERTDELETEPCT-IND,
:RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT :RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT-IND,
:RRIPSEUDODELETEPCT :RRIPSEUDODELETEPCT-IND,
:RRIMASSDELLIMIT    :RRIMASSDELLIMIT-IND,
:RRILEAFLIMIT       :RRILEAFLIMIT-IND,
:RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT :RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT-IND,
:SRTINSDELUPDPCT    :SRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND,
:SRTINSDELUPDABS    :SRTINSDELUPDABS-IND,
:SRTMASSDELLIMIT    :SRTMASSDELLIMIT-IND,
:SRIINSDELUPDPCT    :SRIINSDELUPDPCT-IND,
:SRIINSDELUPDABS    :SRIINSDELUPDABS-IND,
:SRIMASSDELLIMIT    :SRIMASSDELLIMIT-IND,
:EXTENTLIMIT        :EXTENTLIMIT-IND,
:LASTSTATEMENT      :LASTSTATEMENT-IND,
:RETURNCODE         :RETURNCODE-IND,
:ERRORMSG           :ERRORMSG-IND,
:IFCARETCODE        :IFCARETCODE-IND,
:IFCARESCODE        :IFCARESCODE-IND,
:EXCESSBYTES        :EXCESSBYTES-IND)
END-EXEC.
*****
* ASSUME THAT THE SQL CALL RETURNED +466, WHICH MEANS THAT *
* RESULT SETS WERE RETURNED. RETRIEVE RESULT SETS.          *
*****
* LINK EACH RESULT SET TO A LOCATOR VARIABLE
  EXEC SQL ASSOCIATE LOCATORS (:LOC1, :LOC2)
  WITH PROCEDURE SYSPROC.DSNACCOR
  END-EXEC.
* LINK A CURSOR TO EACH RESULT SET
  EXEC SQL ALLOCATE C1 CURSOR FOR RESULT SET :LOC1
  END-EXEC.
  EXEC SQL ALLOCATE C2 CURSOR FOR RESULT SET :LOC2
  END-EXEC.
* PERFORM FETCHES USING C1 TO RETRIEVE ALL ROWS FROM FIRST RESULT SET
* PERFORM FETCHES USING C2 TO RETRIEVE ALL ROWS FROM SECOND RESULT SET

```

Figure 157. Example of DSNACCOR invocation

Output

If DSNACCOR executes successfully, in addition to the output parameters described in “Option descriptions” on page 951, DSNACCOR returns two result sets.

The first result set contains the results from IFI COMMAND calls that DSNACCOR makes. The following table shows the format of the first result set.

Table 147. Result set row for first DSNACCOR result set

Column name	Data type	Contents
RS_SEQUENCE	INTEGER	Sequence number of the output line
RS_DATA	CHAR(80)	A line of command output

The second result set contains DSNACCOR's recommendations. This result set contains one or more rows for a table space or index space. A nonpartitioned table space or nonpartitioning index space can have at most one row in the result set. A partitioned table space or partitioning index space can have at most one row for each partition. A table space, index space, or partition has a row in the result set if both of the following conditions are true:

- If the *Criteria* input parameter contains a search condition, the search condition is true for the table space, index space, or partition.
- DSNACCOR recommends at least one action for the table space, index space, or partition.

The following table shows the columns of a result set row.

Table 148. Result set row for second DSNACCOR result set

Column name	Data type	Description
DBNAME	CHAR(8)	Name of the database that contains the object.
NAME	CHAR(8)	Table space or index space name.
PARTITION	INTEGER	Data set number or partition number.
OBJECTTYPE	CHAR(2)	DB2 object type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TS for a table space • IX for an index space
OBJECTSTATUS	CHAR(36)	Status of the object: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ORPHANED, if the object is an index space with no corresponding table space, or if the object does not exist • If the object is in a restricted state, one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – TS=<i>restricted-state</i>, if OBJECTTYPE is TS – IX=<i>restricted-state</i>, if OBJECTTYPE is IX <i>restricted-state</i> is one of the status codes that appear in DISPLAY DATABASE output. See <i>DB2 Command Reference</i> for details. • A, if the object is in an advisory state. • L, if the object is a logical partition, but not in an advisory state. • AL, if the object is a logical partition and in an advisory state.
IMAGECOPY	CHAR(3)	COPY recommendation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If OBJECTTYPE is TS: FUL (full image copy), INC (incremental image copy), or NO • If OBJECTTYPE is IX: YES or NO
RUNSTATS	CHAR(3)	RUNSTATS recommendation: YES or NO.
EXTENTS	CHAR(3)	Indicates whether the data sets for the object have exceeded <i>ExtentLimit</i> : YES or NO.
REORG	CHAR(3)	REORG recommendation: YES or NO.
INEXCEPTTABLE	CHAR(40)	A string that contains one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Text that you specify in the QUERYTYPE column of the exception table. • YES, if you put a row in the exception table for the object that this result set row represents, but you specify NULL in the QUERYTYPE column. • NO, if the exception table exists but does not have a row for the object that this result set row represents. • Null, if the exception table does not exist, or if the <i>ChkLvl</i> input parameter does not include the value 4.
ASSOCIATEDTS	CHAR(8)	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and the <i>ChkLvl</i> input parameter includes the value 2, this value is the name of the table space that is associated with the index space. Otherwise null.

Table 148. Result set row for second DSNACCOR result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
COPYLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last full image copy on the object. Null if COPY was never run, or if the last COPY execution was terminated.
LOADRLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last LOAD REPLACE on the object. Null if LOAD REPLACE was never run, or if the last LOAD REPLACE execution was terminated.
REBUILDLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last REBUILD INDEX on the object. Null if REBUILD INDEX was never run, or if the last REBUILD INDEX execution was terminated.
CRUPDPGSPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS or IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the ratio of distinct updated pages to preformatted pages, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
CRCPYCHGPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS and IMAGECOPY is YES, the ratio of the total number insert, update, and delete operations since the last image copy to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. If OBJECTTYPE is IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert and delete operations since the last image copy to the total number of entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
CRDAYSCELSTCPY	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS or IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the number of days since the last image copy. Otherwise null.
CRINDEXSIZE	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the number of active pages in the index space or partition. Otherwise null.
REORGLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last REORG on the object. Null if REORG was never run, or if the last REORG execution was terminated.
RRTINSDELUPDPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the sum of insert, update, and delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
RRTUNCINSPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of unclustered insert operations to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
RRTDISORGLOBPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of imperfectly chunked LOBs to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
RRTMASSDELETE	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS, REORG is YES, and the table space is a segmented table space or LOB table space, the number of mass deletes since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE. If OBJECTTYPE is TS, REORG is YES, and the table space is nonsegmented, the number of dropped tables since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.
RRTINDREF	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS, REORG is YES, the ratio of the total number of overflow records that were created since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.

Table 148. Result set row for second DSNACCOR result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
RRIINSDELPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert and delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
RRIAPPINSPECT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE that had a key value greater than the maximum key value in the index space or partition, to the number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
RRIPSDELDPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of index entries that were pseudo-deleted (the RID entry was marked as deleted) since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE to the number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
RRIMASSDELETE	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the number of mass deletes from the index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD, or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.
RRILEAF	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of index page splits that occurred since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE in which the higher part of the split page was far from the location of the original page, to the total number of active pages in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
RRINUMLEVELS	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the number of levels in the index tree that were added or removed since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.
STATSLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last RUNSTATS on the object. Null if RUNSTATS was never run, or if the last RUNSTATS execution was terminated.
SRTINSDELUPDPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS and RUNSTATS is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition, to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
SRTINSDELUPDABS	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS and RUNSTATS is YES, the total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition. Otherwise null.
SRTMASSDELETE	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is TS and RUNSTATS is YES, the number of mass deletes from the table space or partition since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.
SRIINSDELPCT	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and RUNSTATS is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on the index space or partition, to the total number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.
SRIINSDELABS	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and RUNSTATS is YES, the number insert and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on the index space or partition. Otherwise null.

Table 148. Result set row for second DSNACCOR result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
SRIMASSDELETE	INTEGER	If OBJECTTYPE is IX and RUNSTATS is YES, the number of mass deletes from the index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise, this value is null.
TOTALEXTENTS	SMALLINT	If EXTENTS is YES, the number of physical extents in the table space, index space, or partition. Otherwise, this value is null.



DSNACCOX stored procedure

The DB2 real-time statistics stored procedure (DSNACCOX) is a sample stored procedure that makes recommendations to help you maintain your DB2 databases.



The DSNACCOX stored procedure represents an enhancement to the DSNACCOR stored procedure and provides the following improvements:

- Improved recommendations
- New fields
- New formulas
- The option to chose the formula for making recommendations

In particular, DSNACCOX performs the following actions:

- Recommends when you should reorganize, image copy, or update statistics for table spaces or index spaces
- Indicates when a data set has exceeded a specified threshold for the number of extents that it occupies.
- Indicates whether objects are in a restricted state

DSNACCOX uses data from catalog tables, including real-time statistics tables, to make its recommendations. DSNACCOX provides its recommendations in a result set.

DSNACCOX uses the set of criteria that are shown in “DSNACCOX formulas for recommending actions” on page 983 to evaluate table spaces and index spaces. By default, DSNACCOX evaluates **all** table spaces and index spaces in the subsystem that have entries in the real-time statistics tables. However, you can override this default through input parameters.

Important information about DSNACCOX recommendations:

- DSNACCOX makes recommendations based on general formulas that require input from the user about the maintenance policies for a subsystem. These recommendations might not be accurate for every installation.
- If the real-time statistics tables contain information for only a small percentage of your DB2 subsystem, the recommendations that DSNACCOX makes might not be accurate for the entire subsystem.
- Before you perform any action that DSNACCOX recommends, ensure that the object for which DSNACCOX makes the recommendation is available, and that

the recommended action can be performed on that object. For example, REORG might be recommended for an object, but the object might be stopped.

Environment

DSNACCOX must run in a WLM-established stored procedure address space. The DSNWLM_GENERAL core WLM environment is a suitable environment for this stored procedure.

DSNACCOX is installed and configured by installation job DSNTIJRT, which binds the package for DSNACCOX with isolation UR to avoid lock contention.

Authorization required

To execute the CALL DSNACCOX statement, the owner of the package or plan that contains the CALL statement must have one or more of the following privileges on each package that the stored procedure uses:

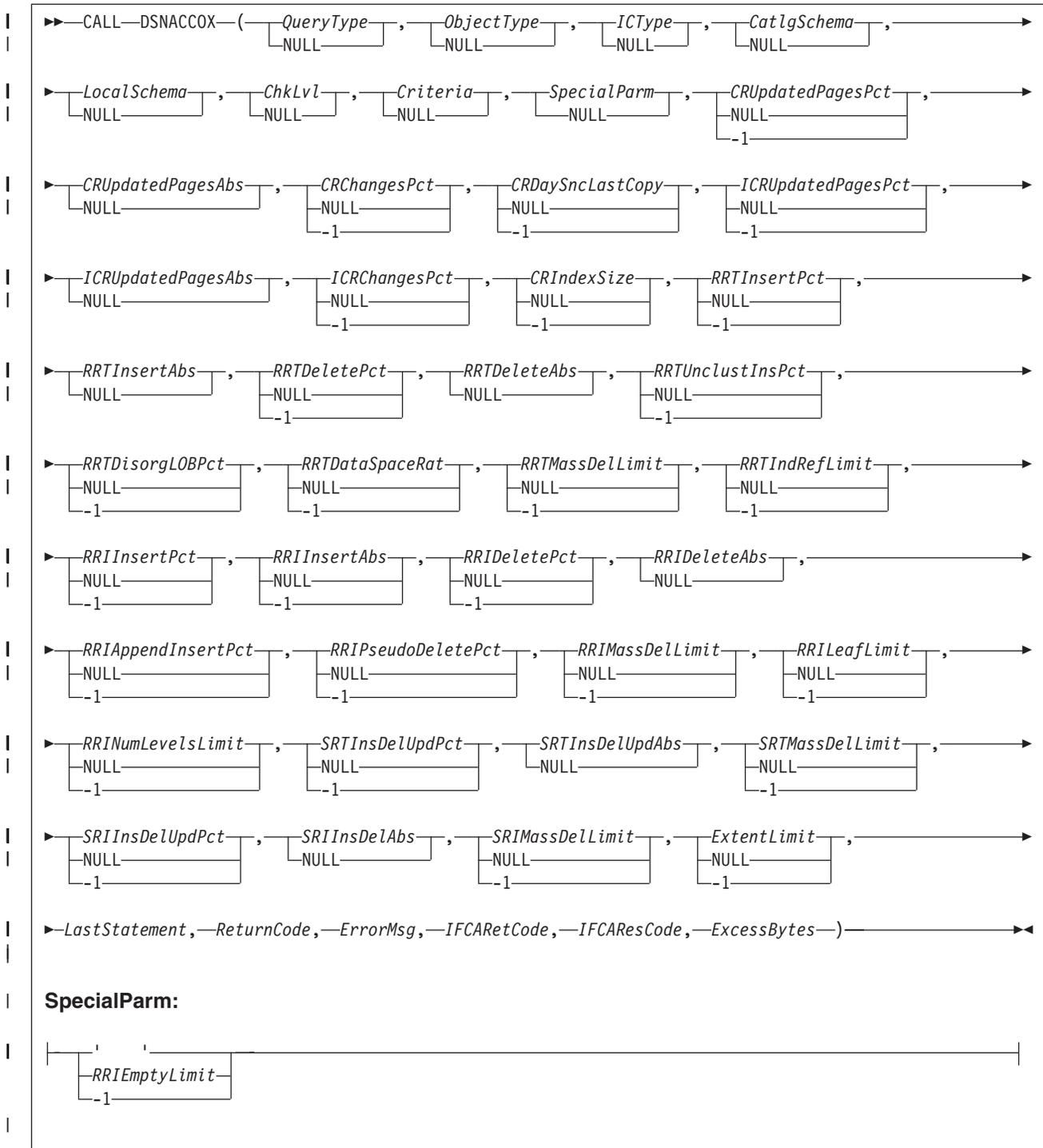
- The EXECUTE privilege on the package for DSNACCOX
- Ownership of the package
- PACKADM authority for the package collection
- SYSADM authority

The owner of the package or plan that contains the CALL statement must also have:

- SELECT authority on catalog tables
- The DISPLAY system privilege

Syntax diagram

The following syntax diagram shows the CALL statement for invoking DSNACCOX. Because the linkage convention for DSNACCOX is GENERAL WITH NULLS, if you pass parameters in host variables, you need to include a null indicator with every host variable. Null indicators for input host variables must be initialized before you execute the CALL statement.



Option descriptions

In the following option descriptions, the default value for an input parameter is the value that DSNACCOX uses if you specify a null value.

QueryType

Specifies the types of actions that DSNACCOX recommends. This field contains one or more of the following values. Each value is enclosed in single quotation marks and separated from other values by a space.

ALL Makes recommendations for all of the following actions.

COPY Makes a recommendation on whether to perform an image copy.

RUNSTATS

Makes a recommendation on whether to perform RUNSTATS.

REORG

Makes a recommendation on whether to perform REORG. Choosing this value causes DSNACCOX to process the EXTENTS value also.

EXTENTS

Indicates when data sets have exceeded a user-specified extents limit.

RESTRICT

Indicates which objects are in a restricted state.

DSNACCOX recommends REORG on the table space when one of the following conditions is true, and REORG (or ALL) is also specified for the value of QUERYTYPE:

- The table space is in REORG-pending status.
- The table space is in advisory REORG-pending status as the result of an ALTER TABLE statement.

DSNACCOX recommends REORG on the index when on the following conditions is true and REORG (or ALL) is also specified for the value of QUERYTYPE::

- The index is in REORG-pending status.
- The index is in advisory REORG-pending as the result of an ALTER TABLE statement.

DSNACCOX recommends FULL COPY on the table space when on the following conditions is true and COPY (or ALL) is also specified for the value of QUERYTYPE::

- The table space is in COPY-pending status.
- The table space is in informational COPY-pending status.

DSNACCOX recommends FULL COPY on the index when on the following conditions is true and COPY (or ALL) is also specified for the value of QUERYTYPE: and SYSINDEX.COPY='Y':

- The index is in COPY-pending status.
- The index is in informational COPY-pending status.

QueryType is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(40). The default value is ALL.

ObjectType

Specifies the types of objects for which DSNACCOX recommends actions:

ALL Table spaces and index spaces.

TS Table spaces only.

IX Index spaces only.

ObjectType is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(3). The default value is ALL.

ICType

Specifies the types of image copies for which DSNACCOX is to make recommendations:

- F** Full image copy.
- I** Incremental image copy. This value is valid for table spaces only.
- B** Full image copy or incremental image copy.

ICType is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(1). The default is **B**.

CatlgSchema

Specifies the qualifier for DB2 catalog table names. *CatlgSchema* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(128). The default value is **SYSIBM**.

LocalSchema

Specifies the qualifier for the names of local tables that DSNACCOX references. *LocalSchema* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(128). The default value is **DSNACC**.

ChkLvl

Specifies the types of checking that DSNACCOX performs, and indicates whether to include objects that fail those checks in the DSNACCOX recommendations result set. This value is the sum of any combination of the following values:

- 0** DSNACCOX performs none of the following actions.
- 1** Exclude rows from the DSNACCOX recommendations result set for RUNSTATS on:
 - Index spaces that are related to tables that are defined as VOLATILE.
 - Table spaces for which all of the tables are defined as VOLATILE.
- 2** Choosing this value causes DSNACCOX to over-ride the default SSDMultiplier when making a REORG recommendation for a table space or table space partition. The default value is 2 times RRTUnclustInsPct. If CHKLVL 2 is specified RRTUnclustInsPct * 5 is used.
- 4** Check whether rows that are in the DSNACCOX recommendations result set refer to objects that are in the exception table. For recommendations result set rows that have corresponding exception table rows, copy the contents of the QUERYTYPE column of the exception table to the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set.
- 8** Check whether objects that have rows in the recommendations result set are restricted. Indicate the restricted status in the OBJECTSTATUS column of the result set.

Important: A row is inserted for objects in the restricted state.
- 16** Reserved for future use.
- 32** Exclude rows from the DSNACCOX recommendations result set for index spaces for which the related table spaces have been recommended for REORG or RUNSTATS.
- 64** For index spaces that are listed in the DSNACCOX recommendations result set, check whether the related table spaces are listed in the exception table. For recommendations result set rows that have corresponding exception table rows, copy the contents of the QUERYTYPE column of the exception table to the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set. Selecting CHKLVL64 also activates CHKLVLs 32 and 4.

ChkLol is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 5 (values 1+4).

Criteria

Narrows the set of objects for which DSNACCOX makes recommendations. This value is the search condition of an SQL WHERE clause. *Criteria* is an input parameter of type VARCHAR(4096). The default is that DSNACCOX makes recommendations for all table spaces and index spaces in the subsystem. The search condition can use any column in the result set and wildcards are allowed.

SpeicalParm

SpeicalParm is an input of type CHAR(160), broken into 4 byte sections to accommodate new options. An empty 4 bytes of EBCDIC blanks indicates that the default is used for the option. An EBCDIC character string of '-1', indicates that this option is not used.

RRIEmptyLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIEmptyLimit*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG: The number of pseudo-empty leaf pages that were created since the last CREATE, REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE, divided by the total number of leaf pages in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage.

RRIEmptyLimit is an input parameter of type CHAR 4. The default value is ' 10'. A plus sign (+) preceding the value indicates that the DSNACCOX stored procedure returns the value in the result set. A negative value turns off this criterion.

The ratio of pseudo-empty pages to the total number of leaf pages is returned in column *RRIPemptyPCT* of the result set.

CRUpdatedPagesPct

Specifies, when combined with *CRUpdatedPagesAbs*, a criterion for recommending a full image copy on a table space or index space. If both of the following conditions are true for a table space, DSNACCOX recommends an image copy:

- The total number of distinct updated pages, divided by the total number of preformatted pages (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesPct*.
- The total number of distinct updates pages is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesABS*.

If all of the following conditions are true for an index space, DSNACCOX recommends an image copy:

- The total number of distinct updated pages, divided by the total number of preformatted pages (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesPct*.
- The total number of distinct updates pages is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesABS*.
- The number of active pages in the index space or partition is greater than *CRIndexSize*.

CRUpdatedPagesPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 20.0. A negative value turns off both this criteria and *CRUpdatedPagesABS*.

CRUpdatedPagesABS

Specifies, when combined with *CRUpdatedPagesPct*, a criterion for

recommending a full image copy on a table space or index space. If both of the following conditions are true for a table space, DSNACCOX recommends an image copy:

- The total number of distinct updated pages, divided by the total number of preformatted pages (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesPct*.
- The total number of distinct updated pages is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesAbs*.

If all of the following conditions are true for an index space, DSNACCOX recommends an image copy:

- The total number of distinct updated pages, divided by the total number of preformatted pages (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesPct*.
- The total number of distinct updates pages is greater than *CRUpdatedPagesAbs*.
- The number of active pages in the index space or partition is greater than *CRIndexSize*.

CRUpdatedPagesAbs is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default value is 0.

CRChangesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending a full image copy on a table space or index space. If the following condition is true for a table space, DSNACCOX recommends an image copy:

The total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last image copy, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in a table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRChangesPct*.

If both of the following conditions are true for an index table space, DSNACCOX recommends an image copy:

- The total number of insert and delete operations since the last image copy, divided by the total number of entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *CRChangesPct*.
- The number of active pages in the index space or partition is greater than *CRIndexSize*.

CRChangesPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 10.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

CRDaySncLastCopy

Specifies a criterion for recommending a full image copy on a table space or index space. If the number of days since the last image copy is greater than this value, DSNACCOX recommends an image copy.

CRDaySncLastCopy is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 7. A negative value turns off this criterion.

ICRUpdatedPagesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending an incremental image copy on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends an incremental image copy:

- The number of distinct pages that were updated since the last image copy, divided by the total number of active pages in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *ICRUpdatedPagesPct*.

- The number of distinct pages that were updated since last image copy is greater than *ICRUpdatedPagesAbs*.

ICRUpdatedPagesPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default value is 1.0. A negative value turns off this criterion and *ICRUpdatedPagesAbs*.

ICRUpdatedPagesAbs

Specifies, when combined with *ICRUpdatedPagesPct*, a criterion for recommending an incremental image copy on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends an incremental image copy:

- The number of distinct pages that were updated since the last image copy, divided by the total number of active pages in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *ICRUpdatedPagesPct*.
- The number of distinct pages that were updated since last image copy is greater than *ICRUpdatedPagesAbs*.

ICRUpdatedPagesAbs is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

ICRChangesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending an incremental image copy on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOX recommends an incremental image copy:

The ratio of the number of insert, update, or delete operations since the last image copy, to the total number of rows or LOBs in a table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *ICRChangesPct*.

ICRChangesPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 1.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

CRIndexSize

Specifies the minimum index size before checking the *ICRUpdatedPagesPct* or *ICRChangesPct* criteria for recommending a full image copy on an index space.

CRIndexSize is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 50. A negative value turns off this criterion and *ICRChangesPct*.

RRTInsertsPct

Specifies, when combined with *RRTInsertsAbs*, a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of insert, update, and delete operations since the last REORG, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTInsertsPct*
- The sum of insert operations since the last REORG is greater than *RRTInsertsAbs*.

RRTInsertsPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default value is 25.0. A negative value turns off this criterion and *RRTInsertsAbs*.

RRTInsertsAbs

Specifies, when combined with *RRTInsertsPct*, a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of insert operations since the last REORG, divided by the total number of rows or in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTInsertsPct*
- The sum of insert operations since the last REORG is greater than *RRTInsertsAbs*.

RRTInsertsAbs is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default value is 0.

RRTDeletesPct

Specifies, when combined with *RRTDeletesAbs*, a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of delete operations since the last REORG, divided by the total number of rows or in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTDeletesPct*
- The sum of insert operations since the last REORG is greater than *RRTDeleteAbs*.

RRTInsertsPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default value is 25.0. A negative value turns off this criterion and *RRTDeletesAbs*.

RRTDeletesAbs

Specifies, when combined with *RRTDeletesPct*, a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of delete operations since the last REORG, divided by the total number of rows or in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTDeletesPct*
- The sum of delete operations since the last REORG is greater than *RRTDeletesAbs*.

RRTDeletesAbs is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default value is 0.

RRTUnclustInsPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The number of unclustered insert operations, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTUnclustInsPct*.

RRTUnclustInsPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 10.0. A negative value will turn off this criterion.

RRTDisorgLOBPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The number of imperfectly chunked LOBs, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRTDisorgLOBPct*.

RRTDisorgLOBPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 50.0. A negative value will turn off this criterion.

RRTDataSpaceRat

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on table space for space reclamation. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The SPACE allocated is greater than *RRTDataSpaceRat* multiplied by the actual space used. ($SPACE > RRTDataSpaceRat \times (DATASIZE/1024)$)

RRTDataSpaceRat is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default value is 2.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRTMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If one of the following values is greater than *RRTMassDelLimit*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The number of mass deletes from a segmented or LOB table space since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE
- The number of dropped tables from a nonsegmented table space since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE

RRTMassDelLimit is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

RRTIndRefLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space. If the following value is greater than *RRTIndRefLimit*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The total number of overflow records that were created since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

RRTIndRefLimit is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 5.0 in data sharing environment and 10.0 in a non-data sharing environment.

RRInsertsPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRInsertsPct*.
- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG is greater than *RRInsertsAbs*.

RRInsertsPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 30.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRInsertsAbs

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRInsertsPct*.
- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG is greater than *RRInsertsAbs*.

RRInsertsAbs is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRIDeletesPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIDeletesPct*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRIDeletesPct*.
- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG is greater than *RRIDeletesAbs*.

This is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 30.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRIDeletesAbs

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIDeletesPct*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *RRIDeletesPct*.
- The sum of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG is greater than *RRIDeletesAbs*.

This is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRIAppendInsertPct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIAppendInsertPct*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE with a key value greater than the maximum key value in the index space or partition, divided by the number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

RRIInsertDeletePct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 20.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRIPseudoDeletePct

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRIPseudoDeletePct*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The number of index entries that were pseudo-deleted since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE, divided by the number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

RRIPseudoDeletePct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 5.0 in data sharing and 10.0 in non data sharing environments. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRIMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the number of mass deletes from an index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD, or LOAD REPLACE is greater than this value, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG.

RRIMassDelLimit is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRILeafLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRILeafLimit*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The number of index page splits that occurred since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE in which the higher part of the split page was far from the location of the original page, divided by the total number of active pages in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage)

RRILeafLimit is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 10.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

RRINumLevelsLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on an index space. If the following value is greater than *RRINumLevelsLimit*, DSNACCOX recommends running REORG:

The number of levels in the index tree that were added or removed since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE

RRINumLevelsLimit is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

SRTInsDelUpdPct

Specifies, when combined with *SRTInsDelUpdAbs*, a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of insert, update, or delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdPct*.
- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdAbs*.

SRTInsDelUpdPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 20.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

SRTInsDelUpdAbs

Specifies, when combined with *SRTInsDelUpdPct*, a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on a table space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition, divided by the total number of rows or LOBs in table space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdPct*.
- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRTInsDelUpdAbs*.

SRTInsDelUpdAbs is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

SRTMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on a table space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOX recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of mass deletes from a table space or partition since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE is greater than *SRTMassDelLimit*.

SRTMassDelLimit is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

SRIInsDelPct

Specifies, when combined with *SRIInsDelAbs*, a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on an index space. If both of the following conditions are true, DSNACCOX recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than

SRIInsDelPct

- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRIInsDelAbs*

SRIInsDelPct is an input parameter of type DOUBLE. The default is 20.0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

SRIInsDelAbs

Specifies, when combined with *SRIInsDelPct*, a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on an index space. If the following condition is true, DSNACCOX recommends running RUNSTATS:

- The number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition, divided by the total number of index entries in the index space or partition (expressed as a percentage) is greater than *SRIInsDelPct*

- The sum of the number of inserted and deleted index entries since the last RUNSTATS on an index space or partition is greater than *SRIInsDelAbs*,

SRIInsDelAbs is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default is 0.

SRIMassDelLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the RUNSTATS utility is to be run on an index space. If the number of mass deletes from an index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE is greater than this value, DSNACCOX recommends running RUNSTATS.

SRIMassDelLimit is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default value is 0. A negative value turns off this criterion.

ExtentLimit

Specifies a criterion for recommending that the REORG utility is to be run on a table space or index space. Also specifies that DSNACCOX is to warn the user that the table space or index space has used too many extents. DSNACCOX recommends running REORG, and altering data set allocations if the following condition is true:

- The number of physical extents in the index space, table space, or partition is greater than *ExtentLimit*.

ExtentLimit is an input parameter of type INTEGER. The default value is 254. A negative value turns off this criterion.

LastStatement

When DSNACCOX returns a severe error (return code 12), this field contains the SQL statement that was executing when the error occurred. *LastStatement* is an output parameter of type VARCHAR(8012).

ReturnCode

The return code from DSNACCOX execution. Possible values are:

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| 0 | DSNACCOX executed successfully. |
| 4 | DSNACCOX completed with a warning. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains the input parameters that might be incompatible. |
| 8 | DSNACCOX terminated with errors. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains a message that describes the error. |
| 12 | DSNACCOX terminated with severe errors. The <i>ErrorMsg</i> parameter contains a message that describes the error. The <i>LastStatement</i> parameter contains the SQL statement that was executing when the error occurred. |

- 14 DSNACCOX terminated because the real time statistics table were not yet migrated to the catalog.
- 15 DSNACCOX terminated because it encountered a problem with one of the declared temporary tables that it defines and uses.
- 16 DSNACCOX terminated because it could not define a declared temporary table.

NULL DSNACCOX terminated but could not set a return code.

ReturnCode is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

ErrorMsg

Contains information about DSNACCOX execution when DSNACCOX terminates with a non-zero value for *ReturnCode*.

IFCARetCode

Contains the return code from an IFI COMMAND call. DSNACCOX issues commands through the IFI interface to determine the status of objects. *IFCARetCode* is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

IFCAResCode

Contains the reason code from an IFI COMMAND call. *IFCAResCode* is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

XsBytes

Contains the number of bytes of information that did not fit in the IFI return area after an IFI COMMAND call. *XsBytes* is an output parameter of type INTEGER.

DSNACCOX formulas for recommending actions

The following formulas specify the criteria that DSNACCOX uses for its recommendations and warnings. The variables in italics are DSNACCOX input parameters. The capitalized variables are columns of the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACESTATS or SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSPACESTATS tables. The numbers to the right of selected items are reference numbers for the option descriptions in “Option descriptions” on page 972.

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOX uses to recommend a full image copy on a table space.

```

(((QueryType='COPY' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
 (ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
 (ICType='F' OR ICType='B')) AND
 (COPYLASTTIME IS NULL OR
 REORGLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
 LOADRLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
 (CURRENT DATE-COPYLASTTIME)>CRDaySncLastCopy OR
 ((COPYUPDATEDPAGES×100)/NACTIVE>CRUpdatedPagesPct AND
 (COPYUPDATEDPAGES>CRUpdatedPagesAbs)) OR
 ((QueryType='RESTRICT' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
 (ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
 The table space is in COPY-pending status or informational COPY-pending status))

```

Figure 158. DSNACCOX formula for recommending a full image copy on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOX uses to recommend a full image copy on an index space.

```
((QueryType='COPY' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
(ICType='F' OR ICType='B')) AND
(SYSINDEXES.COPY = 'Y') AND
(COPYLASTTIME IS NULL OR
REORGLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
LOADRLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
REBUILDLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
(CURRENT DATE-COPYLASTTIME)>CRDaySncLastCopy OR
(NACTIVE>CRIndexSize AND
((COPYUPDATEDPAGES×100)/NACTIVE>CRUpdatedPagesPct) AND
(COPYUPDATEDPAGES>CRUpdatedPagesAbs)) OR
(COPYCHANGES×100)/TOTALENTRIES>CRChangesPct)) OR
((QueryType='RESTRICT' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
(SYSINDEXES.COPY = 'Y') AND
The index space is in COPY-pending status or informational COPY-pending status))
```

Figure 159. DSNACCOX formula for recommending a full image copy on an index space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOX uses to recommend an incremental image copy on a table space.

```
((QueryType='COPY' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
(ICType='I') AND
COPYLASTTIME IS NOT NULL) AND
(LOADRLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
REORGLASTTIME>COPYLASTTIME OR
((COPYUPDATEDPAGES×100)/NACTIVE>ICRUpdatedPagesPct) AND
(COPYUPDATEDPAGES>ICRUpdatedPagesAbs)) OR
(COPYCHANGES×100)/TOTALROWS>ICRChangesPct)
```

Figure 160. DSNACCOX formula for recommending an incremental image copy on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOX uses to recommend a REORG on a table space. If the table space is a LOB table space, and CHCKLVL=1, the formula does not include EXTENTS>ExtentLimit.

```

(((QueryType='REORG' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
 (ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL')) AND
 (REORGLASTTIME IS NULL AND LOADRLASTTIME IS NULL) OR
 (NACTIVE IS NULL OR NACTIVE > 5) AND
 (((REORGINSERTS×100)/TOTALROWS>RRTInsertsPct) AND
 REORGINSERTS>RRTInsertsAbs) OR
 (((REORGDELETE×100)/TOTALROWS>RRTDeletesPct) AND
 REORGDELETE>RRTDeleteAbs) OR
 | (REORGCLUSTERSENS > 0 AND (REORGUNCLUSTINS×100)/TOTALROWS>RRTUnclustInsPct) OR
 (REORGDISORGL0B×100)/TOTALROWS>RRTDisorgLOBPct OR
 (SPACE×1024)/DATASIZE>RRTDataSpaceRat OR
 ((REORGNEARINDREF+REORGFARINDREF)×100)/TOTALROWS>RRTIndRefLimit OR
 REORGMASDELETE>RRTMassDeLLimit OR
 EXTENTS>ExtentLimit)) OR
 ((QueryType='RESTRICT' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
 (ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
 The table space is in advisory or informational reorg pending status))

```

Figure 161. DSNACCOX formula for recommending a REORG on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOX uses to recommend a REORG on an index space.

```

(((QueryType='REORG' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
 (ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
 (REORGLASTTIME IS NULL AND REBUILDLASTTIME IS NULL) OR
 (NACTIVE IS NULL OR NACTIVE > 5) AND
 (((REORGINSERTS×100)/TOTALENTRIES>RRIInsertsPct) AND
 REORGINSERTS>RRIInsertsAbs) OR
 (((REORGDELETE×100)/TOTALENTRIES>RRIDeletesPct) AND
 REORGDELETE>RRIDeletesAbs) OR
 (REORGAPPENDINSERT×100)/TOTALENTRIES>RRIAppendInsertPct OR
 (REORGPSEUDODELETES×100)/TOTALENTRIES>RRIpseudoDeletePct OR
 REORGMASDELETE>RRIMassDeleteLimit OR
 (REORGLEAFFAR×100)/NACTIVE>RRILeafLimit OR
 REORGNUMLEVELS>RRINumLevelsLimit OR
 | (NPAGES>5 AND
 | (NPAGES×100)/NLEAF>RRIEmptyLimit) OR
 EXTENTS>ExtentLimit)) OR
 ((QueryType='RESTRICT' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
 (ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
 An index is in advisory-REBUILD-pending stats (ARBDP))

```

Figure 162. DSNACCOX formula for recommending a REORG on an index space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOX uses to recommend RUNSTATS on a table space.

```

((QueryType='RUNSTATS' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='TS' OR ObjectType='ALL') AND
Table Space is not cloned) AND
(STATSLASTTIME IS NULL OR
STATSLASTTIME>LOADRLASTTIME OR
STATSLASTTIME>REORGLASTTIME OR
(((STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES+STATSUPDATES)×100)/TOTALROWS>SRTInsDelUpdPct AND
(STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES+STATSUPDATES)>SRTInsDelUpdAbs) OR
STATSMASDELETE>SRTMassDeleteLimit)))

```

Figure 163. DSNACCOX formula for recommending RUNSTATS on a table space

The figure below shows the formula that DSNACCOX uses to recommend RUNSTATS on an index space.

```

((QueryType='RUNSTATS' OR QueryType='ALL') AND
(ObjectType='IX' OR ObjectType='ALL')
Table Space for the index is not cloned ) AND
(STATSLASTTIME IS NULL OR
STATSLASTTIME>LOADRLASTTIME OR
STATSLASTTIME>REORGLASTTIME OR
I (((STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES)×100)/TOTALENTRIES>SRIInsDelPct AND
I (STATSINSERTS+STATSDELETES)>SRIInsDelAbs) OR
I STATSMASDELETE>SRIInsDelAbs)))

```

Figure 164. DSNACCOX formula for recommending RUNSTATS on an index space

Using an exception table

An exception table is an optional, user-created DB2 table that you can use to place information in the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set. You can put any information in the INEXCEPTTABLE column, but the most common use of this column is to filter the recommendations result set. Each row in the exception table represents an object for which you want to provide information for the recommendations result set.

To create the exception table, execute a CREATE TABLE statement similar to the following one. You can include other columns in the exception table, but you must include at least the columns that are shown.

```

CREATE TABLE DSNACC.EXCEPT_TBL
(DBNAME CHAR(8) NOT NULL,
NAME CHAR(8) NOT NULL,
QUERYTYPE CHAR(40))
CCSID EBCDIC;

```

The meanings of the columns are:

DBNAME

The database name for an object in the exception table.

NAME

The table space name or index space name for an object in the exception table.

QUERYTYPE

The information that you want to place in the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set.

If you put a null value in this column, DSNACCOX puts the value YES in the INEXCEPTTABLE column of the recommendations result set row for the object that matches the DBNAME and NAME values.

Recommendation: If you plan to put many rows in the exception table, create a nonunique index on DBNAME, NAME, and QUERYTYPE.

After you create the exception table, insert a row for each object for which you want to include information in the INEXCEPTTABLE column.

Example: Suppose that you want the INEXCEPTTABLE column to contain the string 'IRRELEVANT' for table space STAFF in database DSNDB04. You also want the INEXCEPTTABLE column to contain 'CURRENT' for table space DSN8S10D in database DSN8D10A. Execute these INSERT statements:

```
INSERT INTO DSNACC.EXCEPT_TBL VALUES('DSNDB04 ', 'STAFF ', 'IRRELEVANT');
INSERT INTO DSNACC.EXCEPT_TBL VALUES('DSN8D10A', 'DSN8S10D', 'CURRENT');
```

To use the contents of INEXCEPTTABLE for filtering, include a condition that involves the INEXCEPTTABLE column in the search condition that you specify in your *Criteria* input parameter.

Example: Suppose that you want to include all rows for database DSNDB04 in the recommendations result set, except for those rows that contain the string 'IRRELEVANT' in the INEXCEPTTABLE column. You might include the following search condition in your *Criteria* input parameter:

```
DBNAME='DSNDB04' AND INEXCEPTTABLE<>'IRRELEVANT'
```

Example

The figure below is a COBOL example that shows variable declarations and an SQL CALL for obtaining recommendations for objects in databases DSN8D10A and DSN8D10L. This example also outlines the steps that you need to perform to retrieve the two result sets that DSNACCOX returns. These result sets are described in “DSNACCOX output” on page 991. See *DB2 Application Programming and SQL Guide* for more information about how to retrieve result sets from a stored procedure.

```
WORKING-STORAGE SECTION.
*****
* DSNACCOX PARAMETERS *
*****
01 QUERYTYPE.
   49 QUERYTYPE-LN          PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 40.
   49 QUERYTYPE-DTA        PICTURE X(40) VALUE 'ALL'.
01 OBJECTTYPE.
   49 OBJECTTYPE-LN         PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 3.
   49 OBJECTTYPE-DTA       PICTURE X(3) VALUE 'ALL'.
01 ICTYPE.
   49 ICTYPE-LN             PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 1.
   49 ICTYPE-DTA           PICTURE X(1) VALUE 'B'.
01 CATLGSHEMA.
   49 CATLGSHEMA-LN        PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 128.
   49 CATLGSHEMA-DTA      PICTURE X(128) VALUE 'SYSIBM'.
01 LOCALSCHEMA.
   49 LOCALSCHEMA-LN       PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 128.
   49 LOCALSCHEMA-DTA     PICTURE X(128) VALUE 'DSNACC'.
01 CHKLVL
01 CRITERIA.
   49 CRITERIA-LN          PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 4096.
   49 CRITERIA-DTA        PICTURE X(4096) VALUE SPACES.
```

```

01 SPECIALPARM.
   49 SPECIALPARM-LN      PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 80.
   49 SPECIALPARM-DTA    PICTURE X(80) VALUE SPACES.
01 CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT    USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 CRUPDATEDPAGESABS    PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 CRCHANGESPCT        USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT  USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 ICRUPDATEDPAGESABS  PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 ICRCHANGESPCT       PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 CRINDEXSIZE          PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRTINSERTSPCT        USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRTINSERTSABS        PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRTDELETESPCT        USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRTDELETEABS         PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT   USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRTDISORGLBPCT      USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRTDATASPACERAT     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRTMASSDELLIMIT     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRTINDREFLIMIT      PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRIINSERTSPCT        USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRIINSERTSABS        PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRIDELETESPCT        USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRIDELETESABS        PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT  USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRIPEUDODELETEPCT   USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 RRIMASSDELLIMIT     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRILEAFLIMIT         PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT   PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 SRTINSDELUPDPCT     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 SRTINSDELUPDABS     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 SRTMASSDELLIMIT     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 SRIINSDELPCT        USAGE COMP-2 VALUE +0.
01 SRIINSDELABS        PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 SRIMASSDELLIMIT     PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 EXTENTLIMIT          PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 LASTSTATEMENT.
   49 LASTSTATEMENT-LN  PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 8012.
   49 LASTSTATEMENT-DTA PICTURE X(8012) VALUE SPACES.
01 RETURNCODE           PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 ERRORMSG.
   49 ERRORMSG-LN       PICTURE S9(4) COMP VALUE 1331.
   49 ERRORMSG-DTA     PICTURE X(1331) VALUE SPACES.
01 IFCARETCODE          PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 IFCARESCODE          PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.
01 XSBYTES              PICTURE S9(9) COMP VALUE +0.

```

```

*****
* INDICATOR VARIABLES. *
* INITIALIZE ALL NON-ESSENTIAL INPUT *
* VARIABLES TO -1, TO INDICATE THAT THE *
* INPUT VALUE IS NULL. *
*****

```

```

01 QUERYTYPE-IND        PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 OBJECTTYPE-IND       PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 ICTYPE-IND            PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 CATLGSHEMA-IND       PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 LOCALSCHEMA-IND      PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CHKLVL-IND           PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRITERIA-IND         PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SPECIALPARM-IND      PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRUPDATEDPAGESABS-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRCHANGESPCT-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 ICRCHANGESPCT-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 CRINDEXSIZE-IND     PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.

```

```

01 RRTINSERTSPCT-IND      PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTINSERTSABS-IND     PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTDELETESPCT-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTDELETEABS-IND     PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTDISORGLBPCT-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTDATASPCERAT-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTMASSDELLIMIT-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRTINDREFLIMIT-IND   PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIINSERTSPCT-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIINSERTSABS-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIDELETESPCT-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIDELETESABS-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIPEUDODELETEPCT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRIMASSDELLIMIT-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRILEAFLIMIT-IND     PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT-IND PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRTINSDELUPDABS-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRTMASSDELLIMIT-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRIINSDELPCCT-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRIINSDELABS-IND     PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 SRIMASSDELLIMIT-IND  PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 EXTENTLIMIT-IND      PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE -1.
01 LASTSTATEMENT-IND    PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 RETURNCODE-IND       PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 ERRORMSG-IND         PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 IFCARETCODE-IND      PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 IFCARESCODE-IND      PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0.
01 XSBYTES-IND          PICTURE S9(4) COMP-4 VALUE +0

```

PROCEDURE DIVISION.

```

*****
* SET VALUES FOR DSNACCOX INPUT PARAMETERS: *
* - USE THE CHKLVL PARAMETER TO CAUSE DSNACCOX TO CHECK *
* FOR RELATED TABLE SPACES WHEN PROCESSING INDEX *
* SPACES, AND DELETE RECOMMENDATION FOR INDEXSPACES *
* WHEN AN ACTION (SUCH AS REORG) ON THE TABLE SPACE *
* WILL ALSO CAUSE THE ACTION TO BE DONE ON THE INDEX *
* SPACE. (CHKLVL=64) *
* - USE THE CRITERIA PARAMETER TO CAUSE DSNACCOX TO *
* MAKE RECOMMENDATIONS ONLY FOR OBJECTS IN DATABASES *
* DSN8D91A AND DSN8D91L. *
* - FOR THE FOLLOWING PARAMETERS, SET THESE VALUES, *
* WHICH ARE LOWER THAN THE DEFAULTS: *
* CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT 4 *
* CRCHANGESPCT 2 *
* RRTINSDELUPDPCT 2 *
* RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT 5 *
* RRTDISORGLBPCT 5 *
* RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT 5 *
* SRTINSDELUPDPCT 5 *
* SRIINSDELPCCT 5 *
* EXTENTLIMIT 3 *
* - EXCLUDE CHECKING FOR THESE CRITERIA BY SET THE *
* FOLLOWING VALUES TO A NEGATIVE VALUE. *
* RRTMASSDELLIMIT -1 *
* RRIMASSDELLIMIT -1 *
*****
MOVE 64 TO CHKLVL.
MOVE SPACES TO CRITERIA-DTA.
MOVE 'DBNAME = 'DSN8D91A' OR DBNAME = 'DSN8D91L''
TO CRITERIA-DTA.
MOVE 46 TO CRITERIA-LN.
MOVE 4 TO CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT.
MOVE 2 TO CRCHANGESPCT.
MOVE 2 TO RRTINSERTSPCT.

```

```

MOVE 5 TO RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT.
MOVE 5 TO RRTDISORGLBPCT.
MOVE 5 TO RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT.
MOVE 5 TO SRTINSDELUPDPCT.
MOVE 5 TO SRIINDELPT
MOVE 3 TO EXTENTLIMIT.
MOVE -1 TO RRTMASSDELLIMIT.
MOVE -1 TO RRIMASSDELLIMIT.
*****
* INITIALIZE OUTPUT PARAMETERS *
*****
MOVE SPACES TO LASTSTATEMENT-DTA.
MOVE 1 TO LASTSTATEMENT-LN.
MOVE 0 TO RETURNCODE-02.
MOVE SPACES TO ERRORMSG-DTA.
MOVE 1 TO ERRORMSG-LN.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARETCODE.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARESCODE.
MOVE 0 TO XSBYTES.
*****
* SET THE INDICATOR VARIABLES TO 0 FOR NON-NULL INPUT *
* PARAMETERS (PARAMETERS FOR WHICH YOU DO NOT WANT *
* DSNACCOX TO USE DEFAULT VALUES) AND FOR OUTPUT *
* PARAMETERS. *
*****
MOVE 0 TO CHKLVL-IND.
MOVE 0 TO CRITERIA-IND.
MOVE 0 TO CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO CRCHANGESPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRTINSERTSPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRTDISORGLBPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO SRTINSDELUPDPCT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO SRIINDELPT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO EXTENTLIMIT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO LASTSTATEMENT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RETURNCODE-IND.
MOVE 0 TO ERRORMSG-IND.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARETCODE-IND.
MOVE 0 TO IFCARESCODE-IND.
MOVE 0 TO XSBYTES-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRTMASSDELLIMIT-IND.
MOVE 0 TO RRIMASSDELLIMIT-IND.
*****
* CALL DSNACCOX *
*****
EXEC SQL
CALL SYSPROC.DSNACCOX
(:QUERYTYPE :QUERYTYPE-IND,
:OBJECTTYPE :OBJECTTYPE-IND,
:ICTYPE :ICTYPE-IND,
:STATSCHEMA :STATSCHEMA-IND,
:CATLGSCHEMA :CATLGSCHEMA-IND,
:LOCALSCHEMA :LOCALSCHEMA-IND,
:CHKLVL :CHKLVL-IND,
:CRITERIA :CRITERIA-IND,
:SPECIALPDM :SPECIALPDM-IND,
:CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT :CRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND,
:CRUPDATEDPAGESABS :CRUPDATEDPAGESABS-IND,
:CRCHANGESPCT :CRCHANGESPCT-IND,
:CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY :CRDAYSNCLASTCOPY-IND,
:ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT :ICRUPDATEDPAGESPCT-IND,
:ICRCHANGESPCT :ICRCHANGESPCT-IND,
:CRINDEXSIZE :CRINDEXSIZE-IND,
:RRTINSERTSPCT :RRTINSERTSPCT-IND,
:RRTINSERTSABS :RRTINSERTSABS-IND,

```

```

:RRTDELETESPCT      :RRTDELETESPCT-IND,
:RRTDELETESABS      :RRTDELETESABS-IND,
:RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT :RRTUNCLUSTINSPECT-IND,
:RRTDISORGLBPCT     :RRTDISORGLBPCT-IND,
:RRTDATASPACERAT    :RRTDATASPACERAT-IND,
:RRTMASSELLIMIT     :RRTMASSELLIMIT-IND,
:RRTINDREFLIMIT     :RRTINDREFLIMIT-IND,
:RRIINSERTSPCT      :RRIINSERTSPCT-IND,
:RRIINSERTSABS      :RRIINSERTSABS-IND,
:RRIDELETESPCT      :RRIDELETESPCT-IND,
:RRIDELETESABS      :RRIDELETESABS-IND,
:RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT :RRIAPPENDINSERTPCT-IND,
:RRIPSEUDODELETEPCT :RRIPSEUDODELETEPCT-IND,
:RRIMASSELLIMIT     :RRIMASSELLIMIT-IND,
:RRILEAFLIMIT       :RRILEAFLIMIT-IND,
:RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT :RRINUMLEVELSLIMIT-IND,
:SRTINDELUPDPCT     :SRTINDELUPDPCT-IND,
:SRTINDELUPDABS     :SRTINDELUPDABS-IND,
:SRTMASSELLIMIT     :SRTMASSELLIMIT-IND,
:SRIINDELPT         :SRIINDELPT-IND,
:SRIINDELABS        :SRIINDELABS-IND,
:SRIMASSELLIMIT     :SRIMASSELLIMIT-IND,
:EXTENTLIMIT        :EXTENTLIMIT-IND,
:LASTSTATEMENT      :LASTSTATEMENT-IND,
:RETURNCODE         :RETURNCODE-IND,
:ERRORMSG           :ERRORMSG-IND,
:IFCARETCODE        :IFCARETCODE-IND,
:IFCARESCODE        :IFCARESCODE-IND,
:XSBYTES            :XSBYTES-IND)
END-EXEC.

```

```

*****
* ASSUME THAT THE SQL CALL RETURNED +466, WHICH MEANS THAT *
* RESULT SETS WERE RETURNED. RETRIEVE RESULT SETS.      *
*****
* LINK EACH RESULT SET TO A LOCATOR VARIABLE
  EXEC SQL ASSOCIATE LOCATORS (:LOC1, :LOC2)
  WITH PROCEDURE SYSPROC.DSNACCOX
  END-EXEC.
* LINK A CURSOR TO EACH RESULT SET
  EXEC SQL ALLOCATE C1 CURSOR FOR RESULT SET :LOC1
  END-EXEC.
  EXEC SQL ALLOCATE C2 CURSOR FOR RESULT SET :LOC2
  END-EXEC.
* PERFORM FETCHES USING C1 TO RETRIEVE ALL ROWS FROM FIRST RESULT SET
* PERFORM FETCHES USING C2 TO RETRIEVE ALL ROWS FROM SECOND RESULT SET

```

DSNACCOX output

If DSNACCOX executes successfully, in addition to the output parameters described in “Option descriptions” on page 972, DSNACCOX returns two result sets.

The first result set contains the results from IFI COMMAND calls that DSNACCOX makes. The following table shows the format of the first result set.

Table 149. Result set row for first DSNACCOX result set

Column name	Data type	Contents
RS_SEQUENCE	INTEGER	Sequence number of the output line
RS_DATA	CHAR(80)	A line of command output

The second result set contains DSNACCOX's recommendations. This result set contains one or more rows for a table space or index space. A nonpartitioned table

space or nonpartitioning index space can have at most one row in the result set. A partitioned table space or partitioning index space can have at most one row for each partition. A table space, index space, or partition has a row in the result set if both of the following conditions are true:

- If the *Criteria* input parameter contains a search condition, the search condition is true for the table space, index space, or partition.
- DSNACCOX recommends at least one action for the table space, index space, or partition.

The following table shows the columns of a result set row.

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set

Column name	Data type	Description
DBNAME	VARCHAR(24)	Name of the database that contains the object.
NAME	VARCHAR(128)	Table space name or index name.
PARTITION	INTEGER	Data set number or partition number.
INSTANCE	SMALLINT	Indicates if the object is associated with a data set instance.
CLONE	CHAR(1)	'Y' or 'N', 'Y' indicates a cloned object.
OBJECTTYPE	CHAR(2)	DB2 object type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 'TS' for a table space • 'IX' for an index space
INDEXSPACE	VARCHAR(24)	Index space name.
CREATOR	VARCHAR(128)	Index creator name.
OBJECTSTATUS	CHAR(40)	Status of the object: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ORPHANED, if the object is an index space with no corresponding table space, or if the object does not exist • If the object is in a restricted state, one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – TS=<i>restricted-state</i>, if OBJECTTYPE is TS – IX=<i>restricted-state</i>, if OBJECTTYPE is IX – LS=<i>restricted-state</i>, if object is LOB TS. – LX=<i>restricted-state</i>, if object is XML TS. <i>restricted-state</i> is one of the status codes that appear in the output of the DISPLAY DATABASE command. • A, if the object is in an advisory state. • L, if the object is a logical partition, but not in an advisory state. • AL, if the object is a logical partition and in an advisory state.
IMAGECOPY	CHAR(4)	COPY recommendation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If OBJECTTYPE is TS: FULL (full image copy), INC (incremental image copy), or NO • If OBJECTTYPE is IX: YES or NO
RUNSTATS	CHAR(3)	RUNSTATS recommendation: YES or NO.
EXTENTS	CHAR(3)	Indicates whether the data sets for the object have exceeded <i>ExtentLimit</i> : YES or NO.
REORG	CHAR(3)	REORG recommendation: YES or NO.

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
INEXCEPTTABLE	CHAR(40)	<p>A string that contains one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Text that you specify in the QUERYTYPE column of the exception table. YES, if you put a row in the exception table for the object that this result set row represents, but you specify NULL in the QUERYTYPE column. NO, if the exception table exists but does not have a row for the object that this result set row represents. Null, if the exception table does not exist, or if the <i>ChkLvl</i> input parameter does not include the value 4.
ASSOCIATEDTS	VARCHAR(128)	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX this value is the name of the table space that is associated with the index space. Otherwise null.</p>
COPYLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	<p>Timestamp of the last full image copy on the object. Null if COPY was never run, or if the last COPY execution is unknown.</p>
LOADRLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	<p>Timestamp of the last LOAD REPLACE on the object. Null if LOAD REPLACE was never run, or if the last LOAD REPLACE execution is unknown.</p>
REBUILDLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	<p>Timestamp of the last REBUILD INDEX on the object. Null if REBUILD INDEX was never run, or if the last REBUILD INDEX execution is unknown.</p>
CRUPDPGSPCT	DOUBLE	<p>IF OBJECTTYPE is TS or IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the ratio of distinct updated pages to pre-formatted pages, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of distinct updated pages to pre-formatted pages, does not exceed the <i>CRUpdatedPagesPct</i> (for table spaces) or <i>ICRUpdatedPagesPct</i> (for indexes), this value is null.</p>
CRUPDPGSABS	INTEGER	<p>IF OBJECTTYPE is TS or IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the ratio of distinct updated pages to pre-formatted pages. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of distinct updated pages to pre-formatted pages, does not exceed the value specified for <i>CRUpdatedPagesPct</i> (for table spaces) or <i>ICRUpdatedPagesPct</i> (for indexes), this value is null.</p>

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
CRCPYCHGPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and IMAGECOPY is YES, the ratio of the total number insert, update, and delete operations since the last image copy to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. If OBJECTTYPE is IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert and delete operations since the last image copy to the total number of entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the total number insert, update, and delete operations since the last image copy to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition does not exceed the value specified for <i>CRChangesPct</i> (for table spaces) or <i>ICRChangesPct</i> (for index spaces), this value is null.</p>
CRDAYSELSTCPY	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS or IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the number of days since the last image copy. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the number of days since the last image copy does not exceed the value specified for <i>CrDaySncLastCopy</i>, this value is null.</p>
CRINDEXSIZE	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and IMAGECOPY is YES, the number of active pages in the index space or partition. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the the number of active pages in the index space or partition does not exceed the value specified for <i>CRIndexSize</i>, this value is null.</p>
REORGLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last REORG on the object. Null if REORG was never run, or if the last REORG execution was terminated.
RRTINSERTSPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the sum of insert, update, and delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the sum of insert, update, and delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRTInsertsPct</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRTINSERTSABS	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the sum of insert operations since the last REORG to the total number of rows in the table space or partition. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the the ratio of the sum of insert operations since the last REORG to the total number of rows in the table space or partition does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRTInsertsAbs</i>, this value is null.</p>

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
RRTDELETESPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If the OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the sum of delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of rows in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the sum of delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of rows in the table space or partition does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRTDeletesPct</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRTDELETESABS	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the total number of delete operations since the last REORG on a table space or partition. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the the total number of delete operations since the last REORG does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRTDeletesAbs</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRTUNCINSPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of unclustered insert operations to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the the ratio of the number of unclustered insert operations to the total number of rows or LOBs does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRTUnclustInsPct</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRTDISORGLOBPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of imperfectly chunked LOBs to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the the ratio of the number of imperfectly chunked LOBs to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition does not exceed the value of <i>RRTDisorgLOBPct</i>, this value is null</p>
RRTDATASPACERAT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of SPACE allocated and the space used, exceed <i>RRTDataSpaceRat</i> threshold. Otherwise null.</p>
RRTMASSDELETE	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS, REORG is YES, and the table space is a segmented table space or LOB table space, the number of mass deletes since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE. If OBJECTTYPE is TS, REORG is YES, and the table space is nonsegmented, the number of dropped tables since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the number of the number of dropped tables since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRTMassDelLimit</i>, this value is null.</p>

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
RRTINDREF	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS, REORG is YES, the ratio of the total number of overflow records that were created since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the total number of overflow records that were created since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE to the total number of rows or LOBs does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRTIndRef</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRINSERTSPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert operations since the last REORG to the total number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the total number of insert operations since the last REORG to the total number of index entries does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRInsertsPct</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRINSERTSABS	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the total number of insert operations since the last REORG. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the total number of insert operations since the last REORG does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRInsertsAbs</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRDELETEPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the total number of delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the total number of delete operations since the last REORG to the total number of index entries does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRDeletesPct</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRDELETABS	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the total number of delete operations since the last REORG. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the total number of delete operations since the last REORG does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRDeleteAbs</i>, this value is null.</p>

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
RRIAPPINSPECT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of index entries that were inserted since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE that had a key value greater than the maximum key value in the index space or partition, to the number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the number of index entries that were inserted, which had a key value greater than the maximum key value, to the number of index entries does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRIPendInsertPct</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRIPSDDELPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of index entries that were pseudo-deleted (the RID entry was marked as deleted) since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE to the number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the number of index entries that were pseudo-deleted since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE to the number of index entries does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRIPseudoDeletePct</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRIMASSDELETE	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the number of mass deletes from the index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD, or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the number of mass deletes from the index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD, or LOAD REPLACE does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRIMassDelLimit</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRILEAF	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the number of index page splits that occurred since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE in which the higher part of the split page was far from the location of the original page, to the total number of active pages in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the number of index page splits that occurred since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE to the total number of active pages does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRILeafLimit</i>, this value is null.</p>
RRINUMLEVELS	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the number of levels in the index tree that were added or removed since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the number of levels in the index tree that were added or removed does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRINumLevelsLimit</i>, this value is null.</p>

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
RRIPEMPTYPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and REORG is YES, the ratio of the total number of leaf pages since the last REORG to the total number of pseudo-empty pages in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the total number leaf pages since the last REORG to the total number of pseudo-empty pages does not exceed the value specified for <i>RRIEmptyLimit</i>, this value is null.</p>
STATSLASTTIME	TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the last RUNSTATS on the object. Null if RUNSTATS was never run, or if the last RUNSTATS execution was unknown.
SRTINSDELUPDPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and RUNSTATS is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition, to the total number of rows or LOBs in the table space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS to the total number of rows or LOBs does not exceed the value specified for <i>SRTInsDelUpdPct</i>, this value is null.</p>
SRTINSDELUPDABS	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and RUNSTATS is YES, the total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on a table space or partition. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS does not exceed the value specified for <i>SRTInsDelUpdAbs</i>, this value is null.</p>
SRTMASSDELETE	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is TS and RUNSTATS is YES, the number of mass deletes from the table space or partition since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the number of mass deletes from the table space or partition since the last REORG or LOAD REPLACE does not exceed the value specified for <i>SRTMassDelLimit</i>, this value is null.</p>
SRIINSDELPCT	DOUBLE	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and RUNSTATS is YES, the ratio of the total number of insert and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on the index space or partition, to the total number of index entries in the index space or partition, expressed as a percentage. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the ratio of the total number of insert and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS, to the total number of index entries does not exceed the value specified for <i>SRIInsDelPct</i>, this value is null.</p>

Table 150. Result set row for second DSNACCOX result set (continued)

Column name	Data type	Description
SRIINSDLABS	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and RUNSTATS is YES, the number insert and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS on the index space or partition. Otherwise null.</p> <p>If the total number of insert, update, and delete operations since the last RUNSTATS does not exceed the value specified for , this value is null.</p>
SRIMASSDELETE	INTEGER	<p>If OBJECTTYPE is IX and RUNSTATS is YES, the number of mass deletes from the index space or partition since the last REORG, REBUILD INDEX, or LOAD REPLACE. Otherwise, this value is null.</p> <p>If the number of mass deletes does not exceed the value specified for <i>SRIMassDelete</i>, this value is null.</p>
TOTALEXTENTS	SMALLINT	<p>If EXTENTS is YES, the number of physical extents in the table space, index space, or partition. Otherwise, this value is null.</p> <p>If the number of physical extents does not exceed the value specified for <i>ExtentLimit</i>, this value is null.</p>



Appendix C. Advisory or restrictive states

To control access and help ensure data integrity, DB2 sets a restrictive or nonrestrictive (advisory) status on certain objects. However, you can take steps to correct each status.

Use the DISPLAY DATABASE command to display the current status for an object.

In addition to the states mentioned in this topic, the output from the DISPLAY DATABASE command might also indicate that an object is in logical page list (LPL) status. This state means that the pages that are listed in the LPL PAGES column are logically in error and are unavailable for access. DB2 writes entries for these pages in an LPL.

Related tasks

 [Removing pages from the logical page list \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

Auxiliary CHECK-pending status

The auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) restrictive status is set on when at least one base table LOB column error is detected and not invalidated as a result of running CHECK DATA AUXERROR REPORT.

A base table space with the NOT LOGGED attribute and its LOB table spaces, which also have the NOT LOGGED attribute, are recovered to the current point in time in the same RECOVER utility invocation. The base table space is put in the auxiliary CHECK-pending state.

An XML table space is set to auxiliary CHECK-pending when CHECK DATA is run with the XMLERROR REPORT option, and CHECK DATA finds an error in an XML table space, the corresponding base table space, or an index space for the node ID.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the auxiliary CHECK-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected object, and any corrective actions.

Table 151. Resetting auxiliary CHECK-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
Auxiliary CHECK-pending	ACHKP	Base table space	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Update or delete invalid LOBs and XML objects using SQL.2. Run the CHECK DATA utility with the appropriate SCOPE option to verify the validity of LOBs and XML objects and reset ACHKP status. <p>You can use the REPAIR utility, followed by CHECK DATA, to reset the ACHKP status, but use caution.</p>	1

Note:

1. A base table space in the ACHKP status is unavailable for processing by SQL.

Auxiliary warning status

Auxiliary warning (AUXW) status is set on when at least one base table LOB column has an invalidated LOB as a result of running CHECK DATA AUXERROR INVALIDATE. An attempt to retrieve an invalidated LOB results in a -904 SQL return code.

A base table space with the NOT LOGGED attribute and its LOB table spaces, which also have the NOT LOGGED attribute, are recovered to the current point in time in the same RECOVER utility invocation. The LOB table spaces are put in the auxiliary warning state if there were updates to the LOB table spaces after the recoverable point.

The RECOVER utility also sets AUXW status if it finds an invalid LOB column. Invalid LOB columns might result from a situation in which all the following actions occur:

1. LOB table space was defined with LOG NO.
2. LOB table space was recovered.
3. LOB was updated since the last image copy.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the auxiliary warning status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 152. Resetting auxiliary warning status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
Auxiliary warning	AUXW	Base table space	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Update or delete invalid LOBs and XML objects using SQL.2. If an orphan LOB exists or a version mismatch exists between the base table and the auxiliary index, use REPAIR to delete the LOB from the LOB table space.3. Run CHECK DATA utility to verify the validity of LOBs and XML objects and reset AUXW status.	1,2,3
Auxiliary warning	AUXW	LOB table space	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Update or delete invalid LOBs and XML objects using SQL.2. If an orphan LOB exists or a version mismatch exists between the base table and the auxiliary index, use REPAIR to delete the LOB from the LOB table space.3. Run CHECK LOB utility to verify the validity of LOBs and XML objects and reset AUXW status.	1

Note:

1. A base table space or LOB table space in the AUXW status is available for processing by SQL, even though it contains invalid LOBs. However, an attempt to retrieve an invalid LOB results in a -904 SQL return code.
 2. DB2 can access all rows of a base table space that are in the AUXW status. SQL can update the invalid LOB column and delete base table rows, but the value of the LOB column cannot be retrieved. If DB2 attempts to access an invalid LOB column, a -904 SQL code is returned. The AUXW status remains on the base table space even when SQL deletes or updates the last invalid LOB column.
 3. If CHECK DATA AUXERROR REPORT encounters only invalid LOB columns and no other LOB column errors, the base table space is set to the auxiliary warning status.
-

CHECK-pending status

The CHECK-pending (CHKP) restrictive status indicates that an object might be in an inconsistent state and must be checked.

The following utilities set the CHECK-pending status on a table space if referential integrity constraints are encountered:

- LOAD with ENFORCE NO
- RECOVER to a point in time
- CHECK LOB

The CHECK-pending status can also affect a base table space or a LOB table space. CHECK-pending status for an XML table space is set only if a new XML schema for an XML type modifier was added or removed.

DB2 ignores informational referential integrity constraints and does not set CHECK-pending status for them.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the CHECK-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 153. Resetting CHECK-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
CHECK-pending	CHKP	Table space, base table space	Check and correct referential integrity constraints using the CHECK DATA utility. If a table space is in both REORG-pending and CHECK-pending status (or auxiliary CHECK-pending status), run REORG first and then use CHECK DATA to clear the respective states.	
CHECK-pending	CHKP	Partitioning index, nonpartitioning index, index, XML index on the auxiliary table	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Run CHECK INDEX on the index. 2. If any errors are found, use the REBUILD INDEX utility to rebuild the index from existing data. 	1
CHECK-pending	CHKP	LOB table space	Use the CHECK LOB utility to check the LOB table space. If any errors are found: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Correct any defects that are found in the LOB table space by using the REPAIR utility. 2. Run CHECK LOB again to reset the CHECK-pending status. 3. See Table 152 on page 1002 if an AUXW status exists. 	
CHECK-pending	CHKP	XML table space	Use the CHECK DATA utility to check the XML table space. If any errors are found: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Correct any defects that are found in the XML table space by using the REPAIR utility. 2. Run CHECK XML again to reset the CHECK-pending status. 	

Table 153. Resetting CHECK-pending status (continued)

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
Note:				
1. An index might be placed in the CHECK-pending status if you recovered an index to a specific RBA or LRSN from a copy and applied the log records, but you did not recover the table space in the same list. The CHECK-pending status can also be placed on an index if you specified the table space and the index, but the RECOVER point in time was not a QUIESCE or COPY SHRLEVEL REFERENCE point.				

COPY-pending status

The COPY-pending (COPY) restrictive status indicates that the affected object must be copied.

DB2 ignores informational referential integrity constraints and does not set CHECK-pending status for them.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the COPY-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 154. Resetting COPY-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
COPY-pending	COPY	Table space, table space partition	Take an image copy of the affected object.	

OBJECT error status

An object is a table space, table space partition, index space, index partition, or logical index partition. The DBETE status identifies the objects that need special attention by the user.

To reduce outages caused by certain DBET abends or page set access error abends during restart or RESTORE SYSTEM, DB2 tolerates such abends and puts objects into advisory status DBETE, as well as a restrictive exception status that requires objects to be recovered. Depending on the type of object, either a table space or an index space, the restrictive exception status can be RECP, RBDP, or PSRBD.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the DBET error status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 155. Resetting OBJECT error status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
OBJECT error	DBETE	Table space, table space partition, index space, index partition, or logical index partition	<p>Issue -DISPLAY command to see the status of the object. If the object is in DBETE along with restrictive states such as RECP, RBDP, PSRBD, use one of the following utilities to recover or rebuild the object:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RECOVER utility • LOAD utility with the REPLACE option • REBUILD utility <p>The DBETE status is reset when RECP, RBDP, or PSRBD status is reset by the utility.</p> <p>If a table space or index space that contains partitions has a status of DBETE and RECP and is also listed as being of type UN (unknown type), you can still use the utilities in the preceding list to recover or rebuild the entire space.</p> <p>DBETE, RECP, RBDP, and PSRBD status can also be reset by issuing the following command, -START DB(db name) SP(space name) ACCESS(FORCE).</p> <p>Contact IBM Software Support to report the problem. DB2 log records need to be analyzed to diagnose the cause of the problem and determine further actions.</p>	

Group buffer pool RECOVER-pending status

The group buffer pool RECOVER-pending (GRECP) status is set on when a coupling facility fails with pages that were not externalized. The affected object must be recovered.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the group buffer pool RECOVER-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 156. Resetting group buffer pool RECOVER-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
Group buffer pool RECOVER-pending	GRECP	Object	Recover the object, or use START DATABASE to recover the object.	

Informational COPY-pending status

The informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) advisory status indicates that the affected object should be copied.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the informational COPY-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 157. Resetting informational COPY-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
Informational COPY-pending	ICOPY	NOT LOGGED table spaces	Copy the affected table space.	
Informational COPY-pending	ICOPY	Partitioning index, nonpartitioning index, index on the auxiliary table	Copy the affected index.	

REBUILD-pending status

A REBUILD-pending restrictive status indicates that the affected index or index partition is broken and must be rebuilt from the data.

REBUILD-pending (RBDP) status indicates that the physical or logical partition is inaccessible and must be rebuilt. RBDP status is set on a data-partitioned secondary index if you create the index after performing the following actions:

- Create a partitioned table space.
- Create a partitioning index.
- Insert a row into a table.

In this situation, the last partition of the table space is set to REORG-pending (REORP) restrictive status.

REBUILD-pending star (RBDP*) status indicates that a logical partition of a nonpartitioned secondary index is unavailable for read-write access and the entire index is unavailable for read access.

Page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) status indicates that an entire nonpartitioned secondary index or index on the auxiliary table is unavailable for read-write access.

Rebuilding an index and thereby resetting the REBUILD-pending status invalidates the dynamic statement cache for the related table.

If you alter the data type of a column to a numeric data type, RECOVER INDEX cannot complete. You must rebuild the index.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting a REBUILD-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 158. Resetting REBUILD-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
REBUILD-pending	RBDP	Physical or logical index partition	Run the REBUILD utility on the affected index partition.	
REBUILD-pending star	RBDP*	Logical partitions of nonpartitioned secondary indexes	Run REBUILD INDEX PART or RECOVER utility on the affected logical partitions.	

Table 158. Resetting REBUILD-pending status (continued)

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
Page set REBUILD-pending	PSRBD	Nonpartitioned secondary index, index on the auxiliary table	Run REBUILD INDEX ALL, the RECOVER utility, or run REBUILD INDEX listing all indexes in the affected index space.	
REBUILD-pending	RBDP, RBDP*, or PSRBD	all	<p>The following actions also reset the REBUILD-pending status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use LOAD REPLACE for the table space or partition. • Use REPAIR SET INDEX with NORBDPEND on the index partition. Be aware that this does not correct the data inconsistency in the index partition. Use CHECK INDEX instead of REPAIR to verify referential integrity constraints. • Start the database that contains the index space with ACCESS FORCE. Be aware that this does not correct the data inconsistency in the index partition. • Run REORG INDEX SORTDATA on the affected index. 	

RECOVER-pending status

The RECOVER-pending (RECP) restrictive status indicates that a table space or table space partition is broken and must be recovered.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the RECOVER-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 159. Resetting RECOVER-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
RECOVER-pending	RECP	Table space	Run the RECOVER utility on the affected object.	
RECOVER-pending	RECP	Table space partition	Recover the partition.	
RECOVER-pending	RECP	Index on the auxiliary table	<p>Correct the RECOVER-pending status by using one of the following utilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REBUILD INDEX • RECOVER INDEX • REORG INDEX SORTDATA 	
RECOVER-pending	RECP	Index space	<p>Run one of the following utilities on the affected index space to reset RECP, RBDP, RBDP*, or PSRBDP status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REBUILD INDEX • RECOVER INDEX • REORG INDEX SORTDATA 	

Table 159. Resetting RECOVER-pending status (continued)

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
RECOVER-pending	RECP	Any	<p>The following actions also reset the RECOVER-pending status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use LOAD REPLACE for the table space or partition. • Use REPAIR SET TABLESPACE or INDEX with NORCVRPEND on the table space or partition. Be aware that this does not correct the data inconsistency in the table space or partition. • Start the database that contains the table space or index space with ACCESS FORCE. Be aware that this does not correct the data inconsistency in the table space or partition. 	

REFRESH-pending status

Whenever DB2 marks an object in refresh-pending (REFP) status, it also puts the object in RECOVER-pending (RECP) or REBUILD-pending (RBDP or PSRBD) status.

If a user-defined table space is in refresh-pending (REFP) status, you can replace the data by using LOAD REPLACE. At the successful completion of the RECOVER and LOAD REPLACE jobs, both (REFP and RECP or REFP and RBDP or PSRBD) statuses are reset.

REORG-pending status

The REORG-pending (REORP) restrictive status indicates that a table space partition definition has changed and the affected partitions must be reorganized before the data is accessible.

The REORG-pending (AREO*) advisory status indicates that a table space, index, or partition needs to be reorganized for optimal performance.

The advisory REORG-pending (AREOR) status indicates that a table space or index needs to be reorganized for optimal performance and to apply pending definition changes.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the REORG-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 160. Resetting REORG-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
REORG-pending	REORP	Table space	<p>Perform one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use LOAD REPLACE for the entire table space. • Run the REORG TABLESPACE utility with SHRLEVEL NONE. <p>If a table space is in both REORG-pending and CHECK-pending status (or auxiliary CHECK-pending status), run REORG first and then run CHECK DATA to clear the respective states.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run REORG PART$m:n$ SHRLEVEL NONE. • Run the REORG TABLESPACE utility with SHRLEVEL REFERENCE or CHANGE. 	
REORG-pending	REORP	Partitioned table space	<p>For row lengths <= 32 KB:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Run REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL NONE SORTDATA. <p>For row lengths > 32 KB:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Run REORG TABLESPACE UNLOAD ONLY. 2. Run LOAD TABLE FORMAT UNLOAD. 	
Advisory REORG-pending	AREO*	Table space	<p>Run one of the following utilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REORG TABLESPACE • LOAD REPLACE • REPAIR TABLESPACE 	1
Advisory REORG-pending	AREO*	Index space	<p>Run one of the following utilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REORG TABLESPACE • LOAD REPLACE • REORG INDEX • REPAIR INDEX 	1
Advisory REORG-pending	AREOR	Table space	<p>Run one of the following utilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REORG TABLESPACE • REPAIR TABLESPACE 	2
Advisory REORG-pending	AREOR	Index space	<p>Run one of the following utilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REORG TABLESPACE • REBUILD INDEX • REPAIR INDEX 	2

Note:

1. You can reset AREO* for a specific partition without being restricted by another AREO* for an adjacent partition. When you run REPAIR VERSIONS, the utility resets the status and updates the version information in SYSTABLEPART for table spaces and SYSINDEXES for indexes.
2. The AREOR state needs to be reset or repaired for the entire table space or index space. Running REORG on the partition level does not reset the AREOR state. The PART keyword is not allowed during REPAIR SET.

Restart-pending status

If an object has backout work pending at the end of DB2 restart, the object is placed in restart-pending (RESTP) status.

Refer to the following table for information about resetting the restart-pending status. This table lists the status name, abbreviation, affected objects, and any corrective actions.

Table 161. Resetting restart-pending status

Status	Abbreviation	Object affected	Corrective action	Notes
Restart-pending	RESTP	Table space, table space partitions, index spaces, and physical index space partitions	Objects in the RESTP status remain unavailable until backout work is complete, or until restart is canceled and a conditional restart or cold start is performed in its place.	1,2,3

Note:

1. Delay running REORG TABLESPACE SHRLEVEL CHANGE until all RESTP statuses are reset.
2. You cannot use LOAD REPLACE on an object that is in the RESTP status.
3. Utility activity against page sets or partitions with RESTP status is not allowed. Any attempt to access a page set or partition with RESTP status terminates with return code 8.

Related tasks

 Starting a table space or index space that has restrictions (DB2 Administration Guide)

Appendix D. Productivity-aid sample programs

DB2 provides four sample programs that many users find helpful as productivity aids. These programs are shipped as source code so that you can modify them to meet your needs.

DSNTIAUL

The sample unload program. This program, which is written in assembler language, is a simple alternative to the UNLOAD utility. It unloads some or all rows from up to 100 DB2 tables. With DSNTIAUL, you can unload data of any DB2 built-in data type or distinct type. DSNTIAUL unloads the rows in a form that is compatible with the LOAD utility and generates utility control statements for LOAD. DSNTIAUL also lets you execute any SQL non-SELECT statement that can be executed dynamically..

DSNTIAD

A sample dynamic SQL program that is written in assembler language. With this program, you can execute any SQL statement that can be executed dynamically, except a SELECT statement.

DSNTEP2

A sample dynamic SQL program that is written in the PL/I language. With this program, you can execute any SQL statement that can be executed dynamically. You can use the source version of DSNTEP2 and modify it to meet your needs, or, if you do not have a PL/I compiler at your installation, you can use the object code version of DSNTEP2.

DSNTEP4

A sample dynamic SQL program that is written in the PL/I language. This program is identical to DSNTEP2 except DSNTEP4 uses multi-row fetch for increased performance. You can use the source version of DSNTEP4 and modify it to meet your needs, or, if you do not have a PL/I compiler at your installation, you can use the object code version of DSNTEP4.

Because these four programs also accept the static SQL statements CONNECT, SET CONNECTION, and RELEASE, you can use the programs to access DB2 tables at remote locations.

Retrieval of UTF-16 Unicode data: You can use DSNTEP2, DSNTEP4, and DSNTIAUL to retrieve Unicode UTF-16 graphic data. However, these programs might not be able to display some characters, if those characters have no mapping in the target SBCS EBCDIC CCSID.

DSNTIAUL and DSNTIAD are shipped only as source code, so you must precompile, assemble, link, and bind them before you can use them. If you want to use the source code version of DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4, you must precompile, compile, link, and bind it. You need to bind the object code version of DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 before you can use it. Usually a system administrator prepares the programs as part of the installation process. The following table indicates which installation job prepares each sample program. All installation jobs are in data set DSNA10.SDSNSAMP.

Table 162. Jobs that prepare DSNTIAUL, DSNTIAD, DSNTPE2, and DSNTPE4

Program name	Program preparation job
DSNTIAUL	DSNTEJ2A
DSNTIAD	DSNTIJTM
DSNTEP2 (source)	DSNTEJ1P
DSNTEP2 (object)	DSNTEJ1L
DSNTEP4 (source)	DSNTEJ1P
DSNTEP4 (object)	DSNTEJ1L

To run the sample programs, use the DSN RUN command.

The following table lists the load module name and plan name that you must specify, and the parameters that you can specify when you run each program.

Table 163. DSN RUN option values for DSNTIAUL, DSNTIAD, DSNTPE2, and DSNTPE4

Program name	Load module	Plan	Parameters
DSNTIAUL	DSNTIAUL	DSNTIB10	SQL number of rows per fetch TOLWARN(NO YES)
DSNTIAD	DSNTIAD	DSNTIA10	RC0 SQLTERM(<i>termchar</i>)
DSNTEP2	DSNTEP2	DSNTEP10	ALIGN(MID) or ALIGN(LHS) NOMIXED or MIXED SQLTERM(<i>termchar</i>) TOLWARN(NO YES) PREPWARN
DSNTEP4	DSNTEP4	DSNTP491	ALIGN(MID) or ALIGN(LHS) NOMIXED or MIXED SQLTERM(<i>termchar</i>) TOLWARN(NO YES) PREPWARN

Related reference

 RUN (DSN) (DB2 Commands)

DSNTIAUL

Use the DSNTIAUL program to unload data from DB2 tables into sequential data sets.

To retrieve data from a remote site by using the multi-row fetch capability for enhanced performance, bind DSNTIAUL with the DBPROTOCOL(DRDA) option. To run DSNTIAUL remotely when it is bound with the DBPROTOCOL(PRIVATE) option, switch DSNTIAUL to single-row fetch mode by specifying 1 for the number of rows per fetch parameter. When multi-row fetch is used, parallelism might be disabled in the last parallel group in the top-level query block for a query. For very simple queries, parallelism might be disabled for the entire query when multi-row fetch is used. To obtain full parallelism when running DSNTIAUL, switch DSNTIAUL to single-row fetch mode by specifying 1 for the number of rows per fetch parameter.

DSNTIAUL uses SQL to access DB2. Operations on a row-level or column-level access control enforced table are subject to the rules specified for the access control. If the table is row-level access control enforced, DSNTIAUL receives and returns only the rows of the table that satisfy the row permissions for the user. If the table is column-level access control enforced, DSNTIAUL receives and returns the values in the column values as modified by the column masks for the user.

DSNTIAUL parameters:

SQL

Specify SQL to indicate that your input data set contains one or more complete SQL statements, each of which ends with a semicolon. You can include any SQL statement that can be executed dynamically in your input data set. In addition, you can include the static SQL statements CONNECT, SET CONNECTION, or RELEASE. DSNTIAUL uses the SELECT statements to determine which tables to unload and dynamically executes all other statements except CONNECT, SET CONNECTION, and RELEASE. DSNTIAUL executes CONNECT, SET CONNECTION, and RELEASE statically to connect to remote locations.

number of rows per fetch

Specify a number from 1 to 32767 to specify the number of rows per fetch that DSNTIAUL retrieves. If you do not specify this number, DSNTIAUL retrieves 100 rows per fetch. This parameter can be specified with the SQL parameter.

Specify 1 to retrieve data from a remote site when DSNTIAUL is bound with the DBPROTOCOL(PRIVATE) option.

TOLWARN

Specify NO (the default) or YES to indicate whether DSNTIAUL continues to retrieve rows after receiving an SQL warning:

NO If a warning occurs when DSNTIAUL executes an OPEN or FETCH to retrieve rows, DSNTIAUL stops retrieving rows. If the SQLWARN1, SQLWARN2, SQLWARN6, or SQLWARN7 flag is set when DSNTIAUL executes a FETCH to retrieve rows, DSNTIAUL continues to retrieve rows.

YES If a warning occurs when DSNTIAUL executes an OPEN or FETCH to retrieve rows, DSNTIAUL continues to retrieve rows.

LOBFILE(*prefix*)

Specify LOBFILE to indicate that you want DSNTIAUL to dynamically allocate data sets, each to receive the full content of a LOB cell. (A LOB cell is the intersection of a row and a LOB column.) If you do not specify the LOBFILE option, you can unload up to only 32 KB of data from a LOB column.

prefix

Specify a high-level qualifier for these dynamically allocated data sets. You can specify up to 17 characters. The qualifier must conform with the rules for TSO data set names.

DSNTIAUL uses a naming convention for these dynamically allocated data sets of *prefix.Qiiiiiii.Cjjjjjj.Rkkkkkkk*, where these qualifiers have the following values:

prefix

The high-level qualifier that you specify in the LOBFILE option.

Qiiiiii

The sequence number (starting from 0) of a query that returns one or more LOB columns

Cjjjjjj

The sequence number (starting from 0) of a column in a query that returns one or more LOB columns

Rkkkkkkk

The sequence number (starting from 0) of a row of a result set that has one or more LOB columns.

The generated LOAD statement contains LOB file reference variables that can be used to load data from these dynamically allocated data sets.

If you do not specify the SQL parameter, your input data set must contain one or more single-line statements (without a semicolon) that use the following syntax:
table or view name [WHERE conditions] [ORDER BY columns]

Each input statement must be a valid SQL SELECT statement with the clause SELECT * FROM omitted and with no ending semicolon. DSNTIAUL generates a SELECT statement for each input statement by appending your input line to SELECT * FROM, then uses the result to determine which tables to unload. For this input format, the text for each table specification can be a maximum of 72 bytes and must not span multiple lines.

You can use the input statements to specify SELECT statements that join two or more tables or select specific columns from a table. If you specify columns, you need to modify the LOAD statement that DSNTIAUL generates.

DSNTIAUL data sets:**Data set****Description****SYSIN**

Input data set.

You cannot enter comments in DSNTIAUL input.

The record length for the input data set must be at least 72 bytes. DSNTIAUL reads only the first 72 bytes of each record.

SYSPRINT

Output data set. DSNTIAUL writes informational and error messages in this data set.

The record length for the SYSPRINT data set is 121 bytes.

SYSPUNCH

Output data set. DSNTIAUL writes the LOAD utility control statements in this data set.

SYSREC nn

Output data sets. The value nn ranges from 00 to 99. You can have a maximum of 100 output data sets for a single execution of DSNTIAUL. Each data set contains the data that is unloaded when DSNTIAUL processes a SELECT statement from the input data set. Therefore, the number of output data sets must match the number of SELECT statements (if you specify parameter SQL) or table specifications in your input data set.

Define all data sets as sequential data sets. You can specify the record length and block size of the SYSPUNCH and SYSRECCnn data sets. The maximum record length for the SYSPUNCH and SYSRECCnn data sets is 32760 bytes.

DSNTIAUL return codes:

Table 164. DSNTIAUL return codes

Return code	Meaning
0	Successful completion.
4	An SQL statement received a warning code. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If TOLWARN(YES) is specified, and the warning occurred on a FETCH or OPEN during the processing of a SELECT statement, DB2 performs the unload operation. Otherwise if the SQL statement was a SELECT statement, DB2 did not perform the associated unload operation. <p>If DB2 returns a +394, which indicates that it is using optimization hints, or a +395, which indicates one or more invalid optimization hints, DB2 performs the unload operation.</p>
8	An SQL statement received an error code. If the SQL statement was a SELECT statement, DB2 did not perform the associated unload operation or did not complete it.
12	DSNTIAUL could not open a data set, an SQL statement returned a severe error code (-144, -302, -804, -805, -818, -902, -906, -911, -913, -922, -923, -924, or -927), or an error occurred in the SQL message formatting routine.

Example of using DSNTIAUL to unload a subset of rows in a table:

Suppose that you want to unload the rows for department D01 from the project table. Because you can fit the table specification on one line, and you do not want to execute any non-SELECT statements, you do not need the SQL parameter. Your invocation looks like the one that is shown in the following figure:

```
//UNLOAD EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
RUN PROGRAM(DSNTIAUL) PLAN(DSNTIB10) -
LIB('DSNA10.RUNLIB.LOAD')
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSRECOO DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSRECOO,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(32760,(1000,500)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSPUNCH,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(800,(15,15)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03,RECFM=FB,LRECL=120,BLKSIZE=1200
//SYSIN DD *DSN81010
.PROJ WHERE DEPTNO='D01'
```

Example of using DSNTIAUL to unload rows in more than one table:

Suppose that you also want to use DSNTIAUL to perform the following actions:

- Unload all rows from the project table

- Unload only rows from the employee table for employees in departments with department numbers that begin with D, and order the unloaded rows by employee number
- Lock both tables in share mode before you unload them
- Retrieve 250 rows per fetch

For these activities, you must specify the SQL parameter and specify the number of rows per fetch when you run DSNTIAUL. Your DSNTIAUL invocation is shown in the following figure:

```
//UNLOAD EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
RUN PROGRAM(DSNTIAUL) PLAN(DSNTIB10) PARS('SQL,250') -
LIB('DSNA10.RUNLIB.LOAD')
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSREC00 DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSREC00,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(32760,(1000,500)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03
//SYSREC01 DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSREC01,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(32760,(1000,500)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSPUNCH,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(800,(15,15)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03,RECFM=FB,LRECL=120,BLKSIZE=1200
//SYSIN DD *
LOCK TABLE DSN81010.EMP IN SHARE MODE;
LOCK TABLE DSN81010.PROJ IN SHARE MODE;
SELECT * FROM DSN81010.PROJ;
SELECT * FROM DSN81010.EMP
WHERE WORKDEPT LIKE 'D%'
ORDER BY EMPNO;
```

Example of using DSNTIAUL to obtain LOAD utility control statements:

If you want to obtain the LOAD utility control statements for loading rows into a table, but you do not want to unload the rows, you can set the data set names for the SYSREC nn data sets to DUMMY. For example, to obtain the utility control statements for loading rows into the department table, you invoke DSNTIAUL as shown in the following figure:

```
//UNLOAD EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
RUN PROGRAM(DSNTIAUL) PLAN(DSNTIB10) -
LIB('DSNA10.RUNLIB.LOAD')
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSREC00 DD DUMMY
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSPUNCH,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(800,(15,15)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03,RECFM=FB,LRECL=120,BLKSIZE=1200
//SYSIN DD *DSN81010
.DEPT
```

Example of using DSNTIAUL to unload LOB data:

This example uses the sample LOB table with the following structure:

```

CREATE TABLE DSN8910.EMP_PHOTO_RESUME
( EMPNO CHAR(06) NOT NULL,
EMP_ROWID ROWID NOT NULL GENERATED ALWAYS,
PSEG_PHOTO BLOB(500K),
BMP_PHOTO BLOB(100K),
RESUME CLOB(5K),
PRIMARY KEY (EMPNO))
IN DSN8D91L.DSN8S91B
CCSID EBCDIC;

```

The following call to DSNTIAUL unloads the sample LOB table. The parameters for DSNTIAUL indicate the following options:

- The input data set (SYSIN) contains SQL.
- DSNTIAUL is to retrieve 2 rows per fetch.
- DSNTIAUL places the LOB data in data sets with a high-level qualifier of DSN8UNLD.

```

//UNLOAD EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
RUN PROGRAM(DSNTIAUL) PLAN(DSNTIB91) -
PARMS('SQL,2,LOBFILE(DSN8UNLD)') -
LIB('DSN910.RUNLIB.LOAD')
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSREC00 DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSREC00,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(800,(15,15)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03,RECFM=FB
//SYSPUNCH DD DSN=DSN8UNLD.SYSPUNCH,
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(800,(15,15)),DISP=(,CATLG),
// VOL=SER=SCR03,RECFM=FB
//SYSIN DD *
SELECT * FROM DSN8910.EMP_PHOTO_RESUME;

```

Given that the sample LOB table has 4 rows of data, DSNTIAUL produces the following output:

- Data for columns EMPNO and EMP_ROWID are placed in the data set that is allocated according to the SYSREC00 DD statement. The data set name is DSN8UNLD.SYSREC00
- A generated LOAD statement is placed in the data set that is allocated according to the SYSPUNCH DD statement. The data set name is DSN8UNLD.SYSPUNCH
- The following data sets are dynamically created to store LOB data:
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000002.R0000000
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000002.R0000001
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000002.R0000002
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000002.R0000003
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000003.R0000000
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000003.R0000001
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000003.R0000002
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000003.R0000003
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000004.R0000000
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000004.R0000001
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000004.R0000002
 - DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000004.R0000003

For example, DSN8UNLD.Q0000000.C0000004.R0000001 means that the data set contains data that is unloaded from the second row (R0000001) and the fifth column (C0000004) of the result set for the first query (Q0000000).

DSNTIAD

Use the DSNTIAD program to execute SQL statements other than SELECT statements dynamically.

DSNTIAD parameters:

RC0

If you specify this parameter, DSNTIAD ends with return code 0, even if the program encounters SQL errors. If you do not specify RC0, DSNTIAD ends with a return code that reflects the severity of the errors that occur. Without RC0, DSNTIAD terminates if more than 10 SQL errors occur during a single execution.

SQLTERM(*termchar*)

Specify this parameter to indicate the character that you use to end each SQL statement. You can use any special character **except** one of those listed in the following table. SQLTERM(;) is the default.

Table 165. Invalid special characters for the SQL terminator

Name	Character	Hexadecimal representation
blank		X'40'
comma	,	X'6B'
double quotation mark	"	X'7F'
left parenthesis	(X'4D'
right parenthesis)	X'5D'
single quotation mark	'	X'7D'
underscore	_	X'6D'

Use a character other than a semicolon if you plan to execute a statement that contains embedded semicolons.

example:

Suppose that you specify the parameter SQLTERM(#) to indicate that the character # is the statement terminator. Then a CREATE TRIGGER statement with embedded semicolons looks like this:

```
CREATE TRIGGER NEW_HIRE
  AFTER INSERT ON EMP
  FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
  BEGIN ATOMIC
    UPDATE COMPANY_STATS SET NBEMP = NBEMP + 1;
  END#
```

A CREATE PROCEDURE statement with embedded semicolons looks like the following statement:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE PROC1 (IN PARM1 INT, OUT SCODE INT)
  LANGUAGE SQL
  BEGIN
    DECLARE SQLCODE INT;
```

```

DECLARE EXIT HANDLER FOR SQLEXCEPTION
SET SCODE = SQLCODE;
UPDATE TBL1 SET COL1 = PARM1;
END #

```

Be careful to choose a character for the statement terminator that is not used within the statement.

DSNTIAD data sets:

Data set

Description

SYSIN

Input data set. In this data set, you can enter any number of non-SELECT SQL statements, each terminated with a semicolon. A statement can span multiple lines, but DSNTIAD reads only the first 72 bytes of each line.

You cannot enter comments in DSNTIAD input.

SYSPRINT

Output data set. DSNTIAD writes informational and error messages in this data set. DSNTIAD sets the record length of this data set to 121 bytes and the block size to 1210 bytes.

Define all data sets as sequential data sets.

DSNTIAD return codes:

Table 166. DSNTIAD return codes

Return code	Meaning
0	Successful completion, or the user-specified parameter RC0.
4	An SQL statement received a warning code.
8	An SQL statement received an error code.
12	DSNTIAD could not open a data set, the length of an SQL statement was more than 2 MB, an SQL statement returned a severe error code (-8nn or -9nn), or an error occurred in the SQL message formatting routine.

Example of DSNTIAD invocation:

Suppose that you want to execute 20 UPDATE statements, and you do not want DSNTIAD to terminate if more than 10 errors occur. Your invocation looks like the one that is shown in the following figure:

```

//RUNTIAD EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
RUN PROGRAM(DSNTIAD) PLAN(DSNTIA10) PARMS('RC0') -
LIB('DSNA10.RUNLIB.LOAD')
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
UPDATE DSN81010.PROJ SET DEPTNO='J01' WHERE DEPTNO='A01';
UPDATE DSN81010.PROJ SET DEPTNO='J02' WHERE DEPTNO='A02';
:
UPDATE DSN81010.PROJ SET DEPTNO='J20' WHERE DEPTNO='A20';

```

DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4

Use the DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 programs to execute SQL statements dynamically.

DSNTEP4 is identical to DSNTEP2 except that it uses multi-row fetch for increased performance. When multi-row fetch is used, parallelism might be disabled in the last parallel group in the top-level query block for a query. For very simple queries, parallelism might be disabled for the entire query when multi-row fetch is used. To obtain full parallelism, either use DSNTEP2 or specify the control option SET MULT_FETCH 1 for DSNTEP4.

DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 write their results to the data set that is defined by the SYSPRINT DD statement. SYSPRINT data must have a logical record length of 133 bytes (LRECL=133). Otherwise, the program issues return code 12 with abend U4038 and reason code 1. This abend occurs due to the PL/I file exception error IBM0201S ONCODE=81. The following error message is issued:

The UNDEFINEDFILE condition was raised because of conflicting DECLARE and OPEN attributes (FILE= SYSPRINT).

Important: When you allocate a new data set with the SYSPRINT DD statement, either specify a DCB with LRECL=133, or do not specify the DCB parameter.

DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 parameters:

ALIGN(MID) or ALIGN(LHS)

Specifies the alignment.

ALIGN(MID)

Specifies that DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 output should be centered.
ALIGN(MID) is the default.

ALIGN(LHS)

Specifies that the DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 output should be left-justified.

NOMIXED or MIXED

Specifies whether DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 contains any DBCS characters.

NOMIXED

Specifies that the DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 input contains no DBCS characters. NOMIXED is the default.

MIXED

Specifies that the DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 input contains some DBCS characters.

PREPWARN

Specifies that DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 is to display the PREPARE SQLWARNING message and set the return code to 4 when an SQLWARNING is encountered at PREPARE.

SQLFORMAT

Specifies how DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 pre-processes SQL statements before passing them to DB2. Select one of the following options:

SQL This is the preferred mode for SQL statements other than SQL procedural language. When you use this option, which is the default, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 collapses each line of an SQL statement into a single line before passing the statement to DB2. DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 also discards all SQL comments.

SQLCOMNT

This mode is suitable for all SQL, but it is intended primarily for SQL procedural language processing. When this option is in effect, behavior is similar to SQL mode, except that DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 does not discard SQL comments. Instead, it automatically terminates each SQL comment with a line feed character (hex 25), unless the comment is already terminated by one or more line formatting characters. Use this option to process SQL procedural language with minimal modification by DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4.

SQLPL

This mode is suitable for all SQL, but it is intended primarily for SQL procedural language processing. When this option is in effect, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 retains SQL comments and terminates each line of an SQL statement with a line feed character (hex 25) before passing the statement to DB2. Lines that end with a split token are not terminated with a line feed character. Use this mode to obtain improved diagnostics and debugging of SQL procedural language.

SQLTERM(*termchar*)

Specifies the character that you use to end each SQL statement. You can use any character except one of those that are listed in Table 165 on page 1018. **SQLTERM(;) is the default.**

Use a character other than a semicolon if you plan to execute a statement that contains embedded semicolons.

Example: Suppose that you specify the parameter SQLTERM(#) to indicate that the character # is the statement terminator. Then a CREATE TRIGGER statement with embedded semicolons looks like this:

```
CREATE TRIGGER NEW_HIRE
  AFTER INSERT ON EMP
  FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
  BEGIN ATOMIC
    UPDATE COMPANY_STATS SET NBEMP = NBEMP + 1;
  END#
```

A CREATE PROCEDURE statement with embedded semicolons looks like the following statement:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE PROC1 (IN PARM1 INT, OUT SCODE INT)
  LANGUAGE SQL
  BEGIN
    DECLARE SQLCODE INT;
    DECLARE EXIT HANDLER FOR SQLEXCEPTION
      SET SCODE = SQLCODE;
    UPDATE TBL1 SET COL1 = PARM1;
  END #
```

Be careful to choose a character for the statement terminator that is not used within the statement.

If you want to change the SQL terminator within a series of SQL statements, you can use the `--#SET TERMINATOR #` control statement.

Example: Suppose that you have an existing set of SQL statements to which you want to add a CREATE TRIGGER statement that has embedded semicolons. You can use the default SQLTERM value, which is a semicolon, for all of the existing SQL statements. Before you execute the CREATE TRIGGER statement, include the `--#SET TERMINATOR #` control statement to change the SQL terminator to the character #:

```

SELECT * FROM DEPT;
SELECT * FROM ACT;
SELECT * FROM EMP PROJACT;
SELECT * FROM PROJ;
SELECT * FROM PROJECT;
--#SET TERMINATOR #
CREATE TRIGGER NEW_HIRE
  AFTER INSERT ON EMP
  FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
  BEGIN ATOMIC
    UPDATE COMPANY_STATS SET NBEMP = NBEMP + 1;
  END#

```

See the following discussion of the SYSIN data set for more information about the --#SET control statement.

TOLWARN

Specify NO (the default) or YES to indicate whether DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 continues to process SQL SELECT statements after receiving an SQL warning:

NO If a warning occurs when DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 executes an OPEN or FETCH for a SELECT statement, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 stops processing the SELECT statement. If SQLCODE +445 or SQLCODE +595 occurs when DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 executes a FETCH for a SELECT statement, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 continues to process the SELECT statement. If SQLCODE +802 occurs when DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 executes a FETCH for a SELECT statement, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 continues to process the SELECT statement if the TOLARTHWRN control statement is set to YES.

YES If a warning occurs when DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 executes an OPEN or FETCH for a SELECT statement, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 continues to process the SELECT statement.

DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 data sets:

Data Set

Description

SYSIN

Input data set. In this data set, you can enter any number of SQL statements, each terminated with a semicolon. A statement can span multiple lines, but DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 reads only the first 72 bytes of each line.

You can enter comments in DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 input with an asterisk (*) in column 1 or two hyphens (--) anywhere on a line. Text that follows the asterisk is considered to be comment text. Text that follows two hyphens can be comment text or a control statement. Comments are not considered in dynamic statement caching. Comments and control statements cannot span lines.

You can enter control statements of the following form in the DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 input data set:

```
--#SET control-option value
```

The control options are:

TERMINATOR

The SQL statement terminator. *value* is any single-byte character other than one of those that are listed in Table 165 on page 1018. The default is the value of the SQLTERM parameter.

ROWS_FETCH

The number of rows that are to be fetched from the result table. *value* is a numeric literal between -1 and the number of rows in the result table. -1 means that all rows are to be fetched. The default is -1.

ROWS_OUT

The number of fetched rows that are to be sent to the output data set. *value* is a numeric literal between -1 and the number of fetched rows. -1 means that all fetched rows are to be sent to the output data set. The default is -1.

MULT_FETCH

This option is valid only for DSNTEP4. Use MULT_FETCH to specify the number of rows that are to be fetched at one time from the result table. The default fetch amount for DSNTEP4 is 100 rows, but you can specify from 1 to 32676 rows.

TOLWARN

Indicates whether DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 continue to process an SQL SELECT statement after an SQL warning is returned. *value* is either NO (the default) or YES.

TOLARTHWRN

Indicates whether DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 continue to process an SQL SELECT statement after an arithmetic SQL warning (SQLCODE +802) is returned. *value* is either NO (the default) or YES.

PREPWARN

Indicates how DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 is to handle a PREPARE SQLWARNING message.

NO

Indicates that DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 **does not** display the PREPARE SQLWARNING message and **does not** set the return code to 4 when an SQLWARNING is encountered at PREPARE. The default is **NO**.

YES

Indicates that DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 displays the PREPARE SQLWARNING message and sets the return code to 4 when an SQLWARNING is encountered at PREPARE.

SQLFORMAT

Specifies how DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 pre-processes SQL statements before passing them to DB2. Select one of the following options:

SQL This is the preferred mode for SQL statements other than SQL procedural language. When you use this option, which is the default, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 collapses each line of an SQL statement into a single line before passing the statement to DB2. DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 also discards all SQL comments.

SQLCOMNT

This mode is suitable for all SQL, but it is intended primarily for SQL procedural language processing. When this option is in effect, behavior is similar to SQL mode, except that DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 does not discard SQL comments. Instead, it automatically terminates each SQL comment with a line feed character (hex 25), unless the comment is already terminated

by one or more line formatting characters. Use this option to process SQL procedural language with minimal modification by DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4.

SQLPL

This mode is suitable for all SQL, but it is intended primarily for SQL procedural language processing. When this option is in effect, DSNTEP2 or DSNTEP4 retains SQL comments and terminates each line of an SQL statement with a line feed character (hex 25) before passing the statement to DB2. Lines that end with a split token are not terminated with a line feed character. Use this mode to obtain improved diagnostics and debugging of SQL procedural language.

MAXERRORS

Specifies that number of errors that DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 handle before processing stops. The default is 10.

SYSPRINT

Output data set. DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 write informational and error messages in this data set. DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 write output records of no more than 133 bytes.

Define all data sets as sequential data sets.

DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 return codes

Table 167. DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 return codes

Return code	Meaning
0	Successful completion.
4	An SQL statement received a warning code.
8	An SQL statement received an error code.
12	The length of an SQL statement was more than 32760 bytes, an SQL statement returned a severe error code (-8nn or -9nn), or an error occurred in the SQL message formatting routine.

Example of DSNTEP2 invocation

Suppose that you want to use DSNTEP2 to execute SQL SELECT statements that might contain DBCS characters. You also want left-aligned output. Your invocation looks like the one in the following figure.

```
//RUNTEP2 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
  RUN PROGRAM(DSNTEP2) PLAN(DSNTEP10) PARS('/ALIGN(LHS) MIXED TOLWARN(YES)') -
    LIB('DSNA10.RUNLIB.LOAD')
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
SELECT * FROM DSN81010.PROJ;
```

Example of DSNTEP4 invocation

Suppose that you want to use DSNTEP4 to execute SQL SELECT statements that might contain DBCS characters, and you want center-aligned output. You also want DSNTEP4 to fetch 250 rows at a time. Your invocation looks like the one in the following figure:

```
//RUNTEP2 EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
  DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
  RUN PROGRAM(DSNTEP4) PLAN(DSNTEP481) PARS('/ALIGN(MID) MIXED') -
    LIB('DSNA10.RUNLIB.LOAD')
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
--#SET MULT_FETCH 250
SELECT * FROM DSN81010.EMP;
```

Appendix E. DSNADMSB

The DSNADMSB program collects information about a DB2 subsystem and its objects and applications.

IBM Software Support can use the information that DSNADMSB gathers to duplicate a customer environment to diagnose and resolve problems. This capability is especially useful for re-creating performance problems.

Output

Output from the DSNADMSB program consists of files that contain one or more of the following items:

- Data definition statements for re-creating user objects
- Statistics from the DB2 catalog
- EXPLAIN output
- Subsystem parameter settings

Authorization required

To execute DSNADMSB, you must have the following DB2 privileges or authorities:

- EXECUTE authority on plan DSNADMSB
- One of the following privileges or authorities:
 - The EXECUTE privilege on the ADMIN_INFO_SQL stored procedure
 - Ownership of the ADMIN_INFO_SQL stored procedure
 - SYSADM authority

In addition, if you direct DSNADMSB to write its output to data sets, you need to be authorized to perform either of the following tasks:

- Create data sets
- Write to already existing data sets

Parameters of the DSNADMSB program

The parameters of the DSNADMSB program determine the types of information that the program gathers, and the destination to which the information is written.

All parameters are positional and required, and no parameter value can be NULL. Specify parameters in a data set that is associated with the INPUTP DD statement, with one parameter value in each record. A single parameter can span multiple records. Indicate continuation of the text for a parameter with a plus sign (+) in column one of all records after the first one. DSNADMSB trims blanks at the end of all lines. DSNADMSB does not trim blanks within the parameter text.

Parameter descriptions

table-creator

The qualifier for the table, table list table (LIST_TABLE-*list-table*), or PLAN_TABLE for which DSNADMSB gathers information. The maximum length of *table-creator* is 128 bytes.

| *table-name*

| One of the following values:

- | • The name of a single user table. The name must identify a base table.
- | • LIST_TABLE-*list-table*

| *list-table* identifies a DB2 table on the local subsystem that has *table-creator* as
| the qualifier. The table must contain two columns, named CREATOR and
| TABLE. Each row of *list-table* identifies a table for which DSNADMSB is to
| gather information.

- | • PLAN_TABLE

| The maximum length of *table-name* is 128 bytes.

| If the table name is a delimited identifier, do not include the delimiters in
| *table-name*.

| *catalog-creator*

| The qualifier for the DB2 catalog, or DEFAULT, which indicates that the
| catalog qualifier is SYSIBM.

| The maximum length of *catalog-creator* is 128 bytes.

| *plan-info*

| If the table that is specified by *table-name* is PLAN_TABLE, *plan-info* is a value
| of the following form, or NONE:

| *program-begin-queryno-end-queryno*

| The meanings of these variables are:

| *program*

| A value from the PROGNAME column of the PLAN_TABLE, or a
| pattern that specifies a set of PROGNAME values in the
| PLAN_TABLE. Any pattern that is valid in a LIKE predicate can be
| specified. *program* represents programs or packages for which
| DSNADMSB collects PLAN_TABLE information.

| *begin-queryno*

| A value from the QUERYNO column of the PLAN_TABLE. The value
| represents the lowest statement number for which DSNADMSB collects
| PLAN_TABLE information.

| *end-queryno*

| A value from the QUERYNO column of the PLAN_TABLE. The value
| represents the highest statement number for which DSNADMSB
| collects PLAN_TABLE information.

| If *table-name* does not specify PLAN_TABLE, the *plan-info* value must be
| NONE.

| The maximum length of *plan-info* is 150 bytes.

| *collect-ddl*

| Specifies whether DSNADMSB returns the data definition language statements
| that can be used to create all objects that are related to the tables that are
| specified by *table-name*. Possible values are:

| **Y** Return the data definition language statements that create the objects.

| **N** Do not return the data definition language statements that create the
| objects.

| The length of *collect-ddl* is one byte.

| *collect-stats*

| Specifies whether DSNADMSB returns statistical information from DB2 catalog
| tables about the tables that are specified by *table-name* and related objects.

| Possible values are:

| **Y** Return statistical information about tables from the DB2 catalog.

| **N** Do not return statistical information about tables from the DB2 catalog.

| **Important:** Setting a *collect-stats* value of Y might generate large amounts of
| data. Set *collect-stats* to N unless you specifically need statistical information
| from DB2 catalog tables.

| The length of *collect-stats* is one byte.

| *collect-colstats*

| Specifies whether DSNADMSB returns statistical information from DB2 catalog
| tables about the columns in tables that are specified by *table-name* and related
| objects. Possible values are:

| **Y** Return statistical information about columns from the DB2 catalog.

| **N** Do not return statistical information about columns from the DB2
| catalog.

| **Important:** Setting a *collect-colstats* value of Y might generate large amounts of
| data. Set *collect-colstats* to N unless you specifically need statistical information
| from DB2 catalog tables.

| The length of *collect-colstats* is one byte.

| *edit-ddl*

| Specifies whether DSNADMSB modifies the data definition language
| statements that it generates so that the data definition language statements can
| be more easily executed by IBM Software Support. Examples of changes that
| DSNADMSB makes are:

- | • Setting the STOGROUP to SYSDEFLT
- | • Setting PRIQTY and SECQTY to their minimum values
- | • Setting DEFINE to NO
- | • Commenting out foreign key definitions

| Possible values are:

| **Y** Edit the data definition language statements that DSNADMSB
| produces.

| Y is the recommended value if you do not send data to populate the
| tables that are specified by *table-name* to IBM Software Support.

| **N** Do not edit the data definition language statements that DSNADMSB
| produces.

| The length of *edit-ddl* is one byte.

| *edit-version-mode*

| Specifies whether DSNADMSB modifies the output that it produces so that it
| runs on a different version of DB2 from the version of the subsystem from
| which the data was collected. Possible values are:

| **8** Modify the output for DB2 UDB for z/OS Version 8.

| **9-C** Modify the output for DB2 Version 9.1 for z/OS conversion mode.

- | 9-N Modify the output for DB2 Version 9.1 for z/OS new-function mode.
- | 10-C Modify the output for DB2 10 for z/OS conversion mode.
- | 10-N Modify the output for DB2 10 for z/OS new-function mode.

| **NONE**

| Do not modify the output.

| The maximum length of *edit-version-mode* is four bytes.

| *partition-rotation*

| Specifies whether DSNADMSB checks the amount of rotation that a partitioned table has undergone, and determines the number of partition rotations that are needed to synchronize logical partitions with physical partitions. Possible values are:

| **Y** Check for the amount of partition rotation.

| Y is valid only for partitioned tables.

| **N** Do not check for the amount of partition rotation.

| The length of *partition-rotation* is one byte.

| *output-method*

| Specifies the type of destination for DSNADMSB output. Possible values are:

| **R** Output is returned in the job stream. In most cases, R should be used.

| **Q** Output is returned in data sets that DSNADMSB creates. You supply the qualifier name and primary and secondary allocation quantities for those data sets in the *output-info* parameter.

| **Important:** The data sets are temporary data sets that are created on scratch packs. Depending on how the z/OS system is configured, the data sets might be deleted after a short time.

| **N** Output is returned in existing data sets that are allocated by the WLM environment startup procedure. You supply the data set names in the *output-info* parameter.

| **D** Output is returned in data sets that DSNADMSB creates. You supply the data set names and primary and secondary allocation quantities for those data sets in the *output-info* parameter.

| The length of *output-method* is one byte.

| *output-info*

| Specifies output data set information. The information depends on the value of *output-method*:

<i>output-method</i> value	<i>output-info</i> value
R	NONE

<i>output-method value</i>	<i>output-info value</i>
Q	<p>A string of this form:</p> <p><i>qualifier-primary-secondary</i></p> <p><i>qualifier</i> A string of up to 29 bytes, or DEFAULT. DSNADMSB appends a string that defines the type of output data set. If <i>qualifier</i> is not DEFAULT, <i>qualifier</i> must conform to the rules for z/OS data set names. If <i>qualifier</i> is DEFAULT, DSNADMSB generates a <i>qualifier</i> value of the following form:</p> <p><i>PMnnnnn.Dyymmdd.Thhmmss</i></p> <p><i>nnnnn</i> is the PMR number. <i>yymmdd</i> and <i>hhmmss</i> are the date and time when DSNADMSB ran.</p> <p>The strings that DSNADMSB appends to <i>qualifier</i> are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .DDL for the data set that contains data definition statements for user tables or the PLAN_TABLE • .SQL for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate PLAN_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_ATTRIBUTES, SYSACCELERATORS and SYSACCELIPLIST • .STATS for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate DB2 catalog tables with statistical information about tables • .COLST for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate DB2 catalog tables with statistical information about columns • .EXPL for the data set that contains output from tables PLAN_TABLE, DSN_PREDICAT_TABLE, DSN_DETCOST_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_ATTRIBUTES, SYSACCELERATORS and SYSACCELIPLIST • .PARM for the data set that contains subsystem parameter settings <p><i>primary</i> The primary allocation quantity for the output data sets, or DEFLT. If you specify DEFLT, the primary allocation quantity is 200 tracks.</p> <p><i>secondary</i> The secondary allocation quantity for the output data sets, or DEFLT. If you specify DEFLT, the secondary allocation quantity is 200 tracks.</p>
N	<p>A string of this form:</p> <p><i>ddldd-sqldd-statsdd-colstd-dd-colstd-dd-parmdd</i></p> <p>Each part of the string is the DD name for a data set that is defined in the WLM startup procedure for the WLM environment in which the ADMIN_INFO_SQL stored procedure runs. The DD names are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>ddldd</i> for the data set that contains data definition statements for user tables or the PLAN_TABLE • <i>sqldd</i> for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate PLAN_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_ATTRIBUTES, SYSACCELERATORS and SYSACCELIPLIST • <i>statsdd</i> for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate DB2 catalog tables with statistical information about tables • <i>colstd-dd</i> for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate that populate DB2 catalog tables with statistical information about columns • <i>expldd</i> for the data set that contains output from tables PLAN_TABLE, DSN_PREDICAT_TABLE, DSN_DETCOST_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_ATTRIBUTES, SYSACCELERATORS and SYSACCELIPLIST • <i>parmdd</i> for the data set that contains subsystem parameter settings

<i>output-method</i> value	<i>output-info</i> value
D	<p>A string of this form:</p> <pre>DDL;dsname;volser;allocunits;primary;secondary -SQL;dsname;volser;allocunits;primary;secondary -STATS;dsname;volser;allocunits;primary;secondary -COLST;dsname;volser;allocunits;primary;secondary -EXPL;dsname;volser;allocunits;primary;secondary -PARM;dsname;volser;allocunits;primary;secondary</pre> <p>The meanings of the items in the string are:</p> <p>DDL, SQL, STATS, COLST, EXPL, PARM</p> <p>Identifies the type of output that DSNADMSB puts in the data set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DDL for the data set that contains data definition statements for user tables or the PLAN_TABLE • SQL for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate PLAN_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_ATTRIBUTES, SYSACCELERATORS and SYSACCELIPLIST • STATS for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate DB2 catalog tables with statistical information about tables • COLST for the data set that contains SQL statements that populate that populate DB2 catalog tables with statistical information about columns • EXPL for the data set that contains output from tables PLAN_TABLE, DSN_PREDICAT_TABLE, DSN_DETCOST_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_TABLE, DSN_PROFILE_ATTRIBUTES, SYSACCELERATORS and SYSACCELIPLIST • PARM for the data set that contains subsystem parameter settings <p><i>dsname</i> The fully qualified name of the data set that DSNADMSB allocates, or DEFAULT. If you specify DEFAULT, the data set names have this form:</p> <pre>PMnnnnn.Dyyymmdd.Thhmmss.Vn.COLST PMnnnnn.Dyyymmdd.Thhmmss.Vn.DDL PMnnnnn.Dyyymmdd.Thhmmss.Vn.EXPL PMnnnnn.Dyyymmdd.Thhmmss.Vn.PARM PMnnnnn.Dyyymmdd.Thhmmss.Vn.SQL PMnnnnn.Dyyymmdd.Thhmmss.Vn.STATS</pre> <p><i>nnnnn</i> is the PMR number, without the branch code or country code.</p> <p><i>yymmdd</i> is the date and <i>hhmmss</i> is the time when DSNADMSB ran.</p> <p><i>n</i> is a release indicator.</p> <p><i>volser</i> The volume serial on which the data set is created.</p> <p><i>allocunits</i> Valid values are TRK or CYL.</p> <p><i>primary</i> The primary allocation quantity for the output data set.</p> <p><i>secondary</i> The secondary allocation quantity for the output data set.</p>
	<p>The maximum length of <i>output-info</i> is 1024 bytes.</p> <p><i>pmr-info</i> The number of the PMR for which the data is being collected, in this form: <i>number.branch-code.country-code</i></p>

Related reference

[PLAN_TABLE \(Managing Performance\)](#)

“Data sets that DSNADMSB uses”

“Examples of DSNADMSB invocation” on page 1035

Before running DSNADMSB

Certain activities might be required before you run the DSNADMSB program.

Before running DSNADMSB:

- Check that the SYSPROC.ADMIN_INFO_SQL DB2-supplied stored procedure is installed. In general, this activity is performed during the installation process. Installation job DSNTIJRT installs all DB2-supplied routines and sets up the WLM environments for them.
- Check that the plan for DSNADMSB is bound. In general, this activity is performed during the installation process. Installation job DSNTIJSG binds the package and plan for DSNADMSB.
- Ensure that enough space is available for the output. DSNADMSB might generate large amounts of data. Two to three megabytes of space is the average, but larger workloads might generate up to 20 megabytes of data.
- Prepare a job for running DSNADMSB. The easiest way to do that is to customize a copy of sample job DSNEJ6I, which is in data set *prefix*.SDSNSAMP. The job prolog has detailed instructions on how to customize the job.

Related concepts

[Job DSNTIJRT \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)

Related reference

[ADMIN_INFO_SQL stored procedure \(DB2 Administration Guide\)](#)

[Job DSNTIJSG \(DB2 Installation Guide\)](#)

“Data sets that DSNADMSB uses”

Data sets that DSNADMSB uses

The DSNADMSB utility uses a number of data sets during its operation.

DSNADMSB runs under the DSN DB2 command processor. The following table lists the data sets that DSNADMSB uses, in addition to the standard data sets that are required for running an application under DSN.

Table 168. Data sets that DSNADMSB uses

Data set type	DD name	Description	Required?
Input	INPUTP	Contains the DSNADMSB parameters. The INPUTP data set must have a logical record length of 80. Only bytes 1 through 71 can contain input data.	Yes

Table 168. Data sets that DSNADMSB uses (continued)

Data set type	DD name	Description	Required?
Output	None	Up to six data sets that contain the diagnostic data that DSNADMSB generates. The data set names and characteristics are determined by the values that you specify for the <i>output-method</i> and <i>output-info</i> input parameter values.	Yes

Copying the data that DSNADMSB and ADMIN_INFO_SQL collect to another subsystem

The jobs that DSNADMSB and ADMIN_INFO_SQL produce are primarily intended for the use of IBM Software Support. However, you can modify those jobs so that you can run them on your own test systems to reproduce a problem environment.

1. Ensure that your test system does not contain data that conflicts with the data that DSNADMSB or ADMIN_INFO_SQL collects.

Recommendation: Use a newly installed DB2 subsystem for testing.

2. Customize the jobs:
 - a. Modify the JOB statement for your test system.
 - b. Change the subsystem name to the subsystem name for your test system.
 - c. Change the steps that run TSOBATCH so that they run IKJEFT01. For example, suppose that the original code looks like this:

```
//SETUP EXEC TSOBATCH,DB2LEV=DB2A
```

You need to change the code to something like this:

```
//SETUP EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
```

- d. Change the steps that run DSNTEP3 so that they run DSNTEP2. For example, suppose that the original code looks like this:

```
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN S(SSSTR) R(1) T(1)
RUN PROGRAM(DSNTEP3)
END
```

You need to change the code to something like this:

```
//SYSTSIN DD *
DSN S(SSSTR) R(1) T(1)
RUN PROGRAM(DSNTEP2) PLAN(DSNTEPA1) +
LIB('DSNA10.RUNLIB.LOAD')
END
```

3. Set the subsystem parameters on the test system as indicated in the output file that contains subsystem parameter values (PARM file).

If DSNADMSB or ADMIN_INFO_SQL output is returned in a single job stream (*output-method* is R), the subsystem parameter output is at the end of the job output.

4. In the data definition language job (the job that contains ** Information **), make these changes: DDL

- a. Modify the -ALTER BUFFERPOOL statements at the end of the job to contain settings that are appropriate for your test system.
 - b. Remove the asterisks (**) in front of the -ALTER BUFFERPOOL statements.
 - c. Move the -ALTER BUFFERPOOL statements to the place in the job that says:

```

**BUFFERPOOL INFORMATION GOES HERE

```
5. Run the remainder of the jobs, in the following order:
- a. Data definition language job (contains ** DDL Information **)
 - b. Statistics INSERTs job (contains ** Stats inserts **)
 - c. Column statistics INSERTs job (contains ** Column Stats inserts **)
 - d. Plan, profile and accelerator INSERTs job (contains ** Plan, Profile and Accelerator Inserts **)

Examples of DSNADMSB invocation

Use the DSNADMSB invocation examples as models for generating your own DSNADMSB output.

Example: Collecting data from a PLAN_TABLE

Suppose that you want DSNADMSB to retrieve data from plan table SYSADM.PLAN_TABLE rows for which PROGNAME is APROGRAM and 1<=QUERYNO<=12345. You want DSNADMSB to create the output in data sets whose names and characteristics you specify. The parameter values that you specify are:

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>table-creator</i>	SYSADM	These two parameters direct DSNADMSB to collect data from SYSADM.PLAN_TABLE.
<i>table-name</i>	PLAN_TABLE	
<i>catalog-creator</i>	DEFAULT	For catalog queries, directs DSNADMSB to use the default catalog table qualifier of SYSIBM.
<i>plan-info</i>	APROGRAM-1-12345	Directs DSNADMSB to collect data only for rows for which PROGNAME is 'APROGRAM' and QUERYNO is between 1 and 12345, inclusive.
<i>collect-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect the data definition statements that created SYSADM.PLAN_TABLE and associated objects.
<i>collect-stats</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect statistics about tables from the DB2 catalog.
<i>collect-colstats</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB not to collect statistics about table columns from the DB2 catalog.

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>edit-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to modify the data definition language statements that it generates so that the data definition language statements can be more easily executed by IBM Software Support.
<i>edit-version-mode</i>	NONE	Directs DSNADMSB not to modify its about to run on a different DB2 version from the version for which the data was collected.
<i>partition-rotation</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB not to check partition rotation.
<i>output-method</i>	D	These two parameters direct DSNADMSB to write data to output data sets that DSNADMSB allocates on volume EDSDMP, with the specified data set names and space allocations.
<i>output-info</i>	DDL;SYSADM.DDL.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200- +SQL;SYSADM.SQL.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200- +STATS;SYSADM.STATS.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200- +COLST;DEFAULT;EDSDMP;TRK;50;50- +EXPL;SYSADM.EXPL.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200- +PARM;SYSADM.PARM.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200	
<i>pmr-info</i>	12345.000.000	This is the PMR number for the problem that requires data collection.

The JCL for the step that executes DSNADMSB looks like this:

```
//DSNADMSB EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
    DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
    RUN PROGRAM(DSNADMSB) PLAN(DSNADMSB)
//INPUTP DD
SYSADM
PLAN_TABLE
DEFAULT
APROGRAM-1-12345
Y
Y
N
Y
NONE
N
D
DDL;SYSADM.DDL.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200-
+SQL;SYSADM.SQL.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200-
+STATS;SYSADM.STATS.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200-
+COLST;DEFAULT;EDSDMP;TRK;50;50-
+EXPL;SYSADM.EXPL.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200-
+PARM;SYSADM.PARM.P12345;EDSDMP;TRK;200;200
12345.000.000
```

Example: Collecting data for all rows in a PLAN_TABLE

Suppose that you want DSNADMSB to retrieve data about all rows in a PLAN_TABLE. You want DSNADMSB to generate the names for the output data sets. The generated names are:

- PM11111.Dyymmdd.Dhhmmss.COLST
- PM11111.Dyymmdd.Dhhmmss.DDL
- PM11111.Dyymmdd.Dhhmmss.EXPL
- PM11111.Dyymmdd.Dhhmmss.PARM
- PM11111.Dyymmdd.Dhhmmss.SQL
- PM11111.Dyymmdd.Dhhmmss.STATS

11111 is the PMR number. *yymmdd* and *hhmmss* are the date and time when DSNADMSB ran.

The parameter values that you specify are:

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>table-creator</i>	SYSADM	These two parameters direct DSNADMSB to collect data about SYSADM.PLAN_TABLE.
<i>table-name</i>	PLAN_TABLE	
<i>catalog-creator</i>	DEFAULT	For catalog queries, directs DSNADMSB to use the default catalog table qualifier of SYSIBM.
<i>plan-info</i>	%-0-999999	This parameter tells DSNADMSB to collect data for all rows in SYSADM.PLAN_TABLE by requesting all rows for which PROGNAME='%' and 0<=QUERYNO<=999999.
<i>collect-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect the data definition statements that created SYSADM.PLAN_TABLE and associated objects.
<i>collect-stats</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect statistics about tables from the DB2 catalog.
<i>collect-colstats</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB not to collect statistics about table columns from the DB2 catalog.
<i>edit-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to modify the data definition language statements that it generates so that the data definition language statements can be more easily executed by IBM Software Support.
<i>edit-version-mode</i>	NONE	Directs DSNADMSB not to modify its about to run on a different DB2 version from the version for which the data was collected.
<i>partition-rotation</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB not to check partition rotation.

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>output-method</i>	Q	Q directs DSNADMSB to write output data to data sets that DSNADMSB creates. All output data sets have a data set qualifier of SYSADM, a primary allocation quantity of 200, and a secondary allocation quantity of 200.
<i>output-info</i>	DEFAULT-200-200	
<i>pmr-info</i>	11111.000.000	This is the PMR number for the problem that requires data collection.

The JCL for the step that executes DSNADMSB looks like this:

```
//DSNADMSB EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
  DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
  RUN PROGRAM(DSNADMSB) PLAN(DSNADMSB)
//INPUTP DD
SYSADM
PLAN_TABLE
DEFAULT
%-0-999999
Y
Y
N
Y
NONE
N
Q
DEFAULT-200-200
11111.000.000
```

Example: Collecting data using a table list as input

Suppose that you want DSNADMSB to retrieve data about the DSN8A10.EMP and DSN8A10.DEPT user tables. You want DSNADMSB to send the output to the job stream.

Before you run DSNADMSB, you need to create a DB2 table that contains the names of the tables for which you want DSNADMSB to collect data, using SQL statements like these:

```
CREATE TABLE TL1 (CREATOR VARCHAR(128),
                  TABLE VARCHAR(128));
INSERT INTO TL1 VALUES ('DSN8A10','EMP');
INSERT INTO TL1 VALUES ('DSN8A10','DEPT');
```

The parameter values that you specify are:

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>table-creator</i>	SYSADM	These two parameters direct DSNADMSB to collect data about the tables whose names are in table SYSADM.LIST_TABLE-TL1.
<i>table-name</i>	LIST_TABLE-TL1	

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>catalog-creator</i>	DEFAULT	For catalog queries, directs DSNADMSB to use the default catalog table qualifier of SYSIBM.
<i>plan-info</i>	NONE	This value must be NONE, because PLAN_TABLE data is not being collected.
<i>collect-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect the data definition statements that created SYSADM.PLAN_TABLE and associated objects.
<i>collect-stats</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect statistics about tables from the DB2 catalog.
<i>collect-colstats</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB not to collect statistics about table columns from the DB2 catalog.
<i>edit-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to modify the data definition language statements that it generates so that the data definition language statements can be more easily executed by IBM Software Support.
<i>edit-version-mode</i>	NONE	Directs DSNADMSB not to modify its about to run on a different DB2 version from the version for which the data was collected.
<i>partition-rotation</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB not to check partition rotation.
<i>output-method</i>	R	R directs DSNADMSB to write output data to the job stream.
<i>output-info</i>	NONE	When <i>output-method</i> is R, <i>output-info</i> must be NONE.
<i>pmr-info</i>	12345.000.000	This is the PMR number for the problem that requires data collection.

The JCL for the step that executes DSNADMSB looks like this:

```
//DSNADMSB EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
    DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
    RUN PROGRAM(DSNADMSB) PLAN(DSNADMSB)
//INPUTP DD
SYSADM
LIST_TABLE-TL1
DEFAULT
NONE
Y
Y
N
```

Y
 NONE
 N
 R
 NONE
 12345.000.000

Example: Collecting environment data

Suppose that you want DSNADMSB to retrieve environment data about the ASCHEMA.ATABLE user table. You want DSNADMSB to send the output to the job stream.

The parameter values that you specify are:

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>table-creator</i>	ASHEMA	These two parameters direct DSNADMSB to collect data about table ASCHEMA.ANAME.
<i>table-name</i>	ATABLE	
<i>catalog-creator</i>	DEFAULT	For catalog queries, directs DSNADMSB to use the default catalog table qualifier of SYSIBM.
<i>plan-info</i>	NONE	This value must be NONE, because PLAN_TABLE data is not being collected.
<i>collect-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect the data definition statements that created ASCHEMA.ANAME and associated objects.
<i>collect-stats</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to collect statistics about tables from the DB2 catalog.
<i>collect-colstats</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB to collect statistics about table columns from the DB2 catalog.
<i>edit-ddl</i>	Y	Directs DSNADMSB to modify the data definition language statements that it generates so that the data definition language statements can be more easily executed by IBM Software Support.
<i>edit-version-mode</i>	NONE	Directs DSNADMSB not to modify its about to run on a different DB2 version from the version for which the data was collected.
<i>partition-rotation</i>	N	Directs DSNADMSB not to check partition rotation.
<i>output-method</i>	R	R directs DSNADMSB to write output data to the job stream. When <i>output-method</i> is R, <i>output-info</i> must be NONE.
<i>output-info</i>	NONE	

Parameter	Value	Explanation
<i>pmr-info</i>	12345.000.000	This is the PMR number for the problem that requires data collection.

The JCL for the step that executes DSNADMSB looks like this:

```
//DSNADMSB EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUDUMP DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSTSIN DD *
    DSN SYSTEM(DSN)
    RUN PROGRAM(DSNADMSB) PLAN(DSNADMSB)
//INPUTP DD
ASCHEMA
ATABLE
DEFAULT
NONE
Y
Y
N
Y
NONE
N
R
NONE
12345.000.000
```

Collecting data for a table with a long table name with embedded blanks

Suppose that you want to collect the same data as in the previous example for a table with the schema name SYSADM, and the following name, which is 85 bytes long:

```
A234567891 234567892 234567893 234567894 234567895 234567896 234567897-
234567898 2345
```

The record length of the INPUTP data set is 80 bytes, but only the first 71 bytes can contain input data, so you need to split the schema name and table name across input records. You can split the table name after any non-blank character in the record. DSNADMSB trims blanks at the end of each record.

The INPUTP data set might look like this. The table name is split across three records, after positions 50 and 65.

```
SYSADM
A234567891 234567892 234567893 234567894 234567895
+ 234567896 2345
+67897 234567898 2345
DEFAULT
NONE
Y
Y
N
Y
NONE
N
R
NONE
12345.000.000
```

| The first continued line must contain a blank after the plus sign, because the
| character at position 51 of the table name is a blank. The second continued line
| must not contain a blank after the plus sign, because the character at position 66 of
| the table name is not a blank.

Appendix F. How real-time statistics are used by DB2 utilities

DB2 utilities use real-time statistics to optimize data processing and operations.

Utilities can use real-time statistics to calculate how data processing is done. This is more efficient than using statistics typically gathered by the RUNSTATS utility or stored in catalogs.

The use of real-time statistics eliminates some of the dependency on regularly running the RUNSTATS utility which is processing intensive and time consuming.

If real-time statistics are available and the system parameter UTSORTAL is set to YES, the following utilities use real-time statistics to help determine how data is processed:

- CHECK DATA
- CHECK INDEX
- REBUILD INDEX
- REORG TABLESPACE
- RUNSTATS

The REORG TABLESPACE utility also uses real-time statistics to determine the size of a hash space when reorganizing a hash table space and AUTOESTSPACE YES is specified.

Additionally, the RUNSTATS utility uses real-time statistics when determining the number of records to include when collecting a sampling of statistics.

DB2 issues message DSNU3343I if there are no real-time statistics available. This message can be issued for either table spaces or indexes. When message DSNU3343I is returned, DB2 tries to gather real time statistics either from associated indexes or table spaces, depending on what kind of real-time statistics were not available. If no real-time statistics are available, DB2 uses RUNSTATS based estimations.

Table space and index characteristics

Utilities regularly gather information about table space or index characteristics. The information is used to calculate statistics that help determine how a utility processes data.

Utilities read the totals number of rows from the column TOTALROWS in the table SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACESTATS and the number of associated index keys from column TOTALENTRIES in the table SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSPACESTATS. The statistics that are calculated from this information are used to estimate the number of records that need to be sorted and the size of the required sort work data sets.

Recommendation: To prevent utilities from using incorrect values when table spaces are replaced by utilities such as DSN1COPY or other utilities not controlled by DB2, column information can be set to NULL. When information for the columns is set to NULL, the number of records is estimated based on statistics gathered by RUNSTATS. The columns are then re-initialized the next time REORG TABLESPACE, LOAD REPLACE, or REBUILD INDEX runs.

Related concepts

 [Real-time statistics \(Managing Performance\)](#)

Appendix G. Delimited file format

A delimited file is a sequential file with column delimiters. Each delimited file is a stream of records, which consists of fields that are ordered by column.

Each record contains fields for one row. Within each row, individual fields are separated by column delimiters. All fields must be delimited character strings, non-delimited character strings, or external numeric values. Delimited character strings can contain column delimiters and can also contain character string delimiters when two successive character string delimiters are used to represent one character.

All characters in all records are in the same CCSID. If EBCDIC or ASCII data contains DBCS characters, the data must be in an appropriate mixed CCSID. If the data is Unicode it must be in CCSID 1208.

The following figure describes the format of delimited files that can be loaded into or unloaded from tables by using the LOAD and UNLOAD utilities.

```
Delimited file ::= Row 1 data ||
                  Row 2 data ||
                  .
                  .
                  Row n data
```

```
Row i data ::= Cell value(i,1) || Column delimiter ||
               Cell value(i,2) || Column delimiter ||
               .
               .
               Cell value(i,m)
```

Column delimiter ::= Character specified by COLDEL option;
the default value is a comma (,)

```
Cell value(i,j) ::= Leading spaces ||
                   External numeric values ||
                   Delimited character string ||
                   Non-delimited character string ||
                   Trailing spaces
```

Non-delimited character string ::= A set of any characters except
a column delimiter

```
Delimited character string ::= A character string delimiter ||
                              A set of any characters except a
                              character string delimiter unless
                              the character string delimiter is
                              part of two successive character
                              string delimiters ||
                              A character string delimiter ||
                              Trailing garbage
```

Character string delimiter ::= Character specified by CHARDEL option; the default
value is a double quotation mark (")

Trailing garbage ::= A set of any characters except a column delimiter

Figure 165. Format of delimited files

Related concepts

“Loading delimited files” on page 283

“Unloading delimited files” on page 777

Delimited data types

The LOAD and UNLOAD utilities use a number of data sets during their operation. These utilities use a delimited file format.

The following table identifies the acceptable data type forms for the delimited file format that the LOAD and UNLOAD utilities use.

Table 169. Acceptable data type forms for delimited files

Data type	Acceptable form for loading a delimited file	Form that is created by unloading a delimited file
CHAR, VARCHAR	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. For VARCHAR, length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
GRAPHIC (any type) ⁴	A delimited or non-delimited character stream	Data that is unloaded as a delimited character string. For VARGRAPHIC, length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
INTEGER (any type) ¹	A stream of characters that represents a number in EXTERNAL format	Numeric data in external format.
DECIMAL (any type) ²	A character string that represents a number in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a number.
DECFLOAT EXTERNAL	A character string that represents	A SQL numeric constant.
FLOAT ³	A representation of a number in the range -7.2E+75 to 7.2E+75 in EXTERNAL format	A string of characters that represents a number in floating-point notation.
BLOB, CLOB	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. Length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
DBCLOB	A delimited or non-delimited character string	Character data that is enclosed by character delimiters. Length bytes do not precede the data in the string.
DATE	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a date value in EXTERNAL format	Character string representation of a date.

Table 169. Acceptable data type forms for delimited files (continued)

Data type	Acceptable form for loading a delimited file	Form that is created by unloading a delimited file
TIME	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a time value in EXTERNAL format	Character string representation of a time.
TIMESTAMP	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a timestamp value in EXTERNAL format	Character string representation of a timestamp.
TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	A delimited or non-delimited character string that contains a timestamp with time zone value in EXTERNAL format	Character string representation of a timestamp with time zone.

Note:

1. Field specifications of INTEGER or SMALLINT are treated as INTEGER EXTERNAL.
2. Field specifications of DECIMAL, DECIMAL PACKED, or DECIMAL ZONED are treated as DECIMAL EXTERNAL.
3. Field specifications of FLOAT, REAL, or DOUBLE are treated as FLOAT EXTERNAL.
4. EBCID graphic data must be enclosed in shift-out and shift-in characters.

Examples of delimited files

Use the examples as models to specify your own delimited files.

Example 1: Delimited file with delimited character strings

The following figure shows an example of a delimited file with delimited character strings. In this example, the column delimiter is a comma (,). Because the character strings contain the column delimiter character, they must be delimited with character string delimiters. In this example, the character string delimiter is a double quotation mark (").

```
"Smith, Bob",4973,15.46
"Jones, Bill",12345,16.34
"Williams, Sam",452,193.78
```

Figure 166. Example of a delimited file with delimited character strings

Example 2: Delimited file with non-delimited character strings

The following figure shows an example of a delimited file with non-delimited character strings. In this example, the column delimiter is a semicolon (;). Because the character strings do not contain the column delimiter character, they do not need to be delimited with character string delimiters.

```
Smith, Bob;4973;15.46
Jones, Bill;12345;16.34
Williams, Sam;452;193.78
```

Figure 167. Example of a delimited file with non-delimited character strings

Information resources for DB2 for z/OS and related products

Many information resources are available to help you use DB2 for z/OS and many related products. A large amount of technical information about IBM products is now available online in information centers or on library websites.

Disclaimer: Any web addresses that are included here are accurate at the time this information is being published. However, web addresses sometimes change. If you visit a web address that is listed here but that is no longer valid, you can try to find the current web address for the product information that you are looking for at either of the following sites:

- <http://www.ibm.com/support/publications/us/library/index.shtml>, which lists the IBM information centers that are available for various IBM products
- <http://www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order>, which is the IBM Publications Center, where you can download online PDF books or order printed books for various IBM products

DB2 for z/OS product information

The primary place to find and use information about DB2 for z/OS is the Information Management Software for z/OS Solutions Information Center (<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic>), which also contains information about IMS, QMF™, and many DB2 and IMS Tools products. This information center is also available as an installable information center that can run on a local system or on an intranet server. You can order the Information Management for z/OS Solutions Information Center DVD (SK5T-7377) for a low cost from the IBM Publications Center (<http://www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order>).

The majority of the DB2 for z/OS information in this information center is also available in the books that are identified in the following table. You can access these books at the DB2 for z/OS library website (<http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/zos/library.html>) or at the IBM Publications Center (<http://www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order>).

Table 170. DB2 10 for z/OS book titles

Title	Publication number	Available in information center	Available in PDF	Available in printed format
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Administration Guide</i>	SC19-2968	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Application Programming & SQL Guide</i>	SC19-2969	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Application Programming Guide and Reference for Java</i>	SC19-2970	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Codes</i>	GC19-2971	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Command Reference</i>	SC19-2972	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Data Sharing: Planning and Administration</i>	SC19-2973	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Diagnosis Guide and Reference</i>	LY37-3220		X	X

Table 170. DB2 10 for z/OS book titles (continued)

Title	Publication number	Available in information center	Available in PDF	Available in printed format
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Installation and Migration Guide</i>	GC19-2974	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Internationalization Guide</i>	SC19-2975	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Introduction to DB2</i>	SC19-2976	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Licensed Program Specifications</i>	GC19-2977		X	X
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Managing Performance</i>	SC19-2978	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Messages</i>	GC19-2979	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS ODBC Guide and Reference</i>	SC19-2980	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Program Directory</i>	GI10-8829		X	X
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS pureXML Guide</i>	SC19-2981	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS RACF Access Control Module Guide</i>	SC19-2982	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS SQL Reference</i>	SC19-2983	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS Utility Guide and Reference</i>	SC19-2984	X	X	
<i>DB2 10 for z/OS What's New?</i>	GC19-2985	X	X	
<i>IRLM Messages and Codes for IMS and DB2 for z/OS</i>	GC19-2666	X	X	

Note:

1. *DB2 10 for z/OS Diagnosis Guide and Reference* is available in PDF format on the DB2 10 for z/OS Licensed Library Collection kit, LK5T-7390. You can order this Licensed Library Collection kit on the IBM Publications Center site (<http://www.ibm.com/e-business/linkweb/publications/servlet/pbi.wss>). This book is also available in online format in DB2 data set DSNA10.SDSNIVPD(DSNDR).

Information resources for related products

In the following table, related product names are listed in alphabetic order, and the associated web addresses of product information centers or library web pages are indicated.

Table 171. Related product information resource locations

Related product	Information resources
C/C++ for z/OS	Library website: http://www.ibm.com/software/awdtools/czos/library/ This product is now called z/OS XL C/C++.
CICS Transaction Server for z/OS	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/cicsts/v3r1/index.jsp
COBOL	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/pdthelp/v1r1/index.jsp This product is now called Enterprise COBOL for z/OS.
DB2 Connect™	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9/index.jsp This resource is for DB2 Connect 9.
DB2 Database for Linux, UNIX, and Windows	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9/index.jsp This resource is for DB2 9 for Linux, UNIX, and Windows.

Table 171. Related product information resource locations (continued)

Related product	Information resources
DB2 Query Management Facility™	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic
DB2 Server for VSE & VM	Product website: http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/vse-vm/
DB2 Tools	<p>One of the following locations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic • Library website: http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2imstools/library.html <p>These resources include information about the following products and others:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DB2 Administration Tool • DB2 Automation Tool • DB2 Log Analysis Tool • DB2 Object Restore Tool • DB2 Query Management Facility • DB2 SQL Performance Analyzer
DB2 Universal Database™ for iSeries®	Information center: http://www.ibm.com/systems/i/infocenter/
Debug Tool for z/OS	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/pdthelp/v1r1/index.jsp
Enterprise COBOL for z/OS	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/pdthelp/v1r1/index.jsp
Enterprise PL/I for z/OS	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/pdthelp/v1r1/index.jsp
InfoSphere™ Replication Server for z/OS	<p>Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dzichelp/v2r2/topic/com.ibm.swg.im.iis.db.prod.repl.nav.doc/dochome/iiryrcnav_dochome.html</p> <p>This product was also known as DB2 DataPropagator, DB2 Information Integrator Replication Edition for z/OS, and WebSphere® Replication Server for z/OS.</p>
IMS	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic
IMS Tools	<p>One of the following locations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic • Library website: http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2imstools/library.html <p>These resources have information about the following products and others:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IMS Batch Terminal Simulator for z/OS • IMS Connect • IMS HALDB Conversion and Maintenance Aid • IMS High Performance Utility products • IMS DataPropagator • IMS Online Reorganization Facility • IMS Performance Analyzer
Integrated Data Management products	<p>Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/idm/v2r2/index.jsp</p> <p>This information center has information about the following products and others:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IBM Data Studio • InfoSphere Data Architect • InfoSphere Warehouse • Optim™ Database Administrator • Optim Development Studio • Optim Query Tuner

Table 171. Related product information resource locations (continued)

Related product	Information resources
PL/I	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/pdthelp/v1r1/index.jsp This product is now called Enterprise PL/I for z/OS.
System z [®]	http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r2/index.jsp
Tivoli OMEGAMON XE for DB2 Performance Expert on z/OS	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v15r1/topic/com.ibm.omegamon.xe_db2.doc/ko2welcome_pe.htm In earlier releases, this product was called DB2 Performance Expert for z/OS.
WebSphere Application Server	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/wasinfo/v6r0/index.jsp
WebSphere Message Broker with Rules and Formatter Extension	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/wmbhelp/v6r0m0/index.jsp The product is also known as WebSphere MQ Integrator Broker.
WebSphere MQ	Information center: http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/wmqv6/v6r0/index.jsp The resource includes information about MQSeries [®] .
z/Architecture [®]	Library Center site: http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/zos/bkserv/

Table 171. Related product information resource locations (continued)

Related product	Information resources
z/OS	<p>Library Center site: http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/zos/bkserv/</p> <p>This resource includes information about the following z/OS elements and components:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Character Data Representation Architecture • Device Support Facilities • DFSORT • Fortran • High Level Assembler • NetView[®] • SMP/E for z/OS • SNA • TCP/IP • TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server[®] • VTAM • z/OS C/C++ • z/OS Communications Server • z/OS DCE • z/OS DFSMS • z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services • z/OS DFSMSdss • z/OS DFSMSHsm • z/OS DFSMSdfp • z/OS ICSF • z/OS ISPF • z/OS JES3 • z/OS Language Environment[®] • z/OS Managed System Infrastructure • z/OS MVS • z/OS MVS JCL • z/OS Parallel Sysplex[®] • z/OS RMF[™] • z/OS Security Server • z/OS UNIX System Services
z/OS XL C/C++	<p>http://www.ibm.com/software/awdtools/czos/library/</p>

The following information resources from IBM are not necessarily specific to a single product:

- The DB2 for z/OS Information Roadmap; available at: <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/zos/roadmap.html>
- DB2 Redbooks[®] and Redbooks about related products; available at: <http://www.ibm.com/redbooks>
- IBM Educational resources:
 - Information about IBM educational offerings is available on the web at: <http://www.ibm.com/software/sw-training/>

- A collection of glossaries of IBM terms in multiple languages is available on the IBM Terminology website at: <http://www.ibm.com/software/globalization/terminology/index.jsp>
- National Language Support information; available at the IBM Publications Center at: <http://www.elink.ibm.com/public/applications/publications/cgi-bin/pbi.cgi>
- *SQL Reference for Cross-Platform Development*; available at the following developerWorks® site: <http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/db2/library/techarticle/0206sqlref/0206sqlref.html>

The following information resources are not published by IBM but can be useful to users of DB2 for z/OS and related products:

- Database design topics:
 - *DB2 for z/OS and OS/390® Development for Performance Volume I*, by Gabrielle Wiorkowski, Gabrielle & Associates, ISBN 0-96684-605-2
 - *DB2 for z/OS and OS/390 Development for Performance Volume II*, by Gabrielle Wiorkowski, Gabrielle & Associates, ISBN 0-96684-606-0
 - *Handbook of Relational Database Design*, by C. Fleming and B. Von Halle, Addison Wesley, ISBN 0-20111-434-8
- Distributed Relational Database Architecture™ (DRDA) specifications; <http://www.opengroup.org>
- Domain Name System: *DNS and BIND*, Third Edition, Paul Albitz and Cricket Liu, O'Reilly, ISBN 0-59600-158-4
- Microsoft Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) information; <http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/>
- Unicode information; <http://www.unicode.org>

How to obtain DB2 information

You can access the official information about the DB2 product in a number of ways.

- “DB2 on the web”
- “DB2 product information”
- “DB2 education” on page 1056
- “How to order the DB2 library” on page 1056

DB2 on the web

Stay current with the latest information about DB2 by visiting the DB2 home page on the web:

<http://www.ibm.com/software/db2zos>

On the DB2 home page, you can find links to a wide variety of information resources about DB2. You can read news items that keep you informed about the latest enhancements to the product. Product announcements, press releases, fact sheets, and technical articles help you plan and implement your database management strategy.

DB2 product information

The official DB2 for z/OS information is available in various formats and delivery methods. IBM provides mid-version updates to the information in the information center and in softcopy updates that are available on the web and on CD-ROM.

Information Management Software for z/OS Solutions Information Center

DB2 product information is viewable in the information center, which is the primary delivery vehicle for information about DB2 for z/OS, IMS, QMF, and related tools. This information center enables you to search across related product information in multiple languages for data management solutions for the z/OS environment and print individual topics or sets of related topics. You can also access, download, and print PDFs of the publications that are associated with the information center topics. Product technical information is provided in a format that offers more options and tools for accessing, integrating, and customizing information resources. The information center is based on Eclipse open source technology.

The Information Management Software for z/OS Solutions Information Center is viewable at the following website:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic>

CD-ROMs and DVD

Books for DB2 are available on a CD-ROM that is included with your product shipment:

- DB2 10 for z/OS Licensed Library Collection, LK5T-7390, in English

The CD-ROM contains the collection of books for DB2 10 for z/OS in PDF format. Periodically, IBM refreshes the books on subsequent editions of this CD-ROM.

The books for DB2 for z/OS are also available on the following DVD collection kit, which contains online books for many IBM products:

- IBM z/OS Software Products DVD Collection, SK3T-4271, in English

PDF format

Many of the DB2 books are available in PDF (Portable Document Format) for viewing or printing from CD-ROM or the DB2 home page on the web or from the information center. Download the PDF books to your intranet for distribution throughout your enterprise.

DB2 education

IBM Education and Training offers a wide variety of classroom courses to help you quickly and efficiently gain DB2 expertise. IBM schedules classes in cities all over the world. You can find class information, by country, at the IBM Learning Services website:

<http://www.ibm.com/services/learning>

IBM also offers classes at your location, at a time that suits your needs. IBM can customize courses to meet your exact requirements. For more information, including the current local schedule, contact your IBM representative.

How to order the DB2 library

To order books, visit the IBM Publication Center on the web:

<http://www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order>

From the IBM Publication Center, you can go to the Publication Notification System (PNS). PNS users receive electronic notifications of updated publications in their profiles. You have the option of ordering the updates by using the publications direct ordering application or any other IBM publication ordering channel. The PNS application does not send automatic shipments of publications. You will receive updated publications and a bill for them if you respond to the electronic notification.

You can also order DB2 publications and CD-ROMs from your IBM representative or the IBM branch office that serves your locality. If your location is within the United States or Canada, you can place your order by calling one of the toll-free numbers:

- In the U.S., call 1-800-879-2755.
- In Canada, call 1-800-426-4968.

To order additional copies of licensed publications, specify the SOFTWARE option. To order additional publications or CD-ROMs, specify the PUBLICATIONS option. Be prepared to give your customer number, the product number, and either the feature codes or order numbers that you want.

How to use the DB2 library

Titles of books in the library begin with DB2 10 for z/OS. However, references from one book in the library to another are shortened and do not include the product name, version, and release. Instead, they point directly to the section that holds the information. The primary place to find and use information about DB2 for z/OS is the Information Management Software for z/OS Solutions Information Center (<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/imzic>).

If you are new to DB2 for z/OS, *Introduction to DB2 for z/OS* provides a comprehensive introduction to DB2 10 for z/OS. Topics included in this book explain the basic concepts that are associated with relational database management systems in general, and with DB2 for z/OS in particular.

The most rewarding task associated with a database management system is asking questions of it and getting answers, the task called *end use*. Other tasks are also necessary—defining the parameters of the system, putting the data in place, and so on. The tasks that are associated with DB2 are grouped into the following major categories.

Installation

If you are involved with installing DB2, you will need to use a variety of resources, such as:

- *DB2 Program Directory*
- *DB2 Installation and Migration Guide*
- *DB2 Administration Guide*
- *DB2 Application Programming Guide and Reference for Java*
- *DB2 Codes*
- *DB2 Internationalization Guide*
- *DB2 Messages*
- *DB2 Managing Performance*
- *DB2 RACF Access Control Module Guide*
- *DB2 Utility Guide and Reference*

If you will be using data sharing capabilities you also need *DB2 Data Sharing: Planning and Administration*, which describes installation considerations for data sharing.

If you will be installing and configuring DB2 ODBC, you will need *DB2 ODBC Guide and Reference*.

If you are installing IBM Spatial Support for DB2 for z/OS, you will need *IBM Spatial Support for DB2 for z/OS User's Guide and Reference*.

If you are installing IBM OmniFind® Text Search Server for DB2 for z/OS, you will need *IBM OmniFind Text Search Server for DB2 for z/OS Installation, Administration, and Reference*.

End use

End users issue SQL statements to retrieve data. They can also insert, update, or delete data, with SQL statements. They might need an introduction to SQL, detailed instructions for using SPUFI, and an alphabetized reference to the types of SQL statements. This information is found in *DB2 Application Programming and SQL Guide*, and *DB2 SQL Reference*.

End users can also issue SQL statements through the DB2 Query Management Facility (QMF) or some other program, and the library for that licensed program might provide all the instruction or reference material they need.

Application programming

Some users access DB2 without knowing it, using programs that contain SQL statements. DB2 application programmers write those programs. Because they write SQL statements, they need the same resources that end users do.

Application programmers also need instructions for many other topics:

- How to transfer data between DB2 and a host program—written in Java, C, or COBOL, for example
- How to prepare to compile a program that embeds SQL statements
- How to process data from two systems simultaneously, for example, DB2 and IMS or DB2 and CICS
- How to write distributed applications across operating systems
- How to write applications that use Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) to access DB2 servers
- How to write applications that use JDBC and SQLJ with the Java programming language to access DB2 servers
- How to write applications to store XML data on DB2 servers and retrieve XML data from DB2 servers.

The material needed for writing a host program containing SQL is in *DB2 Application Programming and SQL Guide*.

The material needed for writing applications that use JDBC and SQLJ to access DB2 servers is in *DB2 Application Programming Guide and Reference for Java*. The material needed for writing applications that use DB2 CLI or ODBC to access DB2 servers is in *DB2 ODBC Guide and Reference*. The material needed for working with XML data in DB2 is in *DB2 pureXML Guide*. For handling errors, see *DB2 Messages and DB2 Codes*.

Information about writing applications across operating systems can be found in *IBM DB2 SQL Reference for Cross-Platform Development*.

System and database administration

Administration covers almost everything else. *DB2 Administration Guide* divides some of those tasks among the following sections:

- Designing a database: Discusses the decisions that must be made when designing a database and tells how to implement the design by creating and altering DB2 objects, loading data, and adjusting to changes.

- Security and auditing: Describes ways of controlling access to the DB2 system and to data within DB2, to audit aspects of DB2 usage, and to answer other security and auditing concerns.
- Operation and recovery: Describes the steps in normal day-to-day operation and discusses the steps one should take to prepare for recovery in the event of some failure.

DB2 Managing Performance explains how to monitor the performance of the DB2 system and its parts. It also lists things that can be done to make some parts run faster.

If you will be using the RACF access control module for DB2 authorization checking, you will need *DB2 RACF Access Control Module Guide*.

If you are involved with DB2 only to design the database, or plan operational procedures, you need *DB2 Administration Guide*. If you also want to carry out your own plans by creating DB2 objects, granting privileges, running utility jobs, and so on, you also need:

- *DB2 SQL Reference*, which describes the SQL statements you use to create, alter, and drop objects and grant and revoke privileges
- *DB2 Utility Guide and Reference*, which explains how to run utilities
- *DB2 Command Reference*, which explains how to run commands

If you will be using data sharing, you need *DB2 Data Sharing: Planning and Administration*, which describes how to plan for and implement data sharing.

Additional information about system and database administration can be found in *DB2 Messages* and *DB2 Codes*, which list messages and codes issued by DB2, with explanations and suggested responses.

Diagnosis

Diagnostics detect and describe errors in the DB2 program. They might also recommend or apply a remedy. The documentation for this task is in *DB2 Diagnosis Guide and Reference*, *DB2 Messages*, and *DB2 Codes*.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

Intellectual Property Licensing
Legal and Intellectual Property Law
IBM Japan, Ltd.
1623-14, Shimotsuruma, Yamato-shi
Kanagawa 242-8502 Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
J46A/G4
555 Bailey Avenue
San Jose, CA 95141-1003
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Programming Interface Information

This information is intended to help you to use DB2 for z/OS utilities. This information also documents General-use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information and Product-sensitive Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information provided by DB2 10 for z/OS.

General-use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information

General-use Programming Interfaces allow the customer to write programs that obtain the services of DB2 10 for z/OS.

General-use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information is identified where it occurs by the following markings:

 General-use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information...


Product-sensitive Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information

Product-sensitive Programming Interfaces allow the customer installation to perform tasks such as diagnosing, modifying, monitoring, repairing, tailoring, or tuning of this IBM software product. Use of such interfaces creates dependencies on the detailed design or implementation of the IBM software product. Product-sensitive Programming Interfaces should be used only for these specialized purposes. Because of their dependencies on detailed design and implementation, it is to be expected that programs written to such interfaces may need to be changed in order to run with new product releases or versions, or as a result of service.

Product-sensitive Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information is identified where it occurs by the following markings:

 Product-sensitive Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information... 

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and [ibm.com](http://www.ibm.com)[®] are trademarks or registered marks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the web at <http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml>.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Glossary

abend See abnormal end of task.

abend reason code

A 4-byte hexadecimal code that uniquely identifies a problem with DB2.

abnormal end of task (abend)

Termination of a task, job, or subsystem because of an error condition that recovery facilities cannot resolve during execution.

access method services

The facility that is used to define, alter, delete, print, and reproduce VSAM key-sequenced data sets.

access path

The path that is used to locate data that is specified in SQL statements. An access path can be indexed or sequential.

access path stability

A characteristic of an access path that defines reliability for dynamic or static queries. Access paths are not regenerated unless there is a schema change or manual intervention.

active log

The portion of the DB2 log to which log records are written as they are generated. The active log always contains the most recent log records. See also archive log.

address space

A range of virtual storage pages that is identified by a number (ASID) and a collection of segment and page tables that map the virtual pages to real pages of the computer's memory.

address space connection

The result of connecting an allied address space to DB2. See also allied address space and task control block.

address space identifier (ASID)

A unique system-assigned identifier for an address space.

AFTER trigger

A trigger that is specified to be activated after a defined trigger event (an insert, update, or delete operation on the table that is specified in a trigger definition).

Contrast with BEFORE trigger and INSTEAD OF trigger.

agent In DB2, the structure that associates all processes that are involved in a DB2 unit of work. See also allied agent and system agent.

aggregate function

An operation that derives its result by using values from one or more rows. Contrast with scalar function.

alias

An alternative name that can be used in SQL statements to refer to a table or view in the same or a remote DB2 subsystem. An alias can be qualified with a schema qualifier and can thereby be referenced by other users. Contrast with synonym.

allied address space

An area of storage that is external to DB2 and that is connected to DB2. An allied address space can request DB2 services. See also address space.

allied agent

An agent that represents work requests that originate in allied address spaces. See also system agent.

allied thread

A thread that originates at the local DB2 subsystem and that can access data at a remote DB2 subsystem.

allocated cursor

A cursor that is defined for a stored procedure result set by using the SQL ALLOCATE CURSOR statement.

ambiguous cursor

A database cursor for which DB2 cannot determine whether it is used for update or read-only purposes.

APAR See authorized program analysis report.

APF See authorized program facility.

API See application programming interface.

APPL A VTAM network definition statement that is used to define DB2 to VTAM as an application program that uses SNA LU 6.2 protocols.

application

A program or set of programs that performs a task; for example, a payroll application.

application period

A pair of columns with application-maintained values that indicate the period of time when a row is valid.

application-period temporal table

A table that includes an application period.

application plan

The control structure that is produced during the bind process. DB2 uses the application plan to process SQL statements that it encounters during statement execution.

application process

The unit to which resources and locks are allocated. An application process involves the execution of one or more programs.

application programming interface (API)

A functional interface that is supplied by the operating system or by a separately ordered licensed program that allows an application program that is written in a high-level language to use specific data or functions of the operating system or licensed program.

application requester

The component on a remote system that generates DRDA requests for data on behalf of an application.

application server

The target of a request from a remote application. In the DB2 environment, the application server function is provided by the distributed data facility and is used to access DB2 data from remote applications.

archive log

The portion of the DB2 log that contains log records that have been copied from the active log. See also active log.

ASCII An encoding scheme that is used to represent strings in many environments, typically on personal computers and workstations. Contrast with EBCDIC and Unicode.

ASID See address space identifier.

attachment facility

An interface between DB2 and TSO, IMS, CICS, or batch address spaces. An attachment facility allows application programs to access DB2.

attribute

A characteristic of an entity. For example, in database design, the phone number of an employee is an attribute of that employee.

authorization ID

A string that can be verified for connection to DB2 and to which a set of privileges is allowed. An authorization ID can represent an individual or an organizational group.

authorized program analysis report (APAR)

A report of a problem that is caused by a suspected defect in a current release of an IBM supplied program.

authorized program facility (APF)

A facility that allows an installation to identify system or user programs that can use sensitive system functions.

automatic bind

(More correctly *automatic rebind*.) A process by which SQL statements are bound automatically (without a user issuing a BIND command) when an application process begins execution and the bound application plan or package it requires is not valid.

automatic query rewrite

A process that examines an SQL statement that refers to one or more base tables or materialized query tables, and, if appropriate, rewrites the query so that it performs better.

auxiliary index

An index on an auxiliary table in which each index entry refers to a LOB or XML document.

auxiliary table

A table that contains columns outside the actual table in which they are defined. Auxiliary tables can contain either LOB or XML data.

backout

The process of undoing uncommitted changes that an application process made. A backout is often performed in the event

of a failure on the part of an application process, or as a result of a deadlock situation.

backward log recovery

The final phase of restart processing during which DB2 scans the log in a backward direction to apply UNDO log records for all aborted changes.

base table

A table that is created by the SQL CREATE TABLE statement and that holds persistent data. Contrast with clone table, materialized query table, result table, temporary table, and transition table.

base table space

A table space that contains base tables.

basic row format

A row format in which values for columns are stored in the row in the order in which the columns are defined by the CREATE TABLE statement. Contrast with reordered row format.

basic sequential access method (BSAM)

An access method for storing or retrieving data blocks in a continuous sequence, using either a sequential-access or a direct-access device.

BEFORE trigger

A trigger that is specified to be activated before a defined trigger event (an insert, an update, or a delete operation on the table that is specified in a trigger definition). Contrast with AFTER trigger and INSTEAD OF trigger.

begin column

In a system period or an application period, the column that indicates the beginning of the period.

binary large object (BLOB)

A binary string data type that contains a sequence of bytes that can range in size from 0 bytes to 2 GB, less 1 byte. This string does not have an associated code page and character set. BLOBs can contain, for example, image, audio, or video data. In general, BLOB values are used whenever a binary string might exceed the limits of the VARBINARY type.

binary string

A sequence of bytes that is not associated

with a CCSID. Binary string data type can be further classified as BINARY, VARBINARY, or BLOB.

binary XML format

A system of storing XML data in binary, as opposed to text, that facilitates more efficient storage and exchange.

bind

A process by which a usable control structure with SQL statements is generated; the structure is often called an access plan, an application plan, or a package. During this bind process, access paths to the data are selected, and some authorization checking is performed. See also automatic bind.

bit data

- Data with character type CHAR or VARCHAR that is defined with the FOR BIT DATA clause. Note that using BINARY or VARBINARY rather than FOR BIT DATA is highly recommended.
- Data with character type CHAR or VARCHAR that is defined with the FOR BIT DATA clause.
- A form of character data. Binary data is generally more highly recommended than character-for-bit data.

bitemporal table

A table that is both a system-period temporal table and an application-period temporal table.

BLOB See binary large object.

block fetch

A capability in which DB2 can retrieve, or fetch, a large set of rows together. Using block fetch can significantly reduce the number of messages that are being sent across the network. Block fetch applies only to non-rowset cursors that do not update data.

bootstrap data set (BSDS)

A VSAM data set that contains name and status information for DB2 and RBA range specifications for all active and archive log data sets. The BSDS also contains passwords for the DB2 directory and catalog, and lists of conditional restart and checkpoint records.

BSAM

See basic sequential access method.

BSDS See bootstrap data set.

buffer pool

| An area of memory into which data pages
| are read, modified, and held during
| processing.

built-in data type

| A data type that IBM supplies. Among
| the built-in data types for DB2 for z/OS
| are string, numeric, XML, ROWID, and
| datetime. Contrast with distinct type.

built-in function

| A function that is generated by DB2 and
| that is in the SYSIBM schema. Contrast
| with user-defined function. See also
| function, cast function, external function,
| sourced function, and SQL function.

business dimension

A category of data, such as products or
time periods, that an organization might
want to analyze.

cache structure

A coupling facility structure that stores
data that can be available to all members
of a Sysplex. A DB2 data sharing group
uses cache structures as group buffer
pools.

CAF See call attachment facility.

call attachment facility (CAF)

A DB2 attachment facility for application
programs that run in TSO or z/OS batch.
The CAF is an alternative to the DSN
command processor and provides greater
control over the execution environment.
Contrast with Recoverable Resource
Manager Services attachment facility.

call-level interface (CLI)

A callable application programming
interface (API) for database access, which
is an alternative to using embedded SQL.

cascade delete

A process by which DB2 enforces
referential constraints by deleting all
descendent rows of a deleted parent row.

CASE expression

An expression that is selected based on
the evaluation of one or more conditions.

cast function

A function that is used to convert
instances of a (source) data type into
instances of a different (target) data type.

castout

The DB2 process of writing changed
pages from a group buffer pool to disk.

castout owner

The DB2 member that is responsible for
casting out a particular page set or
partition.

catalog

In DB2, a collection of tables that contains
descriptions of objects such as tables,
views, and indexes.

catalog table

Any table in the DB2 catalog.

CCSID

See coded character set identifier.

CDB

See communications database.

CDRA

See Character Data Representation
Architecture.

CEC

See central processor complex.

central electronic complex (CEC)

See central processor complex.

central processor complex (CPC)

A physical collection of hardware that
consists of main storage, one or more
central processors, timers, and channels.

central processor (CP)

The part of the computer that contains the
sequencing and processing facilities for
instruction execution, initial program
load, and other machine operations.

CFRM See coupling facility resource
management.

CFRM policy

The allocation rules for a coupling facility
structure that are declared by a z/OS
administrator.

character conversion

The process of changing characters from
one encoding scheme to another.

**Character Data Representation Architecture
(CDRA)**

An architecture that is used to achieve
consistent representation, processing, and
interchange of string data.

character large object (CLOB)

| A character string data type that contains
| a sequence of bytes that represent

| characters (single-byte, multibyte, or both)
| that can range in size from 0 bytes to 2
| GB, less 1 byte. In general, CLOB values
| are used whenever a character string
| might exceed the limits of the VARCHAR
| type.

character set

A defined set of characters.

character string

| A sequence of bytes that represent bit
| data, single-byte characters, or a mixture
| of single-byte and multibyte characters.
| Character data can be further classified as
| CHARACTER, VARCHAR, or CLOB.

check constraint

A user-defined constraint that specifies
the values that specific columns of a base
table can contain.

check integrity

The condition that exists when each row
in a table conforms to the check
constraints that are defined on that table.

check pending

A state of a table space or partition that
prevents its use by some utilities and by
some SQL statements because of rows
that violate referential constraints, check
constraints, or both.

checkpoint

A point at which DB2 records status
information on the DB2 log; the recovery
process uses this information if DB2
abnormally terminates.

child lock

For explicit hierarchical locking, a lock
that is held on either a table, page, row,
or a large object (LOB). Each child lock
has a parent lock. See also parent lock.

CI See control interval.

CICS Represents (in this information): CICS
Transaction Server for z/OS: Customer
Information Control System Transaction
Server for z/OS.

CICS attachment facility

| A facility that provides a multithread
| connection to DB2 to allow applications
| that run in the CICS environment to
| execute DB2 statements.

claim A notification to DB2 that an object is
being accessed. Claims prevent drains

from occurring until the claim is released,
which usually occurs at a commit point.
Contrast with drain.

claim class

A specific type of object access that can be
one of the following isolation levels:

- Cursor stability (CS)
- Repeatable read (RR)
- Write

class of service

A VTAM term for a list of routes through
a network, arranged in an order of
preference for their use.

clause In SQL, a distinct part of a statement,
such as a SELECT clause or a WHERE
clause.

CLI See call-level interface.

client See requester.

CLOB See character large object.

| **clone object**

| An object that is associated with a clone
| table, including the clone table itself and
| check constraints, indexes, and BEFORE
| triggers on the clone table.

| **clone table**

| A table that is structurally identical to a
| base table. The base and clone table each
| have separate underlying VSAM data
| sets, which are identified by their data set
| instance numbers. Contrast with base
| table.

closed application

An application that requires exclusive use
of certain statements on certain DB2
objects, so that the objects are managed
solely through the external interface of
that application.

clustering index

An index that determines how rows are
physically ordered (*clustered*) in a table
space. If a clustering index on a
partitioned table is not a partitioning
index, the rows are ordered in cluster
sequence within each data partition
instead of spanning partitions.

| **CM** See conversion mode.

| **CM*** See conversion mode*.

C++ member	A data object or function in a structure, union, or class.	cold start	A process by which DB2 restarts without processing any log records. Contrast with warm start.
C++ member function	An operator or function that is declared as a member of a class. A member function has access to the private and protected data members and to the member functions of objects in its class. Member functions are also called methods.	collection	A group of packages that have the same qualifier.
C++ object	A region of storage. An object is created when a variable is defined or a new function is invoked. An instance of a class.	column	The vertical component of a table. A column has a name and a particular data type (for example, character, decimal, or integer).
coded character set	A set of unambiguous rules that establish a character set and the one-to-one relationships between the characters of the set and their coded representations.	column function	See aggregate function.
coded character set identifier (CCSID)	A 16-bit number that uniquely identifies a coded representation of graphic characters. It designates an encoding scheme identifier and one or more pairs that consist of a character set identifier and an associated code page identifier.	"come from" checking	An LU 6.2 security option that defines a list of authorization IDs that are allowed to connect to DB2 from a partner LU.
code page	A set of assignments of characters to code points. Within a code page, each code point has only one specific meaning. In EBCDIC, for example, the character <i>A</i> is assigned code point X'C1', and character <i>B</i> is assigned code point X'C2'.	command	A DB2 operator command or a DSN subcommand. A command is distinct from an SQL statement.
code point	In CDRA, a unique bit pattern that represents a character in a code page.	command prefix	A 1- to 8-character command identifier. The command prefix distinguishes the command as belonging to an application or subsystem rather than to z/OS.
code unit	The fundamental binary width in a computer architecture that is used for representing character data, such as 7 bits, 8 bits, 16 bits, or 32 bits. Depending on the character encoding form that is used, each code point in a coded character set can be represented by one or more code units.	command recognition character (CRC)	A character that permits a z/OS console operator or an IMS subsystem user to route DB2 commands to specific DB2 subsystems.
coexistence	During migration, the period of time in which two releases exist in the same data sharing group.	command scope	The scope of command operation in a data sharing group.
		commit	The operation that ends a unit of work by releasing locks so that the database changes that are made by that unit of work can be perceived by other processes. Contrast with rollback.
		commit point	A point in time when data is considered consistent.
		common service area (CSA)	In z/OS, a part of the common area that contains data areas that are addressable by all address spaces. Most DB2 use is in the extended CSA, which is above the 16-MB line.

communications database (CDB)

A set of tables in the DB2 catalog that are used to establish conversations with remote database management systems.

comparison operator

A token (such as =, >, or <) that is used to specify a relationship between two values.

compatibility mode

See conversion mode.

compatibility mode* (CM*)

See conversion mode*.

composite key

An ordered set of key columns or expressions of the same table.

compression dictionary

The dictionary that controls the process of compression and decompression. This dictionary is created from the data in the table space or table space partition.

concurrency

The shared use of resources by more than one application process at the same time.

conditional restart

A DB2 restart that is directed by a user-defined conditional restart control record (CRCR).

connection

In SNA, the existence of a communication path between two partner LUs that allows information to be exchanged (for example, two DB2 subsystems that are connected and communicating by way of a conversation).

connection context

In SQLJ, a Java object that represents a connection to a data source.

connection declaration clause

In SQLJ, a statement that declares a connection to a data source.

connection handle

The data object containing information that is associated with a connection that DB2 ODBC manages. This includes general status information, transaction status, and diagnostic information.

connection ID

An identifier that is supplied by the attachment facility and that is associated with a specific address space connection.

consistency token

A timestamp that is used to generate the version identifier for an application. See also version.

constant

A language element that specifies an unchanging value. Constants are classified as string constants or numeric constants. Contrast with variable.

constraint

A rule that limits the values that can be inserted, deleted, or updated in a table. See referential constraint, check constraint, and unique constraint.

context

An application's logical connection to the data source and associated DB2 ODBC connection information that allows the application to direct its operations to a data source. A DB2 ODBC context represents a DB2 thread.

contracting conversion

A process that occurs when the length of a converted string is smaller than that of the source string. For example, this process occurs when an EBCDIC mixed-data string that contains DBCS characters is converted to ASCII mixed data; the converted string is shorter because the shift codes are removed.

control interval (CI)

- A unit of information that VSAM transfers between virtual and auxiliary storage.
- In a key-sequenced data set or file, the set of records that an entry in the sequence-set index record points to.

conversation

Communication, which is based on LU 6.2 or Advanced Program-to-Program Communication (APPC), between an application and a remote transaction program over an SNA logical unit-to-logical unit (LU-LU) session that allows communication while processing a transaction.

conversion mode* (CM*)

A stage of the version-to-version migration process that applies to a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group that was in enabling-new-function mode (ENFM), enabling-new-function mode* (ENFM*), or

new-function mode (NFM) at one time. Fallback to a prior version is not supported. When in conversion mode*, a DB2 data sharing group cannot coexist with members that are still at the prior version level. Contrast with conversion mode, enabling-new-function mode, enabling-new-function mode*, and new-function mode.

Previously known as compatibility mode* (CM*).

conversion mode (CM)

The first stage of the version-to-version migration process. In a DB2 data sharing group, members in conversion mode can coexist with members that are still at the prior version level. Fallback to the prior version is also supported. When in conversion mode, the DB2 subsystem cannot use most new functions of the new version. Contrast with conversion mode*, enabling-new-function mode, enabling-new-function mode*, and new-function mode.

Previously known as compatibility mode (CM).

coordinator

The system component that coordinates the commit or rollback of a unit of work that includes work that is done on one or more other systems.

coprocessor

See SQL statement coprocessor.

copy pool

A collection of names of storage groups that are processed collectively for fast replication operations.

copy target

A named set of SMS storage groups that are to be used as containers for copy pool volume copies. A copy target is an SMS construct that lets you define which storage groups are to be used as containers for volumes that are copied by using FlashCopy functions.

copy version

A point-in-time FlashCopy copy that is managed by HSM. Each copy pool has a version parameter that specifies the number of copy versions to be maintained on disk.

correlated columns

A relationship between the value of one column and the value of another column.

correlated subquery

A subquery (part of a WHERE or HAVING clause) that is applied to a row or group of rows of a table or view that is named in an outer subselect statement.

correlation ID

An identifier that is associated with a specific thread. In TSO, it is either an authorization ID or the job name.

correlation name

An identifier that is specified and used within a single SQL statement as the exposed name for objects such as a table, view, table function reference, nested table expression, or result of a data change statement. Correlation names are useful in an SQL statement to allow two distinct references to the same base table and to allow an alternative name to be used to represent an object.

cost category

A category into which DB2 places cost estimates for SQL statements at the time the statement is bound. The cost category is externalized in the COST_CATEGORY column of the DSN_STATEMENT_TABLE when a statement is explained.

coupling facility

A special PR/SM logical partition (LPAR) that runs the coupling facility control program and provides high-speed caching, list processing, and locking functions in a Parallel Sysplex.

coupling facility resource management (CFRM)

A component of z/OS that provides the services to manage coupling facility resources in a Parallel Sysplex. This management includes the enforcement of CFRM policies to ensure that the coupling facility and structure requirements are satisfied.

CP See central processor.

CPC See central processor complex.

CRC See command recognition character.

created temporary table

A persistent table that holds temporary data and is defined with the SQL statement CREATE GLOBAL

TEMPORARY TABLE. Information about created temporary tables is stored in the DB2 catalog and can be shared across application processes. Contrast with declared temporary table. See also temporary table.

cross-system coupling facility (XCF)

A component of z/OS that provides functions to support cooperation between authorized programs that run within a Sysplex.

cross-system extended services (XES)

A set of z/OS services that allow multiple instances of an application or subsystem, running on different systems in a Sysplex environment, to implement high-performance, high-availability data sharing by using a coupling facility.

CS See cursor stability.

CSA See common service area.

CT See cursor table.

current data

Data within a host structure that is current with (identical to) the data within the base table.

current status rebuild

The second phase of restart processing during which the status of the subsystem is reconstructed from information on the log.

cursor A control structure that an application program uses to point to a single row or multiple rows within some ordered set of rows of a result table. A cursor can be used to retrieve, update, or delete rows from a result table.

cursor sensitivity

The degree to which database updates are visible to the subsequent FETCH statements in a cursor.

cursor stability (CS)

The isolation level that provides maximum concurrency without the ability to read uncommitted data. With cursor stability, a unit of work holds locks only on its uncommitted changes and on the current row of each of its cursors. See also read stability, repeatable read, and uncommitted read.

cursor table (CT)

The internal representation of a cursor.

cycle A set of tables that can be ordered so that each table is a descendent of the one before it, and the first table is a descendent of the last table. A self-referencing table is a cycle with a single member. See also referential cycle.

database

A collection of tables, or a collection of table spaces and index spaces.

database access thread (DBAT)

A thread that accesses data at the local subsystem on behalf of a remote subsystem.

database administrator (DBA)

An individual who is responsible for designing, developing, operating, safeguarding, maintaining, and using a database.

database alias

The name of the target server if it is different from the location name. The database alias is used to provide the name of the database server as it is known to the network.

database descriptor (DBD)

An internal representation of a DB2 database definition, which reflects the data definition that is in the DB2 catalog. The objects that are defined in a database descriptor are table spaces, tables, indexes, index spaces, relationships, check constraints, and triggers. A DBD also contains information about accessing tables in the database.

database exception status

In a data sharing environment, an indication that something is wrong with a database.

database identifier (DBID)

An internal identifier of the database.

database management system (DBMS)

A software system that controls the creation, organization, and modification of a database and the access to the data that is stored within it.

database request module (DBRM)

A data set member that is created by the DB2 precompiler and that contains

information about SQL statements. DBRMs are used in the bind process.

database server

The target of a request from a local application or a remote intermediate database server.

data currency

The state in which the data that is retrieved into a host variable in a program is a copy of the data in the base table.

| **data-dependent pagination**

| The process used when applications need
| to access part of a DB2 result set that is
| based on a logical key value.

data dictionary

A repository of information about an organization's application programs, databases, logical data models, users, and authorizations.

data partition

A VSAM data set that is contained within a partitioned table space.

data-partitioned secondary index (DPSI)

A secondary index that is partitioned according to the underlying data. Contrast with nonpartitioned secondary index.

| **data set instance number**

| A number that indicates the data set that
| contains the data for an object.

data sharing

A function of DB2 for z/OS that enables applications on different DB2 subsystems to read from and write to the same data concurrently.

data sharing group

A collection of one or more DB2 subsystems that directly access and change the same data while maintaining data integrity.

data sharing member

A DB2 subsystem that is assigned by XCF services to a data sharing group.

data source

A local or remote relational or non-relational data manager that is capable of supporting data access via an ODBC driver that supports the ODBC

APIs. In the case of DB2 for z/OS, the data sources are always relational database managers.

data type

An attribute of columns, constants, variables, parameters, special registers, and the results of functions and expressions.

data warehouse

A system that provides critical business information to an organization. The data warehouse system cleanses the data for accuracy and currency, and then presents the data to decision makers so that they can interpret and use it effectively and efficiently.

DBA See database administrator.

DBAT See database access thread.

DB2 catalog

A collection of tables that are maintained by DB2 and contain descriptions of DB2 objects, such as tables, views, and indexes.

DBCLOB

See double-byte character large object.

DB2 command

An instruction to the DB2 subsystem that a user enters to start or stop DB2, to display information on current users, to start or stop databases, to display information on the status of databases, and so on.

DBCS See double-byte character set.

DBD See database descriptor.

DB2I See DB2 Interactive.

DBID See database identifier.

DB2 Interactive (DB2I)

An interactive service within DB2 that facilitates the execution of SQL statements, DB2 (operator) commands, and programmer commands, and the invocation of utilities.

DBMS

See database management system.

DBRM

See database request module.

DB2 thread

| The database manager structure that

describes an application's connection, traces its progress, processes resource functions, and delimits its accessibility to the database manager resources and services. Most DB2 for z/OS functions execute under a thread structure.

DCLGEN

See declarations generator.

DDF See distributed data facility.

deadlock

Unresolved contention for the use of a resource, such as a table or an index.

declarations generator (DCLGEN)

A subcomponent of DB2 that generates SQL table declarations and COBOL, C, or PL/I data structure declarations that conform to the table. The declarations are generated from DB2 system catalog information.

declared temporary table

A non-persistent table that holds temporary data and is defined with the SQL statement DECLARE GLOBAL TEMPORARY TABLE. Information about declared temporary tables is not stored in the DB2 catalog and can be used only by the application process that issued the DECLARE statement. Contrast with created temporary table. See also temporary table.

default value

A predetermined value, attribute, or option that is assumed when no other value is specified. A default value can be defined for column data in DB2 tables by specifying the DEFAULT keyword in an SQL statement that changes data (such as INSERT, UPDATE, and MERGE).

deferred embedded SQL

SQL statements that are neither fully static nor fully dynamic. These statements are embedded within an application and are prepared during the execution of the application.

deferred write

The process of asynchronously writing changed data pages to disk.

degree of parallelism

The number of concurrently executed operations that are initiated to process a query.

delete hole

The location on which a cursor is positioned when a row in a result table is refetched and the row no longer exists on the base table. See also update hole.

delete rule

The rule that tells DB2 what to do to a dependent row when a parent row is deleted. Delete rules include CASCADE, RESTRICT, SET NULL, or NO ACTION.

delete trigger

A trigger that is defined with the triggering delete SQL operation.

delimited identifier

A sequence of one or more characters enclosed by escape characters, such as quotation marks ("").

delimiter token

A string constant, a delimited identifier, an operator symbol, or any of the special characters that are shown in DB2 syntax diagrams.

denormalization

The intentional duplication of columns in multiple tables to increase data redundancy. Denormalization is sometimes necessary to minimize performance problems. Contrast with normalization.

dependent

An object (row, table, or table space) that has at least one parent. The object is also said to be a dependent (row, table, or table space) of its parent. See also parent row, parent table, and parent table space.

dependent row

A row that contains a foreign key that matches the value of a primary key in the parent row.

dependent table

A table that is a dependent in at least one referential constraint.

descendent

An object that is a dependent of an object or is the dependent of a descendent of an object.

descendent row

A row that is dependent on another row, or a row that is a descendent of a dependent row.

descendent table

A table that is a dependent of another table, or a table that is a descendent of a dependent table.

deterministic function

A user-defined function whose result is dependent on the values of the input arguments. That is, successive invocations with the same input values produce the same answer. Sometimes referred to as a *not-variant* function. Contrast with nondeterministic function (sometimes called a *variant function*).

dimension

A data category such as time, products, or markets. The elements of a dimension are referred to as members. See also dimension table.

dimension table

The representation of a dimension in a star schema. Each row in a dimension table represents all of the attributes for a particular member of the dimension. See also dimension, star schema, and star join.

directory

The DB2 system database that contains internal objects such as database descriptors and skeleton cursor tables.

disk A direct-access storage device that records data magnetically.

distinct type

A user-defined data type that is represented as an existing type (its source type), but is considered to be a separate and incompatible type for semantic purposes.

distributed data

Data that resides on a DBMS other than the local system.

distributed data facility (DDF)

A set of DB2 components through which DB2 communicates with another relational database management system.

Distributed Relational Database Architecture (DRDA)

A connection protocol for distributed relational database processing that is used by IBM relational database products. DRDA includes protocols for communication between an application and a remote relational database

management system, and for communication between relational database management systems. See also DRDA access.

DNS See domain name server.

DOCID

See document ID.

document ID

A value that uniquely identifies a row that contains an XML column. This value is stored with the row and never changes.

domain

The set of valid values for an attribute.

domain name

The name by which TCP/IP applications refer to a TCP/IP host within a TCP/IP network.

domain name server (DNS)

A special TCP/IP network server that manages a distributed directory that is used to map TCP/IP host names to IP addresses.

double-byte character large object (DBCLOB)

A graphic string data type in which a sequence of bytes represent double-byte characters that range in size from 0 bytes to 2 GB, less 1 byte. In general, DBCLOB values are used whenever a double-byte character string might exceed the limits of the VARCHAR type.

double-byte character set (DBCS)

A set of characters, which are used by national languages such as Japanese and Chinese, that have more symbols than can be represented by a single byte. Each character is 2 bytes in length. Contrast with single-byte character set and multibyte character set.

double-precision floating point number

A 64-bit approximate representation of a real number.

DPSI See data-partitioned secondary index.

drain The act of acquiring a locked resource by quiescing access to that object. Contrast with claim.

drain lock

A lock on a claim class that prevents a claim from occurring.

DRDA
See Distributed Relational Database Architecture.

DRDA access
An open method of accessing distributed data that you can use to connect to another database server to execute packages that were previously bound at the server location.

- DSN**
- The default DB2 subsystem name.
 - The name of the TSO command processor of DB2.
 - The first three characters of DB2 module and macro names.

dynamic cursor
A named control structure that an application program uses to change the size of the result table and the order of its rows after the cursor is opened. Contrast with static cursor.

dynamic dump
A dump that is issued during the execution of a program, usually under the control of that program.

dynamic SQL
SQL statements that are prepared and executed at run time. In dynamic SQL, the SQL statement is contained as a character string in a host variable or as a constant, and it is not precompiled.

EA-enabled table space
A table space or index space that is enabled for extended addressability and that contains individual partitions (or pieces, for LOB table spaces) that are greater than 4 GB.

EB See exabyte.

EBCDIC
Extended binary coded decimal interchange code. An encoding scheme that is used to represent character data in the z/OS, VM, VSE, and iSeries environments. Contrast with ASCII and Unicode.

embedded SQL
SQL statements that are coded within an application program. See static SQL.

enabling-new-function mode* (ENFM*)
A transitional stage of the

version-to-version migration process that applies to a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group that was in new-function mode (NFM) at one time. When in enabling-new-function mode*, a DB2 subsystem or data sharing group is preparing to use the new functions of the new version but cannot yet use them. A data sharing group that is in enabling-new-function mode* cannot coexist with members that are still at the prior version level. Fallback to a prior version is not supported. Contrast with conversion mode, conversion mode*, enabling-new-function mode, and new-function mode.

enabling-new-function mode (ENFM)

A transitional stage of the version-to-version migration process during which the DB2 subsystem or data sharing group is preparing to use the new functions of the new version. When in enabling-new-function mode, a DB2 data sharing group cannot coexist with members that are still at the prior version level. Fallback to a prior version is not supported, and most new functions of the new version are not available for use in enabling-new-function mode. Contrast with conversion mode, conversion mode*, enabling-new-function mode*, and new-function mode.

enclave

In Language Environment, an independent collection of routines, one of which is designated as the main routine. An enclave is similar to a program or run unit. See also WLM enclave.

encoding scheme

A set of rules to represent character data (ASCII, EBCDIC, or Unicode).

end column

In a system period or an application period, the column that indicates the end of the period.

ENFM See enabling-new-function mode.

ENFM*

See enabling-new-function mode*.

entity A person, object, or concept about which information is stored. In a relational database, entities are represented as tables. A database includes information

| about the entities in an organization or
| business, and their relationships to each
| other.

enumerated list

A set of DB2 objects that are defined with a LISTDEF utility control statement in which pattern-matching characters (*, %;, _, or ?) are not used.

environment

A collection of names of logical and physical resources that are used to support the performance of a function.

environment handle

| A handle that identifies the global context
| for database access. All data that is
| pertinent to all objects in the environment
| is associated with this handle.

equijoin

A join operation in which the join-condition has the form *expression = expression*. See also join, full outer join, inner join, left outer join, outer join, and right outer join.

error page range

A range of pages that are considered to be physically damaged. DB2 does not allow users to access any pages that fall within this range.

escape character

The symbol, a double quotation (") for example, that is used to enclose an SQL delimited identifier.

exabyte

A unit of measure for processor, real and virtual storage capacities, and channel volume that has a value of 1 152 921 504 606 846 976 bytes or 2⁶⁰.

exception

| An SQL operation that involves the
| EXCEPT set operator, which combines
| two result tables. The result of an
| exception operation consists of all of the
| rows that are in only one of the result
| tables.

exception table

A table that holds rows that violate referential constraints or check constraints that the CHECK DATA utility finds.

exclusive lock

A lock that prevents concurrently

executing application processes from reading or changing data. Contrast with share lock.

executable statement

An SQL statement that can be embedded in an application program, dynamically prepared and executed, or issued interactively.

execution context

In SQLJ, a Java object that can be used to control the execution of SQL statements.

exit routine

A user-written (or IBM-provided default) program that receives control from DB2 to perform specific functions. Exit routines run as extensions of DB2.

expanding conversion

A process that occurs when the length of a converted string is greater than that of the source string. For example, this process occurs when an ASCII mixed-data string that contains DBCS characters is converted to an EBCDIC mixed-data string; the converted string is longer because shift codes are added.

explicit hierarchical locking

Locking that is used to make the parent-child relationship between resources known to IRLM. This kind of locking avoids global locking overhead when no inter-DB2 interest exists on a resource.

explicit privilege

| A privilege that has a name and is held as
| the result of an SQL GRANT statement
| and revoked as the result of an SQL
| REVOKE statement. For example, the
| SELECT privilege.

exposed name

A correlation name or a table or view name for which a correlation name is not specified.

expression

An operand or a collection of operators and operands that yields a single value.

Extended Recovery Facility (XRF)

A facility that minimizes the effect of failures in z/OS, VTAM, the host processor, or high-availability applications during sessions between high-availability applications and designated terminals.

This facility provides an alternative subsystem to take over sessions from the failing subsystem.

Extensible Markup Language (XML)

A standard metalanguage for defining markup languages that is a subset of Standardized General Markup Language (SGML).

external function

A function that has its functional logic implemented in a programming language application that resides outside the database, in the file system of the database server. The association of the function with the external code application is specified by the EXTERNAL clause in the CREATE FUNCTION statement. External functions can be classified as external scalar functions and external table functions. Contrast with sourced function, built-in function, and SQL function.

external procedure

A procedure that has its procedural logic implemented in an external programming language application. The association of the procedure with the external application is specified by a CREATE PROCEDURE statement with a LANGUAGE clause that has a value other than SQL and an EXTERNAL clause that implicitly or explicitly specifies the name of the external application. Contrast with external SQL procedure and native SQL procedure.

external routine

A user-defined function or stored procedure that is based on code that is written in an external programming language.

external SQL procedure

An SQL procedure that is processed using a generated C program that is a representation of the procedure. When an external SQL procedure is called, the C program representation of the procedure is executed in a stored procedures address space. Contrast with external procedure and native SQL procedure.

failed member state

A state of a member of a data sharing group in which the member's task,

address space, or z/OS system terminates before the state changes from active to quiesced.

fallback

The process of returning to a previous release of DB2 after attempting or completing migration to a current release. Fallback is supported only from a subsystem that is in conversion mode.

false global lock contention

A contention indication from the coupling facility that occurs when multiple lock names are hashed to the same indicator and when no real contention exists.

fan set

A direct physical access path to data, which is provided by an index, hash, or link; a fan set is the means by which DB2 supports the ordering of data.

federated database

The combination of a DB2 server (in Linux, UNIX, and Windows environments) and multiple data sources to which the server sends queries. In a federated database system, a client application can use a single SQL statement to join data that is distributed across multiple database management systems and can view the data as if it were local.

fetch orientation

The specification of the desired placement of the cursor as part of a FETCH statement. The specification can be before or after the rows of the result table (with BEFORE or AFTER). The specification can also have either a single-row fetch orientation (for example, NEXT, LAST, or ABSOLUTE *n*) or a rowset fetch orientation (for example, NEXT ROWSET, LAST ROWSET, or ROWSET STARTING AT ABSOLUTE *n*).

field procedure

A user-written exit routine that is designed to receive a single value and transform (encode or decode) it in any way the user can specify.

file reference variable

A host variable that is declared with one of the derived data types (BLOB_FILE, CLOB_FILE, DBCLOB_FILE); file

reference variables direct the reading of a LOB from a file or the writing of a LOB into a file.

filter factor

A number between zero and one that estimates the proportion of rows in a table for which a predicate is true.

fixed-length string

A character, graphic, or binary string whose length is specified and cannot be changed. Contrast with varying-length string.

FlashCopy

A function on the IBM Enterprise Storage Server that can, in conjunction with the BACKUP SYSTEM utility, create a point-in-time copy of data while an application is running.

foreign key

A column or set of columns in a dependent table of a constraint relationship. The key must have the same number of columns, with the same descriptions, as the primary key of the parent table. Each foreign key value must either match a parent key value in the related parent table or be null.

forest An ordered set of subtrees of XML nodes.

forward log recovery

The third phase of restart processing during which DB2 processes the log in a forward direction to apply all REDO log records.

free space

The total amount of unused space in a page; that is, the space that is not used to store records or control information is free space.

full outer join

The result of a join operation that includes the matched rows of both tables that are being joined and preserves the unmatched rows of both tables. See also join, equijoin, inner join, left outer join, outer join, and right outer join.

fullselect

A subselect, a fullselect in parentheses, or a number of both that are combined by set operators. Fullselect specifies a result table. If a set operator is not used, the

result of the fullselect is the result of the specified subselect or fullselect.

fully escaped mapping

A mapping from an SQL identifier to an XML name when the SQL identifier is a column name.

function

A mapping, which is embodied as a program (the function body) that can be invoked by means of zero or more input values (arguments) to a single value (the result). See also aggregate function and scalar function.

Functions can be user-defined, built-in, or generated by DB2. (See also built-in function, cast function, external function, sourced function, SQL function, and user-defined function.)

function definer

The authorization ID of the owner of the schema of the function that is specified in the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

function package

A package that results from binding the DBRM for a function program.

function package owner

The authorization ID of the user who binds the function program's DBRM into a function package.

function signature

The logical concatenation of a fully qualified function name with the data types of all of its parameters.

GB Gigabyte. A value of (1 073 741 824 bytes).

GBP See group buffer pool.

GBP-dependent

The status of a page set or page set partition that is dependent on the group buffer pool. Either read/write interest is active among DB2 subsystems for this page set, or the page set has changed pages in the group buffer pool that have not yet been cast out to disk.

generalized trace facility (GTF)

A z/OS service program that records significant system events such as I/O interrupts, SVC interrupts, program interrupts, or external interrupts.

generic resource name

A name that VTAM uses to represent

several application programs that provide the same function in order to handle session distribution and balancing in a Sysplex environment.

getpage

An operation in which DB2 accesses a data page.

global lock

A lock that provides concurrency control within and among DB2 subsystems. The scope of the lock is across all DB2 subsystems of a data sharing group.

global lock contention

Conflicts on locking requests between different DB2 members of a data sharing group when those members are trying to serialize shared resources.

governor

See resource limit facility.

graphic string

A sequence of DBCS characters. Graphic data can be further classified as GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, or DBCLOB.

GRECP

See group buffer pool recovery pending.

gross lock

The *shared*, *update*, or *exclusive* mode locks on a table, partition, or table space.

group buffer pool duplexing

The ability to write data to two instances of a group buffer pool structure: a primary group buffer pool and a secondary group buffer pool. z/OS publications refer to these instances as the "old" (for primary) and "new" (for secondary) structures.

group buffer pool (GBP)

A coupling facility cache structure that is used by a data sharing group to cache data and to ensure that the data is consistent for all members.

group buffer pool recovery pending (GRECP)

The state that exists after the buffer pool for a data sharing group is lost. When a page set is in this state, changes that are recorded in the log must be applied to the affected page set before the page set can be used.

group level

The release level of a data sharing group,

which is established when the first member migrates to a new release.

group name

The z/OS XCF identifier for a data sharing group.

group restart

A restart of at least one member of a data sharing group after the loss of either locks or the shared communications area.

GTF See generalized trace facility.

handle

In DB2 ODBC, a variable that refers to a data structure and associated resources. See also statement handle, connection handle, and environment handle.

hash access

Access to a table using the hash value of a key that is defined by the *organization-clause* of a CREATE TABLE statement or ALTER TABLE statement.

hash overflow index

A DB2 index used to track data rows that do not fit into the fixed hash space, and therefore, reside in the hash overflow space. DB2 accesses the hash overflow index to fetch rows from the hash overflow area.

help panel

A screen of information that presents tutorial text to assist a user at the workstation or terminal.

heuristic damage

The inconsistency in data between one or more participants that results when a heuristic decision to resolve an indoubt LUW at one or more participants differs from the decision that is recorded at the coordinator.

heuristic decision

A decision that forces indoubt resolution at a participant by means other than automatic resynchronization between coordinator and participant.

histogram statistics

A way of summarizing data distribution. This technique divides up the range of possible values in a data set into intervals, such that each interval contains approximately the same percentage of the values. A set of statistics are collected for each interval.

history table
A base table that is associated with a system-period temporal table. A history table is used by DB2 to store the historical versions of the rows from the associated system-period temporal table.

hole A row of the result table that cannot be accessed because of a delete or an update that has been performed on the row. See also delete hole and update hole.

home address space
The area of storage that z/OS currently recognizes as *dispatched*.

host The set of programs and resources that are available on a given TCP/IP instance.

host expression
A Java variable or expression that is referenced by SQL clauses in an SQLJ application program.

host identifier
A name that is declared in the host program.

host language
A programming language in which you can embed SQL statements.

host program
An application program that is written in a host language and that contains embedded SQL statements.

host structure
In an application program, a structure that is referenced by embedded SQL statements.

host variable
In an application program written in a host language, an application variable that is referenced by embedded SQL statements.

host variable array
An array of elements, each of which corresponds to a value for a column. The dimension of the array determines the maximum number of rows for which the array can be used.

IBM System z9 Integrated Processor (zIIP)
A specialized processor that can be used for some DB2 functions.

IDCAMS
An IBM program that is used to process access method services commands. It can

be invoked as a job or jobstep, from a TSO terminal, or from within a user's application program.

IDCAMS LISTCAT

A facility for obtaining information that is contained in the access method services catalog.

identity column

A column that provides a way for DB2 to automatically generate a numeric value for each row. Identity columns are defined with the AS IDENTITY clause. Uniqueness of values can be ensured by defining a unique index that contains only the identity column. A table can have no more than one identity column.

IFCID See instrumentation facility component identifier.

IFI See instrumentation facility interface.

IFI call
An invocation of the instrumentation facility interface (IFI) by means of one of its defined functions.

image copy
An exact reproduction of all or part of a table space. DB2 provides utility programs to make full image copies (to copy the entire table space) or incremental image copies (to copy only those pages that have been modified since the last image copy).

IMS attachment facility
A DB2 subcomponent that uses z/OS subsystem interface (SSI) protocols and cross-memory linkage to process requests from IMS to DB2 and to coordinate resource commitment.

in-abort
A status of a unit of recovery. If DB2 fails after a unit of recovery begins to be rolled back, but before the process is completed, DB2 continues to back out the changes during restart.

in-commit
A status of a unit of recovery. If DB2 fails after beginning its phase 2 commit processing, it "knows," when restarted, that changes made to data are consistent. Such units of recovery are termed *in-commit*.

independent

An object (row, table, or table space) that is neither a parent nor a dependent of another object.

index A set of pointers that are logically ordered by the values of a key. Indexes can provide faster access to data and can enforce uniqueness on the rows in a table.

index-controlled partitioning

A type of partitioning in which partition boundaries for a partitioned table are controlled by values that are specified on the CREATE INDEX statement. Partition limits are saved in the LIMITKEY column of the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART catalog table.

index key

The set of columns in a table that is used to determine the order of index entries.

index partition

A VSAM data set that is contained within a partitioning index space.

index space

A page set that is used to store the entries of one index.

indicator column

A 4-byte value that is stored in a base table in place of a LOB column.

indicator variable

A variable that is used to represent the null value in an application program. If the value for the selected column is null, a negative value is placed in the indicator variable.

indoubt

A status of a unit of recovery. If DB2 fails after it has finished its phase 1 commit processing and before it has started phase 2, only the commit coordinator knows if an individual unit of recovery is to be committed or rolled back. At restart, if DB2 lacks the information it needs to make this decision, the status of the unit of recovery is *indoubt* until DB2 obtains this information from the coordinator. More than one unit of recovery can be *indoubt* at restart.

indoubt resolution

The process of resolving the status of an *indoubt* logical unit of work to either the committed or the rollback state.

inflight

A status of a unit of recovery. If DB2 fails before its unit of recovery completes phase 1 of the commit process, it merely backs out the updates of its unit of recovery at restart. These units of recovery are termed *inflight*.

inheritance

The passing downstream of class resources or attributes from a parent class in the class hierarchy to a child class.

initialization file

For DB2 ODBC applications, a file containing values that can be set to adjust the performance of the database manager.

inline copy

A copy that is produced by the LOAD or REORG utility. The data set that the inline copy produces is logically equivalent to a full image copy that is produced by running the COPY utility with read-only access (SHRLEVEL REFERENCE).

inline SQL PL

A subset of SQL procedural language that can be used in SQL functions, triggers, and dynamic compound statements. See also SQL procedural language.

inner join

The result of a join operation that includes only the matched rows of both tables that are being joined. See also join, equijoin, full outer join, left outer join, outer join, and right outer join.

inoperative package

In DB2 Version 9.1 for z/OS and earlier, a package that cannot be used because one or more user-defined functions or procedures that the package depends on were dropped. Such a package must be explicitly rebound. Contrast with invalid package.

insensitive cursor

A cursor that is not sensitive to inserts, updates, or deletes that are made to the underlying rows of a result table after the result table has been materialized.

insert trigger

A trigger that is defined with the triggering SQL operation, an insert.

install The process of preparing a DB2 subsystem to operate as a z/OS subsystem.

INSTEAD OF trigger

A trigger that is associated with a single view and is activated by an insert, update, or delete operation on the view and that can define how to propagate the insert, update, or delete operation on the view to the underlying tables of the view. Contrast with BEFORE trigger and AFTER trigger.

instrumentation facility component identifier (IFCID)

A value that names and identifies a trace record of an event that can be traced. As a parameter on the START TRACE and MODIFY TRACE commands, it specifies that the corresponding event is to be traced.

instrumentation facility interface (IFI)

A programming interface that enables programs to obtain online trace data about DB2, to submit DB2 commands, and to pass data to DB2.

Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF)

An IBM licensed program that provides interactive dialog services in a z/OS environment.

inter-DB2 R/W interest

A property of data in a table space, index, or partition that has been opened by more than one member of a data sharing group and that has been opened for writing by at least one of those members.

intermediate database server

The target of a request from a local application or a remote application requester that is forwarded to another database server.

internal resource lock manager (IRLM)

A z/OS subsystem that DB2 uses to control communication and database locking.

internationalization

The support for an encoding scheme that is able to represent the code points of characters from many different geographies and languages. To support all geographies, the Unicode standard requires more than 1 byte to represent a single character. See also Unicode.

intersection

An SQL operation that involves the INTERSECT set operator, which combines two result tables. The result of an intersection operation consists of all of the rows that are in both result tables.

invalid package

In DB2 Version 9.1 for z/OS and earlier, a package that depends on an object (other than a user-defined function) that is dropped. Such a package is implicitly rebound on invocation. Contrast with inoperative package.

IP address

A value that uniquely identifies a TCP/IP host.

IRLM See internal resource lock manager.

isolation level

The degree to which a unit of work is isolated from the updating operations of other units of work. See also cursor stability, read stability, repeatable read, and uncommitted read.

ISPF See Interactive System Productivity Facility.

iterator

In SQLJ, an object that contains the result set of a query. An iterator is equivalent to a cursor in other host languages.

iterator declaration clause

In SQLJ, a statement that generates an iterator declaration class. An iterator is an object of an iterator declaration class.

JAR See Java Archive.

Java Archive (JAR)

A file format that is used for aggregating many files into a single file.

JDBC A Sun Microsystems database application programming interface (API) for Java that allows programs to access database management systems by using callable SQL.

join A relational operation that allows retrieval of data from two or more tables based on matching column values. See also equijoin, full outer join, inner join, left outer join, outer join, and right outer join.

KB Kilobyte. A value of 1024 bytes.

Kerberos

A network authentication protocol that is designed to provide strong authentication for client/server applications by using secret-key cryptography.

Kerberos ticket

A transparent application mechanism that transmits the identity of an initiating principal to its target. A simple ticket contains the principal's identity, a session key, a timestamp, and other information, which is sealed using the target's secret key.

key A column, an ordered collection of columns, or an expression that is identified in the description of a table, index, or referential constraint. The same column or expression can be part of more than one key.

key-sequenced data set (KSDS)

A VSAM file or data set whose records are loaded in key sequence and controlled by an index.

KSDS See key-sequenced data set.

large object (LOB)

A sequence of bytes representing bit data, single-byte characters, double-byte characters, or a mixture of single- and double-byte characters. A LOB can be up to 2 GB minus 1 byte in length. See also binary large object, character large object, and double-byte character large object.

last agent optimization

An optimized commit flow for either presumed-nothing or presumed-abort protocols in which the last agent, or final participant, becomes the commit coordinator. This flow saves at least one message.

latch A DB2 mechanism for controlling concurrent events or the use of system resources.

LCID See log control interval definition.

LDS See linear data set.

leaf page

An index page that contains pairs of keys and RIDs and that points to actual data. Contrast with nonleaf page.

left outer join

The result of a join operation that

includes the matched rows of both tables that are being joined, and that preserves the unmatched rows of the first table. See also join, equijoin, full outer join, inner join, outer join, and right outer join.

limit key

The highest value of the index key for a partition.

linear data set (LDS)

A VSAM data set that contains data but no control information. A linear data set can be accessed as a byte-addressable string in virtual storage.

linkage editor

A computer program for creating load modules from one or more object modules or load modules by resolving cross references among the modules and, if necessary, adjusting addresses.

link-edit

The action of creating a loadable computer program using a linkage editor.

list A type of object, which DB2 utilities can process, that identifies multiple table spaces, multiple index spaces, or both. A list is defined with the LISTDEF utility control statement.

list structure

A coupling facility structure that lets data be shared and manipulated as elements of a queue.

L-lock See logical lock.

load module

A program unit that is suitable for loading into main storage for execution. The output of a linkage editor.

LOB See large object.

LOB locator

A mechanism that allows an application program to manipulate a large object value in the database system. A LOB locator is a fullword integer value that represents a single LOB value. An application program retrieves a LOB locator into a host variable and can then apply SQL operations to the associated LOB value using the locator.

LOB lock

A lock on a LOB value.

LOB table space

A table space that contains all the data for a particular LOB column in the related base table.

local A way of referring to any object that the local DB2 subsystem maintains. A *local table*, for example, is a table that is maintained by the local DB2 subsystem. Contrast with remote.

locale The definition of a subset of a user's environment that combines a CCSID and characters that are defined for a specific language and country.

local lock

A lock that provides intra-DB2 concurrency control, but not inter-DB2 concurrency control; that is, its scope is a single DB2.

local subsystem

The unique relational DBMS to which the user or application program is directly connected (in the case of DB2, by one of the DB2 attachment facilities).

location

The unique name of a database server. An application uses the location name to access a DB2 database server. A database alias can be used to override the location name when accessing a remote server.

location alias

Another name by which a database server identifies itself in the network. Applications can use this name to access a DB2 database server.

lock A means of controlling concurrent events or access to data. DB2 locking is performed by the IRLM.

lock duration

The interval over which a DB2 lock is held.

lock escalation

The promotion of a lock from a row, page, or LOB lock to a table space lock because the number of page locks that are concurrently held on a given resource exceeds a preset limit.

locking

The process by which the integrity of data is ensured. Locking prevents concurrent users from accessing inconsistent data. See also claim, drain, and latch.

lock mode

A representation for the type of access that concurrently running programs can have to a resource that a DB2 lock is holding.

lock object

The resource that is controlled by a DB2 lock.

lock promotion

The process of changing the size or mode of a DB2 lock to a higher, more restrictive level.

lock size

The amount of data that is controlled by a DB2 lock on table data; the value can be a row, a page, a LOB, a partition, a table, or a table space.

lock structure

A coupling facility data structure that is composed of a series of lock entries to support shared and exclusive locking for logical resources.

log

A collection of records that describe the events that occur during DB2 execution and that indicate their sequence. The information thus recorded is used for recovery in the event of a failure during DB2 execution.

log control interval definition

A suffix of the physical log record that tells how record segments are placed in the physical control interval.

logical claim

A claim on a logical partition of a nonpartitioning index.

logical index partition

The set of all keys that reference the same data partition.

logical lock (L-lock)

The lock type that transactions use to control intra- and inter-DB2 data concurrency between transactions. Contrast with physical lock (P-lock).

logically complete

A state in which the concurrent copy process is finished with the initialization of the target objects that are being copied. The target objects are available for update.

logical page list (LPL)

A list of pages that are in error and that cannot be referenced by applications until the pages are recovered. The page is in *logical error* because the actual media (coupling facility or disk) might not contain any errors. Usually a connection to the media has been lost.

logical partition

A set of key or RID pairs in a nonpartitioning index that are associated with a particular partition.

logical recovery pending (LRECP)

The state in which the data and the index keys that reference the data are inconsistent.

logical unit (LU)

An access point through which an application program accesses the SNA network in order to communicate with another application program. See also LU name.

logical unit of work

The processing that a program performs between synchronization points.

logical unit of work identifier (LUWID)

A name that uniquely identifies a thread within a network. This name consists of a fully-qualified LU network name, an LUW instance number, and an LUW sequence number.

log initialization

The first phase of restart processing during which DB2 attempts to locate the current end of the log.

log record header (LRH)

A prefix, in every log record, that contains control information.

log record sequence number (LRSN)

An identifier for a log record that is associated with a data sharing member. DB2 uses the LRSN for recovery in the data sharing environment.

log truncation

A process by which an explicit starting RBA is established. This RBA is the point at which the next byte of log data is to be written.

LPL See logical page list.

LRECP

See logical recovery pending.

LRH See log record header.

LRSN See log record sequence number.

LU See logical unit.

LU name

Logical unit name, which is the name by which VTAM refers to a node in a network.

LUW See logical unit of work.

LUWID

See logical unit of work identifier.

mapping table

A table that the REORG utility uses to map the associations of the RIDs of data records in the original copy and in the shadow copy. This table is created by the user.

mass delete

The deletion of all rows of a table.

materialize

- The process of putting rows from a view or nested table expression into a work file for additional processing by a query.
- The placement of a LOB value into contiguous storage. Because LOB values can be very large, DB2 avoids materializing LOB data until doing so becomes absolutely necessary.

materialized query table

A table that is used to contain information that is derived and can be summarized from one or more source tables. Contrast with base table.

MB Megabyte (1 048 576 bytes).

MBCS See multibyte character set.

member name

The z/OS XCF identifier for a particular DB2 subsystem in a data sharing group.

menu A displayed list of available functions for selection by the operator. A menu is sometimes called a *menu panel*.

metalanguage

A language that is used to create other specialized languages.

migration

The process of converting a subsystem with a previous release of DB2 to an updated or current release. In this process, you can acquire the functions of the updated or current release without losing the data that you created on the previous release.

mixed data string

A character string that can contain both single-byte and double-byte characters.

mode name

A VTAM name for the collection of physical and logical characteristics and attributes of a session.

modify locks

An L-lock or P-lock with a MODIFY attribute. A list of these active locks is kept at all times in the coupling facility lock structure. If the requesting DB2 subsystem fails, that DB2 subsystem's modify locks are converted to retained locks.

multibyte character set (MBCS)

A character set that represents single characters with more than a single byte. UTF-8 is an example of an MBCS. Characters in UTF-8 can range from 1 to 4 bytes in DB2. Contrast with single-byte character set and double-byte character set. See also Unicode.

multidimensional analysis

The process of assessing and evaluating an enterprise on more than one level.

Multiple Virtual Storage (MVS)

An element of the z/OS operating system. This element is also called the Base Control Program (BCP).

multisite update

Distributed relational database processing in which data is updated in more than one location within a single unit of work.

multithreading

Multiple TCBS that are executing one copy of DB2 ODBC code concurrently (sharing a processor) or in parallel (on separate central processors).

MVS See Multiple Virtual Storage.

native SQL procedure

An SQL procedure that is processed by converting the procedural statements to a

native representation that is stored in the database directory, as is done with other SQL statements. When a native SQL procedure is called, the native representation is loaded from the directory, and DB2 executes the procedure. Contrast with external procedure and external SQL procedure.

nested table expression

A fullselect in a FROM clause (surrounded by parentheses).

network identifier (NID)

The network ID that is assigned by IMS or CICS, or if the connection type is RRSAF, the RRS unit of recovery ID (URID).

new-function mode (NFM)

The normal mode of operation that exists after successful completion of a version-to-version migration. At this stage, all new functions of the new version are available for use. A DB2 data sharing group cannot coexist with members that are still at the prior version level, and fallback to a prior version is not supported. Contrast with conversion mode, conversion mode*, enabling-new-function mode, and enabling-new-function mode*.

NFM See new-function mode.

NID See network identifier.

node ID index

See XML node ID index.

nondeterministic function

A user-defined function whose result is not solely dependent on the values of the input arguments. That is, successive invocations with the same argument values can produce a different answer. This type of function is sometimes called a *variant* function. Contrast with deterministic function (sometimes called a *not-variant function*).

nonleaf page

A page that contains keys and page numbers of other pages in the index (either leaf or nonleaf pages). Nonleaf pages never point to actual data. Contrast with leaf page.

nonpartitioned index

An index that is not physically

partitioned. Both partitioning indexes and secondary indexes can be nonpartitioned.

nonpartitioned secondary index (NPSI)

An index on a partitioned table space that is not the partitioning index and is not partitioned. Contrast with data-partitioned secondary index.

nonpartitioning index

See secondary index.

nonscrollable cursor

A cursor that can be moved only in a forward direction. Nonscrollable cursors are sometimes called forward-only cursors or serial cursors.

normalization

A key step in the task of building a logical relational database design. Normalization helps you avoid redundancies and inconsistencies in your data. An entity is normalized if it meets a set of constraints for a particular normal form (first normal form, second normal form, and so on). Contrast with denormalization.

not-variant function

See deterministic function.

NPSI See nonpartitioned secondary index.

NUL The null character ('\0'), which is represented by the value X'00'. In C, this character denotes the end of a string.

null A special value that indicates the absence of information.

null terminator

In C, the value that indicates the end of a string. For EBCDIC, ASCII, and Unicode UTF-8 strings, the null terminator is a single-byte value (X'00'). For Unicode UTF-16 or UCS-2 (wide) strings, the null terminator is a double-byte value (X'0000').

ODBC

See Open Database Connectivity.

ODBC driver

A dynamically-linked library (DLL) that implements ODBC function calls and interacts with a data source.

OLAP See online analytical processing.

online analytical processing (OLAP)

The process of collecting data from one or

many sources; transforming and analyzing the consolidated data quickly and interactively; and examining the results across different dimensions of the data by looking for patterns, trends, and exceptions within complex relationships of that data.

Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)

A Microsoft database application programming interface (API) for C that allows access to database management systems by using callable SQL. ODBC does not require the use of an SQL preprocessor. In addition, ODBC provides an architecture that lets users add modules called *database drivers*, which link the application to their choice of database management systems at run time. This means that applications no longer need to be directly linked to the modules of all the database management systems that are supported.

ordinary identifier

An uppercase letter followed by zero or more characters, each of which is an uppercase letter, a digit, or the underscore character. An ordinary identifier must not be a reserved word.

ordinary token

A numeric constant, an ordinary identifier, a host identifier, or a keyword.

originating task

In a parallel group, the primary agent that receives data from other execution units (referred to as *parallel tasks*) that are executing portions of the query in parallel.

outer join

The result of a join operation that includes the matched rows of both tables that are being joined and preserves some or all of the unmatched rows of the tables that are being joined. See also join, equijoin, full outer join, inner join, left outer join, and right outer join.

overloaded function

A function name for which multiple function instances exist.

package

An object containing a set of SQL statements that have been statically bound and that is available for

processing. A package is sometimes also called an *application package*.

package list

An ordered list of package names that may be used to extend an application plan.

package name

The name of an object that is used for an application package or an SQL procedure package. An application package is a bound version of a database request module (DBRM) that is created by a BIND PACKAGE or REBIND PACKAGE command. An SQL procedural language package is created by a CREATE or ALTER PROCEDURE statement for a native SQL procedure. The name of a package consists of a location name, a collection ID, a package ID, and a version ID.

page

A unit of storage within a table space (4 KB, 8 KB, 16 KB, or 32 KB) or index space (4 KB, 8 KB, 16 KB, or 32 KB). In a table space, a page contains one or more rows of a table. In a LOB or XML table space, a LOB or XML value can span more than one page, but no more than one LOB or XML value is stored on a page.

page set

Another way to refer to a table space or index space. Each page set consists of a collection of VSAM data sets.

page set recovery pending (PSRCP)

A restrictive state of an index space. In this case, the entire page set must be recovered. Recovery of a logical part is prohibited.

panel

A predefined display image that defines the locations and characteristics of display fields on a display surface (for example, a *menu panel*).

parallel complex

A cluster of machines that work together to handle multiple transactions and applications.

parallel group

A set of consecutive operations that execute in parallel and that have the same number of parallel tasks.

parallel I/O processing

A form of I/O processing in which DB2

initiates multiple concurrent requests for a single user query and performs I/O processing concurrently (in *parallel*) on multiple data partitions.

parallelism assistant

In Sysplex query parallelism, a DB2 subsystem that helps to process parts of a parallel query that originates on another DB2 subsystem in the data sharing group.

parallelism coordinator

In Sysplex query parallelism, the DB2 subsystem from which the parallel query originates.

Parallel Sysplex

A set of z/OS systems that communicate and cooperate with each other through certain multisystem hardware components and software services to process customer workloads.

parallel task

The execution unit that is dynamically created to process a query in parallel. A parallel task is implemented by a z/OS service request block.

parameter marker

A question mark (?) that appears in a statement string of a dynamic SQL statement. The question mark can appear where a variable could appear if the statement string were a static SQL statement.

parameter-name

An SQL identifier that designates a parameter in a routine that is written by a user. Parameter names are required for SQL procedures and SQL functions, and they are used in the body of the routine to refer to the values of the parameters. Parameter names are optional for external routines.

parent key

A primary key or unique key in the parent table of a referential constraint. The values of a parent key determine the valid values of the foreign key in the referential constraint.

parent lock

For explicit hierarchical locking, a lock that is held on a resource that might have child locks that are lower in the hierarchy.

A parent lock is usually the table space lock or the partition intent lock. See also child lock.

parent row

A row whose primary key value is the foreign key value of a dependent row.

parent table

A table whose primary key is referenced by the foreign key of a dependent table.

parent table space

A table space that contains a parent table. A table space containing a dependent of that table is a dependent table space.

participant

An entity other than the commit coordinator that takes part in the commit process. The term participant is synonymous with agent in SNA.

partition

A portion of a page set. Each partition corresponds to a single, independently extendable data set. The maximum size of a partition depends on the number of partitions in the partitioned page set. All partitions of a given page set have the same maximum size.

partition-by-growth table space

A table space whose size can grow to accommodate data growth. DB2 for z/OS manages partition-by-growth table spaces by automatically adding new data sets when the database needs more space to satisfy an insert operation. Contrast with range-partitioned table space. See also universal table space.

partitioned data set (PDS)

A data set in disk storage that is divided into partitions, which are called members. Each partition can contain a program, part of a program, or data. A program library is an example of a partitioned data set.

partitioned index

An index that is physically partitioned. Both partitioning indexes and secondary indexes can be partitioned.

partitioned page set

A partitioned table space or an index space. Header pages, space map pages,

data pages, and index pages reference data only within the scope of the partition.

partitioned table space

A table space that is based on a single table and that is subdivided into partitions, each of which can be processed independently by utilities. Contrast with segmented table space and universal table space.

partitioning index

An index in which the leftmost columns are the partitioning columns of the table. The index can be partitioned or nonpartitioned.

partner logical unit

An access point in the SNA network that is connected to the local DB2 subsystem by way of a VTAM conversation.

path See SQL path.

PDS See partitioned data set.

period An interval of time that is defined by two datetime columns in a temporal table. A period contains a begin column and an end column. See also begin column and end column.

physical consistency

The state of a page that is not in a partially changed state.

physical lock (P-lock)

A type of lock that DB2 acquires to provide consistency of data that is cached in different DB2 subsystems. Physical locks are used only in data sharing environments. Contrast with logical lock (L-lock).

physically complete

The state in which the concurrent copy process is completed and the output data set has been created.

piece A data set of a nonpartitioned page set.

plan See application plan.

plan allocation

The process of allocating DB2 resources to a plan in preparation for execution.

plan member

The bound copy of a DBRM that is identified in the member clause.

plan name

The name of an application plan.

P-lock See physical lock.

point of consistency

A time when all recoverable data that an application accesses is consistent with other data. The term point of consistency is synonymous with sync point or commit point.

policy See CFRM policy.

postponed abort UR

A unit of recovery that was in-flight or in-abort, was interrupted by system failure or cancellation, and did not complete backout during restart.

precision

In SQL, the total number of digits in a decimal number (called the *size* in the C language). In the C language, the number of digits to the right of the decimal point (called the *scale* in SQL). The DB2 information uses the SQL terms.

precompilation

A processing of application programs containing SQL statements that takes place before compilation. SQL statements are replaced with statements that are recognized by the host language compiler. Output from this precompilation includes source code that can be submitted to the compiler and the database request module (DBRM) that is input to the bind process.

predicate

An element of a search condition that expresses or implies a comparison operation.

prefix A code at the beginning of a message or record.

preformat

The process of preparing a VSAM linear data set for DB2 use, by writing specific data patterns.

prepare

The first phase of a two-phase commit process in which all participants are requested to prepare for commit.

prepared SQL statement

A named object that is the executable

form of an SQL statement that has been processed by the PREPARE statement.

primary authorization ID

The authorization ID that is used to identify the application process to DB2.

primary group buffer pool

For a duplexed group buffer pool, the structure that is used to maintain the coherency of cached data. This structure is used for page registration and cross-invalidation. The z/OS equivalent is *old* structure. Compare with secondary group buffer pool.

primary index

An index that enforces the uniqueness of a primary key.

primary key

In a relational database, a unique, nonnull key that is part of the definition of a table. A table cannot be defined as a parent unless it has a unique key or primary key.

principal

An entity that can communicate securely with another entity. In Kerberos, principals are represented as entries in the Kerberos registry database and include users, servers, computers, and others.

principal name

The name by which a principal is known to the DCE security services.

privilege

The capability of performing a specific function, sometimes on a specific object. See also explicit privilege.

privilege set

- For the installation SYSADM ID, the set of all possible privileges.
- For any other authorization ID, including the PUBLIC authorization ID, the set of all privileges that are recorded for that ID in the DB2 catalog.

process

In DB2, the unit to which DB2 allocates resources and locks. Sometimes called an application process, a process involves the execution of one or more programs. The execution of an SQL statement is always associated with some process. The means of initiating and terminating a process are dependent on the environment.

program

A single, compilable collection of executable statements in a programming language.

program temporary fix (PTF)

A solution or bypass of a problem that is diagnosed as a result of a defect in a current unaltered release of a licensed program. An authorized program analysis report (APAR) fix is corrective service for an existing problem. A PTF is preventive service for problems that might be encountered by other users of the product. A PTF is *temporary*, because a permanent fix is usually not incorporated into the product until its next release.

protected conversation

A VTAM conversation that supports two-phase commit flows.

PSRCP

See page set recovery pending.

PTF See program temporary fix.

QSAM

See queued sequential access method.

query A component of certain SQL statements that specifies a result table.

query block

The part of a query that is represented by one of the FROM clauses. Each FROM clause can have multiple query blocks, depending on DB2 processing of the query.

query CP parallelism

Parallel execution of a single query, which is accomplished by using multiple tasks. See also Sysplex query parallelism.

query I/O parallelism

Parallel access of data, which is accomplished by triggering multiple I/O requests within a single query.

queued sequential access method (QSAM)

An extended version of the basic sequential access method (BSAM). When this method is used, a queue of data blocks is formed. Input data blocks await processing, and output data blocks await transfer to auxiliary storage or to an output device.

quiesce point

A point at which data is consistent as a result of running the DB2 QUIESCE utility.

RACF Resource Access Control Facility. A component of the z/OS Security Server.

range-partitioned table space

A type of universal table space that is based on partitioning ranges and that contains a single table. Contrast with partition-by-growth table space. See also universal table space.

RBA See relative byte address.

RCT See resource control table.

RDO See resource definition online.

read stability (RS)

An isolation level that is similar to repeatable read but does not completely isolate an application process from all other concurrently executing application processes. See also cursor stabilityrepeatable read, and uncommitted read.

rebind

The creation of a new application plan for an application program that has been bound previously. If, for example, you have added an index for a table that your application accesses, you must rebind the application in order to take advantage of that index.

rebuild

The process of reallocating a coupling facility structure. For the shared communications area (SCA) and lock structure, the structure is repopulated; for the group buffer pool, changed pages are usually cast out to disk, and the new structure is populated only with changed pages that were not successfully cast out.

record The storage representation of a row or other data.

record identifier (RID)

A unique identifier that DB2 uses to identify a row of data in a table. Compare with row identifier.

record identifier (RID) pool

An area of main storage that is used for sorting record identifiers during list-prefetch processing.

record length

The sum of the length of all the columns in a table, which is the length of the data as it is physically stored in the database. Records can be fixed length or varying length, depending on how the columns are defined. If all columns are fixed-length columns, the record is a fixed-length record. If one or more columns are varying-length columns, the record is a varying-length record.

Recoverable Resource Manager Services attachment facility (RRSAF)

A DB2 subcomponent that uses Resource Recovery Services to coordinate resource commitment between DB2 and all other resource managers that also use RRS in a z/OS system.

recovery

The process of rebuilding databases after a system failure.

recovery log

A collection of records that describes the events that occur during DB2 execution and indicates their sequence. The recorded information is used for recovery in the event of a failure during DB2 execution.

recovery manager

A subcomponent that supplies coordination services that control the interaction of DB2 resource managers during commit, abort, checkpoint, and restart processes. The recovery manager also supports the recovery mechanisms of other subsystems (for example, IMS) by acting as a participant in the other subsystem's process for protecting data that has reached a point of consistency.

A coordinator or a participant (or both), in the execution of a two-phase commit, that can access a recovery log that maintains the state of the logical unit of work and names the immediate upstream coordinator and downstream participants.

recovery pending (RECP)

A condition that prevents SQL access to a table space that needs to be recovered.

recovery token

An identifier for an element that is used in recovery (for example, NID or URID).

RECP See recovery pending.

redo A state of a unit of recovery that indicates that changes are to be reapplied to the disk media to ensure data integrity.

reentrant code

Executable code that can reside in storage as one shared copy for all threads. Reentrant code is not self-modifying and provides separate storage areas for each thread. See also threadsafe.

referential constraint

The requirement that nonnull values of a designated foreign key are valid only if they equal values of the primary key of a designated table.

referential cycle

A set of referential constraints such that each base table in the set is a descendent of itself. The tables that are involved in a referential cycle are ordered so that each table is a descendent of the one before it, and the first table is a descendent of the last table.

referential integrity

The state of a database in which all values of all foreign keys are valid. Maintaining referential integrity requires the enforcement of referential constraints on all operations that change the data in a table on which the referential constraints are defined.

referential structure

A set of tables and relationships that includes at least one table and, for every table in the set, all the relationships in which that table participates and all the tables to which it is related.

refresh age

The time duration between the current time and the time during which a materialized query table was last refreshed.

registry

See registry database.

registry database

A database of security information about principals, groups, organizations, accounts, and security policies.

relational database

A database that can be perceived as a set of tables and manipulated in accordance with the relational model of data.

relational database management system (RDBMS)

A collection of hardware and software that organizes and provides access to a relational database.

relational schema

See SQL schema.

relationship

A defined connection between the rows of a table or the rows of two tables. A relationship is the internal representation of a referential constraint.

relative byte address (RBA)

The offset of a data record or control interval from the beginning of the storage space that is allocated to the data set or file to which it belongs.

remigration

The process of returning to a current release of DB2 following a fallback to a previous release. This procedure constitutes another migration process.

remote

Any object that is maintained by a remote DB2 subsystem (that is, by a DB2 subsystem other than the local one). A *remote view*, for example, is a view that is maintained by a remote DB2 subsystem. Contrast with local.

remote subsystem

Any relational DBMS, except the local subsystem, with which the user or application can communicate. The subsystem need not be remote in any physical sense, and might even operate on the same processor under the same z/OS system.

reoptimization

The DB2 process of reconsidering the access path of an SQL statement at run time; during reoptimization, DB2 uses the values of host variables, parameter markers, or special registers.

reordered row format

A row format that facilitates improved performance in retrieval of rows that have varying-length columns. DB2 rearranges the column order, as defined in the CREATE TABLE statement, so that the fixed-length columns are stored at the beginning of the row and the

varying-length columns are stored at the end of the row. Contrast with basic row format.

REORG pending (REORP)

A condition that restricts SQL access and most utility access to an object that must be reorganized.

REORP

See REORG pending.

repeatable read (RR)

The isolation level that provides maximum protection from other executing application programs. When an application program executes with repeatable read protection, rows that the program references cannot be changed by other programs until the program reaches a commit point. See also cursor stability, read stability, and uncommitted read.

repeating group

A situation in which an entity includes multiple attributes that are inherently the same. The presence of a repeating group violates the requirement of first normal form. In an entity that satisfies the requirement of first normal form, each attribute is independent and unique in its meaning and its name. See also normalization.

replay detection mechanism

A method that allows a principal to detect whether a request is a valid request from a source that can be trusted or whether an untrustworthy entity has captured information from a previous exchange and is replaying the information exchange to gain access to the principal.

request commit

The vote that is submitted to the prepare phase if the participant has modified data and is prepared to commit or roll back.

requester

The source of a request to access data at a remote server. In the DB2 environment, the requester function is provided by the distributed data facility.

resource

The object of a lock or claim, which could be a table space, an index space, a data partition, an index partition, or a logical partition.

resource allocation

The part of plan allocation that deals specifically with the database resources.

resource control table

A construct of previous versions of the CICS attachment facility that defines authorization and access attributes for transactions or transaction groups. Beginning in CICS Transaction Server Version 1.3, resources are defined by using resource definition online instead of the resource control table. See also resource definition online.

resource definition online (RDO)

The recommended method of defining resources to CICS by creating resource definitions interactively, or by using a utility, and then storing them in the CICS definition data set. In earlier releases of CICS, resources were defined by using the resource control table (RCT), which is no longer supported.

resource limit facility (RLF)

A portion of DB2 code that prevents dynamic manipulative SQL statements from exceeding specified time limits. The resource limit facility is sometimes called the governor.

resource limit specification table (RLST)

A site-defined table that specifies the limits to be enforced by the resource limit facility.

resource manager

- A function that is responsible for managing a particular resource and that guarantees the consistency of all updates made to recoverable resources within a logical unit of work. The resource that is being managed can be physical (for example, disk or main storage) or logical (for example, a particular type of system service).
- A participant, in the execution of a two-phase commit, that has recoverable resources that could have been modified. The resource manager has access to a recovery log so that it can commit or roll back the effects of the logical unit of work to the recoverable resources.

restart pending (RESTP)

A restrictive state of a page set or

partition that indicates that restart (backout) work needs to be performed on the object.

RESTP

See restart pending.

result set

The set of rows that a stored procedure returns to a client application.

result set locator

A 4-byte value that DB2 uses to uniquely identify a query result set that a stored procedure returns.

result table

The set of rows that are specified by a SELECT statement.

retained lock

A MODIFY lock that a DB2 subsystem was holding at the time of a subsystem failure. The lock is retained in the coupling facility lock structure across a DB2 for z/OS failure.

RID See record identifier.

RID pool

See record identifier pool.

right outer join

The result of a join operation that includes the matched rows of both tables that are being joined and preserves the unmatched rows of the second join operand. See also join, equijoin, full outer join, inner join, left outer join, and outer join.

RLF See resource limit facility.

RLST See resource limit specification table.

role A database entity that groups together one or more privileges and that can be assigned to a primary authorization ID or to PUBLIC. The role is available only in a trusted context.

rollback

The process of restoring data that was changed by SQL statements to the state at its last commit point. All locks are freed. Contrast with commit.

root page

The index page that is at the highest level (or the beginning point) in an index.

routine

A database object that encapsulates

- procedural logic and SQL statements, is stored on the database server, and can be invoked from an SQL statement or by using the CALL statement. The main classes of routines are procedures and functions.
- row** The horizontal component of a table. A row consists of a sequence of values, one for each column of the table.
- row identifier (ROWID)**
A value that uniquely identifies a row. This value is stored with the row and never changes.
- row lock**
A lock on a single row of data.
- row-positioned fetch orientation**
The specification of the desired placement of the cursor as part of a FETCH statement, with respect to a single row (for example, NEXT, LAST, or ABSOLUTE *n*). Contrast with rowset-positioned fetch orientation.
- rowset**
A set of rows for which a cursor position is established.
- rowset cursor**
A cursor that is defined so that one or more rows can be returned as a rowset for a single FETCH statement, and the cursor is positioned on the set of rows that is fetched.
- rowset-positioned fetch orientation**
The specification of the desired placement of the cursor as part of a FETCH statement, with respect to a rowset (for example, NEXT ROWSET, LAST ROWSET, or ROWSET STARTING AT ABSOLUTE *n*). Contrast with row-positioned fetch orientation.
- row trigger**
A trigger that is defined with the trigger granularity FOR EACH ROW.
- RRSAF**
See Recoverable Resource Manager Services attachment facility.
- RS** See read stability.
- savepoint**
A named entity that represents the state of data and schemas at a particular point in time within a unit of work.
- SBCS** See single-byte character set.
- SCA** See shared communications area.
- scalar function**
An SQL operation that produces a single value from another value and is expressed as a function name, followed by a list of arguments that are enclosed in parentheses.
- scale** In SQL, the number of digits to the right of the decimal point (called the precision in the C language). The DB2 information uses the SQL definition.
- schema**
The organization or structure of a database.

A collection of, and a way of qualifying, database objects such as tables, views, routines, indexes or triggers that define a database. A database schema provides a logical classification of database objects.
- scrollability**
The ability to use a cursor to fetch in either a forward or backward direction. The FETCH statement supports multiple fetch orientations to indicate the new position of the cursor. See also fetch orientation.
- scrollable cursor**
A cursor that can be moved in both a forward and a backward direction.
- search condition**
A criterion for selecting rows from a table. A search condition consists of one or more predicates.
- secondary authorization ID**
An authorization ID that has been associated with a primary authorization ID by an authorization exit routine.
- secondary group buffer pool**
For a duplexed group buffer pool, the structure that is used to back up changed pages that are written to the primary group buffer pool. No page registration or cross-invalidation occurs using the secondary group buffer pool. The z/OS equivalent is *new* structure.
- secondary index**
A nonpartitioning index that is useful for enforcing a uniqueness constraint, for clustering data, or for providing access

paths to data for queries. A secondary index can be partitioned or nonpartitioned. See also data-partitioned secondary index (DPSI) and nonpartitioned secondary index (NPSI).

section

The segment of a plan or package that contains the executable structures for a single SQL statement. For most SQL statements, one section in the plan exists for each SQL statement in the source program. However, for cursor-related statements, the DECLARE, OPEN, FETCH, and CLOSE statements reference the same section because they each refer to the SELECT statement that is named in the DECLARE CURSOR statement. SQL statements such as COMMIT, ROLLBACK, and some SET statements do not use a section.

security label

A classification of users' access to objects or data rows in a multilevel security environment."

segment

A group of pages that holds rows of a single table. See also segmented table space.

segmented table space

A table space that is divided into equal-sized groups of pages called segments. Segments are assigned to tables so that rows of different tables are never stored in the same segment. Contrast with partitioned table space and universal table space.

self-referencing constraint

A referential constraint that defines a relationship in which a table is a dependent of itself.

self-referencing table

A table with a self-referencing constraint.

sensitive cursor

A cursor that is sensitive to changes that are made to the database after the result table has been materialized.

sequence

A user-defined object that generates a sequence of numeric values according to user specifications.

sequential data set

A non-DB2 data set whose records are organized on the basis of their successive physical positions, such as on magnetic tape. Several of the DB2 database utilities require sequential data sets.

sequential prefetch

A mechanism that triggers consecutive asynchronous I/O operations. Pages are fetched before they are required, and several pages are read with a single I/O operation.

serialized profile

A Java object that contains SQL statements and descriptions of host variables. The SQLJ translator produces a serialized profile for each connection context.

server

The target of a request from a remote requester. In the DB2 environment, the server function is provided by the distributed data facility, which is used to access DB2 data from remote applications.

service class

An eight-character identifier that is used by the z/OS Workload Manager to associate user performance goals with a particular DDF thread or stored procedure. A service class is also used to classify work on parallelism assistants.

service request block

A unit of work that is scheduled to execute.

session

A link between two nodes in a VTAM network.

session protocols

The available set of SNA communication requests and responses.

set operator

The SQL operators UNION, EXCEPT, and INTERSECT corresponding to the relational operators union, difference, and intersection. A set operator derives a result table by combining two other result tables.

shared communications area (SCA)

A coupling facility list structure that a DB2 data sharing group uses for inter-DB2 communication.

share lock

A lock that prevents concurrently executing application processes from changing data, but not from reading data. Contrast with exclusive lock.

shift-in character

A special control character (X'0F') that is used in EBCDIC systems to denote that the subsequent bytes represent SBCS characters. See also shift-out character.

shift-out character

A special control character (X'0E') that is used in EBCDIC systems to denote that the subsequent bytes, up to the next shift-in control character, represent DBCS characters. See also shift-in character.

sign-on

A request that is made on behalf of an individual CICS or IMS application process by an attachment facility to enable DB2 to verify that it is authorized to use DB2 resources.

simple page set

A nonpartitioned page set. A simple page set initially consists of a single data set (page set piece). If and when that data set is extended to 2 GB, another data set is created, and so on, up to a total of 32 data sets. DB2 considers the data sets to be a single contiguous linear address space containing a maximum of 64 GB. Data is stored in the next available location within this address space without regard to any partitioning scheme.

simple table space

A table space that is neither partitioned nor segmented. Creation of simple table spaces is not supported in DB2 Version 9.1 for z/OS. Contrast with partitioned table space, segmented table space, and universal table space.

single-byte character set (SBCS)

A set of characters in which each character is represented by a single byte. Contrast with double-byte character set or multibyte character set.

single-precision floating point number

A 32-bit approximate representation of a real number.

SMP/E

See System Modification Program/Extended.

SNA See Systems Network Architecture.

SNA network

The part of a network that conforms to the formats and protocols of Systems Network Architecture (SNA).

socket A callable TCP/IP programming interface that TCP/IP network applications use to communicate with remote TCP/IP partners.

sourced function

A function that is implemented by another built-in or user-defined function that is already known to the database manager. This function can be a scalar function or an aggregate function; it returns a single value from a set of values (for example, MAX or AVG). Contrast with built-in function, external function, and SQL function.

source program

A set of host language statements and SQL statements that is processed by an SQL precompiler.

source table

A table that can be a base table, a view, a table expression, or a user-defined table function.

source type

An existing type that DB2 uses to represent a distinct type.

space A sequence of one or more blank characters.

special register

A storage area that DB2 defines for an application process to use for storing information that can be referenced in SQL statements. Examples of special registers are SESSION_USER and CURRENT DATE.

specific function name

A particular user-defined function that is known to the database manager by its specific name. Many specific user-defined functions can have the same function name. When a user-defined function is defined to the database, every function is assigned a specific name that is unique within its schema. Either the user can provide this name, or a default name is used.

SPUFI See SQL Processor Using File Input.

SQL See Structured Query Language.

SQL authorization ID (SQL ID)

The authorization ID that is used for checking dynamic SQL statements in some situations.

SQLCA

See SQL communication area.

SQL communication area (SQLCA)

A structure that is used to provide an application program with information about the execution of its SQL statements.

SQL connection

An association between an application process and a local or remote application server or database server.

SQLDA

See SQL descriptor area.

SQL descriptor area (SQLDA)

A structure that describes input variables, output variables, or the columns of a result table.

SQL escape character

The symbol that is used to enclose an SQL delimited identifier. This symbol is the double quotation mark ("). See also escape character.

SQL function

A user-defined function in which the CREATE FUNCTION statement contains the source code. The source code is a single SQL expression that evaluates to a single value. The SQL user-defined function can return the result of an expression. See also built-in function, external function, and sourced function.

SQL ID

See SQL authorization ID.

SQLJ Structured Query Language (SQL) that is embedded in the Java programming language.

SQL path

An ordered list of schema names that are used in the resolution of unqualified references to user-defined functions, distinct types, and stored procedures. In dynamic SQL, the SQL path is found in the CURRENT PATH special register. In static SQL, it is defined in the PATH bind option.

SQL PL

See SQL procedural language.

SQL procedural language (SQL PL)

A language extension of SQL that consists of statements and language elements that can be used to implement procedural logic in SQL statements. SQL PL provides statements for declaring variables and condition handlers, assigning values to variables, and for implementing procedural logic. See also inline SQL PL.

SQL procedure

A user-written program that can be invoked with the SQL CALL statement. An SQL procedure is written in the SQL procedural language. Two types of SQL procedures are supported: external SQL procedures and native SQL procedures. See also external procedure and native SQL procedure.

SQL processing conversation

Any conversation that requires access of DB2 data, either through an application or by dynamic query requests.

SQL Processor Using File Input (SPUFI)

A facility of the TSO attachment subcomponent that enables the DB2I user to execute SQL statements without embedding them in an application program.

SQL return code

Either SQLCODE or SQLSTATE.

SQL routine

A user-defined function or stored procedure that is based on code that is written in SQL.

SQL schema

A collection of database objects such as tables, views, indexes, functions, distinct types, schemas, or triggers that defines a database. An SQL schema provides a logical classification of database objects.

SQL statement coprocessor

An alternative to the DB2 precompiler that lets the user process SQL statements at compile time. The user invokes an SQL statement coprocessor by specifying a compiler option.

SQL string delimiter

A symbol that is used to enclose an SQL string constant. The SQL string delimiter

is the apostrophe ('), except in COBOL applications, where the user assigns the symbol, which is either an apostrophe or a double quotation mark (").

SRB See service request block.

stand-alone

An attribute of a program that means that it is capable of executing separately from DB2, without using DB2 services.

star join

A method of joining a dimension column of a fact table to the key column of the corresponding dimension table. See also join, dimension, and star schema.

star schema

The combination of a fact table (which contains most of the data) and a number of dimension tables. See also star join, dimension, and dimension table.

statement handle

In DB2 ODBC, the data object that contains information about an SQL statement that is managed by DB2 ODBC. This includes information such as dynamic arguments, bindings for dynamic arguments and columns, cursor information, result values, and status information. Each statement handle is associated with the connection handle.

statement string

For a dynamic SQL statement, the character string form of the statement.

statement trigger

A trigger that is defined with the trigger granularity FOR EACH STATEMENT.

static cursor

A named control structure that does not change the size of the result table or the order of its rows after an application opens the cursor. Contrast with dynamic cursor.

static SQL

SQL statements, embedded within a program, that are prepared during the program preparation process (before the program is executed). After being prepared, the SQL statement does not change (although values of variables that are specified by the statement might change).

storage group

A set of storage objects on which DB2 for z/OS data can be stored. A storage object can have an SMS data class, a management class, a storage class, and a list of volume serial numbers.

stored procedure

A user-written application program that can be invoked through the use of the SQL CALL statement. Stored procedures are sometimes called procedures.

string See binary string, character string, or graphic string.

strong typing

A process that guarantees that only user-defined functions and operations that are defined on a distinct type can be applied to that type. For example, you cannot directly compare two currency types, such as Canadian dollars and U.S. dollars. But you can provide a user-defined function to convert one currency to the other and then do the comparison.

structure

- A name that refers collectively to different types of DB2 objects, such as tables, databases, views, indexes, and table spaces.
- A construct that uses z/OS to map and manage storage on a coupling facility. See also cache structure, list structure, or lock structure.

Structured Query Language (SQL)

A standardized language for defining and manipulating data in a relational database.

structure owner

In relation to group buffer pools, the DB2 member that is responsible for the following activities:

- Coordinating rebuild, checkpoint, and damage assessment processing
- Monitoring the group buffer pool threshold and notifying castout owners when the threshold has been reached

subcomponent

A group of closely related DB2 modules that work together to provide a general function.

subject table	The table for which a trigger is created. When the defined triggering event occurs on this table, the trigger is activated.		synonym is defined. A synonym cannot be qualified and can therefore not be used by other users. Contrast with alias.
subquery	A SELECT statement within the WHERE or HAVING clause of another SQL statement; a nested SQL statement.		Sysplex See Parallel Sysplex.
subselect	That form of a query that includes only a SELECT clause, FROM clause, and optionally a WHERE clause, GROUP BY clause, HAVING clause, ORDER BY clause, or FETCH FIRST clause.		Sysplex query parallelism Parallel execution of a single query that is accomplished by using multiple tasks on more than one DB2 subsystem. See also query CP parallelism.
substitution character	A unique character that is substituted during character conversion for any characters in the source program that do not have a match in the target coding representation.		system administrator The person at a computer installation who designs, controls, and manages the use of the computer system.
subsystem	A distinct instance of a relational database management system (RDBMS).		system agent A work request that DB2 creates such as prefetch processing, deferred writes, and service tasks. See also allied agent.
surrogate pair	A coded representation for a single character that consists of a sequence of two 16-bit code units, in which the first value of the pair is a high-surrogate code unit in the range U+D800 through U+DBFF, and the second value is a low-surrogate code unit in the range U+DC00 through U+DFFF. Surrogate pairs provide an extension mechanism for encoding 917 476 characters without requiring the use of 32-bit characters.		system authorization ID The primary DB2 authorization ID that is used to establish a trusted connection. A system authorization ID is derived from the system user ID that is provided by an external entity, such as a middleware server.
SVC dump	A dump that is issued when a z/OS or a DB2 functional recovery routine detects an error.		system conversation The conversation that two DB2 subsystems must establish to process system messages before any distributed processing can begin.
sync point	See commit point.		system-defined routine An object (function or procedure) for which system DBADM and SQLADM authorities have implicit execute privilege on the routine and any packages executed within the routine.
syncpoint tree	The tree of recovery managers and resource managers that are involved in a logical unit of work, starting with the recovery manager, that make the final commit decision.		System Modification Program/Extended (SMP/E) A z/OS tool for making software changes in programming systems (such as DB2) and for controlling those changes.
synonym	In SQL, an alternative name for a table or view. Synonyms can be used to refer only to objects at the subsystem in which the		system period A pair of columns with system-maintained values that indicate the period of time when a row is valid.
			system-period data versioning Automatic maintenance of historical data by DB2 using a system period.
			system-period temporal table A table that is defined with system-period data versioning.

Systems Network Architecture (SNA)

The description of the logical structure, formats, protocols, and operational sequences for transmitting information through and controlling the configuration and operation of networks.

table A named data object consisting of a specific number of columns and some number of unordered rows. See also base table or temporary table. Contrast with auxiliary table, clone table, materialized query table, result table, and transition table.

table-controlled partitioning

A type of partitioning in which partition boundaries for a partitioned table are controlled by values that are defined in the CREATE TABLE statement.

table function

A function that receives a set of arguments and returns a table to the SQL statement that references the function. A table function can be referenced only in the FROM clause of a subselect.

table locator

A mechanism that allows access to trigger tables in SQL or from within user-defined functions. A table locator is a fullword integer value that represents a transition table.

table space

A page set that is used to store the records in one or more tables. See also partitioned table space, segmented table space, and universal table space.

table space set

A set of table spaces and partitions that should be recovered together for one of the following reasons:

- Each of them contains a table that is a parent or descendent of a table in one of the others.
- The set contains a base table and associated auxiliary tables.

A table space set can contain both types of relationships.

task control block (TCB)

A z/OS control block that is used to communicate information about tasks

within an address space that is connected to a subsystem. See also address space connection.

TB Terabyte. A value of 1 099 511 627 776 bytes.

TCB See task control block.

TCP/IP

A network communication protocol that computer systems use to exchange information across telecommunication links.

TCP/IP port

A 2-byte value that identifies an end user or a TCP/IP network application within a TCP/IP host.

template

A DB2 utilities output data set descriptor that is used for dynamic allocation. A template is defined by the TEMPLATE utility control statement.

temporal table

A table which records the period of time when a row is valid. See also system-period temporal table, application-period temporal table, and bitemporal table.

temporary table

A table that holds temporary data. Temporary tables are useful for holding or sorting intermediate results from queries that contain a large number of rows. The two types of temporary table, which are created by different SQL statements, are the created temporary table and the declared temporary table. Contrast with result table. See also created temporary table and declared temporary table.

textual XML format

A system of storing XML data in text, as opposed to binary, that allows for direct human reading.

thread See DB2 thread.

threadsafe

A characteristic of code that allows multithreading both by providing private storage areas for each thread, and by properly serializing shared (global) storage areas.

three-part name

The full name of a table, view, or alias. It consists of a location name, a schema name, and an object name, separated by a period.

time A three-part value that designates a time of day in hours, minutes, and seconds.

timeout

Abnormal termination of either the DB2 subsystem or of an application because of the unavailability of resources. Installation specifications are set to determine both the amount of time DB2 is to wait for IRLM services after starting, and the amount of time IRLM is to wait if a resource that an application requests is unavailable. If either of these time specifications is exceeded, a timeout is declared.

Time-Sharing Option (TSO)

An option in z/OS that provides interactive time sharing from remote terminals.

timestamp

A seven-part value that consists of a date and time. The timestamp is expressed in years, months, days, hours, minutes, seconds, and microseconds.

timestamp with time zone

A two-part value that consists of a timestamp and time zone. The timestamp with time zone is expressed in years, months, days, hours, minutes, seconds, microseconds, time zone hours, and time zone minutes.

trace A DB2 facility that provides the ability to monitor and collect DB2 monitoring, auditing, performance, accounting, statistics, and serviceability (global) data.

transaction

An atomic series of SQL statements that make up a logical unit of work. All of the data modifications made during a transaction are either committed together as a unit or rolled back as a unit.

transaction lock

A lock that is used to control concurrent execution of SQL statements.

transaction program name

In SNA LU 6.2 conversations, the name of

the program at the remote logical unit that is to be the other half of the conversation.

transition table

A temporary table that contains all the affected rows of the subject table in their state before or after the triggering event occurs. Triggered SQL statements in the trigger definition can reference the table of changed rows in the old state or the new state. Contrast with auxiliary table, base table, clone table, and materialized query table.

transition variable

A variable that contains a column value of the affected row of the subject table in its state before or after the triggering event occurs. Triggered SQL statements in the trigger definition can reference the set of old values or the set of new values.

tree structure

A data structure that represents entities in nodes, with a most one parent node for each node, and with only one root node.

trigger

A database object that is associated with a single base table or view and that defines a rule. The rule consists of a set of SQL statements that run when an insert, update, or delete database operation occurs on the associated base table or view.

trigger activation

The process that occurs when the trigger event that is defined in a trigger definition is executed. Trigger activation consists of the evaluation of the triggered action condition and conditional execution of the triggered SQL statements.

trigger activation time

An indication in the trigger definition of whether the trigger should be activated before or after the triggered event.

trigger body

The set of SQL statements that is executed when a trigger is activated and its triggered action condition evaluates to true. A trigger body is also called triggered SQL statements.

trigger cascading

The process that occurs when the

triggered action of a trigger causes the activation of another trigger.

triggered action

The SQL logic that is performed when a trigger is activated. The triggered action consists of an optional triggered action condition and a set of triggered SQL statements that are executed only if the condition evaluates to true.

triggered action condition

An optional part of the triggered action. This Boolean condition appears as a WHEN clause and specifies a condition that DB2 evaluates to determine if the triggered SQL statements should be executed.

triggered SQL statements

The set of SQL statements that is executed when a trigger is activated and its triggered action condition evaluates to true. Triggered SQL statements are also called the trigger body.

trigger granularity

In SQL, a characteristic of a trigger, which determines whether the trigger is activated:

- Only once for the triggering SQL statement
- Once for each row that the SQL statement modifies

triggering event

The specified operation in a trigger definition that causes the activation of that trigger. The triggering event is comprised of a triggering operation (insert, update, or delete) and a subject table or view on which the operation is performed.

triggering SQL operation

The SQL operation that causes a trigger to be activated when performed on the subject table or view.

trigger package

A package that is created when a CREATE TRIGGER statement is executed. The package is executed when the trigger is activated.

trust attribute

An attribute on which to establish trust. A trusted relationship is established based on one or more trust attributes.

trusted connection

A database connection whose attributes match the attributes of a unique trusted context defined at the DB2 database server.

trusted connection reuse

The ability to switch the current user ID on a trusted connection to a different user ID.

trusted context

A database security object that enables the establishment of a trusted relationship between a DB2 database management system and an external entity.

trusted context default role

A role associated with a trusted context. The privileges granted to the trusted context default role can be acquired only when a trusted connection based on the trusted context is established or reused.

trusted context user

A user ID to which switching the current user ID on a trusted connection is permitted.

trusted context user-specific role

A role that is associated with a specific trusted context user. It overrides the trusted context default role if the current user ID on the trusted connection matches the ID of the specific trusted context user.

trusted relationship

A privileged relationship between two entities such as a middleware server and a database server. This relationship allows for a unique set of interactions between the two entities that would be impossible otherwise.

TSO See Time-Sharing Option.

TSO attachment facility

A DB2 facility consisting of the DSN command processor and DB2I. Applications that are not written for the CICS or IMS environments can run under the TSO attachment facility.

typed parameter marker

A parameter marker that is specified along with its target data type. It has the general form:

CAST(? AS data-type)

type 2 indexes

Indexes that are created on a release of

DB2 after Version 7 or that are specified as type 2 indexes in Version 4 or later.

UCS-2 Universal Character Set, coded in 2 octets, which means that characters are represented in 16-bits per character.

UDF See user-defined function.

UDT User-defined data type. In DB2 for z/OS, the term distinct type is used instead of user-defined data type. See distinct type.

uncommitted read (UR)

The isolation level that allows an application to read uncommitted data. See also cursor stability, read stability, and repeatable read.

underlying view

The view on which another view is directly or indirectly defined.

undo A state of a unit of recovery that indicates that the changes that the unit of recovery made to recoverable DB2 resources must be backed out.

Unicode

A standard that parallels the ISO-10646 standard. Several implementations of the Unicode standard exist, all of which have the ability to represent a large percentage of the characters that are contained in the many scripts that are used throughout the world.

union An SQL operation that involves the UNION set operator, which combines the results of two SELECT statements. Unions are often used to merge lists of values that are obtained from two tables.

unique constraint

An SQL rule that no two values in a primary key, or in the key of a unique index, can be the same.

unique index

An index that ensures that no identical key values are stored in a column or a set of columns in a table.

unit of recovery (UOR)

A recoverable sequence of operations within a single resource manager, such as an instance of DB2. Contrast with unit of work.

unit of work (UOW)

A recoverable sequence of operations within an application process. At any

time, an application process is a single unit of work, but the life of an application process can involve many units of work as a result of commit or rollback operations. In a multisite update operation, a single unit of work can include several *units of recovery*. Contrast with unit of recovery.

universal table space

A table space that is both segmented and partitioned. Contrast with partitioned table space, segmented table space, partition-by-growth table space, and range-partitioned table space.

unlock

The act of releasing an object or system resource that was previously locked and returning it to general availability within DB2.

untyped parameter marker

A parameter marker that is specified without its target data type. It has the form of a single question mark (?).

updatability

The ability of a cursor to perform positioned updates and deletes. The updatability of a cursor can be influenced by the SELECT statement and the cursor sensitivity option that is specified on the DECLARE CURSOR statement.

update hole

The location on which a cursor is positioned when a row in a result table is fetched again and the new values no longer satisfy the search condition. See also delete hole.

update trigger

A trigger that is defined with the triggering SQL operation update.

UR See uncommitted read.

user-defined data type (UDT)

See distinct type.

user-defined function (UDF)

A function that is defined to DB2 by using the CREATE FUNCTION statement and that can be referenced thereafter in SQL statements. A user-defined function can be an external function, a sourced function, or an SQL function. Contrast with built-in function.

user view

In logical data modeling, a model or representation of critical information that the business requires.

UTF-16

Unicode Transformation Format, 16-bit encoding form, which is designed to provide code values for over a million characters and a superset of UCS-2. The CCSID value for data in UTF-16 format is 1200. DB2 for z/OS supports UTF-16 in graphic data fields.

UTF-8

Unicode Transformation Format, 8-bit encoding form, which is designed for ease of use with existing ASCII-based systems. The CCSID value for data in UTF-8 format is 1208. DB2 for z/OS supports UTF-8 in mixed data fields.

value

The smallest unit of data that is manipulated in SQL.

variable

A data element that specifies a value that can be changed. A COBOL elementary data item is an example of a host variable. Contrast with constant.

variant function

See nondeterministic function.

varying-length string

A character, graphic, or binary string whose length varies within set limits. Contrast with fixed-length string.

version

A member of a set of similar programs, DBRMs, packages, or LOBs.

- **A version of a program** is the source code that is produced by precompiling the program. The program version is identified by the program name and a timestamp (consistency token).
- **A version of an SQL procedural language routine** is produced by issuing the CREATE or ALTER PROCEDURE statement for a native SQL procedure.
- **A version of a DBRM** is the DBRM that is produced by precompiling a program. The DBRM version is identified by the same program name and timestamp as a corresponding program version.

• **A version of an application package** is the result of binding a DBRM within a particular database system. The application package version is identified by the same program name and consistency token as the DBRM.

• **A version of a LOB** is a copy of a LOB value at a point in time. The version number for a LOB is stored in the auxiliary index entry for the LOB.

• **A version of a record** is a copy of the record at a point in time.

view

A logical table that consists of data that is generated by a query. A view can be based on one or more underlying base tables or views, and the data in a view is determined by a SELECT statement that is run on the underlying base tables or views.

Virtual Storage Access Method (VSAM)

An access method for direct or sequential processing of fixed- and varying-length records on disk devices.

Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM)

An IBM licensed program that controls communication and the flow of data in an SNA network (in z/OS).

volatile table

A table for which SQL operations choose index access whenever possible.

VSAM

See Virtual Storage Access Method.

VTAM

See Virtual Telecommunications Access Method.

warm start

The normal DB2 restart process, which involves reading and processing log records so that data that is under the control of DB2 is consistent. Contrast with cold start.

WLM application environment

A z/OS Workload Manager attribute that is associated with one or more stored procedures. The WLM application environment determines the address space in which a given DB2 stored procedure runs.

WLM enclave

A construct that can span multiple

dispatchable units (service request blocks and tasks) in multiple address spaces, allowing them to be reported on and managed by WLM as part of a single work request.

write to operator (WTO)

An optional user-coded service that allows a message to be written to the system console operator informing the operator of errors and unusual system conditions that might need to be corrected (in z/OS).

WTO See write to operator.

WTOR

Write to operator (WTO) with reply.

XCF See cross-system coupling facility.

XES See cross-system extended services.

XML See Extensible Markup Language.

XML attribute

A name-value pair within a tagged XML element that modifies certain features of the element.

XML column

A column of a table that stores XML values and is defined using the data type XML. The XML values that are stored in XML columns are internal representations of well-formed XML documents.

XML data type

A data type for XML values.

XML element

A logical structure in an XML document that is delimited by a start and an end tag. Anything between the start tag and the end tag is the content of the element.

XML index

An index on an XML column that provides efficient access to nodes within an XML document by providing index keys that are based on XML patterns.

XML lock

A column-level lock for XML data. The operation of XML locks is similar to the operation of LOB locks.

XML node

The smallest unit of valid, complete structure in a document. For example, a node can represent an element, an attribute, or a text string.

XML node ID index

An implicitly created index, on an XML table that provides efficient access to XML documents and navigation among multiple XML data rows in the same document.

XML pattern

A slash-separated list of element names, an optional attribute name (at the end), or kind tests, that describe a path within an XML document in an XML column. The pattern is a restrictive form of path expressions, and it selects nodes that match the specifications. XML patterns are specified to create indexes on XML columns in a database.

XML publishing function

A function that returns an XML value from SQL values. An XML publishing function is also known as an XML constructor.

XML schema

In XML, a mechanism for describing and constraining the content of XML files by indicating which elements are allowed and in which combinations. XML schemas are an alternative to document type definitions (DTDs) and can be used to extend functionality in the areas of data typing, inheritance, and presentation.

XML schema repository (XSR)

A repository that allows the DB2 database system to store XML schemas. When registered with the XSR, these objects have a unique identifier and can be used to validate XML instance documents.

XML serialization function

A function that returns a serialized XML string from an XML value.

XML table

An auxiliary table that is implicitly created when an XML column is added to a base table. This table stores the XML data, and the column in the base table points to it.

XML table space

A table space that is implicitly created when an XML column is added to a base table. The table space stores the XML table. If the base table is partitioned, one partitioned table space exists for each XML column of data.

X/Open

An independent, worldwide open systems organization that is supported by most of the world's largest information systems suppliers, user organizations, and software companies. X/Open's goal is to increase the portability of applications by combining existing and emerging standards.

XRF See Extended Recovery Facility.

| **XSR** See XML schema repository.

| **zIIP** See IBM System z9 Integrated Processor.

z/OS An operating system for the System z product line that supports 64-bit real and virtual storage.

z/OS Distributed Computing Environment (z/OS DCE) A set of technologies that are provided by the Open Software Foundation to implement distributed computing.

Index

Numerics

32K

- option of DSN1COMP utility 845
- option of DSN1COPY utility 857
- option of DSN1PRNT utility 899

A

- abend, forcing 191
- ABEND, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189
- abnormal-termination, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- Access Method Services, new active log definition 811
- accessibility
 - keyboard xvi
 - shortcut keys xvi
- ACCESSPATH
 - option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- ACHKP 64
- ACTION, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911
- ACTION2
 - option of DSN1SDMP utility 911
- active log
 - adding 811
 - data set with I/O error, deleting 814
 - defining in BSDS 811
 - deleting from BSDS 811
 - enlarging 811
 - recording from BSDS 811
- active status, of a utility 31
- AFTER, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911
- AFTER2, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911
- ALIAS, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- ALL
 - option of LISTDEF utility 201
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of RUNSTATS utility 665
- ALLDUMPS, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189
- ANCHOR, option of DSN1CHKR utility 837
- archive log
 - adding to BSDS 813
 - deleting from BSDS 813
- ARCHLOG, option of REPORT utility 619
- ASCII
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- authorization ID
 - naming convention xvii
 - primary 3
 - secondary 3
 - SQL 3
- autonomic statistics
 - combining with manual statistics 683
 - profiles 680, 683
- AUXERROR INVALIDATE, option of CHECK DATA utility 83
- AUXERROR REPORT, option of CHECK DATA utility 83
- AUXERROR, option of CHECK DATA utility 64
- auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status
 - description 1001

- auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status (*continued*)
 - resetting
 - for a LOB table space 1001
 - for a table space 1001
 - set by CHECK DATA utility 64
- auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) status, CHECK DATA utility 64, 85
- auxiliary index, reorganizing after loading data 315
- auxiliary warning (AUXW) status
 - description 1002
 - resetting 1002
 - set by CHECK DATA utility 64, 83
- AUXW 64

B

- backout
 - point-in-time 442
 - RECOVERY utility 442
- BACKOUT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- BACKUP SYSTEM utility
 - authorization 43
 - compatibility 47
 - data sets needed 47
 - description 43
 - dumping 48
 - examples 49
 - data-only backup 49
 - dump to tape 50
 - force 50
 - full backup 49
 - execution phases 43
 - history, printing 821
 - log copy pools, 48
 - option descriptions 45
 - output 43
 - restarting 49
 - running 46
 - syntax diagram 44
 - terminating 49
- BASE, option of LISTDEF utility 201
- basic predicate 502, 743
- before running
 - COPY 132
 - DSNADMSB 1033
- BETWEEN predicate 502, 743
- BIGINT
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- BINARY
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- BIT
 - option of LOAD utility for CHAR 248
- BLOB
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- BLOBF
 - option of LOAD utility for CHAR 248
- BOTH, option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

- BSDS
 - active log data set status 830
 - communication records, printing 821
 - converting 793
 - data set references, adding and deleting 815
 - GENERIC LUNAME parameter, updating 801
 - LOCATION value, updating 801
 - LUNAME value, updating 801
 - PASSWORD value, updating 801
 - updating 797
 - VSAM catalog name, changing 801
- BUFNO, option of TEMPLATE statement 702

C

- CANCEL, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- catalog
 - updating 55
- catalog and directory
 - reorganizing 553
 - REPORT utility 625
- catalog indexes, rebuilding 402
- catalog name
 - changing 58
- catalog table spaces, corresponding directory table spaces 553
- catalog tables 433
 - integrity, verifying 835
 - loading data into 268
 - outdated information, removing 341
 - RUNSTATS utility 678
 - statistics history, clearing outdated information 353
 - statistics, deleting 357
- SYSCOPY
 - deleting rows 347
- SYSCOPY, removing outdated information 341
- SYSINDEXES
 - data collected by STOSPACE utility 695
 - updating space information 695
- SYSINDEXPART
 - data collected by STOSPACE utility 695
 - example of query 481
- SYSLGRNX
 - deleting rows 347
 - outdated information, removing 341
- SYSSTOGROUP, data collected by STOSPACE utility 695
- SYSTABLEPART
 - data collected by STOSPACE utility 695
 - example of query 548
- SYSTABLESPACE
 - data collected by STOSPACE utility 695
 - updating space information 695
 - updating 57
- CATALOG, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- CATALOG, option of UNLOAD utility 728
- catalog, repairing 612
- CATENFM utility
 - authorization 51
 - compatibility 53
 - data sets needed 52
 - description 51
 - execution phases 51
 - instructions 52
 - option descriptions 52
 - syntax diagram 51
 - terminating 53
- CATMAINT utility
 - authorization 55

- CATMAINT utility (*continued*)
 - compatibility 57
 - data sets needed 57
 - description 55
 - option descriptions 56
 - restarting 59
 - running 52, 57
 - syntax diagram 55
 - terminating 59
- CCSID
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- CCSID information, deleting from BSDS 801
- CCSIDS, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- CD-ROM, books on 1055
- change log inventory utility 797
- CHANGELIMIT, option of COPY utility 123, 152
- CHAR
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- CHARDEL
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- CHECK DATA utility
 - after checking 83
 - authorization 61
 - claims and drains 77
 - compatibility 77
 - correct constraint violations 81
 - data sets
 - shadow 75
 - data sets needed 73
 - description 61
 - examples 86
 - AUXERROR 87
 - checking multiple table spaces 88
 - CLONE 88
 - creating exception tables 86
 - deleting invalid data 86
 - exception tables 86
 - EXCEPTIONS 87
 - LOBs 87
 - maximum number of exceptions 87
 - PART 87
 - SCOPE ALL 87
 - SHRLEVEL CHANGE 88
 - use after LOAD RESUME 312
 - using exception tables 312
 - violation messages 81
 - exception table, creating 79
 - execution phases 61
 - finding violations 81
 - LOB column errors 83
 - LOB columns 72
 - option descriptions 64
 - output 61
 - restarting 85
 - specifying scope 80
 - syntax diagram 62
 - table spaces, multiple 88
 - terminating 85
 - use after LOAD REPLACE 312
- CHECK DATAXML errors 82
- CHECK INDEX utility
 - after checking 103
 - authorization 89
 - claims and drains 96

CHECK INDEX utility (*continued*)

- compatibility 96
- data sets
 - shadow 94
- data sets needed 94
- description 89
- examples 103
 - ALL 103, 104
 - checking all indexes 103
 - checking clone tables 105
 - checking more than one index 104
 - checking one index 104
 - checking partitions 104
 - LIST 103
 - LISTDEF 103
 - PART 104
 - SORTDEVT 104
- execution phases 89
- option descriptions 91
- output 89, 102
- parallel checking 99
- physical or logical partitions 91
- restarting 103
- single logical partition 98
- syntax diagram 90
- terminating 103
- use after loading table with indexes 315

CHECK LOB

- before running 111

CHECK LOB utility

- authorization 107
- claims and drains 114
- compatibility 114
- data sets
 - shadow 112
- data sets needed 111
- description 107
- example 116
- execution phases 107
- LOB violations, resolving 115
- option descriptions 109
- output 107
- restarting 116
- syntax diagram 108
- terminating 116

CHECK-pending (CHECKP) status

- resetting
 - for a LOB table space 115

CHECK-pending (CHKP) status

- CHECK DATA utility 61, 83
- description 1003
- indoubt referential integrity 312
- resetting 1003
 - for a table space 312

CHECK, option of DSN1COPY utility 857

CHECKPAGE, option of COPY utility 123

checkpoint queue

- printing contents 821
- updating 801

CHECKPT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

CHKP 61

CHKPTRBA, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

CLOB

- option of LOAD utility 248
- option of UNLOAD utility 743

CLOBF

- option of LOAD utility for CHAR 248

CLONE

- option of CHECK DATA utility 64
- option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
- option of COPY utility 123
- option of DIAGNOSE utility 189
- option of MERGECOPY utility 332
- option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343
- option of QUIESCE utility 370
- option of REBUILD INDEX 382
- option of RECOVER utility 413
- option of REORG INDEX utility 463
- option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

clone objects

- recovering a table space 442

CLONED, option of LISTDEF utility 201

CMON, option of CATENFM utility 52

cold start

- example, creating a conditional restart control record 813
- specifying for conditional restart 801

COLDEL

- option of LOAD utility 227
- option of UNLOAD utility 728

COLGROUP, option of RUNSTATS utility 656

collecting DB2 subsystem information

- DSNADMSB 1027

COLUMN

- option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
- option of RUNSTATS utility 656

COMMAND, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911

commit point

- DSNU command 21
- REPAIR utility LOCATE statement 596
- restarting after out-of-space condition 40

comparison operators 502

compatibility

- CATENFM utility 53
- CATMAINT utility 57
- CHECK DATA utility 77
- CHECK INDEX utility 96
- CHECK LOB utility 114
- COPY utility 135
- COPYTOCOPY utility 176
- declared temporary table 4
- DEFINE NO objects 4
- DIAGNOSE utility 191
- EXEC SQL utility 197
- LISTDEF utility 208
- LOAD utility 274
- MERGECOPY utility 335
- MODIFY RECOVERY utility 346
- MODIFY STATISTICS utility 356
- OPTIONS utility 364
- QUIESCE utility 372
- REBUILD INDEX utility 392
- RECOVER utility 422
- REORG INDEX utility 480
- REORG TABLESPACE utility 543
- REPAIR utility 606
- REPORT utility 622
- RESTORE SYSTEM utility 648
- RUNSTATS utility 675
- STOSPACE utility 695
- TEMPLATE utility 715
- UNLOAD utility 764
- utilities access description 31

COMPLETE, option of CATENFM utility 52

- compression
 - data, UNLOAD utility description 781
 - estimating disk savings 843
- compression dictionary, building 555
- concurrency
 - BACKUP SYSTEM utility 47
 - utilities access description 31
 - utility jobs 33
- concurrent copies
 - COPYTOCOPY utility restriction 169
 - invoking 123
 - making 151
- CONCURRENT, option of COPY utility 123, 151
- conditional restart control record
 - creating 801, 813
 - reading 831
 - sample 831
 - status printed by print log map utility 821
- connection-name, naming convention xvii
- CONSTANT, option of UNLOAD utility 743
- constraint violations, checking 61
- CONTINUE, option of RECOVER utility 430
- CONTINUEIF, option of LOAD utility 227
- continuous operation, recovering an error range 431
- control interval
 - LOAD REPLACE, effect of 277, 315
 - RECOVER utility, effect of 455
 - REORG TABLESPACE, effect of 573
- control statement 13
- CONTROL, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- conversion of data, LOAD utility 297
- CONVERT, option of CATENFM utility 52
- copies
 - merging 331
 - online, merging 337
- copy
 - catalog and directory objects 149
 - XML schema repository objects 150
- copy pool 43
- COPY SCOPE PENDING
 - COPY-pending 146
- COPY statement, using more than one 148
- COPY utility
 - adding conditional code 152
 - allowing other programs to access data 123
 - authorization 119
 - block size, specifying 132
 - catalog table, copying 137
 - checking pages 123
 - claims and drains 135
 - compatibility 135
 - consistency 140
 - COPY-pending status, resetting 119
 - copying a list of objects 146
 - copying segmented table spaces 148
 - data sets needed 132
 - description 119
 - directory, copying 137
 - examples 157
 - allowing updates 164
 - CHANGELIMIT 165
 - CLONE 168
 - conditional copies 165
 - COPYDDN 158
 - copying LOB table spaces 166
 - DFSMSdss concurrent copy 165, 166
 - filter data sets 166
 - COPY utility (*continued*)
 - examples (*continued*)
 - FILTERDDN 166
 - full image copy 157, 167
 - incremental image copy 139, 164
 - JCL-defined and template-defined data sets 163
 - list of objects, making full image copy of 158
 - LISTDEF 164
 - lists 164
 - local site and recovery site copies 158
 - multiple image copies 140
 - PARALLEL 158, 161
 - parallel processing 161
 - RECOVERYDDN 158
 - reporting information 165
 - REPORTONLY 165
 - SCOPE PENDING 168
 - SHRLEVEL 158
 - TAPEUNITS 161
 - templates 164
 - execution phases 119
 - FlashCopy image copies, overview 142
 - full image copy, making 137
 - informational COPY-pending status, resetting 119
 - JCL parameters 132
 - MERGECOPY utility, when to use 338
 - multiple image copies 140
 - naming data sets 140
 - option descriptions 123
 - output 119
 - partition, copying 139
 - performance recommendations 155
 - processing in parallel
 - description 123, 146
 - number of threads 119, 146
 - recovery, preparing for 154
 - restart current 156
 - restarting
 - description 157
 - new data set 157
 - out-of-space condition 157
 - restricted states 135
 - restrictions 139
 - separate jobs 148
 - syntax diagram 121
 - table spaces 148
 - TERM UTILITY command 156
 - terminating
 - DD statements 156
 - description 156
 - using more than one COPY statement 148
 - COPY-pending status
 - COPY utility 123
 - description 1004
 - LOAD utility 312
 - resetting
 - by taking a copy 1004
 - by using COPY 135
 - by using LOAD 312
- copy, consistency 140
- COPY, option of LISTDEF utility 201
- COPY1, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- COPY1VOL, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- COPY2, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- COPY2VOL, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- COPYDDN
 - option of COPY utility 123

COPYDDN (*continued*)
 option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 option of LOAD utility 227, 292
 option of MERGECOPY utility 332
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502, 558
 COPYDSN, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
 COPYDSN2, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
 copying
 FlashCopy image copies, overview 142
 COPYTOCOPY statements, using multiple 178
 COPYTOCOPY utility
 authorization 169
 block size, specifying 175
 claims 176
 compatibility 176
 copying from a specific image copy 178
 data sets needed 175
 description 169
 examples
 cataloged copy data set, specifying 183
 CLONE 185
 copying from a specific image copy 178
 copying objects from tape 180
 FROMCOPY 178, 183
 FROMLASTCOPY 182
 FROMLASTFULLCOPY 183
 FROMVOLUME 183
 full image copy 177
 incremental image copy 177
 input copy data set, specifying 183
 list of objects, processing 184
 LISTDEF 184, 185
 local backup copies, making 182
 TEMPLATE 184, 185
 uncataloged data set, specifying 183
 execution phases 169
 FlashCopy 179
 generation data groups, defining 180
 input copy, determining which to use 179
 JCL parameters 175
 lists, copying 172
 making copies 177
 multiple statements, using 178
 objects, copying from tape 180
 option descriptions 172
 output 169
 output data sets
 size 175
 specifying 172
 partitions, copying 172
 syntax diagram 170
 SYSIBM.SYSCOPY records, updating 179
 tape mounts, retaining 175
 terminating 182
 using TEMPLATE 179
 correlation ID, naming convention xvii
 COUNT
 option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
 option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656
 COUNT option
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665
 CREATE option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 CRESTART, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 cross loader 290
 cross loader function 195

CSRONLY, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 CURRENT DATE, incrementing and decrementing value 743
 CURRENT option of REPORT utility 619
 current restart, description 36
 CURRENTCOPYONLY option of RECOVER utility 413
 cursor
 naming convention xvii
 CYL, option of TEMPLATE statement 702

D

data
 adding 280
 compressing 288
 converting 289
 converting with LOAD utility 297
 deleting 281
 DATA
 option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 option of LOAD utility 227
 option of REPAIR DUMP 602
 option of REPAIR REPLACE 600
 option of REPAIR VERIFY 599
 option of UNLOAD utility 728
 data compression
 dictionary
 building 288, 555
 number of records needed 288
 using again 288
 LOAD utility
 description 288
 KEEPDICTIONARY option 227, 288
 REORG TABLESPACE utility, KEEPDICTIONARY
 option 502
 DATA ONLY, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45
 data set
 name format in ICF catalog 123
 name limitations 716
 data sets
 BACKUP SYSTEM utility 47
 CATENFM utility 52
 CATMAINT utility 57
 change log inventory utility (DSNJU003) 797
 CHECK DATA utility 73
 CHECK INDEX utility 94
 CHECK LOB utility 111
 concatenating 11, 17
 COPY utility 132
 copying partition-by-growth table spaces 148
 copying table space in separate jobs 148
 COPYTOCOPY utility 175
 definitions, changing during REORG 555
 DIAGNOSE utility 191
 disposition
 defaults for dynamically allocated data sets 702
 defaults for dynamically allocated data sets on
 RESTART 702
 disposition, controlling 11
 DSNADMSB 1033
 DSNJCNVB utility 793
 for copies, naming 140
 input, using 11
 LOAD utility 270
 MERGECOPY utility 334
 MODIFY RECOVERY utility 346
 MODIFY STATISTICS utility 356
 naming convention xvii

- data sets (*continued*)
 - output, using 11
 - QUIESCE utility 372
 - REBUILD INDEX utility 390
 - RECOVER utility 422
 - recovering, partition 428
 - REORG INDEX utility 476
 - REORG TABLESPACE utility 535
 - REPAIR utility 606
 - REPORT utility 622
 - RESTORE SYSTEM utility 648
 - RUNSTATS utility 672
 - security 11
 - space parameter, changing 476
 - space parameter, changing during REORG 555
 - specifying 11
 - STOSPACE utility 694
 - UNLOAD utility 764
- data sharing
 - backing up group 43
 - restoring data 648
 - running online utilities 33
- data type, specifying with LOAD utility 248
- data-only backup
 - example 49
 - explanation 45
- database
 - limits 923
 - naming convention xvii
- DATABASE
 - option of LISTDEF utility 201
 - option of REPAIR utility 604
- DATACLAS, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- DATAONLY, option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
- DataRefresher 289
- DATE EXTERNAL
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DB2 books online 1055
- DB2 Information Center for z/OS solutions 1055
- DB2 subsystem information, collecting
 - DSNADMSB 1027
- DB2-supplied stored procedures 929
- DB2I
 - option of DSNU CLIST command 21
 - using to invoke online utilities 17
- DBCLOB
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DBCLOBF
 - option of LOAD utility for CHAR 248
- DBD statement of REPAIR utility 123, 603
- DBD, reclaiming space in 348
- DBD01 directory table space
 - MERGECOPY restrictions 331, 332
 - order of recovering 433
- DBETE status
 - description 1004
 - resetting
 - by using START DATABASE command 1004
- DBID
 - option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 - option of REPAIR utility 604
- DBRM (database request module)
 - member naming convention xvii
 - partitioned data set naming convention xvii
- DD name, naming convention xvii
- DDF (distributed data facility), option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- DDNAME, option of DSNJU004 utility 822
- DEADLINE
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- DECFLOAT
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DECFLOAT EXTERNAL
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DECFLOAT_ROUNDMODE
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- DECIMAL EXTERNAL
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DECIMAL PACKED
 - option of the LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DECIMAL ZONED
 - option of the LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DECIMAL, option of UNLOAD utility 743
- declared temporary table
 - REPAIR utility 603
 - utility compatibility 4
- DECPT
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- DEFAULTIF, option of LOAD utility 248
- defects, calculating, LOAD utility 270
- DEFINE NO objects
 - populating 4
 - utility compatibility 4
- DEFINE NO table space, loading data 281
- defining work data sets
 - CHECK DATA utility 74
- DELAY
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- DELETE
 - option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 - option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 - option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343
 - option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 - option of the CHECK DATA utility 81
 - statement of REPAIR utility, used in LOCATE block 595
- DELETE statement of REPAIR utility 601
- deleting 682
 - active log from BSDS 811
 - log data sets with errors 814
- DELIMITED
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- delimited file format
 - acceptable data types 283, 1046
 - default delimiter values 283, 777
 - description 1045
 - examples 1047
 - loading 227, 283
 - maximum delimiter values 283
 - restrictions 283
- delimited files
 - acceptable data type forms for LOAD and UNLOAD utilities 777

- delimited files (*continued*)
 - unloading 777
- delimiters
 - column 1045
 - default values 283, 777
 - maximum values 283
 - restrictions 777
 - string 1045
 - using 283
- determining input copies 337
- DFSMS (Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem)
 - concurrent copy
 - invoking with COPY utility 123, 151
 - requirements for using 151
 - restrictions 151
 - products, using with DB2 156, 180
- DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities
 - refining with subsystem parameters 35
- DIAGNOSE utility
 - ABEND statement
 - description 189
 - syntax diagram 187
 - authorization 187
 - compatibility 191
 - concurrency 191
 - data sets needed 191
 - description 187
 - DISPLAY statement
 - description 189
 - syntax diagram 187
 - examples 192
 - ABEND 193
 - ALLDUMPS 192
 - CLONE 194
 - diagnosis of a specific type 193
 - displaying MEPLs 192
 - forcing a dump 192
 - forcing an abend 193
 - service level, finding 192
 - suspending utility execution 193
 - TYPE 193
 - WAIT 193
 - forcing an abend 191
 - instructions 191
 - option descriptions 189
 - restarting 192
 - syntax diagram 187
 - terminating 192
 - WAIT statement
 - description 189
 - syntax diagram 187
- DIAGNOSE, option of REPAIR utility 604
- DIR, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- directory
 - integrity, verifying 835
 - MERGECOPY utility, restrictions 331
 - order of recovering objects 433
- disability xvi
- discard data set, specifying DD statement for LOAD utility 227
- DISCARD, option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- DISCARDN
 - option of LOAD PART 248
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- DISCARDS, option of LOAD utility 227
- DISCDN, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- DISP, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- DISPLAY DATABASE command, displaying range of pages in error 431
- DISPLAY UTILITY command
 - description 31
 - using with RESTORE SYSTEM utility on a data sharing group 648
- DISPLAY, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189
- displaying status of DB2 utilities 31
- disposition, data sets, controlling 11
- DL/I, loading data 289
- DOUBLE, option of UNLOAD utility 743
- DRAIN
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- DRAIN_WAIT
 - option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 - option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
 - option of CHECK LOB utility 109
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- DROP, option of REPAIR utility 604
- DSN, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- DSN1CHKR utility
 - anchor point, mapping 837
 - authorization 835
 - data sets needed 835
 - description 835
 - DSN1CHKR utility
 - concurrent copy, compatibility 836
 - DSN1COPY utility, running before 836
 - dump format, printing 837
 - environment 835
 - examples 838
 - table space 840
 - temporary data set 838
 - formatting table space pages on output 837
 - hash value, specifying for DBID 837
 - option descriptions 837
 - output 836
 - pointers, following 837
 - running 835
 - syntax diagram 837
 - SYSPRINT DD name 835
 - SYSUT1 DD name 835
 - valid table spaces 836
- DSN1COMP utility
 - authorization required 843
 - data set size, specifying 845
 - data sets required 843
 - DD statements
 - SYSPRINT 843
 - SYSUT1 843
 - description 843
 - environment 843
 - examples
 - free space 850
 - FREPAGE 850
 - full image copy 850
 - FULLCOPY 850
 - LARGE 851
 - NUMPARTS 851
 - PCTFREE 850
 - REORG 851
 - ROWLIMIT 850
 - free pages, specifying 845

- DSN1COMP utility (*continued*)
 - free space
 - including in compression calculations 849
 - specifying 845
 - FREEPAGE 849
 - full image copy as input, specifying 845
 - identical data rows 850
 - LARGE data sets, specifying 845
 - maximum number of rows to evaluate, specifying 845
 - message DSN1941 852
 - option descriptions 845
 - output
 - example 852
 - interpreting 852
 - sample 849, 852
 - page size of input data set, specifying 845
 - partitions, specifying number 845
 - PCTFREE 849
 - prerequisite actions 848
 - recommendations 843
 - REORG 848
 - running 843
 - savings comparable to REORG 845
 - savings estimate 848
 - syntax diagram 845
- DSN1COPY utility
 - additional volumes, for SYSUT2 864
 - altering a table before running 868
 - authorization required 855
 - checking validity of input 857
 - comparing to DSN1PRNT 862
 - copying a table space 862
 - copying identity column tables 872
 - copying tables to other subsystems 872
 - data set size, determining 862
 - data set size, specifying 857
 - data sets
 - input 864
 - message 864
 - OBIDXLAT 864
 - output 864
 - required 864
 - DD statements
 - SYSPRINT 864
 - SYSUT1 864
 - SYSUT2 864
 - SYSXLAT 864
 - description 855
 - environment 855
 - example 864
 - examples 873
 - checking input data 873
 - copying partitions 874, 875
 - printing 16 pages 874
 - printing one page 874
 - translating internal identifiers 873
 - full image copy, specifying 857
 - image copy, using as input 869
 - inconsistent data, checking for 869
 - incremental copy, specifying 857
 - inline copy, specifying 857
 - internal identifiers, translating 869
 - LARGE input data set, specifying 857
 - LOB table space, specifying 857
 - log RBAs, resetting 869
 - maximum piece size, specifying 857
 - multiple data set table spaces 870
- DSN1COPY utility (*continued*)
 - OBID translation 857
 - OBIDXLAT 862
 - option descriptions 857
 - page size of input data set, specifying 857
 - page size, determining 862
 - partitions, specifying number 857
 - preventing inconsistent data 869
 - printing data sets 872
 - printing in hexadecimal format 857
 - resetting log RBAs 857, 869
 - restoring indexes 870
 - restoring table spaces 871
 - restrictions 855
 - scanning input data set for value 857
 - segmented table space, specifying 857
 - subsystem, copying tables from one to another 872
 - syntax diagram 857
 - translating internal identifiers 869
- DSN1LOGP utility
 - archive log data sets on tape, reading 886
 - authorization 877
 - data changes, limiting report to 880
 - data sets required 877
 - data sharing example 889
 - data sharing requirements 879
 - database identifier, using to limit report 880
 - DBID, using to limit report 880
 - DD statements
 - ACTIVE 878
 - ARCHIVE 878
 - BSDS 878
 - SYSIN 877
 - SYSPRINT 877
 - SYSSUMRY 877
 - description 877
 - detail report
 - description 890
 - sample 890
 - environment 877
 - error codes, interpreting 890
 - examples
 - data sharing 889
 - extracting information from the active log without the BSDS 888
 - extracting information from the archive log without the BSDS 888
 - extracting information from the recovery log with the BSDS 887
 - SUMMARY option 889
 - JCL, requirements 877
 - log data sets, identifying 878
 - log range, specifying 880
 - LUWIDs, reporting on 880
 - option descriptions 880
 - output
 - description 890
 - reviewing 890
 - sample 890
 - page regression report
 - description 890
 - page, limiting report to 880
 - RID, using to limit report 880
 - running 877
 - summary report
 - description 890
 - description of data propagation information 890

- DSN1LOGP utility (*continued*)
 - summary report (*continued*)
 - sample 890
 - sample of data propagation information 890
 - summary report, specifying 880
 - syntax diagram 879
 - SYSCOPY log records, limiting report to 880
 - type of log records, limiting report by 880
 - unit of recovery identifier, using to limit report 880
 - value in log record, limiting report by 880
- DSN1PRNT utility
 - authorization required 897
 - comparison with DSN1COPY utility 904
 - data set size, determining 904
 - data set size, specifying 899
 - data sets required 897
 - DD statements
 - SYSPRINT 897
 - SYSUT1 897
 - description 897
 - environment 897
 - examples 905
 - printing a data set in hexadecimal format 905
 - printing a nonpartitioning index 905
 - printing a page range of a specific partition 906
 - printing a partitioned data set 906
 - printing a single page of an image copy 906
 - filtering pages by value 899
 - formatting output 899
 - full image copy, specifying 899
 - incremental copy, specifying 899
 - inline copy, specifying 899
 - LARGE data set, specifying 899
 - LOB table space, specifying 899
 - number of partitions, specifying 899
 - option descriptions 899
 - page size, determining 904
 - page size, specifying 899
 - piece size, specifying 899
 - processing encrypted data 897
 - recommendations 904
 - running 897
 - syntax diagram 899
 - SYSUT1 data set, printing on SYSPRINT data set 899
- DSN1SDMP utility
 - action, specifying 911
 - authorization required 909
 - buffers, assigning 915
 - DD statements
 - SDMPIN 909
 - SDMPPRNT 909
 - SDMPTRAC 909
 - SYSABEND 909
 - SYSTSIN 909
 - description 909
 - dump, generating 916
 - environment 909
 - examples
 - abend 917, 918
 - dump 919
 - second trace 920
 - skeleton JCL 917
 - option descriptions 911
 - output 909
 - required data sets 909
 - running 909
 - selection criteria, specifying 911
- DSN1SDMP utility (*continued*)
 - syntax diagram 911
 - trace destination 911
 - traces
 - modifying 916
 - stopping 916
- DSN8G810, updating space information 695
- DSN8S81E table space, finding information about space utilization 695
- DSNACCOR stored procedure
 - description 949
 - option descriptions 951
 - output 966
 - syntax diagram 950
- DSNACCOX stored procedure
 - description 970
 - option descriptions 972
 - output 991
 - syntax diagram 971
- DSNADMSB
 - data sets needed 1033
 - description 1027
 - examples 1035
 - syntax diagram 1027
 - using the collected data 1034
- DSNADMSB utility
 - examples
 - collecting data for all rows in a PLAN_TABLE 1037
 - collecting environment data 1040
 - PLAN_TABLE data 1035
 - table list 1038
- DSNAME, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- DSNDB01.DBD01
 - copying restrictions 139
 - recovery information 625
- DSNDB01.SYSCOPYs
 - copying restrictions 139
- DSNDB01.SYSUTILX 440
 - copying restrictions 139
 - recovery information 625
- DSNDB06.SYSCOPY
 - recovery information 625
- DSNJCNVB utility
 - authorization required 793
 - control statement 793
 - data sets used 793
 - description 793
 - dual BSDSs, converting 793
 - environment 793
 - example 794
 - output 794
 - prerequisite actions 793
 - running 793
 - SYSPRINT DD name 793
 - SYSUT1 DD name 793
 - SYSUT2 DD name 793
- DSNJLOGF utility
 - data sets required 795
 - description 795
 - example 795
 - output 795
 - SYSPRINT DD name 795
 - SYSUT1 DD name 795
- DSNJU003 utility
 - active logs
 - adding 811
 - changing 811

- DSNJU003 utility (*continued*)
 - active logs (*continued*)
 - deleting 811
 - enlarging 811
 - recording 811
 - altering references 815
 - archive logs
 - adding 813
 - changing 813
 - deleting 813
 - authorization required 797
 - BSDS timestamp field, updating 797
 - data sets
 - cataloging 801
 - declaring 801
 - data sets needed 797
 - DELETE statement 815
 - description 797
 - environment 797
 - examples 817
 - adding a communication record to BSDS 817
 - adding a communication record with an alias to BSDS 818
 - adding active log 811
 - adding archive log 813
 - adding archive log data set 817
 - alias ports 818
 - changing high-level qualifier 815
 - creating conditional restart control record 817
 - deleting a data set 817
 - deleting active log 811
 - deleting archive log 813
 - recording active log 811
 - removing aliases from a communication record 819
 - specifying a point in time for system recovery 818
 - SYSPIR 818
 - Updating a communication record with a secure TCP/IP port number in the BSDS 817
 - invoking 797
 - NEWCAT statement
 - example output 815
 - using 815
 - NEWLOG statement 815
 - option descriptions 801
 - renaming log data sets 816
 - renaming system data sets 816
 - syntax diagram 798
 - SYSIN DD name 797
 - SYSPRINT DD name 797
 - SYSUT1 DD name 797
 - SYSUT2 DD name 797
 - updating dual copy BSDSs 797
- DSNJU004 utility
 - authorization required 821
 - BSDS timestamps 828
 - checkpoints, sample output description of 831
 - data sets needed 821
 - description 821
 - environment 821
 - example 823
 - GROUP DD name 821
 - MnnBSDS DD name 821
 - option descriptions 822
 - output
 - description 823
 - sample 830
 - recommendations 821
- DSNJU004 utility (*continued*)
 - running 821
 - syntax diagram 822
 - SYSIN DD name 821
 - SYSPRINT DD name 821
 - SYSUT1 DD name 821
- DSNTEJ1 sample 530
- DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 sample program
 - specifying SQL terminator 1012, 1020
- DSNTEP2 sample program
 - how to run 1011
 - parameters 1011
 - program preparation 1011
- DSNTEP4 sample program
 - how to run 1011
 - parameters 1011
 - program preparation 1011
- DSNTIAD sample program
 - how to run 1011
 - parameters 1011
 - program preparation 1011
 - specifying SQL terminator 1018
- DSNTIAUL sample program
 - how to run 1011
 - parameters 1011
 - program preparation 1011
- DSNTIJIC utility
 - copy catalog and directory objects 149
- DSNTYPE, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- DSNU CLIST command
 - editing generated JCL 26
 - examples 26
 - invoking utilities 20
 - option descriptions 21
 - output 25
 - syntax 21
- DSNUM
 - option of COPY utility 123
 - option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 - option of MERGECOPY utility 332
 - option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343, 347
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
 - option of REPORT utility 619
- DSNUPROC JCL procedure
 - description 27
 - option descriptions 27
 - sample 28
- DSNUTILS stored procedure
 - authorization required 934
 - data sets 935
 - description 933
 - option descriptions 937
 - output 944
 - restarting a utility 933
 - sample JCL 944
 - syntax diagram 936
 - terminating a utility 933
- DSNUTILU stored procedure
 - authorization required 946
 - data sets 946
 - description 945
 - option descriptions 947
 - output 949
 - restarting a utility 945
 - sample JCL 949
 - syntax diagram 947

DSSIZE
 option of DSN1COMP utility 845
 option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 option of DSN1PRNT utility 899

dump
 example 50

DUMP
 option of DSN1CHKR utility 837
 statement of REPAIR utility 602
 used in LOCATE block 595

DUMP, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45

DUMPCLASS, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45

dumping
 utilities
 BACKUP SYSTEM 48

DUMPONLY, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45

E

EBCDIC
 option of LOAD utility 227
 option of UNLOAD utility 728

edit routine
 LOAD utility 221
 REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

EDIT, option of DSNU CLIST command 21

embedded semicolon
 embedded 1018

enabling-new-function mode processing, stopping 53

encrypted data
 running DSN1PRNT on 897
 running REORG TABLESPACE on 530
 running REPAIR on 605
 running UNLOAD on 763
 running utilities on 5

encryption
 DSN1PRNT utility effect on 897
 REORG TABLESPACE utility effect on 530
 REPAIR utility effect on 605
 UNLOAD utility effect on 763
 utilities effect on 5

END FCINCREMENTAL
 explanation 45

END FCINCREMENTAL, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45

END, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189

ENDLRSN, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

ENDRBA, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

ENDTIME, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

ENFMON, option of CATENFM utility 52

ENFORCE, option of LOAD utility 227, 286

ERRDDN
 option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 option of LOAD utility 227

error data set
 CHECK DATA utility 64, 73

error range recovery 431

ERROR RANGE, option of RECOVER utility 413

error, calculating, LOAD utility 270

ESA data compression, estimating disk savings 843

ESCAPE clause 502, 743

ESTABLISH FCINCREMENTAL
 explanation 45

ESTABLISH FCINCREMENTAL, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45

EVENT, option of OPTIONS statement 362

exception table
 columns 79
 creating 79
 definition 73
 example 86
 with auxiliary columns 80
 with LOB columns 72

EXCEPTIONS
 option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 option of CHECK LOB utility 109

exceptions, specifying the maximum number
 CHECK DATA utility 64
 CHECK LOB utility 109

EXCLUDE
 option of LISTDEF 209

EXCLUDE, option of LISTDEF utility 201

EXEC SQL utility
 authorization 195
 compatibility 197
 cursors 196
 declare cursor statement
 description 196
 syntax diagram 195
 description 195
 dynamic SQL statements 196
 examples 197
 creating a table 197
 declaring a cursor 198
 inserting rows into a table 198
 using a mapping table 584
 execution phase 195
 output 195
 restarting 197
 syntax diagram 195
 terminating 197

EXEC statement
 built by CLIST 25
 description 30

executing
 utilities, creating JCL 30
 utilities, DB2I 17
 utilities, JCL procedure (DSNUPROC) 27

exit procedure, LOAD utility 304

EXPDL, option of TEMPLATE statement 702

extracted key, calculating, LOAD utility 270

F

fallback recovery considerations 530

FAROFFPOSF column of SYSINDEXPART catalog table
 catalog query to retrieve value for 548

field procedure, LOAD utility 304

filter data set, determining size 132

FILTER, option of DSN1LOGP utility 880

FILTER, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911

FILTERDDN, option of COPY utility 123

FlashCopy
 copying 179
 COPYTOCOPY 179
 creating with LOAD 292
 creating with REBUILD INDEX 403
 creating with REORG INDEX 484
 creating with REORG TABLESPACE 559
 image copies, overview 142
 recovering from 429
 utilities that support FlashCopy 142

FLASHCOPY
 option of COPY utility 123
 option of LOAD utility 227
 option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382

FlashCopy image copies
 examples
 REBUILD TABLESPACE control statement 587
 REORG INDEX control statement 491

FLOAT
 option of LOAD utility 227
 option of UNLOAD utility 728, 743

FLOAT EXTERNAL, option of LOAD utility 248

FLOAT, option of LOAD utility 248

FOR EXCEPTION, option of CHECK DATA utility 64

FOR, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911

FOR2, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911

force
 example 50

FORCE, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45

FORCEROLLUP
 option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
 option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

foreign key, calculating, LOAD utility 270

FORMAT
 option of DSN1CHKR utility 837
 option of DSN1PRNT utility 899
 option of LOAD utility 227

FORMAT SQL/DS, option of LOAD utility 227

FORMAT UNLOAD, option of LOAD utility 227

FORWARD, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

free space
 REORG INDEX utility 488

FREEPAGE, option of DSN1COMP utility 845

FREQVAL
 option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
 option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

FROM TABLE
 option of UNLOAD utility 737, 782

FROMCOPY
 option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 option of the COPYTOCOPY utility 178
 option of UNLOAD utility 728, 770

FROMCOPYDDN, option of UNLOAD utility 728, 770

FROMLASTCOPY, option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172

FROMLASTFULLCOPY, option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172

FROMLASTINRCOPY, option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172

FROMSEQNO, option of the UNLOAD utility 728

FROMVOLUME
 option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 option of UNLOAD utility 728

FULL
 option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45
 option of COPY utility 123

full backup
 description 45
 example 49

FULLCOPY
 option of DSN1COMP utility 845
 option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 option of DSN1PRNT utility 899

function
 maximum number in select 923

G

GDGLIMIT
 option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343

GDGLIMIT, option of TEMPLATE statement 702

GDGs 155

general-use programming information, described 1063

generation data groups
 defining 155, 180
 using with conditional copy 152

GENERIC, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

GRAPHIC
 option of LOAD utility 248
 option of UNLOAD utility 743

GRAPHIC EXTERNAL
 option of LOAD utility 248
 option of UNLOAD utility 743

GRECP 1005

group buffer pool RECOVER-pending (GRECP) status
 description 1005
 resetting 1005

GUPI symbols 1063

H

HALT, option of OPTIONS statement 362

HASH, option of DSN1CHKR utility 837

HEADER, option of UNLOAD utility 743

hexadecimal-constant, naming convention xvii

hexadecimal-string, naming convention xvii

HIGHRBA, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

HISTOGRAM
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

HISTORY
 option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
 option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

I

ICBACKUP column in SYSIBM.SYSCOPY 140

ICOPY status 119

ICUNIT column
 SYSIBM.SYSCOPY 140

identity columns, loading 280

IDENTITYOVERRIDE
 option of LOAD PART 248

IGNOREFIELDS, option of LOAD utility 248

image copy
 cataloging 132, 175
 conditional, specifying 152
 COPY utility 119
 copying 169
 COPYTOCOPY utility 169
 data set, finding size 132
 deleting all 347
 FlashCopy 142
 full
 description 119
 making 123, 137
 incremental
 conditions 140
 copying 177
 description 119
 making 139

image copy (*continued*)
 incremental (*continued*)
 merging 331
 performance advantage 139
 list of objects 146
 making after loading a table 312
 making in parallel 119
 multiple, making 140
 obtaining information about 152
 putting on tape 156, 180

IMS DPROF 289

IN predicate 502, 743

in-abort state 801

in-commit state 801

INCLUDE, option of LISTDEF utility 201, 209

inconsistent data indicator, resetting 600

INCRCOPY
 option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 option of DSN1PRNT utility 899

INCURSOR
 option of LOAD PART 248
 option of LOAD utility 227

INDDN
 option of LOAD PART 248
 option of LOAD utility 227

INDEREFLIMIT option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

index
 building during LOAD 300
 checking 89, 315
 determining when to reorganize 481
 naming convention xvii
 organization 481
 REBUILD INDEX utility 379
 rebuilding in parallel 397
 rebuilt, recoverability 403
 version numbers, recycling 315

INDEX
 option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
 option of COPY utility 123
 option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 option of LISTDEF utility 201
 option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REPAIR utility
 LEVELID statement 591
 LOCATE statement 598
 SET statement 593
 option of REPORT utility 619
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

INDEX ALL, option of REPORT utility 619

INDEX NONE, option of REPORT utility 619

index partitions, rebuilding 395

index space
 recovering 379

index space status, resetting 610

INDEX
 option of RECOVER utility 413
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

indexes
 copying 150

INDEXSPACE
 option of COPY utility 123
 option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 option of LISTDEF utility 201
 option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 option of RECOVER utility 413

INDEXSPACE (*continued*)
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REPAIR utility
 SET statement 593
 option of REPAIR utility for LEVELID statement 591
 option of REPORT utility 619

INDEXSPACES, option of LISTDEF utility 201

indoubt state 801

INDSN, option of DSNU CLIST command 21

inflight state 801

informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) status
 COPY utility 123
 description 1006
 resetting 119, 154, 1006

informational referential constraints, LOAD utility 221

INLCOPY
 option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 option of DSN1PRNT utility 899

inline COPY
 base table space 308
 copying 178
 creating with LOAD utility 292
 creating with REORG TABLESPACE utility 558

inline statistics
 collecting during LOAD 308
 using in place of RUNSTATS 678

input fields, specifying 299

INPUT, option of CATENFM utility 52

INSTANCE, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189, 191

INTEGER
 option of LOAD utility 248
 option of UNLOAD utility 743

INTEGER EXTERNAL
 option of LOAD utility 248
 option of UNLOAD utility 743

Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF) 17

INTO TABLE, option of LOAD utility 245

invalid LOB 83

invalid SQL terminator characters 1018

invalidated packages
 identifying 886

invalidated plans and packages
 identifying 59

invalidating statements
 dynamic statement cache 679

ISPF (Interactive System Productivity Facility), utilities
 panels 17

ITEMERROR, option of OPTIONS statement 362

J

JCL (job control language)
 COPYTOCOPY utility 177
 DSNUPROC utility 20

JCL PARM statement 362

JES3 environment, making copies 338

job control language 137

JOB statement, built by CLIST 25

K

KEEPDICTIONARY
 option of LOAD PART 248
 option of LOAD utility 227, 288
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 288, 502

- key
 - calculating, LOAD utility 270
 - foreign, LOAD operation 286
 - length
 - maximum 923
 - primary, LOAD operation 286
- KEY
 - option of OPTIONS utility 362
 - option of REPAIR utility on LOCATE statement 596
- KEYCARD
 - option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

L

- labeled-duration expression 502
- LARGE
 - option of DSN1COMP utility 845
 - option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 - option of DSN1PRNT utility 899
- large partitioned table spaces, RUNSTATS utility 684
- LAST
 - option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343
- LEAFDISTLIMIT, option of REORG INDEX utility 463
- LEAFLIM, option of DSN1COMP utility 845
- LEAST, option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665
- LENGTH, option of REPAIR utility 602
- level identifier, resetting 591
- LEVELID, option of REPAIR utility 591
- LIB, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- LIB, option of DSNUPROC utility 27
- library 1055
- library of LISTDEF statements 213
- LIKE predicate 502, 743
- limit
 - option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- LIMIT, option of UNLOAD utility 743
- limits, DB2 923
- LIST
 - option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
 - option of COPY utility 123
 - option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 - option of LISTDEF utility 201
 - option of MERGECOPY utility 332
 - option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343
 - option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 - option of QUIESCE utility 370
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 - option of REPORT utility 619
 - option of REPORT with INDEXSPACE option 619
 - option of REPORT with TABLESPACE option 619
 - option of RUNSTATS INDEX utility 665
 - option of RUNSTATS TABLESPACE utility 656
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- list of objects, copying 119
- LISTDEF
 - EXCLUDE option 209
 - INCLUDE option 209
 - objects, excluding 209
 - objects, including 209
- LISTDEF library, specifying 365
- LISTDEF utility
 - authorization 199
 - catalog and directory objects, specifying 209
 - compatibility 208
 - concurrency 208
 - control statement
 - creating 209
 - description 209
 - placement 213
 - processing 209
 - COPY NO indexes, specifying 201
 - COPY YES indexes, specifying 201
 - description 199
 - examples 216
 - all objects in a database 216
 - CLONED 219
 - COPY YES 217
 - excluding objects 217
 - including all but one partition 217
 - including COPY YES indexes 217
 - library data set 218
 - lists that reference other lists 217
 - matching name patterns 216
 - partition-level lists 216
 - pattern-matching characters 216
 - related objects, including 219
 - RI option 219
 - simple list 216
 - using LIST 213
 - using with QUIESCE utility 218
 - execution phases 199
 - indexes, specifying 201
 - LOB indicator keywords 201
 - LOB objects, including 201
 - option descriptions 201
 - OPTIONS, using 215
 - output 199
 - partitions, specifying 201
 - pattern-matching expressions
 - characters 209
 - description 209
 - restriction 209
 - using 209
 - previewing 213
 - restarting 215
 - restrictions 199, 209
 - statement library 213
 - syntax diagram 200
 - TEMPLATE, using 215
 - terminating 215
- LISTDEFDD, option of OPTIONS statement 362
- lists
 - objects
 - excluding 209
 - including 209
 - previewing 213
 - processing order 213
 - using with other utilities 213
- LOAD INTO PART 281
- LOAD REPLACE LOG YES 277
- LOAD utility
 - adding more data 280
 - after loading 311
 - appending to data 227
 - authorization 221
 - auxiliary index, reorganizing after LOAD 315
 - BINARYXML 248

LOAD utility (*continued*)

- building indexes
 - in parallel 300
 - sequentially 300
- catalog tables, loading 268
- CHECK DATA
 - after LOAD RESUME 312
 - data sets used 312
 - error data sets 312
 - running 312
 - sort data sets 312
- compatibility 274
- compressing data 288
- concatenating records 227
- concurrent access to data, setting 227
- cross loader 290
- cursors
 - identifying 227, 248
 - preparing to use 268
- data conversion 297
- data sets needed 270
- data type compatibility 297
- data type, specifying 248
- data with referential constraints 286
- default values, setting criteria for 248
- defects, calculating number 270
- DEFINE NO table space, consequences 281
- deleting all data 281
- delimited file format
 - acceptable data types 283
 - restrictions 283
 - specifying 227
- delimited files 283
- delimiters 283
- description 221
- discard data set
 - declaring 227
 - maximum number of records 227
- discarded rows, inline statistics 308
- duplicate keys, effects 277
- dynamic SQL 290
- ENFORCE NO
 - actions to take 312
 - consequences 286
- enforcing constraints 227
- error work data set, specifying 227
- error, calculating 270
- examples 317
 - CHECK DATA 312
 - CHECK DATA after LOAD RESUME 312
 - concatenating records 320
 - CONTINUEIF 320
 - COPYDDN 324
 - CURSOR 328
 - data 318, 319, 327
 - declared cursors 328
 - default values, loading 321
 - DEFAULTIF 321
 - DELIMITED 319
 - delimited files 319
 - ENFORCE CONSTRAINTS 322
 - ENFORCE NO 322
 - field positions, specifying 317
 - inline copies, creating 324
 - KEEPDICTIONARY 288
 - loading 329
 - loading by partition 281

LOAD utility (*continued*)

- examples (*continued*)
 - LOBs 329
 - null values, loading 321
 - NULLIF 321
 - NUMRECS, specifying for multiple tables 318
 - NUMRECS, specifying for partitions 328
 - parallel index build 323
 - PART 318
 - partition parallelism 327, 328
 - POSITION 317
 - referential constraints 322
 - REPLACE 318
 - replace table in single-table table space 277
 - replace tables in multi-table table space 277
 - replacing data in a given partition 318
 - selected records, loading 318
 - SORTKEYS 323
 - STATISTICS 325
 - statistics, collecting 325
 - Unicode input, loading 326
 - UNICODE option 326
- EXEC SQL statements 290
- exit procedure 304
- extracted keys, calculating number 270
- failed job, recovering 315
- field length
 - defaults 248
 - determining 248
- field names, specifying 248
- field position, specifying 248
- field specifications 248
- FlashCopy 292
- FlashCopy image copies, overview 142
- foreign keys
 - calculating 270
 - invalid values 286
- format, specifying 227
- free space 303
- identity columns 280
- improving parallel processing 295
- improving performance 295, 296
- informational referential constraints 221
- inline copy 308
- inline COPY 292
- inline statistics, collecting 308
- input data set, specifying 227
- input data, preparing 268
- input fields, specifying 299
- into-table spec 245
- KEEPDICTIONARY option 288
- keys
 - calculating 270
 - estimating number 295
- LOAD INTO TABLE options 248
- loading data from DL/I 289
- LOB column 305
- LOG, using on LOB table space 306
- LOG, using on XML table space 307
- logging 227
- map, calculating 270
- multilevel security restriction on REPLACE option 221
- multiple tables, loading 245
- null values, setting criteria for 248
- option descriptions 227, 248
- ordering records 277
- output 221

- LOAD utility (*continued*)
 - parallel index build
 - data sets used 300
 - sort subtasks 300
 - sort work file, estimating size 300
 - partitions
 - copying 311
 - loading 248, 281
 - performance recommendations 293
 - preprocessing 268
 - primary key
 - duplicate values 286
 - missing values 286
 - REBUILD-pending status 303
 - resetting 312
 - RECOVER-pending status 303
 - recovering failed job 315
 - recycling version numbers 315
 - referential constraints 286
 - REORG-pending status
 - loading data in 303
 - REPLACE option 277
 - replacing data 227
 - restarting 309
 - restrictive states, compatibility 277
 - RESUME YES SHRLEVEL CHANGE, without logging 307
 - reusing data sets 227
 - row selection criteria 248
 - ROWID columns 280, 304
 - skipping fields 248
 - sort program data sets, device type 227
 - sort work file, specifying 227
 - SORTKEYS NO 276
 - statistics, gathering 227
 - syntax diagram 223
 - table space, copying 311
 - terminating 308
 - Unicode data 227
 - variable-length data 277
 - work data sets
 - declaring 227
 - estimating size 270
 - XML column 306
- LOAD utilitymaterialization 297
- loading
 - catalog tables 268
 - data
 - DL/I 289
 - dynamic SQL 290
 - generated by REORG UNLOAD EXTERNAL 280
 - generated by UNLOAD 280
 - large amounts 221, 281
 - referential constraints 286
 - using a cursor, preparations 268
 - partition-by-growth 282
 - partitions 281
 - variable-length data 277
 - XML data 283
- LOB
 - option of CHECK LOB utility 109
 - option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 - violations, resolving 115
- LOB (large object)
 - checking 64
 - invalid 83
 - missing 83
 - option of DSN1PRNT utility 899
- LOB (large object) (*continued*)
 - option of LISTDEF utility 201
 - orphan 83
 - out-of-synch 83
 - recovering 441
- LOB column
 - checking data 72
 - definitions, completing 72
 - errors 83
 - loading 305
- LOB table space
 - copying 180
 - LOAD LOG 306
 - REORG LOG 306
 - reorganizing 567
- LOBERROR INVALIDATE, option of CHECK DATA utility 83
- LOBERROR REPORT, option of CHECK DATA utility 83
- LOBERROR, option of CHECK DATA utility 64
- LOCALSITE
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
 - option of REPORT utility 619
- LOCATE INDEX statement of REPAIR utility 598
- LOCATE INDEXSPACE statement of REPAIR utility 598
- LOCATE statement of REPAIR utility 595
- LOCATE TABLESPACE statement of REPAIR utility 596
- location name, naming convention xvii
- LOCATION, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- locking
 - BACKUP SYSTEM utility 47
 - CATENFM utility 53
 - CATMAINT utility 57
 - CHECK DATA utility 77
 - CHECK INDEX utility 96
 - CHECK LOB utility 114
 - COPY utility 135
 - COPYTOCOPY utility 176
 - DIAGNOSE utility 191
 - EXEC SQL utility 197
 - LISTDEF utility 208
 - LOAD utility 274
 - MERGECOPY utility 335
 - MODIFY RECOVERY utility 346
 - MODIFY STATISTICS utility 356
 - OPTIONS utility 364
 - QUIESCE utility 372
 - REBUILD INDEX utility 392
 - RECOVER utility 422
 - REORG INDEX utility 480
 - REORG TABLESPACE utility 543
 - REPAIR utility 606
 - REPORT utility 622
 - RUNSTATS utility 675
 - STOSPACE utility 695
 - TEMPLATE utility 715
 - UNLOAD utility 764
 - utilities access description 31
- log
 - active
 - data set status 830
 - printing available data sets 821
 - backward recovery 801
 - command history, printing 821
 - data set
 - active, renaming 816
 - archive, renaming 816
 - printing map 821

- log (*continued*)
 - data set (*continued*)
 - printing names 821
 - forward recovery 801
 - record structure, types 880
 - truncation 817
 - utilities
 - DSNJU003 (change log inventory) 797
 - DSNJU004 (print log map) 821
- LOG
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of REPAIR utility 591
- log copy pools
 - system-level backups 48
- log data sets with errors, deleting 814
- log RBAs, resetting 869
- logical partition, checking 98
- logical unit name, naming convention xvii
- LOGLIMIT
 - option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343
- LOGONLY
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
 - option of RESTORE SYSTEM utility 645
- LOGRANGES, option of RECOVER utility 413
- logs
 - log copy pools, backups 48
- LONGLOG
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- LPL status 1001
- LRSNEND option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
- LRSNSTART, option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
- LUNAME, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- LUWID option of DSN1LOGP utility 880

M

- MAP
 - option of DSN1CHKR utility 837
 - option of REPAIR utility 602
- map, calculating, LOAD utility 270
- MAPDDN, option of LOAD utility 227
- MAPPINGTABLE, option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- materializationavoiding 297
- MAXERR, option of UNLOAD utility 728
- MAXPRIME, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- MAXRO
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- MAXROWS, option of DSN1COMP utility 845
- MB, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- media failure
 - resolving 115
- member name, naming convention xvii
- MEMBER option of DSNJU004 utility 822
- MERGECOPY utility
 - authorization 331
 - compatibility 335
 - COPY utility, when to use 338
 - data sets needed 334
 - DBD01 331, 332
 - description 331
 - different types, merging restrictions 337
 - directory table spaces 331

- MERGECOPY utility (*continued*)
 - examples
 - merged full image copy 340
 - merged incremental copy 339
 - NEWCOPY NO 339
 - NEWCOPY YES 340
 - TEMPLATE 339
 - full image copy, merging with increment image copies 332
 - individual data sets 337
 - JES3 environment, making copies 338
 - lists, using 332
 - LOG information, deleting 338
 - LOG RBA inconsistencies, avoiding 338
 - NEWCOPY option 336
 - online copies, merging 337
 - option descriptions 332
 - output 331
 - output data set
 - local, specifying 332, 334
 - remote, specifying 332, 334
 - partitions, merging copies 332
 - phases of execution 331
 - restarting 338
 - restrictions 331
 - syntax diagram 332
 - SYSCOPY 331, 332
 - SYSUTILX 331, 332
 - temporary data set, specifying 332, 334
 - terminating 338
 - type of copy, specifying 336
 - work data set, specifying 334
- message
 - DSNU command 25
 - MERGECOPY utility 332
 - MODIFY RECOVERY utility 341
 - QUIESCE utility 369
 - RECOVER utility 409
 - REORG INDEX utility 459
- MESSAGE, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189
- MGMTCLAS, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- missing LOB 83
- MIXED
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of LOAD utility for CHAR 248
- MIXED, option of LOAD utility for VARCHAR 248
- MODELDCB, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- MODIFY RECOVERY utility
 - age criteria 343
 - authorization 341
 - compatibility 346
 - copies, deleting 347
 - data sets needed 346
 - date criteria 343
 - DBD, reclaiming space 348
 - description 341
 - examples 350
 - AGE 350
 - CLONE 351
 - DATE 350
 - DELETE 350, 351
 - deleting all SYSCOPY records 350
 - deleting SYSCOPY records by age 350
 - deleting SYSCOPY records by date 350
 - DSNUM 350
 - partitions 350
 - RETAIN 351

MODIFY RECOVERY utility (*continued*)

- GDG limit 343
- lists, using 343
- log limit 343
- option descriptions 343
- partitions, processing 343
- phases of execution 341
- recent records 343
- records, deleting 343
- records, retaining 343
- RECOVER-pending status, restriction 345
- recovery index rows, deleting 347
- REORG after adding column, improving performance 348
- restarting 349
- syntax diagram 342
- SYSCOPY records, viewing 345
- SYSCOPY, deleting rows 347
- SYSLGRNX, deleting rows 347
- SYSOBDS entries, deleting 348
- terminating 349
- version numbers, recycling 349

MODIFY STATISTICS utility

- authorization 353
- compatibility 356
- data sets needed 356
- description 353
- examples 358
 - ACCESSPATH 358
 - AGE 358
 - DATE 358
 - deleting access path records by date 358
 - deleting history records by age 358
 - deleting index statistics 359
 - deleting space statistics records by age 358
 - SPACE 358
- lists, using 354
- option descriptions 354
- output 353
- restarting 357
- statistics history, deleting 357
- syntax diagram 354
- terminating 357

monitoring

- index organization 481
- table space organization 482, 548
- utility status 31

MOST, option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

multilevel security with row-level granularity

- authorization restrictions for online utilities 16
- authorization restrictions for stand-alone utilities 792
- LOAD REPLACE authorization restrictions 221
- REORG TABLESPACE authorization restrictions 493
- UNLOAD authorization restrictions 725

N

naming convention, variables in command syntax xvii

NBRSECND, option of TEMPLATE statement 702

NEAROFFPOSF column of SYSINDEXPART catalog table

- catalog query to retrieve value for 548

new-function mode, converting to 53

NEWCAT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

NEWCOPY, option of MERGECOPY utility 332

NEWLOG

- option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- statement 811

NGENERIC, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

NOALIAS, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

NOAREORPENDSTAR, option of REPAIR utility 593

NOAUXCHKP, option of REPAIR utility 593

NOAUXWARN, option of REPAIR utility 593

NOCHECKPEND, option of REPAIR utility 593

NOCOPYPEND

- option of LOAD utility 227
- option of REPAIR utility 593

NODUMPS, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189

NOPAD

- option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- option of UNLOAD utility 728

NOPASSWD, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

NORBDPEND, option of REPAIR utility 593

NORCVRPEND, option of REPAIR utility 593

normal-termination, option of TEMPLATE utility 702

NOSUBS

- option of LOAD utility 227
- option of UNLOAD utility 728

NOSYSREC, option of REORG TABLESPACE utility

- LOG
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- REORG TABLESPACE utility
 - logging, specifying 502

not sign, problems with 502

NULL predicate 502, 743

NULLIF, option of LOAD utility 248

NUMCOLS

- option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
- option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
- option of REORG INDEX utility 463
- option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

NUMPARTS

- option of DSN1COMP utility 845
- option of DSN1COPY utility 857
- option of DSN1PRNT utility 899

NUMQUANTILES

- option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

O

OBID, option of DSN1LOGP utility 880

OBIDLAT, option of DSN1COPY utility 857

object lists

- adding related objects 209
- creating 199

object status

- advisory, resetting 1001
- restrictive, resetting 1001

OBJECT, option of REPAIR utility 591

OFF, option of OPTIONS statement 362

OFFLRBA, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

OFFPOSLIMIT, option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

OFFSET

- option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
- option of REPAIR utility
 - DUMP statement 602
 - REPLACE statement 600
 - VERIFY statement 599

OLDEST_VERSION column, updating 349

online 1055

online books 1055

online copies, merging 337

online utilities 11

- description 3
- invoking 11

option description, example 13

- OPTIONS utility
 - altering return codes 365
 - authorization 361
 - compatibility 364
 - concurrency 364
 - description 361
 - errors, handling 362
 - examples 366
 - checking syntax 366
 - COPY 367
 - EVENT 367
 - forcing return code 0 367
 - ITEMERROR 367
 - LISTDEF 366
 - LISTDEF definition libraries 366
 - LISTDEFDD 366
 - MODIFY RECOVERY 367
 - PREVIEW 366
 - SKIP 367
 - TEMPLATE 366
 - TEMPLATE definition libraries 366
 - TEMPLATEDD 366
 - execution phases 361
 - LISTDEF definition library, specifying 362
 - option descriptions 362
 - output 361
 - PREVIEW with LISTDEF 362
 - PREVIEW with TEMPLATE 362
 - restarting 365
 - syntax diagram 361
 - TEMPLATE definition library, specifying 362
 - terminating 365
- order of recovering objects 433
- orphan LOB 83
- out-of-synch LOB 83
- OUTDDN, option of REPAIR utility 604
- owner, creator, and schema
 - renaming 57
- ownership of objects
 - changing from an authorization ID to a role 58

P

- page
 - checking 123
 - damaged, repairing 610
 - recovering 430
 - size, relationship to number of pages 899
- PAGE
 - option of DSN1CHKR utility 837
 - option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
 - option of REPAIR utility on LOCATE statement 596
- PAGE option
 - RECOVER utility 430
 - REPAIR utility 598
- page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) status
 - description 401, 1006
 - resetting 401, 1006
- PAGES, option of REPAIR utility 602
- PAGESIZE
 - option of DSN1COMP utility 845
 - option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 - option of DSN1PRNT utility 899
- panel
 - Control Statement Data Set Names 17
 - Data Set Names 17

- panel (*continued*)
 - DB2 Utilities 17
- PARALLEL
 - option of COPY utility 119, 123
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
- parallel index build 397
- parsing rules, utility control statements 13, 791
- PART
 - option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 - option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
 - option of LOAD utility 248, 281
 - option of QUIESCE utility 370
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 - option of REPAIR utility
 - LOCATE INDEX and LOCATE INDEXSPACE statements 598
 - LOCATE TABLESPACE statement 596
 - SET TABLESPACE and SETINDEX options 593
 - option of REPAIR utility for LEVELID 591
 - option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728, 766
- partition-by-growth table space
 - loading 282
- partition-by-growth table spaces, rebuilding 395
- partition-by-growth table spaces, reorganizing 565
- partition, copying 139
- partitioned table space
 - loading 281
 - replacing a partition 281
 - unloading 766
- partitioned table spaces, reorganizing 565
- partitions
 - concatenating copies with UNLOAD utility 770
 - rebalancing with REORG 556
- PARTLEVEL, option of LISTDEF utility 201
- PASSWORD, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- pattern-matching characters, LISTDEF 209
- patterns
 - advanced information 502, 743
- PCTFREE, option of DSN1COMP utility 845
- PCTPRIME, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- pending status, resetting 1001
- performance
 - affected by
 - I/O activity 548
 - table space organization 548
 - COPY utility 155
 - LOAD utility, improving 293
 - monitoring with the STOSPACE utility 695
 - RECOVER utility 449
 - REORG INDEX utility, improving 485
 - REORG TABLESPACE utility, improving 560
 - RUNSTATS utility 678
- phase restart, description 36
- phases of execution
 - BACKUP SYSTEM utility 43
 - CHECK DATA utility 61
 - CHECK INDEX utility 89
 - CHECK LOB utility 107
 - COPY utility 119
 - COPYTOCOPY utility 169
 - description 31
 - EXEC SQL utility 195
 - LISTDEF utility 199
 - LOAD utility 221

- phases of execution (*continued*)
 - MEREGCOPY utility 331
 - MODIFY RECOVERY utility 341
 - MODIFY STATISTICS utility 353
 - OPTIONS utility 361
 - QUIESCE utility 369
 - REBUILD INDEX utility 379
 - RECOVER utility 409
 - REORG INDEX utility 459
 - REORG TABLESPACE utility 493
 - REPAIR utility 589
 - REPORT utility 617
 - RESTORE SYSTEM utility 643
 - RUNSTATS utility 651
 - STOSPACE utility 693
 - TEMPLATE utility 699
 - UNLOAD utility 725
 - utilities
 - CATENFM 51
- PIECESIZ
 - option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 - option of DSN1PRNT utility 899
- point-in-time recovery
 - backout 442
 - options 413
 - performing 433, 442
 - planning for 433
- PORT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
- POSITION
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- predicate
 - basic 502
 - BETWEEN 502
 - IN 502
 - LIKE 502
 - NULL 502
 - overview 502
- predicates
 - basic 743
 - BETWEEN 743
 - IN 743
 - LIKE 743
 - NULL 743
- PREFORMAT
 - option of LOAD PART 248
 - option of LOAD utility 227, 296
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 - option of REORG utility 296
- preformatting active logs
 - data sets required 795
 - description 795
 - example 795
 - output 795
- PRESERVE WHITESPACE
 - option of LOAD utility 248
- PREVIEW
 - option of OPTIONS utility 362
 - using with LISTDEF utility 213
- preview mode 365
- PREVIEW mode, executing utilities in 715, 716
- PRINT
 - option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 - option of DSN1PRNT utility 899
- print log map utility (DSNJU004)
 - JCL requirements 821

- print log map utility (DSNJU004) (*continued*)
 - SYSIN stream parsing 821
- privilege
 - description 3
 - granting 3
 - revoking 3
- privilege set of a process 3
- process, privilege set of 3
- product-sensitive programming information, described 1063
- profiles
 - RUNSTATS utility 681
- programming interface information, described 1063
- PSPI symbols 1063
- PUNCHDDN
 - option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 - option of CHECK LOB utility 109
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 - option of UNLOAD utility 728
- PUNCHDSN, option of DSNU CLIST command 21

Q

- qualifier-name, naming convention xvii
- QUIESCE
 - before running 372
- quiesce point, establishing 369
- QUIESCE utility
 - authorization 369
 - catalog and directory objects 374
 - compatibility 372
 - data sets needed 372
 - description 369
 - examples
 - CLONE 378
 - list 377
 - quiesce point for three table spaces 376
 - table space set 377
 - WRITE NO 378
 - history record, printing 821
 - lists 374
 - lists, using 370
 - option descriptions 370
 - output 369
 - partitions 370
 - phases of execution 369
 - quiesce point, establishing 374
 - recovery preparations 369
 - restarting 376
 - restrictive states, compatibility 375
 - syntax diagram 370
 - table space set 370
 - table space, specifying 370
 - terminating 376
 - write to disk, failure 375
 - writing changed pages to disk 370

R

- RBA (relative byte address), range printed by print log map 823
- RBAEND, option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
- RBASTART, option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
- RBDP 1006
- RBDP (REBUILD-pending) status
 - description 401, 452
 - resetting 452

- RBDP* (REBUILD-pending star) status, resetting 401
- RC0, option of OPTIONS statement 362
- RC4, option of OPTIONS statement 362
- RC8, option of OPTIONS statement 362
- RCPYDSN1, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- RCPYDSN2, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- real-time statistics
 - data processing 1043
 - stored procedure 949, 970
 - used by utilities 1043
- REAL, option of UNLOAD utility 743
- REBALANCE, option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- rebinding, recommended after LOAD 308
- REBUILD INDEX utility
 - access, specifying 394
 - authorization 379
 - Before running 389
 - building indexes in parallel 397
 - catalog indexes 402
 - compatibility 392
 - data sets needed 390
 - description 379
 - DRAIN_WAIT, when to use 395
 - dynamic sort and SORTDATA allocation, overriding 397
 - effects 404
 - examples 405
 - all indexes in a table space, rebuilding 406
 - CLONE 407
 - index partitions, rebuilding 405
 - inline statistics 406
 - multiple partitions, rebuilding 405
 - partitions, rebuilding all 406
 - restrictive states, condition 406
 - SHRLEVEL CHANGE 407
 - single index, rebuilding 405
 - FlashCopy 403
 - FlashCopy image copies, overview 142
 - index partitions 395
 - option descriptions 382
 - partition-by-growth table spaces 395
 - performance recommendations 395
 - phases of execution 379
 - REBUILD-pending status, resetting 401
 - recoverability of rebuilt index 403
 - recycling version numbers 404
 - restarting 404
 - several indexes
 - performance 395
 - SHRLEVEL CHANGE
 - log processing 394
 - when to use 395
 - SHRLEVEL option 394
 - slow log processing, operator actions 394
 - sort subtasks for parallel build 397
 - sort subtasks for parallel index build, determining number 397
 - sort work file size 397
 - syntax diagram 380
 - terminating 404
 - work data sets, calculating size 390
- REBUILD-pending (RBDP) status
 - description 401, 1006
 - resetting 452, 1006
- REBUILD-pending (RDBP) status
 - set by LOAD utility 312
- REBUILD-pending star (RBDP*) status, resetting 401
- REBUILD, option of REPAIR utility 604
- RECDS, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- records, loaded, ordering 277
- RECOVER
 - before running 421
 - effects 431
- RECOVER utility
 - authorization 409
 - backout
 - point-in-time recovery 442
 - catalog and directory objects 433
 - catalog table spaces, recovering 433
 - CHECK-pending status, resetting 442
 - compatibility 422
 - compressed data, recovering 442
 - concurrent copies, improving recovery performance 413
 - damaged media, avoiding 454
 - data sets needed 422
 - description 409
 - DFSMSHsm data sets 450
 - effects 455
 - error range, recovering 431
 - examples 455
 - CLONE 458
 - concurrent copies 456
 - CURRENTCOPYONLY 456
 - different tape devices 457
 - DSNUM 426, 455
 - error range 431
 - index image copy, recovering to 456
 - last image copy, recovering to 455
 - LIST 457
 - list of objects, recovering in parallel 457
 - list of objects, recovering to point in time 457
 - LRSN, recovering to 456
 - multiple table spaces 426
 - PARALLEL 457
 - partition, recovering 455
 - partitions 426
 - point-in-time recovery 456
 - RESTOREBEFORE 458
 - single table space 426
 - table space, recovering 455
 - TAPEUNITS 457
 - TOLASTCOPY 455
 - TOLASTFULLCOPY 456
 - TOLOGPOINT 456
 - TORBA 426
 - fallback 453
 - FlashCopy 429
 - hierarchy of dependencies 433
 - incremental image copies 428
 - input data sets 422
 - JES3 environment 452
 - lists of objects 427
 - lists, using 413
 - LOB data 441
 - LOGAPPLY phase, optimizing 450
 - mixed volume IDs 409
 - non-DB2 data sets 432
 - option descriptions 413
 - order of recovery 433
 - output 409
 - pages, recovering 413, 430
 - parallel recovery 413, 427
 - partitions, recovering 413, 428
 - performance recommendations 449
 - phases of execution 409

- RECOVER utility (*continued*)
 - point-in-time recovery
 - backout 442
 - performing 433
 - planning for 433, 442
 - RBA, recovering to 413
 - rebalancing partitions with REORG 442
 - REBUILD-pending status 409
 - recovery status 442
 - restarting 454
 - restriction 409
 - skipping SYSLGRNX during LOGAPPLY phase 413
 - specific data set, skipping 448
 - syntax diagram 411
 - table space sets 409
 - TABLESPACE option 154
 - tape mounts, retaining 453
 - terminating 454
- RECOVER-pending (RECP) status
 - description 452, 1007
 - resetting 312, 452, 1007
- recovery
 - backout 442
 - catalog objects 433
 - compressed data 442
 - consistency, ensuring 442
 - data set, partition 428
 - database
 - FlashCopy image copies 142
 - LOB table space 154
 - REBUILD INDEX utility 379
 - RECOVER utility 409
 - REORG makes image copies invalid 137
 - directory objects 433
 - error range 431
 - FlashCopy image copies 429
 - image copies 452
 - JES3 environment 452
 - log copy pool backups 48
 - page 430
 - partial 442
 - preparing for with copies 154
 - reporting information 623
 - table space
 - description 426
 - multiple spaces 426
- recovery base 426
- recovery information, reporting 619
- recovery log
 - backward 801
 - forward 801
- RECOVERY, option of REPORT utility 619
- RECOVERYDDN
 - option of COPY utility 123
 - option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
 - option of LOAD utility 227, 292
 - option of MERGECOPY utility 332
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502, 558
- RECOVERYSITE
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
 - option of REPORT utility 619
- RECP 312, 1007
- referential constraint
 - loading data 286
 - violations, correcting 288
- REFP 1008
- REFRESH-pending (REFP) status
 - description 1008
 - resetting 1008
- remote site recovery 140
- REORG INDEX
 - before running 474
- REORG INDEX utility
 - access, allowing 463
 - access, specifying 482
 - authorization 459
 - catalog updates 488
 - CHECK-pending status, compatibility 474
 - compatibility 480
 - data set
 - shadow, determining name 478
 - data sets
 - definitions, changing 476
 - needed 476
 - shadow, estimating size 478
 - unload, specifying 463
 - user-managed 478
 - data-sharing considerations 474
 - description 459
 - drain behavior, specifying 463
 - DRAIN_WAIT, when to use 485
 - examples 489
 - CLONE 491
 - FlashCopy 491
 - HISTORY 490
 - LIST 490
 - MAXRO 490
 - OPTIONS 490
 - REPORT 490
 - SHRLEVEL 490
 - single index 489
 - STATISTICS 490
 - TEMPLATE 490
 - UNLOAD PAUSE 489
 - UPDATE 490
 - WORKDDN 490
 - fallback recovery, considerations 474
 - FlashCopy 484
 - FlashCopy image copies, overview 142
 - inline statistics
 - gathering 463
 - reporting 463
 - interrupting 485
 - lists, using 463
 - long logs, actions for 463
 - no action 463
 - option descriptions 463
 - output 459, 488
 - partitions, specifying 463
 - performance 485
 - phases of execution 459
 - preformatting pages 463
 - REBUILD-pending status, compatibility 474
 - RECOVER-pending status, compatibility 474
 - region size 474
 - report only 463
 - restart-pending status, compatibility with SHRELEVEL
 - CHANGE 474
 - restarting 487
 - retries, specifying maximum number 463
 - shadow data sets, defining 478
 - shadow objects 478

- REORG INDEX utility *(continued)*
 - SHRLEVEL CHANGE
 - log processing 482
 - when to use 485
 - SHRLEVEL option 482
 - slow log processing, operator actions 482
 - SWITCH phase deadline, specifying 463
 - syntax diagram 460
 - terminating 486
 - time for log processing, specifying 463
 - time-out condition, actions for 463
 - unloading data, action after 463
 - version numbers, recycling 489
 - versions, effect on 489
 - waiting time when draining for SQL 463
- REORG TABLESPACE utility
 - access, specifying 502, 549
 - actions after running 572
 - authorization 493
 - building indexes in parallel 562
 - catalog and directory
 - considerations 530
 - determining when to reorganize 553
 - limitations for reorganizing 553
 - phases for reorganizing 553
 - reorganizing 553
 - compatibility
 - with all other utilities 543
 - with CHECK-pending status 530
 - with REBUILD-pending status 530
 - with RECOVER-pending status 530
 - with REORG-pending status 530
 - compression dictionary
 - building 555
 - not building new 502
 - CURRENT DATE option
 - decrementing 502
 - incrementing 502
 - data set
 - copy, specifying 502
 - discard, specifying 502
 - shadow, determining name 540
 - unload 552
 - data sets
 - shadow 540
 - unload 535
 - unload, specifying name 502
 - work 535
 - data sets needed 535
 - deadline for SWITCH phase, specifying 502
 - description 493
 - drain behavior, specifying 502
 - DRAIN_WAIT, when to use 560
 - DSNDB07 database, restriction 493
 - dynamic sort work data set allocation, overriding 556
 - effects 573
 - error in RELOAD phase 565
 - examples 574
 - CLONE 587
 - conditional reorganization 578
 - DEADLINE 576
 - deadline for SWITCH phase, specifying 576
 - determining whether to reorganize 578
 - discarding records 585
 - DRAIN_WAIT 580
 - draining table space 580
 - FlashCopy image copy 587
- REORG TABLESPACE utility *(continued)*
 - examples *(continued)*
 - LONGLOG 577
 - mapping table, using 584
 - maximum processing time, specifying 577
 - parallel index build 575
 - partition, reorganizing 575
 - range of partitions, reorganizing 577
 - read-write access, allowing 576
 - rebalancing partitions 556
 - RETRY 580
 - RETRY_DELAY 580
 - sample REORG output for conditional REORG 578
 - sample REORG output for draining table space 580
 - sample REORG output that shows if REORG limits have been met 578
 - SCOPE PENDING 586
 - SHRLEVEL CHANGE 576
 - sort input data set, specifying 575
 - statistics, updating 577
 - table space, reorganizing 574
 - unload data set, specifying 575
 - failed job, recovering 568
 - fallback recovery considerations 530
 - FlashCopy 559
 - FlashCopy image copies, overview 142
 - indexes, building in parallel 562
 - inline copy 558
 - interrupting temporarily 555
 - lists, using 502
 - LOB table space
 - reorganizing 567
 - restriction 493
 - log processing, specifying max time 502
 - long logs, action taken 502
 - LONGLOG action, specifying interval 502
 - mapping table
 - example 530
 - preventing concurrent use 530
 - specifying name 502
 - using 530
 - multilevel security restrictions 493
 - option descriptions 502
 - output 493, 571
 - partition-by-growth table spaces, reorganizing 565
 - partitioned table spaces, reorganizing 565
 - partitions in parallel 558
 - partitions, REORG-pending status considerations 556
 - performance recommendations
 - after adding column 348
 - general 560
 - phases of execution
 - BUILD phase 493
 - LOG phase 493
 - RELOAD phase, description 493
 - RELOAD phase, error 565
 - SORT phase 493
 - SORTBLD phase 493
 - SWITCH phase 493
 - UNLOAD phase 493
 - UTILINIT phase 493
 - UTILTERM phase 493
 - preformatting pages 502
 - processing encrypted data 530
 - REBALANCE
 - restrictions 530
 - rebalancing partitions 556

REORG TABLESPACE utility (*continued*)

- reclaiming space from dropped tables 553
- records, discarding 502
- recycling version numbers 573
- region size recommendation 530
- RELOAD phase
 - counting records loaded 566
- RELOAD phase, encountering an error in 565
- reload, skipping 552
- restarting 569
- restriction 493
- sample generated LOAD statement 502
- scope, specifying 502
- segmented table spaces, reorganizing 566
- selection condition 502
- shadow data sets, defining 540
- shadow objects 540
- SHRLEVEL
 - specifying 549
 - user-managed data sets with 540
- SHRLEVEL CHANGE
 - compatibility with restart-pending status 530
 - log processing 549
 - performance implications 560
 - when to use 560
- slow processing, operator actions 549
- sort device type, specifying 502
- sort program messages, specifying destination 535
- sort subtasks
 - allocation 562
 - determining number 562
- sort work file, estimating size 562
- statistics, specifying 502
- syntax diagram 496
- temporary data sets, specifying number 502
- time to wait for drain, specifying 502
- time-out, specifying action 502
- timestamps
 - decrementing 502
 - incrementing 502
- unload, specifying action 502
- unloading data, methods of 565
- versions, effect on 573
- XML table space
 - reorganizing 567

REORG utility 288

- compressing data 288
- KEEPDICTIONARY option 288

REORG-pending (REORP) status

- description 1008
- resetting 1008

REORG, option of DSN1COMP utility 845

reorganizing

- indexes 481
- table spaces 482
- table spaces, determining when to reorganize 548

REORP 1008

REPAIR

- before running 605

REPAIR utility 592

- authorization 589
- before running
 - copying table space 605
 - restoring indexes 605
- catalog, repairing 612
- CHECK-pending status 614
- commit point for LOCATE statement 596

REPAIR utility (*continued*)

- compatibility 606
- damaged page, repairing 610
- data sets needed 606
- DBD statement
 - declared temporary table 603
 - description 603
 - option descriptions 604
 - syntax diagram 603
 - using 610
- declared temporary table compatibility 4, 603
- DELETE statement
 - description 601
 - syntax diagram 601
- DELETE statement, using with VERIFY 612
- description 589
- DUMP statement
 - description 602
 - option descriptions 602
 - syntax diagram 602
- examples 614
 - CLONE 616
 - damaged data, replacing 614
 - DBDs 615
 - nonindexed row, removing 614
 - orphan row, repairing 615
 - restrictive states, resetting 616
 - versions, updating 616
- LOCATE INDEX statement 598
- LOCATE INDEXSPACE statement 598
- LOCATE statement
 - description 595
 - syntax diagram 595
- LOCATE TABLESPACE KEY
 - example messages 611
 - restriction for multiple-column indexes 611
- LOCATE TABLESPACE statement 596
- logging, specifying 591
- option descriptions 591
- output 589, 613
- output data sets
 - calculating size 606
 - description 606
- partitions 591
- phases of execution 589
- processing encrypted data 605
- REPLACE statement
 - description 600
 - option descriptions 600
 - syntax diagram 600
- REPLACE statement, using with VERIFY 612
- resetting states, options 593
- restarting 613
- rows, locating by key 611
- SET INDEX statement
 - description 592
 - option descriptions 593
- SET INDEXSPACE statement
 - description 592
 - option descriptions 593
- SET TABLESPACE statement
 - description 592
 - option descriptions 593
- status, resetting 609, 610
- syntax diagram 590
- terminating 613

REPAIR utility (*continued*)
 VERIFY statement
 description 599
 option descriptions 599
 syntax diagram 599
 VERIFY statement, using with REPLACE and DELETE 612
 version information
 updating on the same system 591
 version information, updating when moving to another system 612
 warning 605

REPLACE
 option of LOAD PART 248
 option of LOAD utility 227
 statement of REPAIR utility
 description 600
 used in LOCATE block 595

replacing data in a table space 277

REPORT
 option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
 option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

REPORT utility
 authorization 617
 catalog and directory 625
 compatibility 622
 data sets needed 622
 description 617
 examples 633
 recovery information for index 638
 recovery information for partition 636, 639
 recovery information for table space 633
 referential relationships 635
 SHOWSNS 639
 TABLESPACESET 635
 temporal tables 640
 versioning relationships 640
 option descriptions 619
 output 617
 phases of execution 617

RECOVERY
 output 626
 sample output 623, 626
 recovery information, reporting 619
 restarting 625
 syntax diagram 618
 table space recovery information 623

TABLESPACESET
 output 626
 sample output 626
 terminating 625

REPORTONLY
 option of COPY utility 123
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

REPORTONLY, option of COPY utility 152

RESET
 option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 option of REPAIR utility 600

resetting
 DBETE status
 DBET error 1004
 pending status
 advisory 1001

resetting (*continued*)
 pending status (*continued*)
 auxiliary CHECK-pending (ACHKP) 1001
 CHECK-pending (CHKP) 1003
 COPY-pending 1004
 group buffer pool RECOVER-pending (GRECP) 1005
 informational COPY-pending (ICOPY) 154, 1006
 page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) 1006
 REBUILD-pending (RBDP) 401
 REBUILD-pending (RBDP), for the RECOVER utility 452
 REBUILD-pending (RBDP), summary 1006
 RECOVER-pending (RECP), for the RECOVER utility 452
 RECOVER-pending (RECP), summary 1007
 REORG-pending (REORP) 1008
 restart-pending 1010
 refresh status, REFRESH-pending (REFP) 1008
 warning status, auxiliary warning (AUXW) 1002

RESPORT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

restart
 conditional control record
 reading 831
 sample 831

restart-pending (RESTP) status
 description 1010
 resetting 1010

RESTART, option of DSNU CLIST command 21

restarting
 performing first two phases only 801
 problems
 cannot restart REPAIR 613
 cannot restart REPORT 625

utilities
 BACKUP SYSTEM 49
 CATMAINT 59
 CHECK DATA 85
 CHECK INDEX 103
 CHECK LOB 116
 COPY 157
 creating your own JCL 39
 current restart 36
 data set name 36
 data sharing 33
 DIAGNOSE 192
 EXEC SQL 197
 EXEC statement 30
 JCL, updating 39
 LISTDEF 215
 LISTS 41
 LOAD 309
 MERGECOPY 338
 methods of restart 39
 MODIFY RECOVERY utility 349
 MODIFY STATISTICS 357
 OPTIONS 365
 out-of-space condition 40
 phase restart 36
 QUIESCE 376
 REBUILD INDEX 404
 RECOVER 454
 REORG INDEX 486, 487
 REORG TABLESPACE 568, 569
 RESTORE SYSTEM 648
 RUNSTATS 683
 STATISTICS keyword 36
 STOSPACE 697

- restarting (*continued*)
 - utilities (*continued*)
 - TEMPLATE 718
 - templates 40
 - UNLOAD 782
 - using DB2I 39
 - using the DSNU CLIST command 39
 - utility statements 39, 40
 - UTPROC 27
 - volume serial 36
- restarting a utility
 - DSNUTILS 933
 - DSNUTILU 945
- RESTORE SYSTEM utility
 - actions after running 649
 - authorization 643
 - compatibility 648
 - creating system point in time for 801
 - data sets needed 648
 - data sharing environment 648
 - description 643
 - DISPLAY UTILITY command 648
 - effects of running 649
 - examples 649
 - FROMDUMP 650
 - LOGONLY 649
 - recovering a system 649
 - option descriptions 645
 - output 643
 - phases of execution 643
 - preparation 646
 - restarting 648
 - syntax diagram 644
 - terminating 648
- RESTOREBEFORE
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
- RESTP 1010
- restrictive status
 - resetting 609, 610, 1001
- RESUME, option of LOAD PART 248
- RESUME, option of LOAD utility 227
- RETAIN
 - option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343
- RETPD, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- RETRY
 - option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 - option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
 - option of CHECK LOB utility 109
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- RETRY_DELAY
 - option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 - option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
 - option of CHECK LOB utility 109
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
- return code, altering 365
- return code, CHANGELIMIT 152
- REUSE
 - option of LOAD PART 248
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of REBUILD INDEX 382
 - option of RECOVER utility 413
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- RI, option of LISTDEF utility 201
- RID
 - option of DSN1CHKR utility 837
 - option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 - option of REPAIR utility on LOCATE statement 596
- row format
 - REORG TABLESPACE, effect of 573
- ROWID
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of REPAIR utility on LOCATE statement 596
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- ROWID columns
 - generating 304
 - loading 280, 304
- ROWLIMIT, option of DSN1COMP utility 845
- running online utilities
 - data sharing environment 33
 - JCL 30
- RUNSTATS
 - profiles 680
- RUNSTATS profiles 682
 - deleting 682
 - setting 681
 - use by autonomic statistics 683
 - using 682
- RUNSTATS utility
 - access, specifying 656, 665
 - actions after running 688
 - after LOAD 308
 - aggregation of statistics, specifying 656, 665
 - assessing table spaces 677
 - authorization 651
 - catalog table spaces
 - processing 678
 - sample output 678
 - catalog table updates 684
 - COLGROUPOption 651
 - column frequency statistics, gathering 656
 - column information, gathering 656
 - compatibility 675
 - data sets needed 672
 - deciding when to run 676
 - description 651
 - device type for sort program, specifying 656, 665
 - distribution statistics for column groups 677
 - examples 688
 - collecting distribution statistics 690, 691
 - gather histogram statistics 692
 - generating a report 689
 - invalidating statements in the dynamic statement cache 692
 - reporting statistics only 690
 - updating access path statistics 689
 - updating all statistics 689
 - updating catalog and history statistics 690
 - updating frequency statistics 690
 - updating index statistics 689
 - updating key column statistics 690
 - updating statistics for a partition 690
 - updating statistics for a table space 689
 - updating statistics for several tables 689
 - updating statistics while allowing changes 688
 - updating statistics while not allowing changes 689
 - grouping columns 656
 - HISTOGRAM option 651
 - HISTORY option 680
 - index frequency statistics, gathering 656
 - INDEX option 651

RUNSTATS utility (*continued*)

- index partitions, gathering statistics 656
- index partitions, specifying 665
- INDEX syntax diagram 664
- invoking manually 683
- key column combinations, gathering information 656
- large partitioned table spaces 684
- lists, using 656, 665
- LOB table space, space statistics 680
- option descriptions
 - options for RUNSTATS INDEX 665
- output 651, 684
- partitioned table space, updating statistics 678
- performance recommendations 678
- phases of execution 651
- preparation 672
- profile syntax diagram 669
- reporting information 656, 665
- restarting 683
- sample of columns, gathering statistics 656
- SAMPLE option 656
- SET PROFILE option 681
- sort work data sets, specifying number 656, 665
- table space partitions, gathering statistics 656
- TABLESPACE option 651
- TABLESPACE syntax diagram 652
- terminating 683
- UPDATE PROFILE option 682
- updating catalog information 656, 665
- USE PROFILE option 682
- work data sets
 - using for frequency statistics 679
- XML table space, space statistics 680

RUSNTATS profiles

- updating 682

S

SAMPLE

- option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
- option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- option of RUNSTATS utility 656
- option of UNLOAD utility 743

scanning rules, utility control statements 13, 791

SCOPE

- option of CHECK DATA utility 64, 80
- option of COPY utility
 - ALL 123
 - PENDING 123
- option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
- option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

SCOPE PENDING, CHECK DATA after LOAD utility 312

SECPORT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

security

- multilevel with row-level granularity
 - authorization restrictions for online utilities 16
 - authorization restrictions for stand-alone utilities 792

security, data sets 11

SEGMENT, option of DSN1COPY utility 857

segmented table spaces, reorganizing 566

SELECT statement

- list
 - maximum number of elements 923
 - SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE, example 695

select-statement, option of EXEC SQL utility 196

SELECT, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911

SELECT2, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911

semicolon

- embedded 1018

SET INDEX statement 592

SET INDEX statement of REPAIR utility 592

SET INDEXSPACE statement 592

SET INDEXSPACE statement of REPAIR utility 592

SET TABLESPACE statement 592

SET TABLESPACE statement of REPAIR utility 592

setting SQL terminator

- DSNTIAD 1018

shadow data sets

- CHECK DATA utility 75
- CHECK INDEX utility 94
- CHECK LOB utility 112
- defining
 - REORG INDEX utility 478
 - REORG TABLESPACE utility 540
- estimating size, REORG INDEX utility 478

shift-in character, LOAD utility 248

shift-out character, LOAD utility 248

shortcut keys

- keyboard xvi

SHRLEVEL

- option of CHECK DATA utility 64
- option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
- option of CHECK LOB utility 109
- option of COPY utility
 - CHANGE 123, 146
 - REFERENCE 123, 146
- option of LOAD utility 227
- option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
- option of REORG INDEX utility 463
- option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- option of REPAIR utility on LOCATE statement 596
- option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665
- option of UNLOAD utility 728

SHRLEVEL CHANGE

- option of REPAIR utility on LOCATE statement 596

SIZE, option of DSNUPROC utility 27

SKIP, option of OPTIONS statement 362

SMALLINT

- option of LOAD utility 248
- option of UNLOAD utility 743

softcopy publications 1055

sort program

- data sets for REORG TABLESPACE, specifying device type 502
- messages from REORG TABLESPACE, specifying destination 535

SORTDATA, option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

SORTDEVT

- option of CHECK DATA utility 64
- option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
- option of CHECK LOB utility 109
- option of LOAD utility 227
- option of REBUILD INDEX 382
- option of REORG INDEX 463
- option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

SORTKEYS

- option of LOAD utility 227, 295

SORTNUM

- option of CHECK DATA utility 64
- option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
- option of CHECK LOB utility 109
- option of LOAD utility 227
- option of REBUILD INDEX 382

SORTNUM (*continued*)
 option of REORG INDEX 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665

SORTOUT
 data set of LOAD utility, estimating size 270

space
 DBD, reclaiming 348
 unused, finding for nonsegmented table space 548

SPACE
 AGE option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 DATE, option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 option of TEMPLATE utility 702

SPACE column
 analyzing values 696

spanned record format 769

SQL (Structured Query Language)
 limits 923
 statement terminator 1018

SQL statement terminator
 modifying in DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 1012, 1020
 modifying in DSNTIAD 1018

SQL terminator, specifying in DSNTEP2 and DSNTEP4 1012, 1020

SQL terminator, specifying in DSNTIAD 1018

STACK, option of TEMPLATE statement 702

stand-alone utilities 791
 control statement, creating 791
 description 3
 invoking 791
 JCL EXEC PARM, using to specify options 791
 multilevel security with row-level granularity, effects 792
 specifying options 791

START TRACE command, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911

START, option of CATENFM utility 52

STARTIME, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

STARTRBA, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

state, utility execution 31

statistics
 deciding when to gather 676
 gathering 651
 profiles 680
 real-time
 stored procedure 949, 970

STATISTICS
 option of LOAD utility 227
 option of REBUILD INDEX 382
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502

statistics history
 deleting specific entries 357
 reasons to delete 357

statistics, space utilization and the REORG INDEX utility 482

status
 CHECK-pending, resetting 312
 COPY-pending, resetting 312
 displaying 1001
 option of TEMPLATE statement 702
 page set REBUILD-pending (PSRBD) 401
 REBUILD-pending (RBDP) 401
 REBUILD-pending star (RBDP*) 401

status of utility
 active 31
 stopped 31
 terminated 31

STOGROUP, option of STOSPACE utility 694

stopped status, of a utility 31

stopping, state of utility execution 31

storage group, DB2
 disk space 695
 storage allocated 695

STORCLAS, option of TEMPLATE statement 702

stored procedure
 DSNACCOR 949
 DSNUTILS 933
 DSNUTILU 945
 real-time statistics 949

stored procedures
 >DSNACCOX 929
 ADMIN_COMMAND_DB2 929
 ADMIN_COMMAND_DSN 929
 ADMIN_COMMAND_UNIX 929
 ADMIN_DS_BROWSE 929
 ADMIN_DS_DELETE 929
 ADMIN_DS_LIST 929
 ADMIN_DS_RENAME 929
 ADMIN_DS_SEARCH 929
 ADMIN_DS_WRITE 929
 ADMIN_INFO_HOST 929
 ADMIN_INFO_SSID 929
 ADMIN_JOB_CANCEL 929
 ADMIN_JOB_FETCH 929
 ADMIN_JOB_QUERY 929
 ADMIN_JOB_SUBMIT 929
 ADMIN_TASK_ADD 929
 ADMIN_TASK_REMOVE 929
 ADMIN_UTL_SCHEDULE 929
 ADMIN_UTL_SORT 929
 DB2-supplied 929
 DSNACCOR 929
 DSNACCOX 970
 DSNACICS 929
 DSNAXEP 929
 DSNAHVPM 929
 DSNAIMS 929
 DSNAIMS2 929
 DSNLEUSR 929
 DSNTBIND 929
 DSNTPSMP 929
 DSNUTILS 929
 DSNUTILU 929
 DSNWSPM 929
 DSNWZP 929
 GET_CONFIG 929
 GET_MESSAGE 929
 GET_SYSTEM_INFO 929
 real-time statistics 970
 SQLJ.ALTER_JAVA_PATH 929
 SQLJ.DB2_INSTALL_JAR 929
 SQLJ.DB2_REMOVE_JAR 929
 SQLJ.DB2_REPLACE_JAR 929
 SQLJ.DB2_UPDATEJARINFO 929
 SQLJ.INSTALL_JAR 929
 SQLJ.REMOVE_JAR 929
 SQLJ.REPLACE_JAR 929
 WLM_REFRESH 929
 XDBDECOMPXML 929
 XSR_ADDSCHEMADOC 929
 XSR_COMPLETE 929
 XSR_REGISTER 929
 XSR_REMOVE 929

STOSPACE utility
 authorization 693
 availability of objects, ensuring 695
 catalog updates 695
 compatibility 695
 data sets needed 694
 description 693
 examples
 all storage groups, updating space values 697
 one storage group, updating space values 697
 several storage groups, updating space values 697
 stogroup names 697
 monitoring disk space for a storage group 695
 option descriptions 694
 output 693
 phases of execution 693
 restarting 697
 statistical information, obtaining 695
 syntax diagram 694
 terminating 697
 string, naming convention xvii
 strings
 advanced information 502, 743
 STRIP
 option of LOAD utility
 BINARY data type 248
 CHAR data type 248, 299
 GRAPHIC data type 248, 299
 GRAPHIC EXTERNAL data type 248
 VARBINARY data type 248
 VARCHAR data type 248, 299
 VARGRAPHIC data type 248, 299
 STRIP, option of UNLOAD utility 743
 STRTLRSN, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 STTRACE, option of DSN1SDMP utility 911
 SUBMIT, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
 substring notation, TEMPLATE utility 702
 subsystem
 backing up 43
 restoring 643
 subsystem parameters
 DFSMSdss COPY operation with utilities 35
 subsystem, naming convention xvii
 SUBTYPE, option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 SUMMARY
 option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 option of REPORT utility 619
 switching
 templates
 TEMPLATE 718
 syntax diagram 592
 BACKUP SYSTEM utility 44
 CATENFM utility 51
 CATMAINT utility 55
 change log inventory utility (DSNJU003) 798
 CHECK DATA utility 62
 CHECK INDEX utility 90
 CHECK LOB utility 108
 COPY utility 121
 COPYTOCOPY utility 170
 DIAGNOSE utility 187
 DSN1CHKR utility 837
 DSN1COMP utility 845
 DSN1COPY utility 857
 DSN1LOGP utility 879
 DSN1PRNT utility 899
 DSN1SDMP utility 911
 syntax diagram (continued)
 DSNADMSB 1027
 DSNJU003 utility 798
 DSNJU004 utility 822
 DSNU CLIST command 21
 DSNUTILS stored procedure 936
 DSNUTILU stored procedure 947
 EXEC SQL utility 195
 how to read xx
 LISTDEF utility 200
 LOAD utility 223
 MERGECOPY utility 332
 MODIFY RECOVERY utility 342
 MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
 OPTIONS statement 361
 print log map utility 822
 QUIESCE utility 370
 REBUILD INDEX utility 380
 RECOVER utility 411
 REORG INDEX utility 460
 REORG TABLESPACE utility 496
 REPAIR utility 590
 REPORT utility 618
 RESTORE SYSTEM utility 644
 RUNSTATS INDEX 664
 RUNSTATS profile 669
 RUNSTATS TABLESPACE 652
 STOSPACE utility 694
 TEMPLATE statement 699
 UNLOAD utility 726
 SYSCOPY
 catalog table, information from REPORT utility 623
 directory table space, MERGECOPY restrictions 331, 332
 option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 SYSCOPY, deleting rows 347
 SYSDISC data set
 LOAD utility, estimating size 270
 SYSERR data set
 LOAD utility, estimating size 270
 SYSIBM.SYSCOPY
 ICBACKUP column 140
 ICUNIT column 140
 SYSIN DD statement, built by CLIST 25
 SYSLGRNX directory table, information from REPORT utility 623
 SYSLGRNX, deleting rows 347
 SYSMAP data set
 estimating size 270
 SYSOBDS entries, deleting 348
 SYSPITR, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 SYSPITRT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 SYSPRINT DD statement, built by CLIST 25
 SYSTEM
 option of DSNU CLIST command 21
 option of DSNUPROC utility 27
 system data sets, renaming 816
 system monitoring
 index organization 481
 table space organization 482, 548
 system point in time, creating 801
 system-level
 backup 831
 system-level backups
 recovering from 424
 system-level-backup 426
 system, limits 923
 SYSTEMPAGES, option of COPY utility 123

SYSUT1 data set for LOAD utility, estimating size 270
SYSUTILX directory table space
MERGECOPY restrictions 331, 332
order of recovering 433

T

table

dropping, reclaiming space 553
exception, creating 79
multiple, loading 245
replacing 277
replacing data 277

TABLE

option of LISTDEF utility 201
option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
option of RUNSTATS utility 656

table name, naming convention xvii

table space

assessing status with RUNSTATS 677
checking 61
checking multiple 88
determining when to reorganize 482, 548
LOAD LOG 315
merging copies 331
mixed volume IDs, copying 155
naming convention xvii
nonsegmented, finding unused space 548
partitioned, updating statistics 678
REORG LOG 573
reorganizing
determining when to reorganize 548
using SORTDATA option of REORG utility 548
utilization 482
segmented
copying 148
LOAD utility 277
status, resetting 609

table spaces

LOAD on NOT LOGGED, effect of 315, 573

TABLESPACE

option of CHECK DATA utility 64
option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
option of CHECK LOB utility 109
option of COPY utility 123
option of COPYTOCOPY utility 172
option of LISTDEF utility 201
option of MERGECOPY utility 332
option of MODIFY RECOVERY utility 343
option of MODIFY STATISTICS utility 354
option of QUIESCE utility 370
option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
option of RECOVER utility 413
option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
option of REPAIR utility
general description 591
on LOCATE TABLESPACE statement 596
on SET TABLESPACE and SET INDEX statements 593
option of REPORT utility 619
option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665
option of UNLOAD utility 728

TABLESPACES, option of LISTDEF utility 201

TABLESPACESET

option of QUIESCE utility 370
option of REPORT utility 619

TAPEUNITS

option of COPY utility 123
option of RECOVER utility 413

TEMPLATE library 714

TEMPLATE library, specifying 365

TEMPLATE utility

authorization 699
BSAM buffers, specifying number 702
compatibility 715
data set names
convention for specifying 702
creating 716
guidelines 716
data set size
controlling 716
default space calculations 717
letting DB2 estimate 716

DD name for tape, specifying 702

description 699

devices

specifying 702
specifying number 702

disposition of data set

defaults for dynamically allocated data sets for new utility executions 702
defaults for dynamically allocated data sets on RESTART 702
specifying 702

examples

basic template 719
COPY job with LISTDEF and TEMPLATE 715
COPY job with TEMPLATE and LISTDEF 720
creating a GDG data set 721
GDG data set, copying to tape 721
LOB objects, unloading 722
specifying an expiration date 720
specifying disposition 720
specifying space parameters 720
template switching 161, 722
using default size 720
variable substring notation 719

expiration date for data set, specifying 702

GDG base, specifying number of entries 702

GDGs, working with 718

instructions 699, 714

model data set, specifying 702

operations 715

option descriptions 702

LRECL 702

RECFM 702

SUBSYS 702

output 699

phases of execution 699

PREVIEW mode, executing in 715, 716

previewing data set names 715, 716

restarting 718

retention period for data set, specifying 702

scope of control statement 715

SMS data class, specifying 702

SMS management class, specifying 702

SMS storage class, specifying 702

space parameters, specifying 702

substring notation 702

switching 718

syntax diagram 699

tape, working with 718

terminating 718

TEMPLATE utility (*continued*)
 track recording technique, specifying 702
 variables
 DATE 702
 example meaningful data set name 716
 JOB 702
 OBJECT 702
 TIME 702
 using in the data set name 702
 UTILITY 702
 volume serial numbers, specifying 702
 volumes, specifying maximum number 702
 TEMPLATEDD, option of OPTIONS statement 362
 TERM UTILITY command
 COPY utility 156
 description 34
 effect on
 RECOVER utility 454
 rerunning UNLOAD 782
 LOAD 308
 terminated status, of a utility 31
 terminating
 MERGECOPY 338
 state of utility execution 31
 utilities
 BACKUP SYSTEM 49
 CATENFM 53
 CATMAINT 59
 CHECK DATA 85
 CHECK INDEX 103
 CHECK LOB 116
 COPY 156
 COPYTOCOPY 182
 data sharing 34
 description 34
 DIAGNOSE 192
 EXEC SQL 197
 LISTDEF 215
 LOAD 308
 MODIFY RECOVERY 349
 MODIFY STATISTICS 357
 OPTIONS 365
 QUIESCE 376
 REBUILD INDEX 404
 RECOVER 454
 REORG INDEX 486
 REORG TABLESPACE 568
 REPAIR 613
 REPORT 625
 RESTORE SYSTEM 648
 RUNSTATS 683
 STOSPACE 697
 TEMPLATE 718
 UNLOAD 782
 terminating a utility
 DSNUTILS 933
 TEST, option of REPAIR utility 604
 TIME EXTERNAL
 option of LOAD utility 248
 option of UNLOAD utility 743
 TIME, option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 TIMEOUT
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 TIMESTAMP EXTERNAL
 option of LOAD utility 248
 option of UNLOAD utility 743
 timestamp, BSDS 828
 timestamp, incrementing and decrementing value 743
 timestamps, printing system and utility 821
 TOCOPY, option of RECOVER utility 413
 TOKEN, option of BACKUP SYSTEM utility 45
 TOLASTCOPY, option of RECOVER utility 413
 TOLASTFULLCOPY option of RECOVER utility 413
 TOLOGPOINT, option of RECOVER utility 413
 TORBA option of RECOVER utility 413
 TOSEQNO, option of RECOVER utility 413
 TOVOLUME, option of RECOVER utility 413
 TRACEID, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189, 191
 TRK, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
 TRTCH, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
 TRUNCATE
 option of LOAD utility
 BINARY data type 248
 CHAR data type 248, 299
 GRAPHIC data type 248, 299
 GRAPHIC EXTERNAL data type 248
 VARBINARY data type 248
 VARCHAR data type 248, 299
 VARGRAPHIC data type 248, 299
 TYPE
 option of DIAGNOSE utility 189
 option of DSN1LOGP utility 880

U
 UID
 option of DSNU command 21
 option of DSNUPROC utility 27
 UNCNT, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
 UNICODE
 option of LOAD utility 227
 option of UNLOAD utility 728
 UNIT
 option of DSNJU003 utility 801
 option of DSNU CLIST command 21
 option of TEMPLATE statement 702
 unit of recovery
 in-abort 801
 inflight 801
 unit of work
 in-commit 801
 indoubt, conditional restart 801
 UNLDDN
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 option of UNLOAD utility 728
 UNLOAD
 option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 UNLOAD utility
 64-bit floating point notation, specifying 743
 access, specifying 728
 ASCII format, specifying 728
 authorization required 725
 binary floating-point number format, specifying 743
 blanks in VARBINARY fields, removing 743
 blanks in VARCHAR fields, removing 743
 blanks in VARGRAPHIC fields, removing 743
 BLOB data type, specifying 743
 BLOB strings, truncating 743
 CCSID format, specifying 728
 CHAR data type, specifying 743
 character string representation of date, specifying 743
 character string representation of time, specifying 743

- UNLOAD utility (*continued*)
 - character strings, truncating 743
 - CLOB data type, specifying 743
 - CLOB strings, truncating 743
 - compatibility 764
 - compressed data 781
 - constant field, specifying 743
 - converting data types 772
 - copies, concatenating 770
 - data sets used 764
 - data type compatibility 772
 - data, identifying 728
 - DBCLOB format, specifying 743
 - DBCS string, truncating 743
 - DD name of unload data set, specifying 728
 - DD statement for image copy, specifying 728
 - decimal format, specifying 743
 - decimal point character, specifying for delimited formats 728
 - delimited files 777
 - delimited format, specifying 728
 - delimiters
 - column 728
 - string 728
 - description 725
 - EBCDIC format, specifying 728
 - examples 782
 - CLONE 788
 - delimited file format 786
 - FROMCOPY option 783
 - HEADER option 784
 - LOBs 787
 - partitioned table space 784
 - SAMPLE option 784
 - specifying a header 784
 - unloading a sample of rows 784
 - unloading all columns 782
 - unloading data from an image copy 783
 - unloading data in parallel 784
 - unloading from two tables 784
 - unloading LOBs 787
 - unloading multiple table spaces 785
 - unloading specific columns 783
 - unloading specified partitions 785, 787
 - using a field specification list 783
 - using LISTDEF 785, 787
 - using TEMPLATE 784
 - field position, specifying 743
 - field specification errors, interpreting 782
 - field specifications 737
 - floating-point data, specifying format 728
 - FROM TABLE clause 769
 - compatibility with LIST 737
 - parentheses 737
 - FROM TABLE option descriptions 743
 - FROM TABLE syntax diagram 738
 - graphic type, specifying 743
 - graphic type, truncating 743
 - header field, specifying 743
 - image copies, unloading 770
 - image copy, specifying 728
 - integer format, specifying 743
 - labeled duration expression 743
 - lists, specifying 728
 - LOAD statements, generating 781
 - LOAD statements, specifying data set for 728
 - LOB data 768, 769
- UNLOAD utility (*continued*)
 - maximum errors allowed, specifying 728
 - maximum number of rows to unload, specifying 743
 - multilevel security restrictions 725
 - multiple tables, unloading 737
 - option descriptions 728
 - output 725
 - output columns
 - ordering 770
 - selecting 770
 - output field position, specifying 774
 - output field size, specifying 774
 - output field types, specifying 772
 - output fields, determining layout 775
 - padding for variable length data, not using 728
 - partitions, identifying 728, 766
 - phases of execution 725
 - preparation 763
 - processing encrypted data 763
 - real format, specifying 743
 - restarting 782
 - ROWID type, specifying for output data 743
 - sampling rows 743
 - selection condition 743
 - small integer, specifying 743
 - source partitions, selecting 766
 - source tables, selecting 769
 - STRIP option 780
 - substitutions, not using 728
 - syntax diagram 726
 - table space, specifying 728
 - terminating 782
 - TRUNCATE option 780
 - Unicode format, specifying 728
 - varying-length data format, specifying 743
 - varying-length graphic type, specifying 743
 - WHEN clause 743
 - XML data 767, 769
 - unloading LOB data 768
 - unloading partitions 766
 - unloading XML data 767
 - UPDATE
 - option of CATMAINT utility 56
 - option of LOAD STATISTICS 227
 - option of REBUILD INDEX utility 382
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 - option of RUNSTATS utility 656, 665
 - UPDATE PROFILE option
 - RUNSTATS utility 682
 - URID (unit of recovery ID), option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 - USE PROFILE option
 - RUNSTATS utility 682
 - utilities
 - BACKUP SYSTEM
 - log copy pools 48
 - controlling 31
 - data set disposition 11
 - executing
 - DB2I 17
 - DSNU CLIST command 20
 - JCL 27, 30
 - problems during 31
 - restart 36
 - failure, determining cause 31
 - loading 7
 - MERGECOPY 338

utilities (*continued*)

- mixed-release data sharing environment, operating in 8
- monitoring 31
- online 30
 - description 3
 - invoking 11
- packaging 7
- phase, determining 31
- real-time statistics 1043
- running concurrently 33
- SMP/E jobs 7
- stand-alone
 - description 3
 - invoking 791
- suite
 - installing 7
- target objects, declared temporary table 4
- types
 - BACKUP SYSTEM 43
 - CATENFM 51
 - CATMAINT 55
 - change log inventory (DSNJU003) 797
 - CHECK DATA 61
 - CHECK INDEX 89
 - CHECK LOB 107
 - COPY 119
 - COPYTOCOPY 169
 - DIAGNOSE 187
 - DSN1CHKR 835
 - DSN1COMP 843
 - DSN1COPY 855
 - DSN1LOGP 877
 - DSN1PRNT 897
 - DSN1SDMP 909
 - DSN1JCNVB 793
 - EXEC SQL 195
 - LISTDEF 199
 - LOAD 221
 - MERGECOPY 331
 - MODIFY RECOVERY 341
 - MODIFY STATISTICS 353
 - OPTIONS 361
 - preformat active log (DSNJLOGF) 795
 - print log map (DSNJU004) 821
 - QUIESCE 369
 - REBUILD INDEX 379
 - RECOVER 409
 - REORG 480
 - REORG INDEX 459
 - REORG TABLESPACE 493
 - REPAIR 589
 - REPORT 617
 - RESTORE SYSTEM 643
 - RUNSTATS 651
 - STOSPACE 693
 - TEMPLATE 699
 - UNLOAD 725
- UTILITIES panel, DB2 17
- utility control statements
 - creating 13
 - parsing rules 13
 - scanning rules 13
- utility-id naming convention xvii
- UTILITY, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- UTPRINT DD statement, built by CLIST 25
- UTPROC, option of DSNUPROC utility 27

V

- validation routine
 - LOAD utility 221
 - REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
- VALUE
 - option of DSN1COPY utility 857
 - option of DSN1LOGP utility 880
 - option of DSN1PRNT utility 899
- VARBINARY
 - option of the LOAD utility 248
- VARCHAR
 - data type, loading 277
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- VARGRAPHIC
 - data type, loading 277
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- varying-length rows, relocated to other pages, finding number of 548
- VERIFY, statement of REPAIR utility 595, 599
- version information
 - updating when moving to another system 612
- version number management 349
 - LOAD utility 315
 - REBUILD INDEX utility 404
 - REORG INDEX utility 489
 - REORG TABLESPACE utility 573
- version numbers, recycling 349
- VERSION, option of REPAIR utility on LOCATE statement 596
- VERSIONS, option of REPAIR utility 591
- versions, REORG TABLESPACE effect on 573
- violation messages 81
- violations
 - correct 81
 - finding 81
- VOLCNT, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- VOLUME, option of DSNU CLIST command 21
- VOLUMES, option of TEMPLATE statement 702
- VSAM (Virtual Storage Access Method)
 - used by REORG TABLESPACE 535
 - used by STOSPACE 695
- VSAMCAT, option of DSNJU003 utility 801

W

- WAIT, option of DIAGNOSE utility 189
- WARNING, option of OPTIONS statement 362
- WHEN
 - option of LOAD utility 248
 - option of REORG TABLESPACE utility 502
 - option of UNLOAD utility 743
- work data sets
 - CHECK DATA utility 64, 73
 - LOAD utility 270
- WORKDDN
 - option of CHECK DATA utility 64
 - option of CHECK INDEX utility 91
 - option of CHECK LOB utility 111
 - option of LOAD utility 227
 - option of MERGECOPY utility 332
 - option of REORG INDEX utility 463
- WRITE, option of QUIESCE utility 370

X

XML

- option of LISTDEF utility 201
- option of LOAD utility 248

XML column

- loading 306

XML columns

- loading 283

XML data

- loading 283

XML table space

- copying 149, 180
- LOAD LOG 307
- reorganizing 567

XMLCHECK DATA 82

XMLERROR, option of CHECK DATA utility 64



Program Number: 5605-DB2

Printed in USA

SC19-2984-01



Spine information:

DB2 10 for z/OS

Utility Guide and Reference

